



*Petavi*

THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
VVORLD:  
OR, AN  
Account of Time.

*Compiled by the*  
Learned Dionisius Petavius.

*And Continued by Others,*  
To the Year of Our Lord, 1659.

*Together with*  
A Geographical Description  
OF  
*Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.*

LONDON,  
Printed by J. Streater, and are to be sold by George Sawbridge, at  
the Bible on Ludgate-Hill, MDCLIX.



## To the Reader.

*Ingenious Reader,*

**W**E present thee One of the most Eminent pieces of History in the whole World. The acutenesse of the Author in his manifold polite Writings is fully demonstrated to all persons in Christendome. Inasmuch, that who hath not heard of his Fame, may be justly reputed to have spent his dayes in some Anchorite's Cell in the *Terra incognita*. Great and Exquisite is the Learning, which he hath manifested in his Books of the *Doktrine of the Times*: though it must be confessed, he is somewhat too liberal in his lashing of *Scaliger*, a man of great Knowledge, yet too much doting upon his own parts. In this Discourse he shews the conscienesse of his pen without obscurity. Sir *walter Raleigh* and others that have highly deserved by their Achievements in the Theatre of History, have so voluminously enlarged themselves, that the Reader's patience is too discourteously oppressed. We must acknowledg much to the view of the four Monarchies exhibited by *Sleidan*; yet the curtnesse of that Piece is such, that many stately and heroick Actions of Noble Princes are either not toucht at all, or sleightly past over, without satisfaction given to the diligent Inquirer. *Cluverius* hath written well, but not comparably to this Learned Man: having not so well stated the Chronological part of his History. Whereas Here, besides the innumerable testimonies of all the Ancient and Modern Authours, whose Writings are of any use and subsidiary help to so general and brave a Work; ye have likewise many of the most famous Eclipses and Celestial Characters set down in their distinct places out of *Herodotus*, *Thucydides*, *Aristotle*, *Plutarch*, and hundreds of others in the Monkish Age, which are most infallible demonstrations of the truth of those passages and relations herein delivered. So that we may safely say, without the Censure of arrogance, That in respect of those heavenly *Phænomena*, whereby History is made to ride in its most triumphant Chariot, there was never yet an Historicall Book so Compleat as this, Extant in any Age. He is not so short, as to draw the vail of brevity over any Noble Actions: He is not so long and profuse, as to Naufcate the Reader with prolix and tedious



## To the Reader.

dious circumstances: wherein others take too much liberty to insert their own private Judgments and descants upon the Warlike Actions and deliberated Counsels of great Kings and Generals, sometimes impertinently, sometimes absurdly and childishly; whereas the matter of fact, a thing principally to be attended by sober Historians, might be comprehended in a small view. In-fomuch, that we may truly term this, *The Index of Times*; so that any person that is inquisitive into more ample Narrations, may by his choice Citations furnish himself with a whole Library of History. In a word, he deserves the Laurell from them all, a Temple of praise to be erected to his honour, and all other Historians to be offered up as Victims to his renown.

Furthermore, We must acquaint thee (most Candid Reader) that where Our Noble Author does terminate his Account of the History of former times; that the Work might be produced Compleat in all its parts, we have made use of various helps and observations of those who have lived beyond the Seas, as well as at home, to draw the Discourse down to this very day. We have indeed in the latter years more copiously enlarged, because the great and general Wars of Christendome, since the blazing of the great Comet in 1618, have administred more plentifull matter both at home and abroad, then several Ages that have preceded.

In the last place, We have annexed a Compendious Geographical Discourse of the whole Earth, and its most memorable places, that so the beautifull Statue of History might have both her eyes (*Chronology and Geography*) in a most lively manner inserted for the grand ornament of her personage. From whence the Historical passages in the foregoing Treatises may be fixed to the very places wherein they were acted by the Noble Chiefs-tains of Armies, in their several Warlike Expeditions against their Enemies.

Accept therefore this Treatise as a most choice Treasure: where-by thou mayest be enriched with the knowledge of the rarest and most material Transa&ions that have happened under the Conduct of Divine Providence ever since the World began.

*Thine to serve thee,*

R. P.



T O

The most Illustrious PRINCE,  
D. Ludovick Borbon,  
Duke of Enguenna.



*For Arts and Disciplines (Most Famous Prince) could of themselves speak, truly they would give great thanks unto thee and thy Father, a most excellent man; neither would they lesse gratify themselves with this honour, the which, at this day, by your judgment concerning them, they have attained, very great.*

*For this is a clear witness, how much ye have made of them; because both being of so great a Nobleness, he would have thee be brought up in the Bosome, and Lap of them; Thou hast held the delights and pleasures of the Court, inferiour to the company and familiarity of the same. This is, I say, a thing altogether Noble, and Honourable unto our Learning, that thou, a child of a Kingly stock, and towardnesse, dost accustom thy self in handling those; not that thou callest forth the Masters of them home unto thee, or receivest them in the room of a delight, and pleasant Narration, but that thou thyself of thine own accord comest daily to their houses; neither in performing the Duties of Schollers, dost take any thing proper to thy self above others. wherefore either of you both get unto your selves an everlasting name, and fame; and also do give an example to this and the following Age, in what great esteem henceforward they ought to be accounted; That that may be plucked out of the opinion of men, which seemeth to have made many of that rank, either openly, or by a silent custome and judgement, to believe: that as every one is born in the highest place, so he is to have the least commerce with those idle and sloathfull studies. But if anyone shall dare to boast for the future; not of Alexander the Great, not of Charls our Countryman, not of the rest (whom from the remembrance of Antiquity we are wont to produce) but, by that thy more modern, and the praise of thy most famous Parent, he shall be refuted. By this honour therefore, as I have said, how very great thanks should Sciences, if they could use speech, proesse themselves to owe unto you both, and also they who can do this, their Favourites, and Lovers, shall plentifully, and abundantly do it; and they shall joyn the commendation of this praise to others, the standing Corn, and matter of which, they have finished in thy most fa-*

*mon*

## The Epistle Dedicatory.

now Father; but in thee nothing lesse, and they trust will be agreeable to these good things of Birth and Nature, which thou bearest before thee. The which hope, conceived of thee by the opinion of all, those so many tokens of excellling Vertues, which thou hast even at that Age, do render confirmed, and sure. I know not what altogether Divine thing there is in you Princes, and a higher towardnesse then the common capacity, which separateth you from the common sort, and plainly sheweth that ye were born unto the Rule of Men, and to take in hand great and difficult matters. And as in the Bee's kind, some signs are put on their Kings, whereby they are easily known from the rest. Or as the successeurs of the Spartans were made remarkable by a Lance; The Pelopidans by an Ivory Shoulder; The Seleucidans by an Anchor, others by other naturall marks: So there is wont to be in Great men some excellent thing; whom the will of God, who governeth not so much the condition of a stock, as all things, and setting down to every one his own rank, lifteth up above the Lot of other men.

Those same things we have learned to be in Thee; first of all a sharp, and excellling wit, of which there is such a speedinesse to comprehend all Arts, that now it being the Eleventh year of thy Age, thou holdest the chiefest seats of Learning and industry in the School of Eloquence, a Mind also stirred up with the pricks of praise and glory; often Combats with the Adversary concerning all kind of Learnings; neither are the Conquests and Victories more seldome then the contentions. Whiles thou indeed obtainest the chiefdome among thy Equals, of all things, wherein that Age is wont to be adorned; and, whether by the perswasion of thy father, or of thy own accord, thou attainest that, which unto a certain Prince (with Homer) going to warfare, his father is read to have commanded him---

Ἄλλοι δὲ οὐδὲν, ὡς ὁ πατήρ σου ἐπαύναται ἔτιον

Alwaies to be the best i'th Train;  
Other's exceller, and remain.

That being a Child, in this shadowy, and sporting encounter, thou makest a flourish with those Triumphs, which afterward in a ripe Age thou shalt carry back from lawfull enemies, and battels. Unto these, which commonly seem more gorgeous, those many better things happen; A certain flower of integrity, and comelinesse, besmeared with the spots of no Vices, a teachable nature, and pliant and bending to the will of the fashioner, as also pure Manners, and lovely, and, toward all, even the lowest, the greatest gentleness, and courtesy of talk. Lastly, a diligent lover of Christian Piety, and worship, without guile. These, and others of like sort, great of themselves, yet in thee they are but the seeds and beginnings, with which thy mind waxeth by degrees ripe, and is perfected unto the grace becoming a Prince.

But I have not determined here to make a solemn cry of thy praises. That, when there shall be need, the which I had begun to speak of, it shall behovee all chiefly, who follow after Learning's Studies, to agree, and endeavour together for that end: and also above all, our Society shall need

## The Epistle Dedicatory.

so do it: unto whose education, thy Father (never without praise to be named) hath passed thee over. The which when he did, he gave together therewith, a pledge and token of his singular esteem and affection of it; and likewise he obliged his faithfulness towards thee, that by what means it could, it should employ it self both for the enlarging thy renown, and also for helping, and stirring up thy studies. I therefore, who, because I am of that Fellowship, and a lover of liberall Arts, do think my self held by the law of both duties, I judged that I must perform my duty in that very thing, by fathering this work on thee: within which all History from the beginning of the world unto the times of our Age, with as much briefnesse, and diligence as I could, I have contained. For so I thought I might chiefly profit thy studies; whose chief part is placed in the knowledge of History, and Antiquity. But wise men rightly deliver, this to be not onely comely for Princes, but very profitable. Whether because the civill learning of Prudence is taken out of that, while men learn from others examples and chances, with no pains of theirs, and danger, what in managing their own, or common affairs, is to be held, and avoided; or from so daily a changeableness of humane affairs, and fortune, which they gather from thence, and the downfall of Empires, and Cities, they are wont to make little regard of those, and, both in defending them, or requiring them, to give a mean to their desires; and passe over their purposes unto the fruit of sound and constant glory, which by vertue and godlinesse alone is received. That this is even the most excellent use of reading History, especially that grave Author Otho of Frisingia, doth (not once) admonish, chiefly in these words, which he hath placed in the end of his second Book. All these evils of things, nodding, or shaking (as I may so speak), the daily deaths of mortall men, ought to send us unto the true, and remaining life of eternity. Thou shalt gather out of this our book the same kind of fruit, of manners, and life, not onely more profitably, but also, which is the goodness of thy Wit, more pleasantly, than that of science, and knowledge, of which there is especially a forcible love in Children. And hence, last of all, from those two duties towards thee, which I have said to be owing from me with the whole Society, there will be made another consequent, that although there being as yet no private Deserts of thine; of thy most illustrious Father, surely there is toward me, as also toward our Society, common to both, I will in like manner pay the Honour and Observance due from me by this (what sort soever) commendation of thy name.

ILL. C. T.

Thy Most Obliged,  
Dionys. Petave.



## A Collection or Summe of the most Christian King's Prerogative-Royall.

IT is provided by the Authority of the King, That none in his Kingdom, or other places subject to his power, may in any character or form, print, or otherwise sell being printed, or in any other manner sell or spread abroad, the Book which is thus inscribed, *An Account of Times, of Dionysius Petavius, Jesuite*, within ten years, to be reckoned from the day of the first Edition finished, besides *Sebastian Cramoisy*, chief Printer of the King and Queen, Governour of the King's Printing, and who also hath been Consul of the City. He that shall do otherwise, a Fine is proclaimed, as in the King's Letters Patents is more largely contained. Given at *Paris* the 19th day of September, 1647.

This first Edition was perfected the 25th day of May, 1651.

## The Sufferance of R. P. V. Provinciall.

*Charles of Allemant V. Provinciall* of the Jesuites Society in the Province of *France*, do grant, that the Book inscribed, *The Account of Times, of Dionysius Petavius*, and approved by three Learned Men of this Province of the same Society, be committed to the Presse; For the confirmation of which thing, we have given these Letters subscribed with our hand, and fortified with our seal, at *Lutetia of Paris*, the 29th day of *Aprill*, 1651.

*Charles of Allemant.*

Reader, by reason of some extraordinary difficulties in the Copy, several Errors have escaped the Prets, which are carefully corrected as followeth;

## Errata.

Pag. 5. line i. for *Seit's* read *Seit's*, and l. 17. r. we think these things were not done  
p. 11. l. 30. for *Sivan* r. *Sivan*, p. 29. l. 14. for *repudiated* r. *divorced*, line 15. & 16.  
for his cruell formal Wife r. the cruell Woman, p. 30. l. 44. del. and before having, & 14.  
45. r. and, before according, p. 33. l. 7. for *years* r. generations, p. 31. l. 2. a Colon after  
wert, p. 35. l. 17. for *agonals* r. Games, p. 37. l. 12. for and r. they and l. 27. r. leading before  
the *Chaldean*, p. 38. l. 34. for *quartray* r. a Governour, p. 44. l. 8. read Kingdoms;  
p. 57. l. 25. for 750. r. 770. p. 59. l. 28. for *commune* r. common, p. 75. l. 3. after l. 24  
is, p. 80. l. 32. for *Origen* r. beginning, p. 82. l. 21. for *anr* and, p. 86. l. 1. r. for  
*quartray* r. the Long-handed, p. 88. l. 38. after *put* r. out, p. 94. l. 40. for *centenarick*  
r. four-yearly, p. 102. l. 26. after *Phileas* r. into suspicion, p. 113. l. 14. & 18. for *Pami*  
r. *Carthiginians*, and l. 31. for *maritimi* r. *Mamerimi*, p. 127. l. 45. for *wane* r. Eclipse,  
p. 134. l. 30. for *decrease* r. Eclipse, p. 136. l. 15. for *King* r. Kingdom, p. 137. l. 39. r.  
Eclipse, p. 146. l. 1. for *Infuber Gallus* r. a French *Infubrian*, p. 175. l. 7. after *r* the  
p. 186. l. 13. for *Prusena* r. *Prusenian* or *Prusen*, p. 191. l. 12. for *in* *Philosopher* r. of  
Philosophy and l. 19. for 135. r. 235. p. 203. l. 47. for *Revenst* r. *Revenna*, p. 207. l. 48.  
for *Constantinus* r. *Constantine*, p. 227. l. 3. for *him* r. up, p. 234. l. 28. for *August* r. *Aug-*  
*gustus*, and l. 43. r. *Augustus*, p. 235. l. 39. for *Procurer* r. *Sollicitor*, p. 250. l. 29. after  
the *r* Empire, after *Placcusius*, del. comma, p. 258. l. 9. after *or* r. the, p. 262. l. 18. for  
*Renu* r. *Rhemes*, p. 269. l. 21. after *Uaclo* r. *falsus*, l. 25. after *Empire* put a Colon  
for *quartray* r. *very* young, l. 46. for *falsus* r. *p. p. p.*, p. 278. l. 20. after *death*  
r. of, p. 290. l. 30. for *his* r. her, p. 293. l. 32. after *exceeded* r. but, p. 294. l. 15. for  
with r. of, p. 306. l. 4. for *put* down r. *laughter*, l. 55. after *the* r. year, p. 311. l. 12. for  
perswade r. *perswaded*, l. 16. for *hux* r. and, l. 18. after *called* r. him, l. 42. after  
brought r. him, p. 312. l. 35. before *seventh* r. the, p. 313. l. 13. for *on* r. in, p. 318. l.  
43. for *August* r. *Augustus*, p. 419. l. 6. after *Lewis* del. *Calvus*, l. 11. for *Baria* r. *Barbaria*,  
p. 325. l. 43. for 712. l. 912. p. 327. l. 19. for *again* r. *against*, p. 333. l. 19. del. for *tho*  
mannage l. 29. d. 10 p. 336. l. 26. for *other* r. next, p. 339. l. 35. put a Comma after *man*,  
and l. 34. for *Odo* r. *Odulo*, p. 340. l. 10. for *declared* r. *declaring* and del. and p. 342.  
l. 40. after *same* r. time, p. 348. l. 40. r. 4, before *wicked*, p. 354. l. 10. for *and* r. *unto*,  
p. 364. l. 121. for *Lawent* r. *Lawent*, p. 365. l. 6. for *which* r. *where*, p. 367. l. 12. for 1234. r. 1234. p.  
554. l. 23. for *Holpals* r. *Holpallers*, p. 383. l. 8. for *Contempror* r. *Contemner*, l.  
16. for *bring* r. *bringing*, l. 25. and 26. r. He took *Cepha* and *Theodofia*, but lost his labour  
about *Rhodes*, p. 391. l. 4. del. and lost the battel, p. 397. l. 15. for *her* r. the, l. 36. after  
he lost r. the Kingdom, p. 401. l. 22. for *Walcoines* r. *Valcoines*, l. 46. for *he* r. *Francis*  
and l. ult. for *Concordatum* r. an Agreement, p. 420. l. 14. for *again* r. *against*, p. 416.  
l. 46. for *Mouni* r. *Mouni*, p. 417. l. 15. and 16. r. received the Kingdom of  
*Hungary*, p. 418. l. 8. after *waited* r. with l. 9. after *which* r. is, p. 466. l. 9. after *in* fold-  
ing r. in, p. 467. l. 23. before *promised* r. the *Scots*, p. 475. l. 9. for *yea* r. year, p. 478.  
l. 1. del. who, p. 485. l. 7. put a Colon at *Scots*, p. 494. l. 45. before *requiring* r. they,  
p. 504. l. 13. for *labour* r. *laboured*, p. 509. l. 44. to them add *elves*, p. 527. l. 10. after  
*England* r. was a companion, p. 534. l. 29. for *is* r. was, p. 549. l. 44. for *their* r. there,  
p. 596. l. 7. & 8. for *Bremerswuden* r. *Bremen*, p. 603. l. 1. for *it* r. in.

Courteous Reader, where thou meetest unusuall names of places Correct them thus; for *Suevi* r. *Swedes*, for *Mediolanum* r. *Millain*, for *Tarratan* r. *Arragon*, for *Neapolis* r. *Naples*, for *Andegavia* r. *Anjou*, for *Northmannia* r. *Normandy*, for *Lotharingia* r. *Lorraine*, for *Lusitania* r. *Portugal*, and such like.

Books worth buying, newly printed,  
and to be sold by the Book-sellers  
of London.

**T**he History of the Wonders of Nature, treating Philosophically and Physically of the Heavens, Elements, Meteors, Minerals, Beasts, Fish, Fowl, Plants, and of Man. Folio.

The History of Magick, written in French, by G. Naudeus, now Englished. A most excellent Piece in, defence of all the wise men mentioned in the Holy Scripture, and other Authors. Octavo.

The Life of Pierreskius, written by P. Gassendus, being the sum of his great Attainments in Learning, Philosophy, Chymistry, Policy, and Antiquity; the like not to be read in any Author. Octavo.

The History of the Constancy of Nature, proving, That the World, nor any thing therein, doth not decline or grow worse. Octavo.

The Potentians Evidence, a most Learned Work, proving, That in the 16. several Centuries since Christ, there hath been Eminent and Learned Men that have professed the Faith of the Church of England. Folio.

Also, A Theological Concordance of the Holy Scriptures, of small price, and performing as much as many large Volumes, very useful for all that desire to attain to knowledge. Octavo.

Renodeus his Dispensatory, being the sum of all Physical and Chirurgical operations. Folio.

The Vale-Royal of England, being an Historical and Geographical Description of the County of Chester. Folio.

The Refinement of Zion; Or, The old Orthodox Religion justified and defended. Quarto.

Lemnius, Of the secrets of Nature in general, but more especially upon Generation, and the parts thereof; very necessary for all that study Physick, and search into the hidden things of Nature. Folio.

Olaus Magnus, Bishop of Upsal. his History of the Northern Nations. Fol.

A new Treatise, proving a Multiplicity of Worlds, That the Planets are Regions inhabited, and the Earth a Star. 12o.

An History of Apparitions, Oracles, Prophecies, Dreams, Visions and Revelations, &c. Folio.

There is now published An Excellent TREATISE of PHYSICK  
by Mr. John Tanner. Octavo.

THE

Chap. 1.



Anno 730.  
J. P. anno  
2386.

# THE HISTORY OF THE VVORLD. OR, AN Account of Time.

The First Book.

**C**ontaining the years from the beginning of the World, or from the year of the Julian Period 730, unto the third of Solomon, which is the 3702 year of the same Period.

CHAP. I.

What things have first come to passe worthy of remembrance from the Creation of the World, unto the Deluge; wherein first is treated of the six dayes Works, and of the year of Noah's Flood.

**I**F Divine Authority could not perswade us, that God did create the World, yet its contemplation would sufficiently teach us the same: Although that great Artificer could in a moment of

B

time

Anno 730.  
J. P. unto  
2386.  
Gen. 1.

time create it whole and compleat in all its parts, yet was he rather willing to perfect it by little and little, in the space of six dayes.

Wherefore in the beginning of all things nothing did appear and exist besides the earth, and that huge immensity of waters that overpread the Earth: Then the waters were not so thick joyned together, as we see them now, but thin, and like unto a vapour, and the mist had filled up this whole vacuum or hollow place, which the vastness of the celestial bodies, and of the other Elements did fill upon the Earth. *Moses* declareth them partly by the denomination of waters, and partly of the deep; which he saith to have been encompassed by darknesse, when the light was not yet brought forth, and that the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. Out of the Water and Earth, as out of their matter, were afterwards all the other bodies formed, that are reckoned in the six dayes work. Now when *Moses* saith, That, *In the beginning God created the Heavens and the Earth*; it's a general sentence that comprehends all that which was done in those six dayes, which afterwards is expounded throughout all its parts.

On the first day God created the Light, which the Water or that thin and immense Region of vapours did receive, the Sun nor being yet produced; and that he might define and distinguish the spaces of the day and of the night, he encompassed this same Light with the motion and agitation of that misty body.

On the second day was the Firmament formed of God; by which appellation we believe are signified as well the celestial bodies, as the Ayre and Skye: that is, all that which appears from the Earth unto the extremities and farthestmost parts of the World, which is vulgarly believed to be hollow and empty: for the forming of all which, the deep, that is, that huge and infinite lump of waters subtilised and attenuated into a vapour, did afford the matter. Again, the Firmament hath that power given unto it to divide the waters above, from the waters below: not that it self whole should in its middle come betwixt them both, but onely in one of its parts, which being the nearest to the Earth, is called the lower Region of the Ayre; for as it is part of the Firmament that is of that outstretched voidnesse, so likewise it may be called Firmament or spreading: the higher-most waters are clouds, hanging in the midst of the ayre, out of which rain is engendred, the lowermost are the Seas and the Rivers, which had their beginning the day following.

On the third day he first gathered the waters into one place, yea even into so many places as there are Seas and Rivers, for having heaped the Mountains to an immensity, and made hollow channels, he made them receptacles and passages of waters: thence he commanded the earth to be clothed with the greenesse and verdure of the herbs and plants, and to bring forth Trees.

And

And God set the Sun, the Moon, and the Stars in the Firmament of the Heaven on the fourth day.

And on the fifth day God created the fishes and the fowls out of the water.

On the sixth day he at last formed Man out of the earth, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and man became a living soul, to whom he gave the name of *Adam*, from the Earth: Then did God transport this new man into those most pleasant and delightfull Gardens which he had planted, which by a right apprehension were in the Land of *Babylon*, or in the Confines of *Babylon* and *Mesopotamia*: for *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, which *Moses* mentioneth by name, have not their channels running in any other place. Now in this garden, amongst all other Trees, for the use and delight of Man, God did plant two remarkable Trees, the one of life, and the other of Knowledge of Good and Evil; the former hath gotten its name from the effect, because it had the vertue to lengthen health, and foment life, as *Augustine*, *Prosper*, and others do judge: the latter is so called from the event, because that as soon as they had tasted of its fruit, they understood into what a great evil they had fallen, having lost so great a good, as it seemeth to the same *Augustine*, and also to *Bar Ceph* in his Commentary of Paradise; or because the Serpent did promise from that Tree, the knowledge of good and evil, as *Rupertus* observes it, very discreetly: There the Lord formed that ribb which he had taken out of the side of *Adam* when he was asleep, into a woman, which he gave to him for his companion and help-meet: but she brought upon her self and him a more grievous ruine, then any cruel enemy; who, being inticed by her flatteries, did eat that fruit presented by her to him of the forbidden Tree; the guilt of which wickednesse procured upon him a sudden and present punishment, and a future upon his posterity: Therefore being cast out of that blessed Mansion, he with the companion of his fault is cast out into the miseries of this life. Then the first of men that were born of them, were *Cain* and *Abel*, of whom the first exercised his life in the tilling of the ground, and the other in the feeding of Cattel; who for his integrity and uprightness was best accepted of God; And for this cause *Cain* burning with wrath and envy, murdered his innocent brother; and in revenge of this his murder, being a fugitive and vagabond on the Earth, he begat children like to himself, namely rebels and enemies of God; and he built a City, and called it by the name of his son *Enoch*: But *Seib*, a while after *Abel's* death, being born to *Adam*, begat a posterity contrary to that, namely godly and religious; whose son *Enos* is said to have began to call upon the Name of the Lord; because, as the opinion is, he did publicly re-establish that Worship of God, which had been blotted out by *Cain's* children; and amongst the rest cameth that excellent and renowned *Enoch*, *Jared's* son: Whom God having loved for his innocency, he took up to himself alive from the eyes of men, having not yet fully ended

B 2

his

Anno 730.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 2386.

The Earthly  
Paradise.

August. 3. civ.  
c. 20.  
Prosper. 2. de  
vita cont. 18.  
August. 14.  
civ. c. 17.  
par. 1. c. 19.

Rup. 2. de  
Trin. c. 27.  
Gen. 4.  
Gen. 4. 14.  
Gen. 4. 26.  
Gen. 5. 22.

Gen. 6.

Anno 2387.  
Julian Period,  
unto 2752.

Noah's Ark.

Gen. 7. 1.

his dayes; whose posterity, whom the Scripture calls, The sons of God, being grown worse, and degenerated from their good manners, joynd themselves in marriage with *Cain's* posterity, out of which mixture and commerce were Gyants brought forth. Then mortal men addicting themselves to all sorts of wickednesse, did turn and draw Gods wrath upon themselves. When no cause of delay could be objected to him, all Vertue being extinguished and blotted out from amongst men: Then therefore God, angry and offended by *Adam's* posterity, decreed to destroy them all by an inundation of waters. There remained one onely of *Seth's* blood, who did persist in the faith and obedience of God: to him doth God reveal the certainty of his counsel a hundred and twenty years before-hand; and commands him to build an Ark for himself, in it to save few men and beasts. This Patriarch employed a whole hundred years in the building of it, which was three hundred cubits in length, in breadth fifty, and in height thirty, having the first, second, and third stories, in which he gave to every kind of living creatures their mansion; eight heads of men in all, of every clean beasts and fowls by seven, and of unclean by two, were shut up in this Ship, and so raised up and taken away by the waters of the deluge, all other things were destroyed by the overflowing and inundation of the waters over all the earth, which the continuall rain of fourty dayes, and the fountains of the great deep, being broken, had caused; so that the high Hills that were under the whole Heaven were covered by it, and the water prevailed fifteen cubits over them. And that was the year from the Creation of the World, 1656, and before Christs birth, 2329.

## CHAP. II.

What things are remembred both out of Sacred and profane Histories, that were done in that interval of time, which begun from the year of the Julian period 2387, unto 2752. Wherein is spoken of the building of Babel, of Abraham's original, and of his pilgrimage. Of the Kingdoms of the Assyrians, Egyptians, and Sicyonians.

Josephus 1.  
ant. c. 4.

**T**He Deluge being past, *Noah* being come forth out of the Ark, offered burnt-offerings unto the Lord in the Mountains of *Armenia*; where some ancient Authors have recorded, That the remnants and pieces of this Ark were reserved a very long time.

After this, *Noah* having applyed his mind to husbandry, planted a Vineyard, and having drunk somewhat largely of the Wine, whose virtue and strength he did not yet know, became drunk, and then fell into a sleep, whom undecently lying in his Tent, with his shame uncovered, *Ham* mocked, and shewed to his brethren; but they turning their backs and going backward, did cast a cloke upon it: But their father afterwards knowing the thing, having

curled

Anno 2387.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 2752.

curled *Ham's* posterity, did blesse *Seth's* and *Japhet's* children. Then Mankind being propagated by these three, did soon encrease so much, that one Countrey could not alone contain them any longer, and even the other parts of the World also were to be inhabited. Into which before they went to sojourn, and before they were separated asunder, they went about to build a high Tower in the Land of *Shinar*, whose top might reach unto Heaven; that might be to them a name, and a general Monument to all their posterity; for then the whole Earth was of one language, and of one speech, and God did confound it, for to frustrate their endeavours and Imaginations, distracting it into several other tongues; so the commerce and understanding of the voice being taken away from them, they then left and cast away their counsel and design of building; And what remained of this matter, is thought to have been for the beginning of *Babylon*; for that Tower began to be named *Babel*, from the mixture and confusion of tongues. And as these things are lesse judged to have been done at the beginning of this great Tower, which was a full Century of years after the Flood; so it's not convenient for us to enlarge our selves farther upon them. Now the first part of the next Century being past, then happened the diversity of Languages, and the propagation of People and Kingdoms.

From *Heber's* posterity, with whom the use of the first tongue, and the true Religion remained, had *Abraham* his pedigree, who was to be an excellent and great proof and example of godlinesse and obedience. His father was *Terah* of *Caldea*, out of which Countrey by Gods command, he being aged seventy years, went together with his father into *Mesopotamia*, and he dwelt in *Haran* about five years. There having left his Father, as he was commanded, he soon travelled into the Land of *Canaan*, with his Wife *Sarah*, and *Lot* his Nephew, it being then the 145 year of *Terah's* father, and his 75th year: Then in the dayes of his father he lived near sixty years in the Land of *Canaan*, which being expired, he in the 135th year of his age returned into *Mesopotamia*, and into his fathers house, whence, by the command of God, he returned again into *Canaan*: And thus are reconciled those things which are usually objected out of the History of *Moses*, and of the *Abis*.

After that *Noah's* posterity was dispersed throughout the whole face of the Earth, then began the diversity of Nations and Kingdoms, of whom the first beginnings are recorded in the Scriptures; the ancientest of which, was that of the *Assyrians* or *Chaldeans*: That began first in *Babylon*; thence in *Nineveh*, and thence was transported into *Assyria*, and there remained, near a thousand and three hundred years. For those things which *Eusebius* relates out of *Africanus*, concerning ancienter Kingdoms of the *Arabians* and *Chaldeans*, are more like unto a fable, then to a real truth.

*Belus* is put the first in the list of the Kings of the Kingdome of *Assyria*, who reigned in *Babylon*; and by profane Authors is thought

The Assyrians  
Kingdom.

*Belus*, or rather  
their *Nimrod*.  
to

Anno 2387.  
Jul. Period;  
unto 2752.

to be the builder of it, whence he seemeth to be he, who in the Divine Records is called *Nimrod*; to him, having reigned 65 years, succeeded *Ninus*, of whom was built *Nineveh*, and thither was the Throne of the Kingdom transported, which afterwards received its name from the *Assyrians*. Beyond him the prophane Histories do not mention any one; And he is said the first to have waged Wars against other Nations, out of the lust and desire he had to enlarge and extend his Empire, having brought *Asia* into his own subjection, he at length overcame the *Babrians*, and their King *Zorastres*: Thence having taken *Semiramis* for his Wife, and by her having begotten his son *Ninia*, he dyeth fifty two years after he had began his reign.

Diod. 2.  
Jult. 2.

Diod. 2.  
Jult. 1.  
Euseb. Chro.

Herodot. 2.

*Semiramis* having put out of the Kingdom this young son, she taketh by art and cunning the Kingdom to her self, the which she obtained fourty two years. The Greek Chronicles do assert, That *Babylon* was built by her, but it may rather be said, that *Babylon* was amplified and enlarged by her, and environed by a most admirable wall, whose circuit was of four hundred and eighty furlongs; and the said Annals record farther, That she entred into *Asia*, *Media*, *Persia*, *Egypt*, *Libya*, and *Ethiopia*, and subdued them, and that she after that entred with her Army into *India*, and spoyle and ruined it. At length this lascivious woman provoking her son to incest, is by him killed in the 42. year of her reign; and in the 24th year of *Semiramis* reign was *Abraham* born, and not as *Eusebius* falsely hath perswaded himself.

*Ninus* having killed his Mother, with much sloath and idleness held that Kingdom, which had been exceedingly amplified and enlarged by his Ancestors, and governing all things by Governors and Deputies, and seldom appearing; he passed the rest of his life in the company of Harlots, and was set in the list of the effeminate; which life the Kings that followed him embracing, were scarcely known to posterity by their name, or remarkable in any thing, being reckoned in *Eusebius's* Chronicles three hundred and three; *Africanus* numbeth four more in their rank, and lengtheneth that intervall of the whole Empire more then reasonably he should; which (as I have already demonstrated) is limited in 1300 years.

B. 9. de doct.  
temp. 25.

The Egyptians  
fable.

In the same time that the Kingdom of the *Assyrians* had its beginning, there were also other Kingdoms established in other places; especially the Kingdoms of the *Egyptians*, and *Sicyonians*, but the licence of fables hath corrupted and perverted their beginning and original: The *Sicyonians* Kingdom was erected in *Sicyo* almost twelve years after that of the *Assyrians*, and 2164 years before Christs Nativity, and continued near upon a thousand years.

CHAP.

### CHAP. III.

Anno 2753.  
Jul. Period;  
unto 3183.

The summe of the Sacred History comprehended in that space of time which was from the year of the Julian Period 2753. unto the 3183. of the same. wherein is treated of the deeds of *Abraham*, *Isaac*, and *Jacob*, and of his Children; And also of *Job* at last.

**T**He various Pilgrimages and things acted, both by *Abraham*, and his Posterity; are contained in the space of these years. *Abraham*, the Famine being great almost in that very first year that he transported himself into *Canaan*, went into *Egypt*: Where God preserved his Wife *Sarah* from the lust of the King: Thence being returned again into *Canaan*, he is put away and separated from *Lot* his brothers Son, who had travelled with him out of *Mesopotamia*, and had long been his domestical companion. He desired and chose to dwell in the Countrey of *Sodom*, but *Abraham* dwelt in *Hebron* in the plain of *Mamre*.

Abraham's  
deeds.  
Gen. 12. 10.

Gen. 13.

Gen. 14.

Thence followed that War in which those five Kings, of the number of whom the Kings of *Sodom* and *Gomorrab* were; being overcome, and their Cities destroyed by *Chedorlaomer* and the three other Kings. His Confederates *Lot* with his family and all his goods, was part of the prey; but *Abraham* having heard of it surprised on a sudden the Conquerours, and they smitten and put to flight, in an unexpected and quiet night, he recovered all things safe, together with *Lot* his Kinsman. And *Melchisedeck* King of *Salem*, as he was returning from the defeat of the Kings; brought him gifts, and an oblation of Mystical Bread and Wine, and this *Salem* is *Jerusalem*, and to him *Abraham* reciprocally gave the tenth part of all the spoil.

Gen. 16. 3.

Gen. 16. 16.

Gen. 17. 1.

Gen. 18. & 19.

Ten years after that, *Abraham* had began to dwell in *Canaan*. *Sarah* seeing her self barren, suffered, and gave her handmaid *Agar* to her Husband; She being with child, and despising her Mistress, being hard dealt by with her, flyeth into the Wilderness, but being returned home by the Angels command, brought forth *Ismael* to *Abraham* then aged 86. years.

This Patriarch in the 99th year of his age, by that Covenant that he had made with God, was Circumcised with all his family, and *Ismael* his Son, then aged between thirteen and fourteen years.

This same year was fatal to *Sodom*, *Gomorrab*, *Admah*, and *Zebaim*; which Cities for their abominable wickedness, and by reason of their unreasonable lust, the fire from Heaven being kindled and fomented with Pitch and Brimstone consumed them. Out of which burning *Lot* being delivered and snatched by the Angels, having lost his wife, which contrary to the forbidding command looking back, was Metamorphosed into an Image of Salt, he first escaped into the City *Zegor* or *Zoar*, which by his prayers he delivered from that imminent danger and destruction, thence

The burning  
of Sodom.

Gen. 17. 17.

Anno 2753.  
Julian Period,  
unto 3183.

Gen. 21. 5.

Gen. 23. 1.  
Joseph. 1.  
Orig. c. 14.

Gen. 24.  
Gen. 25. 20.

Gen. 25. 26.

Gen. 25. 7.  
Gen. 26. 8c.

Gen. 29.

Gen. 30.

(c) A.C. 1780.

(b) Alexand.  
P. 1. and.  
Euseb. p. 2.  
pag. 227.

thence he retired himself into the next mountain; where, in the night, and through drunkenness, he defiled his daughters with incest: thence were begotten *Moab* and *Ammon*, from whom did also two people defend and propagate.

*Abraham* in the hundredth year of his age begat *Isaac* of *Sarah* his Wife, then ninety years old, it being 1936. years before *Christ's* birth: and some few years after, he by her warning, as well as by Gods command; turned *Azar* out of dores, together with *Ishmael* her Son. *Isaac* having now attained unto mans estate, that is (as *Josephus* thinketh) the 25th year of his age, stands ready to be offered up for a sacrifice by his father, in the Mountain of *Moriab*, being soon delivered again by the command of God that had commanded him to be offered up. After his mothers death, which died the 127th year of her age: he married to wife *Rebecca*, the daughter of *Bethuel*, Son of *Nabor*, *Abrahams* brother. And then was *Isaac* in the fourtieth year of his age. *Abraham* having taken *Kethura* for his second Wife, got six sons by her, *Isaac* aged sixty years, having by his prayers turned away his Wives barrenness, he begat of her twins, *Esau* and *Jacob* in the year before *Christ* 1876. Then dyeth *Abraham*, in the 175. year of his age, and before *Christ's* birth 1862.

Then *Isaac* being exercised by divers travels and troubles, his Son being grown to the age of 77. years, he himself being 137. years old (as it is deduced from *Joseph's* age when he went into *Egypt*, and from *Jacobs* abode with *Laban*) desirous to bless his Son *Esau*, he first commands him to get him some Venison; but *Jacob* by his Mothers advice surreptitiously beguils him. After which, fearfull of his brothers revenge, he flies into *Mesopotamia*, to his Uncle *Labans*. In which Journey he is incouraged by divers promises from God, appearing to him in a Vision, as he slept on the top of a ladder. But when he had served *Laban* seven years in the nature of a Shepheard; he was not permitted to have *Rachel*, for whom he had bargained, before he married her elder sister *Leah*, which was effected by guile, in the 84. year of his age, in the 29 21. year of the first Period. From these and their two handmaids, *Bala* and *Zelpha*, had *Jacob* twelve Sons; of *Lea* seven; *Ruben*, *Simeon*, *Levi*, *Judah*, *Issachar*, *Zabulon*, and one daughter called *Dina*. Of *Rachel*, two; *Joseph*, and *Benjamin*. Of *Bala*, two; *Dan*, and *Nephthali*. Of *Zelpha*, two; *Gad*, *Aser*. Twelve Sons and one daughter; After twenty years spent with *Laban*, *Jacob* returns to *Canaan*, (a) about the 97. year of his age. Where he pitched his Tent in divers places, but especially at  *Succoth*, and at *Salem*, a Town of the *Sichemites*. Where after ten years that he came from *Mesopotamia*, his Daughter *Dina* is ravishd by *Sichem*, the Son of *Hemor* the King. Which two of her Brothers, *Simeon* and *Levi* revenged, by the death of the *Sichemites*, and spoiling of their City; From thence *Jacob* departs for *Bethlem*, having received the name of *Israel*. Which the Angel with whom he wrangled at his return from *Mesopotamia* to his fathers;

gave

gave him as (c) a token of his strength. (d) *Rachel* dieth in child-birth of *Benjamin*, when *Joseph* was between (e) sixteen and seventeen years old. Who a while after through the envy of his brothers being drawn away and carried into *Egypt*, was bought by *Potapher* one of *Pharaoh's* chief officers. With whom after he had been a while, being by his wife often, in vain, allured to commit fornication, by means of her false accusation suffered a three years imprisonment, as the reward of his innocency; from whence being seicht to interpret the Kings dream, when as he had presaged the ensuing plenty of seven years, as also the imminent scarcity of seven other, he was placed as governour over all *Egypt*. Thither went *Jacob* by the importunity of his Son (f) with all his Family and goods, being in the third year of the Famine, before the coming of *Christ* 1747 years, himself being (g) 130. years old, and in the fourtieth year of his Son *Joseph's* age. *Jacob* lived in *Egypt* 17. years compleat. Where dying, his body by his own direction, was carried into *Palestine*, where he was buried in the Sepulchre of his Parents.

(a) *Joseph* having compleated 110 years, dyes in the year of the World 2308. being about 71. years after *Jacobs* Journey into *Egypt*. The Generation of *Israel* now every day increasing. (b) the King of *Egypt*, whether of envy or fear, to obstruct their growth, Commands all their Males to be killed and thrown into the River as they were born; (c) so that *Moses* exposed to drowning, was by the Kings daughter taken up, and fostered in the Court as her own. He was *Amram* Son, *Caathus* Grand-son, *Levi* being his great Grandfather, *Maria* was his sister, and *Aaron* his younger brother. Being of the age of (d) forty years, going to see his Countreymen, he slew an *Egyptian* whom he found smiting an *Hebrew*, which comming to the Kings ear, he for fear flew into *Midian*, where he married *Sephora* *Jethro's* daughter, the Priest. (e) In the 80. year of his age, feeding his sheep in *Oreb*, which is also called *Sinai*, being incouraged by a divine voice from out a burning bush, he returns into *Egypt*.

At that time it is very probable that *Job* that admirable pattern of patience and fortitude was in being, (f) whom, as most of the Ancient writers suppose, was descended from *Esau*. Him from probable grounds we conjecture to be much about this time. He was born of *Zara*, being Grand-child to *Esau*, the 232. year before the children of *Israels* journeying out of *Egypt*; Before *Christ* 1763. He in the 50. year of his age was permitted to suffer various afflictions from the Devil in one year: After which having elapsed, he lived 139 years, and died in the 189th year of his age, (a) 45. years before the Children of *Israel* went out of *Egypt*.

Anno 2752.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3183.

(c) Gen. 23. 28.  
(d) Gen. 35. 19.  
(e) Gen. 37. a.  
8c.

(f) Gen. 47.

(g) Gen. 47. 9.

(a) Gen. 50. 25.

(b) Exod. 1.

(c) Exod. 2.

(d) Acts 7. 30.

(e) Exod. 3. 4.

(f) Euseb. 1.  
de Dem. c. 4.  
Eph. Chry.  
c. 1. Hom. 2. de  
Job.

Ang. 18. civ.  
c. 47.

(a) A.C. 1575.



## CHAP. IV.

Of the Kingdom of the Grecians, Inachus his Posterity, and Ogyges his deluge; of Prometheus, and the Kingdom of the Athenians.

IN the sixth year after Abrahams death; 1857. years before Christ, the new Empire of Greece was established in *Peloponnesus*; *Inachus* being the Author of it. Whom most of the Ancients make equal to *Moses*. But *Eusebius* affirms that he was long before his time. We limit the beginning of his Kingdom from 327. years before the Children of *Israel* went out of *Egypt*. After *Inachus*, Greece continued its Empire 546. years under 13. Kings. Of whom the nine first, even to *Gelanore*, were called *Inachads*, as descending in a direct line from *Inachus*. *Gelanore* being expelled of the *Grecians*, by their general consent, *Danaus* is invested with the Empire, having been a Sojourner in *Egypt*. He derived his Originall from *Inachus*. For *Epaphus*, *Belus* his son, whom *Io* the daughter of *Inachus* bore to *Jupiter*, was reported to be his great Grand-father. Between *Danaus* and *Acrisus* were four others posselt of the Empire, who after that by his imprudence, he was slain of *Perseus* his Grand-child, *Micennus* interposeth in the Kingdom. The last of whose blood, was *Erysibew*. He being slain by the *Heracles*, the *Pelopides*, in number six, enjoyed his estate, the last Kings of whom, were *Tisamenus*, and *Pentibius*, *Orestes* Son. The *Myceni* reigned 210. years. In the whole from *Inachus*, 756. years, to the 80. year after the destruction of *Troy*. All which, though here glanc'd at, will afterwards be set down in their direct intervals. These happened for the most part, in that intervall which terminates the Children of *Israels* progresse out of *Egypt*.

*Phoroneus*, Son of (a) *Inachus* and *Melissa Oceanina*, Instituted laws to govern them, who hitherto were (b) rude, and lived dispers'd, and, if we may credit (c) *Apollodorus*, had *Peloponnesus* under his Government.

(d) His Son was *Apis*, from whom *Apia* derives its name, which afterwards was called *Peloponnesus*, who being hated for his tyranny, was treacherously slain of *Thelxion* and *Thelchibines*, leaving no issue behind him. After his death he was consecrated with divine (e) honours in *Egypt*, and also (f) *Inachus* his daughter, they report, was there canonized, (g) and named *Isis*. But *Pausanias* attributes it to *Jesús* Son to *Triopas*, which seems more probable.

Under the same *Phoroneus* reigned *Ogyges* in *Attica*, in whose time hapned that great inundation which was called by his name.

(h) This is reported by *Acusilaus* to precede the first *Olympiade* 1020. years. By which computation it was before Christ 1796.

being

Argivorum  
regnum init.

Castor apud  
Euseb.

(a) Apol. 2.  
Jseb.  
(b) Paus. cor.  
52.

(c) Inir. 1.2.  
(d) Apol. 2.

(e) Euseb. 8.  
ug. 18. civ.  
6.  
(f) Herod. 1.  
(g) Euseb.

(h) Excerpta  
Scal. Græca  
p. 363.

## Chap. 5. An Account of Time.

being in the fifth year after the death of *Isaac*, (i) Although some would have it to be about twenty two years before.

In the reign of *Apis* was built *Sparta*, saith *Eusebius*.

(a) In the time of *Triopas* the seventh King of Greece, *Cecrops* also governing in *Attica*, were *Prometheus* the Son of *Lapetus*, and *Atlas* his brother, two famous *Astrologers*, made much more famous by the fictions of the Poets. This was about the time of the *Hebrews* departure out of *Egypt*. *Triopas* truly began his (b) reign in the 1557. year before Christ, and the 23. before the progresse of the people of God. In a short time after, *Cecrops* began to reign over *Athens*, which, saith *Eusebius*, was 1558. years before Christ.

A. no 3184.  
Jul. P. r. 04.  
anno 3701.

(i) Vide 5.  
1.2. par. 2.  
(a) Tacitus.

(b) Vid. loc.  
cit. par. 2.

## CHAP. V.

Of those remarkable passages which happened to the people of *Israel* the first forty six years after their departure out of *Egypt*.

*Moses* in the 80. year of his age, (d) went according to command, to deliver the children of *Israel* from the Egyptian bondage. (e) And having in vain sued to *Pharaoh* for their diminution, He by many prodigious calamities to terrified the *Egyptians*, that when (f) last of all, the first born of all *Egypt* were by (g) an Angel slain in the night, they thereupon suffered them to depart. Which before they did, they solemnly dedicated the Feast of the Passover, which day was from thence forth for ever Instituted to be observed in memoriall of their deliverance. (h) That appears to be the second night in *April*. (i) There were numbered of the children of *Israel*, of able Sword-men onely, six hundred thousand. (j) Immediately after, *Pharaoh* pursues them in their departure. But *Moses* broke a way thorow the red Sea for them to passe; whom when by the same the *Egyptians* pursued, *Moses* smiting with his rod, even as it parted, so it closed again, and overwhelmed their trembling enemies. So the *Israelites* passing over to the *Arabian* shore, in the third Moneth, which is (k) *Siman*, received the Law made by God, by which (l) both sacred and prophane Laws were instituted.

After many journeyes ended, in the beginning of the next (m) year after their coming out of *Egypt*, about the eighth day of *April*, *Moses* erected a Tabernacle; and made *Aaron* a High Priest, his Sons being Priests under him. But the ungratetull people notwithstanding so many benefits received, as continually *Manna* rained down from Heaven to feed them, (n) with Quails also sent down amongst them, disrellishing these dainties; desisted not yet to murmur against God, and at *Moses*. (o) Afterwards *Moses* sent ten men to search the Land of *Canaan*. Who returning after forty dayes, did so possesse the minds of the people with terror; notwithstanding *Joshua* and *Caleb*s indeavours to the

(d) Ant. Chri.  
1531.

(e) Ex. 5. 6. 24.

(f) Exod. 12.

(g) Exod. 12.

(h) Lib. 9. de  
doct. urop.  
c. 24.

(i) Ex. 12. 52.

(j) Exod. 14.

(k) Ex. 19. 1.

(l) Ex. 19. 1.

(m) Ex. ult. 12.

(n) Numb. 11.

(o) Numb. 13.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3703.

- the Contrary, who themselves also went to view the Land, that they were ready to rebell, (a) for this they were denied an admittance into the land of *Canaan*, and led back again by the desarts of *Arabia*, till after all the Rebels being consumed, and dead, two onely remaining of the whole multitude, *Joshua* and *Caleb*, who had persevered in Faith. Wherefore about thirty nine year they wandered up and down in that Desert like Pilgrims; in which they suffered the severe punishment of their obstinate rebellion against God and *Moses*. (b) First of all *Core*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the Authors of a wicked revolt, were with their families swallowed up by the earth, and 250. of their faction burning Incense, were by fire from Heaven devoured. 14700. more being immediately devoured by the same fire, were made exemplary to the rest. Many more also, for their daily provoking of *Moses*, were slain with the biting of fiery Serpents. Which evil to prevent from spreading too far; *Moses* (c) erected a Brazen Serpent. These things hapned in the fortieth year of their coming out of *Egypt*. In which *Aaron* the (d) High Priest dying, his Son *Eleazer* supplid his room. After this *Sion* King of the *Ammorites*, and *Og* the King of *Bashan* being overcome, *Balaak* King of the *Moabites*, joyning with him the *Midianites*, opposed the *Hebrews*, not so much by open war, as by subtil craft, bringing along with him *Balaam* the Soothsayer to curse them. But his curses being by divine providence turned into a blessing. The King of *Israel* by *Balaam's* advice, thought to have insnared them by the beauty of their Women whom they proffered to them, (a) at which time *Phineas* the Son of *Eleazer*, out of his great zeal of piety to God, finding one of the chief of the people in company with a Harlot, ran them both thorow in the sight of all the Congregation, by which means he not onely gained to himself the perpetuall honour of his Priesthood, but pardon to the people for that great sin.
- (b) In the fourtieth year of their departure out of *Egypt* at the latter end of the eleventh Month, *Moses* dyeth in Mount *Nebo*, which riseth from the plains of *Moab*, in (c) the 120. year of his age. He was succeeded by *Joshua* the Son of *Nun*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, who led the people into *Canaan* over *Jordan*, the River being dried up; the (d) tenth day of the first Month, which is *Nisan*, which is about the sixth day of *Aprill*. After which besieging divers Cities, he destroyed them and their Inhabitants by fire and Sword, (e) beginning with *Jericho*, the walls of which City after seven dayes surrounding with the Ark, by blowing of horns, and the shout of the Souldiers, he level'd with the ground. He put to flight (f) five Kings of *Gibeon*, which was surrendred up to the *Hebrews*, in pursuit of whom, and to their utter ruine, that he might have the more space, he commanded the Sun and Moon to stand still a whole day. After all this, in the last place having overcome (g) thirty one Kings, and in fix years space overcome the greatest part of *Palestine*; He divided it amongst the *Hebrews* by their Tribes about the year before Christ, 1486. Chap.
- (b) Numb. 16.  
(c) Numb. 22.  
(d) Numb. 20.  
(e) Numb. 25.  
(b) Deut. 34.  
(c) Ant. Chr. 491.  
(d) Josh. 4.  
(e) Josh. 6.  
(f) Josh. 10.  
(g) Josh. 12.

## CHAP. VI.

The remainder of the sacred History to the building of the Temple, wherein both what was done by the Judges, as by Saul, David, and Solomon are contained.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3703.

*Joshua* (a) departing out of his life the 14th year after *Moses* his decease in the 110th year of his age; The Elders then governed the Common-wealth about 10 years; after which others succeeded them both in order and time. To speak more fully of each particular action of them, and their deputies, brevity doth here forbid. Wherefore some few of them shall here suffice. (b) After the death of *Joshua*, the Tribe of *Judah* overcame *Adonibezec* King of the *Canaanites* in battel, whom apprehending in his flight, they cut off his thumbs and his toes, the same punishment being reserved for him, which he before had inflicted upon seventy other Kings. Other Cities this Tribe overcame, taking some, and making the others their Tributaries; not without offending God, by whom all conditions with that Nation were forbidden to them.

The History of *Micha* and the Tribe of *Dan*, which is comprehended in the 18 Chapter of *Judges*, appears to have come to passe under those Elders which succeeded *Joshua*, as also *Jonathan*, grandchild of *Moses*, and his sons that were chosen for Priests to the Tribe of *Dan*, are in the same place spoken of.

At that same time arose that Civil War occasioned by a rape committed by the *Gibeonites* of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, upon the Wife of a Levite; which offence the other Tribes most sharply revenged. The *Benjamites* which stood up for the defence of their fellows, being in the third Battel almost all slain, who had been conquerors in the two former. This happened about the same time which I spoke of, (a) that *Phineas Eleazer's* son, *Aarons* grand-

(a) Josh. 18.  
21.

son, officiated in the Priesthood. Those Elders being now extinct, who although by their Authority they had kept the people in Order, they forsaking now their own Religion, (b) and being forsaken of God, were by *Chus*, the King of the *Moabites*, oppressed with 8. years bondage. That by their adversity they might be brought to remember God, whom in their prosperity they had forgotten. But upon their repentance God rais'd up *Othoniel* to revenge their quarrel, and for their deliverance, being in the year before Christ, 1459, who vanquishing *Chus*, for forty years procured them their liberty. But after his death revolting to the same wickedness, they were also punished with the like servitude, which they suffered 18 years under *Eglon* King of the *Moabites*, till the 3313 year of the Julian Period. *Eglon* being slain, *Ehud* for his virtue was preferred to be Judge, who governed for a long time, (to wit) 80 years.

In

(b) Judg. 3.

Anno 3184.  
J. P. unto  
3701.

(c) Judg. 4.  
5.

In the year before Christ, 1301, (c) *Israel* subdued by *Jabin* King of *Canan*, were for 20 years by him oppressed; after which being again reconcil'd to God, they shake off their yoke. The Instruments of their victory and delivery were two Women; *Deborah* the Prophetess, who encouraged and stirr'd up *Barack* of *Nephtali* to undertake the War. And *Jael*, who receiving *Sisera* flying from his Army into her tent, slew him, by driving a nail through his temples as he slept.

(a) Judg. 6.  
7.

(a) *Deborah* being dead, the Hebrews relapse into their pristine wickedness and Idolatry, for which they are delivered into the hands of the *Midianites* in bondage, which when they had undergone 7 years in the year of the World, 2730. they are restored to their liberty by *Gideon*, (b) who by Gods appointment chose out 300 men, whom he furnished with trumpets and earthen pitchers, which when he brought forth to the battel, breaking their pitchers, wherein their lamps were included, and at the same time sounding their trumpets, their Enemies were so terrified, that they ran one upon another to their mutual destruction.

(c) Judg. 9.

*Gideon* after 40 years (c) dying, *Abimelech* his son tyrannously usurps his succession, assisted by the means of the *Sichemites*, who confirming the Kingdom by murder, which he had gained by guile, most barbarously slew his 70 brothers; having finish'd his third year by great impotence and cruelty. After he took the City of *Thebes*, and besieg'd the Tower, unadvisedly going under the wall, smitten in the head with a stone thrown down by a woman, offered himself to be slain of his Armour-bearer.

(d) Judg. 11.

(d) Some Judges escaping us who did nothing worthy of memory. *Jephtha* of great esteem, though of obscure birth, (being the son of a Harlot) was a valiant and active man: Whom the *Israelites* that inhabited at *Gilead*, being oppress'd by the *Ammonites*, chose to be their Captain, wandering up and down with a company of Robbers. He being about to encounter his enemies, made a Vow to offer in sacrifice to God, whatsoever first met him at his return home. In pursuance of which vow, he sacrificeth his daughter, who was the first that came to meet him. This happened in the year before Christ, 1166, about 18 years after the destruction of *Troy*, being ten years more after *Agamemnon* likewise slew his daughter: unless this Fable be feign'd in allusion to that true history.

(a) Judg. 14.  
&c.

(b) Judg. 14.

(c) Ibidem.

(a) In the year before Christ, 1135, began *Samson* to officiate as Judge, a man of most heroick valour, appointed by God to suppress the Tyranny of the *Philistines*; (b) He was born of a woman that was barren, being consecrated by God from his mothers womb to be unshorn, after the manner of the (c) *Nazarites*, by which means he was indued with such strength, That meeting with a Lion, he tore him even as a kid. He married his Wife from amongst the *Philistines*, which in his absence, joyned her self to another: being highly incensed with the Injury, he determined in

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 3701.  
(d) Judg. 15.

in a hostile manner to oppose himself against them. (a) And first of all, taking 300 Foxes, to whose tails he fastned fire-brands, which letting go amongst their standing corn, immediately consumed it. After this being by the *Philistines* demanded, to inflict punishment upon him, and delivered up to them by the *Hebrews*, whom they had then under their subjection, He immediately breaking his bands, and snatching up what was next him, which was the Jaw-bone of an Ass, he therewith slew 1000 of his enemies. But (c) all *Gaza's* City gates being shut upon him, and he there intercepted, pull'd up the gates with the posts thereof, which together he carried away upon his shoulders to the top of the next hill. After this and the like examples of his unparallel'd strength, being deceived by the allurements of a woman, and by her betrayed to the *Philistines*, by whom he was blinded, and exposed to be the subject of their sport; He taking the pillars in both his arms, which were the supporters of that house wherein the Nobles being assembled together to feast themselves, and to behold him, were buried together with him in the Ruines of the same, in the 20th year after he began to be Judge.

(c) Judg. 16.

*Samson* being dead, in the year before Christ, 1115, (a) *Eli* the high Priest under the title of Judge, governed the people 20 years; for the former 20 he assisted *Samson*. Both of them governing the Common-wealth. In the second year of *Samson* before Christ, 1134, *Samuel* (it appears) was born. His father was *Elkana*, of the posterity of *Cath*, of the tribe of *Levi*, as the (b) Scripture demonstrates: Whom having by prayer obtained from God, his Mother *Anna*, a pious woman, devoted him to the Ministry of the Temple. By him *Eli* in vain admonish'd to restrain the lust of his sons, injurious to their holy office, was of God severely reveng'd. (c) The *Hebrews* being overcome by the mighty Army of the *Philistines*, the Ark also by them taken, which they had plac'd in their Camp as their chief safeguard; both the sons of the high Priest slain, Their father at the news falling backward from his Seat, broke his neck.

(a) 1 Reg. c. 1.  
&c.

(b) 1 Paral.  
c. 6.

(c) 1 Reg. 4.

(d) Afterwards *Samuel* about the 40 year of his age, takes upon him the charge of the people. To whom with *Saul* the book of the (e) *Acts* ascribes 40 years; twelve of which to *Saul*, the rest we attribute to the Prophet onely, as we conjecture. No sooner *Samuel* came to the Government, but things soon changed for the better. (f) The Ark which for 7 months had been detained by the *Philistines*, which whithersoever they carried it, brought a pestilential ruine with it, being sent back again to the *Israelites*, continued 20 years at *Cariathiarim*. (a) After that time in the year of the World, 2909, the people solemnly convening it to *Mizpeh*, *Samuel* made a Covenant with the Lord. The token of Gods reconciliation to them, was a remarkable Victory obtained against the *Philistines*, whom the Prophet compell'd to contain themselves within

(d) Ant. Chr.  
1095.

(e) Act. 13.  
20.

(f) 1 Reg. 6.

(a) 1 Sam. 7.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 3721.

(b) Ant. Chr.  
1067.

(c) 1 Sam. 8.

(d) 1 Sam. 9.

(e) 1 Sam. 11.

(f) 1 Sam. 14.

(g) 1 Sam. 16.  
13.

(a) Ant. Chr.  
1057.

(b) 1 Sam. 31.

(c) Ant. Chr.  
1055.

(d) 2 Sam. 1.

(e) 2 Sam. 5.  
45.

(f) 2 Sam. 2.  
8.

(g) 2 Reg. 4.  
25.

(h) 2 Reg. 5.

(i) 1 Sam. 19.  
David's calamities.

within the limits of their own Country, dispoyleing them of the booty they had gain'd in their former battels.

(b) After this, the people rired out with too much liberty, (c) petitioning for a King, Saul (d) the son of Kis, of the Tribe of Benjamin, first by the appointment of God, and afterwards by the general suffrage of the people, was advanc'd to that dignity; (e) from him the Inhabitants of Jabel Gilead dissenting, he overcame Naash the King of the Ammonites, who had caus'd them to make a covenant with him, with conditions to thrust out their right eyes. From the Ammonites he converted his force against the Philistines, which then (f) kept the Hebrews under their subjection, whom by the bold attempt of his son Jonathan, being discomfited, he slew throughout their whole Camp, and that with so much eagerness, that he permitted not any upon pain of death to taste one bit of food; of which restraint Jonathan being ignorant, he with the end of his rod tasted a little honey, being innocently condemn'd of his furred father, he hardly escap'd, notwithstanding the impurity of the people. But he by degrees varying his manners, was discovered by God; and (g) David the son of Jesse, of the Tribe of Judah, was appointed to succeed him. Whom about the 22 year of his age, Samuel privately anointed, in the year before Christ, 1063.

Six years after, Samuel the Prophet dyes, (a) two years before Saul, as Clemens Alexandrinus relates in Strom. 1.

(b) Saul after 12 years fighting with the Philistines, (c) was, together with his son Jonathan slain, whose head being plac'd in the Temple of Dagon, his body they hung upon the Vails.

(d) David bewailing the death of them both, takes the Kingdom, ruling first over his own Tribe 7 years (e) and 6 months, when as he was anointed with great solemnity in the open Assembly at Hebron, in the 30th year of his age.

(f) In the mean time Ishbosheth son of Saul, ruled over the other Tribes; nor was the end of this, less then Civil Wars between both Competitors; the one claiming the Kingdom by right of Succession; the other vindicating his divine establishment, and both by arms: but humane at length gave place to divine might, in the 8th year (g) that he had succeeded his father, he was in his own house by a desperate attempt privately murdered, leaving the sole possession of the Kingdom to David.

(h) In the year before Christ, 1047, all the Tribes of Israel convening together, he was at last made King at Hebron, being a man of undaunted courage, and famous for his achievements; yet far more renowned for his piety. His first rudiments he had under King Saul, with whom much ingratiated for his behaviour, as also that memorable achievement in killing Goliath, and subduing the Philistines, he was admitted into affinity with the King, and (i) married his daughter Michol. But the ardent affection in a moment turn'd into the greatest envy and hatred; for being often

often sought after to have been slain, through desarts, rocks and caves obicuring himself, he disappointed the sedulity and earnest endeavours of his father-in-laws strict and diligent search of him. Nor would he once lay hands on him when he had him at his mercy. By such like examples of his patience and meekness, being seven years exercised; Saul (as before spoken) being dead, first of all over his own Tribe, and afterwards over the rest of the people, (Ishbosheth being dead) he without any Competitor obtained the Government.

Which no sooner gotten, but he took the Tower of Sion, and having (a) thence expell'd the Jebusites, he there constituted his Court.

But (b) in the year before Christ, 1045, he removed the Ark from the house of Aminadab, in the Town of Gibeab, which as it was a carrying to Sion, Huzzab unadvisedly touching, was struck dead. At which David affrighted, turns aside with it into the house of Obed-Edom the Gittite, and from thence after 3 moneths brings it to Sion in great pomp.

(c) About the year before Christ, 1039, which is computed to be the 17. from the death of Saul, happened the Adultery of David, and the murder of the Innocent Uriah in the Ammonitish War. In the following year, was (d) Solomon born of Bathsheba, which was now become his Wife. About the same time it was, that Amnon committed incest upon his sister (e) Tamar.

(f) Two years after Amnon was slain by Absolon, Tamar's own brother treacherously at a feast.

(g) Fourty years after Saul was made King, being the 27. from his death, was David expell'd from Jerusalem, and banisht from his kingdom by his son Absolon, who entering his Court, did most reproachfully defile his fathers Concubines. But a while after, being overcome and expos'd to flight, carried by his Mule under the thick boughes of a spreading Oak, he was there hang'd by the hair of his head; And that which he gloried in as his greatest Ornament, became the Instrument to hang him, as saith (a) Josephus in his Commentary, which is scarce credible; but more probable it is, that he hung by the Neck, when Joab one of the Captains of David's Army ran him thorow with three darts.

(b) David spending the rest of his life, and reign in peace and prosperity, and now become an old man, worn as it were out with his former labours. When he had established his son Solomon in his Throne, in the 40th year of reign, being 70 years old, dyed. Solomon was then about 23 years old, the beginning of whose reign was before Christ, 1015 years. (c) He suspecting his brother Adoniah, slew him. (d) He took to Wife Pharaoh's daughter king of Egypt. God appearing to him in a vision, and tendering him his choice of whatsoever he should desire, when as he prefer'd wisdom before riches and what ever else, he not onely obtained what he desired, wisdom; but, in addition to his wishes, those other things which he neglected.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 3701.

Rex fit Ju.  
dia.

(a) 2 Sam. 5.  
7.

(b) 2 Sam. 6.

(c) 2 Sam. 11.

(d) 2 Sam. 12.

(e) 2 Sam.

13.

(f) 2 Sam. 13.

23.

(g) 2 Sam. 15.

7.

(a) Lib. 7.

cap. 9.

(b) Lib. 5.

1 Reg. 2.

(c) 1 Reg. 2.

25.

(d) 1 Reg. 3.

12.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

## CHAP. VII.

Of the Originall of the Ancient Greeks which was comprised in that space of time, from the Israelites departure out of Ægypt, to the fourth year of Solomon. Of the threefold kind of the Græcians, Æolicks, Doricks, and Ionicks; which sprang from Hellen, Sonne to Deucalion.

THIS Intervall comprehends the Originall of the Ancientst Greeks: of which, however the truth be; it is so confounded with those many fictions of the Poets, that it is something dubious to judge of. Notwithstanding which, we shall endeavour from the probablest of ancient writers to digest it in some order of time. And seeing the Grecian affairs and those renowned people, are the subject and scope of the work, it will be here pertinent to speak of the Grecians themselves, and of the first derivation of that name and stock.

Their name and stock derived from Hellen the Son of Deucalion, is distinguished and divided into three kinds; Æolick, Dorick, and Ionick; the Authour of this progeny, as I said, was Deucalion, who is reported to have had his Kingdome and seat in Thesaly. In his age was the inundation of Greece, whose time from the probable opinions of divers, we conceive to be in the year before Christ, 1529. the third year after the Israelites progresse out of Ægypt, as we shall demonstrate in its convenient place.

The Sons of Deucalion and Pyrrha were two, Hellen, and Amphibryon. Amphibryon, expelling Cranaus, reigned in Athens. From Hellen the Greeks are called Æolicks. He begot three Sons of Orseus, Æolus, Dorus, and Xuthus. \* Æolus being the eldest, succeeded his Father, and obtained whatsoever lay between the Rivers Enipeus, and Asopus. So that besides Thesaly, he became master of Locris, and Beotia. To Dorus's lot, fell that Country which is under Parnassus. He built Boeus, Cytinius, Pindus, and Eriveneus. From him the Kingdome of Doris took its name. Xuthus the youngest Son, expelled by his brothers for robbing his Father of his treasure, took his flight into Attica, where he built Tetrapolis, and married Creusa, the daughter of Erechtheus.

Æolus begat seven Sons, and five daughters of Enares the daughter of Deimachus. His Sons were, Critheus, Sisyphus, Athamas, Salomoneus, Deion, Magnes, and Perieres; and his daughters, Canoeche, Alcyone, Pisidice, Calyce, and Perimide. Critheus of Tyro, his Brother Salomoneus's daughter, begat Æson, Amythaon, and Pheres. The Son of Æson was Jison, Amythaon, inhabited Pilos, in Peloponnesus, and begot Melampus and Biantes. Melampus for curing the daughters of Prætus of a Frenzy, had the Kingdome of Greece; together with his Brother Biantes delivered to him from Anaxagoras, the Son of Megapenthes; and of Iphianira, Prætus his daughter, he had Antiphas, Mantus, Bias, and Pronoes: the Sons of Antiphas were Oicles,

Ex. Apollod.  
lib. 1. Diod. 4.  
Strab. 8.  
Pausan. Consp.  
apud Phot.  
Cod. 186.

\* Conon. apud  
Phot. lib. 27.

Æolidarum  
fœles.

## Chap. 7. An Account of Time.

or as Pausanias calls him, Iocles, and Amphalx: but Oicles begat Amphiarus, father of Amphilachus, and Alceon.

Bias begat Talaus, father of Adrastus, and Parthenopaus, of Perona, and Eriphyle of Amphiarus, his Wife.

Pheres, begat Admetus, and Lyncurgus, from him sprang Opheltius, who was also called Archemorus. These were Critheus his Sons.

Sisyphus founded Corinth, and of Merops the daughter of Atlas he had Glaucus the father of Bellerophon.

Athamas being King of Beotia, by Nephele, had Phryxus and Hellen: Afterwards of Ino daughter of Cadmus, he had Sons Learchus and Melicertes.

Salmones first inhabited Thesaly, and after that, Elis; whose daughter Tyro, before she was married to her Uncle Critheus, brought forth to Neptune, Pelias, and Neleus. Who when they came to age, falling to variance amongst themselves, Neleus flies to Messana; and of Chloris, Amphion's daughter, had eleven Sons, who were all (except Nestor) slain by Hercules. And but one daughter named Pero.

Pelias governed in Thesaly, having two Children, Acastus, and his sister Alceste; Deion possessest Phocis, and besides other Sons, had Cephalus, whose Wife was Procris. Magnes, his Sons were Polydeces, and Diäys, Inhabitants of Seriphus. Periclis of Gorgopbone daughter to Perseus, begat Aphareus, Leucippus, Tyndareus, and Icarus.

Hitherto Apollodorus brings the progeny of the Æolids. But \* Diodorus Siculus, besides these, mentioneth another Son of Æolus, called Mimas, who wandring remote from his brothers, reigned in Æolis. his Son was Hippotes, who of Melanippe begat Æcolus, whose daughter was Arne, who being got with child of Neptune, and for that reason delivered in custody to a Metapontinean, by her Father, she at his house was brought to bed of Twins, Æolus named after his Grandfather, and Beotus, of whom Æolus inhabited those Islands, from him called Æoles; and Beotus, returns to his Grandfather, and ruled in Æolis, who built Arnes, naming the Inhabitants Beotians after his own name.

But Xuthus (for of Dorus progeny there is nothing memorable) Hellens youngest Son, expelled by his brothers, made his abode in Attica, where marrying the daughter of Erechtheus, King of Athens, he had Sons, Athens, and Ion. Athens against his will becoming guilty of murder, (as Conon upon Photius hath it) escapes to Peloponnesus, and in that Kingdome which he named Achaia, (but, before, Ægialea) he built Tetrapolis; After which, by the assistance and aid of the Athenians, and Ægialenses, going into Thesaly, he received his fathers possession.

Ion remained at Athens, and if we may credit Conon, Erechtheus being dead, obtained the same Kingdome; From him also were the Atticks called Iones. But this only that Authour asserts. Neither is Ion in-registred amongst the Kings of the Atticks. But

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

† Lib. 4. p. 187.  
Græc. edit.

Ionum stirps.

Iones called  
Atticks.

Pausanias

Anno 3184.  
Julian Period,  
unto 3701.

*Pausanias* saith, that after the death of *Erechtheus*, there arising a contention amongst his Sons about their succession, that *Xuthus* of *Achaia*, the father of *Ion*, was by them chosen as Umpire, who adjudging the Kingdome to *Cecrops*, as being the eldest, being constrained to obscure himself from the other brothers, he betook himself to *Aegialus*, which was then in *Achaia*, where he died. Of *Ion* the same *Pausanias* relates, that in *Achaia*, when he made his escape out of *Attica* to make war against *Selinunt*, was to him reconciled, by an agreement of marriage with *Helice*, *Selinunt's* only daughter, and afterwards succeeding his Father in Law, he named them *Iones*, which before were called *Aegialenses*. Afterwards there arising a war between the *Athenians* and the *Eleusinians*, by whom *Ion* being chosen Captain, coming out of *Achaia*, he finished his life in *Attica*. This *Pausanias* relates concerning the *Achaians* and the *Atticks*.

De Graecorum  
varii linguis.

It is now worth our labour to consider what distinction of Languages were used amongst the first *Grecians*, for the people were principally derived into three kinds, *Aelicks*, *Doricks*, and *Ionicks*, to which may be added *Atticks*; who could not consist without being joyned to the *Ionians*. *Strabo* saith of these four languages, or dialects of the *Greeks*, there were but two Originally. The other being corruptly formed from the commixture of the others. The two former are the *Doricks*, and the *Atticks*, whereof the former is the Ancient *Aelick*, and the other the *Ionick*. But that which was afterwards termed to be the *Aelick* and *Ionick*, through their commerce with divers Nations, varied its property according to their severall conditions; for the former remained incorrupted, because that they possessed quietly the Countrey of the *Doricks*, and *Atticks*, by reason of their roughness and barrenness, being little invaded by strangers and Forreigners.

The same Author adds, That all the People beyond *Isthmus* were in *Greece*, excepting the *Athenians*, *Megarenses*, and *Doricks*, the Inhabitants of *Parnassus*, and were called *Aelians* even to this time. But of ancient time the *Aelenses* inhabited between *Isthmus*, with whom the *Iones* coming out of *Attica*, and the *Doricks* from *Doris* were mingled. These also the *Heraclides* brought back into *Peloponnesus*: but why the *Doricks* are reported by *Strabo* to be brought back into *Peloponnesus*, I do not very well see; nor that afterwards the *Ionians* and *Aelians* had first their seat there, as we read. But the same Author in his 9th book writes, That *Epalius* King of the *Doricks* being by *Hercules* restored to his Kingdom, for requital of that favour, adopted *Hyllus*, *Hercules's* son, whom also he left his successor: from whence sprang the *Heraclides*, the inhabitants of *Peloponnesus*. Moreover, the *Ionians* (as \* *Strabo* writes) were by the *Achaians*, of the *Aelian's* stock, driven out of *Aegialus*, or *Achaia*; from whence there remained but two sorts in *Peloponnesus*, the *Doricks*, and *Aelicks*.

Moreover, the *Arcadians* and *Eleans*, who inhabited those ancient Seats, who by reason of the Mountains in that Kingdom, and craggy

\* Strabo  
lib. 8.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

craggy rocks, could hardly be approacht unto, sacrificing to *Jupiter Olympus*, used the *Dorick* tongue; but the others, a language made up of the *Attick* and *Dorick* dialect, saith *Strabo*, in the beginning of his 8th book; which quotation of the Author is something corrupted.

It is not in the power of humane Art exactly to compute the times wherein these things happened, yet I shall endeavour it in a homely style. *Xuthus* banisht out of *Thesaly* into *Attica*, repairs to King *Erechtheus*; *Erechtheus* began to reign in the year before Christ 1400, *Deucalion's* flood is reported to be much about the year before Christ, 1529. So that the stock of *Helen* being named *Grecians*, and distinguished into several kinds of people, were about 14. or 15. ages before Christ. Much about the time that the *Israelites* posselt of *Palestine*, began to be under Judges. This order observed, partly out of other probable Histories, and partly by conjecture, we shall prudently compute the time of the several posterities of *Helen*, which in this place will be needlesse to do.

#### CHAP. VIII.

Of the time of the *Mæcenian Kings*, which succeeded the *Grecians*, and of the *Lucanids*, and some remarkable passages of *Perseus* his progeny, conducing to better knowledge of Antiquity.

THE ancientest family of the *Grecian Kings* (saith *Eusebius*) took its rise from *Acrisius*, and from thence he saith was the Kingdom of *Mycene* translated by *Perseus*, the City whereof he built, still governing *Greece*; for after the death of *Acrisius*, *Megapenthe* *Proetus* his son, *Talaus* and *Adrastus* made this City the head of the Kingdom, *Talaus* succeeding *Megapenthe*; after whose death *Adrastus* his son leaving *Greece*, travell'd into *Syrione*, where after he had govern'd certain years, he return'd to *Greece* again, where he received *Tydidus* and *Polynices*, two fugitives. But truly at that time when *Agamemnon* govern'd *Mycene*, did *Diomedes* the son of *Tydidus* rule over *Greece*, as *Eusebius* observes about the 9th *Iliad* in this verse;

Vide 9. de  
doct. temp.  
c. 16. & 18.

Ἡρακλῆς ἐνὶ οὐνῳ, ἐν Ἀργαίᾳ τῷ ἄλλῳ πᾶσι.

That we may come to the *Mycenians*, we must explain the stock of *Perseus*, with which are contained the chiefest Acts of the *Grecians* in that Age. But deriving their original yet higher, we shall speak of the progenie of the *Agenorians* or *Cadmeians*, in which we shall follow *Apollodorus*. *Inachus* had a daughter named *Io*. she going into *Egypt*, had by *Jupiter*, *Epaphus* the King of *Egypt*, of whose daughter *Lybia* and *Neptune* got *Belus* and *Agenor*, being twins; *Io* saith *Apollodorus*: But we assent rather to (a) *Pausanias*, who makes this *Io*, not the daughter of *Inachus*, but of *Jasus* many years since, which

Bibliotheca  
Bapt.  
(a) Paus. Cor.  
rin. p. 58.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 3701.

(b) Euseb.  
Apul. 4.

Danaus of  
whom the  
Grecians.

\* Corin. p. 38.  
& vid. p. de  
doct. Temp.  
cap. 18.  
(a) Apollod.  
2.

(c) Apollod. 2.

Clement's  
error,  
Strom. 1.

† Euseb.  
Chron.

which also appears by the time of *Danaus*. Besides these two, *Neptune* is said to have begotten of *Lybia*, *Bulvis* (b) also, who leading his life not far remote from *Nilus*, was very noted for theft and murder, much about the Jews departure out of Egypt. I shall return to the sons of *Epaphus*, of whom *Agenor* went into *Phœnicia*; *Belus* governed in Egypt, and had two sons, *Ægyptus*, and *Danaus*; the former he sent to *Arabia* to obtain it; the other into *Lybia*. After which, when *Ægyptus* had 50 sons, *Danus* as many daughters, who being by the Oracle advised, that he should be slain by one of his brother's sons, he escapes into *Greece* in a Ship rowed with 50 Oars, where *Sthenelus* being dead, and *Gelaror* his Successor banished by the consent of the people, he was made King the year before Christ, 1475; the third after the death of *Joseph*: by his name were the Grecians called *Danai*. After this, the sons of *Ægyptus* going into *Greece*, were there murdered by their Wives, the Daughters of *Danaus*; Onely *Lyneus* excepted, who succeeded his father-in-Law. *Lyneus* took his beginning from the year before Christ 1425, wherefore a little before this, by consequence, happened this massacre. *Lyneus* had a son named *Abas*; he also had two sons, *Prætus*, and *Acrisius*; the former of whom, *Eusebius* saith, governed in *Greece*; but \* *Pausanias* saith, That they do divided their fathers kingdom, that *Acrisius* obtained *Argos*; *Prætus*, *Tyrinth*, *Midea*, and *Hæron*. (a) *Apollodorus* mentions, that after the death of their father *Abas*, they contended for the Kingdom, and that *Acrisius* being conqueror, continued at *Argos*: *Pætus* making his escape to *Iobates* in *Lycia*, whose daughter *Sthenobea*, or, as *Homer* would have it, *Antia*, he married; after which, relying upon his father-in-laws assistance, he returned to *Peloponnesus*, and possist himself of *Tyrinth*; but *Eusebius* opposeth this, who ranketh *Prætus* amongst the Kings of *Greece* in order before *Acrisius*, wherefore his 17 past years must be restored to *Abas* or *Acrisius*. This is that *Prætus*, to whom *Beleroophon* the sixth son of *Glaucus* fled from *Deucalion*, when he had committed murder; and being allured by *Sthenobea* to commit fornication with her, upon his denial, being subtilly by her accused, he was sent to (b) *Iobates* in *Cilicia*, where he is said to have encountered with the *Chimæra*, which falls out to be in the year before Christ 1360, *Eliud* exercising the office of Judge to the Hebrews.

In the reign of *Acrisius*, as I suppose, was *Perseus* born of his daughter *Danæ*, which in his second year was computed before Christ, 1343; He having overcome those dangers which are noted by those fables of him, about the 25 year of his age going with an Army into the East, he achieved those things at *Cepheum*, which are celebrated by the verses of the Poets, and had to Wife *Andromeda*. Which from ancient Chronologies, *Clement Alexandrinus* notes to be 34 years before the destruction of *Troy*, it being a manifest error, which in some foregoing pages he contradicts by another computation of time. † *Acrisius* was unawares slain

by

by *Perseus* his grandchild about the 31 year of his reign, being in the year before Christ 1312, or 1311; at that time was *Perseus* in *Greece* with his Wife *Andromeda*, being about some five or six years before he deliver'd it; for it's more probable, that *Acrisius* then reigning, and not dead, *Perseus* was born, who was not above 30 years old when he slew *Acrisius*, † who being dead, nor any longer abiding to live at *Argos*, he chang'd his Empire with *Megapenthe* his Uncle, son to *Prætus*, and at *Tyrinth*, which fell to *Prætus* his share, as is before spoken, he constituted his Kingdom, which afterwards he translated to *Mycenas*, a City by himself built. But *Megapenthe*, when he had reigned certain years at *Argos*, resigns his kingdom to *Talaus*, as is before said.

*Perseus* therefore about 1312 years before Christ, began to reign first at *Tyrinth*, and afterwards at *Mycenas*, who besides *Perseus*, whom he left with his father-in-law *Cepheus*, from whom the *Perseians* are named; He begot of his Wife *Andromeda* at *Mycenas*, six sons, *Alcheus*, *Sthenelus*, *Hela*, *Mestor*, *Elebryon*, and a daughter called *Gorgophone*, whom *Perseus* *Eolus* his son, and *Hellen's* grandson married, as a little before I shewed you.

To *Alceus* of *Hypminome*, *Menæcius* his daughter, was born *Amphitruo*, and a daughter called *Anaxo*; of *Mestor* and *Lysidice*, daughter of *Pelops*, was born *Hyppothus*, of whom by *Neptune* was brought forth *Taphius*, who built the City *Taphen* in *Cephalenia*, naming the people *Teleboans*; *Taphus* his son was *Pterelas*, whom *Neptune* made immortal.

*Elebryon* by *Anaxo* daughter of *Alceus*, had *Alcmena*, besides nine sons, and *Licymnius* of *Midea's* bastard. *Sthenelus* by *Nicippe* the daughter to *Pelops*, begat *Euristhem*, to whose service *Hercules* devoted himself.

Between the beginning of *Perseus* his reign, and *Sthenelus's*, were 58 years; for *Sthenelus* began about the year of the World 2730, which interval *Perseus* doth not seem to exceed, if we may credit *Apollodorus*, who saith, That *Elebryon* govern'd *Micenas* with *Taphius*. But *Pausanias* in his *Corinth* saith, at *Midea*. And that may be, that he might both reign at *Micenas*, and at *Midea* too; for *Midea* and *Tyrens* are tributaries to *Micenas*. Moreover, in the Catalogue of *Micenas's* Kings, are reckoned *Elebryon* and *Taphius*, *Perseus* his sons, who are set before *Sthenelus*, unless that at the same time we will have more Kings to govern all together, which in those dayes was used, when the Governours but of Cities went under the term of Kings. *Taphius* truly, and *Elebryon* sway'd the Scepter both together, whose sons demanding their part of their father's Kingdom from *Elebryon*, there arising a great contest, slew his sons; which to revenge, *Elebryon* gave his daughter *Alcmena* to *Amphitruon*, upon that condition, that he should not have her, till his return from his Expedition against the *Teleboans*; but when *Amphitruon* had imprudently slain *Elebryon*, expelled by *Sthenelus*; with his Wife *Alcmena*, he escapes to *Creon* at *Thes.*

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 3701.

† Paul. Co-  
rinth. p. 58.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

Mercurius born.  
Eutecbius no-  
tatur.

*Thebes*, by whom being acquitted according to his former Covenant, he prosecuted his design against the *Teleboans*. About that time the report goes of *Hercules* his birth, that it was 1289 before Christ; which being thus, it doth extenuate the credit of *Eusebius* his catalogue of the *Mycenian* Kings; for *Perseus* being dead, *Eleärio* governed before *Sihenelus*; nor was *Perseus* over the *Mycenians* above 58 years, as from his and *Pausanias's* computation we have already shewed.

(a) Diod. lib. 4.  
p. 192.

(b) Hyg. f. 81.  
ac.

The Posterity of *Perseus* ending with *Euristheus*, The *Pelopides* sprung from *Pelops*, that was son to *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*; from these had *Peloponnesus* its name, and, as some conjectured, they held their dominion over all *Peloponnesus*; but it is not so, for he first reigned in *Pisfa*, by his great Valour and Industry, he reduced most of the Inhabitants of that Island, as (a) *Diodorus* affirms. He removed out of *Phrygia* into *Greece*, and obtained *Hippodamia* *Oenemeus* his daughter more by craft, then as the true reward of his swiftnesse in the race wherein they contended, which happened in the year before Christ 1324, at the expiring of *Ehud's* Government over *Israel*. (b) His sons were *Atræus* and *Thyestes*, who became very noted to Posterity, from their hateful parricides and Incestuous rapes: *Thyestes* defiled *Atræus* his brothers Wife. *Atræus* on the other side made him a feast of his sons being murdered. After this, *Thyestes* in whoredome with *Pelop's* daughter, begat *Egyptus*, which slew *Agamemnon*, *Atræus* his son, whom *Apollodorus* would have to be defended of *Pisithene*, *Atræus* his son, as also *Menelaus* asserts; and this *Eustathius*, from *Hesiod* his Author, confirms, at the beginning of his *Iliads*, in these words;

Ἀργεῖδης τὴν ἑνὴν ἀνδρῶν.

Where it is evident, that the Kingdome of the *Mycenians* was translated to the *Pelopides*, about the time that the *Heraclides* enjoyed *Peloponnesus*; of which hereafter: for the *Pelopides* came into Affinity with the stock of *Perseus*; so that, of *Nicippe*, *Pelop's* daughter, *Sihenelus* begat *Euristheus*, as afore said.

## CHAP. IX.

Of another double Progeny of the *Inachids*, *Agenorians*, and *Pelasgians*, and of *Cadmus* his stock.

Hitherto we insisted upon the race of *Belus*, or *Danaus*, from whom the *Persians* sprang: now we shall speak a little to the other stock of the *Inachids*, which took its rise from *Agenor*; this is not impertinent, for to give us a light into the more ancient Achievements of *Greece*.

*Agenor* of *Telephassa* begat *Europa* his daughter, besides three sons,

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

Cadmus,

(a) Conon. lib.  
32. 37.

(b) Nemesius.  
10.

Cadmus his  
posterity.

Bacchus his  
age.

(a) Apol. 1.  
Hyg. fab. 4.

Sons *Phœnixes*, *Cadmus*, and *Cilices*; as *Apollodorus* in his third Book, who in his second Book asserts that *Agenor* had these Sons when he was in *Phœnicia*, which is a Kingdome in *Asia*, and in the third, after his coming into *Europe*, to which agrees that *Phœnixes* being sent with his brother *Cadmus* to seek his sister, whom not finding, he went into *Phœnicia*, that from thence his father might not send him away. Wherefore when *Jupiter* had raviſht *Europa*, *Agenor* appoints his three Sons to go to seek her, with whom went their Mother *Telephassa*. Whereupon *Phœnix* inhabits *Phœnicia*; *Cilix*, *Cilicia*. *Cadmus* after his Mother *Telephassa's* death, comes into *Greece* and builds *Thebes* after the names, as it appears, of the Country. For *Agenor* seems to take his rise from the *Egyptian Thebes*. (a) *Conon* upon *Photius* writes that *Europa* was the daughter of *Phœnix* (which also *Apollodorus* affirms). But *Cadmus* who had great Authority among the *Phœnicians*, was by their King sent into *Europe* to erect a new Government, there dissembling his intent to be the seeking of his sister. And last of all he is thought to have built *Thebes* in *Beotia* borrowing its name from the *Egyptian* word, because the *Phœnicians* having got a great part of *Asia*, placed the fear of the *Theban* Kingdome in *Egypt*: from this is that fable that *Cadmus* sailing into *Europe* to seek his sister who came to inhabit *Europe*; thus saith *Conon*. (b) *Pindarus Scholiastes* asserts that *Agenor* reigned in *Phœnicia*. But however things were, it must needs be that *Cadmus* his coming into *Greece*, and building of *Thebes*, was in the time of the first constitution of Judges, and the *Hebrews*.

*Cadmus* by *Harmonia*, had these daughters *Autonoe*, *Ino*, *Semele*, and *Agave*, his Sons name being *Polydorus*. *Autonoe* he married to *Aristæus*, *Ino* to *Athamas*, and *Agave* to *Echionus*. *Semele* brought forth *Bacchus* about 1354. years before Christ. *Ehud* being then Judge over the *Hebrews*. *Eusebius* would have it to be 628. years from *Abraham*, which was before Christ 1389. But *Semele* was not then born, *Phryxus* his flight with his sister *Hellen*, was about this time; (a) both which *Nephete* bore to *Athamas*. He afterwards married to *Ino*, by whose craft *Phryxus* and *Hellen*, being by their Father destinated to dye, she compell'd them to convey themselves to *Cholchos*. In which journey *Hellen* falling into the Sea, it was afterwards called by her name. *Phryxus* arriving whither he steered his course, committed the Treasure which he brought along with him, to the custody of the King of *Colchos*. The Licence of Poetick Verses, relates this to be the Golden-Fleece, which rich booty *Phryxus* bringing along with him, left there to be kept. *Polydorus* ruled at *Thebes*, and of *Niſeus's* daughter of *Niſeus*, he begat *Labdacus*, who dying after *Pentheus*, he left behind him his Son *Laius*, being but a year old, wherefore *Lycus*, *Niſeus* his brother (they both came of *Eubœa*) takes possession of the Kingdome. *Niſeus* his daughter was *Antiope*, who being great with child by *Jupiter*, fearing her fathers anger, flies into *Sycione*, to *Eopœus* whom she married. *Niſeus* dying desires his



Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

brother *Lycus* to take revenge upon *Epopeus*, whom having taken at *Sycione* and slain, he brought back *Antiope*, who in her journey was delivered, at *Eulethera* in *Beotia*, of *Zethus* and *Amphion* being twins; where they were taken by a Cow-herd, and by him brought up. In the interim, *Antiope* being but ill treated of *Lycus*, and his Wife *Dirce*, is owned by her Sons, being now grown to age, who having slain *Lycus*, and fastned *Dirces* to the tail of a wild Bull, to be torn in pieces, they enjoyed the kingdom of *Thebes*. *Laius* being by them expel'd, betakes himself to *Peloponnesus*, and *Zethus* to *Thebes*; *Amphion* marries *Niobe* daughter of *Tantalus*, who being all defunct, *Laius* is restored to the Kingdom, and takes *Jocasta* to wife, the daughter of *Menæcius*, by whom he had *Oedipus*, whose incest in marrying his Mother, and slaughter of his Sons, is the general subject of Poets, being personated upon every Theatre. A little after he was expelled *Thebes*; The time wherein hapned the rest, may be computed from the first year of his coming into *Greece*. Thus *Apollodorus*, lib. 3.

(a) Euseb. chron.

(b) Diod. 4. p. 183.

The third race of the Inachids.

(c) Dion. Hal. lib. 1.

Apoll. 2. & 3.

(d) Apollod. 1. 3.

Strab. I. 5. p. 153.  
Dion. Halic. I. 4. p. 14.

Last of all from *Europa* and *Asterius* King of *Crete*, as (a) *Eusebius* saith, but *Apollodorus* asserts from *Jupiter*, *Minos* *Radamanthus*, and *Sarpedon* were born. (b) *Diodorus* is the Author of two *Minos*, one being the Son, the other the Grand-son of *Europa*.

The Poets and Historiographers mention a third race, of the *Pelasgians* to proceed from *Inachus*: for *Pelasgus* being descended from *Jupiter* by *Niobe* the daughter of *Phoræus*, who was *Inachus* his Niece; *Lycaon* Son of (c) *Pelasgus*, had fifty children, who were all except *Nyctimus* slain: he had also a daughter named (d) *Calistone*, of whom was born *Arcas*: His Sons were *Elatus* and *Abidas*, who begat *Aleus* and *Stenobea*, Wife to *Preteus*. To *Aleus* were born *Cepheus*, *Lycurgus*, and *Auge* sister to them both, who bore to *Theuthranthus*, *Telephus* King of *Asia*. *Lycurgus* his Sons are reported to be *Anceus*, *Epochus*, *Amphidamas*, and *Idæus*; of *Amphidamas*, *Melanion*, who married *Asianta*, the daughter of *Jasus* or *Schæneus*, and Mother to *Parthenopæus*, one of the seven Captains that attempted the taking of *Thebes*.

Therefore the *Pelasgians* seem to be the same with the *Arcadians*, which, expelled out of *Peloponnesus*, went into *Hemonia*, which is also *Thessaly*, under the conduct of *Achæus*, *Pythius*, and *Pelasgus*, from whence after six years being driven by the *Curetians* and *Lelegians* which afterwards were called *Ætolians* and *Locrians*, some to *Crete*, some to the *Cyclades*, others to *Hestiotis*, which lyes at the foot of *Olympus*, and *Ossa*. Others to *Beotia*, *Phocis*, and *Eubœa*, others betaking themselves to *Asia*, *Hellepont*, and *Lebos*, many of them escaping into *Saturnia*, which is *Italy*, there made their Original abode, as saith *Dyonisius*, to which *Strabo* assigns.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of *Hercules*, *Jason*, *The Expedition of the Argonautes*, *Minos*, *Thefeus*, *Oedipus*, and his sons, and of the *Theban War*.

AT that time which immediately followed the departure of the Hebrews out of *Egypt*, were extant those names famous amongst the Poets in their verses, and also those fabulous Grecian Heroes; some whereof are rank'd amongst the greater, other esteemed to be of the demie and lesser gods. Most of these here and there, as occasion hath offered, we have already treated of; and now we shall come to speak of some of the most noted amongst them; and first of all of *Hercules*, which name appears not to be attributed to one alone. (a) There were three mentioned by *Diodorus*, one of the ancientest of which was *Egyptius*, who travelled over all the World in the exercise of arms. The second, *Cretensis*, who came of the *Cybellis* Priests, and instituted the *Olympick* games. The last of all was born of *Alcmena*, a little before the *Trojan Wars*, who was subject to the commands of *Euristheus*: These, *Diodorus* asserts, are by the Vulgar reduc'd to One. (b) *Cicero* reckons six, the last of which is this same son of *Alcmena*, of whom we shall here speak. The father of *Alcmena*, was *Elefrio*, the son of *Perseus* and *Andromedes*; his Mother, as *Apollodorus* thinks, was *Anaxo* the daughter of *Alceus*; but as (c) *Diodorus* saith, *Eurymeda* or *Eurydice* of *Pelops*; She when she had married *Amphitruon* her Cozen-german, (for he was the son of *Alceus*, the brother of *Elefrio*, *Perseus* his son,) was delivered of *Hercules* by *Jupiter*, whose age appears to be much about the time of *Gideon's* command, for *Euristheus* began to reign in the year of the *Julian* Period 3468, the ninth year of *Gideon*, and before Christ 1246. *Hercules* being born at *Tyrene*, was carried with *Amphitruon* to *Thebes*, (d) which City as it began to increase by his means, shook off their subjection to the command of *Erginus* King of the *Minizians*, and overthrew *Orchomen*, a City in *Beotia*, which was the Metropolitan of that Kingdom. For which, *Creon* King of *Thebes* gave him *Megeira* his daughter to his Wife. After which, obliged to the service of *Euristheus*, he achieved various attempts. (e) He went also with *Jason* amongst the *Argonautes* to *Colchos*, and encountering the (f) *Amazones*, together with their Queen *Hyppolita*, overcame them at the City of *Themissa*, from thence returning to (a) *Troy*, he is reported, having overcome it, and slain *Laomedon*, to have conferr'd the kingdom upon *Priamus*. He also made incursion upon *Spain* and *Italy* some 55 years before the last subversion of *Troy*, as by and by shall be spoken of: but at the celebration of the (b) *Olympick* games in *Greece*, falling into a desperate sickness, he cast himself living into a burning fire: of all which, the certain time may be conjectured, from the

(a) Diodor. lib. 1. 3. Hercules plur. res.

(b) Cic. 3. de Nat. deorum. Hercules Po. drcm gesta.

(c) Lib. 4. p. 151.

Hercules gesta. (d) Diodor. 4. p. 152.

(e) Diod. 4. p. 18. Hyg. fab. 14. & 29.

Apoll. 1. (f) Diod. 4. p. 156.

Apoll. 2. (a) Diod. 4. p. 165.

Hyg. 89. (b) Diod. 4. p. 170.

Euseb. Chro.

E 2

Expedition

Anno 3184.  
J. P. unto  
3701.

(c) Apoll. 1.  
Argonauta-  
rum Expedi-  
tio.

(d) Vid. Hyg.  
fab. 14.  
Apoll. 1.  
Apollon.  
Rhod. Val.  
Orph. &c.

Dion. 4.  
Hyg. &c.

Expedition of the Argonauts; of which therefore it will be here convenient to speak a little.

(c) *Critheus* the son of *Æolus*, grandchild to *Hellen*, whose great grandfather was *Deucalion*, begat *Æson* the father of *Jason*, upon *Salmon* the daughter of *Tyron*, and of her, being ravish'd by *Nephtune*, *Pelias* was begotten. He, *Critheus* being dead, invades the kingdom of Thessalie, having expell'd his brother *Æson*, whose son increasing now in vigorous years and strength, whom fearing, he commands him to sail for Colchos, to fetch thence the Golden Fleece, which was to regain that Treasure which *Phryxus* in his flight had there laid up. The fame of this Expedition being spread through Greece, which then abounded with most valiant men, many of which he makes his associates and partners of this so glorious an enterprize, whose names are various. The (d) chiefest are famed to be *Hercules* the son of *Alcmena*, *Orpheus* born of *Oëagrus* and *Calliope*, eminent in Musick and Poetry; *Castor* and *Pollux*, *Peleus* the father of *Achilles*, *Telamon*, *Theseus*, *Peribæus*, and others. Who having constituted *Jason* their Captain, and provided a Ship larger then hitherto had been seen any, to whom for her swiftnesse they gave the name *Argo*, hoist sail for Troas. Where *Hercules* delivered *Hesione* the daughter of *Laomedon*, having slain the Whale to which she was expos'd to be devoured; and having a grant of her for his labour, he left her behind with her father, together with his swift horses, till at his return from his Expedition, he might receive them altogether. *Jason* no sooner arrives at Colchos, but falling in league with *Medea*, the daughter of King *Ætæa*, is made master of his desires, whom having wedded, he conveys her, together with the Golden Fleece for Thessaly. *Hercules* demanding his contracted-for reward from *Laomedon*, and seeing himself deluded by his perjury, vanquisheth Troy, slayes *Laomedon*, and delivers the Kingdom to his son *Priamus*. The writer of the lesser *Iliads* reports, this to be done about forty years before the Grecians utterly demolish'd Troy. Wherefore the Voyage of the *Argonautes* appears (if it be so) to have been in the year that is numbred before our Christian Epock 12263; *Dares* the *Phrygian* relateth these things somewhat variously, saying, That these *Argonautes* being denyed the Harbour of Troy by *Laomedon*, that soon after they were returned into Greece, having furnished themselves with a Fleet of Men of War, having sailed to Troas, took the City of *Ilium*, and slew *Laomedon* with all his sons, one onely excepted, who was then happily absent, *Priamus* by name; and that *Hesio* fell to *Telamon's* lot in reward of his vertue: whom *Priamus* by his Ambassadors in vain redemanding, he sent his son *Alexander* into Greece with an Army, by whom *Menelaus's* Wife, *Helen* by name, being carried away, hereby was caused that huge and so memorable War; Thus saith *Dares*, the *Phrygian*.

These

(a) These *Argonautes* being returned home into their Countrey, they appointed to make, in *Jupiter's* honour, a solemn Play, with great preparation and shew, and they committed the care of it to *Hercules*; who erected the Olympick games in *Elis*, a Province of *Peloponnesus*, near the River *Alpheus*, although that (b) *Velleus* makes *Atræus* the Author of them, and that he saith, That through them *Hercules* was the Conqueror of all sorts of games; but it may be that these games were not onely once, and by both in a short space of time played and celebrated, *Hercules* death was not long before the attempt of his posterity upon *Peloponnesus*, and before *Eriphæus's* death, which falls upon the twentieth year before *Troy's* utter destruction, as hereafter shall be evidenced.

In the mean time *Jason* living at *Corinth* with *Creon* the King, he married *Glauce's* his daughter, having repudiated *Medea*, having now lived ten years with her; which injury his cruel formal Wife, revenging upon *Creon's* family, and upon her own children which she had by *Jason*, the flyeth for security to *Hercules* then in *Thebes*; and after tedious and long wanderings, she at last after a long space of time returns into her own Countrey; *Jason* by reason of his treachery being much envied, being destitute of all things, he bereft himself of his life. There escaped *Theseus*, he onely one of *Jason's* and *Medea's* children, who afterwards setting upon *Iolcus* his fathers Countrey, took the Kingdom due to him by his father's right, which from him was called *Thessalia*; though the same *Velleus* attributeth this to another of the same name.

At the same time did *Minos* reign in *Crete*, the Nephew of that other *Minos* who is said to be *Jupiter's* son by *Europa*; *Ægeus*, *Theseus's* father, caused this man's son named *Androgeus*, to be murdered in *Attica*: And for this cause did *Minos* wage War with the *Athenians*, then at the same time a great famine and drought being sent of God into *Attica*, and throughout all Greece, the Princes of the Cities sent to *Delphos* to consult the Oracle, What remedy they might take for this evil? And as they were asking, the Oracle answered, That they should make *Æacus* the son of *Jupiter* and *Ægea*, the Patron and Mediator of all Greece. *Æacus* having taken well and in good part their vows, restored fertility and plentifulnesse to the fields of them all, except of the *Athenians*: But they going again to the Oracle, *Apollon* answered, That they should not have an end put to this evil, untill they satisfied *Minos's* desire concerning *Androgeus's* death; therefore by his decree, every seventh year they are commanded to send seven Males, and so many females into *Crete*. Whither *Theseus* *Ægeus's* son, being come, either by his own free will, or by chance having overcome the *Minotaurum* (which is said to have been *Minos's* General under the name of a Bull) by the help and danger of *Ariadna*, which was in love of him, he freed for ever the *Athenians* from this bondage: This happened a little before the death of *Ægeus*, and the beginning of *Theseus's* reign; for when *Ægeus* saw a ship of *Theseus* sailing from *Crete* with sails, and not white, as amongst them

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

(a) Diod. 4.  
p. 176.  
(b) Veil. 1.

Diod. p. 179.  
Apoll. 1.  
Diod. Ibidem.

Diod. p. 180.

Veil. 1.  
Diod. 4.  
p. 183. plu.  
Thess. Apol. 3.  
Hyg.

Diod.

Hyg. fab. 42.  
42.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

Clem. Alex. 1.  
Strom.  
Diod. 4. p. 194.  
Hig. 45.  
Thes. vide. par.  
29. l. 2. c. 9.

Plu. Thest. Di-  
ed. 2. p. 163.  
Diod. 4. p. 185.  
Verus Chrono-  
log. apud.  
Clem. Alex.  
l. 1.  
Plutarch.  
Arund. marm.  
Plut.

Diod. 4. p.  
185. Hig. 67.  
Sec.  
A. ill. 3.

Apoll. 3.  
Diod. 4. p.  
185. Hig. 68.  
& seq.  
The names of  
the seven  
Princes that  
went against  
Thebes.

Apol. 3.

Clem. Alex. 1.  
Strom.  
Diod. 4. p. 187.  
Hig.

them was agreed, into the harbour of *Athens*, he is said to have cast himself headlong into the Sea. Again, *Theseus* began to reign some fourty seven years or thereabouts before the ruine of *Troy*. Then *Athens* fetching back by force of arms, *Dedalus* his inge-  
ner, who had fled from *Crete* to *Cocalus*, King of *Sicily*, was smothered in a Bath by the said *Cocalus*. *Theseus* at the emulation of *Hercules* having achieved great things, got a famous name throughout all *Greece*.

Amongst his chief exploits he cut to pieces the *Amazonian* Armies, which from *Pontus* had bordered upon the coasts of *Athens*, in the Month *Boedromio*, having spoiled them of their Colours; who for the memoriall of this signall Victory, had afterwards this name. Afterwards, he preserved in the safeguard of the Athenians, with an excellent commendation of fidelity, *Hercules* his posterity from *Euristhem*, who pursued them with arms. At length having ravished *Helen*, a Virgin of ten years of age, some five and twenty years before the destruction of *Troy*, and having provoked the *Tyndars* to war against himself, being expelled out of *Athens* by *Mecestaw's* faction, he retired himself into the Island *Syrus*, and there he dyed for grief, not without the detestation of his ungrateful Countrey, which divided into Borroughs and Villages at the beginning of his reign, he had brought into a body of a whole City. Before this time, there was a sad spectacle done at *Thebes*. *Oedipus* having slain his father *Laius* unadvisedly, in recompence of his slaying *Sphinx*, he married *Jocasta* his Mother, from which wedlock were born *Eteocles* and *Polynices*. The thing being found out, *Oedipus* his eyes being plucked out, freely and willingly suffered punishment; his Sons did so agree together, that they should reign every year at their turne, but *Eteocles* having reigned his year, would not afterwards yield the dominion to his brother *Polynices*, who retiring to *Adrastus* into *Argos* became his Son in Law. Hence, *Theseus* being yet living, there arose a vehement war against the *Thebans*, *Polynices* stirring up *Acrastes* and other Princes, who are said to be seven in number, to war against his brother *Eteocles*. *Adrastus* who ruled at *Argos*. *Tydemus* the son of *Oeneus*, the *Calydonian*, *Capaneus*, *Hippomedon*, *Parthenopeus*, born of *Atalanta*, *Sthenoeus's* daughter, *Amphiaras* who had married *Eriphilia*, *Adrastes* sister, and *Polynices*: all which perished with an exceeding great slaughter of their Army, the Carcasses of all whom *Creon*, the brother of this same mans Mother, and brother in law to *Oedipus*, forbade to be buried; *Adrastus* onely escaping alive. But the Athenians, *Theseus* being their Captain-General, denounced wars to the *Thebans*, according to common civility; and having taken their City, they gave them liberty to celebrate the Funerals of their Friends.

This *Theban* war was, if we may give faith to the old Chronicles of *Clemens*, thirty seven years before the overthrow of *Troy*, and ten years after that, those Princes were destroyed before *Thebes*: their Sons who were called *Epigonians*, having chosen *Alc-*  
*meon*,

*meon*, *Amphiaras's* Son for their Generall, they undertook a War against the *Thebans*, and these *Thebans* being overcome in fight, they demolish the City; they lead away prisoner *Tiresias*, who died by the way, and send away his daughter from *Manto* to *Delphos*, which thence went into *Asia*. *Diodorus* calls her *Daphne*, and saith that she remained at *Delphos*, and relates that the Oracles have elegantly set forth her beauty, and rare qualities, out of which Oracles he saith that *Homer* took not a little: The *Thebans* being expelled out of their City, they likewise turn the *Dorians* out of their Towns and City, and many of them afterwards returned to *Thebes*.

Anno 3184.  
Julian Period,  
unto 3701.

Paul. Achæ.  
p. 208.  
Diod. 4. 187.

Diod. 4. 187.

## CHAP. XI.

Of the Trojans Kingdome, and of the ruine of *Troy*, of *Æneas's* travell into Italy, of the age of *Jupiter* and *Saturn*.

Almost fifty years after the Children of *Israel* went forth out of *Egypt*, a little before *Joshuas's* death, was created the Kingdome of *Troy* in *Asia*, by *Dardanus*, although *Teucer* is said to have reigned the first in *Troy*, who was the Son of *Scamander* and of *Idea* the Nymph, from whom the people were called *Teucri*. Moreover *Jupiter* and *Elebra*, had yet two Sons more, *Dardanus* and *Jafon* or *Jafius*, who both reigned first in Italy, and that in the City *Coritus* in *Tuscia*, though some do not consent that they draw their Originall out of Italy, but out of *Arcadia*; therefore having both left their fathers Court, they came into *Samo-*  
*thracia*.

Apollod. 3.  
Diod. 4. p.  
191.

Virg. 3.  
Æn. aut Troy.  
Varro. and  
Greeks. apud:  
Serv. ibid.

Serv. ad 3.  
Æn. aut Troy.  
Apoll. 3.

Serv. ad 3.  
Æn. aut Troy.  
I. de prog.  
aug.  
Apoll. Diod.

Apoll.  
ibid.

Died. 4. p.  
191.  
Clem. Alex.  
i. Stro.

Died.

Whence afterwards, *Dardanus* travelling to *Troy*, was courteously received of *Teucer* the King, and married his daughter *Batiea*. Some say that *Dardanus* slew his brother *Jafius*. *Apollodorus* saith that for his attempting to violate *Ceres*, he was killed by a Thunderbolt: There are yet some who think that *Dardanus* reigned in *Troy* before *Teucer*, and that this man came from *Crete*. *Teucer* being dead, *Dardanus* built a City of his name in Mount *Ida*, near the Sea, and called the people *Dardanians*, after his name: his Son *Erichthonius* begat *Troas* of *Apsyche*, *Simoes* daughter; by whom the Countrey was called *Troia*. This *Troas* begat of *Callirrhoe*, *Scamander's* daughter, *Ilus*, *Assaracus*, *Ganymedes*, and *Cleopatra* a daughter. *Tantalus* King of *Paphlagonia*, stole *Ganimes* away about 192. years before the destruction of *Troy*, as *Clemens Alex-*  
*andrine* asserteth out of the old Chronicles. *Eusebius's* Chronicles mention this History a little after this time, and calls the King of *Phrygia*, which then was called *Meonia*, *Tantalus*. *Ilus* avenging this injury by arms, expells *Tantalus* out of his kingdome. To *Assaracus* was born *Capys*, who begat *Anchises*, father to *Æneas*. *Ilus* built up *Ilium* in the Champion Countrey of *Troas*, and begat *Laomedon*, who had two Sons *Tithonus* and *Podarces*, and a daughter

Amo 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.  
Aug. Troic.

The Trojan  
War.  
Dydis Cret.  
Dares Phryg.  
Hyg.

Velle l. i. Hyg.  
fab. 119.

Euseb.  
Æneas goes  
into Italy.  
Dydis l. 5.  
Virg. 1. Æn.  
Dares Halic.  
1. Liv. 1.  
Euseb. Chron.  
1. de orig.  
Rom.  
Halic. vide  
par. 2. l. 2.  
c. 10.  
Vide Lat.  
line 1. 1.

The age of  
Jupiter and  
Saturn.  
Æn. c. 7.  
14. Met.  
Dion. Halic.  
1. Videtur de.  
Orig.

daughter called *Heson*. *Tyibozus* being gone into the East, and *Æthiopia*; there he begat *Memnon* his Son, *Podarces*, *Laomedon* being slain, as we have said above, received the kingdom of *Hercules*, which he is said to have held forty years, he had many children. Amongst whom was *Alexander* who is called *Paris*, who being carried by shipping into *Peloponnesus* and *Sparta*, he ravished and stole away his Host *Menelaus's* Wife: For whose sake the *Greeks* waged a cruel and bloody war of ten years time against the *Trojans*, to the great detriment of both Nations, and to losse of both their valiant Generals. But the *Greeks* at last whose cause was more just, obtained the Victory, having taken and demolished the City by *Antenor's* and *Æneas's* treason. This overthrow certainly was in that very year 3530. of the *Julian Period*, before Christ, 1184. in the time of *Jair* Judge over the *Hebrews*; fortune was not much more favourable, to the Conquerours, as they returned home, than it had been to them that were conquered; for most part were cast away or oppressed by the Tempest. *Agamemnon* in the embraces of his household Gods, and of his wife, was thrust through, and so murdered by the adulterer *Egisthus*, *Thyesta's* Son, but his Son *Orestes* did afterwards avenge his death, who with *Electra* his sister, familiar to all his counsellors, did slay *Egisthus* and *Clytemnestra* his own Mother, the Gods (as it is reported) approving this his parricide, blessed him with a long and happy reign, for he reigned seventy years and lived ninety, and he married *Hermio*, *Menelaus's* and *Helena's* daughter, *Pyrhus Achilles* Son, being slain at *Delphos*, who had taken to himself his contracted spouse twenty years after *Ilium's* destruction.

With better success did those two *Trojans*, *Antenor* and *Æneas*, from the burning of *Troy*, go into far Countreys; of whom, the first landing in the *Venetian* shore, built there *Patavina*, the other with a fleet of two and twenty ships arrived into *Latium* which was then ruled by *Latius*, *Faunus's* son, or as some would have it *Hercules's* Son: Before whom we find there was but four Kings, *Janus*, *Saturnus*, *Picus*, and *Faunus*: whilst *Janus* reigned *Saturn* being expelled by his Son *Jupiter*, he came to the *Italian* shore, and there being courteously entertained, he built a Tower not far from *Janiculum*, which from his name he called *Saturnia*. *Eusebius's* Chronicles allot 130. years to these four Kings: whence it appears that the beginning of *Janus's* reign was about 1330. years before Christ, and by this we may gather what is the antiquity of the heathenish Gods: for being *Saturn* as I have said, was alive when *Janus* ruled in the year 1330. before Christ, his son *Jupiter* could not be born much before that, and that was in the time of *Ehud*, judge over the *Hebrews*, about three thousand years before this our age, about which time was the Golden age so much commended by the Poets Fables. *Virgil* and *Ovid* assert that *Picus* was *Saturnus's* son: But when *Faunus* reigned, then did *Evander* sail from *Arcadia* into *Italy*, it being some threescore years

years before *Troy's* destruction, and built there *Palantium*, where room was built after: Before his time, the *Pelagians* went first out of *Thefaly* into *Epirus* and *Dodona*; then, being gone thence into *Italy*, they joyned themselves with the *Aboriginians*, who long time before had gone into *Italy* from *Arcadia*, by whom the *Sicilians* being expelled in the space of sixty years, as *Philistus* saith, or ninety, that is three *Yamæ*, as *Hellanicus* hath written; they went into *Trinacria* or *Sicania*, which from them was called *Sicily*: five years after, *Evander* arrived in *Italy*; and five and fifty before *Troy's* destruction, *Hercules* with a fleet of *Græcians* abording the shores of *Italy*, was courteously received and entertained by *Evander*.

Then *Latinus* reigning, in the 35th year of his reign, *Æneas* three years after the *Trojans* calamity was brought to *Laurentum's* Countrey: he made peace and alliance with *Latinus*, marrying his daughter *Lavinia*, after whose name he called that City he built, *Lavinium*. Then *Turnus* the *Rutulians's* King waged Warr with *Latinus* and *Æneas* together, being displeased with both, because he had given his daughter *Lavinia* rather to a stranger, than to him an inborn Prince, to whom she had already been promised. The *Rutulians* being overcome in fight, there were both *Turnus* and *Latinus* slain the fourth year after *Troy's* destruction: And so *Æneas* alone enjoyed all for the space of three years, whom being slain in the next Warrs he had with the *Rutulians* and *Mezentius*, Kings of the *Tyrrhenians*, his son *Ascanius* succeeded, he having dispersed his enemies, and made peace with *Mezentius*, 30 years after the building of *Lavinium*, he built *Alba*: In which City 14 Kings after *Ascanius*, had their seat, ruling unto *Romulus's* time, and to the first foundation of *Rome*.

Amo 1184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

Hercules's  
arrival into  
Italy.

Dion. Halic. l.  
Liv. 1.  
Aliter Conon  
apud Phot.  
cod. 186.  
l. 46.

Æneas his  
death.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Expeditions of *Hercules's* Posterity into *Peloponnesus*; of *Me-  
lanthus* and *Codrus*, Kings of *Athens*; then of the Archontians,  
of the *Æolick* and *Ionick* transplantations; and of some other par-  
ticulars.

**H**ercules the son of *Alcmena* and *Amphitryo*, had his original both from *Peloponnesus*, and from the *Mycenian* Kings: for both his Father and Mother were *Perseus's* grandchildren, and were brothers children; for *Alcaus*, *Amphitryo's* father, was *Perseus's* son; and *Alcmena* was daughter to *Elethrio*, *Perseus's* son: *Amphitryo* having slain his brother and step-father inconsiderately, being banished out of *Mycenas* by his Uncle, went to *Thebes*; *Hercules* being dead, *Euristheus* the King of *Mycenas*, *Sthenelus's* son, did endeavour utterly to extinguish his posterity, fearing, that if they should come to age, they would sway the Scepter of the *Mycenians*.

Ex Apoll. 2.  
Diod. 1. 4.  
p. 181. & seq.  
Paus. Corin.  
p. 60. et alibi  
passim.  
Euseb. 5. de  
præp. p. 224.

*nians* Kingdom. Therefore he denounceth to *Ceyx* King of *Tra- chone*, with whom they were to banish out of his Country those Children whom he suspected, if he had not rather to deliver them up to him; the which if he doth not, he must expect nothing but Warr. The *Heraclides* being affrighted by this command, no body daring to receive and entertain them for fear of *Eurilheus*, they retire themselves to *Theseus*, then King of the *Athenians*, and not to *Demophoon*, as *Euripides* saith: *Eurilheus* raiseth a great Army against them, thereupon was the battel given; In which were chief Commanders *Iolaus* the son of *Hercules's* brother, and *Hyllus*, whom *Hercules* had begotten by *Deianira*, and *Theseus*; *Eurilheus* being overcome, is killed by *Hyllus*, and all his posterity, being a son, dyed with him. The *Heraclides* being conquerours, possesse themselves of *Peloponnesus*, and in a short time recover all that they had lost. But the Plague being imminent, having hastened their return before the time appointed, being warned by the Oracle, they freely departed. After this, *Hyllus* having again consulted the Oracle, he was answered, to stay until the third gathering of the fruits; that was as much as, unto the third age of man: But he understanding it to be the third year after this time he prepares a new Expedition, and sendeth his Forces through *Isthmus*, being again deceived by that ambiguous Oracle, that promised the victory to the Leaders through wet straights: by which deceitfull speech, *Apollo* understood the Sea, through which one saith to the mouth of *Peloponnesus*. As the *Heraclides* approached near *Atreus*, *Eurilheus's* Uncle and his opposed himself with forces to them: The fight being begun, *Aristomachus*, one of the *Heraclides*, is killed, and then *Hyllus* challenges any one of the enemies to fight with him in a single duel, upon the condition, That whosoever of either party should overcome, the same party should possesse *Peloponnesus*, and that the *Heraclides* if their enemy should overcome them, should not come again against *Peloponnesus* such a certain time; which *Diodorus* saith, was the space of fifty years, and others say an hundred. The condition being excepted, *Echemus* King of the *Tegeatans*, fights with *Hyllus*, and at length kills him; The *Heraclides* return back again to *Attica*. This first irruption was twenty years before *Troy's* ruine.

Then an hundred years after this, and fourscore years after the overthrow of *Troy*, the *Heraclides* assault *Peloponnesus* again. The Chiefs of this Expedition were *Aristomachus* his three sons, *Temenus* or *Temenes*; *Cresphontes*; and *Aristodemus*; while they layed to *Lepantium*, *Aristodemus* dyed either by a Thunder-bolt, or by the plot of *Pylades* and *Eletra*, children, *Tisamenus* Kingmen, whose place his two sons *Procles* and *Euristhenus* supplied, who by the Oracle's command made *Trioculus*, or a man with 3 eyes, General of the Expedition, they lighted upon a purblind man, riding upon a Mule, *Oxylus* by name of *Etolia*, having agreed with him to give him *Elis*. By his conduct and encouragement, they prepared a Navy

Anno 1184.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 3701.

In Heraclid.

Apoll. 2.

Euseb. 5. de  
prep.

Thucyd. 1.

Thucyd. 1.  
Scholl. 1. 1.

Scholl.  
Thucyd. ad  
1. 1.

Thucyd. 1.  
Vell. 1.  
Tatian.  
Euseb. apud  
Clem. Alex. 1.  
Strom.  
Apoll. 2.  
Paus. init.  
Lacem.  
Apollod. 2.  
Pausan.  
Eliac. 1.

a Navy, and invade *Peloponnesus*. About this time the Country was inhabited almost by two people, the *Achaïans* and the *Ionians*, so called from *Xuthus* his two sons; the *Achaïans* dwelt at *Argos* and *Lacedemon*, under the dominion of the *Pelopides*, which were *Agamemnon's* posterity, *Tisamenus* and *Pentilus* by name, whose father was *Orestes*. The *Ionians* possessed *Achaia*: The *Heraclides* having expelled the *Achaïans*, they distribute their lot into three parts, of which *Argos* befell to *Temenes*, and *Messenia* to *Cresphontes*, and *Laconia* to *Aristomedes's* sons; and they said, that these Countreys did belong to them by right of inheritance, as well as of conquest, because that the posterity of *Perseus* possessed *Argos* before *Pelop's* children, and that *Hercules* had committed *Laconia* to *Tindareus*, having slain *Hippocoontes* who held it first, and *Messenia* to *Nestor* which he had conquer'd, having slain *Neleus* his father, and all his brothers.

*Oxylus* took possession of *Elis* as they had covenanted, of whose off-spring was *Iphitus*, who renewed the Olympick agonals. The *Arcadians* alone remained in their former situation, because they lived in unaccessible and rocky places. The *Elidians* received in one part of their Country the *Etolians* that were strangers. *Renidas Falcus's* son did invade the *Phliasiens*, having expelled *Hippasus*, who thence went to *Samos*, and had a son called *Euphrones*, who was father to *Mnesarchus*, of whom descended *Pythagoras*.

This incursion of the *Heraclides* afforded great motions and transigrations throughout all *Greece*: for whensoever any one Nation was ejected out of her own Country by a stronger, she fell upon the next weaker then her self; even as it's done in the Sea, tormented and tossed by the winds, where the waves arising from far off, drive away the next in their way. The *Achaïans* being forced to yield their Country to them, as I have said, they fall upon the *Ionians* in *Achaia*, and these being overcome and put to flight, they went into their Country, having killed *Tisamenus* the King in the battel. The *Ionians* fled into *Attica*, where *Melanthus* received them, who himself had come thither with the children of *Neleides* and *Nestor*, together with others not long afore.

*Pausanias* saith, That this man was *Andropompos's* son, the grand-child of *Bormus*, whose father was *Pentibilus*, who was the grand-child of *Periclymenus*, *Nestor's* son, and that since the *Heraclidian* expulsion he went to sojourn in *Athens*, with whom *Conon* agrees. Pernaeps then the *Athenians* with the *Boetians* waged Warr at *Oenon*, and so for the singularity of these Kings battel it was demolished. *Thymetes* King of *Athens* tearing him, *Melanthus* being in hope of the Kingdom, underwent the danger. And having slain *Xanthus* the King of the *Boetians*, he changed his banishment to the *Athenian* Empire, soon after he a stranger received the *Ionians* that the *Achaïans* had driven away. Hence it appears, that

F 2

*Melanthus*

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 3701.

Pausan. Mes-  
sen. 113.  
Apoll.

Paus. Cor.  
p. 60.

Paus. Eliac. 1.  
p. 150. Stra-  
bo. 1. 8.

Paus. Cor.  
p. 56.

Paus. in  
Eliac. 1. and  
in Acha.  
p. 206.

Paus. in Acha.

Corinth. p. 60.

Conon. 1. 19.  
apud Phot.  
cod. 186.  
Sud. in voca  
Mitharboe.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

Velle. 1.  
Just. 2.  
Paul. Acha.  
p. 232.  
Codrus.

Melanthus began his reign in Attica, after the Heracles return into Peloponnesus; though Eusebius in his Chronicles seems to think otherwise. Codrus emulating his father Melanthus's glory, he also deserved greater praises; for in the War that was between the Dorians, the new Inhabitants of Peloponnesus, and the Athenians, Apollon having answered, That those should be the Conquerors whose General should die in the battle, having put on a Shepherd's habit, he enters the enemies Army, there rashly stirring up a quarrel, he is slain by a common Soldier whom he had wounded: The Dorians finding it to be the corps of the King, they then retired without fighting: In which deed of his, whether his contempt of his life, or of his Kingdom, is most to be admired, it's hard to resolve, because mortal men usually prefer these two things before any other thing, though never so dear and precious. This fight was in the year before our Christian account 1071, which is according to the Julian period 3643.

By Codrus's death the Kings of Athens succession being extinguished, and the Government of the Republic being permitted to the Magistrates, whom they called *Archons*, they at the beginning were in office for life, and the first of them was Medon, Codrus's son, lame of one foot, whom his brother Neleus not willing that he should be a Prince, the thing being referred to Apollo's answer, he commanded Medon to have the office.

That I may make an end to what I had resolved touching the transplantations and Colonies of the Grecians, After the return of the Heracles there was two remarkable ones. The first *Eolick*, whereof was Commander in chief Penthius Orestes's son, who as soon as he left Laconia, entered first with his men into Thracia; then he being dead, there they transported themselves into Asia, and possessed that part which afterwards was called *Eolia*; for the Achaeans who inhabited Laconia, were the *Eolians*. The other transplantation was much more renowned, which is called *Ionick*, an hundred and thirty years after the ruine of Troy, or, as some other do think, 140 years. The Ionians being gone to Athens, as we have already declared, after Codrus's death, his sons Neleus and Androchus being their Leaders, they transported themselves into Asia, and into that confine of it which by them was called *Ionia*, the Towns whereof they inhabited.

In the space between these two transplantations, Theras, Aetion's son, the great grandchild of Polynices Oedipus's son, whose sister Argia being married to Aristodemus, brought forth to him Procles and Euristhenes, led a Colony of Minyans out of Laconia; Now these Minyans were the posterity of the Argonauts of Lemnos, who being driven out of Lemnos by the Pelasgians, they with entreaties obtained entertainment in Lacedemon, where being courteously received, and suffered to dwell in the City, as they began to grow insolent, and to vindicate to themselves the right of the Kingdom, they are cast into prisons; thence having changed their habits with their

Paul.  
Acha. p. 206.

The *Eolians*  
transplan-  
tation.  
Strabo. l. 13.

Paul.  
Acha. p. 206.  
Euseb. l. 8.  
Varr. c. 5.  
Herod. in  
vita Hom.  
Velleius.

their Wives, they escape into *Tegyrum*. But as the Lacedemonians were leading them to the punishment, *Teras* required, that they might be forgiven and granted to him, forso lead them to a new Plantation: Having obtained them for the companions of his Voyage, he led them into the Island *Calistia*, which is between Crete and Lybia, and commanded it to be called *Thera* after his name; Pausanias saith, That this was done an Age before the Ionick transplantation, which is esteemed to be thirty years.

After the Ionies transplantation out of Attica, the *Eolians* began to inhabit the City *Cuma Phricotia*, or *Phricotia*, or *Eolick*, who about the same time being departed out of Laconia towards *Lacria*, and possessed that Mountain *Phrisium*, whence being transported into Asia, they called that City *Cuma*, from that Mountain which they had possessed twenty years after *Leshon*, was frequented by her Citizens; but it's manifest, that this Plantation was increased at the Ionians arrival into Asia with new Colonies.

The *Elians* in the eighteenth year after they had arrived to *Cuma*, built *Smyrna*, that is 168 after the destruction of Troy; At which time was born that admirable and clear light of understanding, *Homer*, about a thousand years before Christ, *Solomon* then ruling over the Jews; although Authors do not punctually agree about his age: Near equal to him was *Hesiodus*, at the same time both in genius and fame, then living, who some say was a fore him, and others say after him; but the learned in the Poetick Art do gather from *Arcturus* rising, that he was equal to him.

*Cuma* was one of the Towns of the Island *Euboea*, out of which *Calicles*, *Hippocles*, *Cumens*, and *Megasthenes*, the Chalcidonian leading Colonies into Italy, there they built *Cuma*, whose travel and steering (as it's said) a Pidgeon directed flying about before them, or the noise of brals, such as was wont to be done at the Vigils of *Ceres* festivals. It's said, that they agreed so amongst themselves, that of the two people, the one should be the Colony, and the other should give him his name; and so having the *Cumeans* name, she was properly of the Chalcidionians, which *Virgil* therefore doth call *Euboeick*. *Strabo* saith, That of all the transplantations which went into Italy or Sicily, this was the ancientest, and therefore antecedent then the Trojan affairs; but *Velleius* and *Eusebius* judge it far otherwise.

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Per. 04.  
unto 3701.

Paul.  
Acha. p. 206.  
Strabo 13.

Herod. in  
vita Hom.  
Elian. l. 8.  
Varr. c. 5.

Velleius.  
Cyril. 7.  
Con. Jul.  
Vide Euseb. l. 13.  
de prep.

Longom.  
2 Sphar.  
P. 83.

Steph.  
Strabo 5.  
Vell. 1.  
Euseb. Chron.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of the Kingdoms of the Lacedemonians and Corinthians, and of Cypselus and Periander.

THE Dorians with the Heracles, having possessed Peloponnesus, established there two chief Kingdoms the Lacedemonian, and the Corinthian, the sons of Aristodemus, having expelled the Achaeans, and Orestidians, invested themselves of Lacedemon. Procles

Anno 3184.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 3701.

L. 2. de div.

Polyb. 4. p.  
271. and 304.

Vide l. 9. de  
doct. temp.  
c. 32.  
Corint. p. 47.

*Procles* and *Euristides* by name, whom *Cicero* hath declared to have been both alive, only that *Procles* dyed a year before his brother and did greater achievements, of whom the two families of Kings were propagated in that City, of the *Eurestibidians* which was esteemed the chiefest, and of the *Procleadians*, which was the second in Principality; this same was also called the house of the *Euredipondites*, from *Euripontes*, *Procles* his Grandchild: the list of the Kings, out of the first stock was more diligently observed, the other remained more obscure, without the number of the years that every one of them reigned. The beginning of that first Kingdome was soon after the return of the *Heracles* into *Peloponnesus*, in the 1102. year before Christ, it ended in *Egesipolis* and *Lycurgus*, who both after *Clitomer*'s death, did reign about the first Olymp. year, 140.

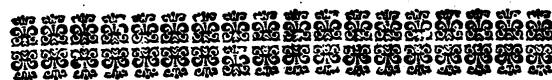
About the same time that the *Heracles* began to rule in *Lacedemon*, then also did the *Corinthians* erect a Kingdome, the which the *Eolians* or *Sisiphians* held afore, as *Pausanias* saith, out of which progeny the last *Doridas*, and *Hyanthydas* being disinvested of the kingdome by *Aletes*, *Hippotes*'s Son, grand-child of *Phylantes*, and kinsman to *Antiochus* in the third degree, and to *Hercules* in the fourth, remained as private men in the same City, and after that *Aletes*'s children did enjoy the kingdome, of whom *Telestes* is numbred the last by *Pausanias*, after whom were chosen the annuall Consulls; *Automenes* being the first; whom *Eusebius* makes a king, yet the new family of the *Corinthian* kings is wont to be esteemed, as extracted first of *Bacchides*, and is called the house of the *Bacchides*. The last king of the *Heracles*, *Telestes* by name, according to *Eusebius* ceased to reign three years before the first Olympiad, unto which are reckned 324. years from the beginning of *Aletes* reign, which is the next year after the *Heracles* return to *Peloponnesus*.

After *Automenes*, the chiefest of the same house of the *Bacchidians* did govern the City, one of the family being every year created chief Magistrate, whom they called *epitram*, unto *Cypselus*, who had his originall of *Melas*, *Antafus*'s son. This *Melus* was born in the Town *Goneusa*, near to *Sycio*, who with *Aletes* and the *Heracles*, overcame *Corinth*: he was by them afterwards made a Citizen. *Cypselus* reigned thirty years in Tyranny, and his Son *Periander*, fourty four. And therefore from the beginning of the *Heracles* reign, unto *Periander*'s death were 518. years.

Herod. l. 5. c.  
91.  
Aristot. 5.  
Poll. c. 11.

The END of the FIRST BOOK.

THE



Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

# THE HISTORY OF THE VVORLD. OR, AN Account of Time.

## The Second Book.

Containing 484 Years, from the fourth year of Salomon, which is 3702 year of the Julian Period, to the death of Cyrus, 4185 years of the same Period.

### CHAP. I.

Of the Kings of Judah, from Solomon to Jehosaphat; and of the Kings of the Israelites, from Jeroboam to Baasha, things done, and the times.

IN the 2972 year from the framing of things before Christ 1012 years. *Solomon*, Wisdome being gotten from God, and being furnished with incredible provision of plenty, which his father in times past unto this time had gathered together, he goes about the Temple in Jerusalem; which hereafter should be the holy place of the Jewish Religion. That was finished in the eighth year.

3 Kings 6.  
Solomon.

(4) After the Temple *Solomon* builded princely Palaces for himself; (5) 3 Kings 7.

Anno 3702.  
J. P. unto  
4185.

(b) 3 Kings. 11.

himself, and his Wife the daughter of *Pharaoh*, and also other houses, thirteen years. Although it may be, that he built the Temple of the Lord, and those Palaces at the same time, and so, that not in the 24th year of his Kingdom, but in the sixteenth all the building was brought to an end.

(c) In the mean while he far excelling all mortal men in riches and wisdom, when as he was rewarded with honour by the gifts and services both of Kings and people, and the bounds of his kingdom being farther enlarged, he enjoyed peace and rest; at last he bore not the greatness of prosperous affairs. For age now declining, he being taken by the enticements of Wives and Concubines, (both of which he had gathered to the number of a thousand) he is drawn away unto forbidden and wicked superstitions. Neither is it hitherto certain, whether he repented before his death, whereby a doubtful conjecture is left to posterity of his salvation.

(c) 3 Kings  
12.

*Rehoboam* overthroweth the Kingdom, rotten under foot by his fathers vice. (c) For this King being intreated by the people, that it might be done a little milder toward them, then had been done by his father, exerciseth dominion; the counsel of the old men being rejected, who thought something must be granted to their just complaints, he answereth them proudly and roughly after the opinion of his equals. Which thing to be lightened their minds, that ten Tribes being wholly rent from *David's* family, they appointed themselves a new King, *Jeroboam* the son of *Nebat*, an *Ephraimite*, only the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, being the numbers left for *Rehoboam*. By that, was the Jewish name cleft into two kingdoms; whereof one was called the kingdom of *Judah*, the other of *Israel*; but this latter also was wont to be called the kingdom of *Ephraim*, from its builder *Jeroboam*, and of *Samaria*; afterward the seat of the kingdom was transported into that Town, which hitherto had been placed in the City of *Sichem*, (a) which *Jeroboam* built in Mount *Ephraim*; for the strength of either kingdom was in *Jerusalem*. One and twenty Successors of *David* held the kingdom in the Tribe of *Judah*; of *Israel*, eighteen. The former ruled after the death of *Solomon* about 387 years, the latter almost 254.

(a) 3 Kings  
12. 254

That I may return to both those Kings, True piety towards God remained with neither. Yet the *Israelite* sooner failed, (b) who as soon as he was made King, fearing lest if his Subjects should go together to *Jerusalem* unto the solemn Feasts appointed, by little and little a weariness of their divorce should take them, he forbade them to go any more thither for the sake of holy things; and, that they might have that with them which they might worship, he rais'd up the golden likenesses of *Calves*, especially in *Bethel*, and *Dan*: to the which he also appointed sacrificing Priests, and profane worshippings of god like the true. Whom, burning Frankincense to the golden Image of the *Calf*, the Prophet did exceedingly chide. But the King bearing that unworthily

(b) 3 Kings  
12. 25.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4185.

unworthily straightway commanded him to be laid hold of; but when his hand, wherewith he beckened that he should be taken, had dried up, he being affrighted with this wonder, and being turned to intreaties, obtained favour of his punishment. The Prophet returning thither from whence he came, he is invited by another Prophet to his house, and there taking care of his body, contrary than was commanded him of God; straightway as soon as he departed, he is slain by a Lion, the Ass: whereby he was carried, being left safe.

(a) *Rehoboam* being touched with the same superstition of gods, he also drew his Subjects into destruction. Therefore he placed Altars and Temples here and there, and dedicated groves in profane places to gods. Hence God being angry, sent *Sefac* King of *Egypt* against them, whom *Josaphus* thinketh to be (b) *Sesostrius*, who coming to *Jerusalem* in the (c) fifth year of *Rehoboam*, the treasures, and all the presents being taken away, he departed.

(a) 3 Kings  
ch. 14.  
& 2 Chr. 12.

(d) Under *Abiam* the king, the son of *Rehoboam*, *Jeroboam* received a great slaughter. This king drew out eight hundred thousand into an Army. Against whom *Abiam* going with four hundred thousand, and being nigh besieged, he begging the help of his father's God, obtained a famous victory, five hundred thousand of his enemies being slain: The which by reason of the straits of both kingdoms, may scarce have credit, if it were related by any other witness than God. Neither yet could he by so great a blessing, be affrighted from imitating his fathers impiety.

(b) Lib. 8.  
ch. 4.  
(c) 3 Kings 14.  
25.  
(d) 2 Chr. 13.

(e) The beginnings of *Asa* were most laudable. For he took away the Altars and Idolls, and the steps of his fathers superstition, only the high places being left. These Altars were indeed for the worship of the true God, but here and there erected, and elsewhere, than in the chief City, against the injunction of *Moses*.

(e) 3 Kings  
15.  
& 2 Chr. 14.

(f) He reigning, *Zerah* king of the *Ethiopians* breaking in with ten hundred thousand souldiers, and three hundred Chariots; God serving the turn at the godly prayers of the king, he was vanquished with an universal slaughter. (g) Afterwards *Baalshah* fencing *Ramah* against *Asa*. *Benhadad* king of *Syria* being called out by great gifts, compelled him to leave off his enterprize. Which the Scripture maketh mention to be done in the (a) year 36.

(f) 2 Chr. 16.

(g) 3 Kings  
15. & 2.

to wit, from that time wherein both kingdoms were rent asunder. But when he was reproved by *Hanan* the Prophet, for that he had passed over his hope from God unto humane defences, he taking that grievously, commanded the admonisher to be led away into custody. Neither afterwards stood he in his duty. Therefore being afflicted for three years space with pains of his feet, the help of God being despised, he being diligently bent on the art of Physicians, he perished in the 41. year of his kingdom. (b) His buriall was celebrated with ambitious pomp, and precious superfluity of sweet smells and Oynments.

(a) 2 Chr. 16;  
1.

(b) 2 Chr. 16.  
14.



Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.  
(c) 2 Chr. 17.

(d) 2 Chr. 17.

The sixth from David was *Jehosaphat*, alike famous, both in godliness and riches. He had the chiefest care in the beginning of his kingdom, of appointing religion. (c) For the Monuments of wicked superstition being taken away, in the third year of his kingdom, he sent forth his Princes with Levites, about the walled towns to instruct the people, in the year of the *Julian* Circuit 3802, which was the year of Sabbath's or rest, and therefore the more fit for that purpose. By that thing to great a terror of his name cast it self on the neighbouring nations, that striving who should exceed, they paid him tributes. (d) But he had for the Garrison of his kingdom, that which may be incredible, seventeen hundred thousand of valiant men.

## CHAP. II.

Of the other Kings of Judah and Israel, even to Hezekiah.

(a) 3 Kings  
16. 15.

(b) 3 Kings  
16. 21.

(c) In the  
same place,  
v. 18.

(d) In the  
same place,  
v. 23.

(e) 3 Kings  
16. 24.  
Samarit built.

(f) 3 Kings  
16. 19.  
(g) 3 Kings  
16. 31.

(h) 2 Chr. 21.  
6.

(a) 3 Kings  
17. & 18.

BUT in the *Israelitish* Kingdom, (a) *Basabab* being dead, and his Son *Elam*, who both reigned twenty and four years, nor those entire; *Zimri*, by whom *Elam* was slain, enjoyed his affairs only seven daies. (b) From that time the people of *Israel* went into two factions. For the one part obeyed *Thebni* the Son of *Ginethi*, the other part followed *Amri*; (c) by whom when *Zimri* was besieged at *Tirza*, despairing of safety, he burned himself with his Pallace. And that Civill dissention seemeth to be continued for four years; that is, to the 31 year of *Asa*, wherein *Amri* (d) fought for the kingdom; the which we so interpret, that from that time he reigned alone, his competitor or fellow-suitor being taken away. (e) This is that *Amri*, who when he had the seat of his kingdom six years at *Tirza*, he bought the Mountain *Semoron*, of *Seiner*, and there built *Samarit*, whither also he passed over the mansion place of the kingdom, about the year of Christ, 923.

This man, being dead, in the twelfth year of his reign (f) *Ahab* his son succeeded, worse than his father, (g) who took to Wife *Jezabel* the daughter of the King of *Tyre* by unhappy enterprizes, a destroying and troublesome Woman. With affinity of this King *Jehosaphat* was infolded. (h) For he gave his daughter to *Joram* the son of *Ahab* & *Jezabel*. About that time, and about the 13 year of *Ahab*, as the Jews affirm in *Sederholam*, *Elijah* the *Tisbite* began to go forth; that is, about the year of the *Julian* Circuit 3809, before Christ 905, whose parents, and beginning of age the Scripture is silent of. (i) This man foretold a drought of three years and six moneths. Then staying sometime at the Brook *Cerith*, a Raven supplying him with victuals, he came forward to the Widow of *Sarepta*, whose dead son afterwards he restored to life. The same man, as it were an Umpire of the World, at the promised day restored rain and fruitfulness to the Earth: When the Priests

Priests of *Baal* being called forth to confirm the faith of the true God by a miracle, and they bestirring themselves in vain, he had obtained or pleased God, by sacrifice-fire being called forth out of Heaven, and had slain 850 of those Priests in number. For that thing he being fought for to the death, and flying from the threatenings of wicked *Jezabel*, he enjoyeth talk with God, and by his (b) warning, chooseth *Elijah* the Prophet his Successor.

(c) *Benhadad* King of *Syria* moving War again and again against *Ahab* with a strong Army, *Elijah* frustrating all his endeavours, after a most foul slaughter, in which a hundred and twenty seven thousand (d) *Syrians* were slain, he being humble desired peace.

(e) But the King of the *Israelites* being fully bent to fallhood against so many benefits of God, gave punishments to the utmost, both by other wickednesses, & also by the reproach of *Naboth* who was slain, and in the battel which he had begun against the *Syrians*, in the third year when he had made peace with them, being smitten thorow with an Arrow, he dyed the death. But *Jehosaphat*, who by joyning Armies together came into the fellowship of his danger, by the help of God is wonderfully snatched out. (g) After these things innumerable multitudes of *Moabites* and *Ammonites* pitching their Camps against *Jehosaphat*; by his prayers they were destroyed by a slaughter: Whereby the prey was so great, that they could not carry it away in three daies.

*Ahab* being dead, *Ahaziah* his son held the kingdom of the *Israelites* in the year before Christ 397. Moreover, in which year *Elijah* being caught up into Heaven in a fiery Chariot, cast his cloak on the top of *Elijah*, and appointed him the heir of his Prophetical gift. The Chronicle of the *Hebrews* which they name *Seder-hulam* doth confirm that to have happened in the 17th year of *Jehosaphat*. But also the (a) fourth book of the Kings sheweth, that not long after the death of *Ahaziah* King of *Israel*, *Elijah* was a liver on the earth. For in the same year *Ahaziah* dyeth, who being sick, had sent certain men on a Message, to ask counsel of *Baalzebub* concerning his recovery; whom *Elias* meeting, bade them to tell the blamed Prince, that he should dye of that disease. (b) By and by, fire being called down from Heaven, he consumed the men of the guard that were sent to take him.

After *Ahaziah* his brother *Joram* was chief over *Israel* in the (c) eighteenth year of *Jehosaphat*, an heir of his fathers wickedness, although he was sometimes more gentle. To this King leading an Army with *Jehosaphat* and the King of the *Edomites*, against the *Moabites*; and being in danger in a thirsty Country for want of drink, *Elijah* came for relief for *Jehosaphat's* sake: and besides water, gave victory also over the enemy: in which War the King of the *Moabites* came unto that despair, that he being inclosed by a siege laid, and in vain endeavouring to break forth, (d) he sacrificed

Anno 3700.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.  
(4) 4 Kings 4.  
& following.

crificed his own son the heir of his kingdom, through a cruel murdering Religion. After these things *Elisba* waxed famous in a greater manner by miracles, and foretellings of things to come; the which are declared in some Chapters of the (4) fourth book of the *Kings*.

(3) 4 Kings  
10.  
& 2 Chr. 2.

About the same time two *Jorams* both ruled in the kingdom, the one the son of *Jehosaphat*, the other of *Abab*. For *Jehosaphat* in twenty and five years finished his reign; after whose death *Joram* slew his brethren, and by the like unappineffe and treachery the other four years being finished, he (6) gave place to *Ahaziab* the son of *Athaliah*, the daughter of *Abab*, the Niece of *Amri*, who scarce performing his office a whole year, was slain by *Jehu* with *Joram* the King of *Israel*. For the Lord carried up this man to the kingdom of *Israel*, to blot out utterly the stock of *Abab*. The which as soon as he had gotten, he stoutly indeed endeavoured that work for God: for he commanded *Jezebel* to be cast headlong out of a window: whose dead carcass when it was sought for burial, nothing of her was found besides the skull and feet, and upper parts of her hands; the rest, the dogs devoured; but he took care also at the same moment to have the seventy sons of *Ahab* slain. Also all the sacrificing Priests of *Baal* gathered together into one place through the shew of a holy solemnity, he commanded to be killed, he burned the Image with fire, demolished its house; but that which remained, he restored not the worship of his fathers god: and he abode in the worshipping of the Calves which *Jeroboam* had placed.

(4) 4 Kings  
11.

But (c) *Athaliah* the Wife of *Joram* King of *Judah*, *Ahaziab* being dead, whatsoever remained of the kingly stock, she took away, and proceeded with tyranny. One son of *Ahaziab*, *Joash* by name, was delivered from death by his Aunt *Josaba*, the Wife of *Jehoiadab* the high Priest. Whom, after six years, *Athaliah* being killed, *Jehoiadab* restored into his fathers Throne.

(2) 4 Kings  
12. & 2 Chr.  
(b) 2 Chr. 24.  
25.

(c) In the  
same place,  
v. 20.

(2) *Joash* King of *Judah*, as long as *Jehoiadab* lived, might be reckoned among the best kings. He being dead (6) in the 130th year of his age, being corrupted by the flatteries of Courtiers, his fathers Religion being despised, he had regard to groves and Idols. And he added to his wicked superstition the (c) most unworthy death of *Zachary* the Prophet, the son of that *Jehoiadab*, to whom he owed his life and kingdom: because he, the Spirit of God constraining him, reproved their wickedness. Neither did God long deter the revenging of so great wickedness. The year following, *Hazael* King of *Syria* with small Armies, having wasted the kingdom of *Judah*, slew all the Princes, and could scarce be turned away from *Jerusalem*, the which he now sought occasion against, by great gifts, into which all the treasures were poured out. *Joash* himself a little after being taken with a most grievous sickness, being thrust thorow by his servants in his bed, dyed in the fourtieth year of his reign, neither was he laid among the Sepulchres of the Kings.

Among

Anno 3700.  
J. P. unto  
4185.

(4) Kings 13. &  
following.  
*Jehosaphat* king  
of *Israel*.  
(d) 4 Kings  
14. & 2 Chr.  
25.

Among the *Israelites Jehu* being dead, his son *Jehoahaz*, as also *Joash* the son of *Jehoahaz* do both reign sixteen years. Then *Jeroboam*, the son of *Iam* fourty one years, all not worthy to be named, and given to Idols. Moreover, *Joash* king of *Judah* had *Amaziab* his son his Successor thirty one years. *Amaziab*, *Azariah* took by craft, who is also *Oziab*, and was chief 52 years.

The eleventh from *David* reigned *Amaziab* the son of *Joash*, (d) whose beginnings, even as of his father, were worthy of praise, their ends were unlike. He raising war against the *Edomites* with the whole strength of the kingdom, armed three hundred thousand of his Souldiers: beside whom, he hired out of the *Israelitish* kingdom an hundred thousand; the which the charges which he had bestowed on them being sleighted, he straightway sent home at the word of one Prophet, forbidding him to make use of the help of such. God being delighted with the king's obedience, gave him to overcome his enemy. But that victory, as prosperous affairs are oftentimes wont, turn'd into the destruction of the Conquerour. For very many Images of gods being gotten among the spoyles, he pursued with worship and holy rites: Neither would he hearken to the Prophet affrighting him from that wickedness. Therefore he being forsaken of God, first of all he is overcome and taken by *Joash* king of *Israel*, whom he had foolishly provoked; the Walls of *Jerusalem* being broken down; all his riches as well sacred as kingly being taken away. At length, *Amaziab* after fifteen years from the death of *Joash*, was slain by the conspiracy of his servants.

(a) 4 Kings  
13.

(a) *Joash* reigning, and in his tenth year, if any credit may be given to the Hebrew Chronicles, *Elisba* dyeth, which is the 3884 year of the Julian Circuit; the which by this account, must needs perform that Prophetical gift very long, under six kings of *Israel*; he dying, promised a threefold victory to King *Joash* over the *Syrian*; which also a little after he obtained. But into his Sepulchre the dead carcass of a man being cast, straightway as soon as it touched the bones of the good man, it is raised to life.

*Azariah* reigned the twelfth from *David*, or *Oziab*, a Prince good enough, and therefore he being covered with God's defence, happily governed the kingdom. But at last forgetting himself whiles he usurpeth through pride the offices belonging to the Priests, being made leproous on a sudden, he is driven out from all, even civil office, the ordering of the kingdom being passed over unto his son *Jotham*.

Among the *Israelites Jeroboam* at that time swayed the Scepter, in which time *Azariah* began; for this man is said to have begun in the (b) 27. year of him.

(b) 4 Kings  
15. 1.

Under this and *Oziab* kings, many Prophets flourished, especially in the kingdom of *Israel*; the which as it was more corrupt, so it had need of more often remedies. (a) Therefore while *Jeroboam* reigned, *Jonab* stood forth or up, who foretold to him a victory over the *Syrians*. Moreover under *Oziab* were famous, *Hosea*, *Joi*, *Amos*, *Abdias*, *Isaiah* also prophesied under the same king. (b) The

(a) 4 Reg. 14.  
25.

Anno 3722.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(b) 4 Kings  
15. 4.  
(c) 4 Kings  
16. & 2 Chr.  
28. 2.

(b) The thirteenth from David in the kingdom of Judah was *Joram*, nor unlike to his Father *Oziah* in godliness. (c) But his son *Abaz* was the worst of Kings, and so despised his fathers Religion, that he worshipped *Baal*, and set Images and Altars by him, he sacrificed his sons by a wicked custome in the fire. For that thing the neighbouring kings vexed him with very great slaughters; the king of *Israel*, *Syria*, and the *Affyrians*, whom he had stirred up against this king with great rewards: also the *Edomites*, and *Philistines*. That he might appease those calamities by foolish counsel, he appointed cursed rites, to pacifie the gods of *Damascus* towards him, and the Temple being shut up, he rais'd up Altars here and there to Heathenish gods.

*Abaz* governing the Tribe of Judah, *Hofea* was chief over the *Israelites*, a little more tolerable than former Kings of *Israel*; neither yet cast he away the worship of vain gods, or brought over his mind to the worshipping of the true.

But (d) *Hezekiah* king of Judah, who succeeded his father *Abaz* next to *David*, far excelled all Princes. For this king cast down all Images and Temples, cut down the groves, took away the high places: And lastly, wholly obeyed the Law of *Moses*. In the sixth year of this king, the ninth of *Hofea*, the 3993 year of the Julian Period, *Salmanassar* the king of the *Affyrians*, *Samaria* being taken, he carried away all the *Israelites* into *Affyria*, and so the kingdom of *Israel* ceased, which remained almost 254 years.

(a) In the fourteenth year of *Hezekiah*, the 4000th year of the Julian Circuit *Sennacherib* the son of *Salmanassar*, king of the *Affyrians*, breaking into *Judea*, took many Towns, or overthrew them. And then he sends *Rabshakeh* with Armies to besiege *Jerusalem*, who returning, while he is making ready to invade *Jerusalem*, in one night an hundred eighty and five thousand are slain by the Angel.

In the same year, after the slaughter of the *Affyrians*, *Hezekiah* falls into a deadly disease; of the which he was healed from God by *Isaiah* the Prophet, and his life prolonged for fifteen years. (b) They do disorderly, who place the disease of *Hezekiah* before the slaughter of the *Affyrians*.

Among the *Israelites*, who were carried away by *Salmanassar*, (c) was *Tobiah*, a most holy man, whose History is delivered in a particular book of writing.

The sixteenth from David reigneth *Manasseh*, in the twelfth year of his age, who so degenerated from his fathers manners, that thou canst not know, whether, on either part, was more famous: the one in piety towards God, and performances of other virtues; the other in the contempt of his fathers worship, in cruelty, lust, whereby he made forcible assaults on sacred, and likewise on humane things. Therefore in the eighth year, as we guesse, of his reign, he being taken by the Princes of the king of *Affyria*'s Army, and bound in fetters, he is brought into *Babylon*; where he being shewed his evils, and turned with his whole heart unto the

(b) See the  
9. of the doct.  
of times, ch.  
36.

(c) See 10. of  
doctr. of times,  
ch. 4.

4 Kings 37. &  
2 Chr. 33.

the Lord, he is wholly restored by him, and straightway the Idols and all the Monuments of wicked superstition being taken away, he endeavoured to shew forth the worship of his father's God. (a) To us, as also to many others, it seemeth to be probable, that *Manasseh* was taken by *Merodach*, both ruler of *Babylon*, and subject to the King of *Affyria*; For both their times do agree, as we shall see afterwards. And about that time, (b) the History of *Judith* and *Holophernes* to have happened. For *Nebuchadnezzar* one of the successours of *Assarhaddon*, had the *Medes* and *Babylonians*, and other people, and Lords of great power subject unto him: yet so, that they in the mean while managed their own affairs by themselves, and severally also they themselves exercised Government. (c) Wherefore about the year before Christ, 688. we believe the famous act of *Judith* to have happened.

(d) After *Ammon* the Son of *Manasseh*, who imitating the former life of his father, he most wickedly reigned, even to two years space. (e) *Josiah* a child of eight years old, was exalted to the Government, who excelled in holiness and religion, even from his tender years, and all the remembrance of Images and heathenish devotions being wholly abolished, he worshipped God sincerely and from his heart. In the eighteenth year of his reign he repaired the Temple by contribution Money. There the book of the Law being found, and read before the King, for the terror of punishment denounced against the backsliders, he rent his Garments. In the same year he proclaimed a Pass-over with a most famous provision at *Jerusalem*. But at length, while he set himself with an Army unadvisedly against *Necho*, or *Necho* King of *Egypt*, bending himself against the *Affyrians*, he was slain in battel the 31th year of his reign.

Anno 3904.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(a) See the  
12. of Doctr.  
of times, ch. 26.

(b) Judith.

(c) See the 11.  
of Doctr. of  
times, ch. 26.

(d) 4 Kin. 21.  
& 2 Chr. 33.

(e) 4 King. 23.  
and following,  
& 2 Chr. 34.  
and following.

## CHAP. III.

Of the succeders of Josiah, especially Zedekiah, and the destruction of Jerusalem, and their seventy years bondage.

THE (a) sons of *Josiah* are reckoned four; *Johanan*, *Joakim*, *Zedekiah*, and *Shallum*. Of the which (b) *Jeremiah* writeth, that *Shallum* to have reigned after his father. Therefore he is the same with *Jehoiachaz*, who succeeded *Josiah*, and reigned six Moneths. (c) *Necho* King of *Egypt*, he was both cast down from his royal seat by *Necho* King of *Egypt*, and carried away into *Egypt*: who appointed *Eliakim* or *Joakim* his brother King in his place. Moreover it seemeth *Johanan* deceased, *Josiah* as yet living. Therefore *Jehoiachaz* being taken away who, as is suspected, was by a faction of the people put before his elder brethren. *Joakim* reigned in the year of the Jul. Cir. 4104. in whole (d) third year entering, *Nebuchadnezzar* being sent by his Father *Nabopolassar* into *Syria*, and (e) *Necho* King of *Egypt* being overcome, he subdued *Joakim* to himself in (f) the entrance of his fourth.

See animad.  
Epiph. pag. 18  
& 19. of Doctr.  
of times, ch. 61.

(a) 2 Chr. 3.  
15.

(b) Chap. 22.  
11.

(c) 4 Kings 23.  
30.

(d) Dan. 1.  
(e) 4 Kings  
24. 7.

(f) Jer. 15. 1.

Anno 3763.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(R) 4 Kings  
24. 1.  
(b) 4 Kings  
24. 36. 8.  
Chron. 6.  
Jechoniah.

(a) 4 Kings  
25.  
Jer. 52.  
Zedechiah.

(b) Of Jul. Cir.  
4123. before  
Christ, 591.  
(c) Chap. 34.

Jerusalem  
taken.

(d) Ch. 39. 2.  
(e) Ch. 52. 6.

(f) Jer. 52. 6.

(g) 4 Kings  
25.  
Jer. 42.

(a) Epiph. of  
Prophetic  
men.

fourth year. (g) Who, when after three years he had rebelled, he was taken by the Army of *Nebuchadnezzar*; and *Isakim* his Son, who also was called *Iechoniah*, commanded to reign in his room. But after three Moneths, *Nebuchadnezzar* coming again to besiege *Jerusalem*, (h) *Iechoniah* yielded to him of his own accord, and he was led away with his mother, and nobles, and many others, into *Babylon*. This man in the fourth book of Kings is said to be made king, being eighteen years of age, but in the second of *Chronicles*, at eight years of age; the which may be so interpreted; that he was taken by his father into the fellowship of the kingdom, about the second year of his reign, and reigned with him ten years.

(a) The last King of *Judah* made by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Iechoniah*, is *Mabaniab*, who is also called *Zedechiah*, the son of *Iofiah*, he also being a forsaker of divine worship and faith, as well payed to God, as performed to him of *Babylon*, by whom he was made King. For from the ninth year of his reign he revolted, and provoked the same against him. Therefore he began to besiege *Jerusalem* at the (b) beginning of the year of rest, or Sabbaths. Moreover the 3393. year of the World, as is gathered (c) out of *Jeremy*, and in the third year it being taken, and the Temple burnt with fire, *Zedechiah* being brought back from flight, and being deprived of his eyes, with the which he had first seen his children slain before him, he is led away in chains unto *Babylon*.

The City was won by assault in the year before Christ 589. in the fourth moneth and fifth day, (d) as *Jeremy* writeth, but the same man in another place determined it the (e) ninth day. Indeed on the fifth day some part of the City was seized on, but on the ninth wholly broken up. Which day agreeth with *Lune 16*. (f) in the following Moneth, which was *Ab*, on the 10. day, which runneth into the 20. of *Iuly*, the City with the Temple is set on fire.

With *Zedechiah* the King, were famous Prophets, *Ieremiah* and *Ezekiel*. But *Daniel* lived then a young man in *Babylon*, whither he was carried with the rest, in the fourth year of *Isakim*. But *Ezekiel*, with *Iechoniah*, after eight years (g) *Ieremiah*, who for many years, and especially in the time of the siege, was cruelly vexed by his own countrey men; the City being taken at the command of *Nebuchadnezzar*, he was honourably esteemed by *Nebuzardan*, Leave being granted him of dwelling where he would. When he would not depart from the ruins of his country, being recommended to *Gedaliah*, whom the *Chaldean* made chief over the remainder of the people, he a little while after being slain by *Ishmael*, is snatched away against his will with *Baruch*, by his own people. There while he withstood the wickednesses of the *Jews*, having suffered very many things, (a) at length by them is slain.

CHAP.

and his youngest at the setting up it's Gates. On the other side *Jordan* against this *Jericho*, is *Mount-Nebo*, where God having shewn *Moses* the promised Land, took him away, not suffering him to enter therein. Lastly, *Jerusalem*; built by *Melchizedek*, that is, a King of righteousness in spirit and figure; and *King of Salem*, that is, King of peace, the effect of the former: which standing among the *Jebusites*, was named *Jebusalem*; and, a letter being altered, *Hierusalem*, or a City of peace. It was built on *Mount Sion*, having a ditch about it cut out of a rock: which was not conquered, till *David* (by *Joab*) took it, although the Citizens covertly and presumptuously said, their blind and lame could defend it. Then was this the Royal Seat; In which *Solomon* built the magnificent Temple, the place of general worship: which being destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon* in the 1350th year of the World, was (after the *Jews* return from Captivity) rebuilt; the Workmen holding their swords in one hand, and tools in the other, through the great opposition of the *Samaritans*. Yet was it not outwardly in divers respects so glorious as the former: But the Lord promised (by the Prophet) it should be more glorious: which was fulfilled not only by Christ the light of the World, his personal preaching glad tidings therein; but especially by dwelling in his Saints, of whose bodies (which are his Temple) that was but a type. *Herod* the *Ascalonite*, in favour of the *Jews*, plucking it down, made it much exceed the second, though somewhat inferior to the first. But it was again destroyed by *Titus*, *Vespasian's* son, Aug. 10. (on which very day, *Nebuchadnezzar* burnt the first with fire) which City, to be besieged, the *Jews* their rebellion and obstinacy against the Roman Emperour, (under whose power they were) to fulfill their own wish in crucifying Christ, that his blood might be upon them and their children, after some years, caused; and at the time whereof, there dyed by sword and famine above a million of people in the City it self, besides near 100000 taken prisoners at the taking it, and in other Cities well nigh a million more; and all this from the 12th year of *Nero*, unto the second of *Vespasian*, which was within 4 years time. And in the 136 year of Christ, (through 4 rebellions by them raised) they were by *Adrian* the Emperour, in general banished never there to inhabit but as strangers: since which, they being dispersed over the Earth, have been banished out of *England* first; then out of *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Naples*, & *Sicily*. Yet are there many in *Germany*, *Poland*, *Amsterdam* in *Holland*, (where they have a Synagogue) *Italy*, and chiefly *Rome* it self, with the Pope's jurisdiction of *Avignon*: which permission of them under the Pope, although an expectation of their conversion be the declared reason; yet considering the Papi's Image-worship, whereby they are stumbled; and they also not being suffered to see so much as the New Testament: as also, that at their conversion, they must likewise convert all their goods to the Church, as ill-gotten; it may be rather judged to be from profit hereby arising. When *Julian* the Apostate would (to increase the *Jews* number, and diminish the *Christians*) have re-

G g g g g

built

Ann. 379.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(R) 4 Kings  
24. 1.  
(b) 4 Kings  
24. 36. 38.  
2 Chron. 6.  
Jechoniah.

(a) 4 Kings  
25.  
Jer. 52.  
Zedechiah.

(b) Of Jul. Cir.  
4123. before  
Christ, 591.  
(c) Chap. 34.

Jerusalem taken.  
(d) Ch. 39. 2.  
(e) Ch. 52. 6.

(f) Jer. 52. 6.

(g) 4 Kings  
25.  
Jer. 42.

(a) Epiph. of  
Prophetie.  
mcm.

fourth year. (g) Who, when after three years he had rebelled, he was taken by the Army of *Nebuchadnezzar*; and *Ioakim* his Son, who also was called *Jechoniah*, commanded to reign in his room. But after three Moneths, *Nebuchadnezzar* coming again to besiege *Jerusalem*, (h) *Jechoniah* yielded to him of his own accord, and he was led away with his mother, and nobles, and many others, into *Babylon*. This man in the fourth book of Kings is said to be made king, being eighteen years of age, but in the second of *Chronicles*, at eight years of age; the which may be so interpreted; that he was taken by his father into the fellowship of the kingdom, about the second year of his reign, and reigned with him ten years.

(a) The last King of *Judah* made by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jechoniah*, is *Mathaniah*, who is also called *Zedechiah*, the son of *Josiah*, he also being a forsaker of divine worship and faith, as well payed to God, as performed to him of *Babylon*, by whom he was made King. For from the ninth year of his reign he revolted, and provoked the same against him. Therefore he began to besiege *Jerusalem* at the (b) beginning of the year of rest, or Sabbaths. Moreover the 3393. year of the World, as is gathered (c) out of *Jeremy*, and in the third year it being taken, and the Temple burnt with fire, *Zedechiah* being brought back from flight, and being deprived of his eyes, with the which he had first seen his children slain before him, he is led away in chains unto *Babylon*.

The City was won by assault in the year before Christ 589. in the fourth moneth and fifth day, (d) as *Jeremy* writeth, but the same man in another place determined it the (e) ninth day. Indeed on the fifth day some part of the City was seized on, but on the ninth wholly broken up. Which day agreeth with *June* 16. (f) in the following Moneth, which was *Ab*, on the 10. day, which runneth into the 20. of *July*, the City with the Temple is set on fire.

With *Zedechiah* the King, were famous Prophets, *Jeremiah* and *Ezekiel*. But *Daniel* lived then a young man in *Babylon*, whither he was carried with the rest, in the fourth year of *Ioakim*. But *Ezekiel*, with *Jechoniah*, after eight years (g) *Jeremiah*, who for many years, and especially in the time of the siege, was cruelly vexed by his own countrymen; the City being taken at the command of *Nebuchadnezzar*, he was honourably esteemed by *Nebuzardan*, Leave being granted him of dwelling where he would. When he would not depart from the ruins of his country, being recommended to *Gedaliah*, whom the *Chaldean* made chief over the remainder of the people, he a little while after being slain by *Ishmael*, is snatched away against his will with *Baruch*, by his own people. There while he withstood the wickednesses of the *Jews*, having suffered very many things, (a) at length by them is slain.

CHAP.

and his youngest at the setting up it's Gates. On the other side *Jordan* against this *Jericho*, is *Mount-Nebo*, where God having shewn *Moses* the promised Land, took him away, not suffering him to enter therein. Lastly, *Jerusalem*; built by *Melchizedek*, that is, a King of righteousness in spirit and figure; and *King of Salem*, that is, King of peace, the effect of the former: which standing among the *Jebusites*, was named *Jebusalem*; and, a letter being altered, *Hierusalem*, or a City of peace. It was built on *Mount Sion*, having a ditch about it cut out of a rock: which was not conquered, till *David* (by *Joab*) took it, although the Citizens covertly and presumptuously said, their blind and lame could defend it. Then was this the Royal Seat; In which *Solomon* built the magnificent Temple, the place of general worship: which being destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon* in the 1350th year of the World, was (after the *Jews* return from Captivity) rebuilt; the Workmen holding their (words in one hand, and tools in the other, through the great opposition of the Samaritans. Yet was it not outwardly in divers respects so glorious as the former: But the Lord promised (by the Prophet) it should be more glorious: which was fulfilled not only by Christ the light of the World, his personal preaching gladtydings therein; but especially by dwelling in his Saints, of whose bodies (which are his Temple) that was but a type. *Herod* the *Ascalonite*, in favour of the *Jews*, plucking it down, made it much exceed the second, though somewhat inferior to the first. But it was again destroyed by *Titus*, *Vespasian's* son, Aug. 10. (on which very day, *Nebuchadnezzar* burnt the first with fire) which City, to be besieged, the *Jews* their rebellion and obstinacy against the Roman Emperour, (under whose power they were) to fulfill their own wish in crucifying Christ, that his blood might be upon them and their children, after some years, caused; and at the time whereof, there dyed by sword and famine above a million of people in the City it self, besides near 100000 taken prisoners at the taking it, and in other Cities well nigh a million more; and all this from the 12th year of *Nero*, unto the second of *Vespasian*, which was within 4 years time. And in the 136 year of Christ, (through 2 rebellions by them raised) they were by *Adrian* the Emperour, in general banished never there to inhabit but as strangers: since which, they being dispersed over the Earth, have been banished out of *England* first; then out of *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Naples*, & *Sicily*. Yet are there many in *Germany*, *Poland*, *Amsterdam* in *Holland*, (where they have a Synagogue) *Italy*, and chiefly *Rome* it self, with the Pope's jurisdiction of *Avignon*: which permission of them under the Pope, although an expectation of their conversion be the declared reason; yet considering the Papists Image-worship, whereby they are stumbled: and they also not being suffered to see so much as the New Testament: as also, that at their conversion, they must likewise convert all their goods to the Church, as ill-gotten; it may be rather judged to be from profit hereby arising. When *Julian* the Apostate would (to increase the *Jews* number, and diminish the Christians) have re-

G g g g g built

built this Temple; an Earthquake caſting up the foundations, and fire from Heaven conſuming the timber-work, hindered that deſign. Yet the City was re-edified by the Emperour *Ælius Adrianus*, (who calling it after his own name *Ælia*, gave it to the Chriſtians) though not in the very place of the old, every way: for, according to the relation of an eye-witneſs, on its South ſide, much of Mount-Sion is left without the walls, which was anciently the heart of the old City; taking in alſo now, both Mount-Calvary, and Chriſt's Sepulchre, called the holy grave, within thoſe Walls that were built by *Selimus* the Turk: ſo that (faith he) a man may boldly affirm, the moſt part to be built on that place, where the firſt Jeruſalem was; as appears by the Mountains mentioned in Scripture, whereon Jeruſalem is both ſituated and environed; who reſerve their ſame names to this day; as Mount Sion, Calvary, Moriah, and Oliver, which laſt Mountain the Valley of *Jehophat* divideth from the City. There is in it alſo the Temple of the Sepulchre built by *Helena*, (Mother to *Conſtantine* the Great, with a little Chappel over it: and in the place of the Temple, burnt by *Titus*, is another great Temple builded by *Sultan Selim Seliman*, reſerved and highly regarded by the Turks out of their reſpect to *Solomon*: near which, or within whole Courts, none (called a Chriſtian) may enter, under pain of loſing his head. The Temple of the Sepulchre, hath been, and is much revered and reſorted unto; for the ſight of which every one payeth 9 Crowns tribute to the Turk, or (as a Traveller thither ſaith) 12 chickens of gold, was diſpatched from each of them for the Turk, as tribute for going into the holy grave.

The *Levites* (of whom there were four ſorts, *Panies* or younglings till 25 years old; *Graduates*, who after 4 years ſtudy might oppoſe and answer in the Law; *Licenciates*, who exerciſed the Prieſt's Office; And *Rabbins* or *Doctors*, the higheſt, who expounded the Law) had 48 Cities allotted them, out of every Tribe, and were reckoned of that Tribe where their City was. *Simeon* alſo inhabited onely a part of *Judah's* portion; according to their father's prophetic, That he would divide them in *Jacob*, and ſcatter them in *Israel*: ſo that *Joſeph's* ſons, *Ephraim* and *Manaſſes*, made up the 12 Tribes. They were called Hebrews from *Heber*, who was before *Abraham*: and of 70 ſouls when *Jacob* went down into Egypt, grew a multitude in 215 years ſpace, notwithstanding their oppreſſion. Neither was any Province thought to be ſo proportionably peopled, as *Paleſtina*; in which (being not above 160 miles long, and 60 broad, the length being reckoned from *Dan* to *Beerſheba*) when *David* numbred the people, they found a million and 300000 fighting men, beſides *Benjamin*; but now ſtrip even of all ornaments, except the beauty and bounty of the ſoyl, which is deſective alſo. The Jews had 16 Judges, 415 years; *Mofes* being the firſt, and *Samuel* the laſt: who having judged them four years; in the year of the World 2873, they deſired a King like other Nations. They had three Kings before

the

the kingdom was divided, *Saul*, *David*, and *Solomon*. There were 17 Kings of *Israel*, *Jeroboam* the ſon of *Nebat* being the firſt, and *Hoſea* the laſt; who being overcome by *Salmanaſſar*, the *Iſraelites* were carried captive into *Aſſyria* in 3232; whence thoſe ten Tribes never (as we find) returned. The Kings of *Judah* were 20. *Rehoboam*, *Solomon's* ſon, was the firſt, from whom the ten Tribes rent; *Zedekias* was the laſt, in whole reign, *Nebuchadnezzar* the Proud, deſtroying *Jeruſalem*, captivated the people into *Babylon* his kingdom; (two Kings having reigned in *Judah* after *Iſrael's* captivity). Who ſo remaining 70 years, *Cyrus* King of *Perſia* (to whom the *Babylonians* were now ſubject) gave them liberty to return, and build the City and Temple: which finiſhed, they choſe them Governours of the chief of *David's* houſe; whereof *Zorobabel* was the firſt of the 15; *Johannes Hircanus* the laſt, of them that were of *David's* ſtock.

But the Dominion of *Jewry* being vexed by the Egyptians on one ſide, and the Syrians on the other, during their governments; compelling them withall, to eat Swines-fleſh, &c; *Mattathias* and his five ſons were ſtirred up to reſiſt *Antiochus Epiphanes*, and the Syrians; who having been very victorious over them, *Judas Machabæus* (reckoned one of the Nine Worthies) was choſen Captain of the Jews; in the year of the World 3799; who vanquiſhed three of *Antiochus* his great Captains, with their three numerous Armies. Three Princes of *Judea* there were after him, *Johannes Hircanus* being the laſt, in 3831. Then were there four *Machabæan* Kings of *Judah*: *Ariſtobulus*, the firſt, who ſtarving his Mother, ſlew his brother, *Alexander* was the ſecond; a bloody Tyrant born to ſubjects and enemies. Then a woman, *Alexandra* or *Solome*, the Tyrant's wife. Laſtly, *Hircanus*, who being diſturbed by his younger brother *Ariſtobulus*, was eſtabliſhed by *Pompey* the Roman, in his Throne, he with his ſons being impriſoned at *Rome*; one of whom (*Alexander*) eſcaping and diſquieting his Country, was ſeized on and ſlain. But *Julius Cæſar* (*Pompey's* victorious competitor) freeing the other brother *Antigonus*, he depoſing *Hircanus*, cut off his ears; who ſuddenly after, was ſlain by *Mark-Anthony*, and a ſtranger had the kingdom in 3930. Of which ſtrangers, there were five Kings. *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* an *Idumean*, being the firſt, made ſo by *Auguſtus*: and at which time Chriſt was born; and *Agrippa minor*, or the Leſſe, who was the laſt: before whom with *Feſtus*, *Paul* pleaded, and in whole time *Jeruſalem* was deſtroyed; and the kingdom made a Roman Province, in the year 73 after the birth of Chriſt: which being re-edified (as was ſaid) by *Ælius Adrianus*, and given to the Chriſtians: *Coſroes* King of *Perſia* took it from them in 615; from whom the *Saracens* wreſting it in 637; and the Turks from them in 1009, one *Peter a French Hermite* ſtirred up the Princes of the Weſt to relieve the oppreſſed Chriſtians; who came at laſt to *Jeruſalem*, and took it. *Godfrey* Duke of *Bulloign* for his merits therein, was ſaluted the firſt King of *Jeruſalem* and *Paleſtine*, in

G g g g g 2

1099,

1099. of which (though he would not in that place where Christ wore a Crown of Thorns, be Crowned with Gold, yet for the common goods sake, he took the title; there was nine of these Kings whereof *Guy of Lusignan* was the last; for in his time, *Saladin* Sultan of *Egypt* in 1187, won that Kingdome, which his successours defended, untill that in 1517, *Selimus* the first, Turkish Emperour, added both *Palestine* and *Egypt* also to his Empire. Yet after that *Saladin* had taken *Jerusalem*; the Christians retiring into some Towns thereof, made them good against the Turk; under Conquest of *Monterrat*, *Henry* Earl of *Champaigne*, and *J. de B.enne*, who was the last Christian King that possessed any thing in *Palestine* or *Syria*; yet *Yolanda*, *Bren* his daughter, marrying *Frederick* King of *Naples*, he intitled himself King of *Jerusalem* in her right; whereupon the Kings of *Spain*, being heirs and possessors of *Naples*, do now assume that empty title. Three Orders of Knighthood were also erected for defence of the Holy land so called, against infidels. The first, by *Helena*, *Constantine* the Great his Mother, and called Knights of the Sepulchre. The second by one *Gerard* in 1124, named Knights of Saint *John* of *Jerusalem*, (which was also confirmed by the Pope) who being expelled *Palestine*, retired on *Rhodes*, and being forced thence also (at length) by the Turk, are now in the Isle of *Malta*, and called Knights thereof. The third were Templars by *Hugh* of *Puyennes* in 1113, confirmed also by the Pope: who possessing very many Lordships, even in all Provinces of *Europe*; their great revenue was not the least cause of their dissolving; yet were there crimes proved against this order, as revolting from obedience to the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*, their visitour, unspeakable pride, and also sins against nature; so that, being dissolved, their lands were given to the *Hospitaliers*, or Knight of *St. John*.

**EDUMEA**, (which the *Edomites*, *Esau's* off-spring once inhabited, as also Mount *Seir*, or wilderness of *Edom*, counted part of the *Arabia*, where the *Israelites* were stung with fiery Serpents, was in part possessed by the *Philistines*; who very much vexed the *Israelites*; and although they, with the *Edomites* were made subject by *Darius*, yet could not be expelled the land. The *Edomites* revolting in *Jerams* time, and remaining free, till the time of *Hircanus* the High Priest after the Captivity, he subjecting them, forced them to be circumcised, and so were accounted as Jews. In *Edumea* were *Dan* and *Simeon's* Tribes. *Dan's* chief Cities were *Kiriath-bearim*, where the Ark was kept in *Amnada's* house 20 years; *Eckron* where they worshipped *Baalzebub*, or the god of flies; *Ajalon*, *Azotus*, or *Asidat*, where was *Dagons* sumptuous Temple; and near which *Judas Maccabaeus* was slain in hard fight. *Gath*, *G. G. G. City*; and *Jeptha*, or as some now, *Jassa*, reported to have been built before the flood; whence *Jonah* took shipping to flee to *Tarsus*, where *Peter* raised *Dorcas*, and where he saw a Vision of the Gentiles conversion in *Simon* the Tanners house,

house. *Simeon's* principal Cities are, strong *Gaza*, which from the *Perjians* laying their Western tributes and customs there, all Riches are called *Gaza*; *Ascalon*, where Queen *Semiramis* who built *Babylon*; and also long after, *Herod* that slew the Infants was born. *Beerseba*, which was the Southern limit of *Palestine*, as *Dan*, or *Lailb*, was the North, and was well fortified by the Warring Christians, as bounding on *Arabia*. *Abraham* and *Abimelech* here swore to each other. *Hagar* wandered hither with *Ishmael*, and *Isaac* there long dwelt. *Carthage*, whose name signifying a City of books; some would have it to be antiently *Palestine's* University.

**ARMENIA** Major, or the greater, which hath on the North, *Tartary*, and on the South, *Mesopotamia*, called at this day *Angrelia*, hath Mountains lying on the East of *Euphrates*, which divide it from *Assyria*, called *Scodrisi*, *Periades*, and *Anamus*, whose Inhabitants having want of all things, are stout, cruel and Warlike, living (in that so barren soyl) by hunting and stealing. It is divided into three Provinces; whereof the first to be mentioned is *Colchis*, now called *Diarbec*, situate North and West on the *Euxine* Sea, two of whose chief Towns are *Phasis*, or *Fassus*, on the River *Phasis* its banks; and *Diescuria*, where the Romans (in their time) kept 30 Interpreters to stand between the Governour and people, because of 30 languages there spoken, through the Merchants of all Nations. In *Colchis* also *Atis* was King, from whom *Jason* is said to have stolen the golden Fleece by *Medea's* aid and sorceries. *Georgia* (otherwise called *Gurgestan*, and formerly *Iberia*; for it comprehends the ancient *Iberia* with a part of high *Armenia*) was not so named from *St. George*, (although they highly esteem him) but from the *Georgi* inhabiting long before *George*, the adjoining Countries. It is situated on the East of *Colchis*, and on the North of *Turcomania*. This people being good Soldiers, have always maintained their liberty, by joining sometimes with the Persians, and sometimes with the Turks; of whose Country also there have been many Lords; but now 'tis mostly under the Turk, and hath many good and strong Towns: (one whereof is called *Teflis*, exceedingly fortified by the Turks, to defend their new Conquests against the Persians) also *Lica*, *Tomas*, &c. Hence the Sultans of *Egypt* choosing their *Mamluks*; they at length proudly assumed, and long defended that Kingdom.

**TURCOMANIA** (formerly and properly called *Armenia* the greater, to distinguish it from the lesser in *Naxos*) is confined upon the North with *Colchis*; on the West with *Euphrates*, and the lesser *Armenia*, and took this name from the Turks, (in the Hebrew signifying, banished men) who breaking thence the *Caspian* straits out of barren and cold *Syria*, leaved themselves

selves in this Country in 844, where roaming up and down after the manner of the Scythian *Nomades*, and being an unregarded people; at length, *Mahomet* the Persian Sultan, a Saracen, sending for some of them to aid him against the Caliph of *Babylon*, (by whose valour he got the victory) and hindring their return home; they first retiring into the Woods, by open arms fought the Persians: where *Mahomet* by unadvised riding to and fro to encourage his Souldiers, breaking his neck with a fall from his horse: *Trangolipix* the Turks Leader, was (by common consent of both Armies) proclaimed Sultan of Persia, whereby, at first, by the *Zelzaccian* family, and then by the *Ottoman* (swallowing up the other, the large Turkish Monarchy hath been (by degrees) erected both in *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*: So that as 'twas said of the people of Rome, that of a small beginning, they grew up to such a greatness; so may it be said of these Scythian Turks; but as it is with the Moon her self, which increaseth, and again diminisheth; so also is it with all Empires placed under her, which have their time to rise, and must have their time to fall. The Metropolis or Mother-City of *Turcomania* was once *Artaxata*, denominated either from the River *Araxis*, (which divideth *Armenia* and *Persia*) as being seated thereon, or rather from *Artaxes* before *Tigranes* who founded it; then *Eseclia*, and now called *Coy*; nigh which *Lucullus* the Roman overcame *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* his son in law; and *Selimus* the Turk, *Hismael* the Persian *Sophie*, in 1514, though with the losse of 30000 choise men, and such a general terrour, that they still call it, *The day of Doom*. *Arminiz* is now its chief City. There is also *Tigranocerta* built by *Tigranes*, one of the mightiest Kings of this *Armenia*; whose new City, *Lucullus* taking by siege, found beside other wealth therein, 3000 talents in money. *Van*, which both by Nature and Art is a strong Bulwark against Invasions of the Persians. Lastly, *Sebastia*, where the Patriarch of *Armenia* resides.

**A***RABIA* (taking it altogether) is a very spacious Country, and is shut up on the West with the Arabian Gulph, or the Red-Sea; on the East with the Persian Gulph; on the South with the Ocean; and on the North with Palestine, and famous Euphrates: So that it is in the form of a Peninsula, and is divided into three parts, *Arabia Deserta*, or the Wildernesse, *Petrosa*, or the Stony; and *Felix*, or the Happy. Though the Arabians are very much given to theft, and hate all Science; yet they boast much of their Nobility. They of *Arabia Felix*, the civillest of the three, had many barbarous customs. The Arabick tongue which they all use, extends also thorow Syria, Palestine, Egypt, Mesopotamia, and (Morocco excepted) all Barbary: which language the Mahometans account sacred.

*Arabia*

**A***Rabia* the Desert (which hath three several Epithites given to it by *Aristides*, *Servius*, and *Lucian*) is called by the Hebrews *Kedar*, and is the Wildernesse wherein the Israelites coming out of Egypt, wandred 40 years under *Moses*. It is bounded on the East with the Mountains of *Babylon*. It being covered with a dry and thick sand, is not fit for herbage or tillage; the chief City of whose few Inhabitants is called *Bassora*. Their travelling beasts here are Camels, whom little food sufficeth; yet will they carry 600, and sometimes 1000 weight.

**P***ETROSA*, or the Stony, (which confines with the Desert on the East, and on the South with the Happy) is so called either from its rockiness, or from *Petra* the chief Town thereof, though now named *Rathalah*: which having been straightly besieged by the Roman Emperours *Severus* and *Trajan*, they were in all attempts worsted. *Trajan* being glad to flee for his life, and the man next him being slain with a dart. Yet this *Arabia* was subdued by *Palms* Lieutnant of Syria under the said *Trajan*.

Here is also *Ezion-Geber* on the Red-Sea, where *Solomon's* ships stayed both before and after their sayling to Ophir. This Country was called by *Pliny* and others, *Nabathæa*; (for it contains the two Regions of *Nabathæa*, and *Agara*, so called, because the *Sararens* or *Hagarens* of *Hagar* possessed it: where also dwelt the *Enims* and *Zanzummims*, as also the *Madianites*, to whom *Moses* fled) now it is called either *Barra*, as one; *Bangaul*, as another; or *Batha*, as a third. The two Mountains of *Sinay* and *Horeb* are herein; of which, *Sinay* is the highest, which being very troulesome to ascend, stairs are cut in the rock, that beasts might more easily passe. There is also in this Mountain, a Covent of Monks, 50 in number, called *Maronites*, living after the Grecian manner; and who receive Christian Pilgrims (so called) who go thither for devotion. Many would have *Petra* to be the very *Mecca*; where *Mahomet* was born; but it is rather that which (in Mapps) is called *Petra of Eft*: for *Mecca* is reckoned to be in *Arabia* the Happy. Of all Vegetables, the Palm-Tree onely growes in this barren Province. Store of Dromedaries there are, which, they say, will (through swiftnesse) bear a man 1000 miles in one day. The Ostrich also (who is said to digest Iron) is plenty here.

**F***OEELIX* or the Happy, joyns to the other two like a Peninsula, betwixt the Arabian and Persian Gulph, and bordering with the Indian Sea; and is so called, (I may well suppose) for that it is the most pleasant and fruitfull Country of Asia, abounding with Balsome, Myrrhe, and Frankincense, Gold and Pearls, especially (saith a Traveller) about *Medina* the second City to *Mecca*; now it carries the name of *Tamaa* or *Gyamen*. Some will have *Saba* the principal City: but however, hence were the Sabæans that afflicted



flucted *Job*. *Medina Tanalbi*, that is, the Prophet's City is situated near Arabia Petrea, and well peopled, and was the first Town that yielded to Mahomet, when by arms he began to establish his Religion; in or nigh which he composed the model thereof: here the Iron-Coffin of this false prophet, with his inclosed body, is said to hang, being held by an Adamant up to the roof of the Temple, near which they also say are always about 3000 burning lamps. *Mecha* is the chief City; wherein Mahomet was born: which two Cities are remarkable places for Mahometan Pilgrims: there coming also three Caravans or Captains yearly, which part from Cair, Damas, and the Indies, and go to Mecha for devotion, in honour of Mahomet's birth; thence to Medina, in honour of his Sepulchre; and into which no Christian is suffered to enter. The other Towns of note are *Horan*, the chief Port of the South Ocean; and *Aleroch* or *Eler*, the onely Town in that Country where Christians, so called, are in greatest number. There is *Zidon*, a Sea-Town 40 miles from *Mecha*, without walls, but indifferent fair houses: also *Aden* seated on the borders of the Red-Sea, near the strait of *Babel Mandel*; and said to be the fairest Town of Arabia, strong by situation, as well as Art: which Town the Turks took, and the whole Realm by policy, in 1538, and they lost their King. *Zebeh* or *Zibis* also is a good Town standing in a Plain between two Mountains, and on a River of the same name half a dayes journey from the Red-Sea; which being taken by the Turk after *Aden*, he sent thither a Begliarbey with great forces. One barbarous custome which they had formerly in this Arabia, was the community of one Wife alone among a whole kindred, and if she accompanied any other man, they both dyed. The Turkish Alcoran composed by *Osman* the 4th Caliph, and commanded by him to be only received as Canonical throughout his Dominions, is an exposition on Mahomet's eight Commandments; which are, 1. Every one ought to believe that God is a great God, and one onely God, and Mahomet to be his Prophet. 2. Every one must marry to increase Mahomet's followers. 3. Every one must give of his wealth to the poor. 4. Every one must make his prayers five times a day. 5. Every one must keep a Lent one moneth in a year. 6. Be obedient to thy Parents. 7. Thou shalt not kill. 8. Do unto others, as thou wouldst be done unto thy self. Which Religion of his (he promising a carnal and voluptuous Paradise to those that kept these Lawes) was greedily received by the Saracens, (of Arabia the Desert) so called (not of *Sara*, but) either of *Saharra*, which signifies a Wilderness, and *Saken*, to inhabit; or from *Sarak*, thieves, a name agreeable to their natures. Mahomet was born in 572, and some say not at Mecha, but in a Village of Arabia called *Itarip*; his father was a Pagan, and his mother a Jew; he was married to his Mistress at 25 years old, and began to affix the name of a Prophet at 38 years of age; and by policies strengthening himself with the Arabians, who freed themselves from obedience to the Greek Empire: he was driven

driven from *Mecha's* Territories by their Nobility; the which he (ere long) subduing, expelled thence the Greek Officers. From whole flight from *Mecha*, the Saracen's *Hegira*, or computation of years (so called from *Hegirathi*, which (from the Arabick) is rendered, a persecution raised about Religion) began; which was about the year of Christ 617. Although *Selimus* the First, subdued the Arabians to the Turk; yet are they rather tributaries than provinces of that Empire; for they have two Kings of their own, one whereof liveth on Euphrates, the desarts of Mesopotamia; sometimes in Arabia Felix, and in some parts of Syria: the other wandreth with his tribes or wild theevish Arabs, tents, and Bestial, one while in *Petrea* and *Deserta*; sometimes in Palestine, as he findeth good pastorage and fresh fountains; which makes the travail to and in Palestine, so dangerous. These two Kings are mortal enemies; and if by chance they meet, they bring damage, rapine, and destruction to themselves and their followers: for being untamed Savages, they cannot bridle their inordinate passions.

These Countries are all subject to the Turkish Empire, which did also possesse part of Media, with its chief City *Taurus*: but some think the *Sophi* of Persia hath recovered the greatest part thereof. The Turk also holds almost all Mesopotamia and *Diarbeck*; being Master of *Chaldea*, and part of *Assyria*: But since the Persian *Sophi* hath daily won from him, recovering his estate by little and little, as also that many of these Countries do (hereby) change their masters daily.

We will briefly mention the Riches, Fruitfulness and Religion of the forementioned places: and then (that we run not into a labyrinth) in brief survey the other Countries also.

*Anatolia*, or Lesser Asia enjoying a sweet and temperate Ayre, did abound likewise with grain, having store of good pastures for Cattle; and had more than sufficiency for the life of man. But now it is not so fruitfull, as not so well manured; yet it is more fertile in places near the Sea; and as the land is better husbanded, so it yields the more. In the great Plains within the heart of the Country, they sow Wheat, Barley, and Cotton. *Natolia* hath the benefit of many Rivers watering it; whereof five of the principal discharge themselves into the *Euxine* Sea; three into the *Propontides*; one into *Hellepont*; four into the *Archipelago*: one runs into Euphrates; and divers others into the *Mediterranean* Sea. But the chief revenue of *Natolia* is by Cotton, whereof there grows abundance.

*Bythinia* imparts its Orpiment to other Nations. *Galatia* hath great yearly profit by Copper-Mines. *Caria* a good revenue by the Adamant stone. The *Pamphilians* make the best of Chamlets, and have great sums of money for them. *Cappadocia* is enriched by Silver, Iron, Allom, Jasper, Crystal, Alabafter, and the Onyx stone. And *Cilicia* receives much money for its store of Chamlets made of Goats-hair, which is there very soft, and delicate as silk: *Judea* reaps much profit by Pilgrims going yearly to the Holy Sea.

H h h h h

pulchre.

pulchre. *Phœnicia* is much frequented for its great traffique; But *Arabia the Happy* exceeds them all in Merchandise, and by reason of the Spices, precious stones, and Pearls there sold to strange Merchants, is exceeding rich; and it yields Incense for all the World. *Mecha* hath great traffique, unto which *Ethiopian, Indian,* and other Merchants come; and (together with *Medina*) is enriched yearly by Pilgrimages. *Aden* exceeds any other in traffique for the abundance of Commodities brought thither from India, Persia, and *Ethiopia*, which are fetched and sold from thence at a dear rate; for they are a witty people in Merchandizing matters. As touching Religion, there are many of divers Religions and sects in these Countries besides the Mahometans. Jews are dispersed all over them: and those that profess themselves Christians, some obey, and others are divided from the Church of *Rome*. The first sort, are great numbers of Merchants of *Venice, Raguse, France, &c.* trading to *Tripoli, Damasco, Aleppo, &c.* being assisted by them of the Order of *Francis* who dwell in *Jerusalem* and *Bethlem*: and a few among the *Armenians* also, are found following the Latine Church. There was 25 Villages under the jurisdiction of *Alangiacana-Castle*, two dayes journey from *Tauris*, who (though they spake the *Armenian* tongue) acknowledged *Rome*. This was in 1337; which Inhabitants are said to be then converted by one *Bartholomew a Dominican*, who was made Bishop of *Armenia* (I suppose the lesser); but now 12 only do persist in obedience thereunto: some of the other 13 having submitted to the Patriarch of the greater *Armenia*, and the others being ruined during the Turkish and Persian Wars. The 12 Villages are assisted in religious matters by the Dominicans under an Archbishop of that order, who being made by their Chapter, and the chief of the Villages, is confirmed by the Pope. The Latines had also Synagogues at *Bursia* and *Trebysond* or *Trapezond*; but they with the Latine Ceremonies being lost for lack of Priests to officiate, either the *Grecian* or *Armenian* Religion hath succeeded. For the *Armenians* differ from them, 1. In receiving Infants to the Supper immediately after Baptism. 2. In abstinence from unclean beasts. 3. In fasting on Christmas-day so called. 4. In holding their children over the fire in Baptism, as a needful circumstance, because *John* told the people, That Christ should baptize them with the holy Spirit and fire. The other sorts are divided into three sects, *Melchites*, so named from *Melech*, that is, a King or Prince, as following the Emperours of *Constantinople's* example: Such are all they of the Greeks religion in *Asia* under the four fore-mentioned Patriarchs of *Constantinople, Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Antioch*; this last residing at *Damasco*: who being chosen by the Country Bishops, seek not now the Pope's confirmation, (as formerly) but a liberty to choose, from the Turkish Bahaw, and the Turks own confirming, exercising their power under his authority. These choose and consecrate the Archbishops and Bishops under them: some of whom have recourse

to the Pope for confirmation. They are all Monks of *Basil*; the famousst of which many Convents throughout the *Levant*, are those in *Jerusalem*, on Mount *Sinai*, and the holy Mountain upon the Archipelago. These hold all that the Greeks of old condemned as erroneous at the Council of *Florence*; and are thought to be more than all the rest, *Natolia* and *Syria* being full of them; they extending also into *Egypt*, and *Corazzan* of *Persia*. Some also place the *Georgians* among them: who (as one) acknowledg the Patriarch of *Constantinople's* authority: yet some say, they agree in most doctrinal points with the Greeks, but not acknowledging the said Patriarch; but have one of their own: who being mostly resident on Mount *Sinai*, hath 18 Bishops under him. They call ('tis said) on *St. George* as their Advocate: But take not their name from him, as was before shewn. Some of them have turned Mahometans. *Nestorians* are also in these Countries, so called from *Nestor* the Leader of their formerly condemned heresie: who speaking the languages of the places where they live, do notwithstanding celebrate their Liturgie in the Chaldean tongue. The third sect are *Discorians*, which are likewise divided into three *Armenians*, who although they give the title of Patriarch to many of their Prelates who farm the Turk's *Armenian* tributes, and are made partly by his favour; yet call but two Universal Patriarchs, the one being over the high, the other over the Low-*Armenia*. They are not much less in number than the *Melchites*, who have great liberty in all the Turk's estate, both for their policy in Trade, and for some testimonies of their predecessours' affection to *Mahomet*: who passionately recommended them to his successors. They have no Images, but crosses of brass and iron, yet have they divers reliques in shrines of silver; they say Service in their own language. Those things wherein they differ from the other *Discorians* are, 1. Celebrating their Sacrament with unleavened bread, therein being conformable to *Rome* beyond all the Eastern Sectaries: they put also no water in their wine, saying, the Latine Church used anciently the same; they eat figs and milk on Saturday night before Easter; eating also flesh every Friday from Easter to the Ascension. They differ in the time of celebrating the Annunciation and Nativity. They say, Christ was exempt from passions, and necessities of humane nature. They make the sign of the Cross with two fingers, first on the right side, then on the left, contrary to the *Jacobites*.

For their killing nor buying any flesh five Saturdayes of the year, in remembrance of the Idolaters sacrificing their children to Idols, and in a different ordering the Lamb in their Mass for the dead before they kill it; some call them *Sabbatins* and *Julianists*. Yet they remember their first union with *Rome's* Church, in Pope *Silvester*, and *Constantine the Great's* time. *Jacobites*, denominated from one *Jacob*, a Syrian, a follower of *Discorians* and *Eutyches*; the chief of whom are in *Aleppo, Caramir*, and *Tur*, a Mountain of *Mesopotamia*. They had two Patriarchs;

now but one; which is the of the Monastery of *Gifran*, yet living at *Caramit*: who hath under him two Metropolitans, one being in Jerusalem; divers Arch-bishops, and many Monasteries of *Anthony's* Order. They celebrate in the Chaldean tongue, and differ from the Armenians; in making the sign of the crosse with the fore-finger onely, to signifie a oneness of nature, will, and operation in Christ. They eat also milk and flesh on Wednesday and Friday night after Sun-set, saying, Then the term of abstinence is past; eating flesh all the year long but in Lent. Some Arabians living among them, have joyned to them, who are called *Solares*, because they worship (among other superstitions) the Sun. The Maronites (some think) are a branch of the Jacobites; for they were both (of old) subject to the *Antiechian* Patriarch; the which Patriarchship, both pretend; though it be now in the hands of the *Metelbites*: they both use the Chaldean tongue, and had the same opinion of the unity of will, nature and operation of Christ. It is the least of all the Eastern sects, there being not above 12000 households, most of whom are poor; yet they are the most affected to the See of Rome, whose Patriarch being of *Anthony's* Order, and chosen by their Bishops and Religious ones, is confirmed by the Pope, and resides at *Tripoli* of *Syria*, the Towns of *Syria* and Villages of Mount *Libanon* being the abode of the *Maronites*. Yet are there some convents of *Anthony*, and a few Bishops, who having no certain abode, are as it were his assistants. They pray to *Maron*, not (say they) the Arch heretique, (from whom 'tis generally held, they derive their name) but an Abbot of a very holy life; or else are so called from *Marona* a Village of Mount *Libanon*. Some are found among these, called White: who not being baptized, and in outward shew Mahometans, do call themselves Christians, confessing and communicating in secret. The third sort of *Dioscorians*, are *Cosses* or *Curdes*: who being wonderful ignorant, are mostly *Nestorians* and *Jacobites*; but have divers other opinions: many Mahometans being also among them.

Before I passe to *Assyria*, &c. I shall strike in with those two noted Islands of the Mediterranean Sea, *Rhodes* and *Cyprus*. *Rhodes* lying in the *Carpathian* Sea over-against *Caria*, had of old divers names, as *Ithrea*, *Trinacria*, &c. But (according to *Pliny*) called *Rhodes*, from the fields of *Roses* therein, from *rhodon* signifying a Rose; nigh whose chief City *Rhodes* (which stands on the East part of the Isle, the side of a hill, and part on the Sea-shore, enjoying a fair and safe Haven, having also two or three Walls, five Castles, 13 high Towers, and some other Forts, making it even impregnable) at the entry of the Haven, stood that huge Idol of brass, (in a man's image) called *Colofus*, one of the world's seven Wonders: whose thumb was so big, that no man could embrace it with both arms; and its little finger as big as an ordinary man. Some say it was built by *Canete Lindo* in 12 years space; others, by *Callistes Lysippus* his Schollar, taking the name

*Colofus*

*Colofus* of him. It was 80 cubits high, and erected in honour of the Sun; (which is said, once a day to shine on this Island, though never so cloudy in other places) between whose leggs, (it standing in the Harbour's mouth) ships with sails were wont to passe under. Whether the people were hence called *Colofians*, is uncertain; but those *Colofians* to whom *Paul* wrote, were dwellers in *Anatolia*, of which mention hath been made. *Mnavi Caliph*, *Osman's* General, uniting this Isle to the Mahometan Empire, he brake down most of this Image, the brasse whereof is said to have loaded 900 Camels: yet its reliques were seen within this 60 or 80 years by a traveller into *Rhodes*. When the Knights of *John* of Jerusalem were driven out of *Palestine* by the Turks, this Island was given by the *Constantinopolitan* Emperour unto them, who expelled the Saracens from thence in 1308, who formerly took it from the divided Greeks; who having sorely infested the Turks nigh 200 years, *Solyman* the magnificent invading it, and besieging *Lilladamus Villiers* (with about 500 of his Knights, 5000 *Rhodians* assisting them) by an Army of 200000 Turks, and 300 Gallies, 6 months; in one of the two strong Fortresses of the City, they resolutely defended it to the utmost of valour or warlike policy, till multitude over-mastering both, *Solyman* entred the Town on Christmas day so called, in 1522: the Knights yielding it on condition to depart, with liberty, goods, and transportation; and the Countrie's Inhabitants to continue there still if they would: yet the Turk lost so many of his best Souldiers, and brave Commanders, that (as one saith) he might have said with *Pyrrius*, Such another Victory would have utterly undone him. They remained long after without a habitation; till the King of Spain gave them the barren Isle of *Malta*. *Rhodes* hath been much subject to overflowing of waters, wherewith in 25 years space it was three times afflicted, and mightily indangered by continuall storms of rain; the last of which beginning (when *Antigonus* vanquished *Eumenes*) with hail at the entrance of the spring, the whole Island was covered with water, and the inhabitants drowned; many houses were beaten down, many killed, and the Town in a manner ruined thereby, but they since labouring to drain the waters, and dry up the moors, the Country hath been fruitfull, and not subject to such inundations. It abounds in pastures, great store of Olive-Trees, Olives, and Citrons, with other Trees, continually green, and near the Town it self, there are many Valleys and small hills, with store of Fruit-Trees and Vines; but they grow all by industry, not naturally. These Islanders were so expert in Sea-affairs, that *Florus* calls them *Populus Nauticus*, or a Sea-people; they made couragious defence against the Romans, before subjected unto them; but then ever faithfull, who (of all the Mediterranean Isles, that revolted in *Mithridates* his time) stood onely fast to the Romans, so that *Velleius Paterculus* makes it almost a miracle, that (in the Romans hard wars with *Perseus* King of *Macedon*) the very *Rhodians* that before were most

faithfull

tantiful to the *Romans*, now (by a doubtful faith) seemed to be more inclinable to the Kings part. The Town is onely inhabited by *Turks*, and *Jews*; *Christians* may not abide therein in the night on pain of death, for fear of sedition or Treason; by day, they may either continue, or trade there without exception. But those in the Villages are most *Christians*, and those *Greeks* who manure their fields, and dress their Vines and Gardens; and whose manner of living is mostly like other *Grecians*; I suppose the Authors meaning is, both in Religion and behaviour. *Rhodes* was an old Academy of the Roman Monarchy, on the West side of which Isle (which is 120 miles in circuit) lieth *Carpathos*, now *Scarpanto*, 70 miles in compasse; eminent onely for giving the name of the *Carpathian Sea* to the adjoining waters.

**CYPRUS** (situated according to *Ptolomy*, in the midst of the *Spick-bay*, called the Gulf of *Laiazza*) lies between *Cilicia*, and *Syria's* Coasts, and is about an 100 miles from *Syria* Southward, having *Egypt* on the West, and *Cilicia* on the East. It's length extending from East to West, is (by a traveller thither) reputed 210 miles, 60 broad, and 600 in circuit. It fell into the *Romans* hands, after the *Assyrian* Monarchies extinguishment, (which before was under the dominion of *Greek Tyrants*) by whole means the *Ptolemies* of *Egypt* commanded it. Then returning again under the *Romans* by *M. Cato*, who conquered it, and found therein 7000 Talents in money and goods; which summe, fearing to lose, in bringing it to *Rome* by Sea, he put it into several boxes, to wit, two Talents and fifty drachms in a box: at the end whereof, he fastening a long rope, with a piece of Cork at the end, that, if it suffered shipwrack, it might be espied. Upon the division of the Roman Empire, the Emperours of *Constantinople* possessed it; whither *Isaac Comnen* (fleeing from *Andronicus Comnen*, the usurper of the *Greek Empire*, ruled as its King till 1191, when as *Richard* the first, of *England*, going to the Holy War (so called) against the *Turks*, his souldiers being by the Islanders, some slain, and some taken Prisoners, who in two ships were there driven on ground, having hardly escaped the Sea's danger: and the rest of his fleet there arriving, being forbidden to land also; he moved therewith, and by force landing his men, took *Isaac Comnen* Prisoner, (whom he sent bound in Silver Chains into *Syria*) and speedily over-ran and subdued the whole Island; exchanging it afterwards with *Guy of France*, of the Family of *Lusignan*, for the lost and titular kingdom of *Jerusalem*; in whose posterity it remained till 1423. Then the Sultan of *Egypt* invading it, and taking *John* its King Prisoner, yet restored him (after a round ransom) for 40000. Crowns yearly Tribute. Then it came under the *Venetians* subjection in 1473, by means of *James* an illegitimate son, who having dispossessed his sister *Carlote* of the Crown, married one *Catherina* adopted daughter of the Senate of *Venice*, whom he leaving his heir, she resigned her Scepter to the Senate, which

which defended it (onely paying the Tribute) till *Mustapha, Selimus* the Second, his General, writted it in 1570 out of their hands, *Bragadino* their Governour making good to the utmost the Town of *Famagusta* (the which and *Rhodes* are said to be the two strongest holds in all the *Turks Empire*) yielding at last on honourable conditions: which *Mustapha* kept not; but murdering the chiefest men of the Town, he cut off *Bragadino's* ears, slicing him alive, &c. and sending the chief prisoners and spoils unto *Selim*: A *Cyprian* Lady appointed for his lust, firing Gun-powder, partly burnt and partly drowned the two Vessels, and booty, so that he never saw them. Yet the next year the *Venetians* won the battle of *Le-panto*. This Island was formerly called *Achamantis* or *Achametide*, *Macaria*, that is, blessed or happy, from its fruitfulness; *Cerastu*, either for the many Mountains therein, whose tops are sharp like horns; or because it buttred toward the East with one horn; and one faith, it was named *Crypta*, that is hidden; lying so low as if the waves of the Sea did cover it. But *Cypru*, from its abundance of *Cypru* Trees. There are six Capital Cities or Towns therein; *Paphos*, said to be built by *Cineras*, who called it after his fathers name, wherein (of old) was the Temple of *Venus*; for the Gentiles consecrated this Island to that imagined Goddess of beauty. *Famagusta* (formerly *Salamu*) on the South-Sea: at whose siege the *Turks* spent 118000 great Bullets. *Nicosia*, in the plain of *Masara*, 34 miles from *Famagusta*, and of old called *Fremitus*, and *Leucetium*, *Ceramea*, now *Cemes*; which *Cyru* built after vanquishing the nine petty Kings, into which it was once divided. *Amathu*, whence the Island was called *Amathusia*, where *Venus* was also worshipped. *Lefcare*, antiently *Arifino*, highly noted for *Jupiters* Groves. Here was born five noted Gentiles; *Xenophon* the Historian, *Zeno*, *Appollonius* the Philosopher, *Asclepiades*, whence the *Asclepiad* Verbes, and *Solon*, one of the seven wise men of *Greece*, who gave laws to the *Athenians*. The *Cypriots* are very courteous and affable to all strangers, except *Jews*, of whom (because in *Tra-jane* his time, they under *Artemio* their Captain, desolated this Island, killing 240000 therein (who yet were quickly overcome and slain by the *Romans* Lieutenant) if any come, or are forced in thither, (tis said) they execute him. Their greatest want is of water, but too much plenty of scorching heat (the longest day there, being about fourteen hours and an half) and fabulous grounds, (whose heat notwithstanding the Northern winds strongly blowing in *Cerines* Burrough, doth moderate; the *Ayr* also on the Mountains being very subtile) and it is recorded, that the Isle was utterly abandoned in *Constantine* the Great his dayes, for that it rained not in thirty six years. It was formerly (as *Ptolomy* teacheth) divided into four parts; *Salaminia*, *Paphia*, *Amathusia*, *La-pathia*; but now into twelve parts, called Provinces or Countries, *Strabo* saith, *Cypru* in his time yielded abundance of Wine, and Oyl, and Wheat enough to feed the Inhabitants. At this day it is exceeding fertile, having all things needfull for mans life, their

Wine

Wine is excellent, keeping 80 years, of a pleasing taste, and of black (in that time) becoming white; but a traveller saith, they having no barrels, but keeping it in great Earthen jars inclosed all (save their open mouths) within the ground, and interlarded with pitch within, to preserve them from breaking by the Wines force; it savours of the Pitch, and makes it too heady for the brain. The black great Rayſin called *Zibile*, comes here hence; they gather all kinds of fruit (except Chelauts, Services, and Cherries) especially Oranges, Lemons, and Citrons, excelling all others in taste. They have Dates, Saffron, abundance of Coriander-seed, also Maltick. It yields medicinable things, as Rubarb, Turpentine the best of all; and some say Coloquintida, and Scammony. Here are also Mines of Gold, Chrysocolia, Caltharic, Allome, Iron, and exceeding good Copper. Besides which, are pretious stones found, as Diamonds, Emcraults, Cryshall, white and red Corall, and the Amiant stone, of which they making Linnen Cloath; the fire will not burn it (though cast into it) but purifies and whitens it. They have Goats hair, wherewith they make Chamlets. There is a Lake not far from the Sea, 12 miles about, into which runs a small River falling from Mount *Olympus*, out of which they draw store of salt; excellent and white Honey have they, also Wool; But it appears, their chief commodities are Sugar, which they draw out of Canes, and Cotton, for, as one saith, *Cyprus*, *Candy*, and *Sicily*, are the Monarchall Isles of the Mediterranean Sea; resembling each other in length, breadth, circuit and fertility, onely *Candy* is somewhat narrower than the other two, and more fassinous and hilly; yet for Oyles and Vines, there is the Mother of both the other, *Sicily* being; for Grain and Silks the Emprisse of all, and *Cyprus* for Sugar and Cotton-wool, a darling sister to both, giving likewise this Character of their Inhabitants; they of *Sicily* Isle are the most civill: the *Cypriots* indifferent, the *Candians* rudest of all. Besides the Latine and Greek Churches, whereof there are 4 Bishopricks, yet double, the one Greek, the other Latine; of *Nicosia*, *Paphos*, *Famagusta*, and *Limissa*; there are other sects in this Island, as *Armenians*, *Coptes*, *Maronites*, *Indians*, *Nestorians*, *Georgians*, and *Jacobites*; every one having their Bishop, and were expelled by *Saladine* (after the taking of *Jerusalem*) for the Turks here (as in other Countries) give liberty of Conscience, onely for a yearly exacted Tribute. There are many Monasteries on the chiefeſt and highest Mountain in this Isle, called *Troodos*, 8 miles high, and 48 in compass, whose people are of *Basil's* Order, and called *Coleros*, or rather *Caloires*, that is, good Priests. The Latine Bishops have their burroughs, and Tithes; but the Greek, a yearly sum of the Priests and Deacons under them, as in other Provinces. Also the Greek did acknowledge the Latine Bishops for their superiours, &c. But the Latine Arch-bishop of *Nicosia* (called Archbishop of *Cyprus*) depended immediately of the Pope, not on any Patriarch, untill the Signiors of *Venice*, under Pope *Pius* the 4th, becoming Patrons of this Arch-bishoprick, chose 4, one wherof the Pope named Archbishop.

*Assyria*

**ASSYRIA** (so called from *Assur*, one of *Sem's* five sons who peopled it) is by divers, diversly named; as *Adrysa*, or *Adrise*, *Azemie*, *Mosul*, *Sarb*, *Arzerum*, and by some, *Cussetan* and lyes between *Armenia* Major on the North, and *Susiana*, in *Persia*, on the South. This Country was of old in reputation, for the Empire there settled, whose King *Salmanassar* carried away the ten Tribes: and of the chief City *Nineveh* (built by *Nimrod* the third *Assyrian* Monarch): whither *Jonah* was sent to preach repentance; it was 60 miles about, whose walls were 100 foot high, 200 foot high was every Tower in the walls, whereof there were 1500, and the walls were so broad, that three Carts might be contained a breast; it was seated near the River *Tigris*, and bigger than *Babylon*; but is now almost quite ruined. Here is also the City *Arzeri*, whence the whole Region is denominated, and *Arvela*, nigh which *Alexander* in his third and last battle with *Darius*, having 800000, got a great Victory, and was installed in the Monarchy of *Persia*. *Darius* dying not long after. It formerly contained the Provinces of *Arapachit*, *Adiabene*, and *Sittacen*, which some (saith one) at this day call *Boran*, *Sarca*, and *Rabia*. Thorow *Nineveh* also ran *Euphrates*.

**MESOPOTAMIA**, (so called because it is scituated betwixt the two famous Rivers, *Euphrates* and *Tigris*) is in Scripture called *Padan Aram*, now *Diarbech*, according to *Mercator*, and hath toward the West *Syria*, toward the East *Assyria*, divided by *Tigris*; which for its swiftnesse, is so called, *Tigris* in the *Medes* language signifying an Arrow. Whose chief Towns were *Edeſſa*, now (they say) called *Rechaſ*; whose Governour *Agbarus*, writing an Epistle to Christ, received an answer from him, whereof *Eusebius* hath set down the Coppies. Near which also *Caracalla*, *Severus* the Emperour his son, was slain by *Macrinus* his appointment, Captain of the Guard, who intended to have took off his head, for that the Magicians returned their answer, that *Macrinus* should succeed him. And 'tis observed by history, that all or most of the 40 Emperours between *Julius Caesar*, and *Constantine*, dyed unnatural deaths, either killing themselves, or being killed. When the Christians had recovered this Country and Palestine from the Turks, they divided their whole conquest into four Tetrarchies, *Jerusalem*, *Antioch*, *Tripolis*, and *Edeſſa*: every one wherof had subordinate Lords, and were all subject to the Kings of *Jerusalem*. Carra, in Scripture *Harar*, where *Abraham* dwelt, when he left *Ur* of the *Chaldeans*: this Town is now called *Caramis*, that is, a black Town, where resides a Turkish Bassa of great power: it was of old named *Amida*, and stands in the chief Country of Mesopotamia, called *Alech*, and was taken by *Selim* the Turk. The Pagans here once worshipped the Moon, some as a Female; others as a Male. *Orſe*, said to be seven miles in compass, and famous by the death

IIIII

of

of *Craſſus* the Roman Lieutenant, who was worth 7100 talents, when he had offered the 10th to *Hercules*, and given three months corn to the poor. But he was vanquished by King *Herodes* and his *Parthians* nigh unto *Carra*. Herein also stands *Mervin* the Chaldean Patriarch's Seat: and *Mesur* the Nestorian Patriarch's residing place, whose authority extends even to *Cathais*, and the *Indies*. Here was *Abraham* born; whither also he sent his servant to choose *Isaac* a Wife: unto whose brother *Laban* in this Country, *Jacob* fled from his brother *Eſau*. The earthly Paradise is judged to have been in an Island of this Region made by *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and branches running from them: whose uppermost is said to be *Pisus*, watering *Hazilah*, now *Sufiana*, the lowermost *Gihon*, running therow *Ethiopia*, *Asiatica*, *Chaldaea*, (whose first Inhabitants descended from *Arphaxad*, *Sem*'s third son, according to *Dala* this----

And *Chaldee* fell to *Arphaxad*)

is situated on the West of *Assyria*, and on the East of *Syria*; two of whose principal Cities were *Ur*; yet now called *Horrea*.

*Babylon*, whose Tower of *Babel*, that is, confusion, (begun by *Nimrod* the son of *Chus* soon after the flood, to secure themselves from a second deluge) (though *Heber* and his family contradicted it) is said to have been raised 5164 fathoms from the ground, whose circumference was equal to its height, See. which God beholding, made of one language; 72; so hindring the proceedings of that proud and fond attempt; who being about 24000 men, besides women and children: 27 of those languages, *Sem*'s posterity, dispersed themselves over *Asia*; 15, being *Japhet*'s issue, went towards *Europe* and *Asia* the Lesser: the other 30, of *Cham*'s loyns, peopled *Africa* which was nevertheless finished by *Semiramis*, a woman of insatiable lusts, born at *Aſcalon* a Town of *Syria*, and the 4th Chaldean Monarch, who being taken to *Ninus*'s bed, who granted her the Empires command for five dayes: she putting on the Royal robes, commanded the King to be slain. And whose walls being in circuit 60 miles, were also 200 foot high, and 50 Cubits in breadth. News being brought to this *Semiramis*, of this City's revolt; she, leaving her head half undrest, never platted the rest of her hair, till the by siege had recovered it. *Cyrus* took this Town, by cutting many deep channels; so emptying *Euphrates* that ran thorow it, and conveying his forces along the emptied River into the Town. Which revolting from the Persians in *Darius* *Histaspis* his time; *Zerxes*, *Darius* his Captain, (after twenty months siege, and still less hope to prevail) cutting off his nose and ears, and mangling his body, fled in policy to the *Babylonians*, complaining of his King's tyranny: who crediting his words, and committing to him their whole Army, he delivered Souldiers and Town into his Sovereign's hands. Here *Alexander* the Great ended his dayes; by whose Greek Army it being taken, one part only took cognizance thereof in three dayes space. *Bagiaſer* Caliph of the Saracens, rebuilt this City, expending 18 millions of gold

gold therein, calling it *Bagdet* from *Baga*, the Arabick word for a garden; of which it contained many. Between this Town and *Aleppo* is still a great Trade of Carriers with laden Camels: between which also they are wont to send letters in haste by post-Pigeons. In *Chaldea* flourished many and the first Astronomers: whose two helps herein were, the Country's plainness affording a fair Horizon: and a long life, with sufficient experience of all the Stars and Planets motions; and the three Wise men of the East, who worshipped and presented gifts to Christ, are thought to have come from hence. *Belochus* *Prisem*, the 10th *Assyrian* King, was the first author of divination by birds flying, called *Auspitium*: besides which, the Gentiles had three other kinds; *Aruspitium*, or a looking on or into beasts that came to be sacrificed. *Tripudium* or by the rebounding of crums cast to chickens. *Augurium*, or by the chirping or chattering of birds: as also from unknown sounds and voyces. *Sardanapalus* the 38th Monarch, for his effeminacy, being besieged in Nineveh by *Arbaces*, Governour of *Media*; and *Belochus*, of *Babylon*: he burned himself with all his riches. *Justine* saying, that by this deed only he imitated a man. After whose death, *Arbaces* taking *Media* and *Persia* with the confining Provinces; *Belochus* seized on *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and the Countries adjacent; whose Kingdom was called the new Kingdom of *Assyria*: the 9th of which new Monarchs was *Nebuchadonſor*, who conquering Egypt, destroying Nineveh, repairing *Babylon*, and in the 18th year of his reign destroying Jerusalem, and captivating the Jews to *Babylon*, was called commonly, *The Hercules of the East*. But toward his latter end was distracted seven years, living like a beast: and being restored to his senses, and thereby somewhat humbled, he dyed, having reigned 44 years; whose grandchild *Balthasar*, (the son of *Eutimerodach*, who was slain by *Athyages* King of the *Medes*) a dissolute and cruel Prince, had his Kingdom taken from him, and himself slain by *Darius* and *Cyrus*, *Athyages*'s successors: after which, it was subject to the Persians, Gracians, Romans, (who yet hardly extended their borders beyond *Euphrates*) Parthians, Saracens, Persian Sophies; and last of all to the Turk, by *Solyman* the magnificent, who in 1545, caused the titular Caliph of Bagdet to crown him King thereof.

**MEDIA** (now called *Servan* or *Shirvan*) confines towards the South with *Persia*, on the West with high *Armenia* and *Assyria*; to the North with the *Caspian* Sea, so called from the *Caspis*, a people of *Scythia* Southerly bordering herein. Its people were formerly the most powerful of all *Asia*: and it was divided into high *Media*, and *Atropatia*, the most Northerly part of *Media*. The chief Cities are *Servan*, whence the whole Region is denominated. *Tauris* or *Tabris*, which some believe to be *Ecbatane*, and is seated at the foot of Mount *Oronte* about eight dayes journey from the Sea of *Bacu* or *Caspian* Sea: whose ayre being very whollome, though cold and windie, it contained in its 16 miles

liiii 2

compass

compatible about 200000 Inhabitants: but *Amurath* the Third, taking it in 1585, (for it was thrice taken by the Turk) some hold, that since it is much decayed: Here was formerly the Persian Sophie's Seat, (in Summer) till *Tamas* transported it to *Tasbin* their last abode, which lyes more Southerly than *Tauris*. *Sul-tania*, where is the fairest Mosque or Mahometan Temple of the East. Also *Nasirvan*, which some think to be the ancient *Artaxata* or *Nasvan*. *Ardorville*, in which *Guinet* and *Sederdin*, (whom some call *Bunie* and *Aider*) the first authors of the Sophie's Sect and Empire, with some other authors of that sect, have reigned. Some also make reckoning of *Marant* in high *Media*, noted for the war that hath been between *Amurath* the Turk, and the Persian Sophies. And (as one saith) although the Turk hath held part of this Country somewhat long, yet it may well be attributed to the Persian King, seeing he hath of late recovered almost all from the Turk. *Synmachia*, or *Sumaque* in *Atropatia*, said to be the strongest place in *Media*, taken by the Turk in 1578, and made the Seat of a Turkish Bassa. Here stand also the Towns of *Sechi* on the frontiers of *Gurgestan*: *Jacar* on the confines of high *Media*; and *Eres*, famous formerly, for the great store of silk coming thence. They once made a liquor in *Media*, called oyl of *Media*, with which they envenoming their arrowes, and flooring them, not in a strong, but slack bow, it burnt the flesh with such violence, that water allayed not, but rather increased, the torment: onely dust could mitigate it. There is also *Derbent* (anciently named *Caucasia Porta*, built hard by the hill *Caucasus*, called by *Plinie*, a great miracle of nature, as being environed with two walls, and having gates of iron, the chief City in *Albania*, but now called *Zuiria*, a Country lying on the North of *Media*: a chief River whereof *Arafse*; and an ancient City whereof was called *Laodicea*.

THE particular Province of *PERSIA* (in old time called *Panchaia*, from King *Panthee*; then, from the Greeks, *Cephene*: but *Perfia*, from King *Perseus*, (changing the name of *Elamites* into *Persians*) who passing over from Greece into *Asia*, there tamed the barbarous Nations by a great and daily war, and gave the Conquerour's name to this subdued Country) is bounded on the North with *Media*, on the South with the Persian gulph; which takes its name of the wise Kings of the East; it is seated on the River *Bindimir*, and is now one of the beautifullest Towns of the East, being (with the Suburbs, 20 miles about, and containing 60000 houses. *Alexander* at the request of his lewd *Lais*, set it on fire; but repenting his folly, he afterwards rebuilt it. *Casbin* or *Tasbin*, whither *Tamas* (as was said) brought the Sophie's residence from *Tauris*; it's called also *Hispian*, and said to be a dayes journey about on horseback. This is well walled, (though

(though *Tauris* hath none) and is beautified with two Seraglio's, whose Walls are of red Marble, and paved with Mosaicque work; where also doth the Sophie sometime personally administer Justice.

*SUSIANA* (called *Chus* and *Cusistan*, hath for bounds on the West, *Chaldea*; on the South, the Persian gulph. It (saith one) took this name from its famous City *Suses*, called *Chus* and *Sufre*; but it may be called *Sufiana* (as if to say *Chufiana*) from *Chus*, *Ham's* son, who first peopling here, withdrew to the three *Arabia's*, calling them after his own name, the Land of *Chus*, which is *Ethiopia*, (not of *Africa*, but of *Asia*) which the River *Gibon* is said to encompass. *Chus* leaving this Country to his son *Havilah*: it is called in Scriptures, the Land of *Havilah*, where is gold; which *Pison* (the Southern branch of the River *Tigris* or *Hiddekel*, as *Gibon* is the most Western branch of *Euphrates*) is said to compass. For it is evident from 1 *Sam.* 15. 7. that there was another Land of *Havilah*, besides that of *India*. *Suses* the chief City is built upon the River *Enele*, now called *Tirtir*: being of a long form, and 15 miles in compass: where the Persian Kings also (of old) kept Court in Winter; for that it stood more Southerly than *Tauris* or *Ecbatane*.

*CARMANIA*, now called *CHIRMAN*, hath been divided into two parts; the one called by some at this day, *Dulcinde*, or *Carmania* the Desert; whose limits are on the North *Parthia*, towards the South, the other *Carmania*: it hath no Towns, but onely some scattering Villages. The other lying betwixt *Gedrosia* the Desert, part of *Persia*, and the *Indian-Sea*, and is called high or great *Carmania*. Whose chief City is *Chirman*, famous for its cloath of Gold, and making of the best *Scimitars*; which the Mahometans so prize, that those who were taken at their overthrow of *Lepanto*, cast them into the Sea, that the Christians might not have such weapons. This Province extends 200 leagues, and is near the Sea; but (they say) there is no safe Port, or comming for ships, for the sands and Rocks. Yet the more Westerly, hath the more commodious Ports and many Towns; but the Easterly is ill inhabited. Here *Alexander* returning out of *India*, kept his feasts in imitation of *Bacchus*, who first conquered that Nation. They continued seven dayes, night and day in a forth, drunken, and foolish manner, as they marched thorow it. In the Army was no weapon to be seen, but Cups, Barrels, and Flagon; and eating, drinking, laughing, and singing, instead of skirmishing, &c. so that the Historian observes, a 1000 sober *Persians*, (if their courage had been according to the occasion offered them by this drunken army) might have defeated them, and recovered the Countries freedome.

**G**EDROSIA, now CHARMAN, Circan, and Gesh, hath toward the East the Realm of Camboy, or part of the Indies, on the West Carmania, from which it is parted by the River Ilment: whose chief City is called Gedrosion, or Gesh. Alexander here (to immortalize his fame) making all the Monuments of his Indian conquest larger and bigger than what they represented, occasioned many to suspect, his actions were lesse than is thought, since (hereby) he would have them thought more then they were.

**D**RANGIANA, (divided by the River Drangie, called in new Maps Ilment) is now called SIGESTAN; yet Niger saith, that Drangiana with Arachosia is so called. Some will have this to be Cabul on the Sophies frontiers Westward, having a particular Mahometan King. It is bounded on the North and West with Aria, under the Mountain Bagoe, and on the East with Aracosia, and is so inclosed with Mountains, that the River scarce finds passage; two Cities hereof are, Sige, whence it is named Sigestan, and Mulebet, where Aladine a seditious Persian, promised an eternal earthly fools Paradise to all that took his part, who swearing to venture their lives in his quarrells, he appointed them to massacre such neighbour Princes as probably might prove bad to him, which thing they did; whom the Italians calling Assassines, that is, thieves, and cut-throats, we use the word to Assassinate. Some indeed attribute this unto Aladeules, King of Antitaurus, whom Selym the first vanquished; but Paulus Venetus relates the full story concerning Aladine.

**A**RIA (by others, Eri, Sablestam, Sargutzar, Corfan, and Semere) hath on the West Parthia, and Carmania the Desert, on the East the Country of Parapomifus. Here are three principal Rivers Aria, Arapen, and Tonelet; also the Marsh of Arien, now called the Burgian Lake. Its chief City is Eri, or Aria, thirteen miles about; Sartibarzanes was once Governour of this Country; who revolting from, and joyning battell with Alexander, challenged to fight hand to hand with any of his commanders: the which one Erigius an aged, but mettlesome souldier, undertaking, and having cried aloud, I will shew what souldiers Alexander had, came on, and at the second onset, slew Sartibarzanes; and then the Arians re-obeyed Alexander; who at another time having rebelled; and being by Alexander forced to hide in a Cave, on the top of an inaccessible Rock, he piling up wood even with the Cavesmouth, set it on fire with the wind; whereby, some, by the heat and smoak, being half burnt and stifled, the rest yielded to his mercy.

ARACHOSIA,

**A**RACHOSIA, (which hath on the West Drangiana, on the East, India) is, they say, called (of it self) Cabull, whose chief City is Cabull, formerly called Alexandria of Arachosia; Alexander built it at the foot of the Hill Caucasus, (Taurus taking this name here) and left 7000 Macedonian souldiers to people the same. On this Mount the Tragedy of Prometheus is said to be acted, which is far diversly related by Angulime, then according to the vulgar Fable.

**P**ARAPOMISUS, so called for that it is fashioned like an Island, with Rivers running almost about it, is named Dabe by one, but by another Candabar; yet others will have this called Sablestan. It is bounded on the South with Arachosia, on the North with the Mountains of Taurus, dividing it from Turary; here called the Mountain of Parapomise. It is so mountainous, that in Alexanders times, it was scarce known to its neighbour Countries, and the people being so barbarous that they were not held worthy of acquaintance; whose Valleys (though said to be indifferent fruitfull) were so shadowed with the high hills; that it much eclipsed their clearest day. Their chief Town, and a frequented Market is Candabar, or rather now called Coudatura.

**S**ACA, whose people Saca, seating themselves North in Germany, gave name to the Saxons, increasing there both in number and valour. They are reported still to live here barbarously in Caves, living mostly by theft. The Country is situated more Northerly than Parapomifus, on the borders of Scythia, or Tartary.

**H**IRCANIA hath divers names, as Girgiam, Corcam, Mesandre, Myrach, Strave, Diargument; and hath on the North the Hircanian, or Caspian Sea, and on the South, Aria, and Parthia, its chief City is Hircan, very strongly situated, and called by the Scythians, Charizat. In it also is the Town Nobarsca, once famous for an Oracle therein. When Alexander conquered this country, (it being in a manner a Forrest) the Hircanians tying the boughs together, he could not come at them. But causing his Souldiers to cut down the Wood, which they thought his affairs would not have permitted him to do, they yielded. Abundance of fierce Tygers lurking in these Forrests, occasioned that Proverb of cruel men; That they had sucked an Hircanian Tiger. There are Rivers in these forementioned Provinces, some whereof (they say) have even an incredible steep fall into the Sea, and the River Zioberis in this Hircania, in his course out of the Hills, is hid 38 miles under-ground, rising again into another river, the which, Alexander, by casting two Oxen therein, the stream casting them up at it rising, made tryall of.

There



There is also included within the Realm of *PERSIA*, the Island *ORMUS* (for *Persia* containeth the eleven mentioned Provinces, bounded in the generall with the Main Ocean on the South, and the *Caspian Sea*, with the River *Oxus*, on the North, which *Oxus*, (as may be shewn hereafter, is a bound fatall to Monarchies) about twelve miles from the continent, not great, and yet barren. They say it is tributary to the *Portugalls* ever since 1506. But its convenient scituation, for the Trade both of *Arabia*, *Persia*, and *India*: occasioned these Verses by the *Arabians*.

*If all the world should be a Ring; the stone,  
And Gemme thereof, were Ormus Isle alone.*

So that, the Customes of its Merchandise affords a great Sum to the Mahometan Vice, or under King thereof, unto whose Crown the Isle *Borsaria* not far off, and also some of *Arabia* the happy, is said to belong.

This is the ordinary and received Description, and Division of *Persia*, but one that hath written a brief relation of the chief Provinces thereof, and which have continued longest under the *Persians* command, saith, that *Persia*, which those born in the Country call *Parc*, or *Agem*, and whose inhabitants are named *Parrys*, or *Agemys*, being one of the greatest Monarchies (for before the renting *Media*, and *Armenia* from it, it was 4560 miles in compass) and the most famous and best people in the World, cannot be discovered, or have any certain bounds given unto it for the variety found in that Kings dominions, the Realms, and Provinces whereof, have been sometimes very great, sometimes of small extent.

After *Sardanapalus* his death, the Empire was divided into the *Assyrian*, *Chaldean*, and *Median* Monarchy, of which last the founder was *Arbates*, in the year of the World 3146, the seventh of which Monarchs of the *Medes*, was *Phraortes*, who being of great prowess, and reigning 22 years, compelled the *Persians* to be his Tributaries. But *Cyrus* *Asiages* his Grandchild, having no quarrell at all against *Cyaxares* his Uncle (who is plainly *Darius* the *Mede* with *Daniel*), left him the Kingdome of *Media*, and himself took *Persia*; yet so, that *Cyrus* marrying *Cyaxares* his onely daughter, should be his heir both of what he then had, and what they should mutually win in *Cyaxares* his life time. So that although the *Greeks* attribute the taking of *Babylon*, and slaying of *Balthazar* unto *Cyrus* onely; yet the Scripture gives it wholly to *Darius*; as being the elder, the *Medes* Empire the more famous of the two; and the Uncle being before the Nephew, unto whom also what they both won, was to belong, till after death, *Cyrus* succeeding him, and incorporating thereby, the *Medes* and *Persians* into one,

joynd

joynd also the *Assyrian* Monarchy, besides *Armenia* and three other Countries to his Empire: whose succellour *Cambyses* (a cruel tyrant making an expedition into Egypt, in which he dyed; although he subdued *Psammiticus* the last King thereof, uniting it to his Empire) the Vice-Roy, a *Magus*, set up his own son, the false *Smerdis* as *Cambyses* his brother; till *Otanes* a Noble man, being informed by his daughter the King's Concubine, that he had no ears, the deceit being discovered, this false *Smerdis* was slain in the 8th month of his reign; and the seven Nobles chose one among them to be King, whose horse first neighed in the Palace Green before Sun-rising: which by the sleight of his Groom tell to *Darius* called *Hystaspes*; whose two immediate Succellours were *Xerxes*, who to his own overthrow, attempted to subdue the *Greeks*; and *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, who is called in Scripture *Ahasuerus*: The 5th after whom, being *Darius* Governour of *Media*, he was vanquished by *Alexander* the Great in three battles, whereby the *Median* and *Persian* Empire was passed over to the *Macedonian*, which was in the year of the World 3635. At which Conquest, *Alexander* is reported to have loaded 10000 Mules, and 5000 Camels, with the gold and wealth taken therein, beside what every Souldier particularly had. Hereupon, the *Persian* Monarchy was obscured, till the year of Christ 228, that is, 535 years; 83 years under *Alexander's* succellours of *Syria*; 452 under the *Parthian* kings: for *Ashaces* a *Parthian* Noble periwading the Eastern people with the *Persians*, to break the *Greek* yoke, took the Diadem: although in that they changed onely the Tyrant, not the tyranny. But at length *Artaxerxes* a *Persian* taking an opportunity, by the massacring and breaking of the *Parthians* by *Caracalla* and *Macrinus*, slaying *Artabanus* the last *Parthian* King, he raised again the royal Seat of *Persia*, though not without three dayes cruel fight. *Artaxerxes* hereupon, sending to *Severus* the Roman Emperour, for all the Provinces of Asia belonging to the *Persian* Monarchy, to be delivered him, *Severus* went against him with an Army, dividing it into three parts; two whereof the *Persians* breaking, he hastily and dangerously retired with the third. So that, *Valerianus* being after this overcome and taken by *Sapores* the second of that *Persian* race: their name growing terrible, *Constantine* the Great, brought both the Garrisons and Colonies of the North-West into the East, removing also the Empire's Seat from Rome to *Constantinople*, lest the *Persians* should intrench too far on the Roman Provinces. They continued in Sovereignty under 28 Kings, till the year 634, in which, *Haumar* the *Saracen* vanquishing *Hormisdas* the second, the *Persians* were buried under infamy by the *Saracens*; who gave to their Deputies here kept, the name of Sultan or Soldan, who remained till the year 1030; in which *Tangrolipix* the Turk coming out of *Armenia* for assistance to Mahomet the *Persian* Sultan, was invested King of *Persia* through the said Mahomet's unhappy death. The third that is read of, from

Kkkkk

*Tangrolipix*,

*Taagrel pin*, was *Cusanes*; who being conquered by the great Cham of Tartarie in the year 1302, *Haalon* was ordained the first Tartarian King of Persia; the 9th from whom was *Abuzaïd*: who dying, the Tartarian Princes civilly dissenting about seizures on several parts thereof; *Gempfus* a *Parthian* took occasion to free both his own subjects and the Persians from their bondage: which he effecting, was chosen Sultan or King of Persia; whose issue not long enjoyed it; Violent *Tamerlane* the *Tartar* dispossessing that race; whose issue also, after his death soon lost this kingdom: for *Usun Casanes* the *Armenian* rooted out *Malanores* the last of his line, in 1431, and possessed the kingdom; during whose reign, he gave his daughter in marriage to one *Aider S. phre*, the son of *Guine Sophie*; who (in 1360) deriving his birth from *Atusa Cerejin* one of the twelve sons of *Ozen Hali*'s son. (who marrying their proper *Mahomet*'s daughter, he bequeathed to the said *Hali* all his estate; with the title of Caliph or Emperour) contrived an establishment of the Caliphateship in his own family. *Jacup Usun Casanes* his son fearing *Aider*'s glory, had him slain, casting his sons *Ishmael* and *Solyman* into prison; who notwithstanding being well educated, and having liberty afforded them by *Amazar* to whom they were delivered, *Ishmael* vanquishing and killing *Jacup*, with his son *Eluan*, was both crowned King of Persia, and as to religion, made *Hali* and himself *Mahomet*'s true successors: rejecting *Albuquerque* or *Abuczer*, *Ormar* or *Hannar*, and *Odman* or *Osmen*, together with the Turks who followed them, (for being powerful men, and great assistants to *Mahomet*, they all pretended themselves his true successors) as schismatical Rebels: whence hath proceeded those mortal jars between the Turks and them, though to their loss, who have (since *Ishmael Sophie*, who began the 7th race of the Persian Kings in 1495) successively maintained wars with the Turk; unto whom they lost *Babylon*, with a great slaughter of the defendants in 1639. The contention between *Hali* and the three above-mentioned, about the succession, was the rise of four sects; The Persians having the best reason for their claim; and by *Ishmael Sophie*'s valour, challenging the race of *Hali*, he brought his sect into credit, proclaiming war against his neighbours that would not embrace the same. He wore a red Turban with twelve points, in remembrance of *Ozen* or *Osian*'s twelve sons, the son of *Hali*, and commanding all his followers to wear the like. Many Nations followed him and his sect, and all people between *Euphrates* and *Abian*, the Caspian Sea and Persian gulph, are settled in this opinion, differing also in some other ceremonies or circumstances from the Turkish *Mahometans*. In the *Sophie*'s Dominions are likewise some Jews, of those that remained in *Assyria*, when *Nebemiah* and *Ezra* led back the rest into *Palestine*; who choosing a head of *David*'s house, called him, *The Head of the banished*, and built a Town on *Euphrates* banks, which they named *Neardea*, or a fount of Sciences. In the Province *Carsan*, there are

*Melebitis*

*Melebitis* (aforementioned) who obey the Patriarch of *Antioch*. *Cosroes* also the Persian King chasing away those called Catholics, in despite of the Emperour *Heraclius*, who had defeated him, planted *Nestorians* in *Persia*, who (they say) live mixt among the *Assyrians*, *Medes*, *Mesopotamians*, and *Parthians*, of whom we are next to speak. Many *Armenians* have also passed into *Persia* for fear of the Turk's cruelty, acknowledging two Patriarchs: the Superiour being in the greater *Armenia*, near *Ervan* in *Persia*; the other in the lesser *Armenia* in *Sis* of *Caramania*. As to the Quality and Riches of these Countries, there is found great difference in the soyl. *Assyria* is a plain Country abounding in Rivers, and exceeding fruitfull. *Mesopotamia* is wondrous fertile in some parts; yielding (if it may be credited) 200, and in some places 300 fold, and fit for breeding of Cattle: but in some others is so subject to heat, as many beasts cannot endure its extremity. Here being few Fountains, which the Inhabitants either out of malice or subtilty do hide; but the fertile places are overflown with *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, as *Egypt* is with *Nilus*. Its very miry here in Winter. Herein also are great Desert places, all sandy, without fruit: yet even there is gathered the sweet *Ammomum*, and store of Naphte or liquid Bitumen; and about the Town *Merdin* is abundance of Cotton. *Media* is generally hilly and cold, especially toward the North, and therefore barren; and little Corn growing, making their bread mostly of dried Almonds, and their drink of the roots of some herbs; eating ordinarily Venison, for they have here scarce any thing but fruit-Trees, and wild beasts, tame beasts none: but the South part abounds both in Wheat, Wine, and tame beasts; and the soyl about *Tauris* is fruitfull in all things. So that of this part of *Media*, he may be understood, who saith, *There be some grassie Plains so big, that 50000 horses may pasture on them*. *Atropatia* is very fruitful by reason of the Rivers *Araxe* or *Arasse*, and *Cire* or *Ciro* which water it; wherein (in old time) was great store of Silks: and it appears to be the same, that another calls *Zairia*, as above said, whose Country he saith is little beholding to the Husband-man's industry; yielding for one sowing, most times two, sometimes three reapings. *Susiana* hath in it many Serpents, doing men much harm; it being (towards the Persian gulph) very Moorish; and exceeding hot, by reason of some high Mountains keeping off the Northerly winds. Yet it yields store of Wheat, and abundance of Barley; but some places having much Bitumen or sulphurous slime; the waters both favour thereof, causing a pain in the bowels; and so shortening mens lives; and also Plants grow with difficulty. Near the Town *Suse*, is digged much Naphte. *Persis*, or the Province particularly named *Persia*, hath its North part cold and hilly, not fit for fruits. They have here Emeralds, though not the clearest; and some say it hath much gold and silver mine. But its middle part is plain, having many Lakes and Rivers, and yielding abundance

K k k k k 2

dance of all things; whose Southern part, towards the Persian gulph, being windy, hot and moorish, bears no fruit besides Palm-trees yielding Dates. *Hircania* toward the North, being full of great Forrests, hath store of Tygers; also Panthers and Leopards; but the other part is said to be plain and fruitful in Wheat, Wine, Figs, and other fruits, having Trees from whence honey distilleth; and that part near the Caspian Sea, through the fresh water, from rocks, is alwayes full of grasse and flowers. Much silk is also made here. *Carmania* in the middle part thereof is indifferent good, bearing much fruit, and good wine. But the Desert is hot and barren: and in the Maritime parts of the upper there is no Trees, besides Bushes and some Palms. *Gedrosia* affords Nard and Myrrhe; but being full of sand, it is mostly a desert; and through the Sun's heat greatly wants water, though it hath rain in Summer. *Aria* hath some fields bearing fruit; but they are near the Mountains, defending them from the Sun's heat: wherein also there growes Vines yielding wine, which is reported to keep 90 years. Here are also black, and some yellowish Sapphires, and a drugg like Myrrhe. But this Province is greatly subject to heat, and environed with Mountains, Forrests, and Deserts. Whence it appears, that the Provinces of Persia, their Trade and Riches is from Silks, (of which they sell and carry much into all the Eastern Countries; yea, as far as Syria) also from Pearls and precious stones. *Chirman* in *Carmania* venting likewise great store of cloath of gold and silver, which the Inhabitants there make.

**P**ARTHIA (called *Charasien* from the Town *Charas*, also *Arach*, and *Jex*;) confineth on the East with *Aria*, and on the West with *Media*. Chief Towns whereof are *Cassan*, very rich. *Tigranocerta*, from *Tigranes* the Armenian King who built it. *Ctesiphon*, once the royal Seat, which was divers times besieged by the Roman Emperours, though mostly without successe: before which, *Julian* (called the Apostate) ended his dayes. There are also divers other Towns of note. But the principal City is *Hispaham* or *Hispaan*, which some say, was the ancient *Hecatompylis*, and is so beautiful and great, that the Persians term it half the World. The *Parthians* are said to have their descent from the *Scythians*, whose language they keep, though with some mixture of the *Median*: their name implieth as much as Exiles; they were accounted the expertest Archers in the World; and in their dismal retreats, would shoot sometimes from between their leggs, and sometimes backward. They were likewise skillfull horsemen: for the ayre's drynesse seasoned their bow-strings; and the Countrie's plainnesse exercised their horse. The first King was *Asaces*, beginning his reign in the year of the World 3718, who brought them into conformity and discipline; before, a base and rude people. The 9th King was *Herodes*; who overcoming *Craspus*, cau-

sed

sed molten gold to be powred down his throat, for his covetousness. The 10th was *Phraortes*, who having greatly worsted *Antonius*: yet submitted to *Augustus Caesar*, restoring the Captives and Engins taken at the victory over *Craspus*: which sign of subjection being a receiving the *Parthian* Kings by the Emperour's and Senate's appointment, continued but till *Tiridates* the 4th, from the said *Phraortes*; for *Ariabanus* a stranger took away his life and kingdom: the 11th from which *Ariabanus* was the very last *Parthian* King; who in the year of Christ 228, was conquered by *Artaxerxes* the first of the second race of the Kings of Persia, *Parthia* continuing a member of that Monarchy: till that under the Sarracen Caliphs, they had Sultans of their own; one of which, *Gempfas*, subdued the Persians, and are now (both *Persia* and *Parthia*) under the command of the *Sophies*. This Country is subject to great heat, yet beareth (saith one) all things, especially great Trees; for it is full of Woods, but without any Olives. It is encompassed with very high Mountains, and watered with many streams. I refer its Relion to that of *Persia*.

**T**ARTARIA (known of old by the name of *Scythia*, from their first King *Scythus*; and who were at first called *Magogus*, from *Magog*, *Japhet's* son: whose posterity its Inhabitants were) is called by the Inhabitants *Mongul*: but *Tartaria*, from the River *Tartar*, watering a great part of it. It is a great Empire, (not yielding to any other in largeness of Countries, but to the King of *Spain's* Dominions: whom also it exceeds, in that it is all united by some bond: whereas the other are very much disjointed) extending 5400 miles from East to West, and 3600 from North to South; so that the great Cham or Emperour thereof, hath many great Realms and Provinces under him, containing a great number of good Towns. It is bounded on the East with *China*, the Sea of *Cin* or Eastern Ocean, and the Strait of *Anian*: on the West with the Mountain *Imam*; (yet there are some Hordes of *Tartars* on this side of it, who acknowledge the great Cham) on the South with the River *Ganges* and *Oxus* (now *Abiam*) *Indostan*, and the upper part of *China*: or (according to some) with the hill *T.urus*, the Caspian Sea, and the wall of *China*; on the North with the *Scythick* or frozen Ocean; the Country of whose shoar is to cold, that it is held uninhabited. Besides the rich and great Kingdom of *Cathai*, (in whose center, the City *Cambalu* or *Cambula* (24 Italian miles in circuit on the river *Polsung*) is, as it were, seated) there are the Realms of *Tangu*, *Tenduc*, *Camul*, *Tainfur*, and *Theket*, with the Town and Province of *Caindo*. But *Tartaria* is now commonly distributed into five Provinces.

1. *Precopenfis*, containing the *Asiatican* banks of the River *Tanais* with all *Taurica Chersonesus*, two of whose chief Cities are *Crim*: whence the Rulers there seated, were called *Crim Tartars*: and *Precops*, which denominates the Country. These *Tartars* are

to aid the Turk with 60000 men, without pay, upon any occasion: for which, the Tartar (the Turk's issue male failing) is to succeed in his Empire.

2. *Asiatica*, called also *Muscovitica*, and the Desert *Tartaria*, situated about *Volga's* banks; whose people living mostly in Tents, are in Troops, called *Hordes*; who stay no longer in a place, than there is pasture for their Cattle; and in their removes, observe the Pole-Star. These are now united under one Prince, who is the *Muscovite's* tributary. Here are the Cities, *Astrachan*; (near which, *Selimus* the second, Turk, was vanquished by *Basilides* the *Muscovite*) and *Noghan*, whose most Northerly Horde, the *Noyacenses*, hath the most warlike people.

3. The ancient *Tartaria*, their old habitation; from whence, they violently spread themselves over *Asia* and *Europe*. It burts upon the frozen Ocean: the common sort lying in Tents of skin, or under their Carts; yet are there 4 Cities therein, one whereof is *Choras*, noted for the *Tartarian* Cham's Sepulchres. The Wilderness of *Lop* is in this Province, whence King *Tabor* coming, and persuading the people to Judaism; *Charls* the 5th burnt him at *Mantua* in 1540.

4. *Zagatai*, which is subdivided into *Baßria*, bounded on the North and East with *Sogdiana*, near the river *Oxus*; on the South with *Aria*, in which were anciently goodly Towns, some being built, and others ruined by *Alexander*; three of whose Cities, at this day, are *Chorazzan*, whence the whole Country is named *Chorazzan* or *Charassan*. *Baßria* denominated from a river now called *Bochara*, in which *Arice*n the Physician was born; and also *Zoroastes*, who in *Ninus*'s time reigned the first King of this Country: unto whom, some have imputed the invention of Astronomy. *Istigia*, which some say is the chief City of this Province, and one of the pleasantest of the East. *Margiana*, having on the East *Baßria*, on the West *Hircania*; (yet some say it lyeth North to *Hircania*). It is called *Tremigan* and *Jeselbas*, from the peoples great turbants; whose chief City is *Antioch*; (for *Antiochus* Soter King of Syria did fortifie it with a strong wall) the which at this day some name *Indioy* or *Indion*, and was once called *Alexandria Margiana*. Here is also *Maran*, near which *Ishmael* the *Sophie* overcame the great Cham. The Marishes of *Oxiane*, now called the Lake of *Barlacamber*, or of *Maru*, are placed in this Country. *Sogdiana*, situate on the West side of *Baßria*; two of whose Cities are *Oxiana*, standing on the River *Oxus*; and *Alexandria Sogdiana*, which *Alexander* built when he went to *India*; in which also was *Cyropolis*, a strong City built by *Cyrus*; under whose walls *Alexander*, with a blow on his neck with a stone, fell to the ground, his Army giving him for dead. *Turcheßan*, where the Turks inhabited before they brake into *Armenia* in 844, barrenness and want enforcing them thereunto. Here are two Cities, *Galla* and *Ocerra*; of whose eminency or fame, I find nothing reported.

Lastly,

Lastly, *Zagataie*, lying Northward of all the other four; so named, from one *Sachetaie*, a *Tartarian* Noble; and now gives name to all the Provinces. *Ogg*, *Tamerlane's* father, was *Sachetaie's* Successour; which *Tamerlane*, (called, *Gods Wrath*, and the worlds Terror) by marrying *Gino*, *Cham's* daughter and heir, had the *Tartarian* Empire: which he dividing among his sons, they (after his death) soon lost all that he conquered. A chief City hereof is *Serinachand*, *Tamerlane's* place of residence: the which he enriched with the spoils of his manifold victories; as also *Bochara*, where the Governour of the Province (under the Cham) resides.

5. *Cathia* (which was, of old, called *Scythia* without the Mountain *Imaus*, as *Zagatai*, *Scythia* within *Imaus*) took its name from the *Cathay*, whom *Strabo* here placeth; and hath for bounds, *China* on the South, the *Scythick* Sea on the North, lying also Eastward from the *Tartarian* Provinces. The *Seres* were thought anciently to inhabit here, who being very expert in weaving silks made of a fine wooll, on the leaves of Trees, caused silk to be called (in Latine) *Serica*. The *Cathians* and *Zagataians* are the Noblest and Civillest among the Tartars, and lovers of all arts. Herein are divers fair Cities; whereof *Cambalu* 28 miles about, besides the Suburbs, as some say, (though others say, about 24 Italian miles, as aforesaid) is the chief: here the great Cham resides. But in *Xaisdu* he hath a Palace almost of incredible largeness and statefulness. The first of the great Chams or Emperours of *Tartarie* was *Cingis* or *Zingis* in 1162, who subduing *Nuchan* the last King of *Tenduch* and *Cathia*, changed the name of *Scythia* into *Tartaria*: the 5th from whom was *Tamerlane* or *Tamir Cham*, in whose time this Monarchy was at the height: the 9th was *Tamor*, since whom it is not known amongst us who have reigned, or what memorable things have been acted among them: for (they say) that neither the *Tartar*, *Muscovite*, or King of *China*, will suffer any besides Merchants or Embassadors to enter their Dominions, nor their own Subjects to travel forth of them. But it is known, that this Government is tyrannical: life and death consisting in the Emperour's word; whom some of the simple sort call, *The shadow of Spirits*, and son of the immortal God. Amongst the divers Rivers of note therein, is *Oxus* in *Zagataie*, arising out of Mount *Taurus*; which the *Persians* never passed over to enlarge their Dominions, but were notably overthrown; and so was it with the *Tartars* in attempting the same thing. The *Scythians* were a valorous, populous, and ancient people, being never subdued, and but seldom assaulted to be subdued: and when there had been a long controversy between the *Egyptians* and these for antiquity; it was at last pronounced, *The Scythian Nation was always the ancientest*. And for their populousness, some have called them, *The Mother of all inundations*, Sec. *Anacharsis* the Philosopher was born in this Country; which extends also to the Regions North of *Danubium*, named *Sarmatia* *Scythia*

*Southern Europe.* As to the quality, fertility and riches thereof, it is said to have been (through its many rivers) very much abounding in grass; but so deficient in fuel, that they burnt bones instead of wood: they have stones also in *Cambay*, which burn: which Country is said to abound in Rice, Wheat, &c. though the air be cold; having likewise great store of Wooll, Silk, Hemp, Rhubarb, Musk, fine Chamlets, Gold, Beasts, and all necessities, not only barely to live, but with delight; there Thunder and Lightning is very strange and terrible. It is sometimes extremely hot, and suddenly very cold, much snow falling; their winds also most strong and violent. In the Realm of *Tangut* grows much Rhubarb transported thorow the World. In *Tenduch* are found rich golden Mines, and Azure. But *Tansur* being better manured, abounds in Vines. There be Moorish, full of Forrests and wild beasts, yet abounding in Coral; where is also much Musk, Cinnamon, and other Spices; so that (this Countreys Merchandize being Rice, Wooll, Silk, Hemp, Rhubarb, Musk, and excellent Chamlets of Camels hair, besides their Countreys commodious situation for Traffique of one Town with another, (there being also sent to *Cambala* from *China* 10000 Carts yearly, laden with Silk, besides other merer andies) to which may be added, their many incursions into *Europe* and *Asia*, their great spoys carried out of *Afrique* and other parts, especially from *China*, of a long time,) we cannot conclude, but that the *Tartars* are very rich. Yet those who live towards the North, want many necessities for man's life, whereas their neighbours (and all subject to one Prince) have plenty. As for the *Tartarian's* Religion, some are *Alometans*, crying daily, there is but one God. In *Cashay* there are many more grasse Idolaters than *Alometans*; who hold two gods; one of Heaven, of whom they desire health and understanding: the other of Earth; whom they say hath a Wife and Children caring for their cattle, corn, &c. and therefore they ask such things of him: rubbing his Idol's mouth with the fattest of the meat when they eat, and of the wife and children, (which are the little Images in their houses) but cast the broth out of the house to the spirits. Keeping also their god of Heaven in a high place, and that of the earth in a low. They believe mens souls are immortal; but passing from one body to another, according to *Pythagoras*. They worship also the Sun, Moon, and four Elements; calling the Pope and all Christians, Pagans, Infidels, Dogs, and Idolaters. They never fast in, or solemnize, one day more than another. There are likewise some Jews and Christians, although but few: these being *Nestorians*, who differ from the Romish and Greek Church, in putting Christ in two persons; in saying, that *Mary* the Virgin is not God's mother; in that their Priests may marry as often as they will. They say also, 'tis one thing to be God the Word, and another thing to be Christ; neither own they the two Councils of *Ephesus*. Their Patriarch also who resides

tides at *Musal* in *Mesopotamia* is not elected; but the son succeeds the father, being first created Arch-bishop. They have one sore and unnatural practise among them: feeding their old parents, with more fat than enough to dispatch them out of the World, and burning their dead bodies, they carefully gather and keep the ashes as precious, putting it on their meat when they eat. *Prester Jean* King of *Hatay* or *Tenduc*, was ruined by the great Tartar *Chingis*, in 1162, 40 years after he received the Nestorian opinion: yet was still Lord of a small estate. These Christian Nestorians so called, extend unto the Town of *Campion*, some of whom remain at *Tangut*, *Succir*, *Cambala*, and in other Towns:

**I N D I A** (whose ancient Inhabitants were the *Dedale*, *Mazage*, *Malli*, *Oxydrace*, *Gangarides*, and divers others, (all of whom *Alexander* is said to have conquered in his Expedition hither) is so called from the river *Indus*, which it hath on its West side, as *China* on the East, and *Tartaria* on the South; whose longest day in the North is 15 hours and a half; but in the South, but 12 hours, for it is 3600 miles long: whose chief river is *Ganges*, rising in the *Sybian* hills, of a great depth and breadth, and dividing *India* into two parts; the Western part whereof next the Persians, is called *India within Ganges*; the other part, *India without Ganges*. This river overflowing the Country, enricheth it as *Nilus* doth *Egypt*: and is not that which the Scripture calls *Pisun*, compassing the Land of *Havilah*; for there were two *Havilah's*: the one inhabited by *Havilah*, *Ophir*, and *Jubah*, *Joan's* sons, which is this *India*, or part thereof: the other, denominated from *Havilah*, *Chush* his son; of which before. That *India within Ganges* which (at this day) they call *Indostan*, is that part contained between Mount *Caucasus*, now *Dillenquer* or *Naugrocot*, and the Sea, and between the rivers *Ganges* and *Indus* or *Iader*; the greatest part whereof, the great *Mogor Mogul* or *Mogull* commandeth; reckoned by some to be 47 Provinces or Realms, (although there are two lately erected Princes here, to wit, of *Nisamaluc* and *Idalean*, (one whereof resides in *Danager*, the other in *Visapore*, who hold the Country of *Decan*, being 250 miles long, on the Sea-coast) whose second Town of note, *Decan* (next to the chief Town of the Realm, *Bider*) denominates the whole Country: and of which two Princes, near the *Mogor*, there can be no particular relation) five whereof are (by some) reckoned for the chief; to wit, *Cambaia*, *Dely* or *Dellie*, *Sanguet*, *Mandao*, and *Bengala*. *Cambaia* (called also *Guzarate*) hath on the East *Mandao*, on the West the *Nautaces* or *Gedrosians*, extending it self 500 miles upon the Sea-coast; and is so full of Towns, Villages, and Inhabitants, that 60000 places are said to be peopled: five of whose chief Towns are *Campanel*, the King's ancient residing place, seated on the top of a high Mountain, and encompassed with seven walls, *Daman* and *Bandore*, sometimes ruined by the *Portugalls*. *Diu*, held by the *Portugalls*, as also is *Daman*, *Cambaia*, the Realms denominators,

nominator, a goodly City of nigh 130000 families, and therefore called *Cair* of the *Indies*. *Mandao*, so named from its chief City *Mandao*, twelve miles about, which was not surrendred unto *Asterhmed*, the *Mogul* of *Zagatai* till after a siege of twelve years, which Kingdome the said *Mogul* took occasion to seize on, by *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, his unjustly warring on it; subduing also *Badurius* his Kingdome therewith, although he had in his Army 500000 foot, 150000 horse, 1000 pieces of Ordnance, 500 Wagons of Gunpowder, and bullets, 200 Elephants, and 500 Chests of Gold and Silver. *Dellie*, situated betwixt the Realms of *Decan*, and *Narfingia*, and divided from *Cambaia*, by the Mountains; which (the *Mogulls* taking from the *Saracens*, who had also subdued *Cauora*, or *Decan*, they made *Dellie* the chief City thereof their place of residence, another City is *Chefineser*, where Magick is much studied. The *Anazons* which were valiant women formerly, here dwelt, there being also some who yet ride on horseback in manner of men; and a *Mahometan* King lately here reigning, had a Wife which marched commonly with 2000 women on Horseback. *Bengala*, a great realm of twelve leagues in length, and also breadth, having many, both land and Sea-Towns. Its City *Gauro* was the abode of its Kings, as also *Bengala* the Provincial Town, reckoned one of the greatest and fairest of all in the *Indies*. *Sangué* which some call *Citor*, and whose chief City is *Citor*, twelve miles in compass, seated in an advantageous place, and very strongly fortified. This Province was (but lately) subject unto a fair and courageous woman named *Cremantina*, yet a Tributary to *Badurius* of *Cambaia*, from whom she revolting, he dispossessed her of the Town, where she had fortified her self with no less than 30000 foot and 2000 horse. There is also the Kingdome of *Bocan*, or *Balassia*, which hath two Cities of the same names; and which containeth inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver. This Empire hath been conquered and contraded into one, by the great *Mogulls*, about 120 years or more; who were so called from the *Mongull Tartars*, from whom they descended by cutting off a Letter, and so likewise (I suppose) *Mogors*. This Countrey hath been notable, for abundance of, both necessaries for life, and also of pleasure; likewise for sundry beasts, as Apes, Dragons, Camells, Serpents, Rhinoceros, and Elephants. *Cambaia* abounds in Wheat, Rice, Sugar, all sorts of fruits, Spices, and Incense, fraughting also sometimes 40 or 50 ships (to transport into other parts) with their great store of Cotton, and Silk. Here is also found the Onyx stone, called *Cornallina*, many Diamonds and Chalcedonies; it abounds also in liquid Storax. It is watered chiefly with the River *Indus*, coming from Mount *Caucasus*. *Bengala* also hath great store of Rice, Wheat, Sugar, very good Ginger, and long Pepper, no Countrey having more flesh or Fish, or more Silk and Cotton, besides its sweet and temperate Ayre, attracting many people thither. And the Jews and Mahometans there dwelling, believe that the sweet and pleasant fruit of these

Trees

Trees called *Moses*, was that which tempted *Adam*. Here are Canes so big, that they serve for barrels, &c. *Dellie* also abounds in Horses, Dromedaries, which some call *Abades*, twice as big as a Bull, and Elephants, besides the commodities of other Realms; So that the enriching Merchandises of this Empire, which they send into remote Countries, are, abundance of Cotton and Silks, Spices and precious stones; their *Mogor* also having undoubtedly vast treasures, as having conquered *Badurius* (who brought 500 Chests or Tuns of Gold and Silver, as was said, to pay his Army) and a great number of other Provinces. As to Religion, the *Mogors* Empire is for the most part *Mahometans*; also there are many false idolaters, as may straightway be declared. There are also many Jews, and some called Christians, Abyssins, whom traffique again draw hither. There are also within *Ganges*, the two Kingdomes of *Narfinge* and *Calicute*, governed by their own Princes. The first whereof, *Narfinge*, lyeth between the Gulf of *Bengala* on the East, and the Mountains of *Gate* on the West; and is in length 600 miles, wherein are two royall Towns, *Narfinge*, and *Bisagar*, or *Besenagal* (having three walls, and famous for traffique, yet it was burnt by Saracenicall confederates in 1567) by reason whereof, they call this Prince sometimes King of *Narfinge*, sometimes of *Bisagar*. The City of *Tanassar* (some say) belongs to this Kingdome, though the King of *Burma* now holds it. The *Portugals* have seized on one principall sea-Town hereof; namely *Onor*, and made another (to wit) *Batticala* their tributary, but these are in the Province of *Canara*, or *Coican*, being some part of *Decan*, which the King of *Narfinge* doth enjoy; who hath (likewise) the King of *Travancor*, in the Province of *Atalabar*, subject unto him. But two Sea-Towns in *Narfinge* it self, *Coromandel* and *Malipur* are inhabited by Christians, the *Portugalls* holding them also. This King led an Army against *Idalcan* (a neighbour Prince) of 31690 horse, 558 Elephants, and 60000 foot, and vanquished him. In this Country is great plenty of Corn, Sugar, Ginger, and other spices; no place abounding more in Silk and Cotton than it. *Canara*, yields Rice, Sugar, Nuts, and Figs; but no Wheat, Barley, nor Pulse. *Bisnagar*s Territory is very fruitful, nigh which are very pleasant Forrests. But *Travancors* soil is lean. This King hath twelve Millions of Gold or Duckets yearly. For in this Countrey (as in most of the East) all the lands Forrests, Mines, yea, and the Water of some Rivers are the Princes: so that every one washing himself in *Ganges*, running thorow *Bengala*, or that of *Gangue* flowing thorow *Orissa*, must pay a sum to their Kings. This people do believe, first in one God; then in Devils, the Authors of all evil, whom they most honouring, build stately Pagodes, or Temples unto them: and two sorts of people, to wit, the *Bacean*, and *Bramans*, or *Bramins* do govern in a manner the Idolatrous Religion throughout the *Indies*. To speak of all whose vanities and foolish superstitions, might seem as superfluous, as tedious. The *Bramans* are much more esteemed

LIII 2

than

than the other, and are of two sects, either those who marry, and live in Towns, called *Bramanes*; or those who never marry, living on Alms, and going up and down like Pilgrims, &c. for a time, till becoming Abduits, that is, men exempt from Laws, they commit all beailliesse, and villany, and take all kind of pleasures, and these are called *Jagues*, whose Commander distributes sometimes a great revenue, sending them up and down to preach their folly. They worship and esteem of Oxen and Kine more than any beasts, because they think dead mens Souls passe rather into them than into any other. They hold God to be black, as the goodliest colour; wherefore their Idols are black, and so deformed, that they affright the beholders, perswading the people, they are great eaters; by which lying, they get much money and meat to make good chear withall, they know the explication of the 10 Commandments; and the first thing they enjoyn their received Disciples, is never to publish, one God Creator of all things to be worshipped. In their Sabbath's service, their Doctors repeat often these words, *I worship thee, O God, with thy grace and succours eternally*. Alfo to receive meat from Christians, they account it sacriledge.

**CALICUTE** is the chief Realm of the Country of *Malabar*, which is the Western part of *Aurea Chersonesus* of old, which is 900 miles long, from the Mountain *Guate* on the East, to the Indian Ocean East; yet narrow. It contains seven Provinces; two of whom, to wit, *Concor* and *Calicute*, obey the King of *Calicute*, a Prince so powerful, that they call him *Zamorim* or Emperor; although the Realm be but 25 leagues long, and 10 broad: for *Pereimall* King of *Malabar* going to a Mahometan *Atecha*, to finish his dayes, divided his estate into as many parts as Provinces, leaving this name to this King of *Calicute*. Its denominating City *Calicute* reacheth three miles along the Sea-side, without walls, the houses being some distance from each other; yet the staple-Town of all the *Indian* Traffique. *Concor* is a City also, having a title and large Harbour, and so fit for traffique 30 miles from *Calicute*: But *Cochin* is 30 leagues from the same, whence are the best scarlet dyes; whose Governour is the High Priest of the *Bramanes* or *Bramins*: unto whom, they say, the King uses to grant the banquet of his marriage-bed, wherefore his sister's sons succeed him, as being more certainly of the royal blood. The houses of *Calicute* are built low, equal to a man on horseback, because soon finding water, they cannot lay deep foundations. This soil yields much Pepper and Ginger: in the Plains, is a fruit like the Myroboan; but in the reddish soiles, are gathered all sorts thereof. They have divers shrubs and fruits, among which some (unknown to us) taste like Peaches, Damask Prunes, Figges, and Melons. Alces called *Succo-civina*, grows here, and is a gumme gathered from a shrub, having but one reer, like a flasse. They have a Tree yielding Dates like the Palm, wood for fuel, nuts well-

well-tasted: ropes and fine cloath are made of it; Wine, Sugar, and oyl are drawn from it. Another Tree bears Cotton, Cypress or Cobweb-lawn, of whose leaves they make stuffe somewhat like to Sattin or Taffata; making ropes of its bark being spun, under whose latter bark, is a nut as big as ones little finger, in whose inward part, water growing, not much unlike Rose-water: they make fat oyl thereof. They draw mornings and evenings a liquor from this Tree by incision, which is to them as sweet wines. The whole year seems alwayes here as a Spring, through the ayre its temperatenesse and sweetnesse. Here are likewise many beasts, as Lyons, Bugles, Elephants, Bears, Wolves, Stags, Goats, Oxen, though some say they breed not here. Parrots there are of divers colours, and the bird *Saran* somewhat lesse than Parrots. Store of Apes and Monkeys, who running up those Trees (like Nut-trees) spoyle the liquor whereof the *Indians* make drink, overthrowing the vessels in which they receive it. Three sorts of Serpents are in this Country, two whereof are poysonome in their bitings; but the other which are very great, living in Moorish places; having very long feet, are said to have no poyson in them. The *Culicutes* selling not onely their own Pepper and Ginger to Merchants: but Spices, Musk, Incense, Aloes, and Camphir, Brasil, Pearls, and Cassia, which come to this City from other places, makes it one of the richest in the Indies. They believe one God the Creator and first cause of all: but they say, He, to test himself hath committed the Earth's Government, Judgment, and Punishment unto the Devil, whom they call *Deume*, or the god *Tameran*, holding him to be coelestiall. The King hath many figures of Devils in a place of his Palace; and in his Chappel a gaping ghastly brazn Devil is set on a Throne of brasse; who holds the soul of a man in his throat, and another in his hand to devour him. Their sacrificers are called *Bramins*, who (to let passe their many superstitions) promise a general pardon to the people of their faults once a year, in December; which continuing for three dayes, their Idol-Temple (whither they resort from all neighbouring Provinces: and into which none may enter, to worship or be sprinkled with the lamp-oyl by the *Bramins*, till he hath washed himself in the Lake in which the Temple stands) is as a Sanctuary for all, so that none dare either pursue an offender, do wrong, or revenge for wrong done.

*India* without *Ganges*, is situated between the other *India* Westward, and *China* on the East, and was formerly divided between 12 rich and puissant Princes; but now they are all subjected to the King of *Brama* or *Tarma*, or of *Pegu*: some reckoning up 14 Realms which he possideth at this day: But the most remarkable of the 12, into which it was once divided, are seven; 1. *Siam*, or the Kingdome of *Sorna*, made subject to the King of *Brama* in 1565; three of whose chief Cities are, *Siam*, seated on the bank of the broad and deep river *Menam*, a stately and pleasing City, alfo

also very populous; and wherein high 30000 families of Moors, Merchants, are estimated to dwell: the River overflows the Country 120 miles every year; whereby the King of Pegu besieging it in 1567, brought out 70000 of 900000 Souldiers with him out of the waters. *Oche*, bigger than *Siam*, for they reckon therein near 400000 houses; and 200000 boats are said to be there, in which they may pull thorough every street, as in *Venice*. *Malacca*, subject to the Portugals, who have here an Archbishop, with a College of Jesuits: it is eminent for the Trade of Spices, and 20 miles about. 2. *Burma*, whose Kings were but Lieutenants to the Kings of Pegu, till about 100 years since, or more: when as a *Burmese* Prince seized on four Kingdoms; and since, these *Burmians* have won the City *Pegu*, forced *Oche*, and totally subdued *Siam*, making all the rest do them homage. 3. *Pegu*, so called from the river *Pegu* running thorough the middle of the Country, and on which, the most fair and elegant City of *India* of the same name, stand, distant 25 miles from the Sea. In this Country, by means of the titulary King of *Siam* his coming and burning up corn, grass, and fruits, a most insupportable famine consumed all the inhabitants: this kingdom, except those that were preserved by the store houses of the City in 1598. 4. *Matin*, whose chief City is *Matin*; which Country also is notable for the sweet wood *Aloes*; held by the *Indians* a most excellent remedy for many grievous maladies. 5. *Aracan* or *Arachan*, situated North from *Bengala* near the River *Chabery*, on which the chief Town *Arachan* standeth, and is 45 miles from the Sea. *Ara* is also another City here, remarkable for its many Gems. 6. *Camboge*, which takes its name from the principal City so called, which standeth on the river *Mecon*: which receiving into it many rivers, in its flowing out of *China* where it ariseth, makes 100 Islands; and a Lake about 200 miles in compass. 7. *Cochin China*, a few of whose people are said to be Man-eaters: Its chief City of the same name being situate on the Sea, is much frequented for *China* dishes, or *Proceline*. In the several Provinces are to be found several Commodities; great store of Rice, Elephants, little hories, Parrots, Civet-Cats, Huge Canoes, many Rubies, much Lacca, (which some say is the Gum of a Tree; others that they gather it upon leaves) Corn, Pepper, Berjain, Gold, Silver, Tinn, and other metals, plenty of Musk; in some places great Forests, where live many Tygres, Lyons, and wild beasts. There is both flesh and fish, and in one place or other all things needful for the life of man: for the Country being plain, and watered with many goodly Rivers, all things abound beyond what is spoken. Merchants coming thither from all parts, do carry many Commodities forementioned into several parts; so that the wealth of these Realms may easily be conceived by their fruitfulness; and that the King of *Burma* hath store of treasure. From the false and foolish principles of those of *Pegu*, spring so many vain opinions and ceremonies, that they are hardly to be expressed. They have Convents of Priests near their

their Idol-Temples above 300 in a place; who have heads and chin shaven, wearing long Gowns with sleeves hanging to the ground. Those of *Siam* are held, as it were, authors of all superstitions in these Countries; yet hold God for the Creator of all things, who shall recompence the good, and punish the evil: believing also, a man to have about him, both a good Spirit guiding him to good, and keeping him; and another templing, and afflicting him. They much honour their Priests, who are attired in yellow cloath; for all of that colour (it resembling the Sun and gold) is dedicated to God. Many are the number of their Idols; worshipping also the four Elements: so that he who in his life-time adored the earth, chooses to be buried; he that honoured fire, to be burnt; who the ayr, to be hung, and devoured by birds: and who the water, to be drowned. We should exceed our present purpose of brevity, if we should repeat all their vanity.

**C H I N A**, so called, by corruption of the word *Sina* (whose people, the *Sinns*, here inhabited) is a very great and ancient Realm; for (according to the *Chinese*'s own account in their books, and by the computation of an excellent Geometrician and Cosmographer, it hath 3000 leagues in circuit, and 1800 in length: and if we credit their own relations, their Kings from the first called *Vitei*, have successively reigned above 4000 years, being never conquered, till that in *Farfars* time, the 242 King, *Chifanbaan* the *Tartar*'s Lievtenant (his name signifying 100 eyes) deprived him of his kingdom, according to a foretold Prophecie; yet by one *Combu* chosen their 251 King, after 93 years, they were delivered from the *Tartar*'s Government. *China* lyes the most Eastward of any Continent in *Asia*, having the Ocean *Del Zur*, the Isles *Corea* and *Japon* on the East; on the West *India*, and part of *Tartarie*: on the North *Tartarie* onely, from which it is divided, partly by Mountains, partly by a Wall; which being 500 leagues long, was made by King *Tzainton*, and begins in *Canton*, but ends in *Susuan* Province; 100 leagues whereof lying quite open betwixt the Mountains: the wall is there of free-stone, seven fathoms broad from bottom to top. Almost the third part of *China*'s Inhabitants dyed in this toyl; for which proud work, the whole kingdom revolting, they slew the King, and also his son *Agntzi*. It is distributed also into 15 Provinces; to wit, *Pasquia* or *Pagnia*, *Foguen* or *Feguen*, *Canton*, *Olam*, *Tolanchia*, *Sissam* or *Susuan*, *Cassay*, *Oquiam*, *Honam*, *Sincay*, *Archeo*, *Quicheu* or *Quichen*, *Chequetam* or *Chegtian*, *Xanton* and *Quinfay*; every one of which, is bigger than the biggest Realm in *Europe*: in two whereof, *Pasquia* and *Tolanchia*, the King and his Council do alwayes reside, not onely because they are the greatest and best peopled; but by reason also of the *Tartarian*'s Neighbourhood, with whom the *Chinese* are in continual war. In all these Countries are many Towns and Cities: (Every Town of note being built after one manner;



man... to wit, two great, broad and straight streets crossing each other, which end at four Gates equally distant, all garnished with iron, and stately, besides other smaller streets with publique and private buildings) and the Villages are so many and near each other, that their number is unknown; so that here are judged to inhabit 70 millions of people; for they are born, and do die, buy and sell in ships, as if in a City. The two chief Rivers of this Country, are *Polyfango* and *Cacamacan*; on which are 12000 stately bridges, under whose arches ships top and top gallant, do usually passe. The principal Cities are, *Quinsay* or *Santien*, in their language an Ecclesiastical City, which is so large, that a horseman might make speed to ride, from one gate to another in a day, the Suburbs being also almost as great as the City. The King hath here three Palaces; whereof that which standeth toward the East at the City's entry is so big and full of singularities, that some report, it cannot be exactly viewed under four dayes time. It is encompassed with seven Walls, of a great space asunder; it hath 79 stately and admirable artificial Halls, four whereof are the principal, in which Embassadors have audience; (and likewise his Lords and Governours, when he keeps his Court; yet he seldom shews himself to his people out of his lodging, and is scarce ever seen, but through a glasse). The first is of metall curiously cast, with many figures. The second hath a floor of Silver of great value. The third of pure enameld Gold. The fourth far exceeds the other three, wherefore they call it the Hall of the Kings treasure; in which are also many inestimable Jewels and the Kings Chair made of Marble; and set with many pretious stones, and Carbuncles so rich, that by night they shine as if there were Candles; and indeed this Hall contains whatever is rich and rare. *Paquin* where the King also resideth, either for the health of the Ayre, or nearness to the *Tartars*, whose Pallace, though compassed with a triple Wall, within which, besides lodgings, are Hills, Groves, Rivers, Fountains, yet is it not equall in workmanship to the *European* Pallaces. *Nanquin*, in Circuit thirty miles, and is seated twenty seven miles from the Sea, on a fair Navigable River; on which, besides private mens, ride 10000 of the Kings Ships for the most part. *Colim*, famous for *Porcelaine*, *Xaiton*, alwaies harbouring 500 ships. *Suchean*, a goodly City, and of great traffique, whose situation is in the Marshes, like unto *Venice*. There are no lesse than 160000 Eunuchs, gelded in their infancy by their Parents belonging to this Prince as his chiefest Courtiers. For that they have had Printing (which is from the top to the bottom of the leaf) and Guns also, long before known in *Europe*, they say in conceit of themselves, they have two eyes; the *Europeans* one; and others none: They are said to be both Politick, ingenuous, and excellent Artificers; for the son is bound not to rove idly, but to follow his fathers occupation. This Empire once commanded all the Eastern Islands, But receiving a great losse and overthrow nigh *Zeilan*, of 800 ships, they freed them

them all from their obedience, as being contented with natures bounds. The Isle of *Canton*, and on all that coast, are black like those in *Barbary*, as being with them in the same Parallel; but the other within the land are mostly white, yet some more than others according as they advance into the cold Countrey; yet *China* cannot be said to be either hot or cold, as lying within the temperate Zone, and extending towards the same Climate with *Italy*. There are but few Mountains, but Plains 300 miles about, (their Seas also being very calm); in which, being tilled, and sowed with all kind of fruit, of excellent perfection, do grow not onely sufficient for themselves, but wherewith to furnish neighbours, and remote Countreys; so that they carry out of *China* from their many good and commodious Ports and Havens, Flax, Wool, Cotton, Silk, and all sorts of stufte; much Sugar, Honey, Wax, Rubarb, Camphir, Vermilion, Diers Wood, and abundance of Musk; besides, plenty of Rice and Barley for themselves. They dig more of Gold, Silver, and other Mettalls out of their Mines, carrying forth much Pearl, Porcelaine Vessels, and rich Furs. They have likewise (they say) Woods, and all kinds of spices; and Salt, whose custome in one onely Town, amounts to very much. They presse a delicate juce out of an hearb, serving them for Wine, and preferring their health; whose Kings revenues are averred to be 120 Millions of Gold yearly, considering the spaciousness of so many Provinces, the multitude of people, contributions for every head, Customs of Merchandise, Tenthis of all fruits, revenues of Mines, with all other Taxes, aids, imposts, and subventions. Wherefore this Countrey is believed to be one of the richest and greatest, if not the very richest and greatest in the whole World. Yet are they all grosse and forth Idolaters, (except a very few that Jesuites have turned to the Romish Religion) believing the Heaven to be the Creator of all things, visible and invisible, which hath a Governour uncreated who is a spirit, him they call *Lason* *Tao-tes*, that is, The Governour of the great God; saying, there is another spirit which they call *Cansy*, who hath charge of things on earth, and the power of life and death, and that he hath three Assisting spirits under him, *Tanquam*, *Tenquam*, and *Tzuquam*, who have their distinct charges. They worship severall Idolls, one with three heads, others marked for the twelve Apostles, who, they say were great Philosophers, vertuous livers, and were made Angels in Heaven. They have also the picture of an exceeding fair Woman, with a child in her Arms; of which, they said, she was delivered, being a Virgin, and a great Kings daughter. They account many for Saints, who have exceeded in valour, Knowledge, Industry, or Anterity of life. They use severall lots, and when any affliction befalls them, have recourse unto the Devil in an asurd manner. *Tain* (they say) first created *Panzon*, and *Panzon*, whose Posterity being after many thousands of years destroyed for wickedness, *Tain* created *Lutuzam*, from whose right Horn came men, and from the left, Women. The immortality

M m m m m

of

of the Soul is generally believed by them, and the reward or punishment in another life for ever; holding also a place for Souls who shall be Angels, to purge themselves in from all evil. There are in their Towns and Burroughs many places in which men and Women live together as in Monasteries, or where there are four Orders, everyone having his General, called *Tibon*; who reside commonly in *Santien*, who provide a Provincial in every Province, who visits all convents, correcting misdemeanors, and appointing a Prior in every convent, whom they are all bound to obey. The King and his Council nominate the Generalls, who hold their place during life, unless they deserve to be deprived. The eldest son of a Family can be no Religious man by their law, because bound to feed his Parents when old. They offer Incense, Bannin, and the Wood Aloes, with other odoriferous things and pates, morning and evening, to their Idols. When any Vessell is perished, their Religious mends sacrifices in the poop, and performs other soppries before their Idols, supposing that hereby they shall be sanctified and that those who go in her shall have good luck. And when any of them pray, they speak to Heaven as if to God, and to one whom they call *Singman*, saying, he is a Saint, and imitated this their manner of life.

NEXT are these called the Orientall or Eastern Islands to be many river-eyes; the first whereof is *JAPON*, or *Japan*, called in old time *CHRISTE*, and *Zipangy*. It is a Kingdom composed of many Islands, divided by many small Gulfs and narrow windings of the Sea. It looks Eastward toward that called *New Spain*. On the West it hath *Ceina*, on the North *Tartaria*, with other unknown Savage people, and to the South certain unknown lands, between which a spacious Sea runneth. All the Country is near 600 miles long; but thirty miles in some places, and the most but ninety broad. There are in it sixty six small Kingdoms, whereof the first called chief *Japan*, contains fifty three of them; another called *Ximo* includes nine; a third called *Xitum*, ten. The fourth hath made himself Lord of *Ceina*, the most famous Principality; fifth all, and is called Prince of *Tenze* (in which are five Kingdoms about the City *Meat*) styles himself Governor of *Japan*, as was *Taiyama* some years since, who to assure his new Conquest of fifty Kingdoms, transported the vanquished Kings from one Country to another. *Meat* is the principal City thereof, standing in *Ceina*, which was 21 miles in compass; burnt almost all through civil wars. Here the three Sovereign Magistrates remain. *Banfan* is another City, a University, and said to be bigger than *Paris*. *Cheuen* all is a great City, and now held is the richest of the East. This Island was discovered by the *Portugalls* in 1542. It hath two Mountains in it, one where fire issues from the Clouds, and is named *Eigensiam*, the other burns calling forth flames continually. It abounds in Rice, so that they freight many strange ships therewith; and the king

hath

hath two Millions of Gold yearly rent for Rice gathered out of his own possessions. Also store of round, great, and red Pearl; which is as much or more esteemed than the white; and their abundance of Gold and precious stones, do enrich this Realm. They are given to all kind of impiety. Their *Bonzes* or Priests and Doctors are divided into eleven sects, yet all deny the providence of God, and Soul's immortality, communicating the same onely to noble men, but treating with the vulgar, of the other life and pains of Hell. Their Gods most esteemed are the *Potagues* for their doctrine, and strict life, who were for the most part *Bonzes*, wherefore they desire of them goods of the other World; and *Carnes*, who were Princes and great persons, accounted Gods for their exploits, and singular inventions; of whom they require earthly blessings. But some of the *Japonites* adore also the Sun and Stars, others the Heavens, and some Stags and wild beasts. The Devil (likewise) useth divers wayes, too tedious here to set down, that he may be adored by these Infidels. This Island, since discovered (as was said) by the *Portugalls*, is much frequented by *Jesuites*, one *Xavier*, and also *Turian* first labouring there to turn many to an outward profession of Christianity; who are said to be more zealous than those in *Europe*: so that many *Neophytes*, or new Converts, being brought over (as also some kings) in divers places, from the year 1556. unto 1590. there have been since, great Wars and Persecutions against them by *Taycosama*, and the kings of *Tenze*, putting many to death, and inflicting torments and punishments on them, many of whom notwithstanding, would not abandon their embraced Religion; but their belief is said to flourish still, and enlarge it self in many places.

There are also two Islands called *JAVA*; the greater of whom is the biggest in the World, for it 3000 miles in Circuit, the lesser is 2000. The chief Cities of the greater *JAVA* are four, *Palibon*, *Agacen*, *Ballambua*, and *Megapeger*. The barbarous *Indians* of this Country (they say) use to eat the dead bodies of their friends; as also do many of the other *Indians*; yet is it so wonderful fruitfull, that it is called the Worlds Epirome. Eight Kings rule in the lesser *JAVA*, whose chief Cities are *Samara*, *Lambri*, and *Bafnia*. These are good Seamen, but great Pirates.

**Z**ILAN is an Isle lying in the Gulf of *Bengala*, 250 miles long, 140 broad; whose six Kings are Tributaries to the Great *Mogull*. Its chief Cities are *Zilan*, and *Columbu*. The inhabitants are skillfull jugglers, by which, and the hobby horse, they get money in all *India's* continent. It is very fruitfull; for Trees do bear fruit, and Grass groweth all the year long.

**BORNEO** is an Island containing two Kingdomes or dominions; of *Borneo* on the North, and of *Lam* on the South, the which the Equinoctial line divideth asunder. They worship the Sun when he riseth, (repeating certain Verses) with great reverence; the Moon also and Stars whom they account for his Wife and Children. Their Counsellours of state consult not of publick affairs but in the night; and before their sitting, they go up a Tree, beholding the Heavens till the rising of the Moon.

**SUMMATRA** is a great Island, 700 miles long, and 200 broad, but not the biggest in the World, as *Aristotle* then thought, he calls it *Taprobane*. Its principall Cities are *Pazzen*, *Androgeda*, and *Daren*. The Subjects of whose twenty nine Kings do eat their enemies, using their skulls instead of money. It abounds in Gold, Silver, and Silk, Ginger, Pepper, Aloes, and Cassia.

The **MOLUCCOES** are in number five; three of the chief, to wit, *Terenate* and two others, are 18 miles in circuit: which King of *Terenate* hath 70 Islands under him, bearing pleasant Commodities. There is also the adjoyning Isle *Bantan* Or *Banda*, much visited for its Nutmegs, wherewith it more aboundeth than any Island of *India*. These *Moluccoes* abound in all sorts of Spices; and both in *Banda*; and the *Moluccoes*, the Romish Religion hath for some years begun to take deep root.

Lastly, the **PHILIPPINÆ** or *Philip's* Islands, because they were discovered by a Spaniard in 1564, *Philip* the Second reigning in Spain. The *Chinoys* were Lords of them, till they abandoned them. They are said to be no lesse in all than 110000 30 whereof being subject to the King of *Spain*, have embraced whether voluntarily or forcibly, his Religion. Mariners say, there are besides these 127000 Isles about *India*: and 7448 which lay against *China*, all pagans; which stand so neer together, that they seem afar off to be one Continent. Of which and the other *Indian* Isles, Travellers have related many fables. The *Spaniards* hold many Castles, Towns and Islands, in the Eastern Countries, whereby although they are a terror to the Native and Neighbouring Princes; yet the *English* and *Dutch* are not hereby hindered of trafficking with the *Indians*.

A

## A Description of AFRICA.

**AFRICA** (which some will have so called, from one *Afrus*, a Companion of *Hercules* against *Gerion*: others from *Afrim*, a King of the *Arabians*; whence it is by the *Arabians* at this day called *Africia*. But others, from the Greek privative particle [*a*] & [*epian*], signifying cold; as much as to say, A Country without cold. Lastly, *Josephus* saith, it was so named from *Afrus*, one of *Abraham's* posterity, who leading an Army into *Lybia*, and overcoming his enemies, there satc down: and *Africa* by the Greeks is called *Lybia*.) bends partly to the South, partly to the West; and is a Peninsula shut up from the North with the Mediterranean Sea; from the West with the Atlantick and Ethiopick Ocean; from the South with the *Indian* Ocean; from the East with the red-Sea; so that in this part which bends toward the East, it is knit to *Asia* by an Isthmus or narrow tract of land, but 60 miles over; so that it is separated from *Asia* by a bosome of the red Sea, a line being thence drawn into the Mediterranean, but from *Europe* it is disjoyned by *Hercules* Isthrait. The Equator cuts *Africa* almost in the middle, and it is extended beyond the Tropick of *Cancer*, even to 45 degrees of the Pole *Ant-artick*. It is much less than *Asia*, for it hath both in length, and breadth also, but 70 Degrees, which make 1050 German miles. Its figure is almost Quadrangular, or four square, but that it runs along towards the South, with a longer point. It hath been no small controversy among *Geographers*, whether the River *Nilus* doth divide *Asia* from *Africa*, and so, whether *Egypt*, and *Ethiopia*, ought rather to be referred to *Asia* than to *Africa*; but since thence it would follow, that *Egypt* should be partly attributed to *Africa*, partly to *Asia*, which thing *Ptolomy* holds not convenient, and seeing all do at this day reckon the true *Ethiopia*, which is *Presbyter Johns* Empire, to be in *Africa*, it is judged not to be circumscribed by *Nile*, but rather by the Mediterranean and Ocean. *Africa* is a very vast and uninhabited part of the World. But it had once the City *Carthage* therein for its head, which strove with *Romes* Empire for Masterdome. The two chief Seas (which notwithstanding belong to it but in a part) are the Atlantick Main, and on the other side the *Indian* Sea. Its greatest River is *Nilus*, which also *Geographers* call the greatest of the whole World, for it flows about 700 Islands. Of which also *Romanus* and *Fraxtorius* do relate divers, yea many wonders. It is divided into four parts, in the generall; *Barbary*, *Numidia*, *Lybia*, (specially so called, and the land of the *Negroes*, or *Blacks*. Others make seven parts thereof; *Barbary*, *Numidia*, *Lybia*, the land of the *Negroes*, *Ethiopia*, the upper or more inward; *Ethiopia*

the netter or more outward *Egypt*; unto which is added an eighth, to wit, the *African Isles*.

**BARBARIE** took its name from the Saracens, unto whom the conquered Inhabitants language was as a murmuring sound; for so much the word *Barbar* imports: and is bounded on the North with the Mediterranean, on the South with Mount *Atlas*. It contains four Kingdoms known at this day by the names of, 1. *Tunis*, which hath on the West *Algiers*; on the East the Country *Cyrenaica*, also called *Pentapolitana*; and containeth five Provinces, which lay between the great river, and the river of the Country of *Mesrat*; and was formerly called *Nunidia*, and *Africa Propria*, or the lesser *Africk*, or at leastwise included this lesser *Africa* within it self. The Provinces are, *Bugia*, which beginning at the great river, extends 150 miles, even to the Mountains of *Constantine*, and is high 40 miles broad; it was once a Kingdom of it self. The chief City is *Bugis*, of great antiquity, and was built by the Romans on a high Mountain near the Sea. *Falcal* is another City therein; which the most judicious hold to be *Igilgili*, as being very like it in situation: in which were antiently fair Temples, Colledges, stately Lodgings, Monasteries, and Hospitals; but since *Peter of Navarra* took it in 1508; it hath remained without beaury or ornament. The Country of *Constantine*, which lyeth between the Mountain of *Constantine* and *Tunis*, near the river *Guadilbarbar*; and whose chief City is *Constantine*, which some hold to be *Certe*, called by *Ptoleme Julia*, and the ancient abode of old King *Masiniſſa* (who being King of this *Nunidia antiqua*, liv'd and dyed in amity with the Roman Senate, after whose death, *Micipsa's Jugurtha*, and the death of his son *Micipsa*, his adopted son killing his two natural sons *Adherbal* and *Hiempsal* opposed the Romans, till at length being delivered into *Syl.'s* hands by King *Bocchus*, and led in triumph to *Rome*, he was there starved in prison). This Town is environed with high Mountains and Rocks, consisting now of about 8000 families. Here is also the Town *Bafne*, otherwife *Hippo*, where *Augustine* was Bishop. *Tripoli*, so called from three principal Cities therein: which beginning at the river and gulph of *Capes*, extends beyond the Town of *Tripoli*, near the Country of *Mesrat*. The chief Town is New *Tripoli*, or *Tripoli of Barbarie*: which being taken from the Knights of *Malia* by *Sinan Bassa*, *Selimus* his Lievtenant, in 1551; Pyrats live there, which annoy all the Coasts of *Italy*: whereas in former time there was great concourse of *Genoan*, *Venetian*, and *Sicilian* Merchants, as also from other places. *Ezzabe*, which lies beyond *Tripoli*, towards the East, in which stands the City *Cairaon*, built by *Hucka* Generall to *Osmen* the fourth, *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, and who subdued all *Barbary*. The chief Centry of this Province is *Mesrat* near the Mediterranean, and about an 100 miles from *Tripolis*: which hath in it many Towns and Villages, both

both on the Mountains and plains. Lastly, The Country of *Tunis*, which lyeth betwixt the River *Guadilbarbar*, called by the antients the pool of *Hippontis*, and the River of *Capes*. *Cartage* was the antientest City hereof, and once the chief of all *Africk*; built by *Dido* in the year of the World 3078, 135 years before *Rome* (yet this Country was peopled by the *Phenicians* long before, who fled thither from the sword of *Jshuah*, unto whom *Dido* (with her *Tyrians*) joyned her self). After three severall wars which the potent *Carthaginians* waged with the *Romans*; this City was utterly razed, being taken and burnt by *Scipio*; but being afterwards re-built by *Cajar*, he transplanted a *Roman* Colony thither, so that it flourished again; yet far from her antient reputation, and hath since been so ill intruded by *Tanals*, *Goths*, and *Saracens*, that scarce a twentieth part of the Town remains inhabited; some say it was 21 or 22 miles in compass; almost environed with the Sea, in the midst of which was a Fort called *Byſes*; containing little lesse than two miles. The *Carthaginians* were named *Penis*, or *Pheni*: whence may be proved that they came from the *Phenicians*, they were also branded in their time for perjury, and false dealing. But the chief of the many fair Towns, here is *Tunis*, called by *Polemy*, *Themiſe*, or *Thaſis*, which being at first but small; after *Cartage* was ruined, it began to be so enlarged and enriched; that now its held for the chief of the whole Country, having in it about ten thousand Families, and near five miles in Circuit, it is seated near a very safe harbour; which the *Spaniards* strengthened with the Fort called *Gelma*; which being twenty years in finishing; the Turks by their *Herculan* labour, equaled with the ground in 39. dayes space. This Kingdome generally considered, is fruitful enough; for *Bugia* in some places yields store of grain and fruit, although in other places it be exceeding barren. There are also many Forreſts, and Fountains on the high and rough Mountains, with plenty of Oxen, Goats, and Horses. *Constantine* hath store of Oil, with great plenty of Butter through their much Cattell; also much Corn; for near *Buz* (the Town where *Augustine* was born) there is one plain 40 miles long, and 25 broad, where grows abundance. *Tripoli* hath store of all kind of fruits, and Dates; also plenty of Wheat, but no other Corn. *Ezzabe* hath abundance of Olives, Dates, and divers other fruits in its goodly plains, but no grain. The Province of *Tunis*, four or five miles within the Town is called, hath plains full of Olive Trees; but they dare not manure the land about the Town for any corn, because of the daily incursions of the *Arales*. The Turks commanding the inhabitants of this Country, they all make open profession of *Mohomet* and his law. Christians live there in their Religion, but as slaves, and with many miseries; being worse used than in the Emperour of *Morocco's* dominions,

Secondly,

Secondly, *ARGIERS*, or *ALGIERS*; It is the Realm of *Tremisen*, or *Telenis*, and was called in the *Romans* time *Mauritania Cafartensis*, for that the *Maur* or *Moor*s inhabited here; as all the Western part of *Barbary*, and from *Cesarea* the principall City therein. It is bounded on the West with *Fez*, and *Morocco*, from which it is divided by the River *Atalia*; on the East with *Tunis*, and divided by the River *Amphyas*; on the North it hath the Mediterranean looking towards the Island *Sardinia*; and on the South the *Nomians*, called *Geulians*. *Cesarea* was of old called *J. I.* where King *Batus* (who betrayed *Jaguth* his friend unto *Sylva*) resided. But now this Kingdome containeth five other principall Cities, the two chief whereof are *Tremisen*, or *Telenis*, which formerly contained 10000 or 17000 Families; but (what by *Josaph* King of *Fez*, who besieged it seven years; what by the *War* of *Charles* the fifth Emperor, who took it into his protection; what by the *Turks*, who in the end master'd it; and also by the war of *James* the 8<sup>th</sup> or King there, and the *Turk*) it is much decayed, yet it is said to have in it divers fair Temples, and five dainty Colledges, wrought curiously with *Mosaic* work. *Algiers*, formerly under the Realm of *Tremisen*; but through intemperable charges, it revolved to the King of *Bugio*. Then it belonged to the King of *Spain*, from whom *Barbary* took it in 1519. But being now reduced under the *Turk*, it is grown both rich and famous; and made by them almost impregnable (though not so large as *Tunis*); seemed to contain about 4000 families, standing on the declivity of certain hills, and three miles in Circuit) and is a retreat for abundance of Pirates, bringing thither their prizes, for which cause the *Turk* hath a Lieutenant there. There are also two other Towns of note in this Country of *Tremisen*. *Cran*, taken for the *Spaniards* by *Peter* of *Naxos* in 1509, and besieged by the *Turk* (though in vain) in 1562. It contains 10000 Families, and *Misalquair*, taken likewise by the *Spaniards* about the same time, and is a famous Haven Town. A traveller some years since passing between the Town of *Algiers*, and the City *Fez*, found (to wit) strong Wines, much excellent bread, the very best and biggest of Hens, plenty of Figs, Fruits, Olives, and delicious Oyl; and when past the Plains (in which were innumerable Villages and houses, all of mud, and platformed on the top, as they are all over *Africa*, and also in *Asia*) he entering into a hilly Country, saw the fields over-clad with flocks of Goats, and sheep; the sheep being so great, that some of their broad and thick tails which hang to the ground, will weigh sixteen, eighteen, or twenty pound weight; so that (if not from this hilly region, yet) from the Plains (come, it not all whereof belong to the Realm of *Algiers*) we conclude this Country fertile enough, and not unlike the Kingdom of *Spain*. Its Religion the same, and the Christian slaves suffer the same manner.

Thirdly.

Thirdly, *Fez*; and fourthly, *Morocco*; which being two kingdoms, yet are subject unto one *Xerife*, King or Emperor, called the Emperor of *Morocco*. These Countries were once called *Mauritania Tingitana*, from the Town *Tingis* or *Tanger*; (nigh which the *Phoenicians* coming into *Barbarie*, are said to have engraven in their language on two Marble Pillars, these words; *we flee from the face of Josuah the robber, the son of Naze*). This State, hath for some years past endured even many incredible changes, by the Princes of one family, who by many wicked and unworthy acts, have fought against and expelled each other. They are both divided into seven Provinces: *Morocco*, which takes its name from the chief City so called, is situated between Mount *Atlas* and the Atlantick Sea; whose seven Provinces are,

1. *Hee*, bounded on the North with the Ocean; on the South with Mount *Atlas*: Its most ancient Town of *Hee*, is now called *Tednegh*, standing in a goodly Plain on the river *Tensift*; yet is it not well inhabited, yea rather abandoned by the Inhabitants, who about 1514, hearing that the *Avalians* would sell it to the *Portugalls*, intended to flee, although many of them were therein put to the sword; another Town being so served. There is here among other places, one called in their language, *The Fort of Disciples*; because a Sectary of *Mahomet* there kept with his disciples, preaching his doctrine, and defending it against the King of *Morocco*.

2. *Suz*, which lyeth betwixt Mount *Atlas* and *Africa* properly so called; having the *Lybian* Deserts on the South; and on the East the great river *Suz*. The chief City is *Missa* or *Missa* situated on the Cape of *Gilon*; and is as it were three Towns, betwixt whom, the river *Suz* passeth; yet is it of little or no worth, by reason of the bad soyl. But amongst others, *Tavagoff* is the farthest, and greatest Town of *Suz*, which is seated in a Plain, and whose Inhabitants are very rich.

3. The particular Province of *Morocco* is made of a triangular form by the Mountain of *Nesife*, bounding it on the West, East, and North, and is separated from *Hee*, by the river *Asifquad*, unto which the river *Tensift* or *Tensift* joyneth. The City *Morocco* is not so beautifull as formerly; the Castle and Palace of King *Almansor*, as big as a Town, being all of note that is now to be seen. It was built by *Aderamen*, and once contained 100000 households; but now every way inferior to *Fez*. Yet its great Temple hath a Town so high, that the hills *Azafi* 130 miles distant, may be easily discerned. Here are also the Towns of *Tenezs*, and *Delgumaba*, which is strongly built on a very high Mountain. Also *Imismis*, seated on a rock of Mount *Atlas*, near which, is a narrow passage of the same Mount, named *Burris*, through which, he that goes into *Guzule*, must needs passe; it is somewhat spacious, but decayeth daily.

4. *Guzule*, having on the West, the Mountain *Ilde*; on the East, *Hee*,

N n n n

*Hez*; and confines with *Suz*. Here is neither City, Town, or Castle, onely some Villages.

5. *Ducalia*, near the Ocean and the Cape *Cantin* on the West, the Country of *Tenle* on the East. Its few walled Towns are almost all held by the *Portugals*; and divers Towns here were abandoned by their Inhabitants, which were sacked and ruined when the *Portugals* took the Town of *Azamor* (seated at the mouth of the River *Ommirabili*) in 1513.

6. *Hafora*, which beginning at *Ducalia's* Mountains toward the North, confines with *Morocco* on the South. Here are four Towns, whereof *Elzimua* is a new Town, and *Bzo*, an ancient one, situate on a high Mountain.

7. *Tedle*, of a triangular form, bounded with the river *Quadel-habib*, that is, a river of Slaves, on the West, and that of *Ommirabili* towards the East. The chief City is *Tefza*, standing on the river *Deyne*, an ancient Town, so called, as being built with stones of the same name. *Elfza*, (built on *Ommirabili*, into which *Deyne* runneth, both flowing from Mount *Atlas*) is near *Tefza*, and also under its jurisdiction. Then is there *Chythite*, having long maintained war against the King of *Fez*. Lastly, *Eitbiad*, which abounds in all kind of Victuals.

The seven Provinces of *Fez* (which are bounded on the North with the Strait of *Gibraltar*, & the *Mediterranean* Sea, with part also of the Atlantick Sea, and with *Morocco* on the South) are, 1. *Tenezine*, beginning on the Atlantick towards the West, and bounded with the *Buragrag* on the East; whose Inhabitants *Ptolemy* calls *Cauces*. This Province was (of old) the flower of *Mauritania Tingitana*, containing above 400 Towns, and 300 Castles and Villages, and is 120 miles long, although narrower. Some of whose Towns are, *Ansi*, built anciently by the Romans on the Seashore; and hath been almost ruined by the *Portugals*; as also *Manfor*, a Town nigh this. When the *Mahometans* contended about the differences of the Doctors of their Law, the Town *Maendum*, like the rest of *Mauritania*, felt the ruining fury of the War. This Country is as it were a Land of conquest; for the *Arabians*, or rather the strongest party, command here. There is also *Rabat* or *Rubut*, seated at the mouth of *Buragrag* near the Sea, and founded by *Almansor*; in whose time it was one of the populousst of *Africa*; but now not above 500 households, and nought but Gardens, Vines, and Meadows within the walls. *Sala*, called by the *Barbarians* *Zale*, is a Town towards *Gibraltar* Strait, in which is a Palace, wherein the Kings and Royal Princes were interred. *Marmora*, a mile and half from the Sea, where the *Portugal* Army (though Christians kept the Town) was defeated by the King of *Fez*, through the bad intelligence between the Generals of the *Portugal* and *Castilian* Armies. *Macnase* seated on the River *Subu*, in a goodly Plain, 15 or 16 miles from *Fez*. It's well peopled, reasonably strong and great, having broad streets, and abundance

of

of water by an aqueduct through the old industry of the *Romans*.

Secondly, *Fez* bounded with the rivers *Buragrag*, *Inaxe*, and *Subu* on the West, East, and North; and with Mount *Ailm* on the South, and is about 100 miles in length. Here is the Town *Gualili* the wing it self upon Mount *Zarbon*, ruined by the *Africans*, but rebuilt by *Idris*, who is buried there, and honoured as a holy man. Near this is an ancient Town called *Pharaoh's Palace*, although the *Egyptians* never commanded over this Country: But the Metropolis is the great and stately City of *Fez* or *Fesse*, called by *Ptolemy*, *Silde*; but *Fesse*, from *Fesse*, signifying, Gold, whereof they found abundance, in digging its foundation. It is situated like *Grenada* in *Andalusia* of *Spain*, to wit, on the bodies and twice double devalling faces of two Hills, the low Valley between (through which the torrid River of *Marrabela* runneth Southward) being the Centre and chief place thereof; for it is the most beautifull and populous part of the City: whose situation (as of the whole) is judged to be right under the Tropick of *Cancer*. The Valley is two miles long, and half a mile broad: in which are five Market-places, stately Temples, Colledges and Hospitals, and 100 Taverns, that may lodge a Monarchick Train; on the River are 67 bridges of Timber and stone, which are passages for open streets on both sides: most part of the forementioned buildings are three or four stories high, adorned with large and open windowes, long galleries, spacious Chambers, and square platforms. It was first divided into two, both parts of each side of the river having his *Mahometan* Lord, and Mufti or chief Priest; but the King of *Luntana*, or of the *Lantune* family, sacking these two Towns, put the *Mosiz* to death, and made them but one. Also *Jacob*, son to *Abdulach* the first King of the *Meenon*-family, divided *Fez* into three parts, and with three severall Walls, but now (saith a traveller) environed onely with one, and that broken down in sundry parts. On the two Hills of the City, East, and West are streets and houses of two stories-high, with delicate Gardens on their outmost devalling parts, as also numbers of Mosques or Saracenicall Temples and Watch-Towers: on which heights, and round the Town, stand about 300 Wind-Mills, most whereof belong to the Mosques, and the two magnifick Colledges for educating children in the *Mahometan*-Law, built by Kings of the *Murine* or *Murin* family; one whereof called *Amarodor*, (having three Cloysters of great beauty, whose gates are of brass, and the private doors of Chambers of in-laid work, &c. cost King *Haba Henor* or *Habu Henon* 480000 Crowns, or 460000 Ducats in the building of it. The chief Mosquee is called *Mammo Currarad*, which signifies, The glory of *Mahomet*; which is an *Italian* mile in circuit, having 17 high ground Steeple, besides Towers and Towers, 34 entering Doors, supported within by the length with 48 pillars, and about 23 ranges of pillars in breadth, besides many Isles, Quires, and Circles: Every pillar hath a lamp

N o n n a 2

of

of oyl burning thereat, where, and thorow the whole Mosquee, are every night 900 lamps lighted; and to maintain them, with 100 Torlocks and preaching *Talsumans*, it hath 200 Duckats daily rent: yet some say, this great Mosquee (no more than the rest) hath but one Priest, whose office is to say the prayers, and take care of the Temple's revenues; the which he distributes to the Ministers thereof, and for all necessities; furnishing also other Temples that have no means, with necessities. The rest going to the common profit of the Town, because it hath no revenues. The Citizens are said to be very modest and zealous at their worship, but great dancers and revellers on their solemn Festivals. Here were in times past, the Kings *Almansor*, *Mamon*, and *Hucceys*, born learned and civil men, and accounted excellent in their superstition; in whose times also flourished *Avicen*, *Rafis*, *Albunazar*, and *Aterroes*, the famousst Physicians and Philosophers among the Pagans; with many others maintained by the Kings of *Morocco*, who with their Moors were then Masters of all *Barbary* and *Spain*. There are now in *Fes* a great number of Poets making divers songs, chiefly on Love and Lovers, whom they openly name: All which once a year against *Mahomet's* birthday, makemyms to his praise; and on that Feast-day in the afternoon, in the Market-place is a desked Chair prepared for them; whereon they ascend one after another to recite their verses in audience of the people; and he that is judged the best, hath all the year this Epithere above the rest, The Prince of Poets; and is by the Vice-gerent and Town rewarded. But there are also 12000 Brothel-houses allowed in this City, whose Curtezans are neatly kept, and weekly looked to by Physicians, and (which is worse) they (in Summer) give open license for 3000 stews of Sodomitically boyes. Nay (saith one) I have seen at Mid-day in the very Market places, the Moors bugging these filthy Carriages, and without any shame or bodily punishment inflicted on them, go freely away.

Thirdly, The Province of *Azgar*, which hath on the West the River *Baragrag*, anciently called *Lix*; on the East the Mountains of *Canera*, and a part of *Zarbon*, and *Zelag*, which divide it from the Country of *Fes*. Its an 120 miles long, and ninety broad. Two Towns are found herein, *Laras*, or *Lorache*, on the River *Luscm*, where the Port is good, though the entry difficult: and *Cesar El-cabir* signifying the great Pallace of the foundation, built by King *Almansor*, or *Almansor*. But of the Town *Giumba*, which was built by the antient *Africans*, is nothing now to be seen but the ditches.

Fourthly, *Habat*, *Elhabet*, or *Ellabat*, bounded on the East with the mountains near *Gibraltar's* Strait, on the West with the Marshes of *Azgar*, and is larger than *Azgar*. A chief Town hereof is *Exagen*, seated nigh the River *Guarga*, or *Zuerga*, on a Mountain's top; whose inhabitants have commonly four hundred horse in Garrison, because of the *Portugalls* inroads. Here is also among others,

others, *Homar*, once well-peopled; but now little inhabited, the *Portugalls* commanding on that coast.

Fifthly, *Erif*, which runs 70 leagues from *Gibraltar's* Strait Westward, to the River *Nochor* Eastward. Here is *Belu*, having a good Port, and seated betwixt two Mountains. There is also *Tergai* with three other Towns that are situated on a Mountain. But the Villages of this Province are many, although the Towns but few.

Sixthly, *Garet*, which bordereth on the River *Mulvia*, and part of *Chaux* to the East, on the River *Nochor*, and part of *Erif* towards the West; and is about 75 miles long, and sixty broad, in one part whereof are Towns, in the other Mountains, in the third a Desert; the chief Towns being *Tezzora*, seated on a little hill, and but one passage thereto. *Miggeo*, and *Jafferin* by the Sea, built not many years since by the *Mahometans*, of the race of *Mahomet*.

Sevently, *Chaux*, 190 miles long, from East to West, and 170 broad, for it contains all that from Mount *Atlas* towards *Mauritania*, and no small part of the Country joyning to *Lybia*. Herein is *Tezo*, seated in a plain at the foot of Mount *Dubdu*, on the River *Malulo*, and is a City strong and rich, being also as a University, having Colledges like *Fez*. *Tewert*, a Town on a hill in a large Plain, and encompassed with Desarts. And amongst others, stands little *Tzergue*, subject to the *Arabians*, being near *Cunaignel* *Cherben* a Mountain, signifying the passage of Ravens. *Mahomet*, the second *Xeriff* of *Barbary*, who beginning his reign in 1550, united the Kingdoms of *Fez*, and *Morocco*, for which Kingdom, the three sons of *Hamet* contended in 1603; two of which brethren dying in those wars, *Abdela*, son to one of the slain brothers, maintained the war against *Sidan* the surviving brother: During which one *Sidan* *Amet*, a Hermite, seized on the City *Morocco*, the which *Sidan*, and *Side-Hean* also, a Hermite, forced him to leave in 1616, So that whatever the event hath been since; then was the *Xeriffate* greatly distracted; for *Sidan* possessed *Morocco*; *Side-Hean* fortified himself in *Taradant*; *Abdela* lived by robberies; *Fez* stood on its Guard; and the other Towns were governed by particular Magistrates of their own. These people are Tawny, but some more than the other; they are also somewhat more civil, or else, much of the conditions of the *Arabians*; they are wondrous ambitious, unconstant, subtle, and treacherous, also very cholerick, great braggers, suspicious, and exceeding jealous. This Realm in general (for to speak particularly of the fourteen Provinces, would be too tedious) is said to abound in Corn, Fruit, Oyl, Honey, Wax, Sugar, Goats-hair, whereof Chamlets are made, and their skins, which being dressed they call *Marroquin*-skins, and we *Spanish*-Leather; there is also much Cattle in divers places, also in *Suz* great store of fine Amber is found; so that although some places are rough and stony, yet these inhabitants have all things needfull for life, one Country abounding in what another wants;

wants; and if they had not war on every occasion, hindering a settled peace; this Empire would be very happy, and not envy any others commodities, for in their Mountains they feed great store of Cattle, and they have likewise plenty of Corn; but their Plains yield so much corn, and fruit, that they furnish other places with Citrons, Oranges, Sugar, and Olives. Yea, they transport into foreign Countries, Chamlets, Barbary-skins, Cotton-Cloath, and Sugar, whereof they make great profit. And for the Emperours Revenues, he is Master both of all his subjects goods and persons, none daring to oppose any impositions laid (by him) on them; Yet the Empires usurpation, the continuall wavering of affairs, with the fear of an accident like that of *Muley Cheq*, makes him seek to govern them the milder, that they may desire to live alwayes under his command. All here are *Mahometans* except the slaves, which doctrine of *Mahomet* entred into *Egypt*, in 637, through the Conquests of *Omar*, then a Captain of *Oman*, first passed into *Africk*, in 650, with 80000 men, who defeating *Gregory Patricius*, they chased the *Romans* with the troops of *Lea* the Emperour, and *Abimachus*, quite out of *Africk*, becoming Masters of *Barbary*, which the *Arabians* increased, first by Arms, and thole not prevailing, by Preaching and Traffique. The *Goths* and *Handalls* who inhabited *Africk*, being infected with the *Arian* opinion, much helped herein; for they brought in the *Arabian* letters and language, building Universities at *Morocco* and *Fez*, adding also great Revenues thereto; But nothing hath more advanced *Mahomet*s sect than the Victories of the *Miramamolins* of *Africk*. But of these *Mahometans* are many sects also, who have their Heads, and Doctours to defend them, for divers have commented upon the *Alcoran*, not directly allowing of what it prescribeth, but contradict it in many things; of all which different sects, and Orders, with their leaders, (some of whom differ not onely from the rest in their law, but also in faith) may be seen in the book entituled, A Description of Estates, Empires, and Principalities. But among other differences of the Law and Religion between the Moors of *Fez*, and *Morocco*, this is one, that they submit to the *Califf* of *Bagdet*, and not to him of *Cair*, to whom the *Turks* yield obedience. Here are also *Jews*, who having multiplied in *Spain*, came by degrees into *Africk*; and afterwards there increased, when *Ferdinand* of *Spain*, called the Catholique, and *Emmanuel*, King of *Portugall*, expelled them their Kingdomes; many of whom coming, brought the Trades and Arts of *Europe* with them, which were before unknown unto the *Barbarians*. The *Jews* practise much the Art of the Gold-Smith (which is forbidden by *Mahomet*s law) and especially of Smiths. There are but few called *Christians* in the Realms of *Fez*, and *Morocco*, besides slaves, (except such as live in places possessed by the *Portugalls*) whose state is deservedly to be pitied; enduring more pain among these *Barbarians*, than beasts do among us. But *Spain* (most of those slaves being that Kings subject's) hath two Religious Orders, (the one called

called *de la Merced*, in *Aragon*; the other much greater, having the name of the *Redemption of Captives*) appointed purposely for Redeeming them; who gather great Sums of Money year y. where-with they free a great number; for they send diligent and faithfull men to *Fez*, *Morocco*, and *Algier*, who first redeeming Priests and Religious men, then free the other sort: first the King of *Spain*s Subjects, then the rest; and there is alwayes one of the Religious of *Spain*, at *Fez*, who informing himself of the quality and necessity of slaves, prepares a way for their delivery the year following. And to conclude of *Barbary*; The great *Turk* hath therein three *Beglerbegs*, or great *Bassas*, proudly styled, Lords of Lords; the first whereof is at *Tripolis*, (which was taken in by *Sinan Bassa* from the Knights of *Malta* in 1551) and he commandeth under him 8000 *Timariots*, and 6000 *Janizaries*. The second at *Tunis*, or *Tunnieis*, who being of great authority, commandeth under him twelve *Sanzacks*, or Lords, Governours, and 35000 *Timariots*. The third at *Algier*, who hath under him fourteen *Sanzacks*, and 40000 *Timariots*. These are all he hath in *Africk*, except the great *Vizier* *Basha* of *Egypt*; But in *Asia*, the Greater and the Lesse, he commands 30 *Beglerbegs* or *Bassas*.

Next to *Barbary* is *Numidia* (not that spoken of so much in the *Romane* History, for that is a part of *Tunni*); on the North whereof is Mount *Atlas*, so high that they say its top cannot be seen, and was so called from *Atlas* a King of *Mauritania*, (who being of a great stature, was feigned by Poets to bear up Heaven with his shoulders; either for his skill in Astronomy, or for the great height of the Hill). It is now named *Anchise*, or *Montes Clari*, that is, famous mountains, on its South-side *Lybia*, and may be called *Numidia*, from the manner of its inhabitants, the *Numide*, there living, it being like the *Scythian Nomades*: for these are said to spend their time in hunting, and to stay no longer in one place than there is grasse for their Camells, so that they are albase, theevish, murderous, and ignorant people; although the *Arabians* who are mixt among them, are more liberall, civill, and ingenuous. The Country is meanly peopled; for *Tesser*, accounted by them a great City, hath in it not above 400 families; nor (if we believe reports) have no neighbours within three hundred miles thereof.

**LYBIA** (which is *AFRICA*, properly so called, and is so named either from *Lybs* formerly a Moorish King, or from *Lybia* a Queen hereof, or from *Ly's* signifying the South-Wind, which gently bloweth from these parts) is bounded with *Nylus* on the East, the *Atlantick Ocean* on the West, and is now called *Sarra*, that is, a Desert; for it is full of vast sandy Deserts, (being also under the torrid Zone, or scorching heat of the Sun). In one of these Deserts it was that *William Lithgow*, the Scottish Traveller in King *James* his daies, endured (as he saith) both hunger



Hunger and great drought, for seven or eight dayes, as he went from *Fez* towards *Araton*, a great Town on the Frontiers of Northern *Ethiopia*, with one *Chatteline* a French lapidatour, who would go thither to buy Diamonds and precious stones, *Chatteline* on the eighth day, in the night, falling sick of a burning Fever, and mindfull to return, *Lithgow* left him at *Ahetze*, the farthest Town Southward of the Kingdome of *Fez*, (well fortified with Walls, and a Garrison of Moors therein) and with his *Dragoman* Moor, went forward, entering the *Agaroes* Country, whose better sort of inhabitants were half clad, the vulgars naked, who had an *Emeer* or Prince of their own, subject to none but his own passion, yet had they a bastard shew of Mahometanick Religion. They toyled six dayes in traversing this Country, whose salvages both snarled on them, and sometimes gave them bastinado's; yea, and enough was it for the *Dragoman* to save *Lithgow's* life and liberty from them, who were still inquisious what he was, and whither he went. On the seventh day, they came into the soil of the *Hagans*, and the *Jannites*, most part whereof were White Moors, some of whose better sort, (and chief among them) had their Members covered, but far more wickedly conditioned than the former; who were ruled by a *Xeriff*, having his Guard made up of young *Balars*, or Pages; and Women, who seemed rather to live without any Religion, then to acknowledge any Deity. Then were they led by a *Hagan* Guide five dayes together South-Eastward, almost contrary to the borders of *Ethiopia*, whither they were bent: who stealing from them on the 6th night; they the next day continuing their faces the same way, were long ere night involved in a dis-inhabited Counrey, being both a vaste Wildernesse, (and a part of the *Berduan's* Country, one of the four Tribes of the old *Lybian's*; the *Sabuncks*, *Curmines*, and South-*Garolines*, being the other three) and also mountainous and dangerous for wild beasts, whom to affrighten, they burnt (every night) shrubs of *Tara*. But the day after their first entrance herein, they proceeded farther, thinking to find People and Tents to relieve them with victuals, and inform them of the Country; but they found none, nor seven dayes after; so that their victual and water being done, they relied on Tobacco, and drank their own piss for the time aforesaid. This soyl was covered with hard and soft sands, (and those full of Serpents) whose interlarding rocky hights were faced with Caves and Dens of wild beasts; whose hollow cries, they both heard in the night, and sighted them often in the day, especially Jackals, Bears and Boars, and sometimes Cymbers, Tygers, and Leopards, against whom when approaching, they either shot off a Harquebus, or flashed some powder in the Air. The *Dragoman* (on the 4th day of their seven, being there) wondering to see him endure such heat, hunger, and toyl, despairing, threatened him with death, to make him seek back for their nearest refuge. So *Lithgow* holding his course North-East, met (early on the 8th day) with

900 Savages, or naked *Lybian* Sabunks, 500 being women, armed with Bowes and Arrowes; who with their complices had put the night before, 300 Berdoans, their neighbour Tribe, to the sword, and strught away 600 sheep and goats, besides other bestiall. Their *Emcere* or Prince came in the Rear with 100 horsemen, having half pikes, sharply headed at both ends with steel; he was clothed onely with a vail of Crimson Silk, hanging on his naked shoulders with coloured Ribbons, from his breasts to his middle thigh, and on his head a party-coloured shawl set like a Garland; both knees being bare, as also his ankles; the calves of his legs were girded with crimson silk, and on his feet were yellow shoes, his face and beard burnt with the Sun, and about the age of 33 years. His Page was even covered like himself; but all his followers stark naked. He and all the four Tribes of *Lybia* worship Garlick onely for their God, it being a strong thing, and most part of their food; unto which they annex Altars, Priests, and superstitious rites. He gave them both liberty of life, and relief of food; and after an hours parley with them, gave unto *Lithgow* his Bow, and a Quiver of Arrowes. He also telling them, that *Tunis* was their best and nearest recourse, sent a guide with them for four dayes journey, for 5 Sultans or 35 s. who brought them thorow the most habitable and best Fented passages of the Country: where once a day they found Bread, Water, Garlick, Onions, and sometimes Hens, which (saith he) if truth may have credit, we would Roast or Scorch dry at the very face of the Sun, and so eat them. Their guide on the 5th day left them among 400 Tents of *Numidian* Moors or bastard *Arabians*, pitched in a pleasant Valley between two sources of water, where they reported some 9 dayes; and where likewise, he affirmeth to have seen Smiths work Nails and Horse-shoes out of cold iron, softened onely by the vigorous heat of the Sun, and the hard hammering of hands on the Anvile; as also he saw it in *Asia*. So renewing their guides from place to place, they descended from Savage, to Civil Moors, and arrived safely, (though with great difficulty and danger) at *Tunis*. The *Garamantes*, who were thought to be the farthest people Southward, lived in this Country: and those called the *Psylli*, who (if it may be believed) were of so venomous a nature, that they could poyson a Snake. *Herodotus* also tells of an Expedition that this people made against the South-wind; for that, it (blowing abroad the sands) had dried up those small waters among them: but the wind encountering them with a volley of sand, overwhelmed and slew them all. *Arum*, who denied Christ to be one substance with the Father, was born here. The *Lybian's* seem rather to be worse than the *Numidian* Moors: their chief Cities being *Guargata*, *Tokerraum* and *Huaden*. Some report, that these two Nations have neither King nor Laws, but are governed by the chief men of every Tribe; but this agreeth not with our Traveller's relation. And whereas they are said to

worship a god called *Psaphon*: who teaching divers birds which he caught, to say, *Psaphon was a Great God*, the simple people yielded him divine worship: he saith, the *Lybians* do all worship *Garlick*: But that they are mostly grosse idolatrous Pagans, is plain, and that among some of the Naturals, the *Savacens* from *Atalia* and *Barbarie* have planted their *Mahometan* superstition, we deny not.

**T**HE Land of the *NEGROES* (so called, either from the River *Niger*, which in Latine signifyeth Black; or because its people are of a black colour) is bounded on the North with *Lybia*, on the South with *Congo* or *Manicongo*, a Kingdom in the Lower *Ethiopia*. It containeth 25 Provinces, the chief whereof are 11, to wit, *Guala*, *Guinea*, *Tombutun*, *Atelli*, *Cano*, *Benia*, *Nutia*, *Gialefi*, *Garaga*, *Goaga* and *Bornum*; two of whose chief Cities are *Tombutun* and *Chotinum*, said to be the third City for esteem of all *Africa*. There are four Kingdoms herein, whereof that of *Tombutun* (whose first King was *Ichia*, who in 1526, slew *Soni Halin* their last *Lybian* Lord; for in the year 908, when the *Mahometan* Priests came cut of zeal into these parts, they had neither King nor Common-wealth) is the greatest, whose King is very rich, keeps a Royal Palace, with a very great guard, always maintaining a great number of learned men, and, they say, causing all who have any Commerce with the Jews, to be slain. That of *Bornum*, which is somewhat lesse; that of *Goaga*, and that of *Gualata*, consisting but of that one Province. These people are best conceited with their native beauty or black colour, and therefore are said to paint the Devil white, in disdain of him. They were so blockish, that when the *Portugals* first sailed hither, they took their ships for great birds with white wings: the painted eyes on the beaks of their ships, to be their directors in their course; bag-pipes to be living creatures; yea, after they had felt them; and Guns for their hideous noise, to be the Devil's works. Both males and females use to go naked till they are married, and then to cloath themselves from the waste to the knees. What the fruitfulness of these Countries are, is hard exactly to know: yet the fields adjacent to the River *Niger*, being 40 dayes (yearly) overflowed by the said river, the Country is the more fertile for its inundations; which else could be little, through the drynesse of the soyl, affording no exhalations for clouds to give rain: The Province of *Cano* aboundeth in Lemmons and Pomegranats, and those of *Atelli*, (whose Country is 300 miles long) are said to be the civillest, industrioudest, and richest of all the *Negroes*. And in *Nubia* there is a mortal poyson, at 100 Duckats the ounce, of which the very 10th part of a grain will end one in a quarter of an hours time. But for pure gold and silver, the Country of these *Nigrities* is abundantly stored. Touching Religion, they are grosse Idolatrous Pagans; yet with some mixture of *Mahometans* and

land outward Christians: with which last, *Nubia* is reported to have been wholly peopled; but now for want of Ministers, fallen to the former Paganism; for they once sending to the *Ethiopian* Emperour for instructors, were unworthily (whatsoever the cause was) rejected by him.

**C**OME we now to *ETHIOPIA*, (taking its name from the Greeks, from *ἔθω*, to burn, and *ἵα*, a countenance: the Sun's heat Scorching the faces of its Inhabitants) which is to be divided into that of *Asia*, containing *Arabia* the Desert, the Stony, and part of the Happy; of which before: and that in *Africa*, of which in this place. And it is divided into *Ethiopia* the Upper or more inward; and the Lower or more outward: *Ethiopia*. The Upper is called also *Abasine* or *Abyssine*, either from an *Egyptian* word, signifying, *scattered Nations*; or from *Abas*, one of its chief Rivers. *Nilus* also is supposed to arise out of the lake of *Zeme* in this Country: which taking its course towards *Egypt*; and meeting in divers places with lower Valleys, falls down with great noise and force. It seems to be named the upper, not so much for its being higher situated than the other, as for that it is more Northerly; and the inward, as being environed with the lower, except where it confines with the *Negroes* Country, and *Lybia*. The Prince hereof is called the Emperour of *Abyssinia*; by the *Arabians*, *Atelabasta*: some of his Subjects name him *Bel* or *Belul Giam*, that is, a powerful Prince: and we name him, whether by corruption of language or not, *Prete*; or *Presbyter John*; but others say, all these Emperours since the Eunuch was baptized by *Philip*, were called *Philips*; till that one *John* that was religious; reigned, and was entituled Saint: since whom they have been called *Johms*, with the word *Presbyter* prefixed; for that he executeth the Priestly as well as the Kingly Office: But his Subjects calling him *Prete-Giam*, importing as much as *Pretious Prince*, makes the name of *Presbyter* from the cause aforesaid, to be the more improbable. Divers have given divers bounds to this his Empire: But one *Hugh Lincolnt* saith in his Navigations; That it extendeth from the Red-Sea's entrance, unto the Island of *Sienn*; under the Tropick of *Cancer*, except the side of the *Barbarian* gulph, which the Turk hath held divers years; so that *Prete-Giam*, or *Presbyter-John's* Dominion should be bounded with the Red-Sea on the East; on the North with *Egypt* and the Desarts of *Nubia*; on the South with the Realm of *Monocemugi*; thus having about 400 Italian miles under his command: yet some affirm this Country to be as big as *Italy*, *France* and *Germany*, put together, although not very well peopled: the ground's dry barrennesse, and the climate's disagreeable not admitting a multitude. But (however) this Prince attributes to himself many and great Titles, as Emperour of the higher and lower *Ethiopia*, King of *Gee Cassates Fatigar*, &c. of *Sabaim*, the Queen of *Saba's* Country, saying, he is issued from

O o o o o 2

David;

*David*, who being said to have 70 Tributary Provinces under his Empire, we will briefly mention the chief; among which, none is better known among us than *Barnagas*, for its neighbourhood to the Red-Sea, extending from *Suaquem* almost unto the entry of the strait. Its chief Town is *Beroe* or *Barne*, seated on a pleasant River. It hath but one Sea-Port-Town, which is *Erocco*. On the Western part of this Province is a Mountain first spacious, then narrowing, and enlarging again, and a small league in compass, on whose top are a Temple, Monastery, with royal buildings, and two huge Cisterns: with a large plot of ground to entertain 500 persons, for provision groweth there. There is but one passage to it, and that reaching to a mark: beyond which they must ascend by cords and baskets; so that this place can neither be taken by force or famine. The Turks some years since, on whom *Barnagas* bordereth, and who are said to receive hence 1000 Crowns yearly tribute) greatly spoiled here, carrying away many prisoners: yet at length he agreed with the Basia of *Abassia* (residing at *Suaquem*) for 1000 ounces of gold. Betwixt the South and East from *Barnagas*, lay divers Mountains, dividing *Prete-Gian's* Empire from the Kingdom of *Adel*. *Erocco* stands in the Province of *Dafila*, included in the Realm of *Barnagas*; where are also other Towns, as *Sautais*, *Abarach*, &c. The Gulph of *Erocco* bending to *Adulite* of old, which is the point of *Erocco*, extends to *Bebul*, with a nook made by the Sea towards *Arabia*, on the beginning of the strait, whereby they come out of the red-Sea or *Arabian* gulph; which place is very narrow, shallow, and full of Islands: beyond *Erocco* are *Zagnanie* and *Zana* of the Province of *Lacca*; then the Port of *Velle*, once called *Antipila*. Beyond the aforesaid point are two Lakes wherein Crocodiles do live: beyond which is the Port and Promontory of *Mosylon*, now the *Cape Docono*, in the Country of *Dangali*, where the Sea making a little Gulf, suddenly straitens again, in which Channel, about thirty or thirty-six miles broad, are five or six Islands; to avoid whole Rocks, Sailers must have good experience: Next to *Dangali*, are the Ports *Zeiloi*; and ancient *Daphne*, where stands the Town *Barbara* near Mount *Felléz*; after which is the *Cape Guardafium*; where *Meite*, formerly *Accanne*, is situated; here sailers doubling the *Cape*, run from East toward the South, on which Coast is *Carfir*, once *Opene*, and the *Cape Zingi*: then they bend towards *Azun*, and *Zazelle*; thence to *Magadaze*, where the Portuguese traffique. Lastly, to *Barré*, which Province hath *Pate*, and *Brave*, two Towns on the Sea, dividing *Prete-Gians* country from the King of *Melinde's*. But to come up into the main-land. *Tigremabon* is a Realm lying betwixt Nile the Red-Sea, and the Realm of *Angotte*; whose King being *Presbyter John's* tributary, is sit among his dominions; in whose good Town *Caxumo*, *Maqueda* the Queen of *Sabba*, or *Sheba*, (who coming to hear *Solomon's* Wisdom, had (they say) by him a son called *Meiler*) and also the Queen of *Candace*, were said to abide. *Angotte* is set between

*Tigremabon*

*Tigremabon* and *Amaran*, in which Realm are divers Provinces; whole chief City *Angotte* stands upon the River *Ancona*, near which, is another Town called *Saint Peter*. This people are reported to use Pepper, Salt, and Iron, instead of money, which formerly was the only way of Exchange among many people: Next is *Amara*, bounded on the North with *Angotte*; on the South with *Damut*; and by some said to be situated in the middle of the Country. Herein is a Hill called *Amara*, ninety miles in compass; and it seems exceeding high (I will not say a dayes journey) on whose top are sundry Pallaces, wherein (to prevent sedition) the Emperour of *Ethiopia's* younger sons are always kept and educated in a Princely manner; and in one whereof, is a Library said to be, wherein are many Books as *Enoch's Oracles*, all *Lities* works, &c. to us in part or wholly lost. It hath been put to this use ever since the year 470. It is made even impregnable, having but one way of ascent. *Sagamedre* is the greatest country of this *Ethiopia*: for it extends from *Goyame*, beyond the Island *Guerque* which is 600 miles. *Guerque*, or the Island of *Meroe*, is compassed by the River *Nilus*, 175 miles long, and 125 broad. Whole principal City is named *Meroe*, built by *Cambyses* in memory of his Mother *Meroe*. This Isle (although in the upper *Ethiopia*) is not subject as some suppose, to *Presbyter John*, but is inhabited by *Mahometans*, who are utter enemies to the *Abyssine* *Ethiopians*. *Xoa* is situate betwixt *Amara*, *Damut*, and *Fatigar*. *Fatigar* lyes between *Xoa*, and *Adel*. *Damut* is nigh to *Xoa*, lying betwixt the Province of *Zanquebara*, and the Lake of *Barcena*; yet some more probably hold *Damut* to lye Westward, beyond the Realms of *Vangue* and *Goyame*. Most Cosmographers (by reason of the *Abyssines* ignorant reports) describe this Empire conjugal-ly; whose Emperour hath not his chief abode in *Caxumo*; but according to *Hugh Lincol*, (who sailed along all the Coast of *Ethiopia*) his ordinary and almost constant residence is in the Town of *Beimalechi*. Yet according to an ancient custome (for we find nothing of this Emperours stately Pallaces, unlesse at the Town of *Zemra*, nigh the Lake so called, where Workmen sent by *Francis* Duke of *Florence*, built a Royall Pallace in 1570, where the Emperour is said sometimes to be present) He sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, lives (most commonly, in the open fields under Tents, 6000 whereof are carried with him, with great store of gold and silver vessels, and other rich moveables) whereby his Court, every man being lodged, overspreadeth the compass of 10 or 12 miles. Some report these *Ethiopians* (as they are black, so) ignorant and void of all Learning: But *Escala* his learned Book, of *The Correction of Times*, is a witness, they are not so ignorant as some hold them to be: yet it appears, they are for the most part slow and dull of wit: in that having flax, they can make no cloth; having Sugar-canes, and cannot draw it out; iron, and cannot work it; holding Smiths for Sorcerers and wicked men: Yet are they much given to Navigation: so that they are employed

ployed in the Merchants ships of *Goa, Bergha, China*, and other places; serving herein for little money, and differing very little from slaves, as being ready for all drudgeries, and enduring whipping, &c. very patiently. They are kept by their Imperial Monarch in wonderfull awe, both high and low; who intreats them more like slaves than subjects, taking away, and giving whole *Siegnaries*, to whom he pleaseth, none daring to shew any discontent, for he is held by them for a sacred and divine person; (whose colour also is said to be whiter than the rest) who was wont to shew himself but once a year to his subjects. Then he appeared thrice a year; but since (it is said) more familiarly. But they so honour his name, that hearing thereof, they bend themselves, and touch the ground with their hands, reverencing also his Tron, although he be not in it. These Countries have two Summers, and two Winters yearly; not distinguished by heat, and cold, but by continuall showers, and fair weather. They are generally very fertile; yielding Barley, Pease, Beans, Millet and other Pulses, though but little Wheat, likewise abundance of Sugar, if they knew how to refine it. There are almost an incredible number of Oranges, Lemons, and Citrons, and great store of Vines; but no Melons roots, nor Olives, but they make Oyl of a fruit called *Gore*. They have abundance of Honey, and Wax enough to serve the Country with Candles, without Tallow. Flax they have, yet not the Art of making Linnen Cloath therewith; Yet they make it of Cotton, whereof there is abundance. They have almost all sorts of beasts, and Fowl, as we in *Europe*; as Oxen, Asses, Horses, (though but small) Camells, Sheep; also Elephants, Lions, Tigres, Onces, and Stags, but no Bears, nor Conyes, neither is there any Bulfinch. Mines of Gold, Silver, Iron, and Brasse, are not wanting, which they know not how to draw; Yet in *Zagamedra*, they draw their pure Mines of Silver by fire, making it run like rods; and in *Damat* they draw it, and refine it something better. Their fields are full of Geese, Partridges, and Hares, because they never hunt; so that their Country is bountifull, if they knew how to use such a happiness. But there is sometimes one inconvenience; to wit, multitudes of Grasshoppers, even darkning the Ayre, spoiling one Province or another by eating the leaves and barks of Trees, and devouring their Harvest. Their Prince's revenue ariseth three wayes; From the Fruits of his demans, manured by Oxen and Slaves; From his Subjects, who pay him for every fire, and the tenth of all Minercalls which they draw; and from the Princes subjects unto him; some giving him Horses, others Oxen, Cotton, and other things; So that it is conceived he hath great places full of Gold, pretious stones, and Cloath. His Subjects (as to Religion) are most out-side Christians; yet are there some *Mahometians* also, his tributaries; who are alwayes seeking to revolt. The *Abyssines* say there is an old Chronicle kept in *Caxumo*, which saith, they at first received *Judaism*, through *Melelech*, *Solomons*

son,

son, by Queen *Maqueda*, and the Jews accompanying him. But *Christianity* was here received by means of Queen *Candaces* her Eunuch, whom *Philip* Baptized, and that, first at *Tygia*, in which Tongue they frame all their publique writings. But they acknowledging the Patriarch of *Alexandria* for their head, (from whom also they receive their Patriarch or *Abuna*) fell with the *Coptes* of *Egypt*, into the opinion of *Eutyches*; holding but one nature and will in *CHRIST*; for they could have no intercourse with *Rome*, but by means of *Egypt*. They hold divers other impertinencies (which increase by conversing with grosse Idolaters, and *Mahometans* round about them; many also of these Idolaters living among them, as in *Damat*, *Agas*, and *Corague*) as Circumcising both Males and Females. Then Baptizing the Males fourty, the Females sixty dayes after their Circumcision; they eat not of any beast that is cloven-footed; they follow the Jews in observing the last day of the Week's Sabbath, more than the first; they accept onely of the three first General Councils. Their Priests may marry but once, according to the *Assyrites*, and not that, after Orders received; whom (they say) do live by the labour of their hands; they allowing them nothing, nor suffering them to beg. They Baptize not, but on the last and first dayes of the Week, presently giving the Bread and Wine to the Baptized, rebaptizing themselves also in Pools and little Lakes, every year on *Tuesday*, in remembrance of *Christ's* Baptism, on which day they suppose him to have been Baptized by *John* in *Jordan*. Their Sacraments are administered by the Patriarch; nor spitting, as *Breewood* saith, after receipt of the *Eucharist*, (in which they communicate in both kinds, and with unleavened bread) untill Sun-set; nor in their Temples at all, putting off their shoes when they enter therein, nor suffering any beast to enter. But of these things, and other Ceremonious superstitions; with *Presbyter John's* overtures, as to reconciliation with the Church of *Rome*, &c.; I refer you unto the aforesaid Book, Entituled, *The Description of Estates, Empires, and Principalities*.

*ÆTHIOPIA* the Nether, or more outward, which is reported to be mountainous toward the West, sandy in the midit, and Desert towards the East, is bounded on the North with the land of the *Negros*, and *Æthiopia* the inward, and on the South with the Southern Ocean; and is divided in five principal Countries. 1. *Monotapa*, or the Realm of *Benomotana*, or *Benomotaxa*, obeying one Prince called *Monotapa*, that is, Empire in that language. It is fashioned like an Island, betwixt two branches of a great River, running from the Lake of *Zemre*, Southward. *Nile*, which springs from this Lake, running East and North, and *Zuie* towards the West. Some hold it is 3000 *Italian* miles in compass; yet others, but 450 miles. The chief Provinces hereof are six. The chief City is *Benomotaxa*, where the King ordinarily resides, yet some say his seat is at *Tongum*, besides which there is another

another Town named *Sinlus*. This Kings Dominions extend far beyond the Island, even to the Capes *Mozambique* and *Bonne Esperance*, or the Cape of good Hope (all which perhaps may make up the number of 3000 Italian miles) many neighbouring Kings being his Tributaries; among which is he of *Torre*, or *Burue*, running from the River of *Spirito Santo*, to the Cape of *Courantes*, and far within the land also. *Monotapa* is watered by divers Rivers, as *Panami* and others, which are said to carry Gold with them; and in all this Estate is great store of Gold, both in Mines and Rocks. The Ayre is temperate, the Countrey good and pleasant, abounding in grain; yet is it full of Forrests, having in it many beasts, great and small, especially Elephants, whereof 5000 are said to be killed yearly for their Teeth-like. *Burue* is very rich in Mines of Gold, and hath very good pastures, but wanting Wood. They having such store of Mettall (so much by men desired) cannot but be very rich. The King also exacting no Tribute, but certain dayes service from his People; yet without presents, none may shew himself before him. He hath likewise no Prisons, all causes being straightway decided by witnesses, neither do they punish any crimes so severely, as Sorcery, Adultery, and Theft. They are of mean stature, black, but active and Valiant, yet ill-armed. This Prince is Politick, keeping with him his Vassall Princes Heirs, to assure himself of them. They worship here one only God, which they call *Mozimo*, and in 1560, *Gonsalvo* a Jesuite, Baptized a Vassall to *Monotapa*, called the King of *Inanior*: and soon after young *Monotapa* and his Wife. But four *Mahometans* his favourites, perswading him, *Gonsalvo* to be a Magician, a ruiner of Kingdomes, and a Spie, to cause a revolt by his subjects, he had him slain and cast into the River *Adfigina*, nigh which fifty of his new converts were slain also. But when some *Portugalls*, and chief of the Realm had shewn him his error, he slew some of those four, seeking for the rest, who were hidden. But the *Portugalls* now not sending new Preachers hither, but sending an Army by Sea under *Francis Barret*, to be revenged, the affrighted King sent for peace to *Barret*, who aiming at the gold, rejected all conditions. But through the Ayre's intemperature unto them of *Europe*, this Army was consumed: since which, some few, called Christians, have there remained.

2. *Conga* or *Manicongo*, which is a Realm extending from two degrees and an half from the Equinoctial towards the South; that is, from *Katherines* Cape, to the Cape of *Leo*; and hath on the North the Province or Realm of *Benin* in the Negroes Land; and on the South, *Luna Montes*, or the Mountains of the Moon. It contains (according to those who compute its situation) about 660 Italian miles, and is divided into six eminent Provinces; whose King also commands in the Island of *Loande*, seated betwixt a branch of the river *Dande*, now *Bengo*; and the river *Coanza*. He hath likewise some Islands upon the river *Zaire*, his feudatories.

feudatories. Those Provinces are, *Bamba*, on the Sea-coast, from the river *Ambrisi* unto *Coanza*, and hath many Signiories. The chiefest City is *Bamba*, standing between *Ambrisi* and the river *Lefe*; being about 100 Italian miles from the Sea. *Songo*, which extends towards the North, to *Ambrisi*, and ending near the red rocks of the Realm of *Loangoes* frontier: its chief City being *Songo*. *Sunde*, whose principal Town is *Sunde*; it extends from about the Town of *Congo* (now named by the *Portugals*, *S. Saviour*) unto *Zaire* river, which is 40 Italian miles. *Pango*, once a Realm, not subject to the King of *Congo*: confining with *Sunde* on the North; with *Batte* on the South. Its head City is *Pango*, situated toward the West part of the river *Barbela* coming from the Lake whence *Nile* springs. *Batte*, whose chief Town is also *Batta*. This Province confines with *Pango* on the North, and joyning to *Barbela* on the South of the Mountains of *Aphronitre*, as far as the burnt Mountain. It extends to the Mountains of the Sun, confining it self on *Barbela* toward the East. *Laffy*, *Pemba*, in which stands the City of *Congo*, seated on a Mountain, and about 150 Italian miles from the Sea. It was once named *Banze*, that is, a Court; now *S. Saviour*. Here is a Mountain indifferent high, so full of houses and Villages, that it is said to comprehend about 100000 persons, although but two *German* leagues, or 10 Italian miles (taking 5 miles for a league) in quantity. So that it may be true, which is reported of these Countries populousness; they selling (as is supposed) 28000 slaves yearly unto the *Portugals*: who are carried to *Brasil* to work in the Mines. This Country is watered with six rivers. This King hath a swelling title of 18 particular Provinces and Countries: some of whom are (they say) *Anthrophagi* or Men-eaters: having shambles of mens flesh, as we of other meats. But *Angolia* is most esteemed of the Civill Provinces; which some years since revolted from the King of *Congo*, and is concluded to be very populous; for in 1582, the King hereof had 120000 in an Army against *Paul Diaz* the *Portugal* Leader; who with his few, wisely ordered, fatally and dismally overthrew him. *Edward Loope* a *Portugal*, who lived long in these parts, reports their Winter to be like Autumne, at *Rome*: yea, generally (through the rain continually falling, especially for two hours before noon, and as much after) the heat is greater in Winter than in Summer: which heat is most insupportable to the men of *Europe*. Their Winter begins on March 15, so that for five months, a clear day is seldom seen. Their Summer, in the midst of September. They also observe very small difference in night and day, being in a manner equall. Their Summer is as dry, as their Winter moist: whereby the overflowing rivers leaves on the land a grosse and muddy humour. They have the common winds called by *Hippocrates*, *Stefies*: which causing continual rain by agitation of mists on the tops of Mountains during our Summer, both in *Congo* and *Prete-gian's* Country, make the rivers *Nile*, *Niger*, and

P p p p p

and *Senega*, &c. to swell, whereby they overflowing, do fatten those Countries which they water: for it is not the melting of snow which causeth the rivers increase, because no snow falls on the Mountains of *Ethiopia* and *Congo*, or the neighbour Countries, except on those called the *Mountains of Snow*; or those towards the *Cape of good Hope*. The West and Northwest winds in their Winter, doth temper the hot mists and vapours. But in Summer their winds are South-East, or North-East: which unless they did cool and refresh *Ethiopia* and *Congo*, the heat would be insupportable. *Greece*, *Candia*, *Cyprus*, *Anatolia*, *Syria*, and *Egypt*, enjoying the same winds. *Zaire* is *Congo's* greatest river, and hath such abundance of water, (being 5 miles and a half broad) that entering the salt Ocean, it keeps its freshness for 8, 10, yea 16 leagues: whereby Sea-men easily know where they are. But to be brief; *Bamba* hath many silver Mines and other mettals in a Mountain thereof, also many exceeding great Elephants (through its many Forests and Rivers) which live commonly 150 years, and grow to the midst of their age: some of whose teeth have been 200 weight. The Antients said, the Elephant could not bend his hamme, but were taken leaning on some Tree asleep. But the Flemings and Portugals seeing them get up into Trees, drawing up their haunches, to gather leaves, and stooping easily down to drink where the water is low, makes it evident, that they have joints.

Here are also Tygers, whom the *Congoans* call *Engoi*, who through hunger's sharpness, finding naught in the field, do fall upon tame Cattle; and as *Loope* testifieth, never set upon White men, but oft-times the Blacks. The beast called *Zebret*, breeds in this Province; and is like a mule, but it ingenders and multiplies greatly, having young every year: whose hair having from the ridge of the back to the belly streaks of white, black and yellow, is very strange; they are exceeding swift, and wild; whom if the Inhabitants had art to tame, might serve instead of horses which this Country wants: whose office notwithstanding men do perform by carrying them, who speedily journey, in litters or chairs, the bearers being often changed. Beasts called *Empalanges*, some as big as an Ox, others lesse, are here also. To conclude, they have wild Bugles or Oxen, Wolves smelling afar off, Foxes, Goats, Stags, Hares, and Conies in abundance; for they hunt them not to death, as in *Europe*. They have many Civit-Cats, whom they keep tame for their pleasing sent. There are divers kinds of Serpents and Vipers, some being 25 foot long, 5 broad, with a very large belly and throat, that (if we can credit it) will devour a beast as big as a Stag. They kill them sleeping, and hold the food of their flesh better than of any fowl. But some Vipers are so poysonsome, that any one bitten dyes within 25 hours. There is likewise a strange beast as big as a ram, with wings like a Dragon, a tail, long beak, many rows of teeth, two legs, whole

whole skin is red, mixt with green and blew, and who eat raw flesh. It hath Camelions, Parrots green and grey; very fair red birds, and many sorts of small ones singing like Canarie-birds: finally, great store of Hens, Ducks, Geese, Turkeys, Peacocks, Partridges wild and tame, Turtles, Pigeons, Faulcons, Sparrow-hawks, Eagles, and Pelicans. The Province of *Congo* hath many Elephants, and divers sorts of imitating Apes, many Kine, with divers beasts forementioned: also store of Crystal and other mettals; but preferring Iron, which is found in the aforesaid fruitful Mountain; whose water is excellent good, nor hurting any one: which is stored with grasse, much Cattle, Fruit-Trees alway green, yielding all kind of grain, chiefly that called *Luco*, whose bread is as good as ours; abundance of white Millet called *Mazze*; also Meaz or Turkey Wheat, and store of Rice; but they little esteem these. Bananes, which some take to be *Muses*, and others, *Indian Figs*, a pleasing and good food grow here; also Limons and Citrons exceeding pleasant, whereof the poor live. There are three sorts of Palm-Trees: from one whereof they draw Oyl, Wine-Vinegar, Fruit, and Bread. Other Trees bear a Fruit called *Cola*, as big as a Pine-apple: and other wild Palms, whose fruit are good to eat, and with whose leaves they cover their Cottages, and make baskets, &c. This Province hath abundance of Melons and Cucumbers; also Tamarinds and *Cassia*, which serve both the Moors and Turks for Physick. The River *Leonde* ingenders Crocodiles, and the Hog-fish, so big and fat, that some weigh 500 weight and more: also Sea-horses, or the River-horse, which is tawny, having little hair, leaping to land, and feeding, and by day living in the river; some of whom the *Africans* do tame: and they are exceeding swift, but they must not passe over deep rivers, because they will presently dive. But this river which runs at the foot of the Mountain where the royal Town of *Congo* is built, so dries up when the rain ceaseth, that one may easily wade it. On the shoar of whole Island *Leonde*, are found gray Cockles very glistening, and better esteemed than those on the other shoars: where also is a Tree called *Eusand*, always green, and having many virtues, strangely multiplyeth, so wit, by some small threds hanging down from the high branches, and rooting in the ground; whose upper bark being made clean, is a kind of linnen cloath, making garments for the common people: and in that part nearest to the firm land do trees grow, at whose foot salt-water springs. Here are likewise big Oysters, which they call *Ambizimitare*, that is, fish of a stone. They find here also divers fishes, as Pilchards, Soles, Crasfishes, &c. And about the outward part of this Island are many black Whales; who fighting, many die: whose fat being taken and mixt with Pitch, the Inhabitants calk their ships. Moreover, we must not forget the great store of stone, and goodly Marble Mountains, besides the Jasper and Porphyrie, with the white Marble,

and of other colours, called at *Rome*, *Numidia* and *African* Marble: in some Mountains also of this Province of *Pemba*, grow *Jacinths*; and in other rocks they find metals, as *brasse*, yellow and green, whereof they make *Statues*, &c. So that, if we look on the abundance of metals in this Realm, as also their *Elephants*, and *Civit* Cats, wherewith they abound, *Sea-cockles* serving instead of *coyn*, *traffique* of *Slaves*, *linnen cloath* of *Songo*, and *Sande* made of *Indian Palm-Trees*, *Cryстал*, though not altogether so profitable; we may soon see how they are sought to by forreign Merchants, whereby their wealth may be conserved. And as for the King, none would doubt, but that he (having all these Countries under him) is exceeding rich: of whom, one thing is reported to his commendation, That he doth Justice publickly, without any formality; for that all things are debated before him in few words. As to their religious belief, they are so full of vanities, that they scarce know what they believe: for, although an outward profession of Christianity be crept into this Realm, yet is it full of grosse Idolaters: some worshipping the Sun as Husband to the Moon; and the Moon as his Wife in the second place. Others worship these beasts like *Dragons* above-mentioned. Some the Earth, as Mother of all, &c. How a Christian profession was brought first hither by the *Portugalls*, (*Jamés Cano* or *Diego Can*, Captain to *D. John* the second, King of *Portugall*, discovering these Countries of the *Nether Ethiopia* in 1486) I leave to read in the book of Estates, Empires, &c. Onely thus much I say, That King *John* sending three *Dominick* Friars to instruct them; the King of *Congo's* Uncle and his son first; then the King and Queen were baptized; (whose eldest son was *Alphonso*) and who endeavoured lovingly and zealously to turn the Subjects: But these Friars (beside the consuming heat, and ayr's malignity) were ill-intreated by them of *Congo*: who seemed tractable while they spake of ceremonies and mysteries; but when they began to speak of temperance, continency, restitution of goods, pardon of offences received, with articles of Christian profession, they shewed opposition. The King also growing from zealous, to be cold: for they were loath to leave their Sooth-laying and Sorceries, especially their many Wives, and which Women troubled the Court and City of its abode. Then, the King dying, *Alphonso* the eldest, and *Panze Aquitime* his second son, who would not be Baptized, fell to Arms; *Alphonso* defeating, and taking him (they say) by apparent miracles; who afterwards caused all the Idols to be burnt on the top of an high Mountain, and reigned fifty years in peace; and in the midst of after troubles in *Aluaro's* time (through the *Giaguas* entering *Congo's* Realm in great numbers, and putting this King to flight. &c.) *Jesuites* came into *Congo*, and preached to the people, building a Religious house, so called in the Island of *Leonde*, where six or seven Priests remained, or still do remain, going up and down where necessity calls them.

*Aluaro,*

*Aluaro* (Grandchild of the first *Aluaro*, whose son was also of the same name) being illegitimately born, was slighted of most of his Subjects; wherefore in 1587, he would have one of these Priests near him, whereby he purchased honour. And then defeating his sister by the Father, with her brother, in a great battell, slaying the General; he built a Temple in the same place, setting the first hand thereto to encourage others, and by Edicts advanced these Priests Preaching and enterprise. But it's time to hasten to the third part of *Ethiopia* the lower, to wit, *Aian*, which (including *Abex*, and *Adel*, two Kingdomes) is situated betwixt the River *Culimanta*, and the Mouth of the Red Sea. *Abex* is also called *Aica*, and lyeth situated between *Habassia*, and *Adel*; unto which first it is said to be tributary, two of whose chief Towns, and conduct of *Tristan de Cugna*. The other principal Town is *Braue Adel*, is that of which *Grand Amada* was King, who had a great hand over the Emperour of the *Habassines*, it is situated more upon the Coast of the Red-Sea than *Abex*, and whose three chief Cities are *Arar*, *Borbora*, and *Zeila*, all seated without the Red-Sea: straights, the which Merchants do much frequent; for besides the Corn, flesh, Honey, and Wax, store of sheep, (whose tails are said to weigh 25 pounds) wherewith this Country abounds; they have also much Gold, and Ivory. But *Zeila* the chief of the tree, standing near the Bay called the *Bosome*, or nook of the *Avallies*, or *Aballies*, who dwelt thereabout, was sacked and burned by the *Portugalls* in 1516. 4. *Zanzibar*, which extends from *Moroaps*, unto the River *Quilimanci*, (whose chief Rivers are *Coroa*, and two other) it must needs be a large Province; for it containeth fifteen Kingdomes, whose chief Cities, *Coroa*, *Montuola*, *Anzaga*, *Badin*, *Calen*, *Quilao*, *Momboza*, *Milinda*, *Mumbara*, *Mombizo*, *Embroe*, *M sambique*, *Macaos*, *Murumugi*, and *Sasila*, denominate the Countries, and that of *Sasila* (abounding much in Gold and Ivory) is thought to be the land of *Ophir*; but seeing *Ophir* is planted in the East, and *Sasila* stands South-West from *Chaldaea*, where the People's scattering began; as also since *Solomons* Navy with the Navy of *Hiram* came from *Ophir* but once in three years, as 1 *Kings* ch. 10. Verses 11. and 22. do demonstrate, *Ophir* was certainly farther off; to wit, in *India*, although what particular Province or Islands thereof, it is not determined. *Abraham* King of *Quilao* suffered the *Portugalls* to build Forts in his Country in 1500, whom they presumptuously nine years after depositing, the *Arabians* (for the *Zanzibars*, and *Aians* on the Sea-side, are said to descend from them) demolished their fortresses, The true Natives are the more in-land people of *Zanzibar*, and grosse *Gentiles* as to Religion. But those on the shoar side (as of *Aian*) have received the *Mohometan* superstition of the *Arabians* from whom they descended.

Fifthly, *Casaria*, (so named from the *Casars*, that is, Heretiques, a name appropriated unto these Heathen for want of another)

hath



hath on the South and West; the Ocean, on the North, the Mountains of the Moon. I find no City or Town in this Province, onely they are said to have some Villages; in every of which is a Lord or Ruler. Some represent also, the manners of this people to be as ill-favoured as their bodies, and faces; for being cole-black, with thick Lips, and flat Noses, they likewise live like beasts. The long Southern Promontory called *The Cape of Good Hope*, (whose top hath a fair Plain covered with Grass and various flowers, named the Table of the *Cape*, and largely overlooking the Sea on all sides; which here being very rough and tempestuous, hath often vexed the *Spaniards*) is of this Region, and was discovered by *Vasco di Gama* in 1497.

Moreover, before we speak of *Egypt*, we will look over the *African* Islands, which are those in the *Atlantick* Ocean, or in the *Ethiopian* Sea. In the former are to be noted. 1. That called the *Princes Island*, seated between the *Equator*, and *Tropick of Capricorn*, and so named, because the Prince of *Portugall* was to have its Revenues when his *Portugalls* had conquered it. Nigh this, is that called the Isle of *Saint Helen*, which they so named from their *Saint Helen*, on whose day it was discovered, and over which (as the other) the *Spaniards* do command. 2. The *Gorgades*, of old the *Gorgons*, they are nine in number, now called the Islands of the *Green Cape*, for that they lye near the said *Cape*, in the *Negroes* Land. *James* Island is the chief of these, whose principall Town is *Ribiera*, fortified by the *Spaniards*. *Medusa* dwelt here, who is reported to be a Woman exceeding beautifull, but molesting the *European* Seas by Piracy, she was invaded by *Perseus* and his *Greeks*. He slaying Her in a single Combate, struck off her Head, and carrying it into *Greece*, the people exceedingly admired both her Face and Hair. Goats are the chief thing these Islands abound with. 3. The *Canaries*, of which before in *Spain*, which for their fruitfullnesse, &c. were of old called the *Fortunate* Islands. But the *Canaries*, from the chiefest Isle *Canaria*, or from the Dogs, in which the *Spaniards* found them to abound: They are accounted by some, but seven in number; three whereof, to wit, the Isle *Canarie*, *Palma*, (where ships use to touch going to *America*) and *Tenariff*, 90 miles in circuit, are the chief; in which *Tenariff*, neither shew nor river is said to be; but their water is conveyed into divers parts from a high Mountain, having a Tree alway covered with a moyst cloud, which every noon-tide dissolveth. The Commodities hereof are well enough known to be sublime Sacks, fine Sugars, and *Canarie*-birds.

4. The *Azores* 9 in number, whereof the chief *Tercera*, makes them all now to be called the *Terceraes*; unto whose second Isle of note, *S. Michael*, Geographers have removed the first Meridian, dividing the *Eastera* World from the West. Mariners also observing the Compass coming under this Isle's Meridian line, not to vary at all from the North. *Faiall* is the third of note, which

Sig

*Sir Walter Raleigh* taking from the *Spaniard* against all oppositi-  
(for two reasons) in 1597, made the booty of this Expedition  
(called the *Island-Voyage*) worth 400000 Crowns, although the  
English kept not what they won. Although the *Flemings* first  
discovered these Islands, and thence were called the *Flemish*  
Islands; yet the *Portugals* subdued them all under Prince *Hen-*  
*ry's* Conduct in 1444. *Tercera* it self hath been called by us the  
*Island Oade*, because it aboundeth in Oade.

5. The *Hesperides*, *Happy* Islands, whereof Poets making fre-  
quent mention, placed here the *Elyzian* fields. They are two in  
number, seated not far from the *Gorgades*, and divided asunder by  
a small straight, being, according to *Plutarch*, 10000 furlongs from  
the Continent of *Africa*. The ayr and seasons are said to be here  
always temperate: The weather fair; for they have rain very  
seldome, sweet dews making the earth very fruitful with small  
pains; and where *Servotus* the Roman earnestly desired to spend  
the remainder of his life in peace. In the latter Sea are, 1. *Ma-*  
*gadascar*, situated under the Southern Tropick, and reported to  
be 1200 miles long, and 4000 in compasse (which if so, *Brittain*  
must take but the third place of the Islands of the known World,  
for bignesse). Their chief Town or City is of the same name. It  
is called *St. Lawrence*, which name I suppose the *Portugals* gave  
it, when they discovered it in 1506. The people are but of a  
dusky colour. It is (by relation) a goodly Countrey, abounding  
with beasts both wild and tame, and all kinds of fruits; also  
Ginger, Cloves, and likewise with Silver. It hath both fair  
Rivers, and safe Harbours; yet they would neither trade, nor be  
traded with by others; yet the *Portugals* have gained a little traf-  
fique with them, whom yet they suffer not to come on shoar.  
These people keep to one Wife; but for other things, said to be  
inhospitable and treacherous, and not onely ignorant of prayer,  
but of years, months, yea and weekly dayes distinction.

2. *Zocotara*, which is 60 miles long, 24 broad, and is situated  
at the very mouth of the red-Sea. Its chief City is so called  
where the King resides. This Island, through much winds and  
drynesse, is deficient in most necessaries for life; yet hath it plen-  
ty of Physicall Drugs, especially of Aloes; called (if true) *Zaca-*  
*trina* (not *Succotrina*) from this place. Two of their Towns, *Benin*  
and *Coro*, the *Portugals* have taken and fortified; before whose  
arrival here, the Inhabitants (who are ash-colour'd and tall) were  
a kind of outward Christians called *Jacobites*. Whether there are  
two Islands nigh this, which men alone, and women alone do in-  
habit; who are said to meet sometimes, though not to stay long  
together, through the ayr's antipathy to each other; I leave (as am-  
biguous) unto Traveller's experience to determine.

3. The Isle of *St. Thomas*, seated just under the *Equinoctial*, and  
of a roundish figure. It is 180 miles about; the principal Town  
being *Pavosan*. At its first discovery, the *Portugals* found it a  
Wood; who with the *Negroes* now dwell there. It is so plen-  
tiful



risfull in Sugar, that they load 40 ships yearly: But as for fruit which hath a stone therein, it will bear none; neither will Wheat come to good. Although the *Portugals* be masters here, yet in this the *Negroes* are above them; that they are reported to live (divers times) 100 years: when as the *Portugals* never exceed 50; where there is no water for 8 days journey.

**Egypt** is bounded on the East with the *Arabian Desert*, lying betwixt it and the red Sea; on the West with the Desarts of *Lybia*, *Numidia*, *Barze*, and *Nubia*: on the South *Bugia*; or as others, the *Cataracts*, which being very narrow steeps, *Nile* powrs down his waters with a wonderful force; (although I greatly suspect, whether the adjoining Inhabitants are deatned with the noyte) and on the North the Mediterranean, which from its joyning unto Egypt, is there called the Egyptian Sea: and which sheweth, that the Antients have accounted that onely *Egypt*, which *Nile* watereth, beginning (according to *Ptolemy*) on that side near the Town *Siena* (now *Asue*), unto the Mediterranean Sea, which is 562 miles in length: although in the broadest place, to wit, from *Damiata* East, to *Rosetta* West, it be but 140 broad, in some places but 37, and at the bottom or point but 4. Some would have this Country distinct from *Africa* and *Asia*, containing it betwixt both. Others taking *Nile* for *Asia* and *Africa*'s bounds, put part thereof in either. But *Ptolemy*, and many others making the Red-Sea or *Arabian* Gulph, *Egypt*'s commodious bound, have placed it in *Africa*. *Egypt* being first inhabited by *Misraim* the son of *Chus*, was called by the Hebrews *Misraia*, and the *Arabians* are said now to call it *Misre*. It hath had divers names not very material here to repeat; But it was named *Egypt*, either from the river *Nile*, once called *Egypt*; or from the people descending from *Chams* race, who, as *Josephus* saith, were called *Egyptians*; or from one of their Kings surnamed *Egyptus*, and named *Rameses*, the brother of *Danau*. It was (of old) divided into high and low, (though others have divided it into High, Middle, and Low). High *Egypt* being long and strait, beginning at the *Cataracts* beyond *Siena*, on *Ethiopia*'s Frontiers, and ending near *Cair*. Low *Egypt* containing that which hath the form of an Island made by the two Channels of *Nile* and the Sea, extending from *Caire* unto the Mediterranean, Northward, and is as *Strabo* saith, about 3000 stades in Circuit, that is 375 Italian Miles, and was named [*Delta*] from its triangular form, or resemblance to the Greek letter so called. It's situation is near the Tropick of *Cancer*, bending towards the Northern or Arctick Circle, betwixt the seventh and tenth Parallel, especially under the second climate, whereby the longest day is thirteen hours and an half, nor in most Northern parts above fourteen. Some have affirmed there were two thousand Cities and Towns, others 1020, in this Country; But *Ortelius* who was diligent in the search, found but 300, yet the Wars with *Ethiopia*, *Syria*, and the *Romans*, might ruine many Towns therein; But we will

will mention onely some of the chief of them; as 1. *Siena*, now called *Asue*, the most Southern City thereof, and said to be exactly under the Tropick of *Cancer*; for *Ptolemy* saith, they making a very great pit, there was no shadow of the Sun, when he entred into *Cancer*. 2. *Memphis* situated beyond *Nile* Westward, where the *Egyptian* Princes resided; in whose place *Caire* succeeded, and was the abode of the *Sultans*. *Caire* is a great City, distant from *Jerusalem* about 240 of our miles, which a traveller thither, calls (for its admirableness and greatness) the little World, being, (saith he) thrice as large as *Constantinople*, and as populous, though not so well builded, being situate in a pleasant plain, and in the heart of *Egypt*, kissing *Nile* at some parts. It's divided into five parts. 1. *New-Cair*, the principall of the other, and lying in the midst of them, and contains all the chief Merchandise and Market-places, it hath walls and Ports, and is in Circuit twenty two miles. 2. *Old Caire*, where *Memphis* antiently so called, stood, also named *Babylon* of the *Egyptians*. This was the farthest place *Ulyses* visited in his travells, which *Homer* so memorizeth, yet (saith *Lithgow*) they were not answerable to the fifth part of mine. 3. *Medin*, which joyns to the back side of *Old Caire*, towards the *Piramides* (which are not far from hence) 4. *Boulake* running a great length along the River side; which hath three Market places of no small account. 5. *Carassar*, a great Town bending Southward in the way of the Red-Sea, for many miles. All which four, are (saith he) but as Suburbs to the *New Caire*, making up a Country rather than a City, yet all touch one with another either to the right or left hand, or to both, with a multitude of streets: whose length in all, from the lowest end of *Boulake*, to the Southmost part of *Carassar*, is 28 English miles, and 14 in breadth; for tryall whereof, he saith, he trod it one day on foot from Sun to Sun, being guided and guarded by a riding *Jani-zary*, which, for his bruised feet on the streets, was one of the forest dayes journey that ever he had in his life. Here are three principall gates in *New Caire*; *Babeh Mamstek*, looking towards the Wilderness, and Red-Sea; *Bebzavillah* towards *Nile*; and *Babell Eutub*, toward the fields. The streets are narrow, and all almost covered to save them from the parching heat, with open vents for light, and their buildings are commonly two stories high, made either of mud or brick, and plat-forms on the tops, whereon they sleep usually in the night, to receive the fresh and cooling Ayre. Here is a great Pallace where the *Beglerbeg* or *Turkish* Vice-gent constantly resides, and on a moderate height, from whence a full prospect of the better part of the Town, Gardens and Villages, bordering on *Nile*, with a great part of the lower plains of *Egypt*, may be taken. There is likewise said to be in this City, a Tower, whereby (by observing how high *Nile* riseth, for there are divers marks in it by which they judg) they know how fruitful it will be every year in *Egypt*; for if the River swell unto the highest hole of the Tower, they have abundance of Corn. Another saith it was in a

*Mosque*, or *Turkish Temple* called *Eschiall*, whereas they measure how much *Nile* rose, by a Pillar there; But another in his Peregrination saith, they go into an Island nigh *Caire*, where they observe the height of this River. 3. *Alexandria*, so called from *Alexander the Great*, who built it, and now *Scanderia*; it's a Town of great traffique, and was formerly one of the chief Cities of the World, not yielding to *Rome* for inhabitants; and was in the time of the *Nicene Council*, appointed (by them) one of the four Patriarchal Cities, *Antioch*, *Rome*, and *Constantinople* being the other three. It is divided into Old and New, and is seated in a sandy Country on the Sea shore, more broad than long, and like a half Moon: The Old is three miles long, having within it (besides other rare things) two Mountains of inclosed sand. The ancient Walls are yet standing, but little inhabited within; four things more, among others, are here eminent; the Cisterns bringing water from an Arme of *Nile* called *Calis*, and supported by Marble Pillars; two Spires near the Walls of the Port almost alike, Graven with *Hieroglyphicall* letters, one whereof lyeth along, almost covered with earth; the other standing ten fadome high without the ground, and is eleven foot square: A little above which, is the place as by the ruines doth appear, where *Cleopatra's Pallace* of old stood, where she had a Gallery advanced over the Sea; and lastly, without the Town stands a Pillar which *Cesar* erected in memory of *Pompey* his defeat; it is of Marble, eighty foot high, and twenty in Circuit. The New is seated somewhat more pleasant, on the right hand of the Old Port, which hath a Castle of the Old Town for defence, but (through difficulty) they use it only sometimes to lodge their Foists and Gallies. The New Port is on its right hand, and is but an open road subject to the Northern Winds, but defended by two Castles (on both sides) called *Farion* one standing on a little Peninsula; the other right against it; so that all Ships must needs passe within shot of these Castles; without which two Ports (through the Ayres badnesse) the very Town (it is judged) would be soon abandoned. Two things are remarkable of this City. That the people were so licentious, that they would neither spare personally and verbally to abuse their Governour; nor *Romane* Emperours, their Lords themselves: for which cause *Caracalla* coming to the City, and impatient of the same, assembled the youths of the City, as if to choose some for attending on his person, and suddenly commanded his souldiers to put them all to the Sword; and that, one *Gautenus* reading Divinity and Philosophy in this Town in 180. thence it is thought the setting up Universities first began in *Christendome*. Right against *Alexandria* they place the little Isle *Pharos*, in *Cesar* and *Ptolemies* time, but now it joyns to the Continent; and whose *Pharus* or watch-Tower (built by *Ptolemy Philadelphus* for benefit of Sailers; too tedious here particularly to describe) was accounted one of the Worlds seven Wonders. The *Manfoleum*, which signifies a Sepulchre or Monument for the dead: *Babylon*, not of *Egypt*, but that

of

of *Assyria*, its Walls; *Diana's Temple* of *Ephesus*. The *Colosium* of *Rhodes*, and the statue or Image of *Jupiter Olympicus*, and the *Piramides* of *Egypt*, being the other six. It was called by *Oppian*, one of *Egypt's* two Cloysters, or doors to shut it up, to wit by Sea; the other by land, being *Pelusium*. This seems to me to be the same which the Describer of *Estates and Principalities*, &c. calls the Castle, which (saith he) is very incommodious, in that they must carry water thither from *Alexandria's* Cisterns, upon Camellsbacks. 4. *Pelusium*, now called *Damiata*, and seated near the Mediterranean Sea, it was also named *Eliopolis*, of the Prince *Ely*, or *Aly*, who had environed it with three Walls; (but one thinks it to be that now called *Teneze*) This key of *Egypt*, (as *Suidas* calls it) was more then once besieged by Christian Armies, in the time of that called the *Holy war*; The most remarkable whereof was the eighteen Moneths siege of *John de Brenne* (the entituled King of *Jerusalem*) with the *European Princes* in 1220, concerning the mortality of whose besieged, through raging Plague and Famine, and the unexpected seizure thereof, (by two venturous souldiers scaling the Walls, as admiring the peoples silence) ye may read at large in the *Turkish History*. Besides these Cities, are two others, said to be almost as big as *Caire*; also *Thebes*, which the Tyrant *Busrus* builded, 17 miles in compasse, and having a hundred Gates; *Arfino*, or the City of Crocodiles; now *Sues*, and almost abandoned, though in the *Ptolemies* time, a Haven Town of great commerce; yet the Turks building their Gallies at *Caire*, bring them, when taken in pieces, on Camells backs. Here is is also *Bubastis*, where *Diana* was worshipped. *Nicopolis*, now called *Mansa*. *Heliopolis*, now *Bethsanie*, and of which *Poripharah* was Priest, whose daughter *Asenath*, *Pharaoh* gave to *Joseph* in marriage, and *Canopus*, where was *Osirus* his chief Temple; four of these Cities, to wit, *Alexandria*, *Pelusium*, *Bubastis*, and *Heliopolis*, are known by other names in *Ezechiel* the thirtieth, as *No*, *Phisebeth*, *Shin*, and *Aven*. The ancient *Egyptians* were said to be the first inventors of the Mathematicall Sciences; Great Magicians, and Astrologers being yet of a dextrous wit, Merry, great Singers, and sociable companions; but somewhat stultish, and given to Riot and Luxury, neither do they live long in regard of the great heat (for they lye in the same climate with *Barbary*) seldome attayning 60 years; yet are they not black, but tawny and brown. Two of the chief Monuments of *Egypt*, were first, the *Piramides*, in regard of whose wonderfull Masses of stone, the antient works of the *Romans* were of small moment; they begin to be seen forty miles off. They stand in a Desert place, four miles from *Caire*, about three stones cast from *Nile*, the biggest whereof, (built by *Cheops*) is three hundred paces square (that is) 1200 round, at the foot, whose height may be 600 foot, though some have reported it was 1000. the stones are three foot long, and two foot broad, and of the same thickestesse; and although the top seems to be sharp, for so much the word *Pyramis* doth imply) yet is it there

Q9999 2

215

21. foot square. *Josephus* reports the *Israelites* to make Bricks partly for such *Pyramids*. Secondly, *Psammiticus* his *Labarintus* which he built, containing 1000 houses and twelve Palaces within one Wall, whose building was most under the Earth; no wood nor cement being employed in that Marble Fabrick. The Chamber doors in opening founded as Thunder, and though there was but one passage into it, which was of white Marble, with stately Pillars, and most curious works of Imagery; yet having a multitude of turnings, and returnings within, it was even inviolable to one that was unacquainted. This stood on *Nile's* banks towards *Alexandria*. The *Egyptians* also made Paper of the sedge weeds *Papyrus*, which growth on the banks of *NILE*, whereby *Ptolemy Philadelphus* the more easily made up his Library of 700000 Volumes at *Alexandria*, causing likewise the 72 Interpreters to translate the Bible. The Priests also, who in time of ancient heathenism, were honoured as their Kings, expressed all their conceits by Hieroglyphicks; or the shapes of things in the Creation. For eternally painting the Sun and Moon; for a year, a Snake with his tayl in mouth; to shew an endless circle of years. For integrity, fire and water, because they are pure, and purifie other things, &c. The Red Sea is on the East of Egypt; so called from the red colour of the sands: also *Sinus Arabicus*, or the *Arabian* gulph, being 1600 miles long: thorow which *India's* and *Arabia's* spices were brought to *Alexandria*, and so dispersed throughout all parts by the *Venetians*. It is also named the *Erythraean* Sea, as much as red, nigh which, the Sybill called *Erythraea*, dwelt: for there were 10 of them, of whom *Cumana* is affirmed to have written the 9 books of the Sybills: which being burned by one *Stilico*, those Prophecies now extant, are onely drawn out of others writings wherein they were quoted: Now they manifestly foretold of Christ's Name, Birth, Death and Kingdom, and somewhat of Antichrist's destruction. Before we come to the quality, riches, and Religion of this Country, we will make mention of *Cyrene*, anciently named *Pentapolitana*, from its five Cities; (for it is reckoned a part of Egypt, and seems to me, that which modern Writers call *Arabia Troglodytica*) which hath *Tunis* on the West, and *Egypt* on the East. Its chief Cities are now *Fesfan*, *Barca*, from whence the Country is called *Barca Atarmarica*, and *Cyrene*, which once striving with *Carthage* for greatness and extent of bounds, two men of each side were appointed to end the Controversie, by coming toward each other's City; for where they met, was to be the boundaries: But the *Phileni* of *Carthage* getting far into *Cyrenia* before the other met them, they (enraged) killed them because they would not depart their Country: which occasioned the *Carthaginians* (in honour of them) to raise the *Ara Philenorum*, or Altars of the *Philenians* in *Cyrene's* Borders. Here stood also the Oracle of *Jupiter-Hammon*, whose Temple, when *Cambyses* King of Persia (in his Conquest of Egypt) would (by his Army) overthrow: they were (in the way) smothered

thered with the light sands of this Country, although 500000 men. Although this people were rude and theevish, yet *Arifippus* the Philosopher, *Erastobates* the Mathematician, and *Callimachus* the Poet, were born here; as also *Simon* of *Cyrene*, who was forced to carry the Croffe on which Christ suffered. Some call the chief Towns hercof by another name, as *Grondall* or *Corandall*, having an indifferent good Port. *Alcofer* or *Chazair*, which some take for *Berenice*, one of the five ancient Cities; and where is (by the Mountain's opening) passage for fruits brought out of *Ethiopia* the Upper. *Suaquen* is the name of another, which *Ortelius* thinks to be the *Ptolemais* of *Adela*; near which, is a very good Port: and where is also commonly a Turkish *Bassa*, who commands the Country. Even in the head of the *Arabian* gulph stands *Suez*, which some take for *Arifinoe* (one of the five ancient Cities of *Cyrene*); others for *Potidia*; and some for *Hero* or *Heros*, which in the *Ptolemies* and the *Romans* time, very much flourished for *Indian* and *Arabian* Merchandize, transported thence into *Egypt* by *Caire* and *Alexandria*; but although the Turk hath used all means to people it, yet is it not much inhabited, nor of any great traffique, by reason of the great difficulty of all things. *Egypt* is an ancient Kingdom; for there is a Catalogue made of 300 Kings, save eight, who reigned before *Amasis* in 17 *Dynasties*; of whom *Osiris* is onely to be mentioned, who with his successors were called *Pharaohs*, and in whose time *Abraham* is thought to have gone down into *Egypt*. But of the 18th *Dynastie* or Lordship of great power, there were 16 Kings, *Amasis* being the first, and beginning his reign in the year of the World, 3242. *Menophis* or *Miris* being the last. Of the 19th *Dynastie* were onely five, who were called the *Latti*: *Zetm* was the first, in the year 2590; and *Thworis* the last: two of which five, to wit, *Amenophis* and *Sesoftris* or *Vexores*, are of fame. The 20th *Dynastie* remained 177 years under the *Diopolitane* Princes: and of the 21 *Dynastie* were 18 Kings, the first of whom was *Smendes*, beginning to reign in the year 2961, and called in Scripture *Sesac*: the 15th was *Pharaoh Neco*, who slew *Josiah* at the battle of *Megiddo*: and *Psammetites* or *Psammiticus* was the last, in whose dayes *Cambyses* (as was said in Persia, subdued Egypt under his Empire: from which it revolted in *Darius Nothus* his time the 6th Persian King, they choosing one of their own called *Amerikeus*, in 3558: the sixth from whom, was *Nectanebos* the second; in the 18th year of whose reign, *Ochus* the 3th Persian Emperour recovered it again. But *Alexander* vanquishing *Darius*, he won Egypt without blood; after whose death, *Ptolemy* the son of *Lagi* sharing this Country, all the following Kings were named *Ptolemies*: of whom there were 12, *Lagi* being the first, and beginning his reign in the year of the World 3641, and called in *Daniel* the King of the South. *Cleopatra*, a woman exceeding beautifull being the last, who (being in love with *Marcus Antonius*, killed her self to avoid leading thorow *Rome* in triumph: After whose death it

was

was made a Roman Province, and was as warily looked to, as highly prized: no Senator but onely a Gentleman of *Rome* being Governour. The Roman Empire being divided, this Country was subject to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperour, till the Egyptians being overburthened, craved the *Saracen's* aid who made them Tributaries unto *Haumer* the third Caliph or Saracenicall Pope of *Babylon* or *Bagdet*; the Grecian Garrisons being first expelled: who afterwards choosing a Caliph out of their own people, there were two, one at *Bagdet*, to whom the *Asian*; and another at *Caire*, to whom the *European* and *African Saracens* submitted. The first Egyptian Caliph was *Achmades*, beginning to rule in the year of Christ 870; the 15th and last being *Elphatiz*, (although there be one, who addeth seven others) who sending to *Noradine* the Turkish King of *Damasco* for aid against *Almericus* King of *Jerusalem*, he sent him valiant *Sarracon*, who, after clearing Egypt of *Almericus* his forces, made himself King, and to confirm his estate, dathed out *Elphatiz* his brais with his horseman's mace, and rooting out all his kinn, as we read in the Turkish history. Of these Turkish Kings were five; *Sarracon* the first, beginning his unjust reign in 1153. *Melechsal* the last, who (going with *Lewis* the 9th of *France* towards *Damietta*, when he had vanquished him) was slain by the *Mamelucks*, slaves whom he bought and bred up for Souldiers, to supply the deficiency of the lost Egyptians: they came from *Celebis* and *Georgia*, and were commonly called *Circassians*: they also set up *Turquimenus*, a *Mameluck*, in *Melechsal's* room, of which *Mameluck Sultans*, there were 12, *Turquimenus*, the first, beginning his rule in 1250, (who although he released King *Lewis*, is said not to have performed half his conditions of peace with him made) *Tonombeim*, the last, who being overcome by *Selimus* the first in 1517, Egypt was made a Turkish Province, as it still remaineth. The Country is low, plain, and not mountainous; wherefore they have built their Villages (though far from *Nile*) in high places, to avoid *Nile's* overflowing, which makes Egypt exceeding fruitful; and for want whereof, the dearth is very great; (for they have no rain, as is read in *Zech*, 14. v. 18; or if it by chance to have any, it is said to turn to divers inconveniences, as sores, &c.) it beginning to swell about June 17, and continuing 40 dayes, (and falling the like time) which is said to happen when *Ethiopia* hath most rain, especially in the farther Mountains. The Greek letters of this river's name containing in them, all the dayes of the year; (for *N* stands for 50, *α* for 5, *Ι* for 10, *Δ* for 30, *ο* for 70, *Σ* for 200, which make 365,) and the manner of whole inundation *Lithgow* undertakes to shew, because he saith many learned men are meerly mistaken about its flowing. He saith, there is a dry pond digged near the river's brink, called *Machab*, wherein stands a pillar as high as this ditch is deep, that is, 18 cubits: whereby they know the river's increasing (and so the plenty or scarcity of things the year following) after this manner: between the river and this pond are six passages

passages digged thorow the bank, where when the river begins to swell, it falls down thorow the lowest passage into the pond; (and then come forth certain Priests call'd *Darushebes*, accompanied with 100 Janizaries, pitching their Tents about this Quadrangled pit. In all which time of the inundation, they make great feasting, rare solemnities, with dancing, singing, touching of Kettle-Drums, sounding of Trumpets, and other ostentations of joy. As the water grows in the river, so also (now) upon the Pillar, which is marked from bottom to top, with Braises, handfuls, a foot, a span, and an inch. If the water rise but to 10 braises, it presageth, there will be great dearth, Pestilence and famine: If to 12 Cubits, the year will be indifferent: if to 15 Braises, then plenty and abundance: if to 18, then the whole Country is in danger to be drowned and destroyed. Also, from the body of *Nile*, there are (saith he) about 3000 channels drawn thorow the plain, on which passing Ditches are all the Boroughs and Towns builded; and through which channels, the river spreads it self throughout all the Kingdom: which when scowred of filth and Worms, and the water become clear, every house opening their Cistern window, receiveth as much water as will suffice them till the next inundation: Neither doth ever the River flow any where above the banks; for if it should, it would overwhelm the whole Kingdom. All which Channels here or there, do make intercourse for their streams again, to the body and branches of *Nilus*; so that he calls them *Social* tools, who hold, that it overfloweth the whole face of the Land; for then I pray you (saith he) what would become of their houses, Bestials, Corn, and Fruits; for the nature of violent streams do ever deface, transplant, and destroy all that they debord upon, leaving slime, mud, and sand behind their breaches; and therefore such inundoing cannot be called cherishings. Yet *Ovid* sang thus of *Nile*,

*Namq; ubi deseruit, &c.*

*For when the seven-mouth'd Nile the fields forsakes,  
Whose Rivers to th' old belly them betakes:  
The tillers many living creatures find,  
Th' turn'd up muddie clods that's left behind.*

Now here the Poet indeed affirms muddy clods to be left behind, and (which is strange) very many live creatures therein found: but this overflowing may seem by his words, to be the channel's watering the Country by a moderate overflowing, and not the main body or belly of *Nile* drowning all like a Sea: and whereas he calls it *Seven-mouth'd Nile*; although some will have seven mouthes therein, (and others nine) yet the Moderns assure there are but 3 or 4, two of whom, report what they have seen; for it divides it self into 4 branches, four miles from *Caire*, two whereof make the two chief and Navigable mouthes of *Damietta* and

and *Rosetta*; yet when it overflows, many brooks (or channels, into which it is divided) are Navigable. There are abundance of venomous creatures bred (also) in this river, as Crocodiles, Scorpions, Water-Snakes, grievous misshapen worms, and other monstrous things, who do oft annoy the Inhabitants, and those who traffique on the water, yet it breeds likewise very excellent fish, and is wonderful fruitfull therein. It is also reported to be almost 3000 miles long, and said to have its beginning under the Equinoctial line from the Mountains of the Moon; but more truly from the *Zemurian* Lake in the more inward *Ethiopia*, and in a place of the outward *Ethiopian* Alps called *Catadupa*. Nile's water is said to be marvellous sweet above all others, the cause whereof is the extream force of the Sun beating alwayes on it, and making it the lighter, purer, and simpler; as also his long course arrousing so many soiles. *Egypt* is not subje& to Earthquakes, and is so fertile for all necessities for man's life, that some Antients have called it, *The Store-house of the Earth*. It was likewise called when the Romans had it, *Horreum Romanum*, or the Roman Granerico Barn. It abounds with all sorts of grain and pulses, good pastures, and abundance of Olive-Trees, and with herbs good to eat, that they may the more easily forbear Corn; there is also in the Western part of Lower *Egypt* store of Cotton and Sugar. Some report, there is very good Wine in divers places, keeping very long, as near the Lake *Meotides*. But another saith, it produceth no Wines; for these Mahometanical Moors observing strictly the law of their Alcoran, will neither plant, nor suffer Vines to be planted, accounting it a deadly sin to drink Wine. But for Coffea, and Sherpe, which are composed Liquors, he saith, they drink enough. Palm-trees also wonderful high, do grow throughout all *Egypt*; so great Trees, having been said to be seen coming out of one body. Their gardens are replenished with Siccamores, Cassia, Pomegranates, Oranges and Tamaris, the greatest part whereof are exceeding high, and the Siccamores exceeding green. The garden of their *Balsamo* lyeth near the South side of *Caire*, six miles in compasse; the Tree being but of three foot high, alwayes green of colour, with a broad three-pointed leaf; and being cut into the body, and branches thrice a year, it yields a red water dropping into earthen vessels, which is the natural Balsom: Not far from which Garden in a sandy Desert, is the place called *Mommeis*: which are a multitude of Caves cut out of a Rock, wherein most mens Corpes of *Caire* are interred: which remain alwayes unputrified, nor yielding a stinking smell: experiments whereof are, by Merchants bringing whole bodies hands, &c. from thence, which makes the Apothecarie's Mummia, whose colour is very black, and the flesh clung to the bones. Here is a shrub called *Alcana*, whose leaves being yellow when dried, the women in the Turk's Country die their hands and feet, with a part of their hair. There is great store of smelling flowers; yet *Plinie* affirms, they do not commonly smell very well, through the fogginess

fogginess of the ayr, from the river Nile. Besides hurtful beasts, it breeds also a great number of tame cattel, as Bugles, Oxen, Camels, Horses, Asses, Goats, and Sheep: all which grow very great; but the sheep are exceeding great and fat, whose Wooll is black, and their thick tails hanging unto the ground.

Here are many Fowl (for *Egypt* is very Moorish in Winter) especially Storks; wherewith in some places the fields are even covered: and who devour the abundance of Frogs which are here bred. There are also many Camelions found among the shrubs, which (saith the Author) live not of the wind as many have written; yet will they continue a whole year without eating any sustenance. Hens (are said) not to hatch their Chickens here; but they do it by the heat of Furnaces. *Egypt* hath alwayes abounded with Mettalls, chiefly near *Ethiopia*; there is likewise the *Anebyl* with many other pretious stones, and such store of *Etites* or the Eagle-stone is found near to *Alexandria*, that they load whole ships therewith. Their Women are very fruitful, having many times three or four children at a birth; neither, as it hath been observed, are the eight-Moneths Children in danger of death as in other places. There are also Lemons, Citrons, Cherries, Figs, and other fruits, as in our Countries. *Cyrene*, or *Arabia Trogloditica*, is sick of *Nunidia*, and *Lybia's* disease, being barren, both of fruits, and water, Sandy, Desert, and little inhabited, for when *Alexander* travelled to the Oracle of *Jupiter Hammon*, he saw neither, Man, Beast, Bird, Tree, nor River. And as for *Suez*, there is no water within two miles about it; but two miles distant they dig it out of a pit, it being saltish and bitterish, and brought upon Camells backs. There is great commerce in *Egypt*, and at *Caire*, with very many Nations; for the Country abounds so, as to sell Silks, Corns, Fruits, Wax, Honey, and the Sovereign Balsome, besides many other commodities of Cotton-wool, Cloath of Gold and Silver: and the best Sattins, Damask, Taffaties, and Gro-grains that are, are here made. Their King's revenues in the *Ptolemies* time were 12000 Talents. The Turk now (what through tyrannical Government, what through the discontinuance of the usual traffique thorow the red Sea, receives onely three millions; one whereof his *Paszier Bassa* hath to support his charge: the other his garrison-Souldiers, &c. the third he Coffers up, being guarded by land to *Constantinople*, he not daring to adventure it by Sea, for fear of the *Florentines*. *Egypt* (where at this day are but few of the right Egyptians remaining) is peopled by Mahometans, outward Christians, and Jews in a small number. Those called Christians, are strangers or Natives. The strangers come thither (especially to *Alexandria* and *Caire*) by reason of traffique; for it is called, as it were, a ladder, by which the treasures of the *Indies* and the East, do passe into *Asia*, *Europe*, and *Africa*. Those born in the Country which have remained since the inundation of *Barbarians* and cruelty of *Saracens*, *Mamelucks* and *Turks*, do not exceed 50000, which dwell dispersed here and there, especially in

*Caire, Mefia, &c.* they are called *Cofites* or *Copties*, and Christians of the girdle, for they are both baptized and circumcised. They also following *Eutyches's* opinion above this 1000 years, admitting but one Nature in Christ, separate themselves from union with others; which schism, the bad Council of *Ephesus* (called, if I mistake not, *Niceum*, or a Council of Robbers) occasioned. Many of them live in *Atina's* Territories, wherein are divers Monasteries; but three of their chiefest Monasteries are, that of *Anthony*, (which is in the *Troglodite's* Country) *Paul*, and *Atachaire*. They obey the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, saying, They have their faith from *Prete-Jean*. They say Masse in the *Chaldean* tongue; reading their Gospel first in *Chaldee*, then in *Arabic*. When the Priest saith, *Peace be with, or given unto you*, the youngest of the assistants going, toucheth the hand of all the assistants at that Masse: and after the consecration so called, they give to every one of the Assistants a little piece of bread.

*But toward the New world turn (my Pen) thy style,  
From the Countries of Danube, Euphrate, and Nile.*

We have briefly viewed the *Old world*, (so called) let us also survey the *New*; New I say, not according to the nature of things, but in respect of men's skillfulness in discovery. That part of the Earth is called the *New world*, which almost by a middle space, is extended between the shoars of *Spain*, and *Africa*, and the utmost part of *India* from the North thorough the Ocean, washing on it on both sides, under the form of two *Peninsulæ*, which *Peninsulæ* or almost Islands, are conjoynd by a slender *Isthmus*, or tract of land, in such a manner, that in what part it lyeth under the *Æquator*, or is not so far from it, it is made narrow. Thence it is again dilated, untill (the figure of a *Pyramide* or *Spire* being stretched forth into the South) it contains the *Magellanic* Strait, or *Narrow Sea*, with other parts yet unknown. And although this continent, be not as yet altogether searched out, yet from those parts which are already known, it may easily be concluded, that this part of the World is greater than the other parts. They fail about it at this day, beside that utmost tract, which looks to the North. Of this new World are also two questions raised; first, Whether it were known to the Antients, or not; But *Keckerman* repeating the probable arguments on both sides, rather gives his judgment on the affirmative. Secondly, Whether it cleave to *Europe* and *Asia*, or whether it be an Island separated from them both? *Chynew* saith, it is not certain whether it be an Island or a Continent; *Frisius* leaves it in doubt: Yet out of the Navigations of *Paulus Venetus*, he saith, it may probably be drawn that it is an Island. Most Geographers vote it to be an Island. But then whereas another difficult question ariseth from this, being granted, to wit, Seeing men were in the beginning created in *Asia*, and living creatures also, were put into *Asia* out of *Noah's Ark*, how should

should both men and other living creatures come into this New World? One *Joseph* of *Costa* disputes thereof in the twentieth Chapter of his first book of the New VWorld; But this I say, that men lose pretious time in disputing, and not believing; and also that if this be now an Island, yet, it might not from the beginning be so, for it both seems to Crosse the very History of the Creation, and also we know, that many Islands have in length of time been made by the washing of the Sea. But why doth any raise a question at all from a thing that is not in it self certainly known? And as for the West side of *America*, if it (saith one) be not a continent with *Tartary*, it is yet disjoyned by a very small straight, as may be perceived in all our Maps and Cards, as also in the Description of these Countries; so that there is into them a very quick and easy passage. Two things also are observed in the discovery hereof, that it was discovered about the very same time wherein Arts and Tongues began to flourish in *Europe*, and also some Doctrines of the *Romane* Church to be purged from their grosse darkness; and that this New VWorld doth in many things profit, and in many things also hurt the Old VWorld, far from the time that it was found, both all things were dearer in the Old, and all greater allurements were afforded unto men, of Luxury and covetousness, but this latter must be imputed unto Man's Corruption. The time of its first descrying was by *Christopher Columbus*, (born at *Nervi* in *Genoa* of *Italy*) in one thousand four hundred ninety two, who considering the Sun's motion, was persuaded, there was another VWorld, which the Sun gave light unto, after its departure from us, and being rejected by the *Genovates*, to whom he first opened his intent in 1486. he sent his brother to motion the business to our *Henry* the seventh, who being taken and detained over long by *Pirats*, *Columbus* made his desires known to the *Spanish* Court, where, at length being furnished with two Ships onely, he is said to have sailed on the Ocean above sixty dayes, and could descry no land; so that the *Spaniards* discontented, as desirous to return, began to mutiny. The *Italian* wary, perceiving the Clouds somewhat clearer than before, thought some inhabited place was nigh. Wherefore, staying their return for three dayes longer; at the end of them, one descryed fire, and straightway after an apparent Country was discerned: which being an Island, *Columbus* in honour of the *Spaniards*, named *HISPANIOLA*, but the Natives called it *HAITIE*. Then discovering *CABA* also, he returned toward *SPAIN*, and after two eminent Navigations more, he died, and was buried at *SEVILLE*, in *SPAIN*. But it is divided into *AMERICA*, and *MAGELLANICA*; the former being denominated from *Americus Vesputius*, who followed *Columbus* afterwards in these attempts, and whose shores have their Bounds and Borders (from the East indeed, whereas it looks towards *Europe*, and *Africa*) the *Atlantick* Ocean; from the West, *Mare* or the Sea *Del Zur*;

the latter (which is that part situated to the South, and the Pole Antartick) being so named from *Ferdinand Magellane*, who first pierced into this part of the world in one thousand five hundred and twenty. *America* is distinguished into two general parts, or *Peninsulas*, one whereof is the more Northern tract, and called *Mexicana*; the other more the Southern, and called *Peruana*. They are two Peninsulas joined by an Isthmus or tongue of land seven leagues long, betwixt *Nombré de Dios*, and *Panama*; for the 12 leagues commonly made betwixt these two places, is through their turnings to find out a more convenient passage. *Mexicana* is the Northern Peninsula or tract, whose circumference is reckoned 16000 miles, and 4000 in length from East to West, the North bounds being not yet known, and contains 10 distinct Provinces or Countries: as, 1. *Florida*, bounded on the East with *Bahamas*, and the Iles of *Lucayas*, or (as one) with the Sea, *Del Norte*, on the West with *Mexico*, on the South with *Cuba* and *Jucatan*, and, as one saith, with *Virginia*: on the North with *New France*; and also as one affirmeth, with *Canada* and *Virginia*. It is 400 miles long, and 80 miles broad; and was discovered by the English under the Conduct of one *Sebastian Cabot* in 1467. But was called *Florida*, by *John Ponce a Spaniard*, who possessed it afterwards in 1527; either because it was a flourishing Country; or for that he came thereunto on the *Spaniard's Pascha Florida*, or Easter-day. It's under the same Parallel with *Mauritania*; (and though a great part of this New World lyeth under the same Parallel with *Ethiopia*, *Lybia*, and *Numidia*, yet are the Inhabitants of a reasonable fair complexion; of which I see no true natural cause rendered, but God's particular will;) its coast is rough and rocky, chiefly against the point called the *Martires*. After *Ponce*, it fell to the *French* in 1562; But the *Spaniards* warred with them so long, till not a man being left, it was again abandoned in 1567. Here are three chief Towns, the one called *Arx Carolina*, or *Charles his Tower*, which the *French* building, the *Spaniard* ruined: and *S. Matthew's* and *S. Helen's*, which the *Spaniard* built: who hath three, and burthree Forts in this Countrey: one whereof, called *S. Augustine*, being taken and burnt by *Drake* in 1586, was again repaired. It is reported, That when *Ferdinando Soto* (a *Spaniard*) would perswade the Natives, that he was the Son of God, and came to teach them the Law: One of them answered, *Not so; for God never bid thee kill and slay us, and work all kind of mischief against us*. This Province hath divers fruits, and many kinds of beasts; it would also bear any grain and fruit, if manured; their Kin here also, have a bunch on their backs like a Camel, and hair like horses. Many *Hermophrodites* are said to be here, whom they put to all druggery. It hath good quantity of gold and silver, which the Inhabitants gathering up in the water, by cutting rivers with little ditches, carry it to the Sea-side to sell, which is also their chief Traffique; likewise *Emeralds*, *Turquoyses*, and *Pearls* have been here found. They are grosse and Pagan Idolaters;

gers;

ters, yet are said to have a belief of the Soul's immortality: But naturally loving war and revenge.

Secondly, *Mexico*, which (denominating half *America*) extends from *Florida* unto the Sea of *California* or *Mare Vermiglio* on the West, and having on the East *Jucatan*, and the Gulph of *Mexico*: on the South *Peruana*, or (as another saith) *Guatemala* and *Jucatan*: the Northern bounds being unknown, it is not certain, whether it be a Continent, or an Island separated from the Old World, it is called *New Spain*, and was very populous, before the *Spaniards*, by tormenting deaths, slew (as they say) no less than six millions in 17 years. It was subdued by *Ferdinand Cortez* in 1518; and contains four noted Regions: 1. *Gallicia Nova* (called formerly by the Inhabitants, *Xilisque*) and where *Nugno de Gusman* built diverse Cities; after that, by taking the City *Xalisco*, he had subdued all the Province: which being watered by the River of *Piasle*; that part which is enclosed by these rivers and *S. Sebastian*, is named *Couliacan*, whose chief City or Town being *Couliacan*: the *Spaniards* planting a Colonie there, it is called *S. Michael*: then coming to the Red Sea, or of *California* by *Sibole* and *Grenado*, hitherto the *Spaniards* trade, and the Country is inhabited. One *Francis Coronado* came to *Sibole* in 1579, but returned with his Soldiers to *Mexico*, as finding little profit. This Province is mostly rough and stonie; yet there is that, fit to bear of all fruits; and they do catch much fish in the Sea, having also many wild beasts in their Forrests: those on the Sea-shoar living of the ore; and the inland Savages, on fish, taken by hunting. Some say likewise, they do sometimes eat man's flesh. They go for the most part naked, and acknowledging no Ruler, till the *Spaniards* brought them under Dominion. 2. *Mechouacan* or *Mechuacan* about 50 leagues from the Province of *Mexico*, and having 240 miles in compass, three of whose chief Towns are *Sinsose*, large and populous, where their Kings made their abode. *Pascuar*, where the Bishop (that is, I suppose, of the *Spaniards*) first remained; and *Valadolid* or *Valladolid*, where he is now said to make his residence. The language of this people, is both copious, figurative, and artificial, and preferred by those who understand it, before *Latine*: they are all tall, strong, and active of body, and witty, as appears by divers things coming from thence: also of a good complexion, and long life. Here is a swift stream which alway turning as it goes, and receiving 12 rivers into it, enters into the Cephalique Sea of 150 miles about, from whence going, it falls suddenly into a very deep Valley, and continuing its winding course, enters with abundance of waters (ingendring Crocodiles) into the South Sea: and a little backward is *Sacatule*, within which is *Colima*, and a Town called the *Purification*: the three Ports of *James*, *Anthony*, and of the *Nativity* or *Jago*, being upon the Sea-shoar. It is said to be one of the best Countries of *New Spain*, bearing abundance of Cotton, Cutchanceal, Mulberry-Trees, Silk, store of gold and silver, (though coarse) much Wax, Honey, Amber that



that is black, Salt, and Fith: whence (the name hereof implying a place of fishing) it was so called. Divers fruits are said to ripen here twice a year: and one *Francis*, of 4 quarts of grain sown, reaped 600. 3. *Mexico*, or the Province of *Tremistlan*, said not onely to be both the greatest and most pleasing and fertile of these 4 Provinces; but (as *Acosta* thinketh) one of the best in the World. It takes its name from the chief City *Mexico*, being an hundred degrees from the *Fortunate Islands*; and was taken by one *Cortez*, in 1521, leading to this enterprise 200000 or 100000 *Indians*. It contains about 6000 *Spanish* Families, but 60000 of *Indians*, dwelling in the Suburbs. It's seated in a great Plain about 7 miles in circuit, and encompassed with high Mountains, on which is Snow continually. There are also in the Plain two Lakes, one fresh, the other salt; on the banks whereof, not onely is *Mexico*, but there were almost 50 good Towns, *Tescuto*, yielding little to *Mexico*: and on the bank of *Mexico's* Lake, which is 50 miles about, stand pleasant Towns, and divers houses, 50000 *Wherries* being still (they say) plying in the Lake. This City is six miles in compasse, and is the seat of the *Spanish* Viceroy, and of an Arch-bishop; They having therein both a Mint, Printing, and an University. Moreover there is *Angas*, a Town with a very fertile soil; *Tulle*, *Tuluca*, *Taxasco*, a great Town, yet the houses stand scattering for fear of fire; which had, say some, 25000 houses, of Lime, and fat Earth, *Zerpoloon*, that is called the true; *Crosseby* which places runs the River *Alu-rada*, and entering into the Sea by three mouths. Lastly, *Matthan*, a great In-land-Town. The Gulf of *Mexico* is nigh the City so called, 900 miles about, of a heady and swift current, that ships cannot passe directly; and hath two Ports, one between the farthest part of *Jucatan*, and the Isle of *Cuba*, where the Tide violently entreth, the other betwixt *Cuba*, and the utmost point of *Florida*, where it forcibly goeth forth. The Sea hath but onely two safe Ports, *Havana*, on the North, *John de Lua* on the South, which the *Spaniards* have strongly fortified; for the Seas are very tempestuous. The *Mexicans* are full of courage, also industrious, and witty, sober, and given to traffick; feeding many Silk-Worms, and making many toys of wood and feathers. The Country is likewise exceeding temperate, having many Mulberry Trees; and do now feed many Horses, Asses, and Flocks of Sheep, having also some Mines. And victuals there doth so abound, that 28 pound of Beef is worth but three pence, and a Hog one shilling, or 1s. & 6d. Out of the fresh Lake, they draw an herb, cut every Moon, and worth to the Inhabitants 20000 Crowns yearly. New Spain also traffiques with *China*; it vents likewise in Woollen Cloath, Silks, Linnen Cloath, and Tables to *Peru*, for a million of crowns. Finally, if *Peru* (saith one) exceeds this Country in abundance of gold and silver, which is very fine; yet this is richer than *Peru* in fruits and Cattle, and exceeds it in Arts. The *Indians* pay to the King and feudetaries 6s. for a head, and nothing else.

else. Their Kings succeeded not by right of blood, but by election: whom they held lawful to kill, if they were reputed cowards; for they used slings and arrows in their wars. They were seven Tribes in all, ruling in an Aristocracy or Government of the Nobles and chief men, untill that the mightiest Tribe chose a King, to whom they all submitted: of these Kings, we find ten mentioned, *Itzilatilli* being the first, *Quabutimac* the last, yet they say *Iz-coatl* the 4th King brought the six Tribes under the *Mexican* Kings. The two last were vanquished by *Cortez* as aforesaid, whose number of *Indians* (besides his 900 *Spaniards*, &c.) which he employd therein, were most of the City and Territory of *Tlascalan*, never good friends to the *Mexicans*: wherefore, the *Spaniards* have granted divers immunities to the said City *Tlascalan*. And to conclude, the *Mexicans* since they received the *Spaniards* baptism, (and so their religion) they have accustomed themselves for the most part, to the *Spanish* fashions. 4. *Gastean* or *Gustachan*, so called from the Captains of *Cortez*, and also the river of *Panuco*; but before these Captains subdued it, *Francis Garza* had 400 of his men slain by the barbarous people, who sacrificing and eating some of them, hanged their dried skins in their Idol-Temples. There is a place called *Zimatatao*, where, at the foot of a Mountain, are two fountains, one of black pitch, and the other of red, very hot; as also in the Isle of *wolves* near *Lima* is a fountain of Bitumen or slime like Pitch: and another at *S. Helen's* point, (in which Province, although the *Spaniards* have a Fort at the Cape, yet the *French* have planted Colonies therein) wherewith they calk their ships exceeding well. (Also there is in the Country of *Mexico* (but whether in this Province I wist not) the Mountain *Propochampeche*, of the same burning nature with *Aetna* and *Vesuvius*). The two Cities here are, 1. *Tlascalan*, yielding precedence onely to *Mexico* in all these parts; and is seated in the pleasantest place of all the Country, (although *Gustachan* be said to be very poor in the natural Commodities of the soyl) being also rich and populous, and governed under the King of *Spain's* protection in form of a Common-wealth. 2. *Villerich*, or the Rich Town: so called, for that it is a Port through which all Traffique betwixt Old and New Spain doth passe; one *Don Antonie* making also a good way from hence to *Mexico*, the more easily to conduct their merchandize. Yet was it afterwards transported to the Town of *True Crosse* for more Commodity. The two Colonies which the *Spaniards* have here, are called *James of the Valley* and *Panuco*.

The third Province of Northern *America* is *Jucatan*, lying opposite to the Island of *Cuba*, called by the Inhabitants, *Maithan*, or *Maipar*: but the *Spaniards* (*Francis Hernandez de Cordova* discovering it in 1517) named it *Jucatan*, that is, *what say you*; because when they asked the Countre's name, the people not understanding them, answered, *Jucatan*. It is a great Peninsula, being 900 miles about; and the more it advanceth into the Sea, the more



more it enlargeth it self with two Capes; the *Red* being toward the North, and *Cotoque* toward the South: it is also distinguished into, 1. *Jucatan*, having two noted Cities; one whereof for its beauty and greatness they call *Caire*. 2. *Guatemala*, lying betwixt *Jucata* and *Nicaragua*; besides whose Town so called, or of *S. James*, are three others, Colonies of the *Spaniards*; the ayr of which Territory is sweet and pleasant, having Mountains and Valleys yielding store of fruit: and whose Inhabitants (they say) have lost 500000 of their friends by the *Spaniards*'s cruel dealing. 3. *Azamal*, an Isle opposite to *Guatemala*, whose chief Town is *Santa Cruz*, as the Island it self is commonly called. There are many Desarts in *Jucatan*, yet rich in many places in Corn, Fruits, Honey, Wax, Stags, Hares, Geese, and Poultry; it hath no rivers, yet remaining alway fresh, because it being stony two or three foot under ground, little Springs and Brooks flow out. *Guatemala* (among other herbs and fruits) abounds in a Tree whose fruit is like an Almond, but not round, serving the *Indians* for meat, drink, and also for money; 20000 Cacaos being worth 120 Rials or 5. l. in *Guatemala*, and 200 in *Mexico*. There is a Lake in this Country 100 miles long, and 20 broad, &c. The Town through the hill or a Vulcanoe's casting forth flames of fire, at whose foot it was built, which happened in 1540, Decemb. 20. it was transported two miles off; But in 1581, there was such an irruption of fire about two miles from the Town, as if all would have been consumed: and the next day, filling the Valley with abundance of ashes, it almost buried the Town. And the year following, this Vulcanoe's fire running downwards 24 hours space, like a furious torrent, burned rocks and stones, and so heating five streams, that they were not passable: and some write they were dried up. And while this was doing beneath, they heard fearful thunders, seeing flames and lightnings in the ayr, wonderfully terrifying them. The *Jucatan*s are generous and warlike, living longer than them of *New Spain*. They seemed to be more civil than other *Indians*; for they did not eat their enemies taken in war, though they sacrificed them: yea, they abhorred the *Mexicans* for the same: Also the *Spaniards* found a great Town here artificially built of Stone and Lime, with fair Market-places; they had also laws, traffiquing by exchange, without money. And as to Religion, they had fair Temples, many of whom used circumcision: In the much frequenting of whose Temples, and their great Idolatries, they are said to have worshipped the Crosse to obtain rain. And some report, That they told the *Spaniards*, A beautifull man had left with them Cresses for a remembrance, which they found amongst them.

The fourth is *Nicaragua*, lying next to *Mexico* or *New Spain*, toward the South-East, which hath many places well peopled, but they are small. The two best Towns therein are esteemed to be, *Leon*, where they have a Bishop's See; and *New Granada*. They say, the *Spaniards* call this Province (for its pleasantness and fruitfulness)

*Mahomet's*

*Mahomet's Paradise*; yet is it sandy, and so burnt with heat in Summer, that a man can scarce travel by day, but by night. There are in some places, Trees so big, that six men can scarce fathom them: and some trees are of so delicate a nature, that its branches wither as soon as they are toucht. It is as much annoyed with Parrots, as our Countrey is with Crows and Rooks. About 35 miles from *Leon*, there is a Vulcano or fiery hill, whose flames may both be seen far in the night; and also that the hole from whence the fire proceeds, is 250 yards deep, as some have written. These *Nicaraguans* are more White than Olive of complexion, and of a good stature: yet their Country which thus aboundeth in all things, is not great. Before the *Spaniards* made them outwardly Christians, they had a good way of punishment for theft; the thief to be slave to the robbed till he had made satisfaction. But for him that should kill the Cacique or Prince, no punishment was by a law ordained; because they said, such a thing could not happen: Even as *Solon* instituted no law for murderers of Parents; for they thought persons were not so unnatural.

Fifthly, *Quivira*, whose bound from the rest of *Mexicana*, is *Mare Vermiglio*; and which being situated on the West of *America*, is divided into *Cibola*, the Eastern part, which takes its name from the chief City *Cibola* therein: and hath another called *Tontona*, seated on a river of the same name. *Vasquez* Dicoronado subjecting this Province to the Spanish King in 1540, burned *Tinquex* another Town or City thereof: and secondly, *Nova*, or *New Albion*, the Western part, lying just over against *Tartaria*, whence it's thought, the Inhabitants came first into this New World. Sir *Francis Drake* discovering this Country in 1585, and the King thereof willingly submitting himself to Queen *Elizabeth*, he called it, *New Albion*, a name of *Great Britain*; and whose chief Town is so called. Some of these people are said to be Canibals; yet hath *Quivira* a temperate ayr, and plenty of pasture: wherefore they have store of Kine, which are their chiefest riches; whose hides (they say) cover their houses, their flesh yields meat; their bones, bodkins; their sinews, ropes; their maws, bladders; and horns, vessels; their hair, thred; their dung, fire; their blood, drink: and the skins of their Calves, budgets or buckets to draw and keep water. *Vasquez* a *Spaniard*, when he conquered this Country, seeing some ships on the farther Sea, well made, and laden, they conjectured there was traffique from *Cathaya* and *China* thither. And as for *New Albion* in particular, it is said to be pleasant both to eye and palate, as abounding in Fruits. There is reported also, to be a strange kind of Hare, like a Cat in his tail, a Want in his feet, with a bag under his chin, wherein, after his belly is full, he keeps the rest of his provision. These Inhabitants are said to be hospitable; yet worshipping devils, and so given to Witchcraft.

Sixthly, *Virginia*, which hath *Florida* on the South, *Norumbega*

SSSS

on

on the North; the Sea Del Noort on the East; but the Western limit is unknown. The Natives called this Country *Apalchen*; But the English discovering it through Sir *Walter Raleigh's* charges and directions in 1584, in honour of the Maiden-Queen, *Elizabeth*, it was named *Virginia*. There are two Capes on both sides of it, that of *Charles* and *Henry*, and as it were fortified; but one onely entrance into it by Sea, at the mouth of a goodly Bay, two rivers water it; and there are three chief Towns therein, one being *James-Town*. Our English went over divers times to inhabit it; some returning, as not liking the Country, not so much for its barrenness, as for unsuitableness of the Climate: There were a pretty number; then were they not a little diminished, for the barbarous Natives slew 300 by treachery in 1622; but it hath been even yearly inhabited since that, by the English, and divers plantations made, and houses built; so that they have a Government, yet acknowledging *England's* Common-wealth as Supreme; and is very eminent for the Trade of Tobacco there planted: yet the Country affords other things, as Pitch, Tar, Resin, Turpentine, Allom, store of Cedar, Oyl, Grapes, plenty of sweet Gums, Dyes, Timber, Iron, and Copper-Mines: and for the land, (when till'd) it is said, that two acres of some, hath brought forth 400 bushels of Corn; they have also abundance of Maize, likewise Beasts, Fowl, (whereof, as in *Marie-land*, joyning to *Virginia*, and planted also by English) their great and goodly Turkeys have been commended) fish and fruit. The naturall inhabitants have their cloathing in a mantle of Deer-skin, and before their privities, an apron of the same; and are reported usually to paint their bodies with pictures of Serpents, and ugly beasts; worshipping all things, especially things able to do them hurt, as fire, water, thunder, &c. *New-England*, which is accounted the North part of *Virginia*, comes here to be mentioned, which in a short time (in comparison) (though not without difficulties and dangers of Natives) grew up to a flourishing plantation, being now full of good Towns; and for the fruits of the earth, is fitly called another *England*. *Boston* (the name of the chief Town in *Lincolshire*) being their Metropolis. Those who went hence, thither, at the first, were chiefly such as (both Ministers and people) could not conform to our Bishop's ceremonies; but were zealous both in preaching and hearing. I take their civil Government to be a Democracy, or men chose out of the people to govern. And as for their Church-Government, it is a kind of a mixt, between Presbytery and Independency: whether term of time hath not made them colder, and lesse conscientious and tender, than at the beginning, I much question; by God's light and truth, (more clearly breaking forth in this his day) he comes to try the children of men; for besides the opposition which some among themselves have found, for differing in points of Religion from the generality, some that have lately in Gods fear, and from a good intent gone over to them, have found but coorse entertainment.

tainment. But *Old-England* hath not so dealt with the Ministers who have (though not from the necessity that we had here of them) come from thence hither of late years.

Seventhly, *Norumbega*, bounded on the South with *Virginia*, and on the North with *Nova Francia*, or *New France*; whose chief Town named *Norumbega*, the French possesse and inhabit. The people hereof are said to be indifferently civil; yet painting their faces, both male and female, and dance much, sometimes stark naked for agility sake: also much affected to hunting: and whose Wives are loving and chaste to their Husbands. The Ayr being also temperate, and the Countrie's soyl fruitful.

Eighthly, *New France*, discovered by one *Jaques Cartier*, a Frenchman, in 1534; where, besides the Native Inhabitants, some few French remain: for the Province is said to be but barren, and the people barbarous Pagans; yet it hath three chief Towns; two whereof being situate on two rivers, *Canada* and *Sanguinai*, are so called themselves; and *Hochelaga*, of a round form, and environed with three Timber rampiers within each other, two rods high, and sharp at top, having but one gate, shut up with bars and piles, and containing but about 50 great houses. Those who dwell not in the Towns, live in Boats, and lying under them, I suppose, when they sleep. They are also reported to have a conceit of an earthly Paradise after death, thinking they shall first ascend to the Stars, and thence be carried into green Fields, beautified with Trees and Flowers, &c.

Ninthly, *Terra*, or the Land *Corterialis*, so called from a Portuguese named *Gasper Corterialis*, who first found it in 1500, it is also called *Di Laborodora*, and is bounded on the South with the fore-mentioned River *Canada*, and on the North with *Esotiland*. I find not any Towns this people have, but their principall Villages are three, *Santa Maria*, *Bresse*, and *Cabo Marzo*. *Canada* is a great River 900 miles long, 800 whereof are Navigable, and He hath his rise out of the Hill *Hombuedo*, being also, at highest overflowing, said to be 105 miles broad. Some call it *Laurence* his River, and likewise the River of the three Brothers. The Natives are said to be brown, swift, good Archers, but barbarous, living in low Cottages and Caves, (yet they wear Brasle, and Silver Bracelets, as Ornaments) neither seems the Country to be fertile, for that they feed generally on fish.

Tenthly, And Lastly, *Esotiland*, the most Northern tract of *America* as yet discovered, and called by us *New-found-Land*, on whose South-side, lyeth the Land *Corterialis*, and on a North part thereof, *Davis* his Straits, from one *John Davis*, who seeking to find a quicker passage (then before found) by the North of *America*, unto *Cathai*, and *China*, performed it not with such prosperous success as he began it. Yet two others, to wit, *Cabot*, and *Frobisher*, were before him in that design, the one in 1497, the other in 1576, which last, making three Voyages, and bringing home a great deal of Ore, not worth his pains, and some of the Natives; he

S ffff 2

called

called a great Promontory of this Country, *Queen Elizabeths Foreland*; and the adjoining Sea, *Frischbays Straits*. But the shore of this Region was (so far as I find) first descryed by two brothers, sent by *Zichmia* King of *Friseland* not far from *Greenland*; which happened on the other side of these Straits, in 1390. But there was since this, a re-discovery heretof, by some of our *English*, in 1527, since which, it hath been much visited for Fish, called *Newfoundland-Fish*; wherewith the Seas thereof do so abound, that they will, in the Summer-Moneths of fishing for this is a cold Country) take two or three hundred of them in four hours time; whence in our *English* ships (called Sacks) they are carried into other parts, especially into *Spain*; though present War with that Nation, may hinder that Trade. I have heard some common Seamen complain of the hardnesse and barrennesse of this Voyage, as a forerunnement thereof, and that if one fall sick there, while they are at their work of fishing, he is little better respected than a Dog amongst them, &c. For the Merchant and Master, carrying away the profit, the very common men are apt to be cruell to each other, as being earnest to have their voyage made as much as they can. The Natives also fishing on the Ocean in small Leathern Boats, carry home under their Arms what they have caught. This soil is said to be naturally good enough; whose inhabitants fine will have, more Witty, and also judicious than the other *Americans*.

The Southern Peninsula, called *Peruana*, extends from *Nombredios*, and *Panama*, unto the Gulfs of *Uraba* and *Michael*; *Nombredios* standing on the North Sea, and *Panama* on the South, which are the two chief Ports of *Peruana*, because all traffique between *Spain* and *Peru*, must needs passe thereby; The straight of Land, or *Isthmus*, whereby it is tyed to *Alexicana*, is called that of *Darien* but 17 miles broad, and (as others) but twelve; wherefore some have moved to *Spains* Councill, that a Navigable Channell may be cuttherow it to shorten the common Voyages to *China*, and the *Maluco* Islands; but for some reasons, it hath not yet been attempted. This part of *America* is 17000 miles in Circuit; containing five principall Provinces or Countries.

First, *Castella Aurea*, or *Golden Castile*, comprehending the North part of *Peruana*, with part of the *Isthmus*, and was so called for much abundance of Gold. *Nombredios*, and *Panama*, but now mentioned, must have reference unto this Country, as also *Uraba* and *Michaels* Gulfs: which are the extent thereof, and not of the *Peruana*. This is subdivided into four Provinces. 1. *Castella del Oro*, seated in the very *Isthmus*; whose two chief Cities but every one *Duran Niguesi*, are, *Theonyra* according to the *Greek* language, or *Nombredios*, after the *Spanish* (so named for that the said *Durans* having been divers times diuinally crossed, bade his men go on shoar here, In the name of God, which those words do signify) and is on the East; and *Panama* seatuate on the West. Secondly, *Nova* or new *Andalucia*, bounded on the South with

*Terra*

*Peru*, on the North with *Castella del Oro*; two of whose best Cities are *Santa Esprita*, and *Saint Margarets*, once called *Tocota*. Thirdly, *Nova*, or new *Granada*, lying on the South of *Cumana*, or *Cartagena*; whose chief Towns are *Saint Foye*, where is a Court of Justice, and the seat of an Arch-bishop; here are also *Tungia*, *Palma*, *Peru*, *Merida*, and *Saint Christopers*, &c. here is a Sea-Cape, almost triangular; between whose Western Angle called *Arantias* point on the Eastern, called *Salines* point, is the Angle named the Three-points. Fourthly, *Cartagena*, which hath five Cities therein. *Cartagena*, which the Natives called *Calamar*, which Sir *Francis Drake* seizing on, took vast sums of Money, and 240 Pieces of Ordinance in 1585. Also *Abzida*, *Saint Martha*, on the River *Abzida*, having also other names; *New Calet*, and *Venezuela*. They call these three last mentioned countries; *Terra Firma*, or the firm land. Neither *Panama*, nor *Nombredios*, have a good Ayre; but the latter is found the worse of the two, and is commonly called the *Spaniards* Sepulchre. Wherefore the King of *Spain* ordered (in 1584) *Nombredios*, to be transported to a lower place, and to name it *Saint Philip*. *Panama's* Ayre is likewise unwholesome, and it's heat said to be insupportable: Yea, the whole Country of *Golden Castile* is but little inhabited; and that, both for the Ayre's badnesse, proceeding from many dead waters (perhaps like some lakes, that are in *Aethiopia* the upper, of whom *Orid* speaketh; that whosoever drinketh of their waters, either grows mad, or is possessed with a wonderfull heavy drowsinesse) or for the bad ordering or government of the first discoverers, who brought many to their ends, as in other places. And as for its fruitfulness, Maize groweth abundantly, (although wheat doth not ripen there) they have also much Sea-fish, and fish of Rivers; wherein are Crocodiles, some being twenty five foot long. It is observed, that our seeds and plants, become less and worse at *Panama*, and *Nombredios*, (Coleworts and Lettices being thrice sown, becomming nought worth, as even changing their kind) whereas they become better in many parts of New *Spain*, and *Peru*. New *Granada* is environed very strongly with Rocky Mountains, yet is mostly full of pleasing Valleys which bear fruit. Near *Tungia* are Golden Mines, and Emeralds; and nigh the Cape of the three points, are found store of Pearls, growing in the fish of Oysters, and called Unions, because two are seldom found alike, whose price is much fallen, through the great quantity sent thence into *Europe*; and also of the Emeralds, great store of them being drawn not only here, but also at *Portueil*, and about *Maite* in *Peru*.

Secondly, *Guiana*, or *Guinee*, scituated under the *Aequinoctial* line, or, as some have described it, to be five degrees from it, and that (as one suppoeth) towards the South, it hath on the South and East the River *Miragnon*, (named also *Amazone*, from the *Amazones* fabulously reported to have lived here); and *Orellana*, from one so called, who first sailed therein in 1543, it is said to be towards

towards the Sea 200 miles broad, and Navigable 6000 miles on the West, the Mountains of Peru, and on the North, the River *Orenoque*, also called *Rahiana*, from Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, who in 1595, made a full survey of this Country; Ships of Burthen will Sail here one thousand miles, and Pinnaces and Boats almost two thousand. The chief Cities and Towns are *Manao*, called by the Spaniards *Eldorado*, that is, the gilded City, from the abundance of Gold that *Deigo Ordaz* saw therein; this City is so large, that the said *Deigo* is reported to have travelled from Noon that he entered it, all that day, and the next day till night before he could come to the Kings Pallace; it is seated on a Salt Lake 600 miles long. *Winitapora*, *Morequito*, which is a safe Harbour, and *Saint Thome*, built with dirt and sticks, and which occasioned the undoing of Sir *Walter Rawleigh*. The Natives use to dwell in Trees in Winter time for fear of inundations, on which they do Artificially make ranks of building; (they say also it is so in *Golden Castile*, and *Brasile*) for there is store of River, and Fresh waters in every part thereof, so that this Country is reported to be exceeding fruitful, and as green and pleasant to the eye as any in the World. Experience hath and doth find it to be stored with Golden Mines. Whence not onely good Gold, but Elephants Teeth are brought. The People being it seems Black of Colour, whom *ENGLISH* Merchants buy, and sell again as slaves to Work in other Plantations. The Voyage also hither being accounted sickly.

Thirdly, *Brasile*, (so called, from a red wood abundantly there growing) was discovered accidentally, by *Peter Alvares Cabral*, in 1501, and hath on the East the *Vergilian* Sea, on the West the *Andes* or Mountains of Peru, (which are unto *Peruana*, as *Taurus* is to *Asia*) it begins at the river *Maragnon*, and extends to that of *Plata* or of silver. Among the chief places of *Brasile* are, *Pariba*, on this side of *Augustine's* Cape, called also, *The City of Snow*. *Parnabuco*, or *Pernanambuck*, a good Town; whence the *Brasile* wood used in Europe in dying clothes, is with us called *Fernambuck*. Here are also the Towns *Affenso*, and *Anna Equitum*; and *The Bay of all Saints*; which Town is seated on a gulph 9 miles broad at the mouth, and 30 in compass, where Whales do enter and sport themselves; where is also the Governour of the Province, and the Bishop. *Augustine's* Cape hath 8 degrees and a half of height of the South Pole, and is the nearest to *Africk* of any in the New World, not being held above 1000 miles therefrom. The people are most exceeding brutish and barbarous; the greatest part living without law, learning, or religion, nor acknowledging any Prince; they also go generally naked. They are much given to Sooth-saying, and are accounted very great Sorcerers: not loving labour; but affecting idleness, sports, feasts, and dancing; yet they undertake not war to extend their bounds, but for honour, when they think themselves wronged, and follow him therein, whom they hold the most valiant; and eating with follow.

those they take in war: They seem however, to have a pretty understanding, who blaming the Spaniards covetousness in coming from the other World to dig for gold, held up a wedge of it, and cried out, *Behold the God of the Christians*. They sound not *L.F.* nor *R.* in their language: one of them declaring the reason of that to be, because they had neither Law, Faith, nor Rulers among them. The Air of this Country is delicate, and the Country it self pleasant, being full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forreits, and is distinguished into Plains and Hills alway green, with many plants and various creatures unknown to us of Europe: And besides their huge *Brasile* Trees, there is the Plant *Cepiba*, whose bark being cut, sends forth Balm; unto which remedy, the very beasts when they are bitten with Serpents and other beasts, (for the hills are high, craggy, and very barren, and full of ravenous beasts, and poysonous Serpents) have recourse; so that, many of these plants are almost without barque. The Cedar also is an ordinary tree there. The people feed on all kinds of beasts, Apes, Lizards, Serpents, and Rats; and make their bread of the root of an herb as big as Purslain, by first pressing out its deadly juice; then drying it in the Sun, and making meal thereof; also drink of the same meal, like unto Beer. But the greatest riches drawn out of *Brasile*, are very fine Cotton, and excellent Sugars; unto which traffique, the *Portugals* are much given, having built divers places to buy and refine their Sugar, and entertaining many slaves from *Guznee* and *Congo*. Wonderful rich Mines are also said to be some of the finews of this Region.

Fourthly, *Chile*, (so called, of a principall Valley, and which word signifyeth nipping cold) hath for bounds on the North, Peru; on the South, the *Magellane* Straights. In the 30th degree, (for *Chile* extends unto the 27th from the height of 25 and an half, from the South toward the North) is the famous Valley of *Arauco*, whose Inhabitants furiously defended themselves, and maintained their freedom many years. The Metropolitan Town is *St. James*, built on the river *Parais*, in the valley of *Mapoco*, built by the Spaniards; who have divers Colonies here; among which, that of the Imperial is one of the best, which before the war of the *Araucques*, had 300000 men of service, as *Valdivia* had 100000. *Araucana* was one of their fairest Towns, also, which (by a strange earthquake in 1562, overthrowing Mountains, and stopping rivers passages) was much defaced, if not ruined; and was said to ruine 300 leagues along the Sea coast; and renewing again in 1575, it overthrew the Town of *Valdivia*. This Country was discovered by one *Almagro*, but subdued by *Baldivia*; whom the *Chilois* taking prisoner, they as enraged choked him with melted gold. They are very warlike, and of a great stature, yet I cannot say (as one) 11 foot high. This Province hath a river (and some say its rivers are such) running violently by day; but in the night hath no water: for it is fed by snow melting from the mountains, which through night's coldness, congealeth: for the Ayr's piercing

piercing cold (they say) hath caused some unfeelibly to lose their members in the Desarts, or else to fall down dead. *Chile* being without the burning Zone is like to *European* Countries, yielding store of Corn, very good Wines, and all sorts of Fruits that are to be seen in Spain. They have also good pastures, many Oxen & Sheep, and horses: their Summer being our Winter: But the wars with them of *Arauco* (the *Spaniards* deadly enemies) hath made it not to be well peopled; whose Inhabitants that are, are attired in wild beasts and Seals skins, and armed with Bows and Arrows.

Fifthly, *Peru* is bounded on the South with *Chile*, and on the North with Golden *Castile*, and is divided into three parts, Mountains, Plains, and Andes: along the Sea it's plain and low, with many Valleys, and is 1500 miles long, and but 30 or 45 broad. Toward the East are the Andes or two chains of Mountains in view of each other, and are said to run from the *Magellan* strait, where they begin, between *Nombre de Dios* and *Panama*, unto the firm land; called also *Cordeliere*: Westward is *Sierra* or the Mountain, their breadth being not above 60 miles; so that *Peru* is not above 120 miles broad in all; and hath about 50 Valleys, the chief being *Xauxa*, (42 miles long, and 15 broad) with 3 others. This Country taketh its name from the river *Peru*, with which it is likewise bounded on the North side; but the principal Rivers are *Maragnon*, *Guasiachil*, & *Rio di la Plate*; which last is said to be 2000 miles in length, and 150 broad at the mouth. All the Natives are distinguished chiefly by three sorts, whose languages are distinct: and every one contains many other people under them, differing in names. They used to war against each other, till by the victory of *Ginacave*, (whom I take to be *Guaimacapa*, the 5th King of *Peru*, that we have knowledg of) the cause of that contention was taken away: eight Kings we find mentioned, *Ingoraia* being the first, *Amare* the last; which election of a King among them is conjectured, by their own computation, to be in 1280, or somewhat thereabouts: and that, before, their Government was Aristocratical. *Francisco Pizarro* seized on this Kingdom for the Spanish King, so ending the Controversie between *Guascar* and *Atabalipa*, *Guaimacapa*'s sons, who strove for Empire, killing *Guascar*, and vanquishing *Atabalipa* nigh the City *Caximaca*: who after a vast slaughter of his men, continued a prisoner, & treacherously slew him, after they had received from him a house full of pure gold and silver, worth about 10 millions, for the ransom of his life; this was in 1533. *Peru*'s principal Towns or Cities are 8. *Cusco*, being the seat of the Kings of the Nation; beautified (by their command) with Noblemens residing Palaces, and in which is a fair Market-place; in which, two high-ways, straight and levell, and crossing the Country, being 2000 miles long, do thwart one another. Here is *S. Michaels*, which was the first Colonie the *Spaniards* planted here: also *Arequipa*, which being situated on the river *Plata*, is the Haven-Town to *Cusco*: likewise *Portoico*, where (if it may be credited)

credited) the grave-diggers light many times on mens teeth, which are three fingers broad: Then *Lima*, the seat of the Vice-Roy, and the See of an Archbishop: the Town is artificially built, neither is there scarce a private house whereinto water is not conveyed from the River. To speak here of their manners, I shall forbear; onely this, when they conquered any Country, they allotted the first part to the service of their gods, the second to their King's revenues; and the third to the poors relief and maintenance: But as for the Countreys quality, one thing is even to be admired, that in so small a distance as in the breadth of *Peru*, it neither rains, snows, nor thunders in the plains: and on the *Sierra*, the seasons have their course, as in *Europe*, and on the Andes it rains almost all the Winter. The tillage of the Valleys is but a league on either side distant from the rivers; and though it rain not on these plains in Winter; yet the Skie is full of thin mists, whence falls a thin humour, which although it scarce wet the dust, yet makes much for the bringing that to perfection which is sown: also nigh *Lima* these mists do without other water, cause some places to flourish, and to be full of good pastures. There are also some parts of the plains where no rivers being, abundance of Corn groweth, and all kinds of fruit; which must be either from moisture from the Sea, or which rivers put forth, or from their being lost in the sand. *Sierra* abounds in Pastures and Forrests, where do feed a multitude of *Vicagnes*, like Goats, and *Guanacos*, and *Pacos*, which is a kind of *Indian* sheep, who use to bear their burthens. The Andes have great store of divers sorts of Apes and Monkeys, also Parrots. But their herb *Coca* (much esteemed) yields them yearly, at *Potosi*, whither it is sent, 500000 Crowns: in summe, the soyl, faith one, is luxuriant in all manner of grain, whose Inhabitants are civill, their Cities frequent, and their ayr wholesome: they have also great store of Tobacco, which our *Gerard* the Herbalist calls (I take it) *Hembane of Peru*: But as for gold and silver, it hath more than any Province in *America*: whole Mines (one faith) in some places yield more of these metals, than earth: and besides other Merchandise, they do draw abundance of these metals; yet New Spain hath the other richer merchandizes. Yet *Peru*'s riches does commonly furnish two third parts of all, which come from *America*: and among *Peru*'s treasures, two are most eminent: the one is, the exceeding quantity of silver Mine of *Potosi*: the other, the Mines of *Guanacaelque*, where is found much Quick-silver; the one being discovered in 1545, the other in 1567.

**C**APT VICTORIE, or the Cape of Victory, is accounted the very Pyris or Spear of the *American* Pyramis; and was so called, from the Ship called the *Victory*; in which, some of *Magellanus* his Soldiers did passe, when they first compassed the World. For *Magellanus*, a *Spaniard*, addressed himself to a Voyage in 1520, to find, if it were possible, a nearer cut to the *Adoluc-*

coes; who passing along by this Cape, and so thorow narrow Seas, called, from him, *Magellan's Straights*, arrived at those Moluccoes; but was slain in a battle against the Islanders; yet the Ship named the *Victory*, is said to have returned safely into Spain. So that although Sir *Francis Drake* is said usually, and by *John Lyne*, to be the first who sailed round the World, when he passed thorow these Straights, and thence to the *Molucco* Islands; and then homeward in the East by *Africa*: (wherefore, he gave the Globe of the Earth with this Motto, *Tu pinam circumnavigasti me*, that is, *Thou first hast encompassed me*): Yet it must not sharply be understood, that none had gone round before him; but that never any of fame, because *Magellane* was killed as aforesaid. It is also observable, That *Drake's* Navigation was finished in two years and a halfe time, with great fortune, being begun in 1577. But to come to *Magellanica*, the second general part of the New World: All that is situated to the South and Pole Antartiques is so called from these *Magellan Straights*, which by one, that saith he knew every Creek therein, are said to be three. The first lying 14 leagues within *S. Marie's* Cape, three leagues in length, obbing both violently and swiftly; and whose first fall (for it is not fully half a mile broad) is very dangerous: then after, a Sea eight miles both in breadth and length, is the second strait, a dangerous and unpleasant passage, three leagues long, a mile broad: which opening it self into another Sea, reacheth even to the Cape of *Victory*. The third, properly called *Magellan's Strait*, enters, whose length is 40 leagues, two leagues broad in some, but in other places not half a mile; which way soever a man turneth here, the wind will be surely against him; for on both sides are high Mountains alway covered with snow; whence these counter-winds, beating on all sides, do issue forth. The waters curle is here, likewise, full of turnings and changings: nor any anchorage to be expected, the channel being on the shoar side 200 fathoms. But *Magellanica* is situated beyond the 53d degree from the Equinoctial; so that, that place of *Magellanica* unto which *Magellane* pierced, doth agree to the Elevation of our Pole, saith *Keckerman*; for on the further side of the Straights to the South of *Peru*, *Magellane* found a huge land towards the South Pole, and touched on it again before he came to the *Moluccoes*: since whom, the *Portugals* trading towards *Calecute* and the *East-Indies*, some of them have been driven by tempest so far, as to that now called the South Continent: divers also of sundry Nations have upon occasion touched on it: it is certainly discovered in some places to come up towards the North, to the Tropick of Capricorn: and is conjectured to go Southward as far as to the Pole: the reason is, because none ever perceived the Sea to pass thorow any part thereof; neither hath so much as any great River been discovered to come out of it into the Ocean: so that, if this be so, this lump of earth is as big as *Asia*, *Europe*, *Africa*, and *America* put all together. There are yet reported very few memorable things hereof.

write

write there be very vast Countries and Wildernesces over against the *Moluccoes*; (but no mention of any Inhabitants). *James Chynow* saith, there are five parts numbered (by some) of *Magellanica*, who have followed rather conjectures, than sure experience: these are, 1. *Terra*, or the Land, *Del Fuogo*, or *Feuga*, lying on the South of these Straits, and, saith one, here to fore-thought to be a part of the South unknown Continent; but is now discovered to be an Island, by two *Hollanders*, who Jan. 25. 1615, entered the Strait, which separated it from the South Continent: they called it *Freuntle Mayre* or *Mayre's Strait*, the name of one of the discoverers. It is 28 English miles long, of a fair and equal breadth, where is plenty of good fish, especially Whales and Sea-calves. 2. *Regio Patalia*, or the *Patalian* Country. The third is, *Regio Psittacorum*, or the *Parrets* Country, from the abundance there found. Fourthly, *Regio*, or the Country of *Locals*. Fifthly, *Zenzibar*; however *Keckerman* layes it down for one of his theoremes, that this part of the World is nothing as yet searched out, besides the shoars which are washed with the *Magellanick* strait, that is, saith he, besides the Seay-parts; which notwithstanding, may be those five particular places mentioned. And whereas a great Mathematician hath found fault with some Map-makers, because in describing this Continent, they mention not Cities, Kingdomes, nor Commonwealths here seated, whereof he seemed in words confidently to avouch, that there are many; and that it is as good a Country as almost any in the World, yet he delivered not his grounds, why he gathered it so to be; yet we may think (the premises being granted to be true) that the Creator framed not so huge a Masse, but that he appointed likewise some of mankind to inhabit the same.

But before we mention the *American* Islands, we will take notice of three or four places in South America, which although the *Spaniards* possesse; yet their names seem not to be so frequent among us; as first the Province of *Quito*, 200 miles long, and 100 broad, more cold then hot, though situated under the Equator; Its chief Town is called *Saint Francis*, built in 1534, seated in a Vall'y among Mountains, and is 80 leagues, both from *Saint James's* Town, and *Saint Michael*, they have Summer here from April to November. The Natives are mean of stature, yet are said to be both good for Tillage, and ordering of Cattell, and their Goats have threr, and sometimes five Kids at a time, they have found one Mine of Quicksilver, besides the ordinary Mines, which is yellow, and smelling like Brimstone, when put into the fire. On the East of *Saint Francis* Town, is a country called *Camelle* of the Cinnamon, which differs from the ordinary sort, and whose Tree we shall not here describe; but fruits and beasts of *Europe* (especially fruits, Sugars, and Oranges) do profit in no part of *Peru*, better then in *Quito*; which in 1587, was much ruined by an Earthquake, and amongst others, there is one place which thrusts forth so much fire as it exceeds the noise of Thunder; and

Tttt 2

is

is seen above three hundred miles, whose abundance of Ashes are said sometimes to cover the Country 200 miles about. Secondly, *S. Croix* of the Mount, on a small Mountain, a Town held by the *Spaniards*, and by them built, 400 miles from *Plata*, towards the North of a Country, where there is not a stone so big as a Nut, either on the Land, or within the Water; But before they descend hitherinto, they passe a Mountain betwixt the Rivers *Orillagano*, and *Plata*, which being a branch of the *Andes*, extends to the *Magellane* Strait, whose top is alway covered with Snow and Ice, and seems to be the abole of the *Cerigans*. Here is a River called the River of *Papai*, rising and falling like *Nile*, (but running slow) whereby the plain Country is subject to inundations. Wherefore the *Ants* to defend their Harvest (chiefly at *Papai*) do make many small rampires, about one Cubit high, and twelve or fifteen in Circuit: whither passengers do retire, when the waters surprize them. The Country yields abundance of Rice, Maize, divers fruits and Cotton; but neither *Wheat*, nor *Vine*. They have also many beasts different from ours, but *Vipers*, very great, long, and strange of condition; and many *Oriches*. Their Lakes are full of Fish also; and at *Saint Croix*; (which is strange) is a small River, but two fadome broad, and very shallow, not running above a League (for it is suddenly left in the sand) turning the Town both with waters, and all sorts of good Fish, so that they can take them with their hands, or a pail; and it lasteth from February to May, but afterwards there is but little seen. Amongst the divers barbarous people here, are the *Cerigans* and *Vayracans*, who either alway war with each other, or fight against the *Spaniards*, seeking to their utmost to hinder their passages; they eat mans flesh as we do Mutton. To speak of all their manners, would be here too tyresome; onely I observe that the *Vayrac* language extends it self both to *Brasile*, and *Paraguay* unto the *Guayras*, and their Neighbours Country. So that, as one may in a manner travell thorow the World with the *Latine*, *Arabian*, and *Sclavonian* Tongues; so with the *Vayrac* Tongue, that of *Custo* and *Mexico*, they may in a manner passe over all the New World. Also, that these *Vayrac*, although they say, they are all equal among themselves; yet greater than their neighbours, whom they so despise, that they demanded of a Priest, whether they would baptize them with the same water they did others, if so be they became Christians. Thirdly, *Tucuma*, which is a Realme extending 600 miles betwixt *Brasile*, *Chile*, *S. Croix*, and *Paraguay*, where the *Spaniards* planted five Colonies. 1. *Salta*, the last place of *Papai* standing in a Valley eighty four miles long, and thirty broad; near which is the Valley *Calebioqui*, ninety miles long from North to South, full of Rivers, and courageous people, who fighting divers years with the *Spaniards*, at length, the Prince was (by flattery) made obedient to the *Spaniards*, making himself a Christian, but through bad usage he revolted, till after twenty seven years, one with three hundred *Peruan* Archers, five hundred Hories, and

100 *Spanish* foot, ended that enterprife. 2. *Steco*. 3. *Saint James*, 150 miles from *Steco*, where the Governour and Bishop reside. Fourthly, *Cordoba* in *Spain*s situation, though colder in winter, and more temperate in Summer; it is 180 miles from *Chile*. Fifthly, *St. Michael*. The Country is generally plain, it rains much, the Rivers easily overflowing, and the Winds very violent, *Salta*'s Well yeabounds with fish; a good soyl feeding much Cattle, the Ayre is very temperate, and it wants therein nothing but people, *Steco*'s Territory hath store of Cotton, Corn, Cattle, and Fruit. 4. *Paraguay*, whose Inhabitants dwell on the Confines of *Tucuma*, and take their name from the river along which they dwell. This river is very spacious, over which they passe in boats made hollow of a Tree fitly growing for that purpose, called *Zaine*. Here are 6 Towns, the chief whereof is called *Tray Foy*, or the true faith. The Country was first discovered by the North Sea, by *Sebastian Cabot*, and divers *Spanish* Captains; then by *Diego Roias* and others, by the way of *Peru*.

Coast we a little the *American* Islands, and so draw to a Conclusion. These are either those lying in *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacificque* Sea, or in the *Vergivian* Ocean, or *Mare del Noorte*, so called, from one *Noorte* a Dutch-man, who first thorowly searched it. Those lying in the former Sea, are either the *Insule Latronum*, or the Islands of Robbers, and commonly called *Latrones*, they are two in number, a good distance from the *Moluccoes*; which name, *Magellane*, who discovered them, is said to give them, because the Native Islanders stole away his Cockboat. But faith one, when the *Spaniards* had once found out an ordinary passage from the South Sea, towards the *Moluccoes*, they never ceased to travel that way, and discover more and more, whereby they found out divers Islands not formerly known; as two, a good distance from the *Moluccoes*; which, because they be inhabited by men who not onely steal from each other, but pilfer away all they can from strangers landing thereabouts; they are called *Insule Latronum*, or the Islands of Robbers. Or the *Insule Salomonis*, *Salomo*'s Isles; which are nearer to the *East-Indies*; these are said to be many in number, 18 whereof are worth the minding; and of those, *S. Thome*, *S. Isabella*, and *Gaudalcanall* are the three biggest. *Lope Garcia* discovered these in 1567, and mistaking them for the true Land of *Ophir*, whither *Solomon* sent for gold, he so named them; yet (it seems) he found store of gold to be in them, or else he could not have had a pretence for the same. The Inhabitants are said to go naked, and to be yellowish in colour. Some other Islands also, *Magellane* himself decribed: at which, he landing, as thinking to furnish himself with Victuals and fresh water, in his passage to the *Moluccoes*, found the places wholly barren and uninhabited; wherefore he called the *Insulas*, *Infortunatas*, or Unhappy Islands, as being contrary in quality to the *Canaries*, which are termed, The Fortunate or Happy Islands. Those in the *Vergivian* Sea, which is so called, à *Vergendo*, from bending, are reckoned

reckoned 9 in number: as, 1. *Hispaniola*, called by the Natives *Haitie* and *Quisquaya*; and by the Spaniards, *Hispaniola*, and *S. Domingo*, from the chief Town they have built there. It was (as aforesaid) the first place of the New World that was discovered, and is 500 miles long; the breadth being divers, in the largest place, about 300 miles. Here at *Dominico*, is a President, an Archbishop, and a Court and Seat of Justice, with 5 Monasteries. The Spaniards are said to have murdered 3 millions of her Inhabitants. There are other Towns, as *S. John*, *Port-Royal*, *Port of Plata*, *Canales*, *Xaragua*, with some others which the Spaniards builded not. The late Voyage and design of our English thither, is too too fresh in memory amongst us, by reason of the bad success, and repulse there received. The ayre of this Island is said to be temperate; for all plants brought out of *Spain*, do wonderfully grow and increase there; but Wheat comes better in hilly places: and they report, that roots as well as herbs will ripen and be fit to eat in 16 days. It hath many Havens, and Rivers, especially 4 great rivers coming from the tops of Mountains, which being about the middle of the Island, they run severall wayes. They draw abundance of salt out of the Mountains like Crystal. In the middle of the great Lake *Haquay Gabon*, whose water is salt, is the Island *Guarizanta*, very fit for fishing. The Island also yields gold, and in the *Cabarien* Mountains are said to be Mines exceeding full. There is likewise great abundance of Sugar, Cassia, Ginger, Masticke the wood Aloes, and Cinamon; also they have Azure. Now also they have so many tame beasts, that they transport a multitude of Hides from thence into *Spain*; whereas before the coming of the Spaniards thither, there was but three kinds of four-footed beasts. The Natives go naked, are sloathfull, living only of their fishing: But the Inhabitants have now great traffique, growing rich, since Sugar-canes have been brought thither, whereby they have made Mills and shops. 2. *Cuba*, called also *Ferdinand*, which lyeth on the West of *Hispaniola*: it is 300 leagues long from East to West, and 65 broad, but in many places not 20. Here are six Towns, the principal being that of *S. James*, where a Bishop resides; also there is *Havana*, most frequented of all the Island, it being a safe roade for shipping, and the Staple Town for Merchandise; the other are held not to be very well peopled; But at *Havana* rideth the King of *Spain's* Fleet, till the Easten and the wind do joya to waite them homeward. *S. James* or *Jago*, was so named of *James de Valasco* who built it; both these Towns being also seated on the Northern shoar of the Island. There are many dangerous shelves about it; it is likewise hilly and full of Forrests and Rivers, having many Lakes both fresh and salt. The Natives, before it was discovered, lived all in common, as content with what nature brought forth, delighting also to tame Serpents, (of which there are many here) and went naked as them in *Hispaniola*. The ayre here is said to be temperate: having fine brasse and Mines of gold in the Mountains,

tains, and the gravel of rivers almost all gold, which is yet said to be somewhat drossie. It is reported to abound with Ginger, Cassia, Masticke, the wood Aloes, Cinamon, and Sugar; 15 miles from *Saint James Town*, is a Valley covered naturally with great bowls of stone, which seem as it set for pleasure; and nigh the *Proces Port*, is a Spring casting forth Pitch continually. Thirdly *Jamaica*, or *Saint James* his Island, which hath *Cuba* on the North, *Hispaniola* on the East. It is fifty Leagues, or as one saith, two hundred and eighty miles long, and about twenty five leagues or as another, 70 miles broad. Whether *Columbus* himself discovered it, I will not dispute; but *Didague* his son subdued it to *Spain* in 1509. Its two Towns of note being *Oristagne*, and *Sevill*; in which is a Temple called an Abbey. The Natives were either like, or more cruel then them of *Hispaniola*, and *Cuba*, in their manners. The Ayre is said to be good, the Country fruitful in great numbers of Cattle, by reason of their waters, and pastures. Mines of Gold are said also to be there; their Rivers and Lakes abounding in Fish, and having much Sugar and Cotton. This place is known to have been a retreat for our repulled and diminished men at *Hispaniola*, who are now in possession thereof; yet many men have died since their landing there, but the Country may prove (through time and custome) propitious enough unto our Country men, for many go over, and the Island hath in it self (for fertility) a good commendation. Fourthly, The *Canniballs*, or *Caribe* Islands which are all those stretching out in a double rank from the East, to the South of *Hispaniola*, in view of the main or firm land. Most of them are not inhabited; but of those which are, *Saint Johns* Island is the chief, and is called by the Natives *Boriquen*, lying near *Hispaniola* on the East, and situated North from *Guiana*, of whose length and breadth, I find great difference in relating; some, that it is 300 miles long, and seventy broad; others that it is but fifty miles long, and eighteen broad. It is also said to be divided into two parts; whereof the North hath most plenty of Gold, and the South part of Corn, Fruit, and Cattle; it abounds also in Fish, and they find very good *Gayac*. John Ponce the Spaniard first set foot hereon in 1527. The chief Town is *Saint Johns* where is a very good Haven; then *Port Rico*, which the Earl of *Cumberland* ruined in 1597. Fifthly *Cubagua*; and sixthly *Margarita*; the first lying next to *Saint Johns*, and both situated near *Golden Castile*, and are wanting in Grass, Trees, Corn, and Water. But if it be true, that this people sometimes gladly Exchange a Turne of Wine for a Tun of Water, I think they have great store of that; but they abound in Pearls; whence one is called *Margarita*, that is, a Pearl; It yields especially the Gems called *Unions*, because they always grow in Couples. The Natives of all the *Caribes* are brown coloured, having little Hair, cruell, eating mans flesh, their Arrows are poysoned, and using to go to Sea in little Skiffs of one peece, which they call *Canoes*. Seventhly, *Trinidad*,



*Trinidad*, not far distant from these, which is stored with good Tobacco, called by *Gerard* Tobacco of *Trinidad*. *Columbus* discovered it in his last Voyage, in the year 1497. This Island I take to be about a hundred or two hundred leagues from *Barbadoes*, and whither, about the beginning of our late Wars, some went for liberty of Conscience sake, as thinking here would not be liberty granted; but the Voyage proved not answerable to their expectation, most of whom I think returned to *England*. Eighthly, The *Bacalaos*, which are some Isles seated nigh the land *Corterialis*. These people have a King, whom they are said to reverence by stroking their foreheads, and rubbing their Noses; whom if the King meaneth to grace, as accepting of them, he turneth his head to his left shoulder, as a token of special favour. *Selassian* *Cabot* first discovered these in 1447. Ninthly, The *Bermudas*, called *Summer Islands*, from one Sir *Thomas Summers*, who gave the most exact description of them; But he that gave the first cognizance thereof, was *John Bermudas*; they are in all 400; the biggest whereof is planted with an *English* Colony, and is in form like a half Moon. It is reported to be agreeable to the nature of *Englishmen*, and a very fruitfull place. We must not forget two other known Islands, to wit, *Saint Cristophers*, and the *Barbadoes*; the former being inhabited by *French*, and *English*, and though of no vast greatness yet indifferently good, where is Cotton, and Tobacco, though somewhat heady; they have likewise other fruits, as Oranges, &c. The latter the *English* are sole Masters of, which was taken from the *Spaniard* within this thirty years, and through industry become (according to the bignesse of the place) an eminent Plantation, for Cotton and Brown Sugar: they have also Tobacco, but it is of the worst sort, wherefore they scarce now plant it; also Ginger in good quantity. The chief Town is called *Indian-bridge*, whither Vessels for traffique and otherwise do come; and wherein are shops and handicrafts men, but their houses are built low, by reason of winds called *Hirricanes*; amongst other food, they have much of the fish called *Tortle*; which is a good meat, and being dressed, eat like *Vcal*.

The *Indians* have a convincement (though barbarous) of a God, lifting up their eyes to Heaven in adversity, &c. But their foolish minds being darkened, they had many foolish customs towards the deceased; for those of *Peru*, and the neighbour Countries, holding that men use to eat, drink, and wantonize with women after buriall, did commonly either kill, or bury quick some of the deceased, his best beloved wife and servants, to wait on him in the other world: they also under the figure of Idols of stone, and wood of terrible shaps, worshipped Devills for fear of harm they did or might do them. The Devill being said to speak in divers of these Images, and give answer to their Priests. But the *Mexicans* (besides their Images) would sometimes worship living Idols, as a Prisoner, whom they attiring, and trimming like an Idol, would

would sacrifice, &c. unto him: at length, when the Comedy was ended, and he grown fat in a Cage, they slaying him for sacrifice, made a Feast among themselves. They of *Peru* had some Guacoes or Temples common to the whole Realm, and others private to every Province; But the *Mexicans* exceeded them of *Peru* much in greatness of Temples and ceremonies: whose Priests were divided into the little, greater, greatest of all, which were called *Popes*: they sacrificed in their Temples, every one according to his degree; whose continual exercise was to cast incense on their Idols; at Sun-rising, or Sun-setting, at noon, or at midnight. And besides Priests, there were Monasteries of women: in *Peru* one in every Province, in which were two sorts of women, some young Virgins, others called *Mamacones*, of ripe age, who commanded and instructed the others. The *Mexicans* had also a sort of religious, called the daughters of Penance, not above 13 years of age, and whose profession lasted but a year: who were shut up in chastity, swept the Temple, prepared meat set before the Idol, which his Ministers did eat. The *Peruans* sacrificed whatsoever they had good or goodly to their gods: But the *Mexicans* did not sacrifice any men-children or Virgins, but what they took in war: wherefore, that they might have a great number, they subdued the Town *Tlascala*, most paganly intreating them. Those of *Cusco* counterfeited Supper, as a Sacrament of confederation and union with the Sun, and the *Ingua* or Prince. The *Mexicans* (most remarkably) made an Idol of roasted Maize and Blite seed, mixt with honey, which they carried in procession with merry ceremonies; then stripping the Idol, distributed pieces of the paste to the people, who received them with great reverence, saying, They did eat the flesh and bones of their god. They in *Peru* counterfeited confession, having Priests to hear it, holding it also a great offence to conceal any sin in confession; they went to it in adversity, and when the *Ingua* was sick: But the *Ingua* confessed not his sins to a Priest, but to the Sun, that he might tell them to *Vira coca*; then entering into a running brook, he said, *I have confessed my sins unto the Sun; thou river carry them into the Sea, where they may remain for ever drowned*. They worshipped also three Images of the Sun: naming one the Father, another the Son, the third, the Brother: and of their god of thunder, named *Chucille*, they had three Statues, unto whom they attributed the same names. Likewise as to marriage, those of *S. Croix* of the Mount, hinder marriages in some causes, and dissolve that which is contracted; and in some causes, the joynd, cannot be separated, though it be unlawful. But as for the Government of the New World; since the *Spaniard's* masterdome: there are in all two Vice-royes; the one at *Mexico* in *New Spain*; the other of *Peru*, residing at *Lima*: this last having the greatest authority. There are likewise 5 Sovereign Courts both in *New Spain*, and *Peru*, at 5 severall Towns, unto which both *Spaniards* and *Indians*

V v v v v

dians have quall recourse, and from which none may appeal. Here are likewise four Archbishopricks: one at *St. Domingo*, another at *Mexico*, a third at *Lima*, the fourth at *S. Foy* in the New Realm; the first having three Bishops under him; the second, 10; the third, 9; the fourth also 3. Five sorts of Popish Orders they have also in the New World, of *Francis*, *Dominick*, *Augustine*, *De la Merced*, and *Jesuits*. There are moreover two Inquisitions; the one at *Lima*, the other at *Mexico*. Also two Universities in the same Towns. And it is also observed, that the *Indians* are not admitted to their communion, but after long proof; and with more difficulty at *Peru*, than at *Mexico*: neither do they suffer them commonly to study either Divinity or Philosophy: and seldom admitting them to any Orders, because of their inclination to drunkenness.

FINIS.

## A N

# Alphabetical Table of the Empires, Kingdoms, Provinces, and Commonwealths, contained in this Geographical Description of the World.

A		<i>Assyria.</i> 65, & 75.	<i>Brabant.</i> 15
In EUROPE.		<i>Aria.</i> 70, & 76.	<i>Bologna.</i> 18
ASTURIA.	11	<i>Arachosia.</i> 71	<i>Bohemia.</i> 21
	ib.	<i>Asiatica.</i> 78	<i>Bavaria.</i> ib.
	14	<i>The Amazons.</i> 82	<i>Brandenburg.</i> ib.
	18	<i>Aracham.</i> 86	<i>Bothnia.</i> 24
	21	<i>Ancho.</i> 87	<i>Bexan.</i> 25
Andaluzia.		In AFRICA.	<i>Biolyfero.</i> 26
Aragon.		<i>Argiers.</i> 96	<i>Bulgaria.</i> 28
Arcona.		<i>Azgar.</i> 100	<i>Bosnia.</i> ib.
Alfama High, and Low.		<i>Ethiopia the Upper.</i> 107, & 110	<i>Beotia.</i> 30
Austria.		<i>Angotte.</i> 109	<i>The Baleares.</i> 34
Ae.		<i>Amara.</i> ib.	<i>The British Isles.</i> 35
The Islands Alandes.		<i>Ethiopia the Nether.</i> 111	In ASIA.
Achaia.		<i>Ajan.</i> 117	<i>Bythinia.</i> 37, & 41
Albania.		<i>Abex.</i> ib.	<i>Bengala.</i> 82
Arcadia.		<i>Adel.</i> ib.	<i>Bocan or Balafia.</i> ib.
Argolis.		<i>The African Islands.</i> ib.	<i>Barma.</i> 86
Achaia propria.		<i>The Azoers.</i> 118	<i>Borneo.</i> 92
Achaia.		<i>Egypt.</i> 120	In AFRICA.
Aetolia.		In AMERICA.	<i>Barbary.</i> 93, 94.
Albania.		<i>Acasamil.</i> 136	<i>Bugia.</i> ib.
The Egean Sea.		<i>Nova Andalusia.</i> 140	<i>Benin.</i> 106
In ASIA.		B	<i>Burnum.</i> ib.
<i>Eolia.</i> 37		In EUROPE.	<i>Barnagat.</i> 108
<i>The three Arabia's.</i> ib.		BRITTAIN.	<i>Barris.</i> ib.
<i>Eolia.</i> 40		<i>Biscay.</i> 12	<i>Bamba.</i> 113
<i>Armenia Minor.</i> 42		Vuuuu 2	<i>Batic.</i> ib.
<i>Asia Major.</i> 44		In AMERICA.	<i>Brasile.</i> 142
<i>Armenia Major.</i> 53			<i>The</i>
<i>Arabia.</i> 54			
<i>Azera.</i> ib.			
<i>Asia Minor, or Anatolia.</i> 57			

# An Alphabetical Table.

<i>The Azores Islands.</i> 150	<i>Congo,</i> 112	
<i>The Bermudas Islands</i> 150	<i>Cafaria,</i> 117	In AMERICA.
<i>The Barbadoes.</i> 150	<i>The Canaries,</i> 118	<i>Estotiland,</i> 139
	In AMERICA.	
<b>C</b>		<b>F</b>
In EUROPE.		In EUROPE.
<b>C</b> orduba. 11	<i>Castella Aurea,</i> 140	<b>F</b> rance, 9
<i>Castile.</i> 12	<i>Castella del Oro,</i> 141	<i>Friseland,</i> 15
<i>Catalonia,</i> 13	<i>Cartagena,</i> 141	<i>Flanders,</i> 15
<i>Calabria,</i> 14	<i>Chile,</i> 143	<i>Ferrara,</i> 18, 19
<i>Carinthia,</i> 21	<i>Caput Victoria,</i> 145	<i>Florence,</i> 18
<i>Two Carnioles.</i> 15	<i>St. Croix,</i> 148	<i>Francory,</i> 21
<i>Croatia.</i> 21	<i>Corcora,</i> 149	<i>Fiona,</i> 24
<i>Chios.</i> 32	<i>Cuba,</i> 150	<i>Finland,</i> 18
<i>The Cyclades.</i> 32	<i>The Caribe Islands,</i> 15	
<i>Coos.</i> 32	<i>Cubagna,</i> 15	
<i>Creet.</i> 32	<i>St. Christophers Island,</i> 15	
<i>Cephalenia.</i> 33		
<i>Corfu.</i> 33	<b>D</b>	In ASIA.
<i>Corfica.</i> 34	In EUROPE.	
In ASIA.	<i>D</i> ent, 15	
	<i>Denmark,</i> 23	In AMERICA.
<i>Cilicia,</i> 57	<i>Ducine,</i> 26	
<i>Caria,</i> 57	<i>Dacia,</i> 27	<i>Florida,</i> 131
<i>Cappadocia,</i> 58	<i>Dalmatia,</i> 28	<i>New France,</i> 139
<i>Chaldea,</i> 58	<i>Doris,</i> 30	
<i>Cælofryia,</i> 44		<b>G</b>
<i>Camogena,</i> 44	In ASIA.	In EUROPE.
<i>Cyprus,</i> 62	<i>Drangiana,</i> 70	
<i>Carmania,</i> 69, & 76		<b>G</b> razada, 11
<i>Cathaia,</i> 79	In AFRICA.	<i>Gallicia,</i> 12
<i>Cambata,</i> 81	<i>Ducalia,</i> 98	<i>Montague,</i> 15
<i>Calicut,</i> 84	<i>Damut,</i> 100	<i>Gueldes,</i> 15
<i>Camboye,</i> 86		<i>Geneva,</i> 16
<i>Caucbin China,</i> 87	<b>E</b>	<i>Genoa,</i> 19
<i>Canton,</i> 87	In EUROPE.	<i>Germany the Great,</i> 20
<i>Cansay,</i> 87		<i>Gotland,</i> 24
<i>Chequeam,</i> 87		<i>Greece,</i> 29
		<i>Gallinaria,</i> 35
In AFRICA.	<b>E</b> pirus, 25	<i>Gades,</i> 18
	<i>Elu,</i> 25	
<i>The Country of Constantin,</i> 94	<i>Euboa,</i> 32	In ASIA.
<i>Chauz,</i> 101	<i>The Echinades,</i> 32	
<i>Cano,</i> 106	<i>Ebuifia,</i> 35	<i>Galatia,</i> 37, 42
	In AFRICA.	<i>Galilee,</i> 46
	<i>Ezzabe,</i> 94	<i>Gedrofia,</i> 70, 76

# An Alphabetical Table.

In AFRICA.	I	<i>Lydia.</i> 40
	In EUROPE.	<i>Lycæonia.</i> 43
<i>Guzule,</i> 98		<i>Leucefryia.</i> 15
<i>Guzul,</i> 101		<i>Lycaus.</i> 92
<i>Guinea,</i> 106	<b>I</b>	In AFRICA.
<i>Gusli,</i> 106	<i>Ireland,</i> 7	
<i>Gusly,</i> 106	<i>Julia,</i> 24	<i>Lybia.</i> 93
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>Jugaria,</i> 26	
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>Livris,</i> 29	In AMERICA.
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>The Ionian Islands,</i> 33	<i>The Country of Locah.</i> 147
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>Ithaca,</i> 33	<i>Insule Latronum.</i> 149
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106		
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	In ASIA.	
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106		<b>M</b>
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>Ionia,</i> 37, 39	In EUROPE.
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>India,</i> 41	
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>Judea,</i> 48	<i>M</i> urcia, 12
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>Idumæa,</i> 52	<i>Millane.</i> 14
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>Japon,</i> 90	<i>Manina.</i> 18
<i>Guzaga,</i> 106	<i>The Islands Java,</i> 91	<i>Moravia.</i> 21
		<i>Mifia.</i> 15
<b>H</b>	In AMERICA.	<i>Muscovy.</i> 25
In EUROPE.		<i>Mofaiski.</i> 26
<i>Holland,</i> 15	<i>Jucatan,</i> 135, 136	<i>Melaavia,</i> 27
<i>Helvetia, Gr Swit-</i> 15	<i>St. James,</i> 149	<i>Macedonia.</i> 29, 31
<i>zerland,</i> 17	<i>Infula Infortunata,</i> 151	<i>Migdonia.</i> 15
<i>Hellatia,</i> 21, & 24	<i>Jamaica,</i> 151	<i>Miftenia.</i> 29
<i>Hungary,</i> 22		<i>Megar.</i> 30
	In ASIA.	<i>The Mediterranean Ifle.</i> 33
<i>Hyrcania,</i> 37, 71, & 76		
<i>Honam,</i> 87	<b>L</b>	In ASIA.
	<i>L</i> orrain, 15	
In AFRICA.	<i>The Low-Countries,</i> 15	<i>Both the Myfia's.</i> 37, 40
<i>Nec,</i> 97	<i>or Lower-Germany,</i> 15	<i>Mefopotamia.</i> 65, & 75
<i>Hifcora,</i> 98	<i>Latium, or Campania,</i> 18	<i>Media.</i> 67, 75
<i>Habat,</i> 100	<i>Luca.</i> 18	<i>Mandos.</i> 82
<i>The Hefperides,</i> 119	<i>The Lantgrave of Heflen,</i> 21	<i>Macia.</i> 86
	<i>Lufatia,</i> 24	<i>The Molucces.</i> 92
In AMERICA.	<i>Lapland,</i> 24	
<i>Hispaniola,</i> 31, & 50	<i>Locra,</i> 30	In AFRICA.
	<i>Lemnos,</i> 32	<i>Morocco.</i> 97
	<i>Lesbos,</i> 32	<i>Melli.</i> 106
	<i>Leucadia,</i> 33	<i>Monotapa.</i> 111
	<i>The Ligurian Ifles,</i> 35	<i>Magadafcar.</i> 119
	In ASIA.	
	<i>Lycia,</i> 37, 39	In

## An Alphabetical Table.

In AMERICA.		The Oriental Islands, 90	
<i>M'gellanica,</i>	131	P	
<i>Mexicana,</i>	132	In EUROPE.	
<i>Mexico,</i>	133, 134	Q	
<i>Mechovachan,</i>	ib.	In ASIA.	
N		Q	
In EUROPE.		Kinckeu, 87	
<i>Navarre,</i>	11	Quinsay, ib.	
<i>Naples,</i>	14	In AMERICA.	
<i>The United Provinces or</i>		Quivira, 137	
<i>Netherlands,</i>	15	Quito, 147	
<i>Norway,</i>	24	R	
<i>Novagrad,</i>	26	In EUROPE.	
<i>The Isles of Naples,</i>	35	R	
In ASIA.		Ome, 18	
<i>Pamphilia,</i>	39	Romagnia, ib.	
<i>Both Phrygia's,</i>	41	Raguse, 20	
<i>Pontus,</i>	42	S	
<i>Paphlagonia.</i>	ib.	In EUROPE.	
<i>Pisidia.</i>	43	Scotland, 4	
<i>Phœnicia,</i>	44	Spain, 10	
<i>Palestina,</i>	45	The Isle of Sicily, 14	
<i>Persia,</i>	68	Sardinia, ib.	
<i>Parapomissus.</i>	71	Savoy, 17	
<i>Parthia,</i>	76	Sabina Perugia, 18	
<i>Procopensis,</i>	77	Suevia or Snaube, 21	
<i>Pegus,</i>	86	Stiria, ib.	
<i>Pasquia.</i>	87	Both Saxony's, ib.	
<i>The Islands, Philippina,</i>	92	Silefia, ib.	
In ASIA.		Scania, 23	
<i>Pango,</i>	113	The Island of Seeland, ib.	
<i>Pemba.</i>	ib.	Sweden, 24	
In AFRICA.		Strickfinia, ib.	
O		Smolensko, ib.	
In EUROPE.		Sufdali, ib.	
<i>Overybell,</i>	15	Servia, 28	
<i>Oderkrain,</i>	21	Sclavonia, ib.	
<i>Olympia,</i>	31	Samothracia, 31	
In ASIA.		Salamis, ib.	
<i>The Isle Ormus,</i>	72	The Sporades, ib.	
<i>Olam,</i>	87	Strophades, 33	
<i>Oquiam.</i>	ib.	Sicily, ibid.	
The Oriental Islands, 90		Sardinia, 34	

## An Alphabetical Table.

In <i>ASIA</i> .		<i>Tartaria.</i>	67	<i>westphalia.</i>	
		<i>Tolanchia.</i>	87	<i>walachia.</i>	
<i>propheticia,</i>	45	In <i>AFRICA</i> .		X	
<i>maria.</i>	46				
<i>iana,</i>	69	<i>Tombutum,</i>	106	In <i>ASIA</i> .	
<i>ia,</i>	71	<i>Frigrematon.</i>	108		
<i>ague,</i>	82	<i>The Isle of St. Thomas,</i>		X <i>Anton.</i>	
<i>on,</i>	84		119	<i>Xime,</i>	
<i>am,</i>	87	In <i>AMERICA</i> .		<i>Xicoum.</i>	
<i>may,</i>	ib.				
<i>umatra,</i>	92			In <i>AFRICA</i> .	
In <i>AFRICA</i> .		<i>Terra.</i>	147		
		<i>Tucuma.</i>	148	<i>Xoa.</i>	10
<i>medre.</i>	109	V		Z	
<i>ga.</i>	113	In <i>EUROPE</i> .		In <i>EUROPE</i> .	
<i>nde.</i>	ibid.				
In <i>AMERICA</i> .		V <i>Alentia.</i>	13	Z <i>Ealand,</i>	
		<i>Utrecht.</i>	15	<i>Zuiphen,</i>	
<i>ia.</i>	148	<i>Umbria.</i>	18	<i>Zaccinthus,</i>	
<i>ua.</i>	149	<i>Urbiz.</i>	ib.		
<i>Salomonis.</i>	ib.	<i>Venice.</i>	19		
		<i>Uderkraisn.</i>	21	In <i>ASIA</i> .	
T		<i>Vulodimer.</i>	25		
In <i>EUROPE</i> :		<i>Vorativa.</i>	ib.	<i>Zagathai.</i>	
		<i>Volsko.</i>	26	<i>Zailaa.</i>	
<i>Polodo,</i>	12	<i>Volokde.</i>	ib.		
<i>Tufcany,</i>	18	<i>Wathka.</i>	ib.	In <i>AFRICA</i> .	
<i>ny,</i>	21	<i>The Vulcanian Isles.</i>	35		
<i>ring.</i>	ib.	In <i>AMERICA</i> .		<i>Zair.</i>	113
<i>er.</i>	ib.			<i>Zanzibar,</i>	11
<i>uer.</i>	26	<i>Virginia.</i>	137	<i>Zocotare,</i>	1
<i>ustivania,</i>	27				
<i>staly,</i>	31	W		In <i>AMERICA</i> .	
<i>ace,</i>	ib.	In <i>EUROPE</i> .			
In <i>ASIA</i> .				<i>Zenzibar.</i>	1.
<i>umania,</i>	53	W <i>Ales,</i>	5		
		<i>Wittemberg,</i>	21		

*FINIS.*

A  
Geographically Description  
OF THE  
VVORLD.

DESCRIBING

*Europe, Asia, Africa, and America.*

With all its Kingdoms, Countries, and  
Common-Wealths. Their Situations, Manners of the  
People, Customs, Fashions, Religions, and  
GOVERNMENTS.

TOGETHER,

With many Notable *Historicall* Discourses  
therein contained.

---

---

LONDON,

Printed by John Streater, 1659.

## ERRATA.

PAGE 4. Line 9. for, *Thamis*, read *Thanais*: line 18. for, but, r. but: putting *from* before *its*. p. 6. l. 1. after *Scotland*, r. one of whose Isles *Hethy*, use the Gothish Tongue from the *Normegians*, and l. 3. after *Antients*, r. by reason of its situation. p. 42. l. 2. for, new, r. now. p. 44. l. 9. joyn *Syra*, *Phœnicia*, together, and r. *Syrophœnicia*. p. 49. l. 14. for, 1350, r. 3350. p. 63. l. 39. for, fabulous, r. *Sabulous*. p. 66. l. 13. make *Æthiopia Asiatica* one word, and put a period before *Chaldea*. p. 91. l. 30. after *it*, r. it, pag. 94. l. 1. put a period at outward. p. 94. l. 28. & 29. r. the death of his son *Micipsa*, *Jugurtha Micipsa's* adopted son. p. 97. l. 41. for *Town*, r. *Tower*. p. 102. l. 16. after *Odman*, dele comma. p. 115. l. 19. after *Wine*, puta comma. p. 123. l. 26. after *them*, r. *thither*. p. 128. l. 46. before *whose*, r. *with*. p. 131. l. 41. for *Cuba*, r. *Cuba*. p. 132. l. 20. for 1467, r. 1497. p. 147. l. 15. after *found*, r. or their extraordinary bignesse: p. 153. l. 23. before *Supper*, r. the. p. 169. l. 46. for, the, r. *them*:

*Here place the Map of the World.*



# Geographical Description OF THE VVORLD.

**T**He ancient Geographers; and Poets, Orators, and Historians (who learned the parts of the World's situation from them) have described onely those Lands which they knew, and which they judged habitable. We profess, that many places were to them unknown: and those which they believed were forsaken either through heat or cold, we know are inhabited in many places. There are six general Parts of the World: the *Arbique* or North; *AntarBique* or South; *Europe*, *Africa*, *Asia*, called the old parts, because they were known to the Antients, and *America*, (comprehending under it *Magellanica*) called the New World, because newly discovered within this two hundred years.

To the *Arbique* belong, 1. The Countrey under the North Pole, unknown. 2. *Greenland*, which lying at 80 degrees of Latitude, bears grasse and green herbs, from whence also it took its name. 3. *Newland*. 4. *Iceland*, which is now subject to the King of Denmark. 5. *Nova Zemla*, (which though it be four degrees more Southerly than *Greenland*; yet it is altogether naked, and without pasture, an Island stinking with flesh-devouring beasts) with the *Hyperborean Sea*, and two Narrow Seas. *Waygaz* and *Davis*, whereof the one is more Easterly, the other bending more to the West.

To the *AntarBique* are to be referred those vast Countries, which lying under the South Pole, are longly and largely extended through the cold, temperate, and torrid Zone: where not onely

A a a a

Peter

*Peter Ferdinand a Spaniard* preached; but also are commendable for the constitution of the Ayre and soyl, and largeness of the Countries; equalizing *Europe* and *Africa* taken both together.

But the disposure and order of the other four parts is on this wise; *Asia* is to the East, to which *Africa* is joyned from the South, and partly also to the West. *Europe* is joyned to *Asia* from the West and North. *America*, a little farther toward the West; and lastly, *Magellanica*, directly toward the South. In all parts of the World are to be considered, first, their bounds towards the climates, and so a distinction from other neighbouring parts; after that, their chief accidents: And lastly, their natural portions, to wit, the chief Mountains, Seas and Rivers.

**E**UROPE (which is thought to have taken its name from *Eupa* a Tyrian; whom some make the daughter of *Agenor*; others of *Phoenix*; others, a Nymph of the Ocean, as the Poets in their fables) is reckoned the first among the parts of the World, both because we inhabit it, and some chief Geographers have inhabited therein; also because it is more manured than other parts, and because it is more famous for the warlike deeds of the *Macedonians* and *Romans*. It is partly Northern, partly Western, between the Tropic of *Cancer* and the Pole Arcticque. Its longitude begins from the utmost part of Spain and the Atlantick Ocean, and ends at the River *Thanais*, now called *Asaw*. But that length of Europe is limited by some to 60 degrees, to one of which (passing thorow the midst of Europe) do answer almost 10 German miles. Others have computed Europe's longitude from the River *Thanais* to *Hercules strait*, to continue 760 German miles. But others measure the length thereof by fewer miles, to wit, from the City *Compostella* to *Constantinople*, which is 600 German miles. But from its latitude, that is, from South to North, according to most, is contained onely 44 degrees, beginning from *Sicilie*, where the Elevation of the Pole is 80 degrees, even to that region of the North in which the elevation of the Pole is 80 degrees: so that Europe hath 660 German miles in breadth; and so it is longer than broader. But others extend its breadth to 54 degrees, to wit, from *Sicilie* even to the very North Pole it self. It is also bounded almost on every side with the Sea. From the East which lyeth to *Asia*, it is bounded with the *Ægean* Sea, likewise with the *Euxine* Sea, with *Mæotis* fenne, and the River *Thanais*. From the West it is terminated with the Atlantick strait or narrow Sea. From the South, with the Mediterranean and *Hercules* strait. From the North it is bounded with the *Brittain* Sea; but now others shur up Europe with the utmost bounds of the *Ice* Sea. Europe falls into the 4th and 9th Climate, between 10 and 20 Parallels. It is the least of all parts of the World; yet the most worthy part: which its excellency depends, 1. On the temperature of the ayre. 2. On the fruitfulness of all things. 3. From the endeavour of

villages

Tillage, which is here greater then in others. 4. From its populousness. 5. From the study of Mechanick Arts: for there are more cunning Workmen and Architects in Europe, than in any other part of the World. 6. From the study of liberall Arts; which both in respect of Languages, and also of Disciplines, do more flourish in Europe; so that in no part of the World more famous books are written and set forth, Schools do no where more flourish, than in Europe. Seventhly, From its Empires, which are no where greater and famouler than in EUROPE: and so from its Justice or Right, Discipline or Government, and Laws. Eighthly and lastly, from Christ's Religion, which is no where more frequently and freely preached and professed than there. And *Pliny* long ago said, Europe was the nourisher of the Conquering people of all Nations, not to be compared to *Asia*, and *Africa* in bignesse, but in vertue: It's Countries are partly Continents, partly Pen-insulæ or almost Islands, and Islands. The Countries that are Continents, are Spain, France, Germany, Italy, Sclavonia, Greece, Hungary, Poland, with Lituania, and Borussia, Russia, under which is contained Muscovy, or white Russia. It's Peninsulæ are chiefly Norway, Sweihland, Gotthland. The Islands in the Ocean, are England and Scotland, Ireland. In the Mediterranean Sea, Sicily, Sardinia, Corfica, Crete, at this day called Candy, Majorica Island, and Minorica. Kingdomes in Europe, are chiefly Ten, 1. The Spanish. 2. The English, under which are the Scottish and Irish; now having changed the name of Kingdome into a Protectorship. 3. The Danish, under which is Norway. 4. The Swedish, under which is the Gothish. 5. The Polonian. 6. The Hungarian. 7. The Bohemian. 8. The German. 9. The French. To which may be added the Italian, although (at this day) it fall not under the name of a Kingdome. But the head of Europe was once called Rome toward the West, but Constantinople toward the East; whence some think the *Romane* Emperour sets a twoheaded Eagle in his Arms; to wit, that one may look toward the East, to Constantinople; the other toward the West, to Rome. Tongues throughout Europe are especially three. The Roman with the Italians, French, and Spaniards. The Teutonick, among the Helvetians, Germans, Bavarians, Swedes, Norwegians, Danes, English, and most of the Belgians or Low-Countries. The Sclavonian in Sclavonia, Polonia, Bohemia, Hungary. But all particular Countries have divers Dialects in their own Tongue, and in some places Languages are heard, whereof there is no commerce or agreement with others; as in Britain, Armorica, Nauarre, &c. The Seas of Europe are three. 1. The Ocean. 2. The Mediterranean Sea, which beginning from the outmost part of Spain, about the Islands Gades, is carried from the West, through the South into the North, where afterward it is called the Euxine-Sea, although some may think the Mediterranean to flow from the Euxine-Sea. Lastly, the third Sea of Europe, is the Baltick, which beginning from the Danish Hellespont, and the City Lubeck, is extended

Aaaaa 2

about

about an hundred and fifty Miles between Saxony, Pomerania, Swethland, Borussia, Livonia, and the opposite shores of Denmark, and Finland, even to Wiburg toward the East. The chief Rivers of Europe, are Danubius, which extends it self to 300 German Miles, and rising six Miles above Tubinge, receiving fixty small Rivers into it, pourses forth it self through Germany, Hungary, Bulgaria, Servia, Thrace, with seven Mouths into the Euxine Sea. Another River is Rhene (separating France from Germany): after that follows Albis, Ikula, Boryphenes, Thamis. The principall Mountains in Europe, are the Alps, which seporate Germany, and Spain, from Italy; then follow the Pyrenean Mountains, which seporate France from Spain, likewise the Carpathian Mountains. And let these things suffice of Europe in generall: The scituation, Riches, and commodities of whose severall Countries, together with their Religion, I shall (for brevity sake) but onely name.

**BRITAIN** (which was once called *Albion*, not so much from the fabulous reports of the Grecians, from *Albion* the son of Neptune; but according to the Latines, *ab albis rupibus*, its white rocks seen on the shoar) is, though not the King, yet Queen of Islands, being the very biggest in the World, except Java, being 1835 miles about; and is bounded on the South with France, on the North with the Northern Ocean: it was called *Brittain*, from *Brit*, signifying coloured or painted; and *Tayn*, a Nation: (for the Inhabitants were wont to paint their bodies, to appear the more fearful to their enemies): *Brutus* the Trojan's coming thither, and denominating the same, being not so well grounded on true History. It is divided into three parts in general; *England*, *Scotland*, and *Wales*. *England* (so named, from the *Angles*, or *English Saxons* enjoying it) is the chief Country of the three, whose head-City, *London*, is both ancient, as being built by *Lud* divers years before *Rome*, and also populous, and very Merchantable by reason of the fair and sweet fresh River *Thames*: which by the Seas force ebbeeth and floweth above 60 miles into the Land, more than any in Europe: of whose beautifull Towns, stately Buildings and Gardens about it, a German said,

*we saw so many Woods and Princely Bowers,  
Sweet fields, brave Palaces, and stately Towers:  
So many Gardens drest with curious care,  
That Thames with Royall Tiber may compare.*

**SCOTLAND** (sometimes called *Albania*, and whose Scottish-men which keep their ancient speech still, call it *Albain*) is the Northern part of *Brittain*: which the two Rivers *Tweed* and *Solway* divide from *England* toward the South. It was named *Scotland*, from *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a people of Germany, unto whose Northern parts, even the name of *Scythia* was given: whose people seizing on a part of Spain, and then on Ireland, possessed the

the West part of this Country in the year 424. The people are divided into Highlanders and Lowlanders, according to the Country's scituation: many of the former being uncivil, if not barbarous. Among the many Provinces herein, is *Louden*, (once called *pisland*, or a Country, hilly, and without trees) in which stands *Edenborough*, the Mother City, the abode of the Scottish Kings, before that, after the death of *England's* Queen, *Elizabeth*, all *Brittain* was (by King *James* of Scotland, who was next heir to *England's* Crown) united under one King: and since more than that, made one Common-wealth, under a Protector, through the Conquest of Scotland by the English. It is 480 miles in length, (though narrow) and 160 longer than *England*, which yet is much broader than it.

**WALES** (separated from *England* on the East; whose most certain limit, is a great Ditch reaching from the River *Wye* flowing into *Severn* unto *Chester*, where *Dee* runs into the Sea; and called *Claude's Offa*, or *Offa's Ditch*, King of the *Mercians*, by whom it was made,) is generally conceived to be so named, from the Britains fleeing thither from the Saxons, who had seizure of *England*: *Walls* or *welshmen*, importing Aliens. Some derive it from *Idwallo*, *Cadwallader's* son, who retired hither with his few Britains. But the Britons bringing their pedigree from the Gauls, whom the French still call Gallois, and the Country, Galles, (thence Saxon-like, *G*, being changed into *w*, is *walloys* or *walles*, and so *wales*, (some also of *France* being called *walloons*) makes some to be of this opinion. It is the least of the three Countries, containing four Cities; and was called a dominion or Princedome, a Title given to the English Kings eldest son: by means of *Edward* the first, who caused his Wife to be delivered at *Carnarvon* of a young son *Edward*; whom the British Lords swore to obey; when as before they mainly withstood to have a general English Vice-gerent over them.

The chief Merchandises are, *Wool*, *Englands* staple commodity, whose Cloath divers Nations buy before any other; *Tin*, *Lead*, *Beer*; (Gold and Silver Mines there are none); besides plenty of Corn and Cattle, especially in *England* and *Wales*, for *Scotland* is in some places lean and barren; Wolves also the whole Island is free of. Their Religion, since deserting *Rome*, is *Calvinism* generally; Yet *England* (in its Bishops times) had the doctrine of *Geneva*, but the Ceremonies of *Rome*; from which (then) there were some dissenters. *Scotland* came nearer to *Geneva* in both. But of late years, though the Ceremonies be laid aside also; yet are there many who make separation both in doctrine and discipline, from that Church.

There are also many lesser Islands belonging to *Brittain*, as the thirty two Isles of *Orkney*, or *Orcades*, Northward of *Scotland*, whose chief is *Pomonia*; whose head town is *Kirkwall*; who in latter times were held by the *Normans*, or *Norwegians*, till that

King



King in 1266, surrendered them to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, by reason of its situation. North of these is *Sherland*, supposed by many to be *Thule*, the utmost Island known to the ancients, one of whose Isles, *Heibhy*, use the *Gothish* tongue from the *Norwegians*; and for that Mariners call it *Thylensell*, under which *Thule* is couched: Yet *Iceland* (of which hereafter) is generally conceived to be *Thule*, it being the remotest part of the Northern World: but weightier reason out of *Solinus* and *Tacitus*, are against it. Likewise there are 44 Hebrides or Western Islands, on the West of *Scotland*, bought also of *Magnus* of *Norway*, by *Alexander*, whose Inhabitants called *Red-Islands*, are like the wild Irish in behaviour and speech; in one of which, (to wit) *Jona*, is the chief Town *Sodore*, notable for the Scottish Kings Sepulchres. *Scilly* Islands situated 24 miles from the West of Cornwall in England, are 145 in all, ten whereof are onely esteemed, as *Scilly*; the others Denominator, *Armath*, &c. Whither also the *Romans* banished condemned men, to work in their Mines. The *Dutch* call them *Sorlings*. Other Islands lie dispersed, and belong to *Englands* Commonwealth; whereof the chief are five; two whereof, *Jersey*, and *Guernsey*, are the onely remainders of *France* to the *English*, *Jersey* being the bigger and fruitfuller, containing twelve Towns or Villages; the other, 10 Parishes. They are 20 Miles asunder, lying nigh to Normandy and Britain in *France*, and using the *French* tongue. *Wight* Island (which being severed from the main Land by a narrow strait of the Sea, and but a mile over in one place, may well be said to be of *England*, though not in *England*) lyeth Southward from thence, being 20, or 21 miles long, and 12 broad, and is strongly seated and strengthened, whose chief Town at this day is *Newport*, a small mile from whence is *Carisbrook* Castle, very strongly situated: there was wont to be arms therein for 5000 men: and in every Village a piece of Ordnance for defence. It belongs to *Hampshire*; and did (it seems) appertain to the *Britains*, from whom it was taken by *wolphar* King of *Mercia*. *Anglesey* (once the seat of the *Druides*, and bordering on *Carnarvonshire* of *Wales*) is accounted a shire thereof: which containing formerly a multitude of Towns and Villages in so little room, being but 20 miles long, and seventeen broad, hath now the chief, *Newburg*, *Beaumaris*, and *Aberffraw* on its South-side. *Man* Island, situated 25 miles from the South of *Cumberland*, the North of *England*, is thirty miles long, and fifteen broad in the broadest place: and whose chief Towns are *Ruffin*, or *Castle Town*; and *Balacuri*. It hath seventeen Parishes. Their Language is *Norwegian* and *Irish*, mixt; they are said to have two good properties; to hate thieving and begging. On a Hill herein called *Scafell*, both *England*, *Ireland*, and *Scotland*, may (in clear weather) be seen. This Countrey preserving venomous creatures alive brought into it, ended the controversy between *England* and *Ireland* concerning it. And here also is that wonderfull thing wherewith *Gerard* the Herbarist ends his book, to wit, *Geese* bred of

or rotten Wood, falling (from Trees) into the Water. It belonged (after divers seizures, sale, and gift) unto the *Stanlies*, Earls of *Durby*, called Kings of *Man*, the last of whom, being beheaded (a few years since) for engaging against *Englands* Commonwealth: the power they there had, was lost, if not the very title, together with his life.

There are (moreover) Northern Islands lying in the *Scythick* Sea or *Icy Ocean* so called: by the *Cymbrians*, the dead; by *Tacitus*, the dull or slow Sea: the chief whereof are *Greenland* under the cold Zone; yet known to have grass; and they say, there are people that dwell in Caves, delighting in witchcraft. *Iceland*, to be mentioned elsewhere. *Freealand*, not *Frisia* in *Belgium*, almost as big as *Ireland*. *Nova Zemla*: And lastly, that which Sir *Hugh Willoughby* discovered in 1553; whereabouts, he was with his men frozen to death, going to find out a new way towards *Cathai* and *China*: which design, others prosecuting, have gone to the River *Obi*, the Eastern Confines of *Muscovie*, which is notwithstanding, but half way to *China*.

These Islands have their several Commodities even as *Brittain* to whom they appertain. The *Orcades* are in a measure populous and fertile, and *Pomonia* is well stored with Tin and Lead. *Scilly* Islands are stored with Grass, Grain, and Lead. *St. Maries* being sufficiently fruitful. *Man* hath not onely enough Corn, Cattle and Fish for it self, but sends good store into other Countries. *Anglesey*, for its abundance of necessaries for man's life, is called *Mam Cymry*, that is, the Mother of *Wales*. *Wight* hath plenty of all sustenance, whose sheep bear fine Wooll, and Trees, store of fruit. *Jersey* abounds in grain; and of sheep, most, with 4 horns, of whose Wooll they make *Jersey*-stockings. *Garnsey* (formerly *Sarnia*) is well enough, though inferior (as was said) to *Jersey* in fruitfulness. As for their Religion, 'tis according to that of the main Island, onely *Jersey* and *Garnsey* have long followed *Geneva's* Church-Discipline: which is much affected by the Protestant Ministers of *France*.

**I R E L A N D** (called by some Antients, *Hibernia*, also *Juvenia*, *Jerne*, *Ogygia*, &c. and by the *Irish*, *Erin*. Yet it hath (by some) been termed *Scotia*, because the *Scotti* came from *Spain*, and dwell here) lyeth between great *Britain* (for *Ptolomy* calls it little *Britain*) and *Spain*, having *England* on the East, divided by a Tempestuous Sea, of about a dayes sayling. *Cambden* saith its 400 miles long, and 200 broad. And some do affirm; that from *Knockbrandon* unto *Carragh* in the North of *Ulster* (which is the length) is 320 Irish miles: and from *Dublin* to *Crough Patrick*, by West of *Galloway* (which is the breadth) is 200 Miles. It hath five principal Provinces, *Leinster* on the East, in whose County of *Dublin*, stands *Dublin*, the Mother City of that Nation: built by *Harald Hager*; the first King of *Norway*: Which was (after the *English* Conquest) peopled by *Bristol-men*; here the Deputy of *Ireland*

*Ireland* reſides; where is alſo an Univerſity. *Munſter*, on the South; *Conaught* on the Weſt, *Ulſter* on the North, and *Meath* in the Mid-land. *John of England*, was firſt intruded Lord of *Ireland*; *Henry* the eighth, in 1542 was in an *Iriſh* Parliament declared King hereof; yet *Ireland* ſtood in terms of wildneſſe and non-ſubjection, (too tedious here particularly to expreſſe) till the Rebellion of *Trane*, towards the end of the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, which ending in his own overthrow, cruſhed the *Iriſh* Nobilities over-power, and made a full conqueſt of the whole land. But it of late years bloudily breaking out again, occaſioned a ſecond Conqueſt of that people, and a confinement of them unto one Province. Some are conformable to civility, but the *Kerns* or wild *Iriſh* exceeding barbarous. They are generally ſtrong and nimble; and will ſkip over the bogs (of which there are many) without ſinking, whereas others cannot do ſo. The Ayre being Rainy, is moiſt and Rheumatick; ſo that both inhabitants, as well as ſtrangers, are much troubled with Catarrhs, and the Bloody Flux: It is hilly, Moorish, and full of Woods, expoſed to Winds, and many pools, even in the top of the higheſt Mountains. There is much Cattle, wherefore they abound in Milk, Cheeſe, and Butter; their Corn is but ſhort and ſmall, and through the cold winds there blowing, and the Suns want of force in Autumn, the Grapes do not very well Ripen. Yet they neither much ſuck ſhade in Summer, nor fire through Winters rigour. There are good Horſes, and light, for that Countries journeys, called Hobbeyes. They abound in fiſh, both of Sea and freſh Water; The chief River being *Shennin*, *Sinei*, or *Shannon*, which runs from *Ulſter*, two hundred miles, to the *Vergilian* Sea, and is Navigable ſixty miles. Much Fowl there is, but no Storks, Pies, or Niguan-gals. No hurtfull beaſts are there, beſides Wolves and Foxes. But there is no venomous beaſt or Serpent at all. Whence ſhe hath truly ſpoken in her behalf, although ſomewhat Heaſtaniſhly-----

*I am that Iſland, which in times of old,  
The Greeks did call, Hibernia, ſic cold.  
Secur'd by God and Nature from this tear,  
Which gift was given to Creec, Jove's Mother dear,  
That poiſonous Snakes ſhould never here be bred,  
Or dare to biſſe, or hurtfull venom ſhed.*

From the time that this Iſland received an outward profeſſion of Chriſtianity, which was in 335, by means of a woman among the Piſts, (when *Fiacmare* reigned in *Scotland*) who preached to its Queer, being familiar with her, who winning the King, the people were thereby diſpoſed to receive a baptiſm; who lived in the Romiſh Religion till *Henry* the eighth his time: for then Proteſtant Religion began to be preached; and ſince, there planted by Queen *Elizabeth*: who notwithstanding being generally ad-  
dicted

dicted to the former, have made that the ſubject of two notable Rebellions. Now there is the ſame toleration as to ſects and opinions as in *England*; it having renewed its Plantations by *Engliſh*; (only the moſt exact and innocent ones ſtill ſuffer in both) for 'tis all but one Common-wealth.

**F**RANCE (called at firſt *Gallia*, whoſe ancient Inhabitants were called *Gaules*, from *gala*, milk, they being of a white colour,) is of large extent, according to the old diviſion of *Gaule Cifalpine*, and *Transalpine*. *Ceſar* in his Commentaries divideth it into *Gaule Belgick*, *Celtick*, and *Aquitannick*. But to take the whole Realm of *France* as it is now taken; and meaſuring it from Eaſt to Weſt directly, that is, from the Iſle of *Heiſſant*, unto the banks of *Rhine* which divides from *Germany*, it is little more in length, than 300 *French* leagues, that is, 600 *Engliſh* miles. On the Eaſt lye the Alps, dividing it from *Italy*; as doth Mount *Jura*, ſeparating it from the *Suiſſes*. On the South where it joyns to *Spain*, it hath the *Pyrenean* Mountains; and in more large places, the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, the *Britiſh* Ocean; on the Weſt, the *Aquitane* Sea. To ſay little or nothing of the warlike offſpring of *Japhet*, whoſe ſixth ſon, *Meſech*, is reported to have firſt peopled it in the year of the World, 1806, (and who were then very ſparing in their diet: with whom, the Romans at firſt fought rather to preſerve themſelves, than in hope of conqueſt; and who under the conduct of *Brennus*, (365 years after the building of Rome) diſcomfiting the Romans at the River *Allia*, ſacked the City, and beſieged the Capitol: ſo that for terror of them, after their expulſion by *Camillus*, they made a Law, That if ever the *Gaules* came again, the very Priests ſhould be forced to war, and their (afterwards) ſpoyling and ranſacking the Temple at *Delphos*, where the Peſtilence viſiting the ſurvivors going into *Asia*, gave name to the Countrey called *Gallatia*. It was called *France*, from the *Francones*, a people of *Germany*, who with the *Burgundians* and *Goths*, wreſted it from the Roman Monarchy in its declining ſtate: (*Ceſar* after 40 years reſiſtance, having by valour and fortune (but more through their own diviſions) brought them under tribute) and dividing it into three parts amongſt them, *Charlemain* King of the *Francones*, or *Franks*, quite ruining the *Goths* Kingdom: his ſucceſſours by degrees, almoſt nullified the *Burgundian* alſo; who are now a very populous Nation: over-much headlong and raſh in both Martial and Civil affairs, as was obſerved alſo in *Ceſar's* time. *Florus* ſaying, That their firſt onſet was greater or fiercer than of men, but the ſecond leſſe than of women. It is divided into many Provinces, the chief whereof are 24, (leaving out *Lorrain*, *Savoy*, and *Geneva's* Signiory) as *Aquitane*, *Anjou*, *Normandy*, *Burgundy*, the Iſle of *France*, &c. in which ſtands the Metropolis *Paris*, called of old *Luſetia*, from its clayey-foyl, ſaid to be 10 miles in compaſſe, and to be built in *Amaziah's* time, King of *Judah*; the Provinces are governed by eight prin-  
cipal

cial Parliaments. They are given very much to Tennis, and exceedingly to dancing; whose poor Peasants are kept as low in slavery, as their Gentry exalted in pride and vanity; inventing and following abundance of fashions in their apparel, to please their giddy phantasies: and of which the English are too much their imitators: between whom at this day, there is a solemn League, joyned against the Spaniard *vi & armis*, with might and main. Amongst all the battles that this Nation hath fought both with the English, Spaniard, and others: they never had any very famous Captains besides *Charls the Great*; who was (by the Pope's Donative) the founder of the Western Empire, and called, One of the three Christian Worthies: and also *Henry the 4th*, their King, in whose modern valour *France* glorieth.

*France*, its Riches (besides *Paris* the Metropolis, which draws to it most of the Silver of *France*, and also much from *Italy*, *Spain*, *England*, *Germany*, and almost all *Europe*) are various, according to the divers Provinces thereof; fine Flax, linnen Cloath, Wines, Iron, Steel, Serges, Hair-cloath, Chamlets, Tapestries, oyl of Walnuts, Corn, Cheese, Wood, Parchment, enamel'd works, Hogs, Horses, and other Cattle, Hemp, &c. All the soyl of *France* being good for somewhat. Their Religion is of two sort, the *Romish* and *Calvinist*; they of the latter being called *Hugonots*, from *Hugo's* gate in *Tours*, wherethey first began, and at which they went out to private assemblies; at whose first rise the *Romish* began to root them out by the sword, as they did them; (And they massacring these Protestants three times, at *Merindall* in 1545. *Chabriers*, with whose young Women and Maids they so inhumanely dealt, that most dyed suddenly after. At *Paris* in 1572, more closely contrived: for, a marriage being solemnized between *Henry of Navarre* chief of the Protestant party, and the King's sister *Margaret*, as an assurance of peace made with the Protestants: at which, the Prince of *Conde*, Admiral *Coligni*, &c. were present. At midnight, the bell ringing out, the King of *Navarre* and *Conde* were taken prisoners, the Admiral villanously slain in his bed, with 30000 and upward, of the chief of that Religion;) but for one head cut off, there coming up seven; and the King considering they were all his Subjects, in the end renewed his predecessour's Edict of Pacification, allowing that called the *Reformed Religion*, where it had been formerly practised; and the Massé to be restored, from whence the enemies had banished it.

**S**PAIN (the most Western Countrey of *Europe's* Continent, lying near *Africk*) is compassed on all sides with the Sea, except towards *France*, and hath been diversly named; as *Hesperia*, either from *Hesperum* supposed to have been a King hereof; or from *Hesperum* the Evening Star, as being the farthest Countrey Westward then known. And *Hispantia*, (according to the best judgments) from *Pannu* an *Iberian* Captain. *Iberia*, from the River

*Iberum*;

*Iberum*; or *Iberi*, who are the *Georgians* in *Asia*. This People being in old time governed by Kings, Lords, yea and by themselves, lived to a while honourably and peaceably, till the *Carthaginians* (mastering much of *Africk*) came into this Country; and joyning with some of those divided people to the others ruine, they forced a great part of the Country to submit to *Carthage* Commonwealth; Against whom, the *Romans* opposing divers Armies, after long and bloody wars, the *Carthaginians* were expelled, the *Romans* enjoying it. But in *Honorius* his time, the *African-Vandals* chased away the *Romans*; whom notwithstanding, the *Goths* dispossessed, peaceably reigning over it all for many years. But in the end the *Moors* and *Siracens* mightily invading *Spain* out of *Africk*, they ruined the *Gothish* Kingdom; some remainders of whom, notwithstanding, retiring into the Mountains, made head, and so prevailed, that in time they have driven the *Moors* quite out of the Country: yet they are said to be a mixt people descending from *Guths*, *Siracens*, and *Jews*: they are great braggers, and very proud, in the lowest ebbe of fortune: and they say, The *Spaniard* never had footing of any place or strong hold, that ever he yielded on Composition.

It fell into a division of 12 Kingdoms and proprietary Estates, as *Leoa* and *Oviedo*, having *Biscay* on the East, and called anciently *Asturia*, from its Inhabitants the *Asturs*: whose small and swift heries the *Romans* called *Asturcones*. Two chief Towns of which are *Oviedo* and *Leoa*. *Navarre*, having the *Pyrenean* Mountains on the East, on the South *Arragon*; so named either from *Navarin*, a Town among the Mountains, or from *Navois*, a Champian Country: the old Inhabitants being called *Vascones*. Its Mother-City is *Pamp-lune*, a Town (as one saith) banded by the racket of fortune into the hazard of *Goths*, *Moors*, *Navarrois*, *French*, and now *Castilians*. *Corduba*, comprehending *Andaluzia*, *Granada*, and *Elremadura*. *Andaluzia*, quasi *Vandaluzia*, from the *Vandals* long possiding it, is the fruitfullest Country of *Spain*, in whose City *Corduba*, the seat of the Moorish Kings, was born *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca's*, hence is the true *Cordovan* Leather: not far from whose Wood 30 miles long, being nothing but Olive Trees, was fought a notable battle between *Cesar* and *Pompey's* sons: who (having the day, though not without great loss) was not long after murdered in the Senate-house. *Medina*, another City, whose Duke was General of the Great Armado in 1588. *Sevill*, whence come the *Sevill* (not civil) Oranges, and where the dead body of *Christopher Columbus* lyeth. *Granada*, having *Andaluzia* on the West, whose fine and stately City *Granada* is replenished with pleasant Springs; That, and *Valadolid* being the ordinary Courts of Justice for the South and North parts of *Spain*. That of *Madrid* being the highest Parliament, receiving Appeals from both *Malaga* or *Malaca*, a great Port-Town, sacked by *Crausus* the *Roman*: where is a cruel torturing Inquisition, where *Liibgow* was miserably tormented in King *James* his time: and from which,

Bbbbb 2

two

two harmless women of the English Nation, called Quakers, were delivered within this few months, by a high hand. Hence comes the Malaga Sack. *Estremadura*, having *Portugal* on the West, once called *Beturia*, from the River *Betis* therein, nigh whose City *Merida*, *Vallia* King of the Goths vanquishing *Alax* King of the *Alanes* and *Vandals*, these left their first footing in *Spata*. *Gallicia*, having on the East the *Asturia's* and Mountainous places like unto them. Whose Cities are *Compostella*, an Archbishop's seat, and a University, called *St. Jago*, in honour of *S. James*, whose reliques are in a Temple, here worshipped and visited with incredible zeal and concourse. *Biscay*, so named from the *Vascones*, who coming hither, named it *Vascaia*, then *Viscaia*, now *Biscata*, was formerly called *Cantabria*, and lyeth betwixt *Castile*, *Naxarre*, and *Leon*; whose ancient *Cantabrians* defended their liberty, when the *Romans* had subdued the rest of *Spain*; being at last vanquished by *Augustus* not without much bloodshed: for such Mountainous Countries are always last conquered. They differ from the rest of *Spain*, both in language and customs, yielding their bodies, but not their purses to the King, nor suffering any Bishop to come amongst them, and causing their women always (in meetings) to drink first, because *Ogno* a Countesse, would have poisoned her son *Sancho*. In this Province, stands the City *Tholouse*: Also *Bilbo*, two miles from the Main, (once *Flavionavia*) a Town of great Traffique. Out of the hills of this Country arise the two chief Rivers, *Iberus* and *Duerus*; they have excellent Timber for ships; and for its much Iron, called, *The Armory of Spain*. *Toledo* the ancient seat of the *Carpentani*, is now accounted a part of *New Castile*, and extends over the South-East of *Castile* toward *Murcia*: whose chief City is *Toledo*, seated on the River *Tagus*, and almost in the Center of *Spain*, inhabited by Nobles, Merchants, and men of war. It was the seat of the *Gothish* Kings, which their King *Bamba* walled; then the Moorish Princes seats; now of the *Spanish* Archbishop's, the chief Prelates of *Spain*, and most times Presidents of the bloody Inquisition. *Murcia*, environed with *New Castile* on the West, whose chief River is *Guadalquivir*, and whose three chief Towns are *Murcia* or *Murgis*, whence the Country is named *Alicant*: whence is true *Alicant* Wine made of the juice of Mulberries, plentifully growing here; it's also a fair harbour. *Cartagena* or new *Carthage*, built by *Asdruball* of *Carthage*, but ruined in the second *Punic* war by *Scipio Africanus*.

*CASTILE*, bounded on the West with *Portugal*, is divided into old and new. The old, situated on the North of the new, hath the City *Salamanca*, for its chiefest University: built by King *Ferdinand* the second, in 1240, and by Popes edicts, with *Oxford*, *Paris*, and *Bononia*, ordained a place of general study. Another I cannot pass by, which is *Numantia* or *Soria*, where 4000 withstanding 40000 *Romans* 14 years; and at last, laying all their Armour goods and money upon a pile, burnt it with themselves in the flame. Here is also *Paladolis*, one of *Spain's* seven Universities;

ries; and the birth-place of *Philip* the second, who restoring it, built a Colledge for *English* fugitives. *Duerus* the violentest River of *Spain*, runs in this Province. The new *Castile*, on South of the other, hath the River *Tagus* in its bowells, whose chief City is *Madrid*, the King and Councils seat; which by the Kings residence there, is become of a Village, the most populous of *Spain*, (yet the Countrey is neither fruitful nor pleasant) whose upper stories of houses without composition, belong to the King. Here is also *Guenca*, whose Monastery of *Laurence* built by *Philip* the II. is of that magnificence, that no building past or present, is comparable thereunto. The name of *Castile* cannot be fetched from the old inhabitants, the *Paccai*, &c. but either from the *Castellani*, once the inhabitants of *Catolagne*; or from some fortified Castle tiercabouts.

*PORTUGAL* bounded on the East with the *Castiles*, is so called from the Haven Town *Porto*, and the *Gauls*, who landed there with their Merchandise. It was formerly named *Lusitania*: whose ancient inhabitants were the *Oritani*, *Veliones*, &c. whose chief City for traffique, is *Lisbon*, from whence all the *Portugals* set to Sea. It's said to be seven miles in compass, having above 20000 neat houses, sixty seven Towers and Turrets upon the walls, twenty two Gates on the Sea-side, and sixteen toward the continent; but *Braga* is it's *Metropolis*; and *Conimbra* the University; whose Masters made the Commentary on the most of *Aristotle*. *Philip* the second of *Spain*, pretended a right to this Crown; and by main force took it and kept it, till the *Portugals* killing or driving thence the Vice-roy, set up a King of their own, as formerly; for that, although the *Spaniards* call (in their Proverb) the *Portugals*, *Pocos y locos*, that is, *Few and Foolish*, yet they were wise enough to free themselves from under that Kings power.

*Valentia*, lying between *Castile*, *Aragon*, and *Murcia*, had its former inhabitants the *Eliani*, and *Bastiani*, &c. in which stands the City *Saguntum*, but now *Movedre*; whose people being besieged by *Hanniball*, chose rather to burn themselves, than yield; out of faithfulness to the *Romans*. *Valentia* the denominating City of the whole Province, heretofore (they say) named *Roma*, signifying strength, which the *Romans* conquering, called *Valentia*, to distinguish it from *Rome*, a word equivalent in the Latine to *Roma* in *Greek*. Herein also is the Promontory of *Terraria* the refuge of *Sertorius* in his wars against the old and young *Souldiers*, *Metellus* and *Pompey*. *Catolagne* or *Catalonia*, having *Aragon* on the West, hath its name diversly and equally probably derived from *Gothalonia*, *Castellani*, or *Cattalones* who dwell here. A chief City whereof is *Barcellona* a strong Sea-Town, and Ancient. *Perpigna*, in the County of *Rosillon*, which Town and Country was engaged by *John* of *Aragon*, to the *French*, for a great mass of money; and then restored to the King of *Spain* by *Charles* the eighth, promising not

not to hinder his enterprize of *Naples*. *Giron* is another City seated on the River *Betulus*, and the Title of the *Arragonian* Prince. Lastly, *Arragon*, limitted Southward with *Valentia*, Northward with *Naxarre*, thorow the very middest whereof, *Iberus* runs; whose old inhabitants were the *Lucenses*, *Jaccetani*, and *Celiberi*, these last descending from the *Iberians*, and the *Celia* mixt, who were the most puissant of all *Gaul*: whence this Nation was called the *Celiberi* according to the Poet *Lucan*. Its present name is from *Tarragon*, a City confined with *Catalonia*, on the borders hereof. Herein is the City *Lerida*, dividing *Catolgne* from *Arragon*, situate on the River *Cinga*, and an University. The City *Huesca* called of old *Osca*, may not be forgotten, an ancient University, whither *Sertorius* causing all the Noblemens Children of *Spain* to be brought, and providing them Greek and Latine School-Masters, pretended he did it onely to fit them for charge in the Common-wealth; but indeed it was that they might be his hostages, for their fathers faith and loyalty towards him. All *Spain* is divided at this day into three Governments; *Arragon*, *Castile*, and *Portugall*; and is a Monarchy of a great revenue.

*Spain*, whose wealth consists in VVine, Oyl, VVax, Hony, Sugar, Saffron, fruits of all sorts; in a manner, furnishing all the Northern Regions, especially with Olives, Oranges, Lemmons, Figs, &c. Silk, Spanish-wool, (sheep being at first sent thither, out of *Glocestershire* in *England*) Quicksilver. *Portugall* also sends forth Silk, Salt and Tonny, which they fish there, most coming out of the Country of *Algarb*, whose chief City and Port *Lisbon* is, the aboard of all the Merchandise, &c. *Naples* also (belonging to *Spain*, which might hold themselves as happy as any in *Europe*, if they were not so oppressed by Officers) hath abundance of all things; selling to strangers great store of Nuts, and Almonds: vending Saffron, Silks, Oyl, Wines, Horses, Lambs, Sheep: *Poville* furnishing *Venice*, *Sclavonia*, and *Tuscain*, with flesh; *Calabria* sends forth Corall, and the best esteemed Manna, called in Apothecaries shops, *Manna Calabria*. The Island of *Sicily* (being a hundred miles, or after *Strabo*, and *Ptolomy*, a 180. miles long) though full of fire, casting it out abundantly; yet yields store of all sorts of fruits, in old time called the Garner of *Italy*, chiefly of *Rome*, as many times at this day; so that the *Sicilians* make much money of Corn, also of Oyls and Silk, whereof they have great quantity. *Sardinia*, (almost like *Sicily*) makes store of money of Wine to *Rome*, and of couragious Horses to strangers. They also carry some Muscrons skins into *Italy*. The Duchy of *Milane* (about three hundred Miles in compass) being full of Artizans of all sorts, whatsoever goes from that City (as Harquebusses, all sorts of Arms, Hilts of Swords, Girdles and Hangers, Lace Embroideries) is greatly esteemed: as also their Silk Stockings, Rice, store of Cheese, furnishing the *Grisons*, and *Suisse* with much of her fruit; Yet the King drawing as much as possible from this Estate; it's a Proverb in *Italy*, that *The Officer of Sicily*

*Sicily doth gnaw, he of Naples doth eat, but he of Millan doth devour*. Lastly, the *Canaries*, or fortunate Islands (reckoned seven in number, others adding six more thereto) do vent their excellent Wines into all *Europe*; also Sugars, transported by the *Spanisb* and *Italian* Merchant, from the *Stapela*, into other places. All *Spain* follow the Romish Church (with those particular Provinces and Islands he possesseth, or claimeth) and the Protestant Religion is so hated there, that they have set up cruell Inquisitions, lest it should get any belief among them; (for which cause, as not the least, the King of *Spain* perhaps is called by the Pope, the Catholic King) yea, the people of the *Canaries*, who formerly worshipped the Sun, Moon, and Stars, (which though in *Africa*, yet here I mention) the *Spaniards* mastering it in 1404, sealed there their Faith with their dominion; so that the Bishop thereof residing in the great *Canaria*, hath his Inquisitors of the Faith.

**L**ORRAINE, or *Lotharingia*, (so called from *Lothaire* eldest Lion of *Lewis* the Gentle) and is a Dukedome distinct from *France* in Government; whose Religion being according to *France*, Yet it makes great profit of Azure-stones, and of Pearls fished at the Mountain *Vogese*, it's foot; also of a matter to make Looking-glasses, and others: *Cassidonic* stones for Cups; Horses, besides Linnen Cloath, and transported works: Mines of Silver likewise are beneficial thereto: It's Duke also hath six Salt-pans, yielding him 200000 Crowns yearly.

**T**HE Low-Countries, or Lower *Germany*, is encompassed with *Belgium*, *Alsatia*, *Burgundy*, and *Champagne*, (called by *Julius Caesar*, *Gaul-Belgick*) is bounded on the North with *East-Friesland*, on the South with *Lorrain*, &c. and containing seventecae Provinces. Those, and the parts thereof that are under the command of the Arch-Duke, or house of *Austria*; their commodities are Silks, Serges, Tapestry-work, Porpasses, and Salmones, barreled and Salted, with abundance of Herring and barrel-Cod. Throughout all these estates, there is none but the Romish Religion; yet are there a few Towns (chiefly those formerly revolted) where there are not many Protestants, and those not daring to make open profession thereof; being restrained, and ready to be punished if it be known.

**T**HE UNITED-PROVINCES of the *NETHERLANDS*, being a kind of Common-Weal, (with whose Generall Estates the King of *Spain*, and Arch-Dukes have treated as with Sovereignes) are, *Zeland*, *Molland*, *Friseland*, *Utrecht*, *Gronique*, and therabouts, *Overyssell*, *Drent*, the County of *Zutphen*, and three parts of *Gueldives*, with some of *Brabant*, and *Flanders*; all which heretofore contributed to the Wars; whose Riches are very great through Sea-trafficque, and great customes of fishing-trade. But their natural wealth is in Horses, Oxen, and Kine, yielding

yielding abundance of Milk for Butter and Cheese, Meedcrap or red Madder. They have also an excellent Art to boil Bay-salt as white as Snow: putting Salt water to the Bay-Salt of *Spain* and *France*, and refining it with greater encrease, which they send in to all parts of *Europe*. In all these Countries, they suffering no exercise of the Romish Religion, but the Protestant only in their Temples, if any be found exercising it in secret (which daily happens in *Mirecht*) they are fined. The Protestant Religion entered when *Luther*, about 1521, preaching against the Pope and his doctrine; *Charles* the fifth, Emperour, to root *Luther's* doctrine out of the *Netherlands*, (having taken good footing) would (after many put to death for small causes) have brought in the *Spanish* inquisition; whose son *Philip*, the better to strengthen an Inquisition, procured the Pope to erect 14 new Bishopricks there: against which the Provinces opposing; the King of *Spain* in 1565, made known his pleasure touching Religion: and after the Duke of *Alvaes* coming thither with an Army, and beheading the Earls of *Egmont* and *Horn*; also in 1570, seeking to exact the tenth, 20th and 100th penny, he made himself odious to the people: whereby the Prince of *Orange*, (who before was forced to leave the Country, by the Duke with a great Army) now being invited by some inhabitants, surprised *Flushing*, *Brielle*, &c. and afterward the Estates declaring against *Philip* the second of *Spain*, and taking all the Government on themselves, and amazed at their favourable success: they put themselves under Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, her Protection; Whereby they took many places of consequence; and in the end, recovered their Sovereign Authority: who (since) have (for Policy-sake) given liberty to other Professions of Religion: as those of the Separation, Baptists, Jews, &c.

**G**ENEVA (pleasantly situated within the limits of *Savoy* towards *La Bresse*, and being as it were two Towns, thorow which the River *Rhone* doth passe) hath the soyl near it fruitful, yielding Corn, Wine, Turneps, and other roots, Melons, all pulse, Barley, Oats, Hay, Apples, Pears, &c. taking goodly fish in the Lake, especially Salmon, Trouts, which they carry to other places. Yet the Inhabitants of *Geneva* are not very rich, and have enough to do (by toyl) to preserve an honest liberty: taking great pains in printing all sorts of books, making Silks, using (withall) temperance; for sparingness is in a manner their greatest revenue: So that they send Cheeses, Capons, and good gold thred into other parts. It makes profession of the Protestant Religion, wherein they were instructed and confirmed by *John Calvin* and others: Yet their Town is a retreat to all *Rome's* opposers. They banished the Masse about 1539. Their Ministers being not maintained by Tythes, but a common Treasury.

HELVETIA,

**H**ELVETIA, or SWITZERLAND, (a Province of *Germany*, bounded on the West with *France*, on the North with *Lorraine*, is so named from one of the 13 Cantons therein, called *Switz*) is a Nation even united into one body by confederation and intelligence, whom none hath attempted to invade; or if he hath, without effect: To whom also the three leagues of the *Grisons* are allied. Its situation hinders it from being a rich Country; yet it nourisheth all the Inhabitants, whose sparing is a good revenue; they also sometimes make much money of feeding their cattle, and pasture; and Wheat is sold at *Zurich* in great abundance; the River *Rhine* is commodious for *Basil's* concourse of Merchants, from whence many printed books are carried into all parts of *Europe*. Of these Cantons, some are in Religion wholly Romanists, others altogether Protestants; some mixt. The first that received the Protestant Religion, was the Canton of *Zurich*, which they say, was through discontentment for want of pay, pretended due to them from Pope *Julius* the second, (for Nature and necessity having fashioned and applied the *Swisses* to arms, neighbour Princes pay dear for their alliance,) incited thereto by *Zwinglius*: So that in 1526, they abolished the Masse there; and in 1528, it extending it self to the Cantons of *Fribourg* and *Basil*, after long dispute before the Senate at *Bearn*; they overthrew their Images, and rooted out the Masse of the *Grisons*: they of *Grise* are most Catholics, the rest almost all Protestants. But is lawful for every one among them to follow what Religion he please; yet many times the Protestants insult over the Papists: for though themselves have; yet they will not suffer Papists to have any strangers, Priests: they of the Country being also subject to outrages.

**S**AVOY (confined on *Bresse* and *Switzerland*, the chief City whereof is *Chamberie*, the Seat of the Duke when sojourning here,) being a Duchy, contains under it the Earldom and Country of *Maurienne*, with the Marquisate of *Suse*; *Piedmont*, and the County of *Nizze*; it confines upon the North with the *Swisses* of *Bearn* and *Fribourg*. *Savoy* hath great store of Corn in the Valleys, and much pasture in the Mountains, which are many and great; in some places very good wine, and some Lakes abounding with fish: yet it makes little money of any thing sent to foreign parts. But *Piedmont* sends forth Corn, Cattle, much Hemp, store of Rice, Cheese, Wine, Paper, Fustian, and raw Silk. In which, the Armies of *France* and *Spain* continuing 23 years with great garrisons of either side, they never wanted victuals. In the Valley of *Of*, are Mines of gold and silver. They of *Salusses*, trade with *Provence* in Iron and Cattle. There is also within the Provinces trade of Cloath, Arms which they make, Hides, Oyl, Wine, all sorts of Fruits, Pulses, store of Thred, coarse cloath of many kinds, saltfish, some small excellent Honey, Firr-Trees for

Cccccc

Masts,

Mats. Their Religion is generally Romish: for from this Duke's obedience, *Geneva* retired in the year 1535. Yet there are Protestants in his Dominion, on whom he ravened cruelly like a Wolf, in 1645.

**R O M E** (the Metropolis of Italy, built on seven hills, and the Pope's Seat) hath belonging to the Church's estate, (so called) the Countries of *Ferrara*, *Bologna*, *Romagna*, *Ancona*, *Umbria*, *Sabina*, *Perugia*, part of *Tuscanie*, the *Patrimony*, *Lattium* or *Campania* of *Rome*; which abound so in Corn, and all Commodities, as any want scarce happens through defect of the soyl; it being divided into Plains and Mountains. It furnisheth other Countries with Corn, Wine, and Oyl. Its Religion is known, for it is the head of the Papacie.

**F L O R E N C E**; whose Dukes (having united the Commonwealth of *Pisa* and *Syena* with that, into one) do possess the greatest and goodliest part of *Tuscanie*: in which though the State of *Florence* want Wheat, (otherwise very fruitful in wine, flesh, and other necessaries) yet that of *Syena*, not only supplyeth *Florence* its necessity, but sometimes relieveth other places: so that *Syena's* Inhabitants are rich in rents: and that of *Florence*, through industry, whose City is full of Artificers of all sorts, making diligently and workmanly, Serges, Silks, and cloath of gold and silver; they exercise chiefly the art of Silk and Wooll. All the Inhabitants of this State are Romish Catholiques; they of *Syena* being the more devout.

**T**He Dukedome of **U R B I N** (about 60 miles long, and 35 broad) confines, yea intermixes with the estate of the Church; which City *Urbis*, is one of the ancientest of Italy, about which the Territory is exceeding good, and generally fertile. This Estate having plenty of all things needful for the life of Man, a good part whereof lying on the Adriatique shoar, is of great profit for bringing many things thither from all parts. Their Religion is undoubtedly Romish.

**T**He Dukedome of **M A N T O V A** or **M A N T U A**, is all that which antiently belonged to the Duke of *Tuscanie*; with the Marquedome of *Montferrat*, greater than that. Its City *Mantua* in *Lombardy* beyond the River *Po*, being built 60 years before the Trojan War. *Mantova* yields all sorts of Fruits. *Montferrat* is uneven, but yields all necessaries, and in some places store of Wheat, Wines, and other Fruits: yet this Dukedome is not able to make any great Traffique, or grow by their Commodities. Its Religion is Romish.

The

**T**He Dukedome of **F E R R A R A** or **M O D E N A**, (out of which, the Pope (pretending the City *Ferrara* to be a fee of the Church) thrust *Don Cesar Alphonso* (the Duke thereof, his base son, after his Father's death) hath the Territory about *Modena* abounding with Corn, Beans, and other necessaries, with excellent wine. *Reggium's* soil is also exceeding fertile of Wheat, Barley, Beans, &c. with white wines: which two Towns are reasonably rich.

**L U C A** (situate in *Tuscanie*, and so called of *Lucumon* King of the *Tuscans*) is a Common-wealth, whose Territory, although of small extent, yet the soyl is good, and yields much to the owners. The Citizens of *Luca* using great Traffique, chiefly in Silk, excelling also in making cloath of gold, many private men are exceeding rich. The Common-wealth being but small, is not rich: The foundation whereof is the Council of 160, and (most commonly) 120 Citizens.

**T**He Common-wealth of **G E N O A** (properly called *Liguria* beyond *Po*, to distinguish it from *Liguria* on this side *Po*, which is *Montferrat*;) extends about 160 miles: for the most part rough and hilly, and (as *Strabo* saith) in old time very barren. But being now better manured, there is great store of very good Wine and Oyl, some years 20000 barrels. The whole Country is pleasant by reason of Citrons, Oranges, Palmes, Lemons, and other Trees: which Citrons, &c. with their oyl, yield them much profit. There were huge Trees, as at this day, which they (making ships of) robbed and spoyle to *Gibraltar* straits. But now (thaking off their brutishness) they are very industrious, quick-witted, and subtle. The *Corficans* which belong to the *Genevois*, carry wine to *Rome*, and being much esteemed, they receive great sums for it. There growes in this Island and *Genoa* little grain. Yet *Corfica* abounds in honey, wax, rosin, oyl, and figgs; store of Box. It breeds strong horses, full of courage. There are also Salt-pits. A kind of Ram there is also called *Muffolt*, haired like a Goat instead of Wooll. The *Genevois* and *Corficans* are all Romish Catholiques, as the other forementioned.

**T**He Common-wealth of **V E N I C E** (whose chief Magistrat is called Duke, admirable among all the Towns of *Europe*, whose City is strangely and securely situated in the most inward part of the Gulph of the *Adriatick*;) doth hold in *Lombardy* and the Marquifate, besides *Venice*, 6 great, rich, and populous Towns, besides many goodly places and Castles. They are Masters almost, of all *Friuli* and *Istria*, the last Province of the North side of *Italy*. They command also, almost all the shoar and Island of *Dalmatia* and *Sclavonia*. In the mouth of the Adriack-Sea, (likewise) the Isle of *Corfu*, and the Islands of *Cefalonia*, *Zante*, *Cerigo*,  
C c c c c 2



*rigo*, and *Lucerigo*; the Isle of *Zarra* in the Archipelago; and beyond these, *Candie*. There are within the verge of this Signiory, all necessaries for sustenance, as well as barrenness. *Candie's* fruitful Valleys, and goodly Cyprus Trees, with other Timber for ships, are known. It draws yearly in time of peace from the Estates subject unto it, two millions of gold. The *Venetians*, with all their Subjects in *Italy*, are firm Romish Catholics; but *Corfu's* Inhabitants follow the religion of the Greeks, accounted Schismatics, whom they impeach not therein, for fear of a mutiny: yet the Signiory hath curbed them by a Fort and Garrison. In *Candie* also the people do wonderfully hate the Latines name and religion; yet some of them are affected to the Roman Church.

THE Common-wealth of *RAGOUSE* (being a City situated on the Gulph of *Venice* in *Sclavonia*, the ancient *Dalmatia*, and called in old time *Epidaurum*, of which name, there were three Towns along the Sea, between *Venice* and *Corinth*), maintains itself in liberty, paying 14000 Zequins yearly to the Turk; and as much more in Presents and lodging of Turks. It hath a small Territory on the firm Land; but some small Islands reasonably good, lying betwixt *Curzole* and the gulph of *Catara*. The soyl is barren; but the *Ragousans* through much labour bestowed, have oyl, wine, and excellent fruits. They have a Valley, that makes a Lake at Winter, which nourisheth fish so fat, as to fry without oyl: wherein at Spring, the waters drying up, they sow Corn, growing abundantly: so one place yields them fish and corn in one year. And among divers Sea-industries, they make their Trees bring them Oysters, by bending down their boughs, and staying them under water with stones: so that in two years time, there are a multitude fastened thereto: yet but in a manner good to eat the third year. In their Island *Gravosa*, are many gardens of Orange, Lemon, and Pomgranate-Trees. The Country about *Ragouse* is scarce able to maintain them, though they live sparingly; their greatest wealth growes by great Traffique. They are in Religion all Romanists. The City hath a Bishop ordinarily there residing. Also three Overseers of the Cathedral, who continue therein during life, and may be Rectors, Counsellors, Treasurers, and other Officers.

GERMANY the Great, Upper, or that situate beyond *Rhene*, is called by the French at this day *Almanie* or *Almayne*: one Nation thereof, who being situated at the Fountains of *Danubius*, have their name from the word *man*, as in *Norman*, *Herman*, &c. or from the River *Alemon*. It was included under the Roman Empire, which extended it self far and near, till *Leo* the third (the Empire being before translated from *Rome* to *Constantinople*, by *Constantine* the Great, the Mahometan's sect and arms afflicting it on every side; the West part being ruined, and the East so

weakened,

weakened, as hardly could defend it self,) well considering, (besides the Emperours of Greece nourishing impieties, and accounting heretics) gave the Empire of the West to *Charlemain*, King of *France*, in the year 800, (the *Venetians* being free) who, some say, transported the Empire to the *Germans*, *Charls* being a *German* by blood and Nation, as all the *Franks* which came into *Gaul*, were of *Franconia* a Province thereof. The Countries which acknowledge this Emperour, are *Asiatia*, High and Low; *Wittemberg*, *Francony*, *Suevia*, or *Suaube*, the highest part of all *Germany*, in which Country the spring or head of *Danubius* is, *Bohemia*, which lies within *Germanies* limits; *Moravia*, *Bavaria*, commonly called *Boyerne*; *Austria*, or *Osterland*, that is, the East Country, (whose chief City is *Vienna*) the Country of *Tirol*, *Stiria*, anciently *Valeria*, *Carinthia*, commonly called *Kaerndren*, two *Carnioles*, the one called *Drie*, vulgarly, *Underkrain*: the other, *Oderkrain*, *Westphalia* taken by some for the true and ancient *Saxony*. The Duchy of *Cleves*, the Country of *Juliers* or *Gulich*; the *Lantgrave* of *Hessen*, *Turinge*, the *Palatinate*, containing 48 Towns, whereof *Heidelberg* is the chief; High *Saxony*, whose chief Town is *Wittemberg* on the River *Elb*; base or low *Saxony*, whose chief Town is *Alba*. The Marquisate of *Brandenburg* divided into two parts; the Marquess residing at *Berlin*; the County of *Mansfield* a part of old *Saxony*, *Lusatia*, *Silesia*, *Misnia*, the Dutchy and Bishoprick of *Liege*, the Archbishoprick of *Treves*, commonly called *Trier*, whose chief Town *Treves*, is one of the most ancient in the world. *Helsatia*, (which belonging to the King of *Denmark*, must be particularly discoursed of) also *Bescancon*, an Imperial Town in *Burgundy*, sometime called *Chrysopolis*, that is, a golden City. Although *Tacitus* writes, the ayr is troublesome; and *Seneca*, that it is alway winter: yet the ayr is reasonably mild and temperate, somewhat cold, making them healthy and strong. Its soyl bears wheat, barley, rye, oats, and all kind of grain and pulse in abundance; the fields fertile, and the Meadows bearing much grasse. Also there is many silver, copper, iron, lead, and other Mines; yea, of gold in some places. Also fair Gardens, and Orchards very pleasing; Wines also, called *High-Country Wine*, very good and choyle. *Germany* must needs be rich, who, besides these, are given much to the trade of Merchandise, and giving themselves to divers Arts and Trades, whereby they make wonderful and rare works. They have great and Navigable Rivers; likewise Fountains and Pits of salt-water, whereof they make excellent Salt. Unto their Fairs (especially those of *Frankford*) Merchants come from all parts of *Europe*, and sometimes out of *Asia* and *Africa*. Through the late divers years depopulating-wars, their Country in many places was ruined, and much spoyled, and trade hindered. But now there is opportunity (through a concluded peace) of restoring and enjoying both. It's much divided in Religion, some are Papists, some *Lutherans*, others *Calvinists*. Pope *Leo* sending forth his Pardons and Indulgencies about 1517, *Luther*, an Au-

gustine



*gustine* Frier exclaimed against the Clergies dissoluteness and excess: writing also books against the Mass, and the Church of *Romes* superstitions, and against the disordered life of the Pope and his Clergy, against justification by works, as being by Faith only; whose doctrine was soon embraced and followed by divers Princes, and free Townes of *Germany*; Most of whose Princes follow *Calvin* or *Luthers* profession, (differing in some points, not here to be named particularly) *Calvin* being followed by the *Palatines* of *Rhine*, those of *Strasburg*, and most Sea-Townes. *Atunster* had many called *Anabaptists*, who were extirpated, and the Town as formerly.

**HUNGARY**, (so named from the *Huns* or *Hongres*, a *Scythian* people that dwelt there, and divided upon the North from *Polonia* and *Russia*, by the Mountain of *Carpatia*) is a Realm embracing also that part of *Dacia*, called *Transilvania*, it being environed with high Hills and Woods, as with Walls, which notwithstanding hath *Princes* of its own, not obeying *Hungaries* King. Its chief City is *Buda*, in the *Turks* possession, with the best part thereof. It is (by nature) provided for of all things; for there grows all sorts of grain, and divers fruits, in abundance: it brings forth Corn (in a manner) without tillage, and the Wheat enangeth every third year to a better kind. It yields also divers sorts of VVines, some whereof are very wholesome, and excellent as them of Candy. It so abounds in Oxen and Sheep as is admirable: also great store of Hares, Fallow Deer, Goats, &c. Likewise divers sorts of birds, as Goshawks, Partridges, and Pheasants, store of Fish in Rivers, Veins of Gold, Silver, Copper, Steel, and Iron, also they find Gold in the sand of Rivers; there is a little Tin and Lead. It abounds in Mineral Salt at *Maromarusia*, and other places, they cutting it like a stone: there is a Fountain whose water falling on the ground, turns into a stone. Yet we cannot say this Realm is very rich, as not much given to Arts and Trades, but practising Arms, and strong in war. That great part of the Country which the *Turks* are Masters of, is not so well-mannered, nor yielding so plentifully as formerly. As to Religion besides *Mahometanism*, which by reason of the *Turks*, is much dispersed, there are many opinions; all those that are in *Germany*, and also *Arrianism* hath got footing, and *Atheism* crept in. The Towns under the *Turk* have little of that accounted Heresy: the *Christians* much, for those called *Hereticks* are in fear of being impaled by the *Barbarians*, it too insolent.

**POLONIA**, or **POLAND**, (so called from its Plains, in their Language named *Poles*, situate from *Moravia* toward the East, and in a manner separated from *Silesia*, by the River *Odera*, and whose chief City is *Cracovia*) is at this day bigger then ever: *Lituania*, and *Livonia*, having been added to that Kingdom; so as from *Silesia* to *Muscovy*, it contains almost 120 *German*

mine Leagues, and as much from *Livonia* to *Hungary*. Its climate being cold, they have neither Olives nor Vines; but it abounds in all other things which the Earth is accustomed to bring forth; also in all sorts of Cattle, and in Fish; so that remote Countries tast of her fruitfulness. It contains great Provinces, *Poland*, High, and Low, *Livonia*, *Lituania*, *Samogithia*, *Masovia*, *Polhinia*, *Podolia*, *Russia* the black, and according to some, the Red, or Southern, *Podlaskia*, *Pomerania*, *Prussia*, which some call *Borussia* now divided into two parts, one belonging to the Duke or Marquess of *Brandenburg*, *Albert* being the first thereof; the other to the King of *Poland*; of whose part, *Marienburg* is the chief Town: a little above which, the River *Vistula* dividing it self, makes an Island excellent for fertility, and a great number of Villages and houses. Some place *Dantzick* in *Prussia*, much esteemed for shipping, and abundance of all Merchandise brought by Sea from the West and North parts, and by land, and by *Vistula*, running thorow the midst thereof. They make much money of their Honey, Wax, Flax, Hemp, Bees, Sheep, Horses, and Bugles. But their greatest profit grows by the Salt-pits of *Ocen*, *Vilgus*, and divers parts of *Russia*; likewise of Azure, and of Mines, of Amber gathered on the thow with little Nets, by men going naked into the Sea. *John Huss*, his opinion began at the first to disperse it self thorow the Countries subject to this Crown, which *Ladislav* violently opposed; For, refusing the offered Crown of *Bohemia*, and making a decree in a general Diet against it, he stopped its passage out of *Bohemia* into *Poland*, *Sigmund* also forbidding young men to go and study at *Lipsie*, and *Wittenberg*, in the time of *Luthers* doctrine, somewhat stayed the course thereof. But the Provinces near the *Baltick* Sea, participate much with the opinions of *Germany*: those confining with *Silesia*, *Moravia*, and *Hungary*, of their neighbours heresies: those advancing towards South and East, for the most part of the *Grecians*, and are not free from the opinions of the times.

**DENMARK**, or *Danemark*, or the *Danes* Country (so called from *Dan*, the first Lord thereof, long before Christ, which is bounded on the West by the *Germane*-Sea, towards the North by *Norway*; and whose Kings seat, and chief City is reckoned *Hassnie* or *Copenhagen*) consists of many parts, besides the Islands near them; *Jutia*, or *Jutland*, is called the *Cimbrick-Chersonese*, or almost an Island, first inhabited by the *Cimbrians*, the Bishoprick of *Rip*, *Arrius*, *Vandalia*: *Weynsfell*, or *Fensilia*; that is, the land or seat of the *Vandalls*, South *Jutia*, called *Nordalbinge*, comprehending, the Dukedom of *Schleswick*, (taking its name from the chief Town) and the Dukedom of *Holsatia*, so named from abundance of Wood, (therein) called *Holt* in the *Germane* tongue: *Scania*, a great Province, and joyning to *Denmark* by an Arm of land onely, which some call *Scandnavia*, instead of *Scandania*, that is, the pleasant *Dania*; The Islands of *Seeland*, or *Sialand*, the greatest

greatest of those of *Denmark*, in which *Copenhagen* stands: *Fionia* commonly *Fuyren*, taking its name of its beauty, and for what it yields, ninety Islands being comprehended under it, lying Southward, and most habitable; *Tassing*, or *Tosling*, a chief one among others; *Aroe* with divers Islands near it; Also the Island of *Huenes*, in which is the Castle of *Tranibourg*, full of Mathematicall instruments, very admirable and sure. The little Isle *Malmogic*, but very good. *Norway*, (which is subject also to the King of *Denmark*, though once a flourishing Realm) and borders on *Denmark* upon the South; upon the North, *Lapland*; its Metropolis was in old time called *Trondon*, now *Trundheim*, and reduced to a Burrough, the chief Town now of traffique, and where the Governour and Bishop remain, is *Berg*, or *Bergue*. *Iceland* (which some taking for *Thule*, are contradicted by divers others) is situate not under the first *Meridian*, but eight degrees beyond it; It's a hundred *Germane* leagues long, and 65 broad, whose inhabitants have Mountains instead of Towns, exceedingly cold, and mostly unmanured, especially toward the North; whose vehement winds suffer nought to grow. It's frozen eight Moneths, yet many places full of heat and fire underground, by an Antiperistasis of cold stopping the pores of the Earth. *Jutia* sends much Cattle, Butter, Cheese, Tallow, Hides, and many Horses into other parts, making much money of Fish, especially Herrings. *Holfatia* sends forth many Horses. *Fionia* makes great profit of Fish, and Wheat, chiefly Rye and Barley, also they send forth many Horses, and Oxen. *Scania* vents store of Fish, Silver, Copper, and Lead; *Gothland*, much Wheat, Cheese, Butter, Skins, Firre-Trees for Masts, and much Lime. *Norway* hath much money for the Fish *Berg*, very delicate; also for Cod, goodly skins, Butter, Tallow, Hides, fat of Whales, Tarre, Rastars, Masts, and boards. The King of *Denmark* maintains *Luthers* Doctrine throughout his Dominions, for *Christiern* the second, giving passage thereto into *Swetland*, caused it to be dispersed over all *Denmark*, being soon discovered after his return from *Sueden*, to be a *Lutheran*; but was expelled by his Subjects, with his Wife and three Children in 1523. Yet *Christiern* who succeeded him, marrying the Duke of *Saxonies* Sister, *Luther's* tavourer, gave himself wholly to root out the *Romish* Religion, which he easily effected.

THE Realm of *SWEDEN*, (belonging formerly to *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, having *Norway* for its bounds on the West, whose chief City is *Stockholm*) comprehends the *Dutchy* of *Finland*, *Gothland*, *Boddia*, or *Bothnia*, a part of *Lapland*, *Stricfinia*, a part of *Corelia*, the Islands *Alandes*, and some others of small esteem, so that those that have gone the length and breadth of *Sweden*, hold it much greater then all *Italy* and *France*, *Lapland*, and *Finland* being added. *Sweden* it self is the most fertile Province of all those of the North, bearing great store of grain; there is much Honey, Silver, Copper, Lead, Steel, and Iron, abounding wonderfully

fully in fish; seldome any beggars seen among them. Yet in many places (through the cragginess of the Mountains, moistnesse, and moorishnesse, it is more barren. The Ayre is commonly pure, nor the cold so violent as some perswade themselves; they live (most commonly) long, attaining an hundred and thirty, and an hundred and forty years, especially on the Mountains, and places more toward the Northern winds. They take store of very great Bugles. *Gothland* abounds in Corn, Cattle, pasture, horses, Fish, Lead, Iron, and Silver, Latten, and in one place good Iron. *Finland* is more pleasing then *Sweden*, and yields more Corn, being mostly in plains. *Bothnia* is not very fruitful, having many beasts with excellent skins, and much Fish. *Lapland* hath no Corn, but White Bears, and Ermines: Raine-Deer, for Horses, as big as a Mule; who will draw little Carts an hundred and fifty Miles in a day and night: they have night three Moneths together in winter, with a few hours little light. King *Gustave* brought *Luthers* Doctrine into *Sweden*, seizing upon what goods of the Church he pleased. Yet *Calvinism* was received by *Charls* his third son, who was Duke of *Vermeland*, *Sudermania*, and *Nericia*: *Henry*, *Gustaves* succellour, opposed not himself. *John* his brother succeeding him, was of another opinion, but durst not discover himself. Yet his Wife *Katherine* the King of *Polands* daughter, made him observe many *Catholique* customes. Yea the Queen (who had free exercise of her Religion) obtained some Jesuites for the people, in credit till her death, in one thousand five hundred eighty three. But they being soon after expelled, few remain of the *Romish* Religion. *Charls* uncle to *Sigismund*, *John*, and *Katherine's* son, usurping his Nephews Realm of *Sweden*, wholly advanced *Calvin's* Doctrine; yet there are many of the *Lutheran's* remaining.

MUSCOVY (lying in the midst of *Russia* the White) from whence all the Estates of this Empire draw their name, and are confined by *Lithuania* on the South, *Livonia* and *Finland* on the West; its chief City as of the whole Empire is called *Muskuva* or *Musko*, whose houses are most of wood; it's great, but very myric. The length of this Empire is 3000 miles, the breadth 1500; the longest day in the most Southerly part being but 16 hours and a half: but in the most Northerly part being but 16 hours and a half; it's part in *Europe*, part in *Asia*. So that considering what it contains, he might have a higher style than they commonly give him, which is, The great Duke or Knez of *Muscovie*: yet when they are sufficiently informed of the Countrie's yielding him obedience, they term him Emperour, and give him as much honour as ever was done to any Prince. The Provinces besides *Muscovia* it self, are the *Dutchy* of *Polodimer*, and *Bafe Novograd*, in which are two Towns of wood, of the same names: the Province of *Rezan*, the *Dutchy* of *Vorotina*; the Province of *Severe*, very great, containing many Towns: the Province of *Smolensko*, (situate on the

river *Neper* or *Borysphenes*) taken from *Poland's* King by *Basilium* the great Duke, whose chief Town is *Smolensko*. *Mosaiski*, taken from King *Alexander* of *Poland*, by *John Basilium* his predecessor, *Biele* or *Bielski*, with a Town of the same name upon the River *Opske*: the Dutchy of *Roschoue*, whose Town stands upon the famous river *Volgas*. *Tuver*, one of the greatest in *Russia*, whose Town *Tuverde* is greater and statelier than *Mosko*. *Pleskonia* or *Pleskoua*, its chief Town being *Pleskouu*, powerful and walled, which the other Towns want. *Novogrod* the great, the greatest Dutchy of *Russia*, taking its name from *Novogrod*, the greatest and richest Town of all towards the North. The Country of *Voloske* or *Volske*, the Province of *Corelle*, extending to the frozen Sea, so as they have not any dark night. *Bieleziaro* or *Biolysero*, having a Town so called, in whose impregnable Fort the great Duke commonly lodges his Treasure, and whither he retires, when pressed by enemies. *Volokde*, the Dutchy of *Jaroslav*, with a Town and Castle so called, on the river *Volga*; also the Principality of *Rostonu*; the Province of *Duvine*, so called from the river watering it, which comes from two rivers, *Duvine* in the tongue signifying two. The Sun in the Summer Solstice shines there 21 hours and a half, but two hours and a half in the winter solstice. The Province of *Susdali*, having a Bishop's See; but now (through the *Tartars* incursions) in a manner desart. The province of *Vsuatka*, which was taken from the *Tartars* by the great Duke *Basilium*. *Pennia*, having a Town of the same name on the river *Vishore*. *Jugur* or *Jugaria*, from whence the *Hungarians* coming, seized on *Pannonia*, calling it from *Jugaria*, *Hungarie*. *Petzore*, very long bending to the frozen Sea, whose longest day is 22 hours. The *Cnemisses* are also under him, and *Nordues*; other Northern Countries acknowledg him, as *Obdore*, *Condore*, *Culomorie*, and *Lappia*; likewise certain Hoards of *Tartarians*, as *Casan*, &c. They have great store of skins of Elks, Staggs, Bears, Wolves, and Sables, which they sell into *Europe*, also Flax and Hemp. They send great store of Corn towards the *Caspian* and *Euxine* Seas, besides Iron, Wax, Tallow, Wood, Ashes, whereof they sell abundance to strangers. *Nicholas* Port is of great Traffique, whither the *English* trade much. They exchange the Commodities of their Country for cloath, which the *Armenians* bring to *Astracan*, and the *English* to *Nicholas* Port. The *Knez* his riches may easily be conjectured great, he being Lord and absolute Master of all things. They received Religion from the *Greeks* in 987, or 942, in the which although persisting, yet they have added (in time) many superstitions. They say, themselves and the *Greeks* are onely true Christians: that the *Romans* and others are fallen from the primitive Church: They celebrate their Masse and ceremonies in their own language, which is the *Slavonian* tongue; they suffer not *Jews* to live among them. Processions are very frequent there, and though it be exceeding cold, yet they go far. They never passe before a Monastery, Temple, or Crosse, (where-

of

of the Streets are full) but horsemen (alighting) and footmen also, kneel down, making the sign of the Crosse, saying thrice, *Miloy Hospodi*, or *Lord have mercy upon us*. It's lawful for Priests to marry but once. They deny Purgatory, yet pray for the deceased faithful. They hold it not lawful to celebrate any Councils, but the first seven, whence grows their discord with the See of *Rome*. They have a Metropolitan, to whom they attribute as much as Papists do to the Pope: and without whose advice, the Prince determines not of any important thing; yet they say, the Metropolitan should depend on the Patriarch of *Constantinople*. The Prince strictly observes all Ceremonies of their religion: for when they change a dish at Table, or give him drink, he makes many signs of the crosse. He fails not at any fast, and beats the ground with his fore-head through devotion, as the rest do, especially at the elevation of the Sacrament.

The *Nordovois* on *Muscovie's* frontiers use circumcision; worshipping no Idols, as the *Pagans*, nor are they baptized; worshipping one onely God Creator of all: going into the field, (which is seldom) they eating and drinking together, offer to God the first of all, casting it against Heaven, as of any thing they gather.

**DACIA** (bounded on the West with *Hungary*, and so named from the *Daci* first inhabiting it after the *Moesi*, who gave them place) is divided into *Transylvania*, *Moldavia*, *Walachia*, *Servia*, *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*.

**TRANSILVANIA** (of which before in *Hungary*) whose chief Town is *Alba Julia*, was committed unto *Bethlem-Gabor* by the Sultan *Achmet*, after the death of *Gabriel Batour*, who succeeded *Justine Boscay*, in 1609.

**MOLDAVIA** (situated on the North end of *Transylvania*, whose chief City is *Occazonia*) was utterly subjected (in 1574) to the Turks by *Selimus* the second; which revolting and combining with the *Transylvanian* and *walachian*, they have since prosecuted it with great alteration. To this belongs little *Bessarabia*, between Mount *Hoemus* South, and *Lithuania* North; so called from the *Bessi*, whose chief Town is *Kilim*, made a Turkish Province, in 1485.

**WALACHIA**, to be called *Flaccia*, from *Flaccus*, who planted here a *Roman* Colonie, seated between *Transylvania* and *Danubius*: The chief City being *Sabinium*. It abounds in all necessaries for the life of man: Mines of gold, silver, and iron; Salt-pits, wine, Cattle, chiefly a number of good and great horses, pure refined brimstone; it joyned with *Moldavia*, upon *Amarash* the third's requiring the tribute of 60000 Ducats to be doubled, in 1594.

D d d d d 2

SERVIA

**SERVIA** (lying between *Bosnia* and *Rascia*) whose chief City is *Sionburg*, once the *Despot's* seat distinct from *Rascia*, lying between *Servia* and *Bulgaria*, which had also a *Despot* of its own. But one *George*, a Christian by profession, and Turk by affection, being *Despot* of both, and the Turks tributary, after his son *Lazarus* his death, who succeeded him, *Mahomet* united them to his Empire in 1454.

**BULGARIA** (having on the West, *Rascia*; on the South, *Thrace*; whose Mother-City is *Sophia*, now the Turkish *Beglerbeg's* seat of *Greece*) is so called from the *Scythians* of *Bulgar*, who conquered it; who were bitter enemies to the Christians, till the King thereof, with all his people, were baptized in 868; over which *Theophylact* was chief Bishop. It was of a Kingdom made a province by the Turk in 1396.

**BOSNIA**, so called of the *Bessi* of *Bulgaria*, and bounded on the East with *Servia*, its chief City is *Cazachium*. It was erected a Kingdom in 1420, and not long after, *Stephen* the King, being taken and flayed alive, by *Mahomet* the great, it was turned into a Mahometan Province in 1464.

**SLAVONIA** (having *Hungary* on the North; on the West, part of *Italy*; so called from the *Slavi*; before, *Illyricum*, a courageous, proud, and stubborn people) is now divided into *Illiris*, *Dalmatia*, and *Croatia*.

*Illiris* (whose general name is now given to one part thereof, and commonly called *Windismarch*) is bounded on the East with *Danubius*, whose chief City is *Zatha* on *Danubius*, and now a member of *Hungary*.

*Dalmatia*, having on the East the River *Drinus*; on the West, *Croatia*, (for whose Town *Zara* or *Jadara* (standing on the Sea-shore) there hath been great Wars betwixt the *Hungarians* and *Venetians*) (as of great importance) its Inhabitants were the *Dalmatians*, whose Metropolis was *Dalminium* on *Drinus*. It was made tributary to the *Venetians*, upon their new Lords the *Hungarians* ravishing some *Venetian* Damofels. But now is divided between the Turk and *Venetian* who yet hath the greatest part.

*Croatia*, called antiently *Liburnia* and *Valeria*, and having on the East *Dalmatia*, whose chief City is *Gardiska*, on the River *Sarus*. The *Croats* are corruptly called *Corbais*; it is entitled a Dukedom; but subject both to the *Austrians* and *Venetians*, who carried it in 1007. These three Countreies thus called *Slavonia*, use their own *Slavonian* tongue, and is observed to be used by all the Turkish Emperours, Captains and Souldiers. The Country is most fit for grazing; whose Sheep and other Cattle bring forth young twice a year, the sheep being shorn four times. They are by outward profession of Religion, Christians, following the Greek Church,

GREECE

**GREECE** (so called from *Græcus*, who founded *Athens*, and accounted the Mother of Arts and Sciences, except the Mathematicks) was given a name onely to the Country about *Attica*, till the *Macedonian* Empire had swallowed up the other Common-wealths; but now including *Peloponnesus*, *Achaia*, *Epirus*, *Albania*, *Macedonia* and *Thessalie*, *Migdonia*, and *Thrace*, beholds *Italy* on the West; the *Ægean-Sea*, &c. on the East. The *Greeks* were diversly called, *Achæi*, *Myrmidones*, &c. They were once brave men for war, learning, virtue, government and behaviour; for which, they scornfully called other Nations Barbarians; now most fit for the *Græcians* themselves, being unconstant, illiterate, uncivil, riotous, and lazie. They spake Greek, whereof there were 5 dialects. The Common, *Attick*, *Dorick*, *Æolick*, *Ionick*. *Peloponnesus* is a Peninsula, tyed to the main land, but with an *Isthmus* of 6 miles broad, so called of *Pelops*, and *Naxos*, which signifies an Island. It contains 6 Provinces; *Elis*, having *Arcadia* on the East, whose chief City is *Elis*; another is *Olympia*, where was the Statue of *Jupiter Olympicus* 60 cubits high; in honour of whom, the Olympick games were begun by *Hercules*. *Messenia*, having *Elis* on the North, whose Metropolis is *Messene*, wherin *Menelaus* (*Helena's* husband, who occasioned *Troy's* destruction) reigned. *Arcadia*, (so named from *Arcas*, formerly *Pelagias*) which hath *Elis* and *Messenia* on the West; Its chief City being *Phosphis*. *Laconia*, on the West of which lyeth *Arcadia*; whose chief City is *Lacedæmon*, once a famous Common-wealth by means of the Laws of *Lycurgus*, which being kept almost 700 years, it flourished all the while. They were accounted the chief of all the *Græcians*; But the *Athenians* beginning to eclipse their glory by conquest in *Asia*, they warred against them, and after many losses took and dismantled the City. *Argolis*, denominated from its chief City *Argos*, built by King *Argus*, and bounded on the South with *Laconia*; in which was born *Agamemnon*, Captain of the Greek Army before *Troy*, in which Army were 69 Kings carried over by 1224 ships. *Achaia Propria*, having *Elis*, *Arcadia*, and *Argolis* on the South. Its chief City is *Corinth*, at the foot of the *Acro-Corinthian* hills, built and named by *Corinthus* the son of *Pelops*; which flourishing by reason of its commodious situation, (the Sea washing its walls on both sides) abused some Roman Embassadors sent them: for which, *Lucius Mummius* (taking it) burnt it to the ground: and now is of small note, and called *Crato*. *Peloponnesus* was conquered by the Turk in 1460.

**ACHAIA** (once named *Hellas*, from *Helles*, *Deucalion's* son) is divided into *Attica*, which hath on the West, *Megaris*, whose chief City *Athens* being built by *Cecrops*, was called *Cecropia*, but took its name from *Athens*, which is *Minerva*, famous for three special things: the Citizens inviolable faith, and unfained affection: for Schollars, from whose University learning was

was dispersed throughout all *Europe*: for valiant Captains, as *Alcibiades*, *Aristides*, *Themistocles*, *Pericles*, &c. who notwithstanding dyed in banishment, or violently at home.

*Megaris*, (having on the South *Bœotia*) whose chief City is *Megara* of *Megara*, where *Euclide* the Geometrician taught. This Country having shaken off the *Cretans*, came to a height of prosperity: which lasted not long in that degree; yet were a free people till the coming of the *Macedonians*.

*Bœotia*, which hath *Attica* on the East, taking its name from *Bœ*, signifying an Ox. Its chief City is *Thebes*, built by *Cadmus* a *Phœnician*; in which Town dwelt *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who so cruised the *Lacedemonians* in two battles, that they never re-obtained their former puissance. *Philip* of *Macedon* first got footing in *Greece*, by making this flourishing Common-wealth submit to his mercy.

*Phocis*, having *Bœotia* on the East, (whose chief Town is *Cyrra*, as also *Aulicira*, famous for its Ellebore very Medicinal for madness); in it is, Mount *Helicon* consecrated to the *Muses*, also the hill *Cithæron*, both striving with *Parnassus*, whose two tops even kiss the Clouds.

*Locris*, bounded on the East with *Ætolia*, whose chief City is *Naupactum*, now called *Lepanto*.

*Ætolia*, (bounded on the West with *Epirus*) its chief Town is *Chalcis*: The *Ætolians* were the most turbulent people of *Greece*, never at peace with their Neighbours, seldom with themselves.

*Doris*, which hath *Bœotia* on the East; its chief City is *Amphissa*. This people causing *Philip* to return into *Greece*: *Demosthenes* whetting on the *Athenians* by his biting *Philippica* against him; their Armies meeting, and the *Athenians* being vanquished, *Philip* was made Captain of all *Greece*.

*Epirus*, bounded on the North with *Macedon*, whose Eastern part is called *Acarmania*; its western, *Chaonia*; and in which Country *Olympias* (*Alexander* the Great his Mother) was born, as also *Pyrrhus*, who warring with the Romans, it was after his death subdued by *Paulus Æmilius*, who destroyed 70 Cities thereof in one day; in which is the City *Nicopolis*, built by *Augustus*, and *Ægium*, nigh which, he and *Anthony* fought for the World's Empire.

*Albania*, bounded on the South with *Epirus*; in which is the City *Albanopolis*; and *Durazzo* at first called *Epidamnus*, and then *Dyrrhachium*, under whose Walls was the first bickering between *Cæsar* and *Pompey's* Souldiers. Its chief City was *Croia* in *George Castriot's* time, named *Scanderbeg*; under whose walls *Amurat* the second, having with very great loss besieged it, sorrowfully and wretchedly dyed.

#### M A C E D O N I A

**M A C E D O N I A** (whose Southern part is *Theſſaly*) is bounded on the East with *Migdonia*, and called *Æmathia* from King *Æmathus*; *Hæmonia*, from Mount *Hæmus*; *Macedonia*, from King *Macedo*: the first City whereof is *Scydra*, another is *Pella*, where *Alexander* the Great was born. It was never very famous, till King *Philip* and his son *Alexander's* days.

**T H E S S A L I E**, (wherein is the exceeding high Hill *Olympus*, being by Poets taken for Heaven) in which pleasant and fruitful Country, was situate the delightful Valley, *Tempe*, five miles broad, and six long, whose chief City is *Tricca*, where *Heliodorus* was Bishop: another is *Pharsalis*, nigh which, *Cæsar* and *Pompey* fought for the Lordship of the World, *Cæsar* being Conquerour.

**M I G D O N I A**, (having on the North *Thrace*, and in which is the Hill *Athos*, 75 miles about; and so high, that its shadow reacheth to *Lemnos*, 40 miles) its chief City is *Stagira*, where famous *Aristotle* was born.

**T H R A C E**, now called *Rumeli* or *Romania*, from Roman Colonies there planted, and *Constantinople's* being called New *Rome*; (bounded on the East with *Macedon*) wherein stands *Constantinople*, which being built by *Pausanias* a *Lacedemonian* Captain 663 years before Christ, was by him called *Byzantium*; it's in compass 18 miles, most fitly seated for an Empire; as overlooking *Europe* and *Asia*, and commanding the *Euxine-Sea*, *Propontis*, and *Helleſpont*. It was taken by *Mahomet* the Great Turk, in 1453. Being re-built by a *Constantine*, called the Great, (therefore called *Constantinople*) the son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch thereof; and it was lost by a *Constantine*, surnamed *Paleologus*, the son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being also Patriarch. Its people were accounted very bold and valiant, who were called by some *Auriscopus*, because every one was a law to himself; which had they been of one mind, and under one King, *Herodotus* saith, they had been invincible; but two brothers striving for the Kingdom, and at last appealing to *Philip* of *Macedon*; he taking an advantage, seized on it, and kept it. The Town of *Sestos* on *Helleſpont* was also in this Country, right over against *Abydos*, on *Asia* side, which two places were famous for the love of *Hero* and *Leander*; in whose room stands two Castles, who examine all ships passing that way, and receiving the grand Signior's customs.

**I N** the *ÆGEAN* Sea (which receiveth *Helleſpont's* waters after 40 miles course) also (whether so called from *Ægeus*, *Theseus* his father, who here drowned himself; or from *Æge*, once a chief City in *Eubœa* Island; or that the Islands lye scattering like the leaps of a Goat, from *Ægydus*, so signifying,) are divers Greek Islands,

Islands, the chief whereof are, *Samothracia*, where *Pythagoras*, and *Samo* a Sybill were born, whose chief Town is *Samia*.

*Lemnos*, once called *Diopolis*, from its two chief Cities *Hephestia*, wholly decayed; and *Lemnos* or *Myrina* yet continuing; where also the sovereign Mineral called *Terra Lemnia* is digged.

*Lesbos*, so called of *Lesbos*, who married *Mitylene*; of which name is a chief City therein. In this Island, *Sappho*, who invented the Sapphick verse, *Pittacus* a wise man of Greece, and *Theophrastus* a notable Physitian, were born.

*Chios*, (whether so named from *Chione* a Nymph, or from *Chio*, snow; or from *Chio* (now called *Sio*) the chief City; so called from the Greek letter  $\chi$ , in whose fashion it was built. Herein chiefly or onely groweth the gum *Mastic*).

*Euboa*, now *Nigropont*, which was rent from *Achaia's* Continent by an Earthquake, between which, is but a little *Euripus*; the cause of whose ebbing and flowing seven times a day, *Aristotle* not finding, is said to throw himself into the Sea, with these words; *Because I cannot comprehend thee, thou shalt comprehend me*. Its chief Cities are *Chalcis*, once joyned by a bridge to the Continent. *Seyrus*, *Achilles* his lurking place, sent thither by his Mother, being forewarned he should be slain in the *Trojan* war.

*Salamis*, nigh *Megaris*, noted for *Xerxes* his numerous Navy, overthrown by the *Athenians* and their Allies. For which *Isle* also, there was much contending between the *Athenians* and *Megarenses*.

The *Sporades*, so called from *σπορα*, to *disperse*, because they are scattered about the Sea; their number is 12, The principall of which is named *Melos*, from its much honey.

The *Cyclades* (so denominated, because they lay in a circle about *Delos*, the chief of them, noted for the Temple of *Apollo*, and for not suffering any to die or be born therein) are 53 in number, whereof (besides *Delos*) these four are remarkable; *Samos*, where the Tyrant *Polycrates* lived without any mischance, till (at last) he was miserably put to death by *Orontes*.

*Coos*, (but now *Lange*) in which *Hippocrates* the reviver of Physick was born; where also *Esculapium* was worshipped: its chief Town is *Coos*.

*Glaros*, but small, whither the Romans were wont to banish delinquents. The 69 Kings at *Troy's* siege, were Kings but of these small Islands: which stand so close together, that 20 may be seen (in a clear day) at one time; yet are they part in *Europe*, part in *Asia*; called also the Islands of the Arches, as being in the sea called *Archi-pelagus*.

*Creet* or *Candia*, (once called *Hecatompolis*, as having 100 Cities therein, whose Metropolis *Candia* is much inhabited by the *Venetians*) which is situate in the mouth of the *Aegean* Sea, (in length 270 miles, in breadth 50) was above mentioned in the *Venetian* Common-wealth, to whom it is subject; whose ancient Inhabitants were much addicted to lying, as appears by *Paul's* citing *Epimenides*

*Epimenides* words, *Tit. I. v. 12*, yet were excellent sailers. The Island is very populous, and fruitfull of Wines, together with Gum, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Oranges, Lemmons, Raisins, Mellons, Citrons, Pomegranats; but, through its heat, deficient in Corn; other Islands there are also in this Sea, as *Claudi*, *Dio*, and *Agilia*.

The chief Islands of the *Ionian* Sea (named either from *Ionius*, whom *Hercules* killing, here drowned, or from the Region *Iona*, in the utmost part of *Calabria*, or from *Io* daughter of *Inachus*) are, *Cithera*, now *Cerigo*, (mentioned before). It was formerly called *Porphyria*, from abundance of Marble therein, and hath a Town of the same name with the Island, out of whose Temple dedicated to *Venus*, *Helena* was willingly ravished by *Paris*, it's also environed with Rocks.

*Sitrophades*, being two Islands lying against *Messenia*, whose ravenous birds, the Harpies, were driven away by *Zethus* and *Calanus*. They are now inhabited onely by *Greek* Friars, called *Caloyres*, that is, good Priests.

*Zacinthus* or *Zant*, so called of *Zacinthus*, son to *Dardanus*; whose chief City is called also *Zant*, 60 miles from *Peloponnesus*, for the Customs of whose very Curtans they pay 18000 yearly Dollars to the *Venetians*. They being very frequently troubled with Earthquakes, build their houses very low. Over the judgment Hall door of whose City *Zant*; there are written Latine Verses to this purport--

*This place doth hate, love, punish, keep, requite;  
V. Luptuous riot, peace, crimes, Laws th' upright.*

THE *ECHINADES*, little Isles, five in number, onely famous for the battle of *Lepanto*. *Cephalenia* over against *Acharania*, called at first *Mcena*, then *Teleboat*; but *Cephalenia*, from *Cephalus*. *Coregyra*, now *Corfu*, so called from the Virgin *Corfu*; it's but twelve miles from *Epirum*; whose chief City *Corfu*, the Turks have found impregnable through two unaccessible Fortresses on its top, esteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whose two Captains are sworn during their two years command, to have no converse or intelligence with each other. *Ithaca*, now *Val de Campare*, on the North East of *Cephalonia*, in which *Ulyses* was born. *Leucadia*, of the white Rocks between it and *Cephalonia*, its chief City is *Saint Maure*, most inhabited by *Jens*. All these Islands (besides this *Leucadia*, lost to the Turks) have been defended by the *Venetians*.

THE *MEDITERRANEAN* Isles, (from the *Mediterranean* Sea, so called, because it runs in the middle of the Earth, and called by late Writers, the *Levant* Seas, (because they are toward the East of *France*, *Spain*, &c. *Levant*, in *French* signifying the Sun-rising) are; *Sicily* (of which before in *Spain*) called at first

EEEE

first

first *Trinacria*, for being triangular, it butteth into the Sea with three Promontories. Its narrow Seas between it and *Italy*, being but a mile and half broad, on each side of which are *Scylla*, and *Charibdis*: *Scylla* being a dangerous Rock on *Italy* side, and *Charibdis* a devouring Gulf on *Sicily* side; It is seven hundred miles in compass, and had seventy two Cities therein, now but twelve. The chief being *Palermo*, where the *Spanish* Vice-Roy resides, which stands in *Mazara*, the Western Province of the three, (in one of whose Cities the Tyrant *Phalaris* lived, that tortured *Perillus* another Tyrant, in his own Brazen Bull which he had made to torment others in) the other two being *Valis de Noto*, and *Mons. Malta*, (formerly *Melita*, where *Paul* shook off the Viper without hurt) is but sixty miles from *Sicilia*, and as much in Circuit, barren, as being situate on a Rock, covered but with three foot of earth; yet there is abundance of Cotton Wooll, and store of Pomegranates, Citrons, &c. It was given to the Knights of the *Rhodes*, being expelled thence by the Turk, in 1522, who now being called Knights of *Malta*, have ever since defended it against the said Turk. They are 1000 in number, and at their admittance into that order, are sworn to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their superiours, live on their Orders revenues, and live chastely. Their great Master, though a Friar, hath a high stile; who is chosen out of the sixteen called Crosses, who are of great authority among them.

*Corfica*, of which in the state of *Genoa*, was first called *Cyrus*, (now *Corfica* from a Woman of that name) its chief City being *Bastia*, on the North East, upon a commodious Haven, where *Genoa's* Governour resides, with a strong Garrison. It's 120 miles long, and seventy broad.

*Sardinia*, (lying South from *Corfica*, and but seven miles from it) is divided into *Cape Lugudory* towards *Corfica*, mountainous and barren, belonging to the *Genoans*, and *Cape Caligary* toward *Avis*, larger and fruitfull, appertaining to the *Pisans*, who disagreeing about their bounds, Pope *Boniface* the eighth, giving it to *James* King of *Aragon*, and his successours; they drove them thence, and made themselves Lords thereof in 1324. Its chief City is *Calari*, built by the *Pisans*, where the *Spanish* Vice-Roy hath his residence. Yet this City is governed by a Councell of its own Citizens.

The *Baleares*, (so called from the Greek word βάλλω to cast, because they were very excellent slingers) are two; *Majorca* or the greater, which is sixty miles from *Spain*, and 300 miles in compass, whose chief Cities are, *Majorca*, a University, and *Palma*, in which *Raymundus Lullius* was born.

*Minorca*, or the less, is nine miles from the other; and 150 miles about; whose chief Town is *Minorca*: both which Islands, (through the *Romans* teaching them the use of *Ferrets*) destroyed the multitude of *Conies*, who undermined their Houses and Walls.

Nigh

Nigh these are two small ones; *Ebusia*, whose chief City is *Yrica*: Salt is its chief commodity; and *Olbusa*, called *Frumen-taria*; Both whose men and women, as of an adjoining Islet, are very good swimmers: *Pedro* the fourth King of *Aragon*, united all these four to his Crown, in 1343.

There are also lesse Islands herabouts; The *Vulcanian* or *Æolian*, being eleven in number; the two chief of whom, are *Lipara*, from whence the rest are now named.

*Vulcania*, where *Vulcan* was worshipped: near these, was the first Seafight between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*.

The Isles of *Naples*, being eighteen, the chief whereof are *Ischia*, whose chief Town is so called: *Caprea*, and *Ænaria*.

The *Ligurian* Isles; whereof the principall are *Elba*, or *Ithia*; whose chief City *Cosmopolis*, *Cosmi* of *Medices* builded.

*Gallinaria*, from its many wild Hens, and *Giglio*.

*Gades*, or *Cales*, situate without the Mouth of the strait of *Gibraltar* (called of old *Fretum Herculeum*, on whose South-side upon Mount *Abiba*, *Hercules* placed his Pillars, on which he inscribed *Nihil ultra*, or no farther) as being from *Gibal Tariff*, a chief leader of the Moors into *Spain*, then the Western bound of the World; and in which there was a Temple consecrated to *Hercules*, that great traveller. The *English* took it (in 1596) in one day.

The *British* Isles (with those of *Zealand*, and *Denmark*) are called the Isles of the Ocean; of which before.

Little is to be said of the riches or fruitfullness of either *Bosnia*, *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, or *Russia*, as being for the most part full of Mountains, yielding little; and most of the plains and valleys in *Bulgaria*, are full of thick Woods, and its middle part more stony and rough then the rest; but *Bosnia* hath much Silver Mine, and *Servia* Mines of Gold. They were of the Religion of the *Greeks*, in which Countries now *Mahometism* bears most sway, they being subjected to the Turk.

As for *Greece*, it formerly exceeded all others in *Europe*, both for the Ayre's temperature, and goodness, and the soils delightful fertility, bringing forth all sorts of fruits, and nourishing much Cattle; also Fish abounded in its Seas and Rivers; with all Plenty and Wealth, for that it was so easily to be arrived at, through its Gulfs, Ports, Isles, Demy Isles and Rivers; and questionless, would still yield great profit to the Husbandman, if pains were taken in the tillage thereof: but the *Greeks* (knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all subject to the Great Turk and his souldiers) omit the same: yet they transport and send into other parts, Wines, Oyl, Copper, Vitriol, some Gold and Silver, Damasks, Velvets, Grograms, &c.

*Pliny* commends *Thrace* for fertility, and its Corn for weight and substance, of which they reap store in divers goodly plains; but it is mostly cold, and in the dayes of *Copronymus* the Emperour, *Thracius Bosporum* (by which *Constantinople* is situated, and which com-

Precedes a

prehends

prehends thirty good Ports in *Asia* and *Europe* (though most on *Europe* side) was (with a part of the great Sea) so frozen, that the Ice was twenty five Cubits thick, (with a great quantity of Snow thereon) and being increased 20 Cubits above the face of the Sea, men might travail, and Waggon laden, out of *Europe* into *Asia*, and from *Constantinople*, to the entry of *Danubius*, as on dry land) whereby it is not (of it self) a rich soil, nor of a pleasant Ayre, the seeds ripening leisurely, and the Vines and Trees yielding more leaves then juice and fruit. To leave the antient Religion of the *Greeks* (when, notwithstanding all their humane wisdom) they in a Pagan manner worshipped an unknown God, in various manners, and under the name of divers gods; the Faith of Christ was received in some part thereof (as in *Theſſalonica*) soon after the departure of Christ to the Father, and the spirits Baptism given, as it was in *Rome*, to which Church *Paul* wrote also an Epistle; but degenerating from the power into the form of Religion; all the *Greeks* became Christians in name and profession; who withdrawing themselves long ago from the Church of *Rome*, upon some points, as the manner of the administering the Supper, &c. (some of which were mentioned in *Muscory*) and not acknowledging the absolute supremacy of the *Romane* Bishops, set up Patriarchs, that is, chief fathers of their own, whom they acknowledged for their heads, and spiritual Governours: of which there are four. The Patriarch of *Jerusalem* over the *Greeks* of *Palestina*; of *Alexandria*, over *Arabia* and *Egypt*: of *Antioch* presiding over *Syria*, *Armenia*, and *Cilicia*; of *Constantinople*, whom the Country and territory of *Greece* acknowledge, together with *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*, part of *Poland*, the *Adriaticque* and *Egean* Isles, as also *Creet*, and *Cyprus*, and *Rhodes*, of whom in *Asia*. There are many Caloyers, or Greek Priests or Monks, dispersed over all *Greece*, where (for a tribute to the Turk) they are permitted free exercise of Religion; yet not without 1000 indignities from the domineering Turks. About 6000 of these Caloyers inhabit Mount *Athos*, a privileged formerly granted to them of *Basilis* Order, onely to dwell in; where are Monasteries and Reliques, visited from all parts, also stately and adorned Temples, which Mountain the *Greeks* as much esteem as the *Latines* do *Rome*. They all do something, or exercise some Mechanick Trade, labouring to maintain the whole family, by going out of the Monastery to work. They wear woollen shirts which they make themselves; being apparelled almost like Hermites. They are so little given to Learning, that many of them can neither write nor read. If any passe over the Mountain on any occasion, they furnish him with victualls without any money; These the Turks hold in such esteem, that they are very charitable towards them.

A

A Description of *ASIA*.

*ASIA*, which is also called (by the Poets) *Lydia*, by a Synecdoche of a part for the whole; according to some, takes its name from the Fenne *Asia*; after others, from *Asia* the Mother of *Prometheus*: according to *Hippias* with *Eusebius*, from *Asius* a certain Noble-man: after others, from *Asia* the fabulous Daughter of the Ocean and *Thetys*. It is the greatest among all the parts of the world known to the Antients, containing from East to West, 130 degrees of the great Circle, taking its beginning from that Meridian, whose distance from the Fortunate or Canary Islands is 70 degrees, even to that Meridian which is distant from the Fortunate Islands 200 degrees: which 130 degrees being numbered in the 30th Parallell, which cuts almost thorow the midst of *Asia*, do make above 1300 German miles. It is the East part of the World, both in respect of *Africa* and *Europe*; whence perhaps it is called *Natolia*, from the Greek word *ανατολη*, which signifies the East. It is disjoyned from *Europe* by the River *Tanaïs*, and also by the *Euxine* and *Egean* Sea: but it is disbanded from *Africa* (not according to some) with the River *Nilus*: but with the *Sinus Arabicus*, or bosome of *Arabia*, and by a line which is brought out from thence into the *Mediterranean* Sea. It cleaves to *Africa* by an Isthmus or a piece of land of 18 German miles; and is washed towards the West with the *Mediterranean* Sea, and is compassed in its other parts with the *Eoan*, *Scythick*, and *Indian* Ocean. It is also divided into the greater and lesse; the lesse is next to *Europe*; and by a special name called *Natolia*, and likewise *Turcomania*, because the Turks hold it all at this day; whose Countries are, *Cilicia*, *Pamphilia*, *Caria*, *Lycia*, *Ionia*, (which with *Strabo* is strictly called *Asia*, *Lydia*, *Æolia*, both *Mysia's*, *Phrygia* the lesse, and greater, *Bithynia* and *Pontus*, *Paphlagonia*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Lycaonia*, *Pisidia*, and *Armenia* minor; Greater *Asia*, is that which is more remote from *Europe* toward the East, whose chief parts are, 1. *Syria*, *Palestina*. 2. *Armenia* the greater. 3. *Chaldea*. 4. *Arabia*, which is divided, *Petræa*, or the stony; *Deserta*, or the wilderness; and *Fœlix*, or the happy *Arabia*. 5. *Persia*; and then *Tartaria*, *Hycania*, *Bactriana*, *Parthia*, and lastly, *India*; which *India* is divided into the Old and New. The bound of Old *India* in the East, was the Country of the *Sinans*; and is divided into that which is within the River *Ganges*, or the Western: Whose chief or greatest City is *Calicut*: and into that which is without *Ganges*, or the Eastern, which is extended even to the golden *Chersonese* or *Malagua*. The Eastern part of New *India*, is the Kingdom of *Catay* or *Cathaia*, which is called Upper *India*; but the Southern part is the Country of the *Chinois*, and likewise *Japonia*, with other parts found out by the *Portugals*, which embrace the Lower *India*.

But



But *Asia* is divided into five Empires; the *Moscovite*, part whereof is onely therein as aforesaid: the *Ottoman* or *Turkish*; the *Persian*, the *Tartarian*; and the *Indian*. Its Seas are, the *Mediterranean*, and the Ocean; and its chief Rivers, *Euphrates*, *Ganges*, and *Indus*. The greatest Mountain of *Asia*, and as it were the father of the other Mountains there, is *Taurus*: which reckoning his bendings and windings, is 6250 miles long, and 375 broad; having divers names in diversity of places, as *Caucasus*, *Sarpedon*, &c. and according to some, *Imaus*: yet *Imaus* may be accounted a second distinct Mountain in *Asia*; for although it crosse *Taurus* even (as it were) with right angles; yet as *Taurus* divideth (beginning about *Caria* and *Cilicia*) the North of *Asia* from the South: so *Imaus* (beginning in the North shoar) doth the East from the West: so making *Scythia* within *Imaus*, and *Scythia* without *Imaus*. *Asia* (from the beginning) was the most excellent part of the world: both in regard (as is believed by most) of the Creation of mankind there; and also, for all the matter of history of the Old and New Testament there done, except a few histories of the Apostles: and so because there the true Church was first gathered; because Christ (whose light and life is the Saviour of Mankind) there preached, dyed, and rose again. Likewise for that in the same place, were established the Monarchies of the *Assyrians*, *Persians*, *Babylonians* and *Medes*. And lastly, because in *Asia* was the first original of all Nations, as also of all tongues and arts. This indeed was once its dignity and prerogative, but at this day it is a fold for Turks, and other blasphemous and very wicked Gentiles. Its head or chief City was once called *Troy*; but now the Cities therein are not so fair and decked, unlesse for the astonishing things related of the City *Quinsay*; which may be reckoned the greatest in the World. And thus much of *Asia* in general.

**A** *NATOLIA*, or *Natolia*, (called *Asia* the Lesse, in which were *John's* seven Churches, to wit, *Ephesus*, *Smyrna*, *Thyatira*, *Laodicea*, *Pergamus*, *Philadelphia*, and *Sardis*) its first Country to be mentioned is *CILICIA*, on the South-East; whose chief Cities are, *Nicopolis*, built by *Alexander* the Great, for his victory over *Darius* of Persia, (its name signifying a City of victory) nigh the straights of *Antitaurus*, called *Pile Cilicie*; wherein with 30000 he slew 110000 of *Darius* his men, who were in all 600000. *Pompetopolis*, built by *Pompey* after vanquishing the Pyrats, who spoyled even Italy's Villages it self. *Alexandria*, built also by *Alexander*, distinct from that in *Egypt*, therefore named *Alexandretta*. And *Tarsus* or *Tarshish*, where *Paul* was born, and whither *Jonah* would have fled when sent to *Nineveh*. In the waters also of this Country's River, *Cidmus*, was the Emperour *Frederick* the First, drowned, when bathing himself.

*Pamphilia*

**P** *AMPHILIA*, frontier'd on the East by *Cilicia*, and part of *Capadocia*; called (saith one) by the *Arabians*, *Zina*. A chief Town thereof is *Perga*, in the midst of the Country, where *Diana* was worshipped. *Phaselis*, *Atalia* is the greatest and strongest of its Towns, being Maritime; and is now called *Satalia*, giving also her name to the adjoining gulph. Nigh the River *Eurymedon* herein, *Cymon* the *Athenian* Captain overthrew, first the Sea forces of the *Persians*, then their Land-forces, (by attiring his men in the *Persians* habit, stowed in their taken ships, and waving their colours) in one day.

**L** *YCIA*, watered with the River *Xanthus*, (whence they thereabout were called *Xanthi*) bordereth on the West of *Pamphilia*; afterwards called *Lycii*, from *Pandion's* son, *Lycus*, whose chief Town now is *Patras*: also *Phaselis*, formerly as much enriched and haunted by Pyrats, as *Algiers* is now. Before the Romans conquered this Province, they were governed by 23 men chosen out of their 23 Cities.

**C** *ARIA* (denominated from *Cara* its King, who invented Augury or divination by birds flying) is on the West of *Lydia*; whose chief Cities are *Mindum*, which though but small, had wide gates. *Halicanassus*, where *Dionysius* (who wrote Rome's first 300 years history) was born: also *Magnesia*, which *Xerxes* assigned to *Themistocles*, (when banished) to whom he fled for entertainment: for joy of whom, *Xerxes* cryed out oft-times in his sleep, *Habeo Themistoclem Atheniensem, I have Themistocles the Athenian on my side*. All which Countries are now called *Caramania*, from one *Caraman*, *Aladine's* Captain, the *Zelzuccian*. Now a Sanzackship of the *Oguzian Turk*.

**I** *ONIA* (which hath been taken for *Asia Propria*, alone, although that include likewise, *Caria*, *Lydia*, *Aolia*, and both *Phrygia's*, and of which *Asia*, Acts 19. 10, 27. must be understood) lyeth on the North of *Caria*; in which, seven Cities (whereof *Smyrna* was one) strove for the birth-place of *Homer*. *Ephesus* (standing by the Sea-Coast, and said to be now called *Figena* or *Fiena*) is also a principall City thereof, to whose Gospel-Church, *Paul* wrote a lively Epistle: it's accounted also *John* the Evangelist's buriall place; wherein also was *Diana's* Temple, which being contrived by *Ctesiphon*, and 200 years in building, was for its largenesse, furniture, and workmanship numbered among the Seven Wonders of the World, and was set on fire by *Erostratus*, (the night that *Alexander* was born, after 6 times firing before) who did it to make himself famous by doing evil, since he could not by good. These *Ionians* rebelling against *Darius Hystaspis*, having before been subdued by *Harpagus*, *Cyrus* his Lieveenant, and the *Athenians* assisting them therein, chiefly moved *Darius* to invade

vade Greece. Little *Doris* borders on its South-side; whose chief Towns are *Crithis* and *Ceraunus*. *Ionia* is now called *Saracian*, from one of *Aladine's* successours, of that name.

**LYDIA** (which was also called *Meonia*) took its name either from *Lydus* a Nobleman, or from *Lud*, who was *Sem's* son, and bordereth on the North-East of *Ionia*, wherein stand the Cities of *Sardis*, (which being ruined by an Earthquake, was rebuilt by *Tiberius*); *Pergamus*, where parchment called *Pergamenum*, was invented; where also *Galen* was born, who lived in health 140 years. *Laodicea*, *Thyatira*, and *Philadelphia*; of which *Sardis* was the strongest. It was a Kingdom before *Rome's* building, whose last King was *Cræsus*, one of the richest of old; who after subduing *Doris* and *Æolis*, was with his Kingdom subdued by *Cyrus*. But the *Lydians* rebelling afterwards, he subduing them, dispoyled them of all instruments of war, training that powerful Nation in all loose and effeminate living. In this Country runs the River *Mæander* with his winding banks. They are said to be the first coynerers of money, and inventers of dice, ball, and Chess, &c. to beguile hunger (for 22 years) every second day; Till they being more fruitful than the soil, sent a Colony under *Tyrhenus* into Italy, which their plantation is called, not now *Tyrhenia*, but *Tuscanie*.

**ÆOLIS** (South from *Lydia*, and lying on the *Ægean* Coast, whose people together with the *Dorians* and *Ionians* of *Asia*, were of old once accounted Greeks: the other *Asians*, *Barbarians*) hath three Maritime Towns; *Myrina*, and *Cuma*, now called *Cephis*, and *Foceæ*, now named *Foglia Vecchia*, that is, the old leaf.

**N**igh unto *Æolis*, are the high and low *MTSIA*; whose chief City was of old called *Lampſaca*, in which *Priapus* a god was worshipped in a beastly manner and form. *Cyzicus* also was another City therein. The River *Granica*, called also *Lascara*, is in this Country where *Alexander* vanquished *Darius* his Lieutenants. There was also formerly the Town of *Adramittium* an *Athenian* Colonie, now named *Laadermitti*. This people are said to be so base of condition, that one of no worth was called *Myſiorum poſtremus*, or the worst of *Myſians*.

**PHRYGIA minor** or the lesse (called *Phrygia* from *Phryxus*, who fleeing from his Mother *Io* Queen of *Thebes* her treacheries, seated himself here; and now called, they say, *Sarcum*) lyeth on the North East of *Æolia*; whose chief City was *Troy*, (called *Ilium*) so named from *Tros* the third King thereof; but it was built by *Dardanus*, (who fled into this Country out of *Corinth*, having killed his brother *Jafens*) and called *Dardania*, in the year of the World 2487; for in the once-famousness of this people, many or most Nations would from them draw their original. There

arg

are yet (as some say) the admirable ruins of great and old *Troy* to be seen: whose length may be discerned (by the walls foundations yet extant) to have been about 20 *Italian* miles in length, reckoned 15 of *English*, yet but two miles in breadth, lying along the Sea-side between the three Papes of Mount *Ida*, (here situated, and now called *Gargara*) and the farthest end, Eastward, of the River *Simois*; whose delightful and fruitful plain, abounding in Corn, fruits, and delicate wines, may be called the garden of *Natalia*: the Inhabitants of whose 5 scattered Villages, are most Greeks, the other Jews and Turks. *Priamus* the 6th King thereof, giving leave to his son *Paris* to ravish *Helena* Wife of *Menelaus* King of *Sparta*, made the Greeks renew a former quarrel, who after ten years siege, possessed the Town, and burned it with fire; having lost in that time the best part of a million of men: and the *Trojans* even (as is reported) an incredible multitude more. Some place the City *Adramittium*, mentioned in *Acts* 17. 2. and also *Pergana* or *Pergamus*, in *Phrygia* the lesse; the one whereof we have placed in *Myſia*, the other in *Lydia*. This Province (with *Æolis*, and a part of *Lydia*) are named *Carauſia* from *Carafus*, one of *Aladine's* charers; and have a long time been subjected to the *Ottoman* Turk.

**PHRYGIA Major**, or the Greater, lyeth on the East of *Phrygia minor*, whose City *Appamia*, called formerly *Sibotis*, was the greatest of the Country. *Midaia*, or *Mideium*, the seat of King *Midas* the son of *Gordius*, whose seat was the City *Gordion*: he being a Plow-man chosen King of this kingdom. Also the City *Colasse* was here: to whose *Colossians* *Paul* wrote an Epistle. *Pepus*, where *Cibele* their goddesse was worshipped, and thence called *Dea Pefnuntia*. *Pſamneticus* king of *Egypt* gave verdict of this peoples greatest antiquity; by shutting up two children, who were suckled by Goats, and all humane company forbidden them: who learned onely the word *Bee* of the Goats cry; which in the *Phrygians* language signifyeth bread, and nothing at all in any other tongue. This with the other part of *Lydia* was called *Aidin*, from *Adin*, another of *Aladine's* successours. The River *Sangarius* runs near the City *Myſſia*, and in *Bythinia*.

**BYTHINIA** (nigh whose River *Granicus*, *Alexander* obtained his first victory over the Persians, slaying 20000) is on the North side of *Phrygia*, and bounded on the West by the mouth of *Pontus*; whose famous Towns were *Nicomedia*, founded by *Nicomedes* King hereof, an ancient Town pleasantly seated on a little hill, with many springs of water, (though it be ruined) where many Turks and Greeks inhabit. *Chalcedon*, where was the 4th General Council against *Nestorius* his heretic. *Nice*, now called *Nichia*, or as others *Isnich*, where was held the first General Council in 314 against the *Arrians*; as also another by *Irene* the Emperesse, wherein the lawfulness of worshipping Images was established.

F f f f f

established; and (as was thought) by substantiall Arguments, *Prusa*, new *Bursa*; a great City near Mount *Olympus*, a long time the seat of the *Othoman* Kings, till *Malomet* the First removed it to *Hadrianople* in *Thrace*. Herein also is Mount *Stella*; both where *Pompey* the Roman General overthrew *Mithridates*; and also where *Tamerlain* the Tartar vanquished *Bajazet* the Turk, who being taken, after two years close confinement, ended his dayes by breaking out his brains against an iron Cage, wherein he was enclosed.

**PONTUS** (on whose South-East *Bythinia* is situate) and which (being divided from *Bythinia* by the River *Sangar*) was a distinct Province from it; but they being afterwards reduced into one, are now called *Bursia*, as one saith; or *Bechfangiall*, as another. Its principal Towns are *Tomos*, whither *Ovid* was banished by *Augustus Caesar*, of which (whatever was the true) the cause pretended was his lascivious books, of the Art of Loving. *Claudiopolis*, *Flaciopolis*, and *Pithium*, where *John Chrysostome* remained, when he was banished. The King of this Country was *Mithridates*; who being once a friend, and Allie of the Roman Commonwealth, (in hope of the Monarchy of *Asia*) wrought (by a plot) the death of 150000 Roman Souldiers, scattered thorow *Anatolia*, in a night; dispossing two or three Neighbour-Princes of their estates, for their faithfulness to the Romans; and stirring up the Greeks with all the Islands, (but *Rhodes*) to rebell. So that after 40 years much shaking their estate, he was with much ado conquered. But when his son *Pharnaces* rebelled against him, he killed himself, having first (as is reported) attempted to poyson himself, which he could not do, for the Electuary called *Mithridate*, which he invented, and long used. The River *Parthus* watereth this Country.

**NEXT** is *PAPHLAGONIA*, (on the East of *Pontus*; and which small Country heretofore contained four different Nations; one of whom never warred, but they certified their enemy first of the time and place of fight) whose chief City is *Pompeopolis*, as being built by *Pompey*. *Sinope* is also there noted for store of Brass, Lead, &c. Likewise *Citrus*, built by *Citorus* the son of *Phryxus*. It is called *Paplagonia*, from *Paplagos*, the son of *Phineus*, and in whose bowels runs the River *Parthenius*.

**GALATIA** or *Galogracia*, (wherein in *Paul's* time was a gathered Church) is bounded with *Paplagonia* on the North, and was so called from the *Gaules*, who came thither under *Brennus*, three of whose Towns are remarkable for somewhat; *Ancyra*, for a Synod there holden; and now for making Chamlets, and is called *Anguiri*. *Tavium*, in which *Jupiter's* Temple was a privileged Sanctuary. And *Pisus*, a place of great Traffique. This valorous people were by degrees weakened by Asian pleasures; who

who (as one observeth) were so far from assailing the Romans in the Capitol, that they lost their own Country to *Manlius* a Roman General; *Deiotarus* being their King.

**LEUCOSTRIA**, or *CAPPADOCIA*, stands on the East side of *Galatia*; about the banks of whose River *Thermadon*, dwelt the *Amazons*, Women of *Scythia*, who came from thence hither with their Husbands, in *Sesosthis* his time, King of *Egypt*. But the men being treacherously murdered by the inhabitants, called *Themiscyrus*, whom they held a strict hand over: they (through desperatenesse) both overthrew the Conquerours, and greatly enlarged their dominions; and going to men their neighbours thrice a year: they sent the Males to their Fathers, keeping and trayning up the Females in warlike Discipline; whose right breasts (it is said) they cut off, that they might not be hindered in fighting. Six Cities are here of note; *Amasia*, whither the Turkish Emperours send their eldest sons (after Circumcision) till their death. *Mazaca* or *Neo-caesarea*, where *Basil* the Author of Monasticall lives lived; *Nazianzum*, where *Gregory Nazienzen* was Bishop; *Erzyrum* on great *Armenia's* confines, and so the Turks randevouz in their Persian expedition, when *Constantinople* was possessed by the *Latines*, which *Mahomet* the great took from *David*, the last Emperour in 1461. *Sebastia*, where *Tamerlane* is said to have buried 12000 alive. *Trapezond* the Common Imperial seat.

**LYCAONIA** is bounded on the North with *Cappadocia*, whose most eminent Cities are *Iconium*, where the *Seluccian* *Aladine* Kings formerly kept their Court; *Derbe* mentioned in the *Acts*, together with *Lystra*; by whose inhabitants, *Paul* and *Barnabas* curing a Cripple, were admired as gods. This Province is watered with the River *Lycus*; and in whose Southpart is the Hill *Chimera*; on whose top, Lions roaring; in whose middle, Goats grazing; and in whose lower part, Serpents lurking: Poets have feigned it to be a Monster.

**PISIDIA** hath *Lycania* on the West. Its Cities are *Lysania*, and *Antiochia*, called in the *Acts*, *Antiochia of Pisidia*. *Xenophon*, the Greek Historian aiding *Cyrus* in war (against his brother *Artaxerxes Memnon*, with 12000 Grecians) who was by him overcome and slain; *Xenophon* retired home, the best of them being lost; yet by this example, he animated the *Spartans*, and afterwards the *Macedonians* to attempt *Persia's* Conquest.

**ARMENIA** Minor, or the lesse, (to which *Pisidia* is joyned Westward, and whose Eastern bounds is the River *Euphrates*) is thought to be the land of the Mountains of *Ararat*, where the Ark rested; the territory of whose chief Town *Malexond* abounds in Wine and Oyl; and which Province long remained

under the Romans, they having forced *Antiochus* the Great out of *Asia* by *Scipio*, and possessed the same: But the Turks at length wrested it (as they did all lesser *Asia*) by degrees from the Greek Empire.

**A**S for *ASIA* - Major, or the greater; *Syria* therein, which hath on the East *Euphrates*, is first to be briefly surveyed; which some divide into five Provinces; *Palestina*, *Phœnicia*, *Cœlosyria*, *Suria*, and *Camogena*. We will contain under it onely three, (to wit) *Phœnicia*, *Cœlosyria*, and *Syria*, *Phœnicia*; speaking of *Palestina* as a distinct Countrey. In *Syria* is Mount *Libanus*, so famous for Cedars. But by one that travelled to the place where the Cedars formerly grew, there was but 24 to be seen, and seventeen more nine miles Westward, on the Mountain. *Phœnicia* (which lyeth all upon the Sea, South towards *Judæa*) her chief Towns were *Tyre*, now called *Sair*, an Island indeed; but so near the main land, that *Alexander* filled up the Sea-passage with earth when he besieged the Town; at last taking it, though with extraordinary expence of men, Money, and toil: it was once famous for her Purples and Merchandise; whose Kingdome was very ancient, and of long continuance; dispersing also many Colonies over the World; and whose two Kings of most note, were, *Hiram*, *Solomon* first confederate, and *Pigmalion*, *Dido*'s brother, who built *Carthage*. *Sidon*, now *Sur*, in a manner, equall in beauty and power to *Tyre*, and both so noted for dying of Purple, that the Poets sometimes call it *Tyrien*, sometimes *Sydonien*. It is now governed by an Emir or Prince of the *Drusians*; the off-spring of the Christians under *Godfrey* of *Ballein*, who though they have (as it were) forgot their Religion, do still maintain their freedom against the Turks. *Ptolemais* or *Acon*, or *Acre*: a place almost invincible, when besieged by so many Christian Princes, in the time of the holy War, so called: two of whom were *Richard* the first, and *Edward* the first, Kings of England. *Joppa*, whence *Peter* was sent for, by *Cornelius*: which still retaineth its name, of which Cities, (saith one) scarce any remainders are to be seen at this day, more than of *Joppa* and *Acre*. *Sarepta* also was here, whose Widows son *Eliab* raised from the dead, having been sustained by her in famine; the lower part of which Countrey was *Asbers* seat; it abounding with Wheat, Oyl, Honey, and Balm.

**C**OELOSRYIA, (which, some say, is properly the Countries between *Libanon*, and *Anti-Libanon*, whence springs the River *Orontes*, now called *Farsara*) Its head or chief City is *Damascus*; which being so pleasantly and fruitfully situated; *Mahomet* would not enter therein, lest being carried away with its pleasures, he should forget the business whereabout he was sent. *Abraham*'s servants founded it, and *Paul* was convinced nigh it, and converted and comforted in it. *Benbadad*, &c. were Kings of this *Syria*; also the City *Hieropolis* was herein, where was the Hea-

thenith

thenith Temple of the Syrian Goddesse: whose Priests used juggling tricks to deceive the people.

**S**TROPHEONICIA, is the third of *Syria*, whose Metropolis of all *Syria*, was *Antioch*, where the converted Gentiles were first called Christians; which name and profession, the Heathen so hated; that in fourty years time, there being a great number of that name, they were afflicted with ten persecutions; which were so cruell, that (except on Jan. the first) there were some thousands put to death every day: But *Constantine* the great, (not onely favouring them, but becoming of the same profession) put an end to all these persecutions. *Antioch* is now rather a heap of ruins than any thing else. *Arppo*, so called from abundance of milk thereabouts, a place now of wonderfull traffique from all parts; in the Scripture it is called *Aram Sobab*. *Tripolis*, so called for that it was thrice built, (standing a mile from the Seaside, near the foot of Mount *Libanus*) and removed into three sundry places. The Town and Province of *Palmyra*, was likewise in *Syria*, the which *Zenobia* a worthy Woman governed: who swaying those Eastern parts, and standing in opposition with *Gallien* for the Empire; *Aurelian* the Emperour taking her, led her triumphantly through *Rome*, and that in such pomp, as never was (in triumphs) greater to be seen. The *Syrians* were called *Aramites*; whose King *Tigranes*, by Election, (*Seleucus* his stock failing through civill wars) joyning with *Mithridates* against the Romans, was vanquished by *Lucullus*, an 100000 being said to be slain, but with the losse of five Romans, and an hundred wounded. Then again, by the same *Lucullus*; and at length, yielded to *Pompey*, leaving all *Syria* to the Romans, and contenting himself with *Armenia*, and *Media* onely. But it was wrenched by the *Saracens* out of the Romans hands.

**P**ALESTINA, which lyeth between the Mediterranean Sea on the West, and *Arabia* on the South, and being situated between the third and fourth climates; its longest day is fourteen hours and a quarter) is divided into two parts by the River *Jordan*, which riseth at Mount *Libanus* foot, from two fountains called *Jor*, and *Dan*. Where, of the *Israelites*, *Reuben*, and half of *Manasseh* dwelt beyond it, the other on this side thereof; which latter part is subdivided into *Judea*, properly so called, *Samaria*, and *Galilee*, and *Idumea*; for when the men of *Judab* returned from captivity out of *Babylon*, then began they first to be called *Jews* (even as the new comers out of *Assyria*, at the *Israelites* first transportation, were called *Samaritanes* from *Samaria* the chief City) and then this Countrey was first divided into the four Provinces above said. It hath had divers names, as *Canaan* from *Cham*'s son so called; the promised land from Gods promise to *Abraham*; of *Israel*, from *Jacob* surnamed *Israel* for his faith. *Judea*, from the *Jews*, or Tribe of *Judab*, the chief of the twelve; and *Palestine* from the

the *Philistines* a powerful Nation therein; and since Christ it hath been called the Holy Land. Here are two Lakes by which *Jordan* passeth, of *Galilee* the Lesser, and of *Tiberias* or *Genesareth* the Greater; also the dead Sea (into which *Jordan* falls at last) called by the *Greeks* the Lake of *Asphaltites*, and the dead Sea, because no living creature can endure its bituminous or slimy flavour; nigh which once stood *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*; where (as some have written) a Tree groweth with Apples very fair to behold; but being touched, they moulder to nothing.

TO begin with *GALILEE*, for that it is the very North part of *Palestine*, it is divided into the upper and lower. In the upper were the two Tribes of *Asher* and *Naphtali* (with a part of *Dan*) seated, four of *Ashers* chief Cities were mentioned in *Phoenicia*; another was *Aphek*, by whose Wall falling, were 27000 of *Benhadads* men slain; when as *Abah* had slain (in battel) 10000 of them before; also *Giscala*. The Cities of note in *Naphtali*, were *Capernaum* by the Sea of *Galilee*, which (Christ said) though lifted up to Heaven, should be brought down to Hell. *Cinnereth*, then *Genesareth*, whose Lake was so called, *Jabin*, at which *Joshua* met twenty four Kings in battel. *Lesbem* being understood of *Laisb*; which the *Danites* took, *Josh.* 19. 47. proves that a part of *Dan* were here seated also. This was called *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*, either as being the nearest to the *Gentiles* of *Palestina*, or because *Salomon* gave it to King *Hiram*. The Lower, which beginning at the Sea of *Tiberiades*, is but twelve miles long, and five broad, in whose center, *Nazareth* (from which City Christ was called *Jesus* of *Nazareth*, and where *Mary* was saluted by the Angell) almost standeth; from the several miraculous removes and transportations of which Chamber of *Mary* there, is begun that deceitfull imposture of the Lady of *Loretto*; over which they would have to be believed, *Paul* the second built a most stately Temple; Here was also, *Cana*, *Bethsaida*, *Tiberias*, *Gaba*, since *Hippopolis*, from *Herods* Garrisoning horse therein: *Enbadda*, nigh which *Saul* slew himself; *Daberoth*; in the Valley of *Israel*, famous for many battels fought in it; which two last Cities were in *Issachars* Tribe, the rest were in *Zabulon*, both which possessed this Country, in which also was Mount *Tabor*, where Christ was transfigured, and the brook or River *Chifon*; *Julian* the Apostate called Christ a *Galilean* in contempt, because of his much conversing in this Lower *Galilee*.

*SAMARIA* (taken here for the Province of *Samaria*, lying between *Galilee* and *Judea*, not for all the ten Tribes) containeth *Ephraim*, *Gad*, *Reuben*, and the Tribe of *Manasseh*, one half whereof was situate beyond *Jordan*, as was said, the other on the *Mediterranean* Sea; chief Cities of which latter, were *Bethsan*, on whose walls, *Saul's* dead body was hung; and which (being long after rebuilt by the *Syrians*) was named *Sythopolis*; *Cesarea*, *Palestina*, before,

before, *Straton*: *Herod* repairing it and calling it by *Cesars* name, where *Herod Agrippa* was for his rhetorickal pride, eaten of worms; and where *Paul* made defence against the Oratour *Tertullus*. *Jezreel*, where *Naloth* was stoned. *Thebes*, from whose wall, *Abimelech* (whom nigh the City *Ephra*, had before slain seventy of his brethren) was mortally wounded with a stone. Here stood also *Endor*, where *Saul* asked counsel of a Witch in his distresse.

The Metropolis of *Ephraim* was called *Samaria*, a stately City. It stood on a Hill, built by *Omri* King of *Israel*, and denominated from *Shemer*, of whom the Hill was bought. It being afterward razed, was repaired by *Herod*, and called *Sebaste* from *Sebastos*, the *Greeks* word for *Augustus*. *Bethel* was another of its Cities, which signifying the house of God, was by *Jeroboams* Calves there erected and the Idolatry there committed, called by the Prophet *Beithaven*, that is, the house of vanity. *Sichem*, nigh which *Judas Maccabaeus* overthrew *Lyfias*. *Lydda*, since *Diospolis*; where *George* for *England* was said to be beheaded. Here was also *Ramatha*, *Joseph* of *Arimathea's* City: and *Shiloh*, or *Silo*, (on a hill) where the Ark was, till taken by the *Philistines*. *Gad*, beyond *Jordan*, contained the chief Towns, *Gadara*, and *Gergefa*, two distinct neighbouring Cities; but both one in desiring Christ to depart their coasts; also *Ramoth Giliad* fatal to wicked and wilful *Abah*, seeking to recover it from the *Syrians*. Here stood also *Succoth*, and *Gaboth Gilead*, where *Saul* and his sons were buried, and *Rabba*, where *Uriah* was slain; likewise *Beitharam*, which *Herod* rebuilding also, called *Julia* in honour of *Augustus* Wife, now of the *Julian* family. In the other half of *Manasseh*; (which Countrey was called *Basan*, *Oz* the Gyant being its last King) and also part of that countrey called *Decapolis* (divers times mentioned in *Matthew*, *Mark*, &c. from its ten chief Cities) some of whose principal Towns were *Edrey*, *Ogs* seat, *Astaroith*, where the Goddess *Astaroith* was worshipped in form of a sheep; and *Hus*, or *Jobs* birth-place. In the Tribe of *Reuben*, was strong *Mascheru*, (on a Rock) where *John Baptist* was beheaded, *Bethbara* where *Moses* exhorted the *Israelites*, and *John* long after baptized. *Ramath Baal*, whither *Balaam* was brought to curse the people, and whose god *Baal* (some have said) was beastly *Priapus* aforementioned, finally *Abel*, *Sittim*, in *Moabs* plains, where the *Israelites* last encamped, and where the wood grew whereof the Ark was made. The *Samaritanes* were (after the ten Tribes carried away) *Aegyrians* sent thither by *Salmanassar*, who being deceitfull, were deadly enemies to the Jews in distresse, but in their rest and prosperity, they would be their Cousins; so that they were for their mungrel Religion, not onely accounted Schismaticques, but also reprobates, with whom the Jews conversed not; and accounted the word *Samaritane* among the worst they could give to Christ.

**J**UDEA contained the Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, and is now accounted as large as them: all the remarkable Cities of which two great Tribes, to speak particularly, would be too tedious. In *Judah* was *Jethir*; near which, King *Asa* (by his God's help) overthrew *Zerah* King (not of the *Ethiopians* beyond Egypt, but) of the *Arabians* nearer home, having 1000000 men. *Hebron*, a very ancient Seat of the sons of *Anak*; which *Anak* (the word signifying a chain for ornament) it appears, wore such a chain; the Gyant being enriched with his enemy's spoils. Near this Town was also the Plain of *Mamre*; whither the Angels came to *Abraham*: here also was *David* anointed King by the Tribes; and kept his Regal Seat before the taking of *Jebus*, afterwards called *Jerusalem*. *Tekoa*, where the Prophet *Amos* dwelt; in whose wilderness, the Lord destroyed the Moabites, Ammonites, and men of Mount-Seir, in *Jehoshaphat's* time, by setting the two former against the latter: and then against each other. *Bethlem-Judah* (for there was another *Bethlem* in *Zabulon*) where Christ was born; and the Infants suffered by *Herod*: amongst whom, *Herod's* own son, at nurse, being slain, *Augustus Caesar* said, He had rather be *Herod's* hogg, than his son. *Emaus*, (afterwards *Nicopolis*) where Christ made himself known to two disciples; when their hearts had burned within them, as they travelled reasoning with him. Herein likewise, are the hills of *Engedi*, at whose feet were Gardens of *Balsamum* or *Opobalsamum*: for whose Trees, *Cleopatra* sending to *Herod* to plant them in Egypt, he, as not daring to refuse, plucked them up and sent them. In a Cave of these hills also *David* cutting off the lap of *Saul's* garment, his heart (by God's witness in his conscience) smote him for it.

*Benjamin's* Cities were *Gilgal*, where *Joshua*, after *Moses's* death performed several acts as preparatories to his success and conquest of *Canaan*; as, circumcising the people, keeping the Passover; pitching 12 stones near it; a memorial of dividing Jordan to give them passage; eating of the fruits of the land; and where *Agag* was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*. Strong *Asi*, where the *Israelites* (purging the Camp of *Achan* the thief) seized the City by a stratagem, having been first discomfited. *Misphe*, even in the midst of the Land and peoples common assembling place, was with *Gilgal*, made the Judgment-Seat, whither *Samuel* went yearly for that purpose. *Gibbath*, where, in the quarrel of the Priest's daughter being forced, that Tribe was almost extirpated. *Gibon*, whose Gibeonites obtaining peace of *Joshua*, and *Saul* afterwards killing some of them, a famine came on the Land, and was not appeased but with the hanging of his seven sons by them. *Jericho*, whose Walls falling down at the sound of rams-horns, it was razed, and a curse denounced on the builder thereof; which being attempted in *Abiath's* time by *Hiel* a Bethelite, for the pleasure of the place, he lost his eldest son at the foundation of its Walls; and

## CHAP. IV.

Of the Tyrian Kings, the building of Carthage, of Lycurgus the Law-giver, and the beginnings of the Medes and Macedonians.

**A**Bout the same time, wherein to both kingdoms of the *Hebrews*, Princes of their own Nation were as chief, and for a long space after both kingdoms were extinct, there was a kingly government at *Tyre*, a place inhabited of the *Sydonians*: the which was built two hundred and forty years before the Temple was founded by *Solomon*: (a) *Josephus* affirmeth this out of the Annals or yearly Chronicles of the *Tyrians*. That time happens on *Gideon's* Lieutenanthip, and the year before Christ, 1247, before the destruction of *Troy* almost the seventieth year. But Antiquity hath blotted out the remembrance of the former Kings of *Tyre*; neither of any of them is there an ancienter than *Abibal*, and his son *Hiram*; who lived in *David's*, and *Solomon's* time: and being joyned in league and friendship with them both, he also plentifully supplied this latter with matter and cunning Work-men to build the Temple.

*Ithobaal* the high Priest of King *Astartus*, is named to have reigned the eighth from *Hiram*, whose daughter *Jezabel*, *Abab* the wicked king of the *Israelites* took in marriage. Moreover, *Pygmalion* is reckoned the eleventh from the same *Hiram*; who deprived *Sichem* (*Hercules* Priest, the husband of his sister *Elisa* or *Dido*, gapping after his riches) of his life. But *Dido*, all her riches being secretly put into Ships, nor a few companions of the flight being gotten, sayled into *Africa*, where buying a field of (b) *Hyarba* the Governour of the Tauny-Moors, she built a Town, which they called *Byrsa* at the first; (that was the name of a Tower) after that, *Carthage*. That departure is delivered by (c) *Josephus* out of the Records of *Phœnicians*, to be in the seventh year of *Pygmalion*. But *Carthage* is said to be founded in the 144 year after the Temple was begun, which is the 316. year after the misery of *Troy*, before Christ 868 years. Therefore the account of *Virgil* is least agreeable, who determined *Dido* to be equal in time to *Æneas*, whom it is certain, among the Annals, to have lived almost three hundred years after. For although some of the Antients have written the building of *Carthage* to be before the taking of *Troy* by siege: yet those have not judged *Dido* the sister of *Pygmalion* to have been the author of it.

At the same season, wherein a new Town is placed in *Africa* by the *Tyrians*, *Lycurgus* the son of *Euxomm*, of the stock of *Proculum* or the *Europontides*, founded the Common-wealth of the (d) *Lacedemonians* in *Greece* with most wholesome Laws, whose brother *Polydeamus* the King being dead, when his Wife would agree with him in marriage, through the death of a son which she carried in her womb, the lust of the woman being wisely shifted off, or mocked, he ordained the young Prince as yet an Infant, to be placed

H

from

Anno 3704.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4185.

(a) Joseph. 8.  
Ant. q. ch. 8.  
The year of  
the Jul. Cir.  
3467. before  
Christ, 1247.

*Hiram* king of  
*Tyre*.

*Ithobaal*.  
3 King. 16. 31.

*Dido* and the  
building of  
*Carthage*.  
(b) Solinus,  
chap. 30.

(c) Joseph.  
against Apoll.  
pag. 1043.

*Virgil* is taken  
notice of.

*Lycurgus*.

(d) Plutarch.  
of *Lycorg*.  
Justin, Book

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

from his birth in the Kingly Throne: and resigning him the kingdom, he afterward purely administred the Common-wealth in the place of a Guardian. *Charilaus* (that was the name of the Child) being ripe of age, that he might purge away the envy of an affected dominion, going afar off, he brought back a frame of Laws and civil discipline, composed from the custome of divers sorts of people, into his Country. First of all, he divided equally the ground of *Sparta* amongst them all: he utterly took away the use of gold and silver, as the cause of strifes and all wickednesses, weighty pieces of Iron-money being brought in. And lest riot should give an occasion of getting wealth, he both forbade all to feast publicly, and also to accustom themselves with thrifty and hard fare. A great sedition arising, brought almost death on him, giving in charge these and other statutes to his Citizens, the which while he endeavourerth to avoid by flight, *Alcander*, his head being turned about, put out his eye, looking back by chance. By this spectacle their minds being bent to pity, the author of that wicked act is committed to punishment, whom he receiving into his house, so bound to himself by gentleness and intreaty, that none from thenceforth was more friendly. In that manner his Laws being openly received, that he might give an everlasting continuance to them, he told them that he would go to the Oracle at *Delphos*, and bound all his Citizens with an Oath, that they should change nothing of his Lawes before he returned. So he going into *Creet*, remained there even untill his death. (a) *Tertullian* relateth, he taking it grievously that the *Lacedemonians* had changed the Laws given them by him, ended his life by voluntary hunger. Moreover also, he dying, commanded his bones to be cast into the Sea, lest they, being brought back to *Sparta*, the *Lacedemonians* should believe that they were loosed from the bond of their oath. The time of these things, by reason of the disagreement of writers cannot be certainly concluded. (a) Some will have him to have flourished under the first Olympiad, others that he was before them an hundred years, and more than that.

A whole age before the first Olympiad, the old Kingdome of the *Assyrians* failed; *Sardanapalm* the last King being despised by *Arbaces*, the chief ruler of the *Medes* for his riot and sloath, and after his army disperfed, forced to dye. It was a custome of the *Assyrian* Princes delivered of old, that they should offer themselves to be seen of none, because they did lead a life shamefull and not becoming men, among flocks of Harlots. Contrary to this custome *Arbaces* being admitted, when he had beheld *Sardanapalm* drawing or carding wool among Harlots in womens apparell, being much moved with the unworthinesse of the thing, revolted from him. And after some batrels managed with a changeable event, last of all he forced him, being overcome, to a despairing of his Kingdome and life. Therefore betaking himself into an inner room of his Pallace, all his treasures being heaped on a pile of wood, he cast himself on it, and burnt himself alive, that by this bold

(a) Apolog.

(a) *Probus*.  
El. 1. p. 150.  
(b) *Cret*, with  
Died. 1. p. 83.  
& *Athen* book  
12. Just. 1. of  
fame Chr.  
The begin. of  
the *Medes*.

bold enterprife, however he might shew himself a man. So the royall power of the *Medes* was founded in *Asia*, about the eighth year of *Iehu* King of *Israel*, but the third year of *Iosb* the son of *A-baziah*, King of *Judah*, before Christ 876. The first in the *Medes* order reigned *Arbaces*, the last *Assyges* the son of *Cyrus*. There were nine Kings in all, who enjoyed their affairs 317 years.

But *Herodotus* hath delivered things a little otherwise concerning the *Medes*. For he telleth that the *Assyrians* held *Asia* 520 years. Afterwards the *Medes* fell off from them, who when they had lived very long without laws and Government, at last King *Deioces* was chief over them; in whose prudence of declaring right, or civill Law, they were made skillful. By this king, was the Town of *Ecbatana* built.

Sixty and two years after the beginning of the *Medes*, *Amaziah* reigning in the Tribe of *Judah*, but *Ieroboam* of *Israel*; the kingdome of the (a) *Macedonians* was founded by *Caranus* a Grecian the brother of *Phidon*, (b) him who first is said to have found out measures and weights. The lineage of these men is drawn from *Hercules*, from whom *Caranus* is reckoned by *Dexippus*, the eleventh; by *Pellennius*, the sixteenth; who, a great company of men being drawn together out of all *Peloponnesus*, came into *Macedonia*, and there began to consult of a Kingdome. Hence the Kings of *Macedonia*, and also the *Alexandrians*, arising from *Lagus* *Protonoy*, a *Macedonian*, call'd themselves the sons of *Hercules*. The beginning of *Caranus* out of the Chronicle of *Eusebius*, agreeth with the year of *Abraham* 1204, of the Jul. Cir. 3901. which is the 38th year before the first Olympiad. The last king of the *Macedonians*, *Perseus* the son of *Philip* was taken by the *Romans*, in the year of the City built, 886, when as Kings had now reigned in number 40, 647, years. And in the beginning they being shut up in narrow bounds, they waged daily but mean wars with the *Romans* and *Thracians*. (d) By the which, *Europus* or *Evropa* being king, a thing truly worthy remembrance happened. *Philip* the son of *Argemus* the sixth king in order, about the year of the J. C. 4116. the third of the 45. Olymp. dying, left *Europus* almost as yet an Infant, his heir. Whole age being despised, the *Romans* wage war with the *Macedonians*. They being overcome in the first batrel, by and by the strife being renewed, they place their King laid in a cradle before the Army; and from the beholding of him they took such heat of courage in their mind, that their enemies being scattered with a great slaughter, they bring back a noble victory gotten over them. The rest even to *Philip*, and *Alexander* the Great, were almost in nothing famous.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

The Kingd. of  
Macedon.  
(a) *Dexippus*  
in *Exerc.*  
*Euseb. Gr. p.*  
49.  
(b) *Euseb.*  
*Chron.*

(d) *Justin* 7.



## CHAP. V.

## Of the Olympick Conflicts or Games.

THE most famous Olympick conflict or Game, was set up in the 408. year after Troy was overthrow, before Rome was built the twenty and third, when *Nzziah* had now reigned over the Jews the thirty and fourth year. The chief repaire of this, was *Iphitus*, the Son of *Praxonida*, *Eleus*, who brought back his lineage to *Hercules*. Moreover there were many *Herculeses*. Of these, he which is reckoned among *Ida's* *Cybeles* Priests, first set forth those playes, the which after that were renewed by others, *Pelops* the son of *Tantalus*, and *Atræus*; and afterwards *Hercules*, the son of *Alcmena* celebrated them. At length by *Iphitus*, and him which I have spoken of, they began to be never-failing in their time, that they might return in the beginning of every fifth year; from whence they were called [*pentetericis*] that is, five years Games or Conflicts. For four years being perfected, they ran back into a Circle. But this four years space consisted in that kind of year, which *Greece* of old used, which was made by the Moon, but less exact, as we have shewn in (a) another place. *Africanus* in *George Munk* shewed, that the Moon is called by the *Egyptians*, *Olympias*, because she wanders through the twelve parts or signs of the *Zodiack* every Month; which Circle is by the Antients named (*Olympus*) whence he thought them to be called *Olympiads*. But that is least true; For the name of *Olympiads* seemeth among the Greeks to have been more ancient, than the dividing of the compass or *Zodiack* into twelve pieces, as we shall discourse (a) elsewhere. Therefore their name is put upon them from the place. It found the name of *Pisates* from the chief City *Pisa*, in Princely *Peloponnesus*; the which, *Stephanus* being Author, is also called *Olympia*. (b) This City, their neighbours the people of *Elis* overthrew, when the *Pisates* had endeavoured to snatch themselves out of their power, to which they had been subdued. At or near to the same City was the most ancient Temple of *Jupiter*, distant from *Elis* three hundred Furlongs, nigh the River *Alpheus*. Neither far from thence is there a Wood set with wild Olives, of which the Crowns of the Conquerours were weav'd, as also a race or Furlong, wherein the pastime playes or spectacles were shewn.

*Pausanias* writeth, the Temple being made of *Doric*-work, had from the lowest floor unto the highest top, sixty and eight foot, broad ninety five, but long 330. foot, whose Master Builder was *Libo*; Paved with *Pentelick*-Marble, that is, such as *Mercurius* Images were of: for Tyles, the covering was of this; in it was (d) the Altar of *Jupiter Olympus*, whose border was 125 foot in compass, the height 22. They called the border (*peristyle*) in which the sacrifices were slain, but their limbs were burnt on the top of

of the Altar. Therefore *Pausanias* telleth that this Altar was made out of ashes. But both the steps, and that even to the (*peristyle*) or border were of stone, from thence to the Altar they were of ashes (a) In the same place was the memorable Image of *Jupiter Olympus*; the which being wrought by *Phidias*, *Panæus* the Painter painted with colours.

(b) Now the *Eleans* were the chief of those sports, and they utterly overthrew the *Pisates*, who endeavoured to usurp that right. (c) The same being safe by the worship of *Jupiter* and the games, had a ceasing from weapons, and lived almost in the Country. But, that rest being despised, when afterwards they had taken part in wars, they fell into great calamities. (d) Therefore of that Nation the Judges of the conflicts, which they called (*agathorhetor*), or (*Hellaniotica*), were at the first two, then nine, afterwards ten, and twelve; from thence they are made eight, and at last, ten.

(e) Before these the Champions being brought to the Image of *Jupiter Fidius*, they were bound with an oath which they named (*hecathe*); that they should fulfill all kind of disciplines, or artificiall exercises, ten months before the day of the conflict. The (f) chief and most ancient kind of contending was running, which they called a race, afterwards they added others. (g) Five dayes were wholly given for the renewing the Playes, from the eleventh day of the Month, to the fifteenth. For at the full of the Moon, they went to the conflict, as saith *Pindarus*. (h) And a little before the pastime, a league being proclaimed throughout the Cities, if any waged war one with another, they were commanded to abstain from arms.

(i) Now when the Champions did strive altogether naked, a law and bashfulness drove away the female sex from those beholdings: in the which time, (k) *Ælianus* set Flies before them, which flying away of their own accord, appeared no where for that time. The reward of the Conquerours was a crown of the Wild Olive tree. Then they performed rites at six Altars, all which a pair of gods obtained. The first Olympiad or four hours exercise employed *Corabus* a Citizen of *Elis* for his course, whom *Athenus* declares to have been a Cook by Trade. Moreover the Olympiade began in the 3938. year of Jul. Cir. Of the World 3208. which is before the birthday of Christ, 776. And the games were acted from the 19. day of July to the 23. for the just time of them was in Summer, under the very Solstice, or Sun-stead.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Perfid.  
ante 4185.  
(a) Strabo.

(b) Pausan.  
Eliac. An.  
pag. 200.  
(c) Polyb. b. 4.  
pag. 337.  
(d) Paus. Eliac.  
An. pag. 156.

(e) Paus. Eliac.  
An. p. 173.

(f) Paus. Eliac.  
An. p. 200.  
(g) Pindar. &  
his Schol. to  
the Olymp. 5.  
Tzet. to Ly-  
coph.  
(h) Thuc. book  
5. p. 380. the  
vech. edit.

(i) Dion. Hal-  
lic. b. 7. about  
the end.  
(k) b. 5. of the  
liv. Creat. ch.  
17.

Anno 3702.  
J. P. unto  
4185.

(a) Book 1. of  
the Doctr. of  
times. and 4.  
Var. disc. to  
Utra.

(a) Book 2. of  
Var. disc. to  
Uran. ch. 2.

(b) Pausan.  
Eliac. 1. p. 200.  
Strabo. 8.

(d) Pausan.



## CHAP. VI.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
anno 4185.

Of the latter and revived Kingdom of the Assyrians, and of its Princes; and of Judith, and Olofernes; and of Sargon and Thartan: as also the beginning of the Babylonish Kingdom.

There is made frequent mention in sacred books, of the Assyrian Kings; even after that time, wherein Sardanapalus being dead, it is manifest that Empire, first begun by Belus or Ninus, had an end. For it is agreed amongst all, that that happened in that year, wherein the foundations of the royall government of the Medes were laid, the which indeed we have shewn above in the 4th chapter, to have happened an hundred years before the first Olympiade, that is, three hundred and seventeen years before the beginning of Cyrus. But long after that time, other Princes of the Assyrians are reckoned up. So Azariab reigning after his nine and thirtieth year; Phul King of the Assyrians is said to have (b) vexed the Israelites. Which year is numbred seven hundred seventy one years before Christ, and is the hundreth and sixth year from the death of Sardanapalus, and the destruction of Nineveh.

(b) 4 Kings  
ch. 15. 19.

That I may not stay thee longer; I think that after that old Empire of the Assyrians put out, or passed over to the Medes, the Medes waxing old by little and little, and their strength being weakned through sloath and calmesse, some fell off from them: first the Assyrians, and then the Babylonians. For because the Medes kept not the same course of fortune from Arbaces to Deius, from that, it is very likely, that Herodotus saith, the Medes in that mean space were free, and to have lived without a King. Wherefore Nineveh being overthrown, and the former Assyrian Kings being taken away, there were afterwards new Kings, who restored that City, and bare a large rule, untill they were overcome in war by the Babylonian Kings. The names of these, and what Kings were reigning in Judea, which indeed are mentioned in Scripture, I will write down.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
anno 4185.

## A Register of the Assyrian Kings.

The Kings of Assyria.	Kings reigning in Judea.	The years of the Jul. Circ. into which their mention falls.
1 Phul.	Osea.	4 Kin. 15. 3943.
2 Tegathpelazar.	Joatham and Phacee.	19. ib. v. 29. 3955.
3 Salmanaſſar.	Hezekiab.	4 Kin. 17. v. 3993.
4 Sennacherib, his son.	Hezekiab.	3. ib. 18. 13. 4000.
5 Aſſarhaddon, Sennacherib's son.	Hezekiab.	82. 1 Tob. 1. 18. 4001.
6 Nebuchadnezzar differing from a Babylonian.	Manasseh.	Judith 1. 5. 4025.

These are the Kings of the Assyrians, of which the Scripture hath made mention: the which at the beginning it appears to have conquered Babylon, out of the (a) sacred History of the Kings. Where Salmanaſſar is said to have sent inhabitants out of Babylon and other countries into Samaria. But it is gathered out of the (b) same book that they reigned over the Medes.

(c) Salmanaſſar invaded the Kingdom of Israel, and sent away the Israelites, in which name all, or almost the ten Tribes were contained, into Media and Babylon, and other Eastern Provinces for them; he spread inhabitants out of divers nations into their empty seats; to whom when Lions were troublesome, the King of Assyrians sendeth unto them one of the Captive Priests of the Jews, by whom they being perfectly taught the worship of the Hebrews God, they embraced every one these same together with the profane superstitions of their own country. Hence the filthy dirt of the Samaritans took beginning, and was increased for a long time.

(a) After the wasting of Israel, which fell out under the sixth year of Hezekiab; Salmanaſſar could not reign beyond the 14. year of Hezekiab. For Sennacherib succeeded him about that year, in which year he led an Army into Judea; and many walled Towns being won by assault, while he attempteth Jerusalem, and by Ambassadors triumpheth with reproachfull words over King Hezekiab and the Israelite's God, in one night, 185000. being destroyed by the Angell, he trembling, returned home. Where, through the parricide or father-killing murder, of his sons, amongst his holy things, and in the very sight of his God, he most wretchedly

(a) 4 Kings  
27. v. 24.  
(b) Ch. 18. 13.  
See Isaiah, 23.  
13. out of the  
Hebr. interpr.  
(c) 4 King. 17.  
and following.

The Samaritans gathered together of divers Nations.

(a) 4 King. 18.  
and following.

A Re-

Amo. 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(b) Tob. 1.  
See the 12.  
Book of Doct.  
of Times.  
(c) Judith 1.

The time of  
Judith.

(a) 2 Chr. 33.  
11.

(b) Ch. 20. 1.

(c) 4 K. 18. 17.

(d) Tob. 1. 18.

(e) Jul. Cir.  
1967.

chedly perished; when (b) first by the death of the banished *Jews*, which he had carried away into his Kingdom, he had revenged the slaughter received in his Country.

But *Nebuchadnezzar* whom we have numbred the last in order that is, he, who in the History of (c) *Judith*, is said, a battel being entred against *Arphaxad* King of the *Medes*, by whom *Ercathans* was built, to have overcome in the twelfth year of his reign. *Arphaxad* is no other then the *Deioces* of *Herodotus*, and *Ctesius*, who is placed the first king of the *Medes* by *Herodotus*. For the times do wonderfully agree. Hence we believe with the most, *Judith* to belong to the times of *Manasseh*. Moreover *Manasseh* began to reign in the 4016. year of the Jul. Cir. But *Deioces* the 4018. in *Babylon*, notwithstanding some Princes from *Nabonassar* afterwards ordered the Kingdom. Which little thing or kingdom in the beginning, was also subjected to the Government of the *Assyrians*. Whence (a) *Merodach*, who about that time held *Babylon*, is called one of the Princes of *Nebuchadnezzar*, by whom *Manasseh* was taken and led away into *Babylon*. Who being absent, *Nebuchadnezzar* sent *Olofernes* into *Judea*, who by *Judith* a most laudable woman, was wisely mocked and slain.

Besides these *Assyrian* kings, (b) *Isaiah* mentioneth *Sargon* king of the *Assyrians*, who sent *Tartan*, whom most confound with *Sennacherib*, (c) because this King is said to have sent *Tartan*. Yet they are not wanting, who make both to be different; to whom if we hearken, he shall be thrust in between *Salmanassar* and *Sennacherib*, and is to have been thought either the Father, or surely the brother of this. Because (d) *Salmanassar* being dead, *Sennacherib* his son is said to have reigned in his stead. Therefore none seemeth to be placed between them both. But those things which we have a little before cast in by the way, concerning the beginning of the Kingdom of *Babylon*; they are supported by the witness of *Ptolemy*, and old Astronomers, who do reckon their times from the beginning of *Nabonassar* king of *Babylon*, which beginning goeth before the reckoning of Christ, (e) 747. years. From hence the old kingdom of the *Chaldeans* seemeth to have begun. In holy Books, the first mention of the *Babylonian* kings is under the reign of *Hezekiah*, about his fourteenth year, in which *Mardach* the son of *Baladan* king of the *Babylonians*; is said to have sent Ambassadors to *Hezekiah*, that he might ask him concerning the wonder, which had happened in the land; as also because he had learned that he was sick. The fourteenth year of *Hezekiah*, from these things which have been above explained, runneth into the year before Christ, 714. which is the thirty fourth from the beginning of *Nabonassar*. There is an old rule or Canon of the *Babylonian* kings, which *Ptolemy* and other Mathematicians have used, which is lengthened from *Nabonassar* unto the death of *Alexander* the Great. Moreover in that Canon, *Mardachempadur*, who is named *Merodach* in sacred books, began to reign twenty seven years from *Nabonassar*, and peradventure that

*Baladan*

*Baladan* is his father, whom *Conon* calleth *Iluleus*.

Wherefore there is a probable guesse, that some space of time after the *Assyrians*, the *Babylonians* fell off from the *Medes*, and appointed themselves a private kingdom, *Nabonassar* being their Captain. Which kingdom small in the beginning, and subject to the *Assyrians*, was enlarged by *Nabopolassar*, and his son *Nebuchadnezzar*, as also the *Medes* themselves, and the *Assyrians* it subjected to it self. Of which thing afterwards. But the beginnings of that Empire are very dark; Of which, History hath almost left nothing but conj.ecture.

Amo. 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

## CHAP. VII.

Of *Romulus* and the building of *Rome*, and of the deeds of him, and of the six following Kings.

*Amulius* reigned the twelfth from *Aeneas* over the *Latines*, (a) *Dionys.* his brother *Numitor* being oppressed, to whom for his age the right of the kingdom did belong. There was one onely daughter of *Numitor*, *Sylvia*, the which *Amulius*, lest there should be any hope of posterity, made a Vestall Nunne. But she, it being uncertain by whom she was deflowered, brought forth twins, *Romulus* and *Remus*: who being put abroad by the command of the king, and being privily brought up by *Faululus* a shepheard, after they were of ripe age, *Amulius* being slain, they restored their Grandfather into the Kingdom, and in his second year built *Rome*. Which by the (b) account of *Varro* happened on the third year of the sixth Olympiad.

(c) *Dionysius* is the Author, that *Romulus* was born the second year of the second Olympiad going out, which is before (d) Christ 750. and the eighteenth year after, that is (e) before Christ 753. to have prosperously built the City. This man therefore in the eighteenth year of his age, by the power of many sorts of people meeting together, is first saluted king, when as already his brother striving for a new kingdom, he had taken out of the way. Straight way the state of things, being set in order, and the people being divided into charges of office, he took the maids of the (f) *Sabines* by force, through occasion of sports, in the fourth year of his kingdom, whereby they waged a fierce and long war with the *Sabines*. The *Ceninenses*, *Antemnates*, *Crustumini* being overcome; and at length the *Sabines* with their Captain *Tatius* overcharging them, through the mediation of the taken maids, it is agreed between them both, that they should dwell commonly at *Rome*, and that two should rule together; *Romulus* and *Tatius*.

But this man after six years, being slain; *Romulus* alone reigned over them both, and filled up 38. years, the neighbouring Cities in the mean time being overcome by war. First of all the *Fidenates* and *Veientes*. (a) At length while he had an assembly at the

(a) *Dionys.*  
Hal. b. 1. & 2.  
b. 1. Plut. life  
of *Romul.*  
Victor. of the  
beg. of *Rome*.

(b) *Plutarch*.

(c) b. 2. p. 119.  
the Vech. edit.  
(d) Jul. Cir.  
3944.  
(e) Jul. Cir.  
3961.  
*Romulus*.

(f) *Halic. 2.*  
p. 100. *Liv.*  
*Florus Plut.*

(a) *Dionys.*  
*Livy*, *Plut.*  
*Flor.*

See the 10. of  
the Doct. of  
times, ch. 2. 1.

Anno 3702.  
J. P. unto  
4185.

(b) Jul. Cl.  
399.

Marth Caprea, a dark tempest suddenly arising, he no where appeared, being torn in pieces, as many are of opinion, by the Counsellours of State, of whom he had began to be hated for his wilfulness. His death happened the first year of the 16 Olympiad going out, (4) before Christ 715, about the 13th year of Hezekiah, in which year on the 26 day of May a little before Sun. setting he deceased.

He first distributed the City into thirty Wards; the people into three Tribes, he set forth or allowed small safeguards of the mightier men, whom also he named Senators. He carried three Triumphs over a conquered Enemy into the City; 1. Of the *Cæminenses*, and *Antemnates*; when also *Acron* their King being slain with his own hand, he carried back the chiefest of the spoils to *Jupiter Feretrius*. 2. Of the *Camerines*. 3. Over the *Fidenates* and *Veientes*.

After one years interval of the kingdom, *Numa Pompilius* was desired King by the *Romans*, by birth a *Sabine*, and springing from the family of the *Curii*, (c) in the third year of the sixteenth Olympiad, before the account of Christ 714, who being turned to the study of peace, appointed the *Roman* religious rites; he increased their year two moneths, hitherto consisting of ten. Moreover, the Temple being shut up, he gave a continual rest unto his Subjects. He reigned 38 years.

The third King of Rome reigned *Tullius Hostilius*, (a) who began the second year of the 27 Olympiad, before Christ 671, a man unaccustomed to peace; and given to Wars. This King, the *Albanes* being overcome, rooted out their City, when he had brought over all their wealth and the people it self to Rome; and had drawn in divers pieces *Metium Fufsetius* the Dictator or chief Officer of the *Albanes*, he being manifestly reprov'd of treachery, bound between two Chariots, the Horses being driven. He triumphed thrice over the *Albanes*, *Fidenates*, and *Sabines*. He Reigned 32 years, and being stricken from Heaven, he perished with his Wife and Family.

The fourth reigned *Ancus Martius*, the Nephew of *Numa Pompilius*, the year before Christ 639, the second year of the 35 Olympiad, of whom the *Latines* were overcome, and many received into the City, who were placed in *Aventinum*. The Town *Janiculum* was fenced by the same king, and entries being framed, *Tyber* is joynd by a bridge made of posts. He reigned twenty four years.

The fifth King of Rome, *Tarquinius Priscus*, began the second year of the 41 Olympiad, before Christ 615. This Man was the son of *Demeratus Corinthus*, of the stock of the *Bacchiada* or people of *Corinth*, a fugitive, and, at first called *Lucumo*, wandered to Rome, and from the *Tarquines*, a Town of the *Etruscians*, where he had hitherto dwelt with his Father, was called *Lucum Tarchinius*. He having gotten the Empire, enlarged the Senate; subdued 12 people of *Tuscia*, and took from them honourable tokens of the highest authority;

Numa.

(c) Dionys.  
l. 2. p. 120.  
Livy, 1.  
Plutarch in  
the Life of  
Nona.

(a) Dionys. 3.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(b) Dionys. 4  
8c.

authority, bundles of rods carried before the Magistrate, the King's robe or kirtle, Chariots and Ivory Chairs, the Senators long silken robe, and other things of that sort. Moreover, he built stately Works in the City; as Channels, whereby the water was derived into *Tyber*. He began the Temple of (b) *Jupiter Capitolinus*: He was slain by the sons of *Ancus*, when he had reigned 38 years.

*Servius Tullius*, the son in law of this King, reigned the sixth in order, in the fourth year of the 50 Olympiad, before Christ 577. This Man was born of *Ocrisia Corniculana*, a captive Mother, and being commended by *Tarquinius* the King for his virtue, he is put before the heads of the kingly race. Many things were famously ordained by him in the Common-wealth. He first appointed a (a) reckoning or numbring of the people, and decreed it every fifth year turning about to be made. By the accounting he distributed the People into Companies and Bands of an hundred footmen. He enlarged the City it self. At length, the kingdom being governed for 44 years with the greatest praise, by the accursed parricide of his son in law *Tarquinius* and his daughter, his life was taken from him.

In the fourth year of the 61 Olympiad, as *Dionysius* sheweth, before Christ 533, the seventh and last reigned *Tarquinius*, by surname, the Proud, whom most of the old *Romans*, and those *Livie* hath followed, have affirmed to be the son of *Priscus*. *Dionysius* makes us believe he was his Nephew. This man governed the kingdom gotten by wickedness, no better than he had fought it. He assaulted the Senators and Nobles with slaughters and robberies. He made the Temple in *Albanum* commune to his Companions the *Latines*, and framed the *Latine* holy-dayes. He built the Temple of *Jupiter Capitolinus*, begun by his Grandfather, from spoils taken in War. At length, for a ravishment brought on a most Noble woman *Lucretia*, by *Aruntus* his son, he being absent, while he besieged *Ardea*, by the agreement of the People his highest dignity was taken away, and with him the name of King was taken away out of the City, the year of the City's building going out, 244.

(a) See the  
first book of  
Doctr. of  
times, ch. 76.

Dionys. 4.  
p. 12. Liv. 1.  
8c.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the Messenian War, and their King Aristomenes; and of Tyrtæus the Poet.

**M**essenia is the next Countrey to (a) *Laconia*, the which, the Successours of *Hercules* possessed. The Inhabitants of this Countrey, a great and daily War being valiantly waged with the *Lacedemonians*, at length are overcome, and compelled to change their soyl. The cause of the War seemeth to have been the covetousness and ambition of the *Lacedemonians*, from the which, envy,

(a) Pausan.  
Messen.  
l. 3.  
Things gathered out of  
Diodor. set forth by Paus.  
l. 3. p. 246.

Anno 370.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

The Messenian War.

(b) Pausan.  
Messen.  
p. 116.

(a) Justin. 3.

The Parthenians.

(b) Pausan.  
of the Messen.  
118, &c.

envy and grudging ariseth against Neighbours. Either a ravishment offered to the *Laconian* women by the *Messenians* through a shew of holy things, and death brought on *Teleclus* King of the *Lacedemonians* by the same; or mutual injuries of private persons, gave the occasion: the which while the Cities prosecuted courageously, a fierce War waxed hot on both sides. The *Lacedemonians* made the first assault, who, the *Messenians* provoking them in vain to equal conditions, binding themselves first with a most grievous oath, That they would not cease from Arms, before they should obtain *Messenia*; they possessed their Town *Aphia*, placed on the side of an hill. (b) That happened in the second year of the ninth Olympiad; this is of Jul. Cir. 3971, *Euphrates* reigning over the *Messenians*. On the fourth year after, which was of Jul. Cir. 3975, a cruel battel was fought, as also a new breaking in of the *Lacedemonians*; and lastly, the *Messenians*, other Towns being left, do fence *Ithome*. *Euphrates* being dead, *Aristodemus* is chosen King by the *Messenians*, he who killed his daughter before the Oracle. That fell out about the 3984 year of Jul. Cir. the third year of the 12 Olympiad. The *Lacedemonians* received a great slaughter from this king: (a) whom it so pleased, as to prostitute their Wives to supply off-spring. Whence were born those whom they called *Parthenians*, of which afterwards. That thing happened about the third year of the 13 Olympiad, the fifth year of *Aristodemus*. At length *Aristodemus*, the safety of his Country being despaired of, because the *Spartians* did oppress *Ithome* with a most straight siege, he stabbed himself at his daughters grave, after he had reigned six years, and a greater part of the seventh. But in the first year of the 14 Olympiad going out, of the Jul. Circ. 3991, the twentieth after the *Messenian* War was begun, *Ithome* was forsaken by the *Messenians*, and overthrown by the *Lacedemonians*. Thus an end is put to the former War. After this some of the *Messenians*, *Alcimadas* being their Captain, through Shipwrack, travel to *Rhégium*, which is a Town of *Italy*.

After 38 years from thence, this is the 4th year of the twenty third Olympiad, of Jul. Cir. 4029. *Tlesias* being chief Governour of *Athens*, as *Pausanias* saith, through the encouragement of *Aristomenes*, a man endued with Heroick valour, the *Messenians* renew the War against the *Lacedemonians*; in which War the *Lacedemonians* desire a Captain from the *Athenians*, by the Oracle. These ordain for them *Tyrius* the Poet, a Schoolmaster, who being Commander, at the first they are overcome; afterwards they are made the superiours rather by deceit, than virtue. The *Messenians* betake themselves into the Mountain *Ira* in the third year of the War: where they resisted their enemies eleven years. *Aristomenes* about that time did (b) many incredible and astonishing things. At length in the first year of the 27 Olympiad, *Ira* was vanquished, before Christ 671, and the War ceased, which by the report of *Pausanias* is gathered, to have held 14 years.

(a) Yet

(a) Yet *Justin* sheweth, that the second War was renewed by the *Messenians* after eighty years from the former; when all this space of time, they had been kept in a slavish manner by the *Lacedemonians*. The *Messenians*, their Country being overthrown, the Spring coming on, do sail into *Sicilia*, and there possess *Zancle*, which they name *Messena*.

Anno 370.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(a) See Vattel, ad Evid. Diod. p. 38.

## CHAP. IX.

Of *Cyaxar* King of the *Medes*, and the breaking in of the *Scythians*; and of the Kings of the *Babylonians*, especially of *Nebuchadnezzar*, and his Successors.

**H** *Erodorus* (b) in the first book of the *Medes*, writeth, That *Phaortes* the Father of *Cyaxar*, reigning, the Empire was increased and enlarged; and that by him the *Persians* and people of *Asia* were by War tamed and subdued. Who when he assaulted the *Assyrians*, and besieged *Ninus*, he there perished with the greatest part of his Army. *Cyaxar* the son of *Phaortes*, that he might revenge his Father, he also undertook a War against the *Assyrians*: The which being overcome, in the very besieging of *Ninus*, by a sudden breaking in of the *Scythians*, he is repressed: Who, the *Cymmerians* a people of *Italy*, following after them, *Madys* being their Captain, had flowed into *Asia* and *Media*. The same ruled over *Asia* twenty and eight years, taking continual preys out of it, and robbing by the thigh-waies, unpunished, none forbidding them; untill after 28 years *Cyaxar* receiv'd them with a banquet, and they being allured with large cups, and made drunken, he slew them every one, and recovered his ancient kingdom.

Afterwards when some of the *Scythian* Nation came to the same *Cyaxar*, he received them favourably: unto whom also the Children of the *Medes* he delivered to be instructed in the *Scythian* language, and skilfulnesse of Archery, in which they excelled others.

In the mean while the *Scythians* going daily to hunting, they always brought some Venison to the King; the which when sometimes through want of prey they had failed to do, they were unkindly received by him. Which injury they revenged with a barbarous cruelty. For they bring to the King one of their Scholars being killed, and dressed after the manner of Venison; and straightway betake themselves as suppliants unto *Alyater* the King of *Lydia*. *Cyaxar*, the wicked act being found out, requireth the run-aways to be yielded to him for punishment; and, unless he should obtain his request, threatneth War with the *Lydians*. Therefore a five years War being waged through divers and doubtful chances, at length in the sixth year there is a battel betwixt them: from the which through the suddain darkning of the Sun, they being affrighted, gave off. At length, by the endeavor of

(b) Herod. b. 1. ch. 102.

The breaking in of the Scythians.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

of *Cilix a Syennan*, and *Labyrinthus a Babylonian*, they were made friends one with another, and a peace is established by a nuptial Covenant. For *Arienne* the daughter of *Alyattes*, married *Alyages* the son of *Cyaxar*. That *Labyrinthus* seemeth to be the same, who in holy books is called *Nebuchadnezzar*, the son of *Nabopolassar*, who both reigned in *Babylon*, and the rule of the *Medes* being now shook off, enlarged the *Babylonian* affairs; of the which mention is to be made hereafter.

After *Nabonassar*, whom we rightly think the Founder of the *Babylonian* Empire, many, but obscure ones, are numbred even to *Nabopolassar* in the Mathematicians Canon, of the which we have made mention above. *Nabopolassar* increased by weapons the *Babylonian* kingdom, the which he had received little. For (a) *Brutus*, an equal Writer of the Chaldaick Annals, and of the times of *Alexander* the Great, hath delivered, That *Nabopolassar*, the Father of *Nebuchadnezzar*, bearing rule over *Egypt*, *Cælesyria*, and *Phœnicia*, a Lievtenant, was chief over them: who when he fell off, *Nabopolassar* being now of great age, sent his son *Nebuchadnezzar* against him with an Army; who, his stubborn enemies being overcome, and his command recovered, when as between these things *Nabopolassar* was by Nature's destiny dead, he speedily fled to *Babylon*, all his Armies together with the prey being left with a certain one of his friends, that he might carry those things into *Babylon*. *Nabopolassar* reigned twenty and one years, and began in the year of the Jul. Cir. 4089 of *Josiah* the King the 17. Moreover, that former Expedition of *Nebuchadnezzar* happened in the third year of *Joachim* the son of King *Josiah*, or the fourth entering of the Jul. Cir. 4107, from which the Jews have counted the beginning of King *Nebuchadnezzar*; although *Nabopolassar* was alive two years space after this year. Moreover, *Nebuchadnezzar* being much more famous than his Father, waged very exceeding great Warrs, and passed through very many Nations, by overcoming them; the which not onely the holy Writings do witness; but also *Megasthenes* in his fourth book of the *Indian* affairs, according to (b) *Josephus*, hath wrote concerning this King, That *Hercules* was much exceeded by him in valour, and greatness of things done. For both that chief City of *Africa*, and the greater part of *Spain*, he brought by weapons under the yoke. *Philostratus* addeth in the Histories of the *Phœnicians* and *Indians*, That *Tyre* was besieged by the same king thirteen years; the which he seemeth to have attempted about the sixteenth year of his reign, of the Jul. Cir. 4122, an year before he besieged *Jerusalem*, *Zedekiah* reigning. *Nebuchadnezzar* being lifted up with such successes, would first have himself to be worshipped as a god;

(b) *Joseph.*  
Antiq. ch. 31.

(a) *Dan. 3.*

(b) *Hierome.*

The three  
Children cast  
into a fiery  
Furnace.

(a) and an Image of gold being raised up, to his great self, as it (b) pleaseth some, he commanded it to be worshipped after the fashion of a god. The which impiety the three Hebrews, *Ananias*, *Azarias*, and *Mizael*, freely refusing to do, he commanded them to be cast alive into a burning furnace. But, when the men

of

of the guard which were about it being slain, the flame had spared those three; and amongst them a certain fourth of an unknown shape, but more majestical, than is belonging to a man, was seen: His anger being turned into amazement and Religion, the King gave afterwards all honour unto those young men and *Daniel* their companion; and also passed over the worship and reverence unto the Hebrews god by agodly Edict, the which he had usurped wickedly to himself. But his (c) manners sliding back into pride, alter that he neither suffered himself by the divine wonders, nor by *Daniel's* exhorting, to be called back unto his duty, he ran into madness; whereby he living after the manner of *Carrel*, and by fodder, he passed away seven whole years under the open Firmament abroad; untill, his understanding being received, and pardon of his wickedness intreated, he was restored unto his ancient condition. And then he dyeth after the death of his father, the fourth third year of his reign, (d) before Christ 563, in which the second year of the 54 Olympiad entrench.

(e) *Ezra* *Merodach* the son succeeded this King; who presently as soon as he came to the kingdom, he had in esteem *Joachim* or *Jechoniah*, the son of *Joachim*, who had yielded himself to *Nebuchadnezzar*, being freed out of prison, and received him into familiarity. The sister of this King, *Nergis* *Isphor* had in marriage, and of her he begat *Labor* *Sarchod*. Therefore *Ezra* *Merodach* being slain, after two years reign being fulfilled, as it were in the name of a guardian, for his son *Labor* *Sarchod*, whom we believe to be *Belshazzar*, he governed the kingdom four years; the which indeed are wont sometimes to be imputed to *Labor* *Sarchod*. But this King, his father being dead, when he (b) added unto riot, and continual drinking, sacriledge, and had commanded the holy vessels, which his grandfather had carried out of the Temple of *Jerusalem*, to be committed to the profane uses of Feasts, he saw the fingers of a man's hand moving themselves on the wall, and painting three words; the which when none could interpret, besides *Daniel*, he got the highest honour thereby. But the King was slain the same night by the conspiracy of his servants, whom he for his evil disposition had estranged from him, nine compleat months after the death of his Father.

Then by the agreement of the Nobles the Government is bestowed on *Nabonidus*, a certain *Mede* by birth, and a companion of the conspiracy. The which when he had admittred seventeen years, he being invaded by War by *Cyrus* King of *Persia*, and being shut up within the Tower *Borsippa*, a yielding being made, he was removed into *Carmania*.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(d) *Jul. Cir.*  
4151.

(e) *Jerom.*  
Josph. 1.  
against App.  
p. 126. Edit.  
Frob. & Eu-  
scb. 10. of  
Præp. p. 67.

(b) *Dan. 5.*

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

## CHAP. X.

Of the last Kings of Egypt out of Herodotus, Sethon, the twelve Princes, Psammeticus, Nechaus, Amasides, and others.

**T**He beginnings and lordly powers of the Egyptians, which George Monk hath gathered out of Africanus and Eusebius, are mixed with many fables. Wherefore those being let passe, we will bring into publick view a few Kings out of Herodotus, which do seem needfull to illustrate this our, & the sacred History.

(a) Herodot. 2.  
ch. 141. &c.  
Sethon.

(a) He therefore, some kings being rehearsed, writeth, Sethon the Priest of Vulcan to have reigned; who when he behaved himself scornfully in a warlike kind, fell into his discontent. Therefore when Sennacherib king of the Arabians and Assyrians had with great Forces assaulted Egypt, Sethon being forsaken by his Army, implored the ayd of his god; from whom a multitude of field Mice being sent by night, gnawed asunder their quivers of Arrows, and strings of their bowes, and rains of their bucklers. So the day after the enemies being naked of weapons fled. There is no doubt, but that Sennacherib was the same King of Assyrians, who, Hezekiah reigning, sacked Judea. For times on both sides do agree.

Twelve  
Princes.

After Sethon, twelve Egyptian kings were chief over them, the Countrey being divided into so many parts. One of these was Psammeticus; who being driven out by his fellows, and removed into marshy places, by the help of the Ionians and Carians, the other eleven being overcome, he possessed all Egypt; and made friendship with the Greeks, and he first gave them a field or Land in Egypt to inhabit in. His beginning happeneth into the year before Christ 670, the third of the 26 Olympiad; and from that, he reigned fifty four years, of the which he spent thirty one years in besieging Azotus, a Town of Palestine.

Necho.

After this King Necho his son was chief, whom, Herodotus is Author, the Syrians overcame with an Army at Mtagdolum.

(a) 4 Kings  
23. 29.  
& 2 Chr. 35.  
20.

(a) This is Necho the king of Egypt, by whom Josiah was slain in Megiddo, about the year before Christ 611. in which, Necho now reigned the sixth year. Who, sixteen years being finished in his kingdom, he had Psammis his Successour: This man had Apries, who, according to (b) Jeremi, is Ephree.

(b) Jer. 44.  
30.

Apries.

The Egyptians tell off from him, by reason of the Cyrenian Expedition, in no case managed from judgment; to the appealing of whom, saith Herodotus, Amasis, a Lieutenant was sent, who making the Rebels friends to himself, he invaded the kingdom, and yielded up Apries to those that required him to be kept in custody, and then to the Egyptians for death. Apries began, by the

the accounts of Herodotus, in the year of the Julian Cir. 4120, and he reigned twenty five years. Thus Amasis began in the year of the Julian Circuit 4145. Whom at the first I have believed to have been set over Egypt by Nebuchadnezzar, Necho as yet living: and after Apries being slain, the rule of the Babylonians being shook off, to have begun to reign by their own authorities. For Nabopolassar, as I have shewn above, had long ago subdued Egypt; which, as it appeareth, being suffered with their own Kings, and those made tributary, he added an Overseer, who should keep it in its homage: the which also his son Nebuchadnezzar afterwards appointed.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(a) Herodotus reports, That Amasis, because he was of a common stock, was in the beginning despised of his Subjects: but he brought these by counsel and diligence, rather than by force unto the reverencing of him after this manner. He brake a golden bason, in which he had wont to wash his feet with his guests, and made out of it the Image of a God, and dedicated it openly. The which when he had learned to be had in great honour by the Egyptians, an assembly being called, he said, That Image which they so worshipped, was made of that bason, which had accustomed to serve unto base uses. But it had happened to him as unto that; who when as before he had been of the common people; now he is their Prince. Therefore it seemeth meet, that from henceforth honour should be had by him from all; by which speech he by and by effected what he would have.

(b) Also it is reported, that by the same King this Law was given, That every year all should confesse openly before the Presidents of the Provinces, from whence they got their living; he that either should not do this, or not prove an account of his manner of life, should be punished with death: The which law, Solon afterwards having imitated, is said to have brought on the Athenians. Amasis deceased about six moneths before that Cambyses rushed into Egypt; of whom it shall be spoken a little after.

## CHAP. XI.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

Of Astyages the last King of the Medes, and of the fall of the Median Kingdome, and of the beginning of the Persian: Of Cræsus and Cyrus, and things done by this King, his Monarchy, and death; and of the return of the Jewes from Babylonian bondage.

(a) Herod. 1.  
Ctes. Just. 1.

The infancy  
of Cyrus.

**T**He last over the Medes reigned Astyages, as (a) Herodotus, and Ctesias, and other Historians out of them have since delivered, This man joynd onely one daughter which he had, (seeing he wanted manly off-spring), Mandanes, with a certain Persian, Cambyser, a quiet man, nor desirous of new affairs, because he had learned by a dream, that he should be deprived of his Kingdome by a Nephew. For the same cause he calls his daughter unto him being great with child, and delivereth the infant that was born of her, to Harpagus to be slain; which one man he had most familiar, and the partaker of all his secrets. But he gave him to be put out privily unto the kings shepheard, of whom being brought up, when as he came to age, he fulfilled the truth of the dreams. For when as he was acknowledged of Astyages, and received into favour, at length Harpagus counselling him, (whose son Astyages, for keeping his Nephew alive, had slain, and offered to his father to be eaten,) he fell off from his Grandfather. Astyages having forgotten what he had committed against Harpagus, delivered unto him the chief accomplishment of the war. Who straightway betrayed all the army to Cyrus. After these things Astyages new armies being drawn together on every side, encounters with Cyrus; who being overcome in battell, lost his liberty, together with his kingdome, in the which he had (a) fulfilled thirty and five years. So the Rule passed from the Medes to the Persians after three hundred and seventeen years, the 55. Olympiad entring, as the agreement of all the ancient Historians hath it, (b) which is the year before Christ, 559.

(a) Her. 1. ch.  
130.

(b) Jul. Cir.  
4155.

(d) In things  
gath. out of  
Valef. set forth  
p. 241.

(c) The year  
of Jul. Cir.  
4170.

Astyages being overcome, there was a contention with Cræsus and the Lydians. For Cræsus being joynd in affinity with Astyages, as I have above rehearsed, he not bearing both the increasings of Cyrus and the Persians with a moderate mind, waged war on them. In the which he being overcome, came with all his Kingdome, and the Sea-inhabited places of Greece into the power of Cyrus. (d) Diodorus writeth, that Eurybatus an Ephesian, being sent with a great sum of money from Cræsus, that he might muster Souldiers in Peloponnesus, and the other part of Greece, he ran away to Cyrus. Thence the name of Eurybatus is accounted for a reproach, that whose notable treachery and dishonesty they would signify, him they would call Eurybatus. That slaughter of the Lydians seemeth to have happened about the 59. Olympiad beginning (e) before Christ 544.

Cræsus

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

Cræsus being condemned by the Conquerour Cyrus to the burning flame, when as he often times one after another named the name of Solon to Cyrus; demanding at length what that man should be, he answered, he was a wife Athenian, who in times past had admonished him, That no mortall man ought to be called blessed before death; which word how true it was, now at length he did understand. This being heard, Cyrus not onely spared the man, but also afterwards had him in esteem. And then Lydia being subdued, he vanquished Asia, over which he made Mazares chief; from whom when the Lydians had again rebelled by the Counsell of Cræsus, weapons and Horses being taken away, they were commanded to exercise Taverns, and playing pastime arts, and bawdries, from the which the very words ludorum and ludiarum, that is, of playes and pastimes, are believed to have flown. After this man, Harpagus took care of the same Province, and made (a) Ionia, and other nigh Provinces, of the Persian Empire, beginning from the City of Phocæ; whose rude inhabitants for fear of slavery, all their goods being put into Ships, and cursing themselves with a curse, if ever they returned, they sailed to Corsica, and Italy, and the Coast of France, and in (b) this built a noble Town which they called Massilia, which happened about the 60 Olympiad. Although others say, Massilia was built by the same Phœceans not a little before that time; and (c) Harpocratio is witness, that the most excellent man Aristotle was in that opinion, and Eusebius records the building of it to be at the 45. Olympiad. In the mean time Cyrus, an army being transported into Babylon; in the which then reigned Nabonidus, whom we have shewed above to have been called Darius the Mede, begotten of a Mede, his father an inhabitant of Babylon, after a long siege he took Babylon the head of the Nation, about the 22. year after they had overthrown the riches of the Medes, (d) before Christ, 538. in which the third year of the 60. Olympiad entred. But he carried away Darius the Mede into Carmania. From this year of Babylon being taken, Cyrus received a new beginning of rule, and from thence his years are wont to be reckoned in Holy Writings.

(a) Herod. 1.

(b) Isocrat. in  
Archid. Justin.  
43.

(c) Harp. on  
Massilia:  
See Scal. re  
Euseb. 1417.

(d) Jul. Cir.  
4176.

Cyrus being lifted up with so many Victories, waged War with the Massageti, the which was in the beginning prosperous, in the end it proved miserable unto Cyrus himself, and his Persians. For Tomyris the Queen, whose son, Cyrus, when he had feigned a flight, being enticed by Wine, and Banquets, had slain, with a great slaughter of the Scythians, overthrew the same Cyrus, with his whole army, being taken by the same wile. Whose head being cut off, Tomyris is said to have cast into a Vessell of man's blood and to have cryed out; Satisfy thy self with blood, of the which thou hast always been unsatiabie. These things almost Herodotus and Justine. Ctesias a little otherwise, who first of all denyeth Astyages to have been joynd with Cyrus in any right of nearness, but afterwards to be made his son in Law, when Cyrus took his daughter

Anynias

K 2

Amo 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

*Amyntas* to wife. After that he sheweth that the *Babrians* submitted themselves of their own accord to *Cyrus*. Then the *Sabeans* being overcome by him, and their King *Amorges* taken. Afterwards the *Lydians* and *Croesus* at last fighting in battell against the *Derbians*, a wound being received, to have the third year after deceased, his Empire being divided between his two Sons. Whereof the elder *Cambyses* succeeded his Father, but the younger *Tanaxarces* obtained the principality over the *Babrians*, *Choramnians*, *Parthians*, and *Carmanians*. *Cyrus* died the thirtieth year of his reign, the fourth of the 62. Olympiad, (a) before Christ, 529.

(a) Jul. Cir.  
4185.  
(b) 2 Chr. ch.  
last. & 1 Efd. 1.

(c) Joseph. b.  
11. Ant. ch. 1.  
See 1 Efd. ch.  
4. 11. & 12.  
Of the Doctr.  
of times, ch. 31.  
(d) 1 Efd. 1. 64  
1 Efd. 4.  
(e) 1 Efd. 3.

(b) In the first year of the *Babylonian* rule, which was the twenty and second from the beginning of the *Persian* reign, this King gave power by an edit to the *Jews*, of returning into their Country, and of repairing the City, and likewise the Temple. For of the City (c) *Josephus* speaketh by name. Therefore *Zerubbabel* the son of *Salathiel* being their Captain, and also *Joshuab* the Son of *Jozedech* High Priest, the *Jews* went away (d) 42360. in number, who first of all, the Altar being built, the seventh moneth beginning, they offer a daily sacrifice. (e) But in the second year after they came thither, in the second Moneth, which happened into *Aprill*, the foundations of the Temple were laid. But the work was disturbed by the reproaches of their adversaries, and hindered *Cyrus* being alive, untill it was renewed in the second year of *Darius* the son of *Hystaspes*.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of those things, which in this whole intervall of time, are gathered, delivered, spread here and there in Histories, which is, from the building of the Temple, unto the death of Cyrus; and of men of that Age excelling in learning.*

(d) Diodor. in  
things gath.  
out of Valec.  
p. 119.  
Schol. Pind.  
on the 2. Pyth.

A Little before the first *Messenian* War, a beginning was given to many famous Cities. First of all to *Syracusa*, whereof the builder was *Archias* a *Corinthian*, of the stock of the *Bacchiades*, who, (c) four Towns being overthrown, *Achradines*, *Neapolis*, *Epipolis*, *Tyches*, he made out of them all, one City, unto which also *Ortygia* happened, which hitherto had been an Island. Both names, both of *Ortygia*, and *Syracusa*, either gave it to those places; or to many daughters of *Archias*, which, being born there, he called *Ortygia* and *Syracusa*, took their name from those Cities. Afterward he being slain by *Telephus* a certain man, through deceit, who was beloved of him, he gave him punishment for the old wickedness committed in his country, for that he was compelled to depart out of *Greece*. But that was after this manner.

(a) Plut on 4.  
Amat. Nar.  
Diodor. in Ex-  
cerpt. Valec.  
p. 229. Max-  
im. diff. of the  
Tyr. Apollon.  
Schol. to b. 4.

(d) *Melissus* was of *Corinth*, born of that *Abron*, who had privily opened to them the counsells of *Phido* a King of the *Grecians*, seek-

ing

Amo 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

ing an occasion against the liberty of the *Corinthians*, and for that thing he being endowed with a City from them, he travelled thither with his whole house. This mans Son *Aëon*, of a fine beauty of body, but indued with a greater chastity, when *Archias* had in vain solicited with gifts, and divers allurements, he tried to take him away by force. For a great company of servants and friends being raised, he brake into the house of *Melissus*, and *Aëon* being laid hold of, he began to lead him away from thence. But his father and household servants resisting them, the Lad being drawn away on both sides, was destroyed between their hands, and represented the death, both of him (a) of the Surname, and of that fabulous thing, not with an unlike manner of dying, he being torn asunder by his own dogs, even as he was. *Melissus*, the aid of Lawes and Magistrates being besought in vain, when he would expresse more indignation and grief of all things, than what was meet, he goes up through the *Isthmian* enterlue, and a frequent Market of *Greece* there, into the Temple of *Neptune*, which was placed in a steep place. There, after that he had thorowly pleaded many things against the *Bacchiades*, and concerning the deserts of his father *Abron* towards the *Corinthians*, at last praying the Gods to be his revengers, he cast himself headlong from the top. A little after, a drought and Plague arising, the *Corinthians* sent *Archias* to *Delphos* to ask the cause of *Apollo*. To this man, asking counsell, the Oracle answered, this evil should thus cease. If the *Corinthians* had taken punishment for the death of *Aëon*, which thing being heard, *Archias* not daring to go back to *Corinth*, sailed into *Sicily*. All the *Bacchides* being cast out of *Corinth*, changed their soil: *Eusebius* set forth by *Pontacus*, sheweth the building of *Syracusa* to be in the fourth year of the ninth Olympiad, which is before Christ 741. The edition of *Scaliger*, brings it into the fourth year of the eleventh.

(a) Diod. &  
Schol. Apol.

Also *Thucydides* writeth that (a) *Naxos* was built a year before *Syracusa*, (b) *Thucles* a *Chalcidian* of the Island *Eubœa*, being the author, who also in (c) the fifth year after *Syracusa*, replenished *Catana* with people, the *Sicilians* being driven thence.

(a) Thucid. b.  
6.  
(b) Thucid.  
b. 5. Supph.  
(c) Thucid. 5.

Out of the same off-spring of the *Bacchiades*, *Cheristocrates* and he himself a run-away from *Corinth*, led inhabitants into the Island *Corcyra*; as (d) *Timæus* hath delivered. But he hath added that that was done six hundred years after the destruction of *Troy*, the which doth least of all agree, for it was the first year of the fourth and ninth Olympiad, which is far absent from the building of *Syracusa*, and the *Bacchiades* driven from *Corinth*. *Eusebius* writes down the building of *Corcyra* to be at the eighteenth Olympiad.

(d) Among  
Schol. Apol.  
b. 4.

The (e) *Lacedemonians* being overcome by *Aristodemus* in the *Messenian* war in a great battell for the supplying of off-spring, they send souldiers of a flourishing age home, and they make to them an Army of men of the women left there. Whence sprang those whom they named *Parthenians*, who in the thirtieth year after

(e) Paul. Phoc.  
p. 326. Just. 3.  
Laë. b. 1. ch.  
20.

The Parthe-  
nians.

ter



Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(f) Euseb.  
Pont.

(b) Thuc. 1.  
Strab. 7. Euf.  
Pont.  
Cyrene built.

(c) b. 19. ch. 3.

(d) Theop.  
b. 6. Of Cau-  
ses, ch. 3.

(e) Clem.  
Alex. 1.  
Stro. Euseb.  
(f) Euseb. 8.  
Varro.  
(g) Plut. Sol.

(h) Thuc. 1.  
Plut. Solon.  
The enter-  
prize of Cyl.

ter, as *Jufine* faith, being sent away to seek new tears, sayling in-  
to Italy with their Captain *Phalantus*, they built *Tarentum*. The  
slaughter of the *Lacedemonians* seemeth to have happened in the  
726 year before Christ, in the third year of the 13 Olympiad.  
Therefore the wandering of the *Paribentians* is brought by *Jufine*,  
into the year before Christ 696 which is the first year of the twen-  
ty first Olympiad. Wherefore a little after this time, *Tarentum*  
was built by the *Lacedemonians*. (f) Not much after *Chalcedon*  
was built by the *Megarenses*, to wit in the fourth year of the 22.  
Olympiad; in the third year after, *Cyzicus* in *Asia*, and *Loeris* in  
*Italy* are founded.

In the 39. Olympiad, the year before Christ, 624. (b) *Epidau-  
rum* was built by the *Corcyraens*. Neither much after, *Battus* erected  
*Cyrene* in *Lybia*, the which *Solinus* affirmeth to have happened in  
the 45 Olympiad, the 568 year after *Troy* was taken. This shall  
be about the second year of that Olympiad. But (c) *Pliny* assign-  
eth the 143 year of the City, which is the second year of the 43  
Olympiad, before Christ 611. the which is also agreeable to (d)  
*Theophrastus*, who affirmed *Cyrene* to be built about three hundred  
years before *Simonides Archontes*, which is the second year of the  
117 Olympiad, before Christ 311. Moreover the same *Theophras-  
tus* writeth *Silphius* to have risen up seven years before *Cyrene* was  
built, a shoure of Pitch suddenly moistening the earth, about  
the Gardens of the *Hesperides*, and the greater *Syrtis* or Gulf.

*Draco* set forth Lawes to the *Athenians* (e) under the 29 Olym-  
piad, (which they called (f) *Dracis*, or Lawes established and writ-  
ten in Tables, written, as said *Damades*, rather (g) with blood  
than ink. For their roughnesse was such, that a capital punish-  
ment was equally inflicted on small and great offences; and he  
which was condemned of idlenesse, was punished no lesse with  
death, than he that had committed parricide. Those Lawes, ex-  
cept those that were concerning privy murderers, *Solon* afterwards  
abolished.

(h) In the same City about the 45 Olympiad, there was a me-  
morable enterprize of *Cylus*, one of the Princes. Who being ad-  
monished by the Oracle to possesse the Towre or Castle, and lord-  
ship; On a most famous feast day of *Jupiter*, he goes about that  
thing, between the time of the Olympick game, he being igno-  
rant that there was another feast of *Jupiter*, which they called  
*Diasia*. Therefore the end answered not his endeavour. He be-  
ing encompassed by a siege of his own people, he escaped with  
his brother, the rest being forced by hunger and thirst, sat down  
suppliants at the Altar which was in the Castle, when promise be-  
ing given, nevertheless being brought forth hence, they were  
slain: the authors of this murder, and their posterity, were ac-  
counted for sacrilegious persons, and hainous offenders, and were  
afterwards banished out of the City.

As Fortune made void the counsells of them, of exercising  
Lordlinesse over their Countrey; so many in that very age going  
about

about the same thing as it were by agreement, obtained what  
they would. Memorable of that number of Tyrants were, (a)  
*Periander* a *Corinthian*, the son of *Cypselus*, (b) who four and forty  
years exercised maisterhip, and began in the thirty and eighth  
Olympiad, before Christ 628, and deceased in the fourth year of  
the 48. Olympiad, that is, one year before the 49. Olympiad, as  
*S. P. rates* according to *Diogenes* the weth, before Christ 585. (c)  
This man slew his wife *Lysides*, whom he named *Melissa*, the daugh-  
ter of *Procles* a Tyrant of the *Epidaurians*, the which his son *Lyc-  
ophron* taking grievously, first of all he being rejected by him, and  
then banished into *Coreya*, when afterwards he was called back  
by his father to take the tyranny on him, he was slain by the men  
of *Coreya*. For that thing *Periander* sent three hundred children  
of the chief men of that Island unto *Alyattes* King of *Lydia* to be  
geilded; the which being brought into *Samos*, the *Samians* took  
away, and sent back into their Countrey. (d) *Arion* a Musician  
of *Methymna* worshipped this man, whom also returning out of  
*Italy*, both being compelled by the Marriners to cast himself into  
the Sea, and carried back by a Dolphin, he received. (a) Also  
*Thrasybulus* a Tyrant of *Milettum* was joyned in friendship to *Peri-  
ander*.

Not much after the death of *Periander*, (b) that is, about the fif-  
ty and third Olympiad, *Phalaris* snatched up the Tyranny of *Agri-  
gentum* in *Sicily*. For when he was of the receipt of cuttome, or  
a publicane, and was chief in building the top of *Apollones* Towre  
publique moneyes being received, he hired Mercenary fellows  
in great number, and bought many slaves. Then having gotten  
by stealth matter to be brought privily to him out of the  
Towre, he received power of fencing the Towre; therefore he  
took the Tyranny at unawares, the which afterwards by the high-  
est cruelty he exercised sixteen years.

Equal to this was *Pisistratus*, who (e) possessed *Athens* twice; first  
about the 55. Olympiad, and beginning of *Cyrus*. But in (f) a  
short time after, he being driven out by the faction of a very migh-  
ty Citizen *Megacles*, when he had reconciled him to himself by  
an agreement of a Marriage, he was brought into the Towre by  
the same, through a woman set forth in the shew of *Minerva*.  
Whence he being cast out by the conspiracy of *Megacles*, he was  
at length again restored in the eleventh year, about that time,  
wherein *Craesus* waging war against *Cyrus*, looked out for the aid  
of the *Greeks*. He died about the first year of the 62. Olympiad,  
his son *Hippias* being left his successour, when he had enjoyed the  
tyranny no more then seventeen years.

Moreover this *Megacles* had a son, *Alcmaones*, who was enrich-  
ed by *Craesus*, and he begat a son, *Megacles*, of the same name with  
his father, the son in law of *Clisthenes*, Prince of the *Sicyonians*.  
(g) For this man being willing to give his daughter *Agarista* in mar-  
riage to the most excellent man of all *Greece*, appointed a certain  
day, at which all her suiters should come to *Sicyon*, out of whose  
number

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(a) *Periander*.

(b) Herod. b.  
1. & 3. b. Ari-  
stot. 5. Pol.  
ch. 12.  
(c) Herod. 3.  
Diodor.

(d) Herod. b. 1.

(b) Euseb.

(c) Polyzenus  
l. 5. c. 1.

(d) Euseb.

*Pisistratus*.

(e) Aristot. 5.  
Pol. ch. 12.  
(f) Herod. l.  
ch. 59. &c.

*Clisthenes*.

(g) Herod. in  
the same place

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(a) Hecod.  
Diod. in ex-  
cerpt. Valef.  
p. 230.  
(b) Tatia.  
Cyr. 1. ag.  
Jul.  
(c) Euseb.

number he chose *Megacles* the son of *Alcmeon*. Also among others, (a) *Smyndirides* a *Sabarite* is said to have been present, famous about that time for wealth and riot. And *Herodotus* is witness, that this happened the second Age after *Solon* and *Cræsus*.

There were at that season men famous for Wit, and in the praise of wisdom; of Poets indeed, *Archilochus* in the (b) 23 Olympiad; *Stenichorus*, who is born, saith *Suidas*, the 37 Olympiad, and dyeth in the 57.

*Alcman*, a Lyrick Poet, flourished (c) about the 42 Olympiad. At the same time also *Alcaus* lived, who exercised civility with *Pittacus*, and other mighty ones. *Eusebius* in his Chronicle, sets down *Alcaus*; and *Sappho* in the 44, or 45 Olympiad.

*Theognis* flourished in the 58 Olympiad, *Eusebius* being witness, of whom (d) some report to have been a *Megarenian* of *Sicily*. Others affirm him to have sprung from *Megara*, a neighbouring City to the *Corinthian Isthmus*.

*Hipponax*, a writer of biting Jambick verses, was in the 60 Olympiad, as (e) *Pliny* saith.

Moreover, in Philosophy, or the love of Wisdom, those seven were chiefly famous, who made that word proper to themselves. These *Plato* in *Protagoras*, and out of him (f) *Pausanias* thus repeateth in the History of the *Phocians*.

The first was *Thales Miletus* born in the first year of the 35 Olympiad, *Damasias* being chief Governour: he dyed in the 58 Olympiad, after he was present with *Cræsus*, in the Expedition against *Cyrus*. Wherefore he lived not, as *Diogenes* saith, 70, or 90, but 96 years, he finished 24 whole Olympiads.

The second, *Pittacus*, of *Mitylene*, who flourished in the 42 (a) Olympiad, and dyed in the third year of the 52 Olympiad, *Aristomenes* being chief Governour.

The third, *Bias* of *Prienna*, (b) who lived in the same time, under *Alcattes*, and *Cræsus*, kings of *Lydia*.

Whose notable act to be celebrated with everlasting praise, is delivered by *Diodorus* in his Collection lately set forth. For when Noble Virgins of *Messenia* were taken by Robbers, he nourished them, being redeemed with his own money, and had them in the place of daughters. The which when their kindred a little while after required, no price being taken of their redeeming, nor nourishment, he restored unto them. The Maids being mindfull of this singular good turn, when they returned home, when as a little after that time the Fishermen of *Messenia* had drawn out a brazen trivet, on which was written, [To the most wise:] they concluded by argument among their kindred, That he should be sent to *Bias*, as the most worthy of all men.

The fourth, *Solon*, who was Pretor at *Athens* in the (d) third year of the 45 Olympiad, *Tarquinus Priscus* reigning at *Rome*; in which time also he gave Laws to the *Athenians*, and set in order their Common-wealth. He dyed being (e) 80 years old, in the same year, as it appeareth, wherein *Cyrus* began to reign in *Persia*.

(f) a

(a) Diog.  
Laert.  
(b) Diog.

(d) Diog.  
Plut.

(e) Diog.

(1) a little after the matter ship exercised by *Pisistratus* over the *Athenians*.

The fifth, *Cleobulus Lyndim* equall in time with *Solon*.

The sixth, *Myson* of *Cbenas*, or a Town in *Laconia*, or rather of *Oitus*, which he calleth *Chenas*.

The seventh, *Chilo*, a *Lacedemonian*, whom *Diogenes* saith, was an old man in the 45 Olympiad.

For *Myso*, saith *Pausanias*, many reckon *Periander* of the *Corinthians*: others, *Anacharsis* the *Scythian*, who lived at that season.

Also *Aesop*, the writer of fables, flourished in that Age; whom *Eusebius* reports to be killed by the people of *Delfos*, in the 54 Olympiad.

*Epimenides* a *Cretian*, is written down among the wise men of those times; who in the (a) 46 Olympiad coming to *Athens*, purged the City from the defilement of the hainous offence of *Cylo*.

(b) He is reported to have slept 57 years in a cave, to have lived 154, or 157, or 298 years. Moreover, *Diogenes* writeth, That he raised up many Altars for the purging of the *Athenians*, dedicated to no certain god. Unto which, *Paul* in the 13th of *Acts*, seemeth to have had respect.

(c) *Anaximander* the *Milesian*, in the second year of the 58 Olympiad, was 64 years of age, and a little after dyed.

*Anaximenes*, and he also a *Milesian*, was born in the 63 Olympiad, and dyed about the taking of *Sardis*, as saith *Diogenes*; but falsely. For (d) *Sardis* was taken by *Cyrus* in the first year of the 59 Olympiad.

(e) *Xenophanes* was famous in the 60 Olympiad; in which same time *Pherecides* a *Syrian* Philosopher lived.

There are some who reckon *Periander*, as I have said, of *Corinth*, and *Pisistratus*, Tyrants of *Athens*, among the Wise men of that Age.

Anno 3702.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4185.

(f) *Ælian*. 8.  
Var. ch. 16.

(a) Diog.

(b) In the  
same place.

(c) Diog.

(d) See the  
13 book of  
the Doctr. of  
times.

(e) Diog.

## The End of the Second Book.

L

THE

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.



# THE HISTORY OF THE VVORLD. OR, AN Account of Time.

## The Third Book.

Containing the Times from the Year of the Julian Period 4186 to 4430: or from the beginning of Cambyſes, unto the beginnings of Ptolomey Philadelphus.

### CHAP. I.

Of those things which happened under Cambyſes and Darius, worthy of memory; especially of the Marathonian Conſtit.

**C**ambyſes in the fourth year of the 62 Olympiad, before Chriſt 529, as hath been ſhewn, began to reign in Perſia; in the fifth year, as Eusebius writeth, he invadeth Egypt.

(a) Herodotus ſheweth a ridiculous cauſe of this War: Cambyſes deſired the daughter of Amafiſ to Wiſe: but for her, Niteliſ the daughter of Aprieſ being ſent by Amafiſ, becauſe he knew ſhe was not to be accounted in the place of a lawful Wiſe, but of an whore or leman; when Cambyſes underſtood that matter, he turned his weapons againſt Egypt. But ſeeing that Aprieſ dyed 44 years

(a) Lib. 3. laſt.

Things done  
by Cambyſes.

years before that Cambyſes deſired Egypt; it is not likely to be true, that the daughter of Aprieſ could be choſen for a Maid in the marriage of Cambyſes. Wherefore it more probable, the which alio Herodotus writeth ſome to affirm, that affinity to have been ſought after, not by Cambyſes, but by Cyrus.

Which thing alſo Polyæus believed. For he writeth unto Cyrus, requiring the daughter of Amafiſ to wedlock; Niteliſ the daughter of Aprieſ being ſent by Amafiſ, in her room; which Niteliſ, the matter being diſſembled, when as ſhe had born many children by Cyrus, and among theſe Cambyſes, the deceit being confeſſed to Cyrus, he forced him, That becauſe Amafiſ was dead, he ſhould revenge himſelf on his ſon Pſammeticus. But in the providing, Cyrus being dead, Cambyſis by the encouragement of his Mother, paſſed over the kingdom of Egypt unto the Succellours of Aprieſ.

(b) Before that Cambyſes went into Egypt, Amafiſ dyed, and his ſon Pſammeticus ſucceeded him. Who being taken by Cambyſes, he lived ſometime in Perſia. Cambyſes was holpen in that Expedition by a Navy of Polycrates, a Tyrant of the Samians. Egypt being ſubdued, he acted many things in a cruel and wicked manner. He leading an Army againſt the Ethiopians, for want of proviſion, left off his enterprize. But when he had ſent about 50 thouſand to burn the Temple of Jupiter Hammon, by that tempeſt, and great heaps of ſand, they were overwhelmed.

Moreover, he commanded Cræſus, friendly admoniſhing him of what was his duty, to be led to death. But the Perſians withdrew him privily. Which thing being known, being glad of his ſafety, he puniſhed his preſervers with a mortal puniſhment.

At length, in the beginning of the eighth year of his reign, before Chriſt 522, Cambyſes fell into madneſs, and commanded his own brother Smerdiſ to be ſlain; becauſe he had ſeen in a dream him ſitting in his Chair of State. Prexaſpes executed that command. So indeed Herodotus. But Cteſias writeth his name to have been Tanyoxar: and he explaineth the matter a little otherwiſe: Not much after, Cambyſes falling ſuddenly upon timber, he hurt the muſcle of his thigh, and the eleventh day after he dyed.

(b) Cambyſes being ſick, Polycrates in Samos, in the 11th year of his tyranny, being called forth through deceit by Orates the Lieutenant of Sardiſ is ſlain, and his dead carcaſſe is hung upon a gibbet.

About the ſame time, before the death of Cambyſes, Magus, & Magus entreated certain man moſt like to Smerdiſ, put his perſon on himſelf, and Cambyſes being dead, held the kingdom ſeven months.

(c) Who being ſlain by ſeven of the chief men, Darius, one of this number, by the endeavour of Oebares, his Groom; and by the neighing of his horſe, obtained the kingdom, being 28 years of age. For Herodotus in the end of his firſt book, ſaith, in the laſt year of Cyrus, Darius was about 20 years old. He a little after killed Oeretes. He puniſhed Intaphernes; one of his ſix aſſiſtants; with

Anno 4188.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(b) Herod. in  
the ſame  
place.

Cræſus freed  
from death.

(b) Herod. in  
the ſame  
place.

(c) Herod. 3.  
Valer. Max. 7.  
ch. 6.  
Juſt. 1.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

with death, because he being forbidden by the utter of his Chamber, and Porter, to come unto the King, he had cut off both their noises and ears. He reduced the Tributes to a certain mean. The summe of these out of *Asia* and *Egypt* was 14560 of *Eubæan* talents; the which being reduced to our brals money, do make 10374000 of our Targets.

He gave to *Sylofantes* the brother of *Polycrates*, of whom being deprived, he was as yet endowed with a robe or a chief Counsellour in *Egypt*, the chief rule of his Country, the Isle of *Samos*. At which time almost, *Babylon* fell off; the which being besieged 20 moneths, he obtained through *Zopyrus* a Prince of great trust: which fell out next alter the third year of the 67 Olympiad.

There was a two-fold famous Expedition made by him. The former against the *Scythians*; the other against the *Greeks*. In the former he commanded *Bosphorus*, a narrow Sea with a bridge; then the other he made in the River *Danubius*: for the keeping of which, he placed Princes of the *Ionian* Cities, by whom it was deliberated, whether or no, the bridge being broken down, to which thing the *Scythians* perswaded them, they should deliver *Darius*, and the strength of the *Persians* to be overthrown, by an universal slaughter on the same. But the opinion of *Histiæus Milesius* prevailed, who perswaded, that that should not be done for this reason, because by the kingdom of *Darius*, their own safety and rule was supported. Therefore *Darius*, a great part of his Army being lost, returned with grief into *Asia*; *Megabazus* being left with 70 thousand in *Europe*, that he might subdue it by weapons. This dispatch against the *Scythians* happened, the 68 Olympiad beginning, before the account of Christ 508.

(b) *Megabazus* subdued *Thracia* and *Macedonia* unto the Government of *Darius*. At which time *Alexander* the son of *Ampeias* King of the *Macedonians*, slew certain chief of the *Persians*, warily sporting themselves in a banquet at his own house. *Darius* returning into *Persia*, drew *Histiæus*, a Tyrant of *Miletus* along with him against his will, through a shew of honour, and set his Cousen-german over the City in his place: Whom afterward, was privily encouraged, that he would fall off from the King, and should draw the *Ionians* with him into the fellowship of the War. For through a desire of his Country, and a weariness of the *Persian* Court, he took that counsel, that under pretence of quenching that domestick flame, he might obtain leave to travel from *Darius*. In the mean time, *Aristagoras*, freedom being restored to the *Milesians*, and Tyrants, as far as he could, being every where taken away, he looked at the ayd of the *Grecians*. Therefore the *Lacedemonians* being tried in vain, he cometh to *Athens*; of whom he being holpen with a Navy of twenty Ships, he openly fell off from the *Persians*: Straightway by their help *Sardis* was taken and set on fire. That happened in the 69 Olympiad. The *Persians* following hard after the *Ionians*, do scatter and put them to flight. Who being forsaken by the *Athenians*, they however maintained

Herod. 4.  
Jul. i. Corn.  
Nep. in Milt.

The Expedition of *Darius* against the *Scythians*.

(b) Herod. 5.

*Histiæus Milesius*.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

no lesser war against the *Persians*. They take *Byzantium* and other Cities. *Darius*, it being heard that *Sardis* was burned by the *Athenians*, being covetous of revenging, commanded, that he should be daily put in mind of bringing war on the *Athenians*.

(a) *Aristagoras* being afterwards slain in the Army, *Histiæus*, who was sent by *Darius*, doth vainly strive against the King with the *Ionians*: who being overcome in a Sea-fight, *Miletus* in the sixth year from the falling away of *Aristagoras*, was vanquished and consumed with fire; *Histiæus* being taken in fight by *Harpagus* Captain of the *Persians*, and being brought unto *Artaphernes* the brother of *Darius*, they hang him on a gibber.

*Darius* sends *Mardonius* his son in law against the *Grecians* with an Army; who, Tyrants being taken away out of the Cities of *Ionis*, in their stead he appointed Governments popular, or of the people. Thereby he subjected *Thracia*, *Macedonia*, and the Neighbouring Countreys unto himself. He being tossed at the Mountain *Attho* with a grievous calamity, lost twenty thousand men. After these things *Darius* sent Ambassadors into *Greece*, who should take away by force, or demand, the water and fire, unto which the people of *Egina* did homage.

At length, in the third year of the 72 Olympiad, 4224 of the Jul. Cir. they fought at *Maratho*.

(b) A desire partly of spreading his command into *Europe* and *Greece*, partly of revenging on the *Athenians*, afforded to *Darius* the cause of this War, who had helped the *Ionians* against themselves, and had burnt *Sardis*. He not onely pretended this latter for his Expedition; but this moreover, that he might restore *Hippias* the son of *Pisistratus*, who was cast out of *Athens*, and become a humble suiter to him, into his tyranny.

*Darius* being moved with these things, sends a Navy into *Greece* of six hundred Gallies with Oars, as saith *Herodotus*: but as *Corælus Nepos* relateth in *Miliades*, of five hundred; wherein he put two hundred thousand footmen, ten thousand horsemen; if we believe the same man. But *Lysias* in his Epitaph numbeth five hundred thousand. That Navy (*Datis*, and *Artaphernes* the son of *Artaphernes*, the brothers of *Darius*, being Captains) first being brought to *Eubæa*, took *Eretria*. From thence it cometh into *Attica*, and set forth its Armies on the plain field *Maratho*. The *Athenians* create ten Prators or Maiors against them, who were chief over the Army; amongst whom was *Miltiades*, by whose Successes with a very small company (for he had not more than ten thousand, whereof nine thousand of *Athenians*, of the *Platæans* there were a thousand) the *Barbarians* were scattered. *Corælus Nepos* affirmeth *Datis* to have brought an hundred thousand of footmen, and ten thousand horsemen into battel array; 6400 being slain of the *Persians*. The *Athenians* make famous 192 on the 16 day of [ *Boedromion* ], as saith (c) *Plutarch*, this is the 29 of September: Among others, *Callimachus* chief Warriour of the

*Athenians*,

(a) Herod. 6.

(b) Herod. 6.  
Cor. Nepos.  
Milt. Paul.  
Att. p. 31.  
Just. ch.

(c) Plut. in  
Cam.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

(a) Herod. 7.  
in the begin.

*Athenians*, and *Cynegirus*, who laying hold of the flags of an enemies ship with his hand, it being cut off, he dyed.

After this slaughter, *Darius* made a greater provision against the *Greeks* of (a) three whole years space. But in the fourth year *Egypt* forsook him. While therefore he fixeth himself to be revenged of both, a dissention arising between his sons, who required to be by their father chosen King, contrary to the custome; at length *Xerxes* was by him ordained and put before *Artabazanes* the elder, because he was also born of *Arop's* the daughter of *Cyrus*; and was received into the chief power. At length in the year following, from the falling off of *Egypt*, *Darius* dyeth. These things *Herodotus*. From the which, this is concluded, the *Marathonian* fight to have happened in the thirty and second year of *Darius*; That is, in the fifth year before his death.

## CHAP. II.

Of the History of those of the Family of *Pisistratus*, and the death of *Hipparchus*; as also of the *Loraship* of *Miltiades*; and the magnificent Errour of *Cornelius Nepos*.

(b) b. 6. Herod. 5. & 6.

(c) A discourse of desire of gain. In Collec. of Vales. p. 350.

(a) b. of Polic.

(b) Pausan. Att.

IN the twentieth year before the *Marathonian* battel, as (b) *Thucydides* is Authour, the rule of those of *Pisistratus* was quenched in *Athens*, by the endeavour of the *Alcmaeonides*, and the help of the *Lacedemonians*. For *Hippias* the son of *Pisistratus*, was driven out, when he had been chief 18 years after the death of his Father; whose brother was *Hipparchus*, as (c) *Plato* is witness, a moderate and learned man. Yet *Diodorus* saith, That *Hipparchus* and *Hippias* were violent and wilfull men; but the third son of *Pisistratus*, *Theſalus*, to have been civil and well manner'd, who, Tyranny being renounced, was much beloved of his Citizens: whom again (a) *Heraclides* contradiceth, who saith, *Theſalus* to have been the younger, and fiercely rash in boldness: Whom the Conspirators being willing to kill, they slew *Hipparchus*, far more gentle than his two brethren, in his stead. This man was slain by the conspiracy of *Harmodius* and *Aristogiton*, in the time of the *Athenians* exercising their active games. Who both being killed by them of the guard, many others were tortured, and punished. (b) After that, *Hippias* lorded it three years over the *Athenians*; and in the fourth being driven out, he fled to *Darius*, in the twentieth year before the fight at *Maratho*, as saith *Thucydides*. Wherefore the death of *Hipparchus* happened in the fourth year of the 66 Olympiad; in which year, it is gathered from thence, the five yearly active games, sacred to the *Athenians*, were wont to be proclaimed. But this year was before Christ 513. But *Hippias* was cast out in the third year of the 67 Olympiad, of the Jul. Circuit 4204; afterwards Images were publicly placed for *Harmodius* and

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

(c) b. 34.  
ch. 4.  
(d) Herod.  
b. 6.

and *Aristogiton*, as (c) *Pliny* writeth; who saith, that was done in the same year, wherein the Rulers were driven away. But they were thrust out in the third year of the same Olympiad going out; that is, of the Jul. Cir. 4205.

(d) About the same time, wherein *Darius* by Ambassadors required the water and fire from the *Grecian* Cities, when the people of *Egina* had obeyed his commands, and *Cleomenes* Ruler in *Lacedemon* had come thither to enquire into, or hear their cause debated, he being by his companion in Office *Demaratus* led into a fault, he caused the Government to be taken away from this very man; *Pythias* being brought in as a false witness, which denied *Demaratus* to be the lawful son of *Aristo*, *Leotychides* was ordained in the room of this man; of whom he being sharply touched with a mock, he ran away to the *Persians*.

At that season *Miltiades* the son of *Cimon* was renowned at *Athens*, who obtained dominion in *Cherronesus*, a City of *Thracia*. For *Miltiades* the Uncle of this man, the son of *Cypselus* born of the same Mother as *Cimon*, by the *Dolonean* or *Swift-footed Thracians*, who inhabited *Cherronesus*, he being called to the chief rule, by the Oracle, at *Athens*, *Craesus* reigning, with whom when he exercised friendship, he held that Country. He dying, left *Stesagoras* the son of his brother *Cimon* his successeur. Who being killed by a privy murderer, the sons of *Pisistratus*, saith *Herodotus*, sent *Miltiades* the son of *Cimon*, whom they themselves had taken away from amongst them, thither; who there enjoyed the affairs. But in the third year after it came to passe, the *Scythians* break into *Thracia*, whom *Darius* had provoked by his Expedition made against them. Whom *Miltiades* shunning, left *Cherronesus*, and was restored afterward to the same by the *Thracians*. These things *Herodotus*. Which that they may be true, it must needs be, that *Miltiades* was sent by *Hippias* onely after the death of *Hipparchus*, for in the third year after, the *Scythians* made their violent assault or inroad.

Wherein the Errour of *Cornelius Nepos* is worthy the taking notice of, who hath confounded the former *Miltiades* with the latter, and hath ascribed the deeds of both unto one. But *Alianus* (in his divers things) rightly distinguisheth of three *Miltiades*, in like manner, as we have done.

*Miltiades* the son of *Cimon*, when the *Persian* Navy got over that whole Sea, he slipped to *Athens*, and afterward being General against the Army of *Darius*, he contended in the field of *Marathon* with a most prosperous and glorious success. Which victory being gotten, he is sent to pursue its remainder with a Navy; and while he compasseth by the Islands of *Bella*, a Town in *Campania*, he goeth to *Paros*; and what with a false fright of an Army of *Persians* invading, what through the sickness of an hurt body, being beaten off from thence, he was fined by the unjust sentences of his Citizens, with a great sum of money; and because he had

The great error of Corn. Nep. concerning Miltiades.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Per. od.  
unto 4430.

not paid it, he was cast into prison, till he dyed. These things happened the next year after the *Marathonian* victory.

## CHAP. III.

Of certain Learned men who lived about that time.

IN the interim, from the third year of the 60 Olympiad, and the rise of *Cyrus* in *Babylonia*, to the death of *Darius*, and the beginning of the reign of *Xerxes*, the memories of the most famous in all literature and several Arts are delivered to posterity. Some exquisite in Poetry, *Simonides* *Cem*, a famous Lyrick, to whom *Eusebius* ascribes the Bayes in the 61 Olympiad, together with *Phocylis*.

*Simonides*.  
*Phocylides*.

*Anacreon*.

(a) Lib. 3.  
c. 3.

(b) Scal.  
Auch.

After him *Anacreon*, a great Favourite of *Polycrates* the *Samian* Tyrant, as (a) *Herodotus* tells us: which *Polycrates* dyed by the hands of *Orotes* in the 64 Olympiad.

(b) *Aeschylus* also, the brother of *Cynegirus*, who behaved himself so valiantly in the Battle at *Marathonia*, was very famous at *Athens* about this time: which *Aeschylus* likewise was in the same fight, as the Writer of his life tells us: But in the list of *Sophocles* we are informed *Cynegirus* was son to one *Archontes Philippus*, and born in the second year of the 71 Olympiad, and younger than *Aeschylus* by 17 years; by which account, *Aeschylus* was born in the first year of the 67 Olympiad, and of the Julian Period the 4202, and fought this Battle of *Marathonia* in the 22, or 23 year of his age; so that his death will fall in the 4267 year of the Julian Period. For he lived 65 years. But since 'tis apparent he lived and dyed in the time of *Hiero* King of *Sicilie*, and that *Hiero* himself dyed in the 4247 year of the Julian Period; the story hangs not well together, but in all likelihood he was born long before the 67 Olympiad.

Amongst the Philosophers, *Xenophanes*, an excellent Naturalist, stands upon record, who was also very famous for Poetry, whom *Diogenes* and *Eusebius* place about the 60 Olympian.

*Pythagoras*.  
*Jamblicus* in vita  
*Pyth.* *Diog.*  
Died. in  
Excerpt.  
Valef. p. 241.

But this Age was more honourable in nothing than *Pythagoras* himself, who took his origin from *Samos*, and after a long travel returning to his native Country, *Polycrates* still reigning there, went to *Crotone* in *Italy*, where he had the discipline of very many who came to be tutor'd by him, as *Diogenes* reports. Some say he very much disaffected *Sylfontes*, brother and successor to *Polycrates*. He was renowned in the 60 Olympiad, if we may believe *Diogenes*. About the 62 Olympiad he writes, That *Jamblicus* went into *Italy*, where *Polycrates* had begun his reign. He dyed in the fourth year of the 70 Olympiad, when he had lived either eighty or ninety years, as *Diogenes* delivers. *Jamblicus* reports he was very intimate with *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and *Abaris*; the

*Abaris*.

the same *Jamblicus* who writes of his life and Doctrines. This *Abaris* was a Priest of *Apollo*, who adored *Pythagoras* instead of *Apollo*, and brought him a wonderfull strange and curious Arrow, with which crossing the River, he freed the cities that were infected, from the pestilence; and other things most miraculous, he acted by virtue thereof; as we have it from *Jamblicus*. But (a) *Tertullian* writes, that this *Pythagoras* aimed at the sovereignty of the *Thurians*.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Per. od.  
unto 4430.

(a) In *Apol.*  
c. 46.

By the sage precepts of *Pythagoras*, the *Crotonians* instituted their Common-wealth, and thereby improved, not only in civility, and good government, but in Martiall Discipline, so much that 100 thousand of them encountered with 300 thousand of the *Sybarites* at the River *Sagra* (under the conduct of *Milo*) and having put the enemy to the Sword, utterly demolished the very city.

Died. 12.

*Heraclitus* the *Ephesian* was in great esteem about the 69 Olymp. as *Diogenes* testifies: nor will we forget how famous (b) *Leno Eleas* was at this time,

(b) *Tert.* ad  
*Mort.* c. 4.

## CHAP. IV.

Of the Kings dethroned at Rome, and the wars thence kindled amongst the Romans.

*Livius* says, *Rome* was a Monarchy for 244. years from the foundation of it before it became a free State. Therefore in the 245 year they deposed their King, disannulled that government, and then were Consuls first elected and created. Wherefore since (by the testimony of *Varro*) the City was erected in the third year of the 6 Olymp. or in the year before Christ, 753. the decay of Kingship, and the rising of Consulship, there fall upon the fourth year of the 67 Olymp. the year before Christ, 509 if we follow the same site of Moneths, as in the old Roman year; and is now observed in the Julian Account. The *Palilia*, or feast of *Pales*, were celebrated on the 6th of the Calends of *May*, whence the time from the building of the City was computed. And the Olympian years from the solstice. So that the beginning of the City-account of their years, and the end of the Olympian, agreed exactly. But the Roman Moneths this while kept not the same order with the Olympian; and what rule they then observed, we can by no means find out; therefore we commonly use the site of Moneths now known and settled amongst us at this day.

Lib. 1. in fine.  
Dion. lib. 4.  
Plut. in *Popl.*  
Jul. Per. 3961.

The Monarchy of *Rome* was dissolved, and *Lucretius* (then Monarch) expelled, because his son offered to have ravished *Lucretia*. This was transacted upon the 6th of the Calends of *March*, on which day the *Regifugium*, or expulsion and departure of Kings is noted to have been in the Roman Calendar.

Vid. 10. de  
doct. Temp.  
c. 21.

ME

Instead

Anno 418.  
Jul. Period.  
uot 4430.

Instead of their Kings, when the Præfect of the City had summoned together the noble men, (as we have it in the Commentaries of *Servius Tullius*) two of them, to wit, *L. Junius Brutus*, and *L. Tarquinius Collatinus* were created Consuls. One of them (*i.e.*) *Tarquinius* being a neighbour of the *Tarquinius*, and one of the Family of *Damaratus*; and his Grandfather; who after the detection of that conspiracy, in which the sons of *Brutus*, and a sisters son of the said *Tarquinius* were taken, because he behaved himself too favourably towards the conspirators; by *Brutus* his own means, was banished amongst the rest; and one *P. Valerius Poplicola* supplied his place. After this, the King *Tarquinius* waged a war against the *Romans*, wherein *Brutus* fell, and in his place, first *Lucretius*, and afterwards *M. Horatius* were made Consul. And at last they made a decree, that every year two new Consuls should be chosen, and so the state of *Rome* was governed by an anniversary pair of Consuls.

(a) Liv. 2.  
Dion. 9.  
Plut. in Popl.

(a) In the third year from the *Roman* liberty, *Porfenna* a petty King of the *Clusini* (to restore the *Tarquinius*) waged a war against the *Romans*, in which war the singular prowess of *M. Horatius Cocles* was most illustrious and notable. He himself alone kept a bridge against the enemy, do they the utmost they could, an the bridge being cut down, swam safe to land. *Mutius Scaevola* having aspired to the crown, and being baffled in his design. This *Horatius* took him, and held his hand in the fire till he was forfeited, that he sued for peace with the *Romans*. The fortune of the Female Sex at this time was no less conspicuous, but of *Clula* especially amongst them all, who being delivered as a Hostage to the King, having deceived her keeper, escaped over a great River to her own party.

(b) Liv. 2.  
Dion. 6.

The first Dictator.

(b) After the repulse of the *Etruscians* succeeded an insurrection of *Romans*, stirred up by the incitations of *Os. Mamilius*, a Son in Law of *Tarquinius*, and a Roman himself. The war raging violently, *Posthumus*, made Dictator in the year of the City 258. was sent out against these incendiaries, who having overthrown them in a pitch field, at a place called *Regulus Laeus*, (*i.e.*) King-Mear, restored the Conquered to the friendship of the *Romans*. Nor was this the first Dictator; for before him, in the year of the City 250. *T. Lartius*, having borrowed money, and therewith bribed the people to give their voices, by that means was created Dictator.

(c) Liv. 2.  
Plut. Cor.  
The Volscian war.  
(d) Dion. 1. 8.  
Liv. Plut.

(c) After they began to make war upon the *Volsci*, which by reason of intermissions, was protracted for many years. Therefore take notice that it began in the year of the City 259. (d) In this war the stupendious success of *C. Marcus Coriolanus* is most worthy of memory, who in the year of the City 263. playing least in fight, for that he was under contempt at home, went to the *Volsci*, and stirred them up to a war, for the managing whereof, they elected him and one *Tullius Accus*, who were so befriended by fortune in that war, that after many victories had against the

Romans

Romans, at last they followed them to the very City-walls; when, by the intreaty of his Mother, he was taken off the enterprise of the City, which fell out in the year, according to the City-account, 266. Notwithstanding the loss of *Coriolanus*, the *Volsci* prosecuted the War, but were conquered most triumphantly by *Spurius Cassius* who had been thrice Consul.

But this good fortune was the ruine of the man. For he was the first after the depulsion of the *Tarquinius*, that was so hardy as to attempt the Sovereignty of *Rome*, but was suppressed in the attempt (c) and for his pains precipitated from the Rock *Tarpeia*. Anno, M.C. 269. He was the chief man in bringing in the *Agrarian* Law, but the very year before his death.

(c) Dion. 8.  
Liv. 2.  
The first Agrarian Law.

But in the 261 year of *Rome*, the common people being so exasperated by usury and oppression, that they were not able to pay their debts betook themselves to the Mount called *Sacrum*, or holy, and by the Counsell and Oration of *Menius Agrippa*, found the means to recover themselves, he having first ordered a Magistracy, which he made use of for his own safety against the violence of the Fathers of *Rome*, and these they called Tribunes.

The Creation of Tribunes.

## CHAP. V.

Of *Xerxes* his expedition into Greece, The *Græcians* victory at Sea (near *Salamis*) and the destruction of the *Persians*.

THE tenth year after the *Marathonian* fight, the battle of *Salamis* was disputed, as *Thucydides* reports. (f) For *Xerxes* who in the fourth year of the 73 Olymp. and the year before Christ 485 (his father being dead) began his reign, as well by the advice and instigation of the *Pisistratians* and *Alvadarrians*, as also being incited thereto by many and fearfull Visions in the 5th year of his reign of the Jul. Per. the 4233. or the 4th year of the 74 Olymp. took his voyage into *Asia*, and having passed over the Winter at *Sardis*, the Spring following, he passed into Greece. *Herodotus*, tells us there were five Millions two hundred eighty three thousand heads in his Army, (g) *Plutarch* five Millions. (h) *Theodoretus*, thirty hundred thousand. *Cornelius Nepos* 700 thousand foot, and 400 thousand Horse. The same Author reckons his Navy to 12 hundred *Lacedemonians*, under the command of *Leonidas*, with 300 *Spartans*, and 4000 of other *Greeks* from the borders of *Thessaly*, called by the name *Thermopylae*, who had formerly repelled his Army from their coasts, but the other *Græcians* being all departed, the *Lacedemonians* being encompassed by the *Persians*, were overcome. The *Athenians* being warned by an Oracle that they should make themselves wooden Bulwarks, (as we find by *Themistocles*) they left their country, and, with their Families, and all they had, betook themselves to the Sea; and to that end provided and got together, (as *Cornelius Nepos* stories it) 200.

(f) Herod. 7.  
& 8.  
Plutarch in Them. & Arist.  
Just. 2.  
Cor. Nep. in Them. Dion. 11.

(g) In Paral.  
(h) Orat. 10.  
con. Græc.

M 2

Sail,

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(i) Herod. 8.  
init.

Sail, to which 100 more Greek Ships being added, they made up a fleet of three hundred sail. Herodotus mentions but a hundred twenty seven Attick Ships; but in all they amounted to 271. Xerxes entering Attica set Athens on fire. Then began the conflict at Salamina, in which the Persians were routed, on the 20. day of the Moneth Boedromion, which falls upon the 23th of our September. Xerxes betook himself to flight, and the 45 day after the fight arrived at Hellespont, having left Mardonius with 300000. foot Souldiers in Græcia. This Sea-fight happened in the beginning of the first year of the 75 Olymp. the 480 of the account before Christ, being the next ensuing. Mardonius being fought by Pausanias the Lacedemonian, and Aristides, the Grecian Generalls, was vanquished at Platea, the third of Boedromion, or a 5th of September (k) upon which very day, the Grecians overthrew the Persians in another Sea fight at Mycale.

(k) Herod. l. 9.  
Diod. 11.  
Plur. Arist.

At the same time that the Grecians and Persians were Grapling by Sea. The Caribaginians whom Xerxes had incited to invade Sicily were routed in a Land-fight at Himera by Gelo, as \* Diodorus observes.

\* Lib. 11.

## CHAP. VI.

Of the most memorable occurrences transacted in Græcia, after the Persian war ended, and other, and the civil broils in Greece.

When the storm of the Persian war was allayed, the Grecians had their hands full at home. For their two chief Cities Athens and Lacedemonia were at contention which of them should have the prebeminence, and with these (some with one, some with the other) all the other Cities sided.

(l) Diod. 11.  
Cor. Nep.  
Them.  
Plur. Them.

(l) The Athenians chief care was when they had ordered their affairs, to re-edify their walls which had been ruined by the Persians, which by the industry of Themistocles they accomplished, (do the Lacedemonians what they could to hinder it) who opposed it lest it might become a better fortified City then Peloponnesus, (which the Barbarians made their safeguard and refuge, whilst they foraged and plundered Græcia). But it was plain, they opposed it not so much for any affection to the publique good, as out of fear and envy, lest their rivall City should out-top them, but by the advice of the same (m) Themistocles, the Athenians made them a Haven in the Piræum, whereas hitherto they had made use of Phalericum.

(m) Thucid.  
l. 1. pag. 61.  
Corn. Nep.

(n) Diod. 11.  
Corn. Nep.  
in Pausan.  
(o) Thucid. 1.  
Diod. 11. Cor.  
Nep. Plur.  
Parall.

(n) Afterwards the Grecians sent Pausanias with a fleet into Cyprus and Hellespont, to clear those parts from the Barbarians (o) Who having taken Byzantium whilst he stayed there, dealt privately with the Persians, about the betraying of Greece, which being made known to the Grecians, he was sent for, condemned, and died for it. In the mean time out of distast, at the haughtiness of

of Pausanias. The Grecian people were much alienated in their affections to the Lacedemonians, which opportunity the Athenians laid hold on, and by the means of Aristides confederated them to themselves, who thought convenient to make a certain Treasure in the Island Belos, into which every year they cast in every man somewhat, which custome the Athenians held afterwards.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

After the death of Pausanias, Themistocles being accused of Treachery by the Lacedemonians, he betook him to his heels, and fled to the Persians, which Diodorus reckons to be in the second year of the 77 Olymp. the year before Christ, 471. being the ninth year after the great slaughter at Salamis, so that Xerxes being then living, to him it was that Themistocles went as elsewhere we have declared.

The flight of  
Themistocles

(p) The year after, Cimon the son of Miliades with a fleet of 250. Vessels, worsted, and utterly routed, and dispersed in downright fighting 340. Sail of the Barbarians, and the same day having clothed his Souldiers in Persian habit, and put them into the ships he had taken in the battell with the Barbarians, came upon the Persian Army at unawares on land, and utterly cut them off at the River Eurymedon.

(p) Diod. 11.  
Plur. in Cim.  
Corn. Nep.

Lacedemon terrified with a great Earthquake which was in Peloponnesus, when the Helots and Messenians were swallowed up, first craved aid of the Athenians; but whilst the Auxiliaries were marching toward their relief, (the enemy being restrained by Archimæus) the Lacedemonians suspected the Auxiliary forces of Athens, and durst not trust them, but sent them back the same way they came; which was so resented, that it was the cause of much heart-burning betwixt them. This Diodorus writes to be in the fourth year of the 77 Olympiad.

The following year being the 78 Olympiad, Mycæne, because they would not submit to the Grecians, Diodorus tells us, they and their City were utterly destroyed by them, and then (q) Pausanias (as the same Author intimates) out of emulation of their springing glory began to hate the Grecians perfectly, because in the Persian War the Argives late quiet at home, whilst the Mycænians sent 80 Souldiers to Thermopyle against the Persians. In the year following he says Hiero King of Syracuse dyed, when he had reigned eleven years, and his brother Thrasibulus succeeded him, who being dethroned by the unanimous vote and consent of the Syracusans, went to the Locri. (r) From this time to the reign of Dionysius, the Syracusans lived in a continued peace and tranquillity, which was for the space of 60 years; which Diodorus reckons to the third year of the 78 Olympiad.

(q) Paus. Cor.  
59.

Hiero,

(r) Diod. 11.

(s) In the fourth year of the same Olympiad, Xerxes was slain by Artabanus; and in the very year before that, Darius his son was murdered by Artaxerxes his brother, whom Artabanus accused before him of the fact, and he judged Artaxerxes, and condemned him

(f) Diod. 11.  
Just. 5.



Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

him according to his merit. So *Artaxerxes* *Μακρόχου*, the same year began his reign. This man in the third year of his reign, and the second of the 79 Olympiad, warred upon Egypt, which fell off from him, together with *Inarus* King of *Lybia*. But *Inarus* being back'd with the *Athenians* ayds, stood it out with the *Persians*, who were, but the third year of the same Olympiad, routed by the *Athenians* in a conflict at Sea, and the next year after were pursued by them to *Memphis*, and besieged there. At last, in the 81 Olympiad, (1) the *Egyptians* deserting the *Athenians*, they were glad to come off upon equal terms: *Inarus* was executed for his revolt, and Egypt recovered.

In the interim, the seeds of discord grew up so by degrees betwixt the two Cities, that at last they fell from words to blows, by the continual provocation one of another. For the *Athenians* were so taken with their own breeding and generosity, that being puff'd with pride, the great ones of them behaved themselves not only arrogantly, but injuriously insulted over their fellows; so that many of them fled over to the *Lacedemonians*, as saith (u) *Thucyd.* in the 79 Olympiad of his *Egineta*. Whereupon they made several incursions upon one anothers Territories. The *Athenians*, when under their Captain *Leocrates* they had routed the *Corinthians* and *Epidaurians*, marched for *Peloponnese* in the second year of the 80 Olympiad. And the 81 Olympiad, under their General *Talmides*, harassed *Laconia*, and subjected *Agina* to their Dominion.

(x) After that, by the means of *Cymon*, the quinquennial or fifth year Truce was compounded, they turned the dint of the War against their old enemies the *Persians*. *Cymon* with a Navy under his Command marched for *Cyprus*, and defeated the *Barbarians* both by Land and Sea, and brought *Artaxerxes* to compound for peace, than which nothing to this day redounded more to the honour of *Greece*, or to the disparagement of the *Persians*. For they were glad to accept peace upon these conditions, That they should not come within a dayes journey for a well-mounted horse-man, of the Sea-side; and that they should not passe betwix the *Cyareans* and *Chelidonians* in any long or beaked Ships, and that they should set free all the Cities of *Asia* which they held. (y) This peace was concluded in the fourth year of the 82 Olympiad, as *Diodorus* reports. The very same year *Cymon*, as he lay at the Leaguer of *Citium*, fell sick and dyed.

(y) Diod. 11.  
Thucyd. 3.  
Plur. & Corn.  
Nep. in Cimon.

(z) Thucyd.  
Diod. 12.

(z) After this, the old grudge amongst the *Grecians* began to fester, and the War broke out anew, notwithstanding that it was reconciled by that triennial League in the third year of the 83 Olympiad. In this interim the *Samians* revolted from the *Athenians*, and were light upon by *Pericles*, and foyled and reduced in the 4th year of the 84 Olympiad. Also the *Corinthians* warring upon the *Corycraens* and the *Athenians*, two Allies and Confederates, about the second year of the 86 Olympiad, were clearly baffled in a Conflict at Sea. Therefore the *Lacedemonians* and their

their sides-men alledge, That the *Athenians* violated the Articles the 4th year after they were concluded. And so the *Peloponnesean* War, as they call it, broke forth in plain terms.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

## CHAP. VII.

Of the Roman Affairs, from the 271 year, from the building of the City, to the 323; and the beginning of the Peloponnesean War.

THE (a) *Veian* War began at Rome, according to the City account, the 271 year; which when the *Fabii* alone undertook to manage the War themselves upon their own charge, and had pitched their Tents at the River *Cremera*, their quarters were beaten up the very first day, and six hundred of them put to the sword; which *Gellius* sayes was in the 277 year of the City account; and the 4th after the Battle was at *Salamis*. But the year following, the *Veians* had to do with *Servilius Consul*.

(a) Liv. 2.  
Dion. 9.  
Jul. Period,  
cap. 10.

(b) The War went on with the *Volski*, who were often overcome, especially by *T. Quinctius Capitolinus*. He, the 286 year of the City, destroyed *Antium* the head of that Nation; and the 296, was sent Dictator against the *Equi*, and being but a man that came from the plough-tayl, delivered *Minutius Consul*, who was hemm'd in by them, and subjugated his enemies, and made them Tributary.

(b) Liv. 3.  
Dion. 10.

(c) In the 303 year of the City-account, and the 453 before Christ, the Constitution of the Roman State was altered, according to *Dionysius*. For then the *Decemviri* (or the Government by Ten) were established in the Supreme Authority, who appointed several Laws for the *Romans*, which they gathered out of certain Constitutions brought thither the year before, by certain Legates out of *Greece*, which I say they new-modelled and fitted to the Constitution of the Roman Common-Wealth. But these men presently made use of the power put into their hands, to Tyranny and Oppression; insomuch, that one of them (by name *Appius Claudius*) seeking by force to compell *Virginia* to be his Concubine, her father, to prevent him, slew her with his own hands. Whereupon grew another Insurrection amongst the common people; to appease which mutiny, they were fain to suppress the *Decemviri*, and restore the *Tribunes* of the People and *Consuls*, to Office again: which fell out upon the 305 year of the City, and the (d) 60 after the liberty thereof, the year before Christ 449; so that the *Decemviri* had ruled but three years at most.

(c) Dion. 104.  
& 11.  
Liv. 3.

(e) In the 315 year of the City, *Sp. Melius* took the opportunity of engaging the affections of the people to him, as a probable way to attain the Sovereignty, by distributing corn amongst them very liberally in a most raging famine. But was cut off by the command of *Quinctius* the Dictator, and by the hand of *C. Servilius*. The year following, the *Fidmates* fell off to *Lartius Tolumnius*,

(d) Cicet. 2.  
de fac.

(e) Liv. 4.  
Val. 1. 5. c. 3.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

ninus, King of the *Viens*, and put to death the Roman Legates, whose Statues or Monument were erected in the *Forum*; and the year following, being the 317 of the City, they were vanquished by *Mamercus Æmilius* the Dictator. *Tullius* was slain by *Cornelius Cossus*, who was the first but *Romulus* that devoted a rich booty to *Jupiter Feretrius*; although *Sigonius* thinks he dedicated them in his Consulship the 326 year of the City.

(f) Liv. 4.

(1) The first Censors at *Rome* were created the 311th year, who were constituted Quinquennial or for five years; but in the 320 they were reduced to be half-yearly, by *Mamercus Æmilius* the Dictator.

In the 323 year, *A. Posthumus* the Dictator was very fortunate in his War against the *Æqui* and *Volsi*, but the honour of his victory was very much defiled by the blood of his son, whom he punished no less severe, for but fighting without Orders, than with the Dirt of his Ax.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of the most Learned men, fam'd in the world during the interval betwixt the Persian Expedition into Greece, and the Peloponnesian War.

THE most ingenious Philosophers in these times were *Anaxagoras*, who the very year that *Xerxes* sailed into Greece, arrived the age of 20 years; in which year also he began to read Philosophy, as *Diogenes* reports; by which account he was born the 70 Olympiad, (which *Apollodorus* confirms) and dyed the 88: where *Diogenes* mistakes himself, and writes *ἑξήντην*, (i. e.) 70, for *οὐκ ἑξήντην* (i. e.) 80. *Pericles* was Schollar to this *Anaxagoras*.

(g) Diog. Laert.

(g) *Socrates* also, that father of Philosophers, was born the 4th year of the 77 Olympiad, on the sixth day of the month *Thargelion* which falls upon the 4246 year of the Julian Period, and the 468 year before Christ. He lived 70 years, and dyed in the first of the 95 Olympiad.

*Democritus* was born the third year of the 77 Olympiad, being a year before *Socrates*, (as *Thrasillus* reports out of *Diogenes*) and lived 109 years, so that his death fell upon the 4th year of the 105 Olympiad. But in regard he testifies he wrote a book, entitled, *μυρίη δόξα*, in the 730 year after the destruction of *Troy*, which year, according to our reckoning, agrees with the 4260 of the Jul. Period, it's evident by this account, he was but then 15 years old. But it may be *Troy* was destroyed some years before this; as we have noted elsewhere.

(h) Apol. 46.

(h) *Tertullianus* avers, That this *Democritus* put his own eyes, because he could not behold a woman without lustful imaginations.

(i) Diog. Laert. Euseb.

(i) *Empedocles* and *Protagoras* were illustrious in the world about the

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

the 84 Olympiad; at which time also *Melissus*, and not long after *Parmenides*, who was so famed in the 90 Olympiad, contracted great admiration. Nor must we forget the honour those times received by *Gorgias*, *Hippias*, *Prodicus*, and *Hippocrates* the Physician, whom *Eusebius* places in the 86 Olympiad. *Meto* the Astronomer, who observed the Solstice before the Peloponnesian War, hath deserved no less observation.

Of Poets famous in these times were *Pindarus*, (k) who had attained 40 years of age a year before *Xerxes* passed into Greece, and appear'd upon the stage of this World in the 65 Olympiad; and *Buclylides*, whom *Eusebius* places in the 82 Olympiad. The famous Tragedians of this Age were *Eschylus*, of whom we have spoken formerly; *Sophocles*, who was 17 years younger than *Sophocles*. *Eschylus*, was born the second year of the 71 Olympiad, the 495 year before Christ, and dyed in the 90 year of his age, being the third of the 93 Olympiad, the 4308 year of the Julian Period, as

(k) Pind. vita.

(1) *Diodorus* reports; who likewise tells us, that *Apollodorus* makes mention in his Chronicle, That *Euripides* dyed the very same year; who was born (as *Thomas Magister* in his Life sets down) in that very first year of the 75 Olympiad, in which *Xerxes* invaded Greece, and lived to the age of 75 years.

(1) Diod. 13.

Of Comicks also. *Cratinus* and *Arifarchus* stand upon record, in the 81 Olymp. in *Eusebius*.

## CHAP. IX.

Of the Peloponnesian War; and other Transactions contemporary, in Greece.

THAT bloody and so long continued War in Greece, between the *Athenians* and *Peloponnesians*, took date from the latter end of the first year of the 85 Olymp. in the Spring season (*Pythodorus* being Governour) the 431 year before Christ. *Pericles* was the chief Incendiary of this combustion, who having too lavishly expended 7000 talents, rather than he would be called to account, he would confuse the affairs of Greece.

Thucyd. 2.  
Diod. 13.  
Plut. Peric.

In this War, *Madam Fortuna* played fast and loose to the production of many contrary events, and great variety of Transactions. *Pericles* at the end of two years and six months from the beginning of this War, dyed of a Plague, which began to rage and spread it self, the second year of this War. The (b) *Lesbians*, and especially the *Mitylenians* revolted from the *Athenians*, the fourth year of the War; but the next year after, were received again by *Pachetes* the Captain, who had very much ado to save their lives; and the 10th year *Cleo*, General of the *Athenians*, and *Bardis* of the *Lacedemonians*, both perishing in the War, they had truce on both sides for 15 years, but it was broken at eight years end.

The death of Pericles.

(b) Thucyd. 3.  
Diod. 12.

N

(c) Th

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(c) Thucyd. 3.  
Diod. 13.

The Sicilians  
Conquert at  
A. b. 41.

(d) Thucyd.  
1. 8.  
Diod. 13.

(e) Corn. Nep.  
& Plut. in  
Lysan.  
Diod. 13.

The Athenian  
bondage.  
(f) Xen. 2.  
Hellen. p. 270.  
Græc.

(g) Thucyd.  
1. 3. p. 285.

(h) Diod. 13.

(i) Lib. 7. Init.

(k) Diod. 13.  
Zeno. 2.  
E. M. W.

(c) In the 16th year of this War, being the 91 Olympiad, and the time of the Truce, the Athenians invaded Sicily, to the relief of the *Egeians* and *Leontins*, against the *Syracusans*; over which Expedition, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, and *Lamachus* were made Generals; but *Alcibiades* being accused of sacrilege in his absence, was commanded home about it; whereupon he fled to the *Lacedemonians*, and persuaded them to send aid to the *Syracusans*: In which Voyage *Gylippus* was sent General; by whom the *Athenians*, who hitherto had proceeded to their hearts desire in every thing, were vanquished both by Sea and Land, and fell wholly into his hands. In this conflict the most valiant Commanders, *Demesthenes* and *Nicias*, fell under the swords dint. This fell out the 19th year of the War, and the 413 before Christ.

From this time the Declension of the *Athenians* fortune was observed; which nevertheless (d) *Alcibiades* recovered in all he might, when he was restored to his Country, having abolished the then Government or rule over the people, and constituted the Common-wealth among four hundred persons, which afterwards were five thousand.

(e) At last the *Athenians* were totally routed at the bridge of *Egos*, by the two Generals, *Aracus* and *Lysander*, and the very City came into their hands, and so the War ended in the beginning of the 28 year, the 16 day of the month *Munychion*, which falls about the 18th of April. The war therefore continued 27 whole years, even untill the *Athenian* subjection. (f) But *Xenophon* will have it to last till the Autumn following, in which the Sun declined its wonted course, which fell upon the 404 year before Christ; being the first of the 94 Olympiad, the third day of September. But if he reckons it to have come to passe the ninth Olymp. following; so it falls to be the next after that, which he reckons most appositely to be the 93, in the beginning of his first book.

The War began the 34 year of *Artaxerxes Longimanus* his reign, (for he dyed the seventh year of the War, as we find by (g) *Thucydides*, when he had reigned 40 year,) and ended in the latter end of the first, or beginning of the second of *Artaxerxes Memoridis*, as appears by (h) *Diodorus*.

During this same War, as *Diodorus* testifies in the 22 year thereof, the *Egeians*, who came to the aid of the *Athenians*, robbed them of all they could, and so fled to the *Carthaginians*, who sent out *Hannibal* the son of *Amilcar* with a strong party. He spoiled *Selinunte*, and destroyed *Himera*. Against him *Hermocrates* the *Syracusen* in his banishment made strong opposition; but he having secretly got into *Syracusa* the first year of the 93 Olympiad, together with his accomplices, was put to the sword, amongst whom *Dionysius* (that afterwards in the last year of the *Peloponnesian* War was possessor of the Sovereignty) was, but escaped. (i) But *Dionysius Hekistarnasus* writes, That *Callias* being President in the third year of the 93 Olympiad; (who began his rule the 4309 year of the Julian Period,) (k) *Dionysius* compassed the Sovereignty

raignty amongst the *Syracusans*, by the same wife that *Papistratus* had before used amongst the *Athenians*.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

## CHAP. X.

Of all the *Memorall* Occurrences transacted from the end of the *Peloponnesian* War, to the reign of *Philip King* of *Macedon*.

After the (a) *Athenians* were subjugated by *Lysander*, the management of *Athens* was committed to 30 Governours, who, insluting too imperiously upon the people, were deposed by *Tirapulus*, and the *Athenians* restored to liberty the fourth year of the 94 Olympiad, and the fourth year after the City was taken. In which very year, *Cyrus* the younger son of *Darius* the brother of *Artaxerxes Atmenon*, being made President of *Asia* by his father, he, encouraged by the assistance of *Greece*, and especially *Lacedemon*, warred upon his brother, and was slain in a battle. The *Grecian* Auxiliaries being brought from ten, to five thousand, (b) *Xenophon* amongst others being a Commander amongst them, most strangely escaped through *Armenia* and *Paphlagonia*, and the very Army of the King, in the first year of the 95 Olympiad.

In the mean time, *Pharnabazus* and *Tissaphernes* being made Governours of *Asia* by *Artaxerxes*; the *Lacedemonians* joyned with *Pharnabazus* against *Tissaphernes*, by whom, *Conon* the *Athenian* was made Admiral.

*Agessians* likewise, when he was made President of *Asia*, behaved himself very valiantly; (c) but when *Tissaphernes* the King was slain, a peace being concluded with the *Persians*, the *Bæotians*, *Athenians*, *Corinthians*, and *Græcians* conspiring against the *Lacedemonians*, he was call'd home, and fought the *Bæotians*, and came off with equal successe. This, *Diodorus* says, happened the second year of the 96 Olympiad.

After this, the *Lacedemonians* grew weaker and weaker. They were utterly routed also by the *Persians* at *Gnidus*, under their General *Conon*, at what time the Sun declined its wonted course, as *Xenophon* and *Plut.* in *Agel.* tell us. This fell out the 4320 year of the Jul. Per. the 14 day of *August*.

The most famous Generalls of this time, were, at *Athens*, *Ishocrates*, *Chabrias*, *Thrasibulus*, *Timotheus*; amongst the *Thebans*, *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas*, a man not onely honourable for his learning, but also most illustrious for his valour, and Justice, who stirred up his *Thebans* to take in hand the sovereignty of *Greece*. For he quelled the *Lacedemonians* whilst they sought to recover their decayed lustre, more by treachery then valour. *Phæbidas* being sent General against the *Corinthians*, (d) by a wife possessor himself of *Cadmea*, a Fort of the *Thebans*, and constituted Tyrant there, the third year of the 99. Olymp. as *Diodorus* takes it. But at the end of the 4th year, by the advice and contrivement of

(a) Xenoph.  
1. 2. *Enclut.*  
Diod. 13. 14.

(b) Xenoph.  
in libro  
*Agel.*  
Chion. ad  
Mauisid.

(c) Diod. 14.  
Xenoph. 4.  
*Enclut.*  
Plut. in *Agel.*  
Cor. in *Agel.*

The famous  
Commanders  
of the *Athenians*.

(d) Xenoph.  
Hell. 5.  
Diod. 15.  
Plut. *Pelop.*  
Just. 6.  
Cor. Nep. in  
*Pelop.*

Anno 4136.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

The battle at  
Leuſtra.  
(e) Xen. Hel. 6.  
Cor. Nep. in  
Epam. vide l.  
10. de Doctr.  
Temp. c. 32.

(f) Diod. 15.  
Xen. 7. Cor.  
Nep. in E-  
pam.  
The death of  
Epimondas.  
(g) Diod. 15.  
Plur. Ageſ.  
Cor. Nep.  
in Ageſ. Xeo-  
nom. in Ecom.  
Ageſ.  
(h) Dionyſius  
(the father)  
the Tyrant.  
Diod. 15.

*Pelopidas*, they recovered not onely their liberty, but their Fort. After, the Cities of *Greece*, all joyning their forces, were wholly bent against the *Lacedemonians*, the *Athenians* being the Ring-leaders, but *Artaxerxes* made war upon the *Agyptians* who had revolted. And, lest his Armies should any longer be detained in *Greece*, commanded that they should all lay down their arms, and return to their wonted liberty, and that all the Forts should be disgarisoned; which whosoever should dissent from, he would account as toes. To this propolall of peace, all *Greece* gladly adhered, except the *Thebans*, whom *Epimondas* had preoccupied with a fear of danger in joyning therein. But this concord amongst the *Grecians* lasted not long. For soon after the war broke out again, and grew more violent then ever. The *Thebans* took up arms against the *Athenians*, and to satisfy an old grudge, destroyed *Platea*. Then went they against the *Athenians*, and overcame them at *Leuſtra*, in *Beotia*. (although they were their greater in number) under the conduct of *Epimondas* their Generall, in which conflict, *Cleombrotus* perished. (c) This (as *Diodor.* tells us) happened upon the second year of the 102. Olymp.

After this, the *Lacedemonians* began to grow contemptible, and were again sadly foyled by the *Arcadians*. Furthermore, the *Thebans* under their Generall *Epaminondas*, invaded *Laconica*, and laid siege to *Sparta*. The *Lacedemonians* send for aid to *Athens*; but *Epimondas* (do they both what they could to hinder him) pillaged the field of the *Lacedemonians* again. At length in the third year of the 103 Olymp. the *Lacedemonians* were reconciled to the *Thebans*, by the means of the *Persian* King. Then they converted the dint of their weapons against *Alexander Phraas* the Tyrant, against whom *Pelopidas* fighting, was slain whilst the Victory was on his part. Again, the *Thebans* being requested to the aid of the *Mantineans* (who stood off from the rest of the *Arcadians*) took up arms under the command of *Epimondas*. (f) He ingaged in the last conflict at *Mantineia* with the *Lacedemonians* and *Arcadians*, where he came off Conquerour, but so wounded, that soon after he died, the second year of the 105 Olymp.

The year following (g) *Ageſilaus* died in the 84 year of his age and the 41. of his reign in *Cyrenaica*, as he returned out of *Egypt* from the aid of *Tatbon* their King, who had revolted from the *Persians*.

(h) But in this mean while *Dionysius* was busy in the war in *Sicilia*. Nor had he more to do to defend himself against foreigners, than his own countrey men the *Carthaginians*. He often quelled the insurrections of the *Syracusans*, advantaged by the assistance of the *Lacedemonian* power; and had many a sore dispute with the *Carthaginians* constantly; who (under the command of *Imilcon* their Generall) whilst they besieged *Syracusa* (making havoc of all that came in their way, not sparing the most holy things) were struck with a very sore plague, so that what by this Pestilence

Pestilence, what by the *Syracusan* Navy, and the Army of *Dionysius*, they were utterly vanquished both by Land and Sea, in the first year of the 96. Olymp. (as *Diodorus* testifies). But they for all this, again invaded *Sicily*, and at last made a peace with *Dionysius*, who afterwards when he would have renewed the war, (i) dyed of a surfeit whilst he was preparing his Artillery, and after he had heard himself proclaimed twice Victor in the *Leanean* games at *Athens*. (k) He reigned 38 years, began his sovereignty the 25. of his age, and died in the beginning of the 103 Olymp. the year before Christ, 368, and his son who bore the same name succeeded him in the Throne, (l) against whom, *Dio* the son of *Hipparinus* (whose sister *Aristomache* was wife to the former *Dionysius*) by the guidance of two pack-Pedlers, went out of *Greece*, and (taking the opportunity of the Governours absence) possessed himself of *Syracusa*. Who having Garrisoned the Castle, when he saw he could bring the *Syracusans* to no conditions, failed into *Italy*. In the interim, *Dio* was butchered by the *Zacynthian* Mercenaries, (m) in the third year of the 106 Olymp. *Dionysius*, the tenth year after his ejection, recovered *Syracusa*, being the second of the 108. Olymp. At last *Timoleon* the *Corinthian* petitioned thereunto by *Timoleon* the *Syracusans*, deposed *Dionysius*, and sent him to *Corinth*, where he kept a private School of boyes till he was very old. This came to passe the second year of the 109 Olymp. the year before Christ 343.

About the time these things were agitated, *Timoleon* having abolished all the reliques of Monarchy, gave the *Carthaginians* a signal overthrow, the seventh day of the Month *Thargelion*, which falls upon the 26 of May, the latter end of the 4th year of the 110 Olymp. and so having appeased *Sicily*, spent the residue of his daies there in peace, and quiet.

## CHAP. XI.

Of the Sociall and Sixed war in Greece; and of the exploits of Philip of Macedon.

THE Sociall war in *Greece*, broke out in the third year of the 105 Olymp. (a) in which the *Byzantians*, *Rhodians*, *Coans*, and *Chians*, together with *Mausolus* Prince of *Caria*: conspired together against the *Athenians*. *Chabrias*, the Generall of the *Athenians* perished in the war, the very same year, and in the 4th year that war was terminated.

(b) About this time, another war (which they called *Sacrum*, or the Holy, arose. The *Amphibryones* (which were certain Judges or Counsellours, elected out of all parts of *Greece*) imposed a mulct upon the *Lacedemonians* and *Phocenses*; on the one, because they held *Cadmea*, one of the *Cadmeans* Fortresses; on the other,

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
into 4430.

(i) Diod. 15.

(k) Cle. Tufe.

(l) Diod. 16.  
Corn. Nep.  
& Plur. in Di-  
one.  
*Dionysius* the  
younger.  
Dio.

(m) Diod. 16.  
Plur. Corn.  
Nep. in Dion.

Plur. & Corn.  
Nep. in Ti-  
mol. Diod. 16.

(b) Diod. 16.  
Paulan. Phoc.  
P. 318. Just. 3.  
Orat. 3. e. 12.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.  
Phocæan  
War.

(c) Philo de  
Provid. apud.  
Euseb. 8. de  
Pæro. Evang.  
p. 231.

for that they had incroached upon some holy or dedicated land, *Philomelus* stirred his *Phocenses* to the spoiling of the Temple at *Delphos*. When the City was thus tainted with sacrilege, they were presently ingaged in another Broyl with the *Locrians*, and the *Thebans*, wherein they expiated that heynous fact, with the utter ruine and slaughter of their whole Nation. In which it is most remarkable what (c) *Philo* in *Eusebium* writes, That whereas there was a Law, that whosoever should rob the Temple, or her money or Ornaments, should either be precipitated, or drowned, or burnt, three chief Captains of the *Phocenses*, who were partakers in this sacrilege, perished by these three severall deaths: for first *Philomelus* being conquered by the *Thebans*, cast himself into a Precipice, and so died, as *Diod.* tells us, in the third year of the 106 Olymp. After him, *Onomarchus* was thrown into the waters by his own souldiers, and so drowned, the fourth year of the same Olymp. The third was *Phyallus*, who, the year following, was burnt alive in the Temple at *Abus*, although *Diodorus* and others say, he died of a Consumption. This was accomplished by *Philip* King of *Macedon*, to whose aid the *Thebans* flock'd, and the *Phocenses* had supplies from both *Lacedemon*, and *Athens*. Yet all the Cities of the *Phocenses* except *Abus* which was clear of the sacrilege, were levelled with the Ground. This war began, as *Diodorus* reckons, in the second year of the hundred and sixth Olympiad, the three hundred ninety and ninth year from, or after, the foundation of *Rome*, and ended the very beginning of the tenth year of it in the latter end of the second of the hundred and eighth Olympiad; of the Julian Period, the four thousand three hundred sixty eighth, although (d) *Pausanias* will have it to begin whilst *Agasibocles* was *Prætor* at *Athens*, and in the fourth year of the hundred and fifth Olympiad, and to expire in the beginning of the hundred and eighth Olympiad, *Theophilus* being President, being two years before *Diodorus* his account, but I think it safer to content to the opinion of *Diod.* For (e) *Demosthenes* in his *Orat. de Ementit. Legat.* testifies, that in the very same year the Cities of the *Phocenses* were demolished by *Philip*; the *Pythian Games* were celebrated, to which (by reason of their great mourning) the *Athenians* omitted the sending of their *Legats* & *ambassadors*. (i. e.) their sacred Legats, and that the (i) *Pythian Games* ended in the latter end of the second year of the three hundred and ninth Olympian sports.

This Victory established *Philip* in the favour and great opinion of the *Grecians* in general, and at last in the sovereignty itself. He was the son of *Amyntas*, and being a Pledge at *Athens*, lived some time with *Epaminondas*, under whose discipline onely, his Acts afterwards sufficiently expresse how much he improved. (g) His three Brothers (of which *Perdiccas* was the last) being dead, he ascended the Throne the second year of the hundred and fifth Olympiad. The same

(d) Paus. Phoc.  
p. 313.

(e) Demosthen.  
Orat. de Ementit.  
Legat.

(f) Vide l. 1.  
Diod. Temp.  
c. 83.

(g) Diod. 16.  
l. 8.  
Philip of Ma-  
cedon.

year having vanquished the *Athenians* at *Metton*, he made peace with *Amphipolis*, that so he might with the more facility, subjugate his next neighbours. Then he Conquered the *Pæons*, and *Illyrians*; which done, he took *Amphipolis*, and having Conquered three Kings of the *Thracians*, *Pæons*, and *Illyrians*, he brought the *Olynthii* into his subjection by Policy; that is to say, bribes and deceits in plain English, in the beginning of the hundred and eighth Olympiad, in which very year the *Phocenses* being utterly expunged, he put an end to the Warre called *Sacrum*, or the Holy Warre, to which he came as an assistant, and Generall, at the intreaty of the *Thebans*.

(h) In the third year of the hundred and ninth Olympiad, after the death of *Arymbas*, King of the *Molossi*, he dethroned *Axid*, the son of *Arymbas*, and the Father of *Pyrrhus*, and set *Alexander*, the Brother of his Wife *Olympias*, in his place.

When he had opposed *Byzantium*, he was deterred from that enterprise, when he saw the *Athenians*, and other *Grecians* agree together against him, and therefore he concluded a peace with the *Athenians*, the hundred and tenth Olympiad; Which being broken, the third year after, he had a conflict with the same *Athenians*, and the *Bœotians* at *Charonea*, and having the Victory, prosecuted it very moderately, and by the advice of *Demades*, renewed the peace and friendship with the *Athenians*. (i) After the Victory at *Charonea*, he gave this testimony of a very moderate and sober mind, that he commanded that every day he should be put in mind of his frail condition, and to that very end he appointed a Boy, who should daily, before he left his Chamber, proclaim these words to him; *Philip thou art but a man*. At last being made Generall for the *Grecians* against the *Persians*, whilst he was preparing himself for the Warre, in the very height of the sport, in the Games which *Agis* set up in *Macedonia*, he was (k) stabbed by *Pausanias*, a Yeoman of the body to him; it is uncertain whether set on by his Wife *Olympias*, or his Son *Alexander*, which fell out in the beginning of the ninety first Olympiad, the year before Christ, three hundred thirty six. He reigned twenty four years.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(h) Plut. Pyrr.

(i) Ælia, l. 5.  
Var. c. 15.

(k) Diod. 16.  
l. 8. c. 9.

## CHAP. XII.

The most memorable Transactions in the Roman Affairs, from the beginning of the Peloponnesian War, to the death of Philip, that is, from the 373, to the 418 year of the City-Account.

(a) Liv. 4. &  
Flor. l. i. c. 12.  
Eutro. 1.

SEveral Wars were waged at Rome, from the beginning of the Peloponnesian War, to the death of Philip. (a) For they had to do not onely with the *Aequi* and *Volsci*, but also with the *Veians*, whose City they besieged and kept at the Leaguer ten years together. When it was, that it came first into use to make Tents of Skins to defend themselves from the sharpness of the Winter-storms. They began the siege the 349, and the City was taken by *Camillus* the Dictator, the 358th year of the City-Account. The same *Camillus* reduced the *Falisci* to the Roman Empire, (not so much by force, as by the opinion he gained amongst them by his singular Justice) the 360 year from the foundation of Rome.

(b) Liv. 4.  
Flor. l. i. c. 13.  
Plut. Cam.  
Eutro. 1.

The City is taken by the Gauls.

(b) But Rome her self, that famous Conqueress, had almost been brought to nothing by the Gauls. Who, when in the 363 year they had besieged *Clusium*, and the Romans had sent the three *Fabii* Legates thither, they, (contrary to the Laws of Nations) when they had once appeared in the front of the Army, forsook *Clusium*, and fled to the City.

At the first onset those Romans that stood to it were routed, and fled to *Alia*; and at last the City was taken, set on fire, and the Capitol (into which the flower of the City had betaken themselves) beset, and *Manlius*, being absent, had been taken by the enemy, but for the gagling of certain Geese at their approach; which awaked *Manlius* and the rest, who came together thither, and forc'd the Gauls down a precipice from the Capitol. In this mean time, *Camillus*, who was banished, and at *Ardea*, was restored home, and while he was absent, elected Dictator. He, when he came, rally'd the Roman forces, and repell'd the Gauls, and clear'd the Coasts of them within eight miles of the City.

After this, the Dictator, *Camillus*, perswaded the Romans from a phansie they were very earnest in, of leaving the ruines of Rome, and invading the *Veians*, (but with very much ado) and brought them to repair the ruines of their own Country. But *M. Manlius*, taken with the splendour of the Capitol, from which he had the surname, *Capitolinus*, being puff'd up with arrogance, he was induced, through his own ambition, and the favour he had with the people, to propose to himself, and go about the means of compassing the Sovereignty to himself; but being taken in this project, was precipitated from the (c) *Tarpeian* rock, (the very place he had had in charge to defend) the 370 year after the City was built.

(J) At length a great difference grew between the *Patricii* and the

M. Manlius.

(c) Liv. 16.  
Plut. Cam.

(d) Liv. 4.  
Flor. l. i. c. 16.

the common people. For *C. Licinius*, and *L. Sextius*, Tribunes, made a law the 377 year of the City, That the Commons should have the election of another Consul; which when the Senate opposed most violently, the Tribunes would suffer no Officers of State to be created: (c) By which means Rome became an Anarchy for the space of five years, and at last the *Plebeians* prevailed in the 387 year of the City; and the year following, the common people made their first Consul, *L. Sextius*.

(i) In the 392 year of the City, there happening a great opening or gaping of the Earth in the midst of the Forum, and the Oracle commanded, that the best thing the Romans had, should be dedicated to it. Whilst all men wondred what this should mean, *M. Curtius*, an excellent young Souldier, and notably valorous, all armed and mounted on horseback, cast himself into the jaws of the gaping earth, accounting, That no virtue more became a Roman, than valour and courage, nor was a greater good.

After this, they went to War with the *Tiburians*, the *Tarquinii*, and *Falisci*, but most hotly the 398 year of the City, when the *Falisci* and *Tarquinians* fighting with fire-brands, and casting Serpents in the front, to the great terror of the Priests, were conquered by *Fabius* Consul, and had conditions of peace granted to them both for 40 years, in the 403 year of Rome.

With the Gauls also they had to do more than once. Whilst they stood in battalia, *M. Valerius*, Tribune of the host, at the age of 23 years, pitch'd a certain bravado of the enemy, who stood challenging and inticing the Romans to battle, and slew him by the help of *Corvus*, in the 405 year of the City; whence he took the surname *Corvinus*; and the year following, for his singular deserts, was made Consul.

But none of these Wars proved more tedious and virulent, than the *Samnian*, which the Romans took upon them at the request of the *Campani*, the 411 year of the City. For they being vanquish'd by the *Samnians*, put themselves under the protection of the Romans, by a League of fealty, and so engaged the Romans in that War, (d) which lasted 70, or 71 full years, although the *Samnians* were often that while conquered, and often entred into League with the Romans; as in the 413th year they (e) renewed their hostility against the Romans; but the year following were conquered again by *Coss. Torquatus* and *Decius*, one of whom struck his son with an Ax, for that he had engaged in fight without commission; the other engaged himself for the Army, and they committed themselves to his fealty and protection; but soon after, viz. the 460 year, they rebelled, and were then clearly eradicated.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(c) Liv. 7.  
The first Consul of the People.

(f) Liv. 7.  
Oros. 3. c. 1.

M. Curtius.

The Samnians  
War.  
Liv. 1. 7.  
Flor. 1. 1. c. 16.  
Eutro. 2.

(d) Liv. 31.

(e) Liv. 8.  
Flor. l. i. c. 14  
Oros. 3. c. 9.

## CHAP. XIII.

The famous Wits of these Times.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.(a) Diog. in  
Plat. ex Apol.  
P. 110.

THE (a) most fam'd for ingenuity and wisdom, in Greece, amongst the Philosophers, were *Plato*, who was born the first year of the 88 Olympiad, the 7th day of the month *Thargelion*, *Aminias* being President, who was also called *Epaminon*, which was in the 3556 year of the World, (for this year the Magistrateship of *Aminias* expired a little before the beginning of the Olympiad) and dyed the first year of the 108 Olympiad, under the rule of *Theophilus*, the 406 year of the City-account, the 348 year before Christ, it being then the 81 year of his age. He began to hear *Socrates* his Lectures when he was twenty years of age; upon which account he could be his hearer not above eight years; for *Socrates* dyed the first year of the 95 Olympiad, when *Plato* was but 28 years of age.

(b) Diog.

(b) *Speusippus* his sister's son succeeded *Plato* in his School, who dyed the second year of the 110 Olympiad; *Lysimachus* then presiding, so that he kept that School about eight years. (c) *Tertullianus* says, this *Speusippus* being taken in adultery, dyed for it. *Him Zenocrates* succeeded for the space of 25 years.

(c) In Apol.  
c. 46.(d) Diog.  
Laert.

(d) *Aristotle*, that founder of the Sect of the *Peripateticks*, (as *Apollodorus* in *Diogenes* conceives) was born the first year of the 99 Olympiad, the 384th year before Christ, being younger than *Plato*, about 43 years, whom he began to learn of, in the 17th year of his age, was an auditor 20 years, and dyed when he had arrived to 63, being the third year of the 114 Olympiad; in which year also *Demoisbenes* descended the stage of this World.

(e) Vide l. 1.  
de doct. Temp.  
c. 6.

(e) *Eudoxus Cnidius* was famous the 103 Olympiad, as *Diogenes* tells us, who by the general account of that Age merited the crown amongst Astronomers.

(f) Diog.

(f) *Xenophon*, that support of *Platonists*, was illustrious at this time, not only for his skill in Philosophy, but for his exquisite Souldier-ship. He, together with his brother *Cyrus*, the 4th year of the 94 Olympiad, whilst *Zenænetus* presided, being the year preceding the death of *Socrates*, undertook an Expedition against *Artaxerxes*; and having put a period to the War, brought back the Greek Auxiliaries into Greece in safety. He departed the Scene of this world at *Corinth*, the first year of the 105 Olympiad, in the time of *Callidemides* his Magistrateship, in which very year *Philip* began his reign over the *Macedons*, which falls in with the 3625 year of the World.

(g) Gellius,  
l. 15. c. 23.

(g) This Age also was not a little famous for illustrious and most exquisite Historians, amongst whom *Thucydides* was the chief, concerning whom, that place of *Gellius*, in the eleventh book of *Pamphylus*, is most worthy taking notice of. *Hellanicus* in *tituli belli Peloponnesiaci*, &c. (i.e) *Hellanicus* in the beginning of the *Peloponnesian*

*ponnesian* War had lived 60 years. *Herodotus*, 53. & *Thucydides*, 40.

*Philistim* the *Syracusan*, a familiar acquaintance of both the *Dionysius's*, left this life the 106 Olympiad, in a conflict at Sea which he had with the *Syracusans*, in behalf of *Dionysius minor*, or the less, as we have formerly related out of *Diodorus*.

*Theopompus* the Scholar of *Isocrates*, and *Ephorus* the *Cumean*, who was descended from *Ulysses*; *Ctesias* also the *Cnidian* Physician, who flourished in the time of the younger *Cyrus*: But *Isocrates*, that Master of Eloquence, was born the 86 Olympiad. *Lysimachus* presiding four years before the *Peloponnesian* war, and the 3548 year of the World, as *Dionysius* and *Plutarch* relate it, in his life. He left this life the same year that the *Athenians* received that signal overthrow at *Cheronea*, in the time of *Chironidas* or *Charondas* his President-ship, the 3646 year of the World.

Amongst the Poets of this Age, the most famous were *Aristophanes* the Comick about the *Peloponnesian* war, *Eupolis* and *Cratichus* also, two other Comicks, were not obscure then; neither *Philæxus Cythereus*, *Timotheus*, *Telstes*, *Dithyrambicks* or Poets of *Bacchus*, flourished then also; as *Diodorus* records it in his 14th book. And *Dionysius* the major Tyrant, writ his Tragedies about this time.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of Alexander the Great, and his time, with many Acts by him performed; of the death of Darius; the fall of the Persian Empire; and the death of Alexander.

(A) *Alexander* the son of *Philip*, for his high achievements, was surnamed *Great*. He was born the 106 Olympiad, the 328 year of the City, the 3628 of the World, and 356 before Christ, according to *Diodorus*. *Plutarch* also adds, it was upon the 6th day of the month *Hecatombeon*; on which very day, he tells us, *Philip* received three most welcome messages when he had taken *Potidea*; the first was, the victory *Parmenion* had over the *Illyrians*. The second, that he had the prize in the Olympick games, by the swiftnesse of his horse: and the last, the news of his son's birth; all which 'tis possible might fall out the same month *Lous* or *Hecatombeon*; but they were never brought to his year the very same day. Likewise the Olympick Agones were celebrated in the plenilunium or full of the Moon of that month which answers to *Hecatombeon*, unless perchance the first month of the *Elidenfes* happened that year to precede the *Attick Hecatombeon* or *Lous*. *Rupertus* in his 3th book, *de victoria verbi Dei*, in the 11th Chapter of it, (out of what Author I know not) delivers, that *Nesanebus*, a certain Inchanter, whilst the Olympick games were at the height of agitation, turned himself into the

(a) Diog.  
Plur. in  
Alexand.  
Arria. Curr.  
Videl. 10. de  
Doct. Temp.  
c. 32.  
& Paral. pag.  
856.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

(shape of *Ammon* or Cornuted *Jove*, and by that means began *Alexander*.

I's past controversy, that the same night *Alexander* entered the stage of this life, the Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus* was on fire, from which proceeded that saying of *Timæus*, That it was no wonder that *Diana* whilst she was present at some part of the *Olympick Sports*, should be absent from her Temple. Which (b) *Cicero* commends as an accurate phantie; but *Plutarch* justly despiseth it, as silly and disingenuous.

(c) *Alexander* was committed to the Tutorship of *Aristotle* at the age of 15, and in the 20th of his age, and the 418th of the City; his father *Philip* being slain, he began his reign; (d) *Pythodorus* being then President at *Athens*, who was also called *Pythocemus*.

In the very same year *Darius Codomanus*, the last of the *Persian* Kings, was crowned. Against whom, *Alexander*, by the general vote of *Greece*, besides the *Lacedæmonians*, was elected General. But the *Greeks*, like fickle-headed people as they were, whilst

(e) *Alexander* was at war in *Thracia*, revolted from him. When he heard this, he made all speed with his Army towards them; and having reconciled himself to the *Athenians*, and some others, upon their fair deport, bent his Forces against the *Turbans*, who stood most stiffly against him, and having taken their City by force, utterly destroyed it the 15 day of the month *Zoodromius*, which fell upon the fourth day of *October*, in the second year of the 111 Olympiad, as I conceive, (f) 90000 of the *Thebans* being put to the sword, and 30000 captivated; the children were all led captive, except the Hosts of *Philip*, who when he was a boy, was pledg in that City, and the off-spring of the old Poet *Pindar*, whose house only *Alexander* left standing in the whole City.

(f) *Ælia* 13. Var. G. 7.

(g) 202. 1. From thence passing the *Hellepont*, he arrived in *Asia* the 3650 year of the VWorld, the third year of his reign, as (g) *Zosimus* tells us. He had then in his Army 30000 foot, & 4500 horse; with which so small number, but old experienced and hardy Souldiers, he destroyed and abolished the *Persian* Empire. The first Combat happened to be at the River *Granicus* in *Phrygia*, where the *Persians* were vanquished, and almost all *Asia* became the Triumph of that victory, being pestered every where with the Greek Colonies, whilst *Memnon*, in the mean time, the best Commander *Darius* had, harrassed the Islands.

(h) The second conflict was at *Issum*, a little before which fight, *Alexander* fell dangerously sick, but by the skill of a Physician of his father *Philip*, he soon recovered: at long running the *Persians* were worsted, although their Army consisted of no less than 400000 foot, and 100000 horse. The Tents of *Darius*, with his Mother, Wife, and Children, fell into the hands of *Alexander*, who treated them most courteously and virtuously. This happened the 333 year before Christ, the 3651 year of the World; and

and the year following, being the first of the 112 Olympiad, *Alexander* arrived in *Phœnicia*, (i) which when he was wholly possit of, saving *Tyre*, he sent thither *Heraclids* to persuade them to peace; but the *Tyrians*, contrary to the Law of Nations, put them to death, and cast them into the Sea. He was sorely provoked by this affront, and presently laid strict siege to the City, railed great bull-works against it, and used all military engines and force to the storming of the City: When they within, what through despair of pardon, what by being out of all hopes of, and from the *Carthaginians*, whose Ambassadors by chance were then there, and resolv'd them of that matter, stood it out the more resolutely, but at last were vanquished by plain force the seventh month after the siege was layd, when he commanded that they should all, except those that took sanctuary at the Temple, be put to the sword, and their houses set on fire, but 15000 of them were saved by the *Sidonians* of *Alexander's* Army, and carried to *Sidon*. There were six thousand men of war slain in the City; 2000 that escaped the sword, were crucified along the Sea-shore. The City was taken (as (k) *Arianus* tells us, *Anicerus* being chief Magistrate, (who is named *Niceratus* by *Diodor*.) the 332 year before Christ, in the month *Hecatombæon*, which falls much about the Solstice. *Diod.* writes, That *Hephestion* gave *Balonymus* for a King to this City, descended indeed of a royal stock, but by poverty become a gardner in the Suburbs of it. (l) But *Curtius* tells us, That before the captivity of *Tyre*, *Abdolonimus* was not onely made King of this City, but of *Sidon* also. After this, *Alexander* subdued *Gaza* by force of Arms.

About this time, coming to *Jerusalem* he was entertained by *Jaddus* the Priest there. He sacrificed in the Temple, and bestowed many gifts upon the *Jews*; professing that he had an Apparition in *Macedonia*, in the very same garb that the high Priest came to meet him in, who advised him to go on with the *Persian* expedition, and promised him the Victory.

Afterwards he went to *Egypt*, and visited the Oracle of *Jupiter Ammon*, and in his return thence, built *Alexandria*. At length he became Victor in the last battle, at *Arbella*, with *Darius*, in the second year of the 112 Olymp. the 331 year before Christ, and the 423 of the City, in which battle, *Plutarch* further recounts, *Darius* had ten hundred thousand souldiers in his Army, which Author (as also *Arrianus*) places the building of *Alexandria* before the sacrifice he made at the Temple of *Ammon*; But *Curtius*, *Diodor*, and *Justin*, conceive it to be after.

Upon this account the year of the World, 3653, and the 331 year before Christ, was the very year wherein *Alexandria* was founded. In which very year also the utter rout of the *Persians* at *Arbella*, or *Gaugamela*, put a period to the *Persian*, and gave beginning to the *Macedonian* or *Grecian* Empire. Which year is thought to be the sixth year of the reign of *Alexander*, and so much after the death of his father *Phillip*.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

(i) *Diod.*  
Curt. 4.  
*Arianus*  
*Plut.* Just.  
*Ælia* 13. Var.

(k) Lib. 2.

(l) Curt. 1.4.

*Joseph* 1. 11.  
cap. 9.

*Diod.* 1. 5.  
Curt. 4.  
*Plutarch*.  
*Alex.* Just. 11.

Plin. 1. 2.  
c. 90.

The last and utter breakneck of the *Persian* Empire and *Darius*.



Anno 4186  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

*Darius* with much ado escaped out of the fight, and by the swiftness of his horses heels, frustrated the pursuit of *Alexander* after him, and having rallied his forces, and joyned in battle again, was by *Bessus* the commander of the *Bactrians* basely butchered, the next year after the overthrow at *Arbella*. In the mean while, *Alexander* being possessed of *Susiana*, he spoiled *Persepolis* the head of the Nation, and burned the Kings Palace therein to the ground.

Nor was *Antipater*, *Alexanders* General, lesse fortunate in his contest with the *Lacedemonians*, wherein *Agis* the King lost his life.

In the East, *Alexander* got more victories then he marcht paces, every where as he went. He brought under his subjection all *Hycania*, the *Paropamisades*, the Inhabitants of *Caucasus*, the *Indians* when he had first conquered their King, and taken him prisoner, and after them divers Nations and Provinces far and wide. The first year of the 113 Olymp. *Bessus* was delivered up to him and he gave him condigne punishment for his treachery to his Lord and Master *Darius*. By this he was so puffed with his high successes, that not able to bear so great fortune, he began to forget his humane state, and would be accounted the son of *Jupiter*.

Then by flattery, luxury, and excesses, his disposition was quite altered into immane cruelty, insomuch that he put many friends to death, who had deserved very well both of him and his father *Philip*. Amongst these, he too rashly brought *Parmention*, a most valiant Captain, and his son *Philotas*; and slew *Clitus* with his own hands at a Banquet. About two years before his death, he lost *Hephestion* his chief friend, whose death he took to heart out of measure, and most womanly; whose body he commanded to be carried to *Babylon*, and there to be interred with great solemnity. And would needs have him accounted a god, as *Lucian* tells us in his book, *De Calumniis*.

At last in the thirteenth year of his reign, that is, when he had reigned twelve compleat years and seven Moneths, he died at *Babylon* of a disease he had contracted by his intemperance in drinking, or (as some think) by poyson, in the beginning of the thirty third year of his age.

## CHAP. XV.

The most remarkable occurrences transacted in the East and in Greece from the death of *Alexander* unto *Pyrthus* his time.

After *Alexanders* death, in regard he would nominate no successor, there grew up almost as many kings as there were Governours and Captains belonging to him: but *Perdiccas* at first had the command of almost all, for that *Alexander* upon his deathbed, gave him his ring: and afterwards their minds changing,

(a) Diod. l. 18.  
De i. apud  
Phor. cad. 81.  
C. l. 10.  
Arrian. de re-  
bus post. Alex.  
ebrium gestis  
apud Phor.  
Cod. 82.

*Aridaus*,

*Aridaus*, son of *Philip* by *Philinna* a *Thessalian*, and a Concubine of his was made titular (and had very near been indeed) King, and took to himself, and had given him the name of *Philip*; and *Perdiccas* was appointed his vice gerent: then were the *Satrapes* and *Præfectures* all distributed into Principalities, and assigned; to *Ptolemy* the Son of *Lagus*, *Egypt*; to *Laodemon* the *Asiaticus*, *Syria*; to *Philotas*, *Sicilia*; to *Python*, *Media*; *Paphlagonia* to *Eumenes*, with *Cappadocia*, and the outer Provinces; *Pamphilia* to *Antigonus* with *Lydia* and *Phrygia* the Greater; *Caria* to *Cassander*, *Lydia* to *Anteas*, *Phrygia* the lesse to *Leonatus*, *Thracia* to *Lyfimachus*; *Macedonia* to *Antipater*; the upper Provinces of *Asia* to those who were then Governours of them. *Seleucus* was made commander of the Horse of his companions. *Craterus* at this time had been sent by *Alexander* with 10000 choise and tryed Souldiers in *Sicilia*, to whom, together with *Antipater*, was *Græcia* appointed.

This while, the *Grecians* hearing of the death of *Alexander* were every where in a tumult. In the first place the *Athenians*, who under their Captain *Leosthenes*, called the *Greeks* to liberty; overthrew *Antipater*, and besieged him at *Lamia*, a Town of *Thessaly*, whence it was called the *Lamian* war, which began the first year after the death of *Alexander* (b) but the year following, when *Craterus* joyned his forces with *Antipater*, the *Athenians* were foyled at *Crannon* in the Moneth *Metagisnion*, which falls even with our *August*; and in *Boeodormion*, that is *September*, they received the Guard of *Macedonians* against *Munychias*.

(c) But *Perdiccas*, desiring to bring all things in the East to himself and his command, in order to his suppressing the Governours and commanders, he resolved to begin with *Ptolemy*. Against whom he led a most strong Army, but by his pride having alienated the affections of his Souldiers, in the passing of *Nilus* they conspired against him and slew him the 322 year before Christ. But *Eumenes* a friend to *Perdiccas*, a little before had a conflict with *Craterus* and *Neoptolemus*, and came off Victor, which two being both conquered and slain, the one with his own hands, for this cause both *Eumenes* and *Alcetas*, *Perdiccas* his brother; were voted enemies, and all things else were disposed and ordered by *Ptolemy* and *Antipater*, under whose jurisdiction the Principality of *Antigonus* then was, *Antigonus* by that means being sent against *Eumenes* and *Alcetas*, overthrew them both in *Pisidia*. *Antipater* died whilst *Polypercon* was tutor of King *Aridaus*, and his wife *Euridice*, and his son *Cassander* *Chiliarch*; with which fortune being not content, he fell over to *Ptolemy* *Polypercon*, recalled *Olympas* the Mother of *Alexander* to *Macedonia*, from *Epirus*; whither she had fled for fear of *Antipater*. She, when she was restored, put to death *Philippus* *Aridaus*, and his wife *Euridice*, and many other Princes that were friends to *Cassander*. (d) *Diodor.* says this fell out about the three hundred and eighteenth year before Christ, who assigns six years and four Moneths to the reign of *Aridaus*.

Anno 4185.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

The Successors of Alexander.

The Lamian War.  
(b) Auct. Cir. & Plut. in Demost.

(c) Diod. Dex. Cor. Nep. ac Plut. in Eum.

(d) Diod. 19.

At

Anno 418.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(c) Died. 14.

(f) Plur. Phoc.  
Cor. Nep.

(g) Cor. Nep.  
& Plur. in  
Eum. Died. 19.

(h) Plur. in  
Demet.

At the same time *Cassander* had to do with *Polyspercon* in *Gracia*, and *Eumenes* (one that held with *Polyspercon* and *Olympias*) with *Antigonus* in *Asia*. The *Athenians* came into the hands of *Cassander*: who took away their popular Government, and constituted *Demetrius Phalerius* over them. This *Demetrius* was the Scholar of *Theophrastus*, whose parallel for Eloquence and Philosophy that age could not produce. This mutation of State-affairs happened in the Platonship of (c) *Archippus*, in the third year of the 115 Olympiad, a little before which *Phocion* being a condemned person, was lit on by *Polyspercon*, and sent to *Athens*, (f) where he was executed by the *Athenians* (as the manner was) with a potion of wild Hemlock. *Cassander*, the first year of the 116 Olympiad, having got possession of *Macedonia*, sent *Olympias* out of the World, and took *Thessalonice* the sister of *Alexander* the Great, to his conjugall bed.

(g) *Eumenes* having a long while tyred out *Antigonus* in *Asia*, was at last betrayed into his hands by his old souldiers called *Argaspidai* or silver-shielded, and put away by him the tenth year after the death of *Alexander* the Great. From this time *Antigonus* growing very much in power and wealth, together with his son *Demetrius*, who was surnamed *Polyorctes*, waged war against *Cassander* and *Ptolomey*; both of them pretending to restore the liberty of the *Gracian* Cities, which *Cassander* had infringed. The greatest part of them, by the help of his son *Demetrius*, *Antigonus* restored to their own Laws and privileges. In the first place, the 15th year after they had been brought under by the *Lamian* war, he removed the Garrison from *Athens*, and restored the City to its former immunities the 307. year before Christ. In which year not onely they two, but all the rest of *Alexanders* successours took to themselves both the name and port of Kings. Immediately upon this, in the 24th year after the death of *Alexander*, the 301. year before Christ, and the last of the 119 Olymp. when the extraordinary power of *Antigonus* and *Demetrius* was become formidable to all the rest, *Lyfimachus*, *Cassander*, and *Seleucus* joyned their forces, (to the number of 74000 foot; of horse, 10500; and 120. Chariots) against them two, whose armies consisted of 70000 foot, and 10000 horse, and 75 Elephants: which all met, and fought at the very Town of *Phrygia*. *Antigonus* was conquered, and died in the battle, and *Demetrius* fleeing into *Gracia*, was kept out by the *Athenians*. (h) But a little after having recruited his forces, he made against *Athens*, and took the City after a years siege, and deposed *Lachares* (who ruled as King there) in the first year of the 121 Olymp. Then appeared the Kings great clemency, who behaved himself so courteously towards them (who, being conquered, could expect nothing but the utmost) that after some verball reprehensions, he restored unto them, not onely their liberty, but all things else that were theirs, and having placed a Garrison there, bent his forces against the *Lacedemonians*, whom with their king *Achidanus*, when he had conquered, and was preparing

paring to besiege *Sparta*, he was encouraged to make for *Macedon*, (i) for that lately *Cassander* had died (to wit, the third year of the 123 Olymp.) and left three sons which he had by *Thessalonica*, the eldest of which named *Phillip*, having reigned but one year now the other two, *Antipater* and *Alexander* were at odds about the Kingdom, which was the ground of fresh hopes to *Demetrius*. *Antipater* the son in Law to *Lyfimachus* King of *Thrace* (for that he saw her something more inclined to his brother *Alexander* then to him) slew his mother, she begging her life of him by those her breasts he had been nourisht by. *Alexander* therefore desired aid of *Pyrhus*, who, upon that condition, received part of *Macedonia* into his power. At this time also came *Demetrius*, whom also *Alexander* had sent for, who, having expell'd *Pyrhus* and *Antipater*, and slain *Alexander*, got the whole possession of *Macedonia*, the third year of the 121 Olymp.

(k) But when he levied a great army consisting of two hundred thousand foot, and twelve thousand horse, with a Navy of five hundred ships, for the regaining of *Asia*; *Seleucus*, *Lyfimachus*, *Ptolomeus*, and *Pyrhus*, with one consent prepared for to oppose him. Being expell'd *Macedonia*, and terrified with the defection of other of his Cities, he is forc'd to yield himself into the hands of *Seleucus*: who voluntarily gave his daughter *Stratonice* to Wife to his Son *Antiochus*, because he was so desperately in love with her, that thereby he was in danger of his life, and with him the third year after, he most ingloriously died by his intemperance and Luxury, being the third year of the hundred twenty third Olympiad.

(l) Not long after, these three Conquerours died. *Ptolomeus* the son of *Lagus* having transferred the Kingdom to *Philadelphus*, his son, left this life the first year of the hundred twenty and fourth Olympiad. *Lyfimachus* the third year of the same Olympiad, the two hundred eighty second year before Christ, past into *Asia* against *Seleucus*, and there in a fight died the seventy fourth of his Age. And *Seleucus* in his seventy seventh year (the last of *Alexanders* associates in war) about seven Moneths after, distressed by the cunning and treachery of *Ptolomeus Ceraunus*, the brother of *Philadelphus*, lost the Kingdom of *Macedonia* (which he had taken from *Lyfimachus*) and with it his life. *Demetrius* being dead, his posterity reigned in *Macedonia*, untill the time of *Perseus* the son of *Phillip*, of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

And these are the chief Kingdoms that after *Alexander's* death rose out of his ashes, and which are numbered four by *Daniel* the Prophet, shadowed under obscure figures. The Chief of them were *Ptolomeus* the son of *Lagus*, in *Egypt*; *Seleucus* in *Babylonia*, and *Syria*; *Cassander* in *Macedonia* and *Gracia*, and *Antigonus* in *Asia*: all which (as also did *Lyfimachus* in *Thracia*) assumed the Title, Badges, and Port of Kings, in the second year of the 118 Olympiad, (c) as we find by *Diodorus*, the year before Christ 307. In emulation of whom, the Tyrant *Agathocles* (who then

Anno 418.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(i) Jul. 16.  
The death  
of Cassander.

(k) Plur. in  
Pyrhus. & De-  
metrio.

Demetrius his  
death.

(l) Jul. 17.  
Paul. Phoc.  
335. Dextr.  
apud. Euseb.  
in Collec. Gr.  
p. 49.

The four Do-  
minions of the  
Greeks.  
(m) Dan. 7. 6.

(c) Died. 307.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

The Ptolemys  
Kings of  
Egypt.

chanc'd to be in *Africa* at war with the *Carthaginians*) took upon him also the honour and title of King. At last, *Antigonas* being subdued, the whole fell into the power of the three Dominions, to wit, that of *Egypt*, *Syria*, and *Macedonia*: to which that of *Pergamus* was added, which took its rise, and was founded in the reign of *Lysimachus*.

The Dominion or Kingship of the *Ptolemys* in *Egypt* continued along in the direct line of Posterity, from *Ptolemaus* the son of *Lagus* the very founder of it, (or, as *Pausanias* in his *Atticks* tells us, of *Philip* the father of *Alexander* the Great, who although he had the title of King but the eighteenth year after the death of *Alexander*, yet his Kingdom or reign is reckoned from the very year wherein *Alexander* dyed. From this time therefore began the *Ptolemys* to reign in *Egypt*. For they have forty years attributed to them by *Eusebius*, and all the rest,) and reach't from the 3660 year of the *VV*orld, to the 3699. For in this very year he substituted his son *Ptolemy*, surnamed *Philadelphus*, King in his life-time; which son was born unto him by *Berenice* his Wife.

## CHAP. XVI.

Of Agathocles, Pyrrhus, and divers Expeditions of the Gauls into Grecia.

(a) Diod.  
l. 19.

**A**BOUT the same time (a) *Agathocles* reigned in *Syria*, very meanly born, the son of *Carcinus* a private Citizen of *Reginnum*, of whom he learnt the trade of a Potter. He got to be Tyrant in *Syracusa* the fourth year of the 115th Olympiad, the 3667th year of the *VV*orld; which place he continued in for about twenty eight years, through most strange variety of fortune. (b) Having often conquered the *Sicilians*, he had to do also with the *Carthaginians*, by whom at the River *Himera*, being worsted in the third year of the 117 Olympiad, unadvisedly conveying his Forces into *Africa*, he there required the destruction of his Forces to the Victors. *Cyrtius* makes this Expedition of the *Syracusans* into *Africa*, and the siege of *Carthage* contemporary; in which account he is out no less than two and twenty years. The year wherein *Agathocles* passed into *Africa*, is noted for a most remarkable Eclipse of the Sun, by *Diodorus* and *Josias*, which happened at *Syracusa* about eight of the clock in the morning, of the 15th day of August, the 4404th year of the Julian Period, the 310 year before Christ. The *Carthaginians* being reduced to very great extremity, sacrifice their children to *Saturn*, and recall their General *Amilcar* from *Sicilia*. But he having besieged the *Syracusans*, is taken by the very besieged, and put to death. (c) At last, *Agathocles* taking Sea against the *Britannians* in the 4th year of the 122 Olympiad, the 289 before Christ, is poisoned by his Nephew *Agathocles*. (d) *Diodorus* in his excerpts of the last Edition calls him *Agatharchus*.

(c) Diod. 20.  
in Ed. l. 21.  
Jes. 23.

(d) Excerpt.  
Valef. p. 27.

(c) The various fortune of *Pyrrhus* was no less stupendious, but his virtue as a lawful Prince much more illustrious, who being the son of *Eacidas*, the son of *Argas*, who was born Prince of the *Stolys*; and being depell'd from his Country under *Demetrius Poliorcetes*, who had married his sister *Diodamia*, had the very elements of his martial discipline. For in that famous conflict, wherein *Demetrius* with his father *Antigonas* was overcome; he was one being yet a very youth. Afterwards by the affinity and furtherance of *Ptolemy Lagidas*, and his wife *Berenice*, he regained his Kingdom, whose beginning (f) *Velleius* attributes to that year, wherein *Q. Fabius*, and *P. Decius Mus*, were Consuls, which is the 439 year of the City-account, and the 3689 year of the *VV*orld. In which very year being intreated in aid into *Macedonia*, to *Alexander* the son of *Cassander*, he requires his part of it. Whence being depuls'd by *Demetrius Poliorcetes* for some years, partly by himself, partly joining his Forces with *Lysimachus*, *Ptolemy*, and *Seleucus*, he made war upon him, and for his reward enjoyed *Macedonia*, indeed, but not above seven months. Immediately after being called to the aid of the *Tarentines* into *Italy*, he wars in vain upon the *Romans*. And likewise attempting *Sicilia*, he was beaten as well thence, as out of *Italy*, and so return'd home. Then again he gets possession of *Macedonia*, having ejected *Antigonus* the son of *Demetrius*. Lastly, being called to the aid of *Cleonymus* of *Sparta*, the son of *Arcus* into *Peloponnesus* against *Antigonus*, he dyed at *Argos* the first year of the 127 Olympiad, and the 272 year before Christ, in the 23 year of his reign, as it appeareth, in that he began to reign the 459th of the City, and the 295 before Christ. He had a very sad *Auspicious* that very night that he entered *Argos*, A Bird sitting upon the point of his Spear; as *Elizanus* writes.

(c) A dispatch also of the *Gauls* into *Thrace* and *Greece* happened into the same space of time. It is described by *Pausanias* to be threefold. First of all, *Cambauls* being Captain, they pierced even into *Thrace*; with whose wasting being contented, they returned home. Secondly, their Army being divided in three parts, some came to *Thrace*, *Cerethrius* being Leader, others to *Pannonia*, *Brennus*, and *Achibore* Leaders; the rest *Bolgus* carried into *Macedonia* and *Illyricum*. The *Macedonians* daring to resist this man, do receive a great slaughter. The valour of one chief one, *Sasphenes*, raised up the affairs of *Macedonia*, being past hope; who beat back the *Barbarians*, triumphingly rejoycing in victory, and drove them out of the borders of *Macedonia*; and by that desert obtained the Kingdom. (a) *Polybius* writeth, That four Kings, *Ptolomey Lagidas*, *Lysimachus*, *Seleucus*, and *Ptolomey Ceraune*, dyed within the 124 Olympiad. Wherefore the murder of *Ceraune* shall be truly reckoned to the fourth year of that Olympiad going out, of the *World* 3704.

The year following brought a third breaking in of the *Gauls* into *Greece*, *Brennus* and *Achibore* being Generals, whose Army consisted

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(c) Plur. in  
Pyrrho. Dio.  
dori Eclog. a  
Justinus, l. 16  
& seq.

(f) Velleius,  
lib. 1.

(c) Book ro.  
of Hist. of  
years, ch. 36.  
The breaking  
in of the  
Gauls into  
Thrace and  
Greece.  
Pausan.  
Phoc. p. 345.  
Just. l. 34.  
Dexip. in Call.  
of Scal.

(a) Polyb. 2.  
p. 128. &  
255.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

Pausan. Phoc.  
fol. 335.

consisted of 152 thousand footmen, twenty thousand and four hundred horsemen; unto every of which horsemen, were adjoynd two servants, who should succceed their dead matters: which *εταυροι*, or certain number of Souldiers, they called *εταυροι*, or a service-horsing. For the French or Gauls did name a horse, *μικρο*, laith *Pausanias*. So there were, sixty and one thousand horsemen, and two hundred more. They are first overcome at *Thermopylae*, then at *Parnassus*, whither they had broken thorow, for obtaining and spoyling the Temple of *Delphos* lake. *Brennus* himself, many wounds being received, drinking down new wine more largely, voluntarily ended his life. That calamity of the Gauls is noted by *Pausanias*, *Anaxicrates* being chief Ruler, in winter-time; this was in the second year of the 125 Olympiad before Christ 279.

Again, the following year, *Democles* being Pretor of *Athens*, the Gauls poured forth themselves into *Asia*, as the same *Pausanias* sheweth: But *Polybius* writeth, That in the same year the remainders of the Gauls invaded *Thrace*, *Comontorium* being their Captain, and required tribute from the *Byzantines*.

Polyb. 4.  
p. 313.

## CHAP. XVII.

Things done by the Romans from the year of the City Built, 419, unto 472.

While in the East, and Greece, all things were, by *Alexander* the Great, and his succeeders, through Wars and Tumults, in a hurly-burly, Italy suffered no little storms of weapons; in which the Roman valour exercised it self unto the dominion of the world.

(a) The War with the *Samnites* was beyond the rest, of a long continuance, and very dreadful, (b) of which I have made mention above; the which in this space of time was most sharply carried on with some slaughter, in the mean time, and disgrace of the *Romans*; but with a great, and, which is the top of all, the last of the *Samnites*, who being at last subdued, in the year of the C. 482, made an end of War, in the 71 year, as we have already said; to wit, from the year of the City 411, unto 481. (c) In which space, the *Caudine furt*, or gallows made of the trunks of Trees, were made noble by the disgrace of the *Romans*, in the year of the City 433, the 4th after the death of *Alexander the Great*, when the Roman Army yielded to their enemies, and, with both Consuls, was cast under the yoke. But that disgrace, the year following, *Papirius* repayed with a greater overthrow of the *Samnites*, and like disgrace, a most valiant Commander in that Age: besides whom, many others also are reckoned up by *Livy*, (d) who might be equal to *Alexander*, if (as the report was) he had come into Italy. (e) Another King of *Etruria*, Uncle of the Great, being sent for into Italy, by the *Tarentines*, when as he

(a) Liv. 9.  
Eutrop.  
The War with  
the Samnites.  
b. ch. 12.

(c) Liv. 9.

(d) Liv. 9.

(e) Liv. 9.  
Just. 12.  
Oros. 3. ch. 11.

## Cap. 17. An Account of Time.

he had oftentimes fought valiantly against the *Samnites*, *Bruttians*, and *Lucanes*, a peace being made with the *Romans* in the year of the C. 422, was at length slain by the *Lucanes* at the River *Alberant*, in the year of C. B. 428, the third of the 113 Olympiad, *Alexander* the Great surviving.

(1) With the Gauls also a fight is renewed one time after another; whose divers in-breaking, I will briefly touch at, out of *Polybius*, and the Roman Annals. The thirtieth year after that they conquered Rome, not far from the Colline, or little hill-gate, a great slaughter being made on both sides, they were scarce turned away. *Servilius Ahala* being chosen Dictator, was the cause of that Tumult, in the year of C. B. 394. In the 12th year after, which was of the City 405, they were again slain by *Camilius*; at which time *Valerius Corvina* overcame the provoking Gaul by the help of a Raven or Crow. After thirteen years, they make a Peace and League with the *Romans*, in which they remained 30 years. Therefore a little before the 45th year of C. B. the Gauls on this side the Alps, with those beyond the Alps, and *Etruscians*, destroyed the fields of the *Romans*. Thence those of this side the Alps being returned with a great prey, about this very prey do fight with swords among themselves. The 4th year after, they being joynd together with the *Samnites* and *Etruscians*, a battel being joynd, they slew the Roman Legion, of which *L. Scipio*, Pretor was chief. At which time another fight flaming, and the left-wing of the Army now giving back, *P. Decius*, Consul, avowed his head, and brought forth a victory by his own death, in the year of C. B. 459.

(2) Ten years after these things being slidden away, the *Senonian* Gauls being again called forth by the *Lucanes*, *Bruttians*, *Samnites*, and *Etruscians*, besieged *Arretius*; and *L. Caelius* the Pretor being overcome, they slew thirteen thousand of the *Romans*. Which overthrow, the Consul *Dolabella* straightway revenged, and the Gauls being put to flight, their City *Sena* being taken, he brought thither a plantation. The *Boians* being much troubled at the misery of the *Senones*, and conspiring with the *Etruscians*, make fight at the Lake of *Vadino*; in which all the *Etruscians* for the most part were slain, very few of the *Boians* escaped. That happened in the 471 year of the City. But the following year, the *Boians* being again by the *Romans* utterly overthrow, intreated peace, and a league, the third year before *Pyrrhus* came into Italy.

(b) Moreover, the *Palapoli*ans, where now is *Neapolis*, daring to bring War on the *Romans*, in the third year, which was of C. B. 428, were by *Publius* the Proconsul subdued.

So, 12 people of the *Etruscians* being stirred up for the destruction of the Roman name, in the year of C. B. 442, (c) were overcome in the year 444, by *Fabius* the Consul, in a great battel, in the which were slain, or taken, to the number of 60 thousand of the enemies.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

(b) Polyb. 2.  
p. 106.  
Liv. 9.  
Wars begun  
with the  
Gauls.

(a) Polyb.  
p. 197. & 198.  
Eutr. Epit.  
Liv. 13.

(b) Liv. 9.

(c) Liv. 9.  
Flor. 1. c. 17.  
Oros. 3.  
ch. 21.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

## CHAP. XVIII

Of Men excelling in Learning.

(d) Diog. in  
Aristot.  
(e) The same  
Author in  
Diog. the  
Cyn.

AT Athens, after the (d) death of *Aristotle*, who dyed in the third year of the 114 Olympiad, *Theophrastus Erefius* governed the School of the *Peripateticks*; when as two years before, *Diogenes* the Cynick departed out of life, (e) to wit, in the same year. (wherein also *Alexander* the Great dyed) almost ninety years of age.

(f) Diog. in  
Xenocrati.

(f) *Xenocrates*, Master of *Plato's* sect, when he had been chief over it five and twenty years, to wit, from the second of the 110 Olympiad, and *Lysimachus* chief Ruler, dyeth in the third year of the 116 Olympiad. (a) Also *Polemo* the hearer of *Xenocrates*; *Crates* of *Polemo*; and *Crantor* of *Sola*, of him; likewise *Arcefilas* the hearer of *Crantor*, was the author of a middle University, of *Pitana*, a Town of *Eolis*, who was accounted famous in the 120 Olympiad.

Diog. in Epi-  
curus.  
Zeno the  
Stoick.

In the third year of the 109 Olympiad, *Epicurus* was brought forth to light; he dyed in the second year of the 127 Olympiad, being 92 years old. *Zeno* the founder of the sect of the Stoicks, before the Schollar of *Crates*, beautified that same Age; whom *Eusebius* sheweth to have dyed in the 129 Olympiad. Likewise *Demetrius Phalereus* the Schollar of *Theophrastus*, no lesse noble in the ability of governing the Common-Wealth, than of Philosophy and Eloquence. He was chief Governour of Athens 10 years, as saith *Diogenes Laertius*. (b) But he began in the third year of the 115 Olympiad; in which year, *Cassander* conquered Athens. But in the second year of the 118 Olympiad, *Demetrius Poliorcetes* obtaining, he fled into Egypt unto *Ptolomy* the son of *Lagus*, (c) who dying, and being by *Ptolomey Philadelphus*, banished, and pining with grief, he perished with the biting of an Aspe about the first year of the 124 Olympiad. (d) *Timocharis* was famous in the knowledg of Astronomy about the 121 Olympiad.

(b) Diog. 18.  
Plut. in Phoc.

But *Demosthenes* overcame the rest in the famousnesse of a name, (e) who in the third year from the death of *Alexander*, the fame in which *Aristotle* yielded to Nature's destiny in the Island *Galaxia*, whither he had betaken himself for fear of the *Macedonians*.

(c) Diog. in  
Demetr.

*Menander* the Comical Poet is declared to have dyed, *Philip* being chief Governour; as it is in an old note or writing, seeing he was born in the third year of the 109 Olympiad, *Sofigenes* being chief Ruler: So he dyed, being fifty years of age.

(d) Ptolem. 7.  
ch. 3.

(e) Plut. in  
Demost.

(f) *Timon*

(f) *Timon*

(i) *Timon* a Sicilian *Tauromenite* in the time of *Agathocles*, wrote a History, by whom being driven out of *Sicily*, he vindicated himself in a phraze of writing, the which he is said to have used the more intemperate against him. (g) But on the contrary, *Callias* of *Syracusa*, because he had been moved by the same Tyrant, with great benefits in his History, shamefully flattered him.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(f) Died. in  
colleſt. of Va.  
leſ. p. 258.

(g) The same.  
(h) Tavian.  
with Euf. of  
Euphr. in 289.  
(i) Joseph.  
Antiq. ch. 3.  
Theoph. to  
Antel. 3.

But *Alexander* the Great reigning, (h) *Berofus* the Egyptian; and under his Successors, *Ptolemas Lagida*, and *Philadelphos* (i) *Manethon* of the City of *Dispolis*, Historians, are remembered.

The End of the Third Book.

THE

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.



THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
VVORLD.  
OR, AN  
Account of Time.

The Fourth Book.

Containing an History of memorable affairs from the Year of the Julian Period 4431. to 4713.

CHAP. I.

Occurrences in the Roman state, from the Account of the City, 472. u 536. and chiefly concerning the Epirotick, first Punick, and Gallick Wars.

**T**He Romans now began to redeem their liberty from the Greeks, obtained by their courages and powers, which began to be debilitated, and therefore Italy and Africk will yield greater subjects for History then the Orient which is the cause of our first beginning with the Roman History.

(a) Epit. Liv. 13. Plut. in Pyr. Europ. 2. Flor. l. 1. c. 18. Orol. l. 4. c. 4. Jul. 24. Died. in Eclio.

(a) The people called *Tarentini* as soon as the Roman Army removed thence, in the year from the foundation of the City 472. fell injuriously upon the Roman Legats, for lucre sake, and thereby provoked the Romans, not because they had any such strength, whereby

Anno 41: 6.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4430.

whereby they might possibly make good their affront, but passionately by *Grecian* levity incited thereunto, for which *L. Aemilius Barbula* overcame in battail the *Tarentines*, *Samnites*, and *Salentinians*, which so enraged them, that they procured *Pyrrhus* to their aid who in the year of the account of the City 474. drew his Army into Italy, and waged a war with the Romans, which continued six years, when the Romans first met with them they retreated, *Leotinus* being their leader, surpris'd not so much with the Army as the unwonted sight of their Elephants. *Pyrrhus* at the request of *C. Fabricius*, released the prisoners without any ransom at all. Presently peace was endeavoured by the Embassy of *Cineas*, which took no effect, blind *Appius* working against it, twice they joyned in battell with the Romans, it being uncertain whether side had the greatest losse, then called by the *Syracusians* against the *Pæni*, where things succeeded not according to his desire, he returned into Italy. In the year of the City 479. he was overcome, spoiled of his Cattles, and being driven out of *Tarentum*, returned into *Epirus*, after he had warred six in Italy, and the *Pœni*.

(a) *Pyrrhus* being quite chaled away, the *Tarentines*, *Brutians*, and *Carthaginians*, who contrary to their league assisted in this War, overcome in fight, submitted to the Roman authority and power, and obtained quiet and liberty in the year from the foundation of the City 482, in that which went before (b) *Ptolemy Philadelphus*, was united, or associated himself to the Romans.

(c) The *Pirenian*, *Selentinian*, and lastly of all the most grievous war the (d) *Punick* followed, which was first begun in the year of the City account 490, the eleventh year after *Pyrrhus* returned into *Epirus*.

(e) The cause of the first *Punick* war, was the ambition of both Cities, and their mutual suspected and formidable power. The *Maritimi* offered affronts to *Hiero* King of the *Syracusians* and ally of the *Carthaginians*, who (f) in the year of the Olympiad, 126. the second was first made Governour by the *Syracusians*, and after saluted King the fourth Olympiad, 127, he made war against the *Mamertini*, who dwell in *Messana*: These implore the Roman aid, having begun to fight against the forces brought into the Island by *Hiero*, and the *Carthaginians*; the fortune of that war was long doubtful, the *Carthaginians* prevailing at Sea, and the Romans upon the land, who at last in the fourth year of the war, in the year of the City, 493, obtained the art of Sailing and fighting at Sea, better then formerly. But that being again and again laid aside, and taken up, they at last had the upper hand. In that war, *Attalus* a Prince or Duke, commeth to be remembred with the first or chief; who, the forces of the *Carthaginians* being broken in a Sea and land battell, when as he would not grant peace to them desiring it, but on unequall terms, was overcome by *Xanthippus*, a Captain of the *Lacedemonians*, and taken in the battell with 15. thousand souldiers, 30 thousand being slain, in the year of the City 500. lacking two. He afterwards being sent to Rome by the *Carthaginians*,

(a) Epit. Liv. 14. Orol. 4. c. 3.

(b) Eutr. 2.

(c) Flor. l. c. 19

(d) Polyb. 1. Epit. Liv.

(e) Polyb. 1. p. 13. & scq. Epit. Liv. Flor. 2. c. 2. Eutr. 2. Appian. Orol. l. 4. c. 7. (f) Polyb. 1. p. 8. Paulan. Eliac. 2. p. 189.

Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
anno 4713.

*Carthaginians*, that he might treat with the Senate about the exchanging of Captives, he interceded that that might not be done; and of his own accord returned to *Carthage* unto a most certain execution. *C. Dailius* first got a Sea-victory of the *Romans*, in the fifth year of the war. *C. Lutatius* the latter, in the 23. and last year, in which Victory he warred with the *Carthaginians* at the Island *Egus*; with whom peace was granted on these conditions, That they should yield up all the Islands that lay between *Italy*, and *Africa*, and should pay for 20 years, two thousand and two hundred Talents. That was done in the year of the City built,

(b) Polyb. b. 1.  
p. 65. App. in  
Pun. Diod. in  
Collec. p. 75

513, before Christ, 241. A greater danger at home took hold on the *Carthaginians*, having finished a foreign war. For the hired souldiers, of which sort, the *Carthaginians* made very much use, required their payes, and the rewards of warfare, which thing, the treasury being exhausted, could not be performed. Therefore robbing and killing throughout *Africa*, and largely wasting all things, it could hardly be stopped. (b) At length, after three years and four Months, they put an end to that war. (c) In the year of the City 519. which very seldom happeneth at *Rome*, the Temple of *Janus* was shut, wars being every where appeased. But a little after, new stirs arising, it was opened. The *Ligurians*, *Sardians*, *Corfians*, being subdued. And then a war being begun with the *Illyrians*, and Queen *Tenta*, in the year of the City 524. the third year after, was finished, and then, Embassadors, Messengers of Conquest being sent thorow *Greece*. (d) The *Corinbians* received the *Romans* into the fellowship of the *Isthmians*.

(b) Polyb. b. 1.  
p. 98.  
(c) Eutr. 3.  
Plut. in Numa  
Orof. 4. ch. 11.

(e) Moreover, there was a fearfull in-breach of the *French* or *Gauls*. The *Insulbrians* and *Bojans* by reason of the *Picene*-field or land taken away from the *French Senones*, and divided by the field law (1) by *Flaminius*, Tribune of the Communalty (which law was given forth in the 522 year of the City, the *French* beyond the *Alps*, *Gesates*, (so they called *Mercenary* souldiers) being called to them, fought against the *Romans*. Against whom the *Romans* mustered, which is scarce to be believed, (g) 700000 footmen, 70000. horsemen. The *French* were often overcome, and their Army led over *Padus*, especially in the 530 year of the City built; and the *Insulbrians* were tamed, (h) and *Virdumur* King of the *Gesates* being by *C. Marcellus* the Consull slain, gave from himself rich spoils, (a) Unto this war *Hiero* King of *Sicily*, who a little before the beginning of the *Panick* or *Carthaginian* war being overcome by the *Romans*, had passed over into the parties and friendship of the conquerours, sent a very great store of bread-corn, the price whereof, when the war was ended, he received.

(d) Polyb. 2.  
p. 101.

(e) Polyb. 2.  
p. 109.  
Flor. 2. ch. 4.  
O. of. 4. ch. 13.  
(f) Cic. 2. Univer-  
sity questi-  
ons.

(g) Polyb. 3.  
Eutr. 2.

(h) Eutr. 2.

(a) Diodor.  
Eccl. 25.

CHAP.

## CHAP. II.

## The second Carthaginian war.

Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
anno 4713.

Then another war with *Carthage* followed, (b) in the four and twentieth year from the end of the former, the which indeed was lesse in space of time, but so more dreadfull in the cruelty of slaughters, saith *Florus*, that if any one compareth the losses of both people, the people that conquereth, is more like to the conquered. There was the same cause of the war, as of the former, desire of Masterdome; and in the *Carthaginians* an impatience of bondage, because they being overcome, had (as I have said) already the four and twentieth year yielded to the weapons of the *Romans*. *Hannibal* the son of *Amilcar*, put under the chief torch unto this flame, of that *Amilcar* who being Generall of the *Carthaginians* in the former war, had received with grief the conditions of peace; and who, things being composed in *Africa*, in the year of the City (as is gathered out of (c) *Polybius*) 517. being sent into *Spain*, had taken *Hannibal*, being nine years of age, along with him; when as he had first commanded him to swear at the Altar, that he would never be in friendship with the *Romans*. *Amilcar* being about nine years after slain; *Hafdrubal* his son in Law was put in his room, who sent for *Hannibal*, and after eight years, being slain, had him for his successour, of the City 534. when he had began about the seven and twentieth year of his age by which account, he seemeth to be born in the year of the City built, 507; before Christ 247. Therefore presently, as soon as he is made chief Commander, he subjected to himself all *Spain* within the River *Iber*. (d) Hence after seven moneths, great forces being raised up, he took *Saguntum* an associate City of the *Romans*. All the *Saguntines*, help being in vain looked for of the *Romans*, partly by the sword of the Enemy, partly by their own hand, were slain. Thus the second *Carthaginian* war was moved, the which beginning in the year of C.B. 536. (e) *P. Cornelius Scipio*, and *T. Sempronius Longus*, being Consulls, had an end in the seventeenth year, *M. Servilius Geminus*, and *T. Claudius Nero*, being Consulls of the City built, the year 552. *Hannibal* had in his army, as *Polybius* writeth, of footmen, 90 thousand, of horsemen twelve thousand. *Livy* declareth diversly concerning the number. At the first onser, both Consulls are overcome, *P. Cornelius* at *Ticium*, *Sempronius* at *Trebeia*. The following year of the City built, 557. a greater slaughter is received at the Lake *Thrasimene*; when in the mean time, *A. Fabius Maximus*, being made Pro-dictator by the people, however by delaying, upheld the business. (b) But the most cruell destruction of all happened in the year of the C. B. 538. at *Canina*, through the rashness of *Terence Varro*, another Consull. In that fight were slain of the *Roman* 40000. Neither yet, their courage being unbroken for that calamity, they

(b) Polyb. 2.  
Liv. 1. Dec. 5.  
Flor. 2. ch. 5.  
Plut. Fab. &  
Marc. Appia  
Orof. ch. 14.

(c) Polyb. in  
the beginning  
of b. 1.  
Corn. Nep. in  
Hannibal.  
Pliny of fa-  
mous men.

(d) Liv. 21.  
Polyb. 3.

(e) Liv. 30.

(a) Polyb. 3.  
p. 189. Liv. 21.

(b) Polyb. 3. p.  
264. Liv. 2.  
Appian. Flor.  
and others  
quoted.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(c) Polyb. 8.  
p. 515, & 101.  
Liv. 3. Dec. 4.  
Plur. Marr.  
Archimedes.  
(d) Liv. Dec. 3.  
b. 5.

would not redeem those that were taken in the *Cannian* battell, (c) Then *Marcellus* the Consul besieged *Syracusa*, which City, after the death of *Hiero*, which fell out in the 539 year of the C. B. had fell away from the fellowship of the *Romans*, in the year of the City 540. which the industry of one man defended from his fierce assault. That man was *Archimedes*, who being an excellent master of the Heaven and Stars in that age; but in the inventions of Engines and warlike works, much more famous, mocked all the preparations of the *Romans*, with a very light matter. Therefore at length, scarce in the third year, of the City 542, could *Syracusa* be taken. At which time it is delivered, *Archimedes*, his mind being earnestly bent on those studies unto which he had been given, and thinking nothing of those things which were carried on by this tumult, being by an unknown Souldier, and in vain, enquiring who he was, slain; *Marcellus* to have taken great grief from his death, who had commanded the Souldiers breaking in to the City, that they should preserve his life; and to have taken care for his buriall.

This misery of the *Syracusans* put an end to Kingly rule in *Sicily*, the which, that *Hiero* of whom we have made mention a little before, had restored; and had by courtesy and clemency made of a Tyrannicall a just one, and acceptable to the common people; when as he took nothing as chief to himself, from so great dignity, besides care, and liberality. But he reigned 54 years, beginning from the 485 year of the C. B. the sixty before the first *Carthaginian* war, who entering, being overcome by *Appius* the Consul, he fell off from the fellowship of the *Carthaginians* unto the *Romans*, and continued in their friendship (a) nigh fifty years. (b) He had a son, *Gelo*, of the same manners, who died before his father in the fiftieth year of his age, and he left *Jerom*, begotten from *Nereis* the daughter of *Pyrrhus*, King of the *Epirotes*, heir of his Grandfathers Kingdome, the which he came to in the 539 year of the City, *Hiero* being dead, being in the 15th year of his age. But as he was of a very bad disposition, running out into all kind of wickednesse and cruelty, by the conspiracy of his own subjects, he is the same year killed.

In the mean time *Lavine* the Pretour crushed *Philip* king of *Macedonia*, having made a fellowship with *Hannibal*, waiting for an advantage against *Italy*, and constrained him, his Navy being of his own accord burnt, to betake himself into his own *Cataculania*, in the year of C. B. 542. But in *Spain*, *P.* and *Cn. Scipios*, brethren, who had hitherto stopped up the passage of *Hadrubal* unto his brother *Hannibal* into *Italy*, and had performed many things valiantly there, the Army being overthrown, they both fell, (d) *L. Marcius* a Roman Knight, being chosen, (in fear, a Captain by the voice of the Souldiery, supported a decaying state. Under whose conduct, in one night and day, two camps of the enemies were vanquished, and slain of the enemies 37 thousand, the which happened in that year of the City 542. (e) And at the same

same time *Tarentum*, besides a Castle, being taken by *Hannibal*, and *Capua* besieged by the *Romans*; (f) from the which, that *Hannibal* might turn them away, he bends to *Rome*. But a sudden tempest arising suddenly, drove back this man from its walls and sight. And then *Capua* being delivered to the *Romans*, whose Princes took away their own life by peylon; the Senators being beleagured, the City was reduced unto a Lieutenantship.

(g) *P. Scipio* was the son of that *P. Scipio*, whom we have mentioned to have been slain in *Spain*; who after that Spanish overthrow, all being affrighted, being four & twenty years old, he protested himself to carry his commanding power into *Spain*, and thither he was sent for a Consul, in the year of the City 543. (h) There very great things being done, and *Hadrubal* the son of *Gisco*, and *Mago* being overcome, in the 5th year after he had come, cast out the *Carthaginians* from all *Spain*. Thence going forward into *Africa*, he joyned friendship with *Syphax* of the *Masilians*, and then with *Masaniisa* of the *Masulians*, Kings. These things were done in the year of the City 548, the third year from the overthrow of *Marcellus* the Consul; (a) who in the year 546 some prosperous battles being made with *Hannibal*, he being compassed about by the layings in wait of the same, is slain. (b) But the following year *Hadrubal* the brother of *Hannibal*, who had come with a new Army into *Italy*, before he could joyn himself together with his brother, was by two Consuls, *Claudius Nero*, and *Livy Salinator*, with his Army overthrown. *Hannibal* was then in *Apulia*; against whom *Nero* the Consul had opposed himself. *Livy* had Camps in *France* on this side the *Alps*, against *Hadrubal*. The letters of *Hadrubal* being intercepted, *Nero* came privily, *Hannibal* not knowing it, having measured over all *Italy* in six dayes space, unto the Camps of his co-partner, with part of his Army; and his enemies, as hath been mentioned, being overcome, returned unto his standing Camps, before that *Hannibal* thought him to have departed; 56 thousand are reported to be slain of the enemies in that battell; taken, 5000, and 400. The head of *Hadrubal* being cast by *Nero* before the standing places of the *Carthaginians*, was a sorrowful token unto *Hannibal* of the received slaughter.

(c) But *P. Scipio*, that he might call back *Hannibal* from *Italy*, determined to transport the War into *Africa*; the which at length in the year of the City 549, in which he bare the Consulship, he attempted. But in the beginning, seeing that thing was accounted rash counsel, there was nothing neither of money nor Souldiers publicly supplied; So none but a voluntary Souldiery being mustered, and money received upon borrowing, and gathered by intreaty, first being Consul, unto *Sicily*; thence, being Pro-consul in the year of the City 550, the fiftenth of the War, he came with a Navy into *Africa*. (d) In which year, the image of the Mother *Idia* being brought from *Pessimus* in *Phrygia*, from the Oracle, unto *Rome*, by *P. Scipio Nasica* the son of *Cn.* which young man,

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(f) Liv. 3.  
Dec. 9.

(g) Livy in the same place  
Val. 3. ch. 7.  
Plin. of famous men.  
(h) Liv. 3.  
Dec. b. 6.  
Polyb. 11.  
p. 638.

(a) Liv. 3.  
Dec. 7.  
Plur. Marr.  
(b) Liv. in the same place.  
Polyb. in the beginning of b. 11.

(c) Liv. 28.  
Appia.

(d) Liv. Plin. of famous men.  
Herodian. b. 11.

(c) Polyb. in Collect. of Val. l. p. 10. & b. 1. Hist. p. 16.

a) Liv. b. 4. Dec.  
b) Polyb. in Collect. of Val. l. p. 13. Liv. b. 4. Dec. 3. Paul. El. 2. Justin. 28.  
c) Liv. 3. Dec. 4.

d) Liv. 3. Dec. 5.

e) Liv. 3. Dec. 5.



Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

Liv. Appian.  
Flor. &c.

man the Senate had dedicated as a most excellent or very good man, it was received.

*Hafdrubal* the son of *Gisco* is set by the *Carthaginians*, a Captain, against *Scipio*; who had espoused *Sophonisba* the daughter of *Masanissa*. But the people of the *Carthaginians*, her father, and the betrothed man being absent, joyned her openly unto *Syphax*, who being taken in love of the Maid, waited their fields, that they might bring him over from the friendship of the *Romans* unto their own. With which wrong *Masanissa* being much moved, gave himself wholly to the *Romans*; and afterwards brought great help to beat down the *Carthaginians*.

*Syphax* and *Hafdrubal* came suddenly upon *Scipio*, besieging *Utica* with 100000 armed men, whose Camps the same day were destroyed, 40000 being slain, six thousand taken; and both again, their Armies being renewed, were overcome in another battle, *Syphax* was by *Lelium*, and King *Masanissa* taken alive.

When as *Masanissa* had carried away *Sophonisba* his Wife, being blamed by *Scipio*, he sent poison unto her, wherewith the brought death on her self. (a) *Hannibal* being called by the *Carthaginians*, leaving *Italy*, in the 16th year of the War, of the City 551, he returned into *Africa*; (b) his companions that would not follow, what being slain, what being brought into bondage, and a peace being in vain attempted by discourse together, he having joyned in battle, is by *Scipio* overcome; after him *Vermina* the son of *Syphax*, who had come for aid to the *Carthaginians*. *Scipio* made conditions of peace with the *Carthaginians*, the Senate and people of *Rome* being the author; *Hannibal* fled away to *Antiochus*.

(c) The War was ended in the 17th year, of the City 552, *M. Servilius Geminus*, and *T. Claudius Nero* being Consuls, and the following year peace being granted to the *Carthaginians* by the Senate; and *Scipio* was carried triumphing into the City, (d) and in that triumphing *Syphax* was led, a little after dying at *Tybur* in prison. But (c) *Livy* tells, that he dyed before the triumph, (1) and was advanced with an open Funeral. Where also he affirmeth *Polybius* to think that which I have said. This King, he saith, to have been led in the triumph, *Polybius* an author, in no case to be despised, delivereth; which rehearsing of the most excellent historian, seemeth unto me to be too straight, and nothing copious.

(a) Liv. 3.  
Dec. 10.  
App. &c.  
Polyb. 15.  
(b) Diod. in  
Coll. of Val.  
Lef. p. 290.

(c) Liv. 3.  
Polyb. 15.  
(d) Polyb. 16.  
p. 733.

(c) In the end  
of book 10.  
Dec. 3.  
(f) Valer.  
Max. b. 5.  
ch. 1.

## CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

Of the first beginning of the Achæans, the enterprises of Pyrrhus, and his death, and the original of the Kings of Troy, and the Parthians.

Furthermore, in *Greece* and the Eastern parts, these things chiefly appertain to history. The Common-wealth of *Troas* and *Peloponnesus* did by degrees close into one, (a) whose foundations were laid in the 124 Olympiad, about the time *Pyrrhus* went over into *Italy*; when the *Dymæans*, *Patrensiens*, *Triteans*, and the *Pharæans*, were agreed, to whom all the rest for the future betook themselves. These at the first appointed one Scribe and two Prætors for the publick. When 25 years were expired, they were content to make choice of one onely Prætor. He was wont to be made so about the appearance of the seven Stars, (b) as *Polybius* our Author reporteth, and *Marcus Curyneus* the chief of all the Prætors, is by him betrayed. In whose fourth year *Aratus* *Styrius* being 20 years of age, began to be famous for what he had done. Wherefore in the last year of that Olympiad, arose this Common-wealth in the year before Christ 281, in the year of the City 471. In the following year *Pyrrhus* went over Sea into *Italy*. The *Lacedæmonians* being perplexed with sedition at home, came to be governed by *Pyrrhus*. *Cleomenes* after 60 years and ten moneths dyed in his Kingdom, as *Diodorus* witnesseth, when *Demetrius Phaleræus* was Prætor at *Athens*. He is the fourth of the 117 Olympiad. (c) This man begat two sons, *Acrotatus*, who dying before his father, left a son called *Areus*; and a younger son, whose name was *Cleonymus*. When they were at variance about his succession, the Senate preferred *Areus* before *Cleonymus*; him they studied to entice by fair speeches, honours, and preferments, nor to be advised against the Common-wealth. For amongst other things, he being sent unto *Tarentum* against the *Lucanis* and *Romans* with aid, overcame the *Lucanes*. He vanquished *Tarentum*, which had fallen off, in the year of the City built 451, in the second year of the 119 Olympiad, as (d) *Diodorus* is author. After the City of the *Salentines* being taken by the *Romans*, *Amilius* Consul being Captain, in the year 452, being put to flight with his Navy, he comes to the *Patavine* shoares ravening the prey; where his Navy being very badly entertained, the fifth part of it scarcely returned home, as *Livy* (a) writeth, who nameth not this King of the *Lacedæmonians* aright. But he, after many years, being both mindful of the repulse, and also provoked by a new injury, because *Acrotatus* the son of *Areus*, had suddenly snatched away *Chelidonis* his Wife, called forth *Pyrrhus* into *Laconica*, (b) in the same year, wherein he having returned out of *Italy*, had taken possession of *Macedonia*, *Antigonus* being driven out; which is the 481 of the City built. Therefore the following year, an invoad being made into *Laconica*, he took the City

(a) Polyb. 22.  
p. 129.

(b) Polyb.  
init. 5, p. 350.

(c) Diod. 20.  
Pausan. in  
Lacon. p. 87.  
Plut. in Ag. &  
Cleo. See  
b. 10. of doct.  
of times, ch. 5.

(d) Diod. 26.

(a) Liv. 100.

(b) Plut. in  
Pyrrhus,  
Justin. 25.  
The death  
of Pyrrhus.

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
anno 4430.

(c) Strabo.  
b. 13. Paul.  
Attic. p. 7.  
The Kingdom  
of Pergamus.

The begin-  
ning of the  
Parthians.

(d) Just. 41.

Justine's  
Error.

City almost void of defenders. But being driven out through the valour of the Townsmen, he contendeth at *Argos*: which City having entred into, and fighting against *Antigonus*, a tyle being by a woman dashed on his head, he was slain, in the entrance of the 127 Olympiad; That is the 272 year before Christ, unto which, from that year wherein *Cleonymus* was cast off from the Kingdom, which was before Christ 309, about seven and thirty years come between.

(c) At the same time, in which the Cities of the *Achaians* began to be reduced into one body, at *Caycus*, a River of *Pergamus*, a Town of the greater *Phrygia*, the foundations of a new kingdom were laid. About the 124 Olympiad, in the last year of *Ptolemy Lagides*, *Phileter*, an Eunuch, high Treasurer, taking grievously from *Lysimachus* the death of his son *Agathocles*, whom, his father of false crimes, by his Wife *Asinoe*, being accused, had taken away by poyson, fell off from him, and was chief of a new royal authority at *Pergamus*. This man had two brethren, *Eumenes* and *Attalus*, who also succeeded in the Kingdom: but *Attalus* first took on him the Kingly Title, as saith *Strabo*. The last was *Attalus*, nephew of the former *Attalus*, who dying, appointed the people of *Rome* his heir, in the year of the City built, 621. So the Kings of *Pergamus* reigned about 152 years.

The Kingdom of the *Parthians*, that was afterward strivingly ambitious with the *Roman*, whose founder was *Asaces*, began at the same time, in which the first *Carthaginian* War flamed in the West. But by reason of the disagreement of the Ancients concerning its beginning, it is uncertain.

(d) *Justine* indeed makes mention, that the first falling away of the *Parthians* happened in the first *Carthaginian* War, *L. Mulum Vulso*, and *Attilius Regulus* being Consuls, *Seleucus* reigning, whose discord with his brother *Antiochus* gave a lack of punishment to that falling away. Those Consuls possesse the 504th year of the City built, before Christ 250, in which year *Antiochus*, [i. e. the] that is, the God, the third of the *Seleucidain* race, the father of *Seleucus Callinicus*. Unto *Seleucus* were born, *Seleucus Ceraunus*, who after his father *Callinicus* dying in the twentieth year of his reign, reigned three years: and *Antiochus* the Great, who succeeded his brother *Callinicus*. *Justine*, who saith, the *Parthians* fell off from *Seleucus* the great grandchild of *Antiochus Soter*, understood not *Callinicus*, but his son *Ceraunus*, whose brother *Antiochus* was. In which, he is wonderfully deceived. *Seleucus Ceraunus* began his reign in the second year of the 138 Olymp. In the first year of the Olymp. following, he dyed; for he reigned three years. Therefore the beginning of him agreeth with the year of the City, 527, which is the 15th from the peace made with the *Carthaginians*; and from the Consulship of *Vulso* and *Attilius*, the four and twentieth. Moreover, *Eusebius* ascribes it under *Antiochus* the god, to the 133 Olympiad, two years after the Consuls mentioned by *Justine*.

(1) But

(a) But *Strabo* writeth, *Asaces* to have fled, *Callinicus* reigning, which agreeth well enough with *Eusebius*. *Appian* saith, the *Perrians* to have fallen off at that time, wherein *Antiochus* the god (that would be so called) being dead, *Laodice* kills *Bernice* another of his Wives; whose death her brother *Ptolemy Evergetes* desiring to revenge, went into *Syria*, & even unto *Babylon*. These things were done in the very first year of *Seleucus Callinicus*, a little after the death of *Antiochus* the god. Wherefore we do believe, that the beginnings of the *Partians* were laid under *Callinicus*, and in the first of his reign, about the 246th year before Christ. For (b) *Arrian* with *Photius*, is author, that *Asaces*, with his brother *Terdaces*, slew *Pherecles*, Lieutenent (from *Antiochus* the god) of his Country, for the chastity of either of them tempted or tried by him. Whence, even *Antiochus* the god, as yet living, or a little after his death, that thing is very likely to have happened.

Hence forward, the Princes of the *Parthians* took their name from *Asaces*, even as from *Cesar* and *Augustus*, the Roman Emperors, were called *Augustuses* and *Cesars*. The royal command of these, remained unto about 472 years; from the year before Christ 246, unto 220 years after Christ, and even to the fifth of the son of *Alexander Mammeas*; (a) In which year, *Artaxerxes* (a) Herodian: by birth a *Persian*, *Atabannus* King of the *Parthians* being slain, passed over the top of their affairs unto the *Persians*.

*Theodotus* also, Governour of the *Babrians*, is (at the same time wherein *Asaces*) made the founder of a new Kingdom. Which very thing was of very small continuance, and yielded it self into the title of the *Parthians*.

#### CHAP. IV.

What things were carried on in Greece, and through the East, from the year before Christ 252, unto 219, and the beginning of the second Punick War.

THE Common-wealth of the *Achaians* (c) in *Peloponnesus*, (c) Polyb. 2. through the valour of *Aratus Sicyo*, grew up with great increase. This man in the twentieth year of his age (which is reckoned both the eleventh year of the former *Carthaginian* War, and from the Common-wealth of the *Achaians* founded, the one and thirtieth, (d) that is, the 4th year of the Lieutenants of *Marc* of (d) Polyb. 2. *Coryne* attempted to wrest the *Greek* Cities, which for the most part were at that time held by Tyrants, from theirs, and also from the *Macedonian* yoke. Of which thing, he made a beginning from his Countrey, the which being endowed with liberty, (*Nicoteles* the Tyrant being driven out) he joyned to the Council of the *Achaians*, in the 253 year before Christ, of the City built 501. But when more than 500 banished persons returning unto *Sicyo*, required their goods, *Aratus* going into *Aegypt*, wrung out

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(a) Strabo the  
13. Appian. in  
the end of  
Syr.

(b) Arria. in  
Parthic.  
Phot. in  
book 58.

(a) Herodian:

Anno 443 r.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 473.

(e) Plut. in  
Aratus.  
(f) Polyb.  
Plut. Paulian.

150 talents from *Ptolomey Philadelphus*, wherewith he might satisfy them. The eighth year after, he was first made Prætor; and (e) a year coming between, he again took the same Office: by which, (f) a garrison being thrown out of a Castle of the *Macedonians*, over which *Perseus* the Stoick was chief, he freed *Corinth*; which example prevailed in many or most Towns, who followed the same fellowship. But that thing happened before the last victory of the *Romans* over the *Carthaginians*, as *Polybius* sheweth, in the twenty second year of the former *Carthaginian War*; of the City, 511.

(a) Plut. Ag.  
& Cleomen.

(a) A little before, or about the same time, a tumult arose at *Lacedæmon*, *Agis*, and *Leonidas* reigning, the one whereof was of the family of the *Euritionides*, or *Euripontides*, the sixth from that *Agæplanus* the Great, who had in times past done famous things against the *Barbarians*. *Leonidas* was sprung from the stock of the *Agides*, or *Euristhenides*, which excelled the other in worthiness, born of his father *Cleonymus*, which son of the abovesaid *Cleomenes*, being put after *Arcus*, the son of *Arrotatus* his brother, I have (b) shewn above, *Pyrrhus* to have brought into *Laconia*. *Agis* not as yet in the twentieth year of his age, desiring to restore the fallen discipline of *Lycurgus*, he attempted to do it by new obligatory writings, and dividing of their fields; whom when the chief men of the City, and amongst them the other King or Ruler, *Leonidas* withstood; nevertheless he persisted in his enterprise, having gotten *Lysander* a *Lacedæmonian* Magistrate, an assister of his counsellors, by whom *Leonidas* being required for judgment, the Kingdom being repealed, and conferred on *Cleombrotus* his son in law, he settled himself a suppliant in the Temple of *Minerva*. Afterwards, new *Ephori* or *Lacedæmonian* Magistrates succeeding, and citing *Lysander*, and other favourers of *Agis* to declare the cause: both the Kings come into the assembly with a guard of friends, they reduce the *Ephori* into order: for these, when they do ordain others of their own parties, and also *Agefilas* a most large husbandman, but wrapped or covered in debt; who therefore was a worker on *Agis*, that before the law for the ground, he should set forth new obligations to mitigate the common people. When *Agis* had yielded to his counsel, when it came unto the dividing of the fields, *Agefilas* was diligent to mock or deceive, and wrangle by wondrous crafts, which thing estranged the minds of the Citizens from *Agis*. Therefore by the conspiracy of his enemies, *Leonidas* is call'd back from banishment, and is restored to the Kingdom. *Agis* and *Cleombrotus* being suppliants, fly together unto the Temple of *Minerva Chalciæca*. *Cleombrotus*, through *Chelonis* his Wife, the daughter of *Leonidas*, his life being by request obtained, changeth his soyl; and thither *Chelonis* followed her husband, her father in vain restraining her. *Agis* being laid hold on by the *Ephori*, and condemned for his life, ended his life with an halter: and with the same punishment *Agistata* his Mother, or *Archidamia* his grandmother were dissolved; his brother

(b) Ch. 4.

The History  
of Agis.

ther (c) *Archidamus* escaped death by flight, who a little after being call'd back again by *Leonidas*, and taken into the fellowship of the Kingdom, he being dead, (a) *Polybius* sheweth, to have died again for fear of *Cleomenes*, and by him at length to be slain. *Agistata*, the wife of *Leonidas*, was constrained to marry her son *Cleomenes*, being as yet a child: whom, after the example of her former husband, the more vehemently inflameth to follow after the same enterprizes, being stirred therunto of his own accord. That calamity of *Agis* happened about the finishing of the first *Punic War*, and the Castle of *Corinth* possessed by *Aratus*.

*Leonidas* a little after having finished his life, *Cleomenes* reigned about the year, as we think, before Christ 235; of the City built, 519, a young man of a great courage, but hot, and cruel, and especially stout in War. Who, the *Achaians* flourishing in strength and rule, and all *Peloponnesus*, with their Captain *Aratus*, flying, he often overthrew in battle; when as the *Lacedæmonians* had parted away from their league, the which they had hitherto openly maintained, unto the fellowship of the *Ætolians*, with whom they had warr. For the *Achaians*, that which they had always desired, that they much more about this time did prosecute by the Author *Aratus*, that of all the Cities of *Peloponnesus*, they might make one common-wealth. Which thing the Kings of *Macedon* fearing, they either had placed in most of them cruel Lords; or did confirm those that were already appointed by themselves with their safeguard. In the beating down these by any force, in bringing those by any free-will into a common covenant, *Aratus* performed a diligent endeavour; and to perfect that thing, he much prevailed by industry and counsel. Therefore *Antigonus Gonatas* as yet living, the son of *Demetrius Poliorcetes*, besides other Towns, he joyned *Sycio* and *Corinth* (the Tyrant being cast out from thence; from hence, the garrison of the *Macedonians*) unto the covenant of his own Countreymen. But then *Gonatas* being dead in the third year of the 134 Olympiad, of the City built 512, and *Demetrius* his son, who dyed (ten years being finished) in the year of the City 522, before Christ 232; he betook all his endeavour for the freeing of *Greece*. At what time, he first of all loosed *Ætols* from the yoke of the *Macedonians*; *Diogenes*, who was chief over it, being allured to betray it, with great rewards. And then the *Argivi*, *Hermionenses*, *Philiassii*, and others, the cruel Lords yielding themselves of their own accord, for fear of Treason, and applying themselves to the common league of the *Græcians*. Against whose so prosperous affairs, the *Ætolians*, and *Cleomenes* King of the *Lacedæmonians*, objected delayes: they, through envy and craftiness; he, through open force and weapons: whereby he often, as we have already said, overcame and put to flight *Aratus* and other Commanders of the *Achaians*. Which war, as he order'd it by his own advice, not at the direction of others, made him, which thing he long since thought, that the *Ephori* being taken away, he might challenge all the authority and command un-

Anno 443 r.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 473.

(c) Plut.  
(a) book 5.  
p. 385.

The deeds of  
*Cleomenes*.

(b) Polyb. 2.  
& Plut. in  
*Aratus*.

Things done  
by *Aratus*.

Anno 4431  
Jul. Per. od.  
unto 4713.

to himself; and he declared the old discipline of his house, in the tenth year of his reign, of the City of Rome 528, or next following. After that, being loosed and free from home-bred fear, he wholly bent himself on the *Achaick* War. When the *Achaicans* saw themselves unfit for the undergoing this war, *Aratus* being already weary and languishing, and great slaughters being received from *Cleomenes*, that same man, or *Aratus*, being the author, they had regard unto the help of the *Macedonians*. *Antigonus*, by surname, *Deser*, that is, one about to give or profit, reigned over *Macedonia*. Which name he obtained from this, because he said he would give sundry times one after another what was asked of him. This man governed the kingdom for *Philip* the son of *Demetrius*, from the year before Christ, 232; of the City 522, the 137 Olympiad entering, to wit, a little before the passing over Rome into *Illyricum*, as (a) *Polybius* saith. Therefore *Aratus* requireth the fellowship of *Antigonus*, with his Citizens, when as hitherto they had made use of the friendship of *Ptolemy*; which new Covenant they joyned in, by a great hire of the Town or Castle of *Corinth*, from which they parted to the *Macedonian*, and straightway renounced both by Sea and Land the same Captain of the Greek name. There came into the (b) communion of that league, the *Macedonians*, *Achaicans*, those of *Epirus*, the *Phocians*, *Boeotians*, *Arcadians*, *Thessalians*. *Cleomenes*, *Antigonus* breaking in with great Armies, when he met him at the *Isthmus* or narrow creek of land, being affrighted at the revolting of the *Grecians*, went back to defend his Countrey. So the *Macedonians*, no man forbidding them, came to *Peloponnesus* in the year of the World, 3761, of the City, 531, in which the second year of the 149 Olympiad began; and in the year following they conquered many Towns. *Cleomenes* in the mean time not loitering, who took *Megalopolis* at unawares, and utterly overthrew it, because the Citizens had refused to enter into fellowship with him, although they should be vagabonds in their Countrey, *Philopomenus* thus periwading, (a) who was then thirty years of age. Last of all, in the year of the City 533, before Christ 221, in which the 4th year of the same Olympiad began, a (b) battel being pitched or joyned, at *Selasia*, a Town of *Laconia*, *Cleomenes* was overcome by *Antigonus*; when as this brought out twenty thousand, the other thirty thousand into the battel, *Cleomenes* having slipped out of the battel, sailed over Sea to *Ptolemy Euergetes* into *Egypt*, leaving *Lacedemon* empty for defenders against *Antigonus*: To the which he coming, restored to it its liberty, and all its ancient rights. The next day he being certified, that the borders of *Macedonia* were invaded by the neighbouring *Barbarians*, he hasts thither as speedily as he could. In his passage he was present at the *Nemean* sports; by whom he was received with great acclamations, and all kind of honour by the *Greeks*. But as soon as he came to *Macedonia*, the *Illyrians*, and other *Barbarians* being put to flight, his body long ago being taken with a consumption, he deceased, and left

(a) Plur. in Philip.

(b) Polyb. 5. Plur. in Ag. & Cicom.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

left the Government to *Philip*, who afterward warred against the *Romans*. That happened in the 533 year of the City, of the World 3763, in which the 4th year of the 139 Olympiad is numbered; the mentioning of the *Nemean* pastime perfwadeth it, which about the end of the third Olympick year, and near the Sunstead, was wont to be begun, (c) as we have shewn elsewhere.

*Cleomenes* being very honourably, and lovingly received by *Ptolemy Euergetes*, he a little after dying, he came into suspicion with *Philopator*, the succeder of *Euergetes*; who from the counsel of *Sopibius*, by whose authority the Kingdom was ordered, kept him in custody, making haste into *Greece*; out of which he at length breaking with a few, and their swords being drawn, he running thorow the whole City, and in vain calling to the *Alexandrians* for liberty, laid hands on himself; (d) in the third year after he came to *Egypt*, the (e) sixteenth of his reign being finished. For presently after the death of *Cleomenes*, *Polybius* (f) witnesseth, *Celestria* was betrayed by *Theodotus* to *Antiochus*; which happened in the 535 year of the City built, the second of the 140 Olympiad. After this manner the beginning of *Cleomenes* is affirmed, the which we have ascribed to the second year of the 136 Olympiad, of the City 519. For from that time, to the year of the City 535, full sixteen years do run between.

(c) Notes to Jul. p. 323. &c. Polyb. 2. p. 155.

(d) Polyb. 4. p. 304. (e) Plur. Ag. & Cicom. (f) book 9. p. 385.

## CHAP. 37.

Of the Wars of *Antiochus the Great*, and the fight of *Ptolemy Philopator* at *Raphia*; the famous deeds of *Achæus*.

IN *Syria* the riot and cruelty of the Princes had miserable issue; *Antiochus* the Nephew of *Seleucus Nicanor*, had *Laodices* the daughter of *Ptolemy Philadelphus* to wife, as (a) *Appian* telleth; and by her he had two sons, *Seleucus Callinicus*, and *Antiochus Jeraces*; and when both Kings waged very great Wars between themselves, at length they came unto these conditions of peace, That *Bernice* the other daughter of *Philadelphus* should marry *Antiochus*, *Laodices* being either refused, or accounted in the place of a Concubine. And then *Philadelphus* being dead, in the year of the City, 507; before Christ, 247, *Antiochus* overcome with love, calls *Laodices* back again, who fearing the unconstancy of her husband, took away his life by poyson. Then *Bernice*, and her son, as yet an Infant, being slain, she carried up her son *Seleucus* to the Kingdom. This *Bernice* was Aunt to him whom (b) *Polybius* sheweth was slain by *Ptolemy Philopator*.

(c) *Ptolemy Euergetes*, who succeeded *Philadelphus*, being brought into *Syria*, revenged the death of his sister, with the slaughter of another: Neither being content with that fruit of his victory, he over-ran a great part of *Asia*; & being call'd back by an home-bred tumult,

(a) *Appian*, in the end of *Syr.* *Jerome* at the end of 11. ch. *Dan*.

(b) book. 5. p. 382.

(c) *Jerom*. Polyb. 5. p. 423.

Anno 437.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(d) Jerom.  
(e) b. 2. p. 5.  
(f) Jul. b. 30.

(g) Polyb. 5.  
p. 380.  
Jul. 30.  
(h) Polyb. 5.  
p. 380. Plut.  
Ag. & Cleom.  
Jul. 30.

(a) App. Syr.  
The begin-  
ning of Antio-  
chus the  
Great.

(b) Polyb. 5.  
p. 86.

Achaus usurps  
the Kingdom.  
(c) Polyb. b. 4.  
p. 271. & 314.  
(d) Polyb. 4.  
p. 59.

tumult, he obtained *Syria*, which I think was *Cæles*, by his Souldiers; (d) but he left *Cilicia* to *Antiochus Jeraces*: He dyeth in the 26th year of his reign, of the World 3763, wherein the third year of the 39 Olympiad ended. But (e) *Polybius* is author, that he deceased in that Olympiad, who also, he saith, was dissolved by a distate. But (f) *Justin* affirmeth him to be taken away by the parricide of his son; on whom, he writeth, the surname of [*Philopator*] or lover of his father, was imposed by a mock.

Therefore in that year, which I have set, *Ptolemy Philopator* began to sway the Scepter in *Ægypt*, (g) who presently slew his brother *Maqas*, and *Berenice*, as *Polybius* sheweth, (h) and gave himself wholly over unto g'uttonies and luxury. The which he did so much the more freely, because he thought security to be gotten for him both at home and abroad for a long time. For both his brother, and others that were near to him being killed, he brought terreur to his own kindred; and *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and *Seleucus* of *Syria*, Kings, being dead, in their places came *Antiochus* and *Philip*, almost as yet children, from whom he then feared nothing on himself.

(a) For there being a fit opportunity, *Seleucus Callinicus* being dead, who reigned twenty years; and his son *Seleucus* his successor, after an unhappy fight with *Ptolemy Energetes*, being killed by the lying in wait of his friends, *Antiochus*, the brother of *Seleucus* the son of *Callinicus*, was called from *Babylon* to take the Kingdom, almost a child, the 139 Olympiad entring, of the City built, 530; who for valiant deeds done, and not a little part of the Empire being recovered, he obtained the name of *Great*. For this man's beginning was tumultuous, and exercised or full of action; his Lieutenants of Provinces falling off from him through contempt of his age. (b) First *Atolus* Governour of *Media*, and *Alexander* of *Persia*, his brother, shake off the yoke; unto which counsel the fear of *Hermias Carus*, a most wicked man, who could do all things with the King, chiefly enforced them. These, *Antiochus* being vexed a few years, that is, not full three, according as we have gathered out of *Polybius*, and his Captain *Xerxes* at being overcome and slain, many Cities being vanquished, at length being overcome by the King himself, they prevented deserved punishment by a voluntary death. And in the same year *Hermias* endeavouring wicked attempts against the life of the King, he commanding, he is by lying in wait slain, which was the year of the City built, 533, the very same year, wherein we have related in the former Chapter, also *Cleomenes* King of *Sparta*, to have been overcome by *Antigonus*.

(c) When *Seleucus Ceraunus* (as hath been spoken) was slain, *Achaus* his neer kinsman having revenged his death, recovered by War whatsoever was on this side the Mountain *Taurus*, and despoiling *Antiochus*, took the kingdom to himself; (d) At which time *Molo* being subdued by war, *Antiochus* beat *Artabazanes*, a noble Lord, in the very year of the City which we have mentioned, 533, in the

the 4th year of the 139 Olympiad; (e) and after two years from the death of *Seleucus*, the younger brother of *Antiochus*. But before that *Antiochus* moved against *Achaus*, he first agreed to attempt *Cælosyria*; (a) which Province the *Egyptians* held of old, and had wont to make more of the possession of that, than even of *Ægypt* itself, because the situation of that is very fit against the Kingdom of *Syria*. Therefore in the year of the World 3765, of the City 535, the third year before the *Raphian* fight, (b) which *Polybius* sheweth, he led an Army into (c) *Cælosyria*, and first vanquished *Seleucia*. After which things, *Theodotus*, an *Ætolian* by birth, the Lieutenant of *Cælosyria* under *Ptolemy*, partly through despising of this man, partly because he had the good will of his Governours, suspected toward him, fell off to *Antiochus*, and delivered that Province unto him. (d) *Ptolemy* being privily furnished with a great provision of war, proceedeth against *Antiochus*; whom (e) their ensigns being pitched over against each other at *Raphia*, a Town of *Phœnicia*, he overcame. Seventy thousand footmen, five thousand horsemen, with seventy and three Elephants, are (f) written to have been in the Army of *Ptolemy*. *Antiochus* numbered sixty two thousand footmen, six thousand horsemen, an hundred and two Elephants. (g) The left wing of *Ptolemy* was scattered by the right of *Antiochus*; the left wing of this, by the others right: the four-square Army or wings restored the fight on both sides: in which the Souldiers of *Antiochus* in the last field gave place. Of these, almost to the number of ten thousand are lost, with three hundred horsemen. Of *Ptolemy's* Souldiers, a thousand five hundred footmen, seventy horsemen. This is that combate, of which the third book Apocryphal of the *Maccabees* in the beginning mentioneth; which moreover relateth a bold deed of *Theodotus* of *Syria*, a Traytor, when breaking into *Ptolemy's* Tent before the fight, with two men, he by chance not being found, he killed another for him: the which also (h) *Polybius* hath committed to memory. The third of the *Maccabees* addeth, That *Arfinoes*, the sister of *Philopator*, was present at that battle, and the Souldiers of *Antiochus* making strong resistance against them, she quickned her Souldiers to battle, when her hair being spread abroad in rowes or order, the tears ran down, and promised to every Souldier two pounds of gold; thereby it came to passe, that the *Egyptians* were uppermost in the battle, in the same year they fought at *Raphia*; (i) *Polybius* is author: in which year the Romans were overcome by *Hannibal* at *Thrasimenum* in *Etruria*, the third year of the 140 Olympiad, and he sheweth that (a) same thing to have happened in the Spring-time; at which time also the Romans contended at *Thrasimenum*. Moreover, the wane of the Moon went before the same fight: as (b) *Polybius* writeth; which by the reckoning above, happened on the 336 of the year of the City, before Christ 218, in the Calends of September.

(c) *Philopator* knew not how to make use of such a victory gotten

Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(c) Polyb. 4.  
p. 315.  
(a) Polyb. 5.  
p. 380. & 428.  
Jul. 30.  
(b) book 5.  
p. 409.  
(c) Polyb. 5.  
p. 402. & 405.

(d) Polyb. 3.  
p. 407. & 7.  
&c.  
(e) Polyb. 5.  
p. 422.

(f) Polyb. 4.  
p. 421.

(g) Polyb. 5.  
p. 420. &c.

(h) book 5.  
p. 425.

(i) book 5.  
p. 422.

(a) p. 421. &  
431.

(b) book 5.  
p. 420.

(c) Polyb.  
p. 428. Jul. 30.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(d) 3 Mac. 1.  
Ptolemy is for-  
bidden to en-  
ter into the  
secrer place.

ten beyond hope and desert, who if he had joyned unto fortune, courage, and industry, he might have spoyled *Antiochus* of his kingdom. Now he being contented to recover what he had lost, granted a peace unto *Antiochus* asking it; as also he stayed three moneths in *Syria* and *Planicia*; (c) in which time while the Jews had sent to give him thanks, he came to *Jerusalem*, and there sacrifices, of right, being celebrated, he tryed to enter into the very innermost holier place, or holy of holies of the Temple; The which while he desired to attempt, they in vain resisting him; he being by an hidden power cast on the earth, his body being dissolved or weakened, and his voyce hindered, he is carried away by his guardians, being filled with fear and amazement; and from that moment he departed thence, raging and threatening. He being returned unto *Alexandria*, whatsoever there was of the Jewish Nation throughout *Egypt*, he commandeth to be divided into Companies, and to be brought away bound in fetters to *Alexandria*, and to be inclosed in a circle; then Elephants to be brought into the place, that he might expose them to be bruised by their teet, in the sight of all the people. Unto this spectacle, when he had oftentimes appointed a certain day, as often as it came, his remembrance was taken away by God; in all of that which he had decreed, neither could he at any time execute the things determined. Therefore his hatred being suddenly changed into pity, and afterward into love of the Nation, he let them all go; and after that behaved himself more fairly and liberally towards them; than any of the Kings hitherto. Moreover, he suffered them, that they might inflict punishment on the forsakers of the Countrey Religion of their kindred. *Philopator* having dispatched these cares, by and by returned unto his ancient manners, and having forgotten kingly Majesty, and all shame, he spent dayes and nights in whoredoms and mischievous deeds. For *Eurydice* his sister being slain, and the same a wife, he is ensnared by the flatteries of *Agathocles* an harlot, and he yielded himself wholly to her, his brother *Agathocles* being joyned, and his Mother *Oenanthes* unto them, by whose will all things, the greatest and least were handled or ordered.

(a) Polyb. 5.  
p. 415, &c.

(b) Polyb.  
p. 420.

(c) Polyb. in  
the end of b. 5.  
p. 447.

(a) But in *Asia*, which is on this side *Taurus*, *Achem* in the mean time, while *Antiochus* contends with *Ptolemy* about *Cælo Syria*, endeavoured to confirm and spread his kingdom as largely as he could, bringing daily wars on the neighbouring Kings, and Cities. (b) Whom *Attalus* King of *Pergamus* not sluggishly resisted, even the *Gauls* of *Telesagria* being hired out of *Thracia* for Auxiliaries; to whom afterwards drawing back from the warfare, and that because the Moon, their Camps being pitched, had left shining upon *Megistum*, a River of *Mysia*, they holding it for a religious observation, he gave leave to depart, in the third year of the 140 Olympiad, of the City 536. For in that year the Moon was darkened in the Calends of September. The same *Gauls* afterwards abundantly wasting all things, (c) *Prusias* King of *Bythinia*,

not

not far from *Hellepont* or the *Grecian* Sea, killed every one, in the year of the City, 538.

(d) *Antiochus* (things with *Ptolemy* being composed, and *Cælo Syria* being lost) turned the weight of his War on *Achaus*; whom also being besieged at *Sardis*, through the treachery of two *Cretians*, he reduced into his power, and ended his life by extreamest tortments, in the year of the City 539.

(e) About the same time, wherein *Antiochus* being overcome at *Raphia*, did prepare War against *Achaus*, the City of the *Rhodiens* was shaken with a great Earthquake, whereby a great part of the Walls and Ship-docks being cast down, the great *Colossus* or Image of *Rhodes* decayed or fell. Which losse, the large liberality of Kings and Cities toward them a little after repaired. *Colossus* lay many years on the ground, (f) untill *Marcus* King of the *Saracens*, *Rhodes* being taken, sold it to a certain Merchant, about the year of Christ 653. This Statue was 70 cubits in height; and (g) *Pliny* writeth, that it was prostrated by the Earthquake the 56th year after that it was made by *Charetes* the scolar of *Lysippus*; few could grasp his thumb; his fingers were bigger than many images; made in twelve years of 300 talents of brass. This ruine *Eusebius* bringeth into the second year of the 139 Olympiad: *Polybius* (as I have said) into the seventh from it.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(d) Polyb. 5.  
p. 444. & b. 6.  
p. 5, 6. & book  
8. p. 522.

(e) Polyb. 9.  
p. 428.

(f) The *Colossus* of  
*Rhodes*.

(g) book 34.  
ch. 6.

## CHAP. VI.

Of the Social War against the *Ætolians*, Philip King of Macedonia being made Captain; and of the famous Deeds of the same Philip.

*Antigonus*, who from his liberal promises was surnamed *[Adram.]* being called by the *Achaians* for ayd against *Cleomenes*, he being overcome, he (a) made peace with all *Greece*; amongst other of whose conditions that was one, That the *Ætolians* should not enter into *Achaia* with an Army. *Philip*, a little while after, almost a child, succeeded this man, having finished his life; (b) for he had not yet exceeded the seventeenth year; (c) of a great towardness, and an excellling example of the number in that Age, to accomplish manly works and great things; which also both the comeliness of his speech, and a certain kingly beauty of his whole body did commend. But a little after, by the acquaintance of wicked persons, (d) especially of *Tarentinus Heraclides*, & licentiousness of detestable acts, he overthrew those so many good things of Nature, and the hopes of men concerning him. The (e) *Ætolians*, the age of this King being despised, when it long since grieved them for their publick peace, because they were accustomed, otherwise, to live by robbery, and to take preys on every side, made a beginning of troubling the peace, from the sacking of *Messenia*, which was now in their fellow-

(a) Polyb. 4.  
p. 272. & 276.

(b) Polyb. in  
the same.  
p. 274. & 294.  
(c) Polyb. 4.  
p. 339.

(d) Diod. in  
the Collect.  
of Valf.  
p. 191.

(e) Polyb. 4.  
p. 271. & 285.

S

ship.

Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(i) Or this,  
see Diod. Col.  
lect. Valef.  
p. 278.  
(g) Polyb. 4.  
p. 181.

The sociable  
War.  
(h) Polyb. 4.  
p. 295. & 298.

(i) Polyb. 4.  
p. 305.

Great Rise  
even, where  
the 140  
Olymp. en-  
tring.

(a) In the  
end of the  
second book,  
&c. p. 271.

(b) Polyb.  
b. 4. p. 338. &c.  
Plut. Arat.

(c) Polyb. 8.  
p. 519. Plut.

(d) Plut. in  
Arat.

(e) Polyb. 8.  
p. 189.

The death of  
Aratus.

(f) Polyb.  
b. 4. p. 297. &  
442.

ship. (f) *Dorimachus* and *Scopas* were chief; to whom when *Aratus* and the *Achaians* had declared in vain, that they should forbear their weapons and wrongs from the borders of the *Peloponnesians*, the matter is brought unto a War, the 139 Olympiad going out, which was the year before Christ 220, of the City built, 534. (g) The first battle between them was fought at *Leptis*, a Town of *Arcadia*, wherein the *Achaians* were overcome. The *Atolians* (a greater boldness being taken thereby) robbed all *Peloponnesus*. Against whom *Philip* is called forth by the common consent of the Companions, into whose number the *Megarians* are received, he proclaimeth a War against them, which was called, A Social, or fellowly War, begun (h) from the first year of the 140 Olympiad, before Christ 220, of the City built 534, when *Aratus* was Prætor of the *Achaians*. In the same first year (i) of the Olympiad, but before Christ 219, the Spring now in the prime, that is, about, or a little before the rising of the seven Stars; at which time the Prætors of the *Achaians* entered into their Office; *Aratus* the younger, the son of *Aratus*, being put into his father's place, *Philip* attempted to fight against the *Atolians*: whilst at the same time *Hannibal* fits himself for the siege of the *Saguntines*; the *Romans* move war against *Demetrius Pharius* Prince of the *Idryians*, *Æmilius* the Consul being chief Commander; who a little after being overcome, betaketh himself unto *Philip*. Then, *Lycurgus* being made King presently after the death of *Cleomenes*, a League being made with the *Atolians*, vexed the *Achaians*. The *Rhodians*, *Prusias* King of the *Bythinia* being joyned to them, contend against the *Byzantines*; because they being compelled to pay tribute to the *Gauls*, they imposed certain customs on Merchants. The *Synopians* defend themselves with a garrison of *Rhodians* against *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, watching an advantage against their City. Those so many beginnings of Wars, (a) *Polybius* observeth to have happened in the same first year of the 140 Olympiad; and he sheweth the cause of them to be, for that then new Princes almost of the whole known world, came to their Kingdoms and Empires.

The Social-War *Philip* ordered unto the third year, having (b) made much use of *Aratus*, whom, when being moved at the reproaches of his Governours, he had somewhat estranged from him; by and by, as soon as indeed he knew what a man he was, he had him in the greater esteem. (c) But the same man again being brought to envy, he took care to kill him by poison, about the year of the City built, 541; the 4th of the 141 Olympiad; (d) a little after the Ships of *Philip* being burnt by the *Romans*, and (e) about the besieging of the *Syracusans*, begun by *Marcellus* in the year of the City 542: wherefore, in the 62 year of his age beginning, *Aratus* dyed, which was the fifth from the end of the Social-War. (f) For in this year of the City 537, the third year of the 140 Olympiad ending, it was finished, peace being made with the *Atolians*: when as a slaughter of the *Romans* be-

ing heard of, *Philip* desired to say into *Italy* to the Lake of *Thrasimene*, and to take part with the *Carthaginians* of victory. (g) Therefore being carried into *Illyricum* with a Navy, he being suddenly beat back through fear of the *Romans*, he left off from his enterprize. Afterward in the year of the City 559, he entered into a League with *Hannibal*; whereby he brake forth into open War with the *Romans*, in the year of the City built 540, in which the Coasts of *Illyricum* being tryed, (a) by *Marcus Valerius* *Levinus*, he being much affrighted, his Ships being drawn away or burnt, he came to *Macedonia* by Land. *Levinus* makes an agreement with the *Atolians* against *Philip*, in the (b) year of the City 542. With these and King *Antalus*, the *Romans* fight against the *Macedonians* and their Companions; whereof the chief were the *Achaians*. (c) *Philopomenus* the Prince of these was famous in that Age; by whom *Machanidas*, a Tyrant of the *Lacedæmonians*, was driven to *Mantinea*, about the year of the City 548; (d) whom *Nabis*, a far more cruel one than him, received. But when things were neglected by the *Romans* in *Greece*, because they were busied in a domestique war with the *Carthaginians*, at length the *Epirotes* coming between, a peace was made between them and *Philip*, and the companions of them both; in the year of the City 549.

(e) Things in *Europe* being appeased, *Philip* bends his mind to possess *Egypt*. A fit opportunity, *Ptolemy* departed this life in the year before Christ 204, of the City 550. *Ptolemy Epiphanes* his son of four years of age being left. Therefore *Philip* entered into counsel with *Antiochus*, of invading his kingdom. But the *Alexandrians*, *Agathocles*, the Protector or guardian, and his sister *Agathoclea* being taken away, sent Embassadors to *Rome*, who granted them safeguard. *Antiochus* in the mean time recovereth *Cœlisyria* and *Phœnicia*. And then *Onias* the High Priest, with very many Jews, flyeth into *Egypt*, where, under *Philometor*, he afterward at *Heliopolis* built a City.

## CHAP. VII.

Of Men excelling in wit, who lived from the 125 Olympiad, to the 143; or from the year of the City built 474, unto 554.

*Chrysippus* the Stoick, the Scholar of *Cleantes*, was in this time famous. *Diogenes* writeth him to have dyed the 143 Olympiad, 73 years of age. So about the beginning of the 124 Olympiad, he came forth into light. *Strato Lampiscenus* of the School of the *Peripateticks*, was chief after *Theophrastus* 18 years, *Diogenes* being witness. Wherefore when he began to teach in the 123 Olympiad, as (a) the same *Diogenes* sheweth, about the end of the 127 Olympiad he dyed, *Lyco* succeeded *Strato*, (b) and held the School 40 years, but he lived 74 years. *Eurydes*, a *Cyrenian*, an author

Anno 441.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(g) Polyb. in  
the same,  
p. 446.

(h) The same,  
b. 7.

(i) Livy, b. 24.

(a) Liv. b. 21.

(b) Liv. 26.

(c) Polyb.  
b. 11. p. 639.

Liv. Decad. 4.  
b. 4. & 5.

(d) Polyb.  
b. 13. p. 674.

& Diod. in  
Coll. Valef.  
p. 285.

(e) Polyb.  
b. 15.

Jerome on  
11 ch. Dan.

Just. b. 30.

(a) Laert. in  
Lyco.

(b) Diog.  
Laert.



Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(c) Diog.

(d) Suidas.

The Life of  
Aratus.  
Livy the Poet.

of a new University, began to teach (c) in the 4th year of the 134 Olymp. and held the School 26 years.

*Erastosthenes*, a man endowed with divers kind of learning, and surnamed [*Beta*,] because he kept the seconds in every kind of Science or knowledg; he was born in the 126 Olymp. and being 80 years old, he ended his life with want; saith *Suidas*.

(d) Amongst Poets, *Callimachus*, a *Cyrenian*, was made famous in Greece, *Ptolemy Philadelphus* reigning.

And also *Aratus*, who flourished under *Antigonus Gonatas*.

But at Rome, *Livius* a Poet, in the year of the City built 514, first taught a Comedy. *Nævius* deceased in the 144 Olymp. as *Jerome* placeth him in the Chronicle of *Eusebius*.

But the following Olympiad *Plautus* dyed, the same being author, in the 554 year of the City.

*Quintus Ennius* was born in the year of the City built 515, he innobled the same Age.

## CHAP. VIII.

The famous Deeds of the Romans against Philip King of the Macedonians, Antiochus of Syria, and Perseus of the Macedonians, in like manner Kings.

(c) Liv. b. 31.  
Flor. 2. ch. 7.  
Plut. in Flam.  
Justin. 30.  
Eur. 4.

The Macedonian War.

(a) Polyb.  
book 16.  
p. 735. Plut. in  
Flaminius.

(b) Polyb.  
book 7.  
p. 702.

(c) Polyb.  
Ecl. 9. Plut.  
in Flam.  
The error of  
Florus.

**T**He (c) second Punick-War being finished, the Macedonian war succeeded with King *Philip*; which being begun almost ten years before, saith *Livy*, was laid down in the third year. Indeed almost thirteen years before, the 540 of the City, *Philip* began to be vexed by *Levinus* the Prætor; but in the year of the City built 549, they returned into agreement. Peace being granted to the *Carthaginians*, the War with *Macedon* was taken up afresh; which was proclaimed in the 554 year of the City. Both the old injuries of *Philip* drove the *Romans* to that thing, and also a new annoyance of their Associates, especially of the *Athenians*, who being much wasted by the King, had fled together to the *Romans*.

(a) *Philip* made a beginning of waging War from the siege of the *Abydeni*; whom he cast into that despair, that after the manner of the *Saguntines* they rushed on death. At length, in the fourth year after it was restored, of the City 557, it was ended by *Titus Quintius Flaminius*, *Philip* being overcome at *Cynoscephala* in *Thessaly*. (b) *Polybius* relateth, and out of him *Plutarch*, That eight thousand of the *Macedonians* were slain, five thousand taken. The price of the victory, was the liberty of Greece; the which being declared by the voyce of the publisher at a solemn pastime of the (c) *Isthmians*; so great an out-cry delivered it self with applause, that *Crowes* fell down on the earth, flying over the race: *Florus*, not through a light error, affirmeth that to be done at the *Nemean* or *Achaian* games, being five years sports. For neither was the game of the *Nemean*s, five yearly; and *Polybius* and *Plutarch*

*Archædo* affirm this to have happened in the *Isthmians*. (d) Moreover, in the *Nemean*s, freedom was pronounced to the *Greeks* called *Argæi*, alone.

(e) *Lucius* the brother of *Titus* at the same time received the *Acarnans*, being discouraged or overcome unto an yielding or surrender.

(f) After that, *Titus Quintius* moved War against *Nabis*, a Tyrant of the *Lacedemonians*: but *Argos* being freed, he granted him peace. So of the *Grecian* Cities, *Sparta* alone is left in bondage; the which in the 562 year of the City built, *Philopomenen*, *Nabis* being killed by him, joyned unto the fellowship of the *Achaïans*.

A few years after the *Macedonian* War, war was waged with King *Antiochus*; who, (g) *Syria* being recovered, and *Scopas* the Captain of *Ptolemæus* Epiphanes being overthrown, he had now began to be fearful unto the *Romans*. Against whom *Hannibal* chiefly stirred him up, (h) who fearing the same enemies, had fled to him in the year of the City built 559. The Embassadors also of the *Ætolians*, who were now estranged from the fellowship of the *Romans*, brought no small moment thereto. (i) *Antiochus* being by these things enforced, a peace being composed with *Ptolemy*, unto whom he gave *Cleopatra* his daughter in marriage, and in the name of a dowry he granted him *Cælofryia* and *Judea*. He brought war on the *Romans*; the which being undertaken in the 562 year of the City built, held full three years. For in the year of the City 564, *Lucius Cornelius Scipio* being Consul, coming into *Asia* with *Publius Cornelius Africanus* his brother, an Embassadour, by this man's counsel chiefly, he overcame *Antiochus*. (a) *Livy* relateth, That fifty thousand footmen, four thousand horsemen were slain in one battel. Peace being granted to *Antiochus*, with other conditions, as also that, that he should yield up all Countreys which were on this side the Mountain *Taurus*.

(b) *Antiochus* being overcome, straightway the *Ætolians* are tamed by *Fulvius* the Consul, in the year of the City built, 565; and in the same year the *Gallo-Greeks* were subdued by *Cneius Marcius*, another Consul.

In the 149 Olympiad, three notable Commanders dyed, *Publius Scipio*, *Hannibal*, and *Philopomenes*. *Pullius*, a day being set by the (c) *Petilian* Tribunes, of taking the money from *Antiochus* for peace granted, he sent back *Literius* into *Campania*. His brother *Lucius* was condemned of robbing the common Treasury. But (d) *Publius* in that Julian year dyed, which began the 570 of the City; in which year, *Publius Claudius*, *Lucius Porcius*, were Consuls before the Censureship of *Marcus Cato*, which, the same being Consuls, he performed. *Hannibal* a year or two after, (e) for *Virri*ters do differ, being demanded of *Prusias* King of *Bythinia* for death, ended his life with poyson. (f) In the year of the City 574, *Philopomenen*, Captain of the *Achaïans*, being taken by the *Macedonians*, was slain; when indeed he had compelled the *Lacedemonians*

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Per. od.  
unto 4713.

(d) Livie,  
b. 34.  
(e) Liv. 33.

(f) Liv. 36.  
Polyb. Ecl.  
22. Plut. in  
Philop.

The War with  
Antiochus.  
(g) Polyb.  
book 16.

(h) Liv. b. 33.  
at the end.  
Corn. Nep.  
in Hann.

(i) Liv. 34.  
&c. Flor. 2.  
ch. 8. Appian.  
Syr. Just. 31.  
Furr. 4.  
Orof. 4. ch. 10.

(a) Livy,  
book 37.

(b) Livy,  
b. 38.  
Flor. 2. ch. 9.

The death of  
P. Scipio, Han-  
nibal, and  
Philopomen.  
(c) Livy in the  
same place.

(d) Livy about  
the end of  
b. 39.

(e) Livy in  
the same  
Corn. Nep.  
in Hannib.  
(f) Livy in  
the same  
P. ut.



Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(1.) Polyb.  
Coll. Legat.  
52. & 53.

(h) Livy b. 4.  
Polyb. Eccl.  
50.

(i) Liv. b. 45.

Perseus the  
last King of  
the Macedo-  
nians.

(a) Livy b. 44.  
Velleius. 1.  
Plut. in Emil.  
Just. b. 33.  
Flor. 1. c. 12.  
Evar. b. 4.

(b) Jul. Cir.  
4646.

demonians, falling off from the fellowship of the *Achaïans*, being naked of Walls and Laws, to endure the yoke.

(g) The death of this man, *Lycortas* the Prætor of the *Achaïans* revenged; and restored the *Achaïans* and *Lacedæmonians* into the council or agreement of the *Achaïans*. For both, but these especially, very hardly obeyed, trusting in the power of the *Romans*, who suffered the fellowship of the *Achaïans* to grow together against their will.

In the mean while, *Philip*, being rather beaten back by the *Romans* in the former fight, than overcome, wholly employed himself about the provision of a new War; who (h) seeing he had two sons, *Perseus* the elder, and *Demetrius*, and this man very acceptable to the *Romans*, with whom he had lived some years, as a pledge in War, a grudge arising between them both, he put to death *Demetrius*, being suspected through the friendship of the *Romans*, and his brother's reproaches, the 150 Olympiad entering, in the year of the City built 574.

(i) Therefore in the year following, which is reckoned the second of the 150 Olympiad, of the World 3802, of the City built 575, *Perseus* the last King of the *Macedonians* began, the forty first from *Caranus*, who first reigned there. This King being heir of his father's hatred against the *Romans*, and counsel, waged war against them; which in the 4th year ended as well in the slaughter and slavery of him, as of the whole *Macedonian* Empire, in the first year of the 153 Olympiad, of the City built 586. The (a) General of the *Romans* in that battle, was the Consul *Æmilius Paulus*, wherein were slain in battel of the *Macedonians* to the number of twenty thousand, taken eleven thousand. No more than an hundred of the *Romans* fell. That famous victory and fall of the *Macedonian* Kingdom, was in the decrease of the Moon; the which the day before that day, wherein they contended, happened on that night, which came between the 4 and 5. of the *Roman* September, which in the Julian Calendar was the middle between the 21 and 22 of June. That cannot agree on another year, than what was 168 (b) before the Christian account of the World 3816. Therefore in this very year the *Macedonian* Empire was put under by the *Romans*, in the 11th year of King *Perseus*; For so many *Livies* assigneth; *Eusebius* one less, whom also before, we have followed; now, we prefer *Livie* before him.

An addition to the *Romans* of the *Macedonian* War and victory, was *Gentius* King of the *Illyrians*; who being led into the fellowship of danger by *Perseus* through deceit, yielded matter unto *Lucius Anicius* the Prætor, of the *Illyrican* triumph, whom in the same year he carried away: concerning which *Perseus* of the *Macedonians*, *Æmilius* writes, Each King going before the Chariot of his conquerour, in the year of the City 587; *Macedonia* and *Illyricum* departed into the form of a Province.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

Of the Jewish Affairs; and miseries, which they suffered under Antiochus Epiphanes, and of the dispatches of Epiphanes into Egypt, and of the Temple of Jerusalem defiled by that King.

While *Europe* and *Asia* is shaken through *Roman* weapons, also foreign and likewise domestic storms were hurful to *Judea*. (d) *Antiochus* the Great, when he would rob or spoyle the Temple of *Jupiter Belus* among the *Elymeans* in *Susiana*, he was by the *Barbarians* slain, as *Strabo* telleth, in the second of the 148 Olympiad, of the Greeks 126. *Seleucus Philopator* his son succeeded him. Who reigning, *Onias* the third of that name held the high-Priesthood, a holy man, who (a) freed *Heliodorus* one of the Senators of *Seleucus*, being sent to rob the Treasury of the Temple, and scourged by Angels, and half dead, by his prayers.

(b) *Seleucus* having finished twelve years of his reign, and being slain by the lying in wait of *Heliodorus*, as *Asprian* writeth, *Antiochus Epiphanes* was put in his place, in the (c) year of the Greeks 137, which is the first of the 151 Olympiad, of the City of *Rome* 578, before Christ 176, as is gathered by a sure account of the Grecian years.

By that King, all holy and profane things at *Jerusalem*, and throughout all *Judea* were trodden and trampled under foot. His first fury set upon the Priesthood of the Nation; *Onias*, a man most worthy to be praised, (as I have said already) was high-Priest. (e) *Jason* his brother, a destructive and wicked man, bought the high-priesthood of *Antiochus* with a great summe of money, as appeareth, about the very beginning of his reign, who brought in Heathenish customes to *Jerusalem*. *Onias* departed to *Antiochia*.

About the same time *Ptolemy Philometor*, the son of *Ptolemy Philopator*, and *Cleopatra* the sister of *Antiochus* reigned at *Alexandria*; whose beginning fell into the year before Christ 181, of the City built 573, the 4th year of the 150 Olympiad.

(f) *Ptolemy Euergetes* was brother to this man, *Cleopatra* sister, all of a weak age. For that cause, things were ordered by Tutors, *Eulais* their nourisher, an *Eunuch*, and *Lexus*; who daring to require *Cæloxyria*, which *Antiochus* held, being recovered by his father, they stirred him up against them, otherwise watching an advantage against *Egypt*; the governing of which Kingdom, by a defenders right, he challenged to himself, under the name of nearness of kin. For he both sent *Apollonius* his Captain, for that thing's sake into *Egypt*, and by the chief men of the Kingdom, as (g) the writing saith, was frustrated of his desire. But then going unto *Jerusalem*, he is with the greatest honour received of *Jason*, and thence went away into *Phœnicia* to build a Navy, which temeth to have fallen out in the 139 year of the Greeks, of the City 580.

(d) Strabo, book 16.  
Just. b. 32.  
See 10. b. of 1 doct. oftimes, ch. 45.

*Heliodorus* scourged.

(b) App. in Syr.

(c) 1 Mach. 1. 11.

(e) 1 b. Mac. ch. 4.

(f) Jerome on Dan. 11. Luc. 42.

By The War of *Antiochus* with *Philometor*.

(g) 2 Mac. 4. 21.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(a) Polyb. in  
Embas. 71, &  
72.  
(b) Jerome on  
Daniel.  
(c) Diod. in  
Collect. Val-  
lef, p. 330.

(d) Liv. 44.

(e) Euseb.  
Chr. in the  
former part,  
p. 54.

(f) Liv. 44.

(g) Liv. 45.

(h) 1 Mach.  
13.

(a) Regiū.  
Capit.

(b) Liv. 42.

580. While therefore both Kings with great provision on both sides prepare War, they (a) sent Embassadors to Rome, by the which they accused one another: Neither in the mean time, the Egyptians delaying, bended (b) Antiochus sloathfully toward Egypt. There, between Pelusium, and the Mountain Caius, a fight is begun, (c) wherein the Egyptians being overcome, might have been blotted out by killing, unless Antiochus himself riding between the ranks of his Souldiers, had commanded them to spare the slaughter, and to take them alive: by which humanity he profited more than by arms. For presently he obtained Pelusium, and afterward all Egypt.

(d) Philometor, this slaughter being received, being despised of his Subjects, and being driven out of Alexandria by his younger brother Euergetes, was received by Antiochus, who through an honest shew of reducing him unto the King, brought war on the Alexandrians; by whom Euergetes, who also was called Physcon, was declared King. The (e) Greek Collections of George Monk, which Scaliger fathers upon Eusebius, say, Ptolemy Philometor to have reigned onely eleven years, and then to be overcome by Antiochus, and to be driven from his Kingdom. But (f) Livy, to whom we rather give credit, sheweth Philometor not to be cast out by Antiochus, but by his younger brother: but Antiochus, which I said but now, to have made war with the younger brother, through pretence of bringing back the elder; and being conquerour at Pelusium in a Sea-fight, to have besieged Alexandria. Therefore Ptolemy and Cleopatra sent Embassadors to the Senate: Wherewith the Patriots being moved, they commanded out of hand Caius Popilius, with two others, to go to Alexandria, to make the Kings friends between themselves. (g) Antiochus, the walls of Alexandria being in vain attempted, Philometor being left at Memphis, and other places in Egypt delivered unto him, left the strong garrison of Pelusium, and from thence went away into Syria, and came to Jerusalem. There he robbed the Temple, made a slaughter, and brought great mourning on the Jews. The (h) Scripture witnesseth this to have fell out, in the 143 year of the Greeks, in these words; And Antiochus turned, after he smote Egypt, in the hundredth and forty third year, and came up to Israel. Which year of the Greeks runneth into the five hundredth eighty fourth year of the City built, of the hundred and fifty second Olympiad, the third, and it had (a) Aulus Mancinus, and Aulus Attilius Serranus, Consuls. But the year following, of the City 585, is noted to be when Quintus Marcus Philippus II. and Cneius Servius Capio were Consuls, which was the 144 year of the Greeks; that their error may be manifest, who ascribe that battel of Antiochus with the Egyptians, between Casum and Pelusium, to Philip II. and Capio Consuls, against the credit of the writing. Moreover, the beginning of this War, which was moved by the Egyptians for Cælo Syria, was in the year of the City 582, Popilius Consul, and Publius Elius being Consuls, (b) as Livy sheweth, who sheweth plainly in the year fol-

lowing.

lowing, Publius Licinius Crassus and Caius Cassius Consuls, this war to have been already enforced.

(c) A little before that, Antiochus desired Egypt, that is, after three years space from the High Priesthood being gotten, and so in the year of the Greeks 142, Jason the High Priest sent Menelaus unto Antiochus with monies. But he bought the High Priesthood of the King, by an agreement of three hundred talents more than Jason payed. But when he performed not his promise, he was removed from the Priesthood, his brother Lyfimachus being his successor, or rather given for a Vicar to him. For the Greek writings say, Menelaus to have left his brother Lyfimachus successor of the Priesthood. (d) But the Latine say, Menelaus to be removed from the Priesthood. Neither that to be done against his will, the following History doth demonstrate. For a little after he killed Onias a most holy man, and the lawfull High Priest, who had shut himself up in the Sanctuary of Apollo, being drawn out by deceit through the endeavour of Andronicus; whose death Antiochus bewailing, condemned Andronicus to lose his head. And then Menelaus returning to Jerusalem, moved Lyfimachus to rob the holy treasury. But in the very wicked act, Lyfimachus was oppressed and grieved. Menelaus being complained of to the King, through favour and corruption got the better, his accusers being slain. Concerning these two brethren, it is not a vain question, whether or no they were of the stock of Aaron, in which power alone, the right of the Priesthood was, or of another Tribe, especially of Benjamin; because the (a) writing nameth Menelaus to be the Brother of Simon; Moreover the same is (b) witness, Simon to have been of the Tribe of Benjamin. Josephus maketh them both the brothers of Onias and Jason, the which also we embrace, but the word of [brother] may be referred to some affinity.

In the mean time, Philometor fearing the lying in wait or treachery of Antiochus, confirmeth a peace with his brother and sister, at which their agreement, Antiochus being offended, prepareth war against them both in the 144 year of the Greeks. The Ptolomies send three Ambassadors to Rome, for the obtaining of help. These setting forward from Rome, came to Alexandria in the Moneth of March, as thou mayest gather (d) out of Livy (which then happened about our King Perseus; the which that decrease of the Moon doth shew, which before the Macedonian battel happened in the Moneth September, which then possessed June, as we have minded in the 8th Chapter) but a little or just after the victory of the Romans over King Perseus, that is, after the Summer of the year ten to Christ, 168. of the City 586, of the Greeks 145. But there they beat back Antiochus, busily employing himself in the siege of the City, and swelling with a Sea victory gotten at Cyprus, with their authority alone. For (e) Pompeius, one of the Ambassadors, delivered a Table to him, stretching forth his right hand, containing the decree of the Senate: which being read

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(c) Mach. 4.

23.  
Wicked High  
Priests of the  
Jews.

(d) In the  
same place  
v. 9.

Holy Onias  
is killed.

(a) 2 Mach.

4. 25.

(b) 2 Mach.

3. 4.

Joseph. b. 11.

ch. 8.

See 10. of  
Doct. of times

ch. 50.

(d) Book 45.

(e) Polib.

Ed. 92.

Liv. 45. Valer.

Max. b. 6.

ch. 4. Just. b.

35. Vell. 1.

Pomilius Am-

bassador af-

frights Anti-

chus.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

read thorow, when *Antiochus* had said, he would consider, his friends being brought together, what should be done by them; the Ambassadour drew a line about with a rod which he held, and commanded him, before that he went off that Circle to give an answer, which he might carry back to the Senate. With which boldness of speech the King being affrighted, answered that he would be in the power of the Senate. Thus by the word and power, or Authority, of one Ambassadour, the land and Sea-armies of *Antiochus*, were driven away from *Ægypt*.

*Antiochus* being deceived of this hope of possessing anothers right or title, and being mad with fury came unto *Jerusalem*, especially (t) having heard, that *Jason* (a false report being spread abroad of his death) had moved arms against *Athenaeus*, and had taken the City. For that thing he being angry with the Jews, by a promiscuous slaughter, and burning flame, *Jerusalem* being wasted, (.) he defiled the Temple; and filled all places with Idols, and abominable devotions, after two years from the former comming, on the fifteenth day of *Chisleu*, which fell into *November*, (i) Moreover he forced divers Citizens with cursed punishments, to renounce with an oath their Country-Religion. He being returned to *Antiochia*, delivered *Eleazer*, (a) and seven brethren, with their mother, because they refused to eat of Swine-flesh, against the command of God; to be sundry wayes tormented to death.

(p) The profaning of the Temple.

(c) Mach. 1. 30. & 57.  
Joseph. b. 12. ch. 1.

(a) 2 Mach. ch. 6. & 7.

## CHAP. X.

Of the affairs of the Jews, from the profaning of the Temple, unto the death of Simon; where, of Judas Macchabeus, and the Kings of Syria.

(b) 1 Mach. 2. feb. b. 10. of the D. S. of times, 50.

*Antiochus* wickedly going on to the destruction of the Jewish Nation, and holy things, (b) *Mattathias* of the stock of *Jacob* High Priest, one of the Kings guard being killed, who forced the people to prophane customs, runs away out of the Town *Modin*, and a company of Jews being gathered together, he despised the kings threatnings. He dying in the year of the *Greeks* 146, o. the City built 587. He encouraged five sons which he had, most valiant men, to defend their liberty. The chief of these were, *Judas* surnamed *Machabæus*, *Jonathas* and *Simon*, who one by one were chief among the people.

*Judas Machabæus*.

(c) 1 Mach. 3. &c.

(c) The first *Judas Machabæus*, some prosperous battels being made with the Captains of *Antiochus*, he going into *Persia*, purged again the Temple, and restored divine worship, which had been hindered for three years; that happened in the hundred fourth eighth year of the *Greeks*, the 25th of *Chisleu*, which runneth into *November*.

(d) In

(d) In the mean time, *Antiochus*, while he imiteth the example of his father's sacrilege, in robbing the Temple of *Diana*, which was in *Ælymais*, by the concourse of the Towns-men he being cast out, went away into *Babylon*. But in the journey, a falling off of the Jews being heard of; being mad with grief and anger, he fell into a grievous disease, and horrible pains of his bowells, and his body being consumed with worms, requiring pardon of his wickedness from God in vain, he died a wretched death (e) in the year of the *Greeks* 149, of the City built 590. when he had reigned eleven whole years.

*Lyfias* the Oratour being diligent about it, his son *Antiochus Eupator* succeeded him. Who to bring help to his friends, who were besieged in a Tower by *Judas*, he led an Army to *Jerusalem*, and besieged it, the year of Sabbaths or Rest running on; of the (a) *Greeks*, 150; before Christ, 163. Lastly, peace being made with the Jews, he being taken within the City, contrary to promise, their walls being overturned, goeth to *Antiochia*; when as now *Judas* was carried up by the consent of the people unto the High Priests Office.

(b) For *Josephus* and *Eusebius* relate, that he was in that office three years space. By this account, about the 149 year of the *Greeks*, in which *Antiochus* dyed, from the Captain of the people he was made High Priest.

(c) Two years after, of the *Greeks* 151, *Demetrius Soter* the son of *Seleucus*, who was the brother of *Epiphanes Antiochus*, in times past given by his father a pledge to the *Romans* for *Antiochus*, when as *Epiphanes* being dead, he required himself to be let go in vain, he ran away privily out of the City into *Syria*, and *Antiochus Eupator*, and *Lyfias*, by his command being killed, he began to reign being twenty and three years old, as (d) *Polybius* writeth, and *Appian*. To this man (e) *Alcimus*, coming of a Priestly stock, a despotic man, obtained the High Priest-hood. But *Judas* most sharply resisted him, who also, the Kings Army being scattered, he slew his Captain *Nicanor*, the 151 of the *Greeks* going out, on the thirteenth day of the Moneth *Adar*, which falls into the year before Christ 161. (g) About these times, Ambassadours being sent to *Rome*, he entered a league, and into fellowship with the *Romans*: At length in the year of the *Greeks* 152, when *Demetrius* had sent *Bacchides* and *Alcinus*, with 20000 footmen, and 2000. Horsemen against the Jews, (h) *Judas* being forsaken by his Souldiers, guarded no more then with eight hundred, he was bold to begin, or commit himself to battell; The which when he had undergone a whole day, he died a glorious death. A man second to none in Godlikeness and warlike valour: *Jonathas* his brother succeeded him, who was chief about eighteen years. But *Alcimus* while he demolished the work of the Temple, a disease being inflicted on him from God, he perished in the hundred fifty third year of the *Greeks*.

Moreover *Demetrius*, that he might make the *Romans* his friends,

T 2

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(a) 1 Mach. 6. & b. 3. ch. 9.  
The death of *Antiochus*.

(e) In the same place, v. 6.  
*Antiochus Eupator*.

(a) 1 Mach. 6. v. 20. & 53.

(b) Joseph. b. 12. ch. 17.

*Demetrius Soter*.  
(c) 1 Mach. ch. 7. Polyb. Eccl. b. 1. 4.

(d) Polyb. Eccl. 107.  
App. Syr. 7. v. 49. & 2 Mac. 14.

(g) 1 Mac. 8.

(h) 1 Mac. 9.  
The death of *Judas*.

(i) B. 10. Doct. times, ch. 50.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

a) Polyb. Ecl.  
125. & foll.

b) Polyb. Ecl.  
125. App. Syr.

c) 1 Mac. 10.  
Just. 35.  
Joseph.  
Jonathan the  
High Priest.

d) 1 Mac. 10.  
67. & ch. 11.  
Demetrius Ni-  
canor.  
The Ptolomies  
Kings.

e) In the same  
v. 19. Epir.  
Liv. 52.

(f) The Col-  
lect. Euseb. 62.  
p. 54. Poib.  
Ecclo. 113.  
117.

(g) Just. 38.

he sent *Leptines* and *Isocrates* a Grammarian bound, of whom the one had killed *Cneius Octavius*, an Ambassadour come from Rome, unto *Antiochus Eupator*, in the 150 year of the *Greeks*, he had proved the fact, in the 152 year of the *Greeks*, as is gathered out of *Appian* and (a) *Polybius*. He expelled *Ariathes* King of *Cappadocia* his Kingdome, being hired by an agreement of a thousand Talents from his brother *Olophernes*, who going to Rome the (b) Senate decreed that both brethren should reign together. Moreover three Kings being stirred up against him, *Ptolomey of Egypt*, *Attalus of Asia*, and, whom I have named, *Ariathes* of *Cappadocia*; *Prompalus*, a certain young man of a desperate fortune, being by the same, suborned or set forth in honour, who should report himself to be begotten by *Antiochus*, he is thrust down from the Kingdome. (c) For he naming himself *Alexander*, by surname *Balam*, in the 160 year of the *Greeks*, raised arms against *Demetrius*, and after two years space took away from him his Kingdome and life, *Jonathan* the High Priest of the Jews, being reconciled unto him, straightway he married *Cleopatra* the daughter of *Ptolomey Philometor*, a woman born for the destruction of *Syria*, and the family of *Seleucus*. So he being carried up to the highest power beyond hope and desert, while he lived a destructive life in his Pallace in riot, and sloath; (d) *Demetrius Nicanor*, the son of *Demetrius Soter*, coming out of *Crete* in the 165 year of the *Greeks*, sets upon him. Also *Ptolomey Philometor* sailing into *Syria*, and being received with great solemnity by his son in law, by a notable treachery he took from him the Kingdome, with his daughter *Cleopatra*, whom he appointed to *Demetrius*. From thence joyning in battel with *Alexander*, he forced him to fly into *Arabia*: where (e) being beheaded, he also received punishment for the old injury against *Demetrius Soter*, in the 167 year of the *Greeks*, of the City of Rome 608. Three dayes after, *Philometor* died of a wound, his brother *Euergetes* being left his succeder: with whom there had been a grudge. For (f) when both had lived at *Alexandria* six years, from the 12 of *Philometor* to the 17th, the kingdome being afterward divided, in the 18th year of *Philometor*, 150 of the *Greeks*, *Lybia* and *Cyrenia* fell by lot to *Euergetes*, with which he being least of all contented, made his complaints to the Senate of Rome; who decreed *Cyprus* to be given unto him, as *Polybius* is Author, and *Eusebius* in his Chronicle. *Philometor* being dead (g) *Euergetes* being sent for from *Cyrene*, reigned at *Alexandria*, deformed in his countenance, and the stuffing of his belly more like a beast than a man, who in the very day of Marriage, which he had joynd with *Cleopatra* his sister, and sometime the wife of his Brother, he killed a little one the son of them both, in the very mothers arms or embracing. Neither afterwards held he the Kingdome with lesse cruelty. So that his Citizens being embittered, he was compelled to fly into *Cyprus*, with the daughter of his, and the same sister of *Philometor*, the which, her mother being divorced, he had joynd to himself, being first ravished in wedlock.

wedlock. There he having heard, that his images were cast down by the *Alexandrians*, he sent a son which he had begotten of *Cleopatra*, to her, divided in pieces.

(d) *Demetrius* being in the mean while vexed with sedition by the *Antiochians*, he restrained them by a Garrison of Jewish Soldiers. But when he was hated of all, *Diodotus* surnamed *Tryphon*, who had bin a guard-man of *Alexander Balam*, appointed *Antiochus* his son, who was brought up with *Emalibuel*, or *Malchus* King of *Arabians*, King; and endeavoured to get *Jonathan* as on his side, in the year of the *Greeks* 168; at which time also *Jonathan* renewed fellowship with the *Romans* and *Spartans*. In the following year (b) *Tryphon*, loving tyranny, that there might not be any delay, through *Jonathan*, unto his counsels, him being taken by lying in wait, he slew, in whose place *Simon* his brother, was made Captain of the people and chief Priest. Who entering into a League with *Demetrius*, he got liberty from him, (c) in the 170 year of the *Greeks*, of the City 611, from which time the years of *Simon's* chief Priesthood, began to be reckoned. The same man also vanquished *Gaza*, and the Tower of *Jerusalem*, the which also he fortified, and afterwards dwelt there.

*Demetrius*, that he might get help against *Tryphon*, went into *Media*, as saith the writing; but (d) *Justine* witnesseth him to have gone thither to besiege the *Parthians*; by whom he was taken and used kindly: so that *Phraates* the King gave him his daughter *Rhodoganes* in marriage.

*Demetrius* being taken, *Tryphon* slew *Antiochus* a pupil, or not under his father's power, and took the Crown, which he held untill about the third year, (e) *Josephus* being author; although *Appian* saith, he reigned one. Whence there is a conjecture, that, in the 1 Mac. ch. 14. the Expedition of *Demetrius* after the death of *Antiochus* the brother of *Alexander*, in that, the Writer not to have observed the order of time, but of declaring.

While these things are done, (a) *Antiochus Sidetes* the son of *Demetrius Soter*, the brother of *Nicator*, came into *Syria*, and being sent for by *Cleopatra*, the Wife of his brother married her, and killed *Tryphon* in the 174 year of the *Greeks*. He afterwards (b) waged War with *Simon* by *Cendebaus* his Captain, who was overcome by *Joannes* the son of *Simon*.

The treachery of *Ptolemy* (he was the son in law of *Simon*) founded the prosperous affairs of the Jews, who slew his father-in-law with two sons, being received to a Feast. But *Joannes*, surnamed *Hircanus*, the son of the same *Simon*, escaped; who after that was chief among the Jews 31 years. (c) That slaughter happened on 177 year of the *Greeks*, in the eleventh month *Schebat*; which was the year of rest, begun in the year of the World 3848, from the account of the City 618, as the *Seleucides* had wont to reckon. But the Jews, from the month *Nisan*, from the which *Schebat* is numbred, the eleventh. And hitherto the holy History proceedeth.

*Antiochus*

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

(a) 1 Mac. 1.  
Joseph. b. 13.  
ch. 9.

(b) 2 Mac. 12.  
Simon High  
Priest.

(c) 1 Mac. 13.  
41. Sec 17 b.  
doctr. times,  
ch. 52.

(d) Just. b. 34.  
& 38.  
App. Syr.

*Demetrius* taken by the  
*Parthians*.  
(e) Joseph.  
b. 12. ch. 13.

(a) Just. 56.  
Joseph. in the  
same place.

(b) 1 Mac.  
16.

*Simon* high  
Priest slain.

(c) 1 Mac.  
16. 14.  
Joseph. b. 1.  
ch. 15.  
Euseb. 8.  
of Prep.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

(c) Joseph.  
b. 13. ch. 16.

*Antiochus Sidetes*, in the fourth year of his reign, (saith (c) Josephus, in the fourth of *Hircanus*, encompassed *Jerusalem* with a most straight siege, to wit, in the year of the Greeks 178, before Christ 135, and at the Feast of Tabernacles, seven dayes truce being granted; he so anger'd *Hircanus*, that he requested peace of him on equal terms.

### CHAP. XI.

*The famous Deeds or Affairs of the Romans, and divers Wars, the Achaick, Punick, 3 Macedonick, 3 Numantine, the slavish War.*

**T**HE *Macedonians*, after *Antiochus* the Great, being by the other War tamed, and their Kingdom reduced into the form of a Province, none afterwards was ashamed to serve the *Romans*. Therefore people and kings, emulating one another, gave themselves over unto the obedience of those, and from those they took the Ulpires or judgments of peace and war between themselves. (f) Of Kings, two, before others, endeavoured to allure their favour, *Eumenes* of *Asia*, and *Prusias* of *Bythinia*, who was (g) surnamed [venator] or hunter, one whereof being suspected of hidden favour toward *Perseus*, that he might purge himself, he sent his brother *Attalus* to *Rome*; the which his brother shewing that he had remained faithful, was most acceptable unto the Senate; who lest he should ask the kingdome privately for himself, he was affrighted from it by *Stratius* a Physician, whom *Eumenes* had given to him a companion in that counsel. That, *Livy* sheweth, was done in the 587 year of the City.

(a) *Prusias*, who being joyned in affinity with *Perseus*, had nourished or taken neither part, he coming to *Rome* with his son *Nicomedes*, after a servile manner he flattered the Senators, so that he called them, in saluting them, gods, that were preservers from danger, and named himself their bondman made free. The same King departing from *Rome*, he left his son to be brought up, in the same year of the City.

But *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus* being dead, about the year of the City 596. For he reigned full fourty years, seeing he had left a son, *Eumenes* as yet of a weak age; the Kingdome procured *Attalus* his brother a guardian for him 21 years. (b) With whom the year following, when *Prusias* waged war; which was in the year of the City built 601, by the command of the *Romans* it was appeased.

The *Rhodians* very greatly feared the anger of the free people of *Rome*, and truly they had deserved it. (c) For they had been diligent for *Perseus*, and dared proudly, not so much to perswade them to peace, as to command; also they had added threatenings, that they would account them for enemies, by the which it had

had continued, that there could not be a peace made. Therefore *Perseus* being overcome, it wanted but little, but a War should have been decreed against them. The which by the most humble intreaties they had turned away, *Lycias* and *Carias* being taken away from amongst them.

But two people, not with a single damage of their affairs, but with the destruction of their Cities, purged away the hatreds of the *Romans*, the *Achaïans* and *Carthaginians*. The former, many being partly allured into one body of a Common-wealth; partly Cities, being constrained by force, were the most mighty of all *Greece*. The same compelled the *Lacedemonians* against their wills (their Walls and Laws being taken away) into the same society, as we have already above mentioned. With whose complaint the Senate being very much moved. When it had not once interposed between the endeavours of the *Achaïans*, and lest their wealth should be too much, endeavoured to draw them asunder, (a) at length in the year of the City built 606, of the world 3836, it sent Embassadours into *Greece*; who commanded them to rent asunder not onely the *Lacedemonians*, but also *Corinth*, *Argos*, *Heraclea*, and the *Orchomenian Arthadians*, from their body. They uttering these things, *Critolaus* chiefly stirring them up, so great a sedition arose on a sudden, that they killed all strangers, especially the *Lacedemonians*; and they had not spared even the Embassadours themselves, but that their flight had prevented their force. For which causes, a War is proclaimed against them, in the 607 year of the City; and first of all, they are overcome by *Metellus* the Prætor in two battles at *Thermopylus*, and in *Phocia*; in one whereof *Critolaus* was Caprain; in the other *Dæus*; at length in the same year, which was of the City 608, by *Lucius Mummius* Consul, all *Achaia* being brought unto a surrender, *Corinth* it self the head of the Nation, was burnt with fire. Then by the sentence of ten Embassadours, the Council of *Greece* being taken away, and the form of a tribute written down, it was appointed, that a Prætor should be sent every year to declare the law. (b) From which time all *Greece* took the name of *Achaia*, as *Pausanias* is witness.

*Corinth* being on a flame of fire, from the gold, silver and brasse being melted, and mingled one among another, the chance found out that kind of most pretious brasse, which they called *Corinthian*, wonderfully praised by the Ancients. (c) The destruction of that most noble City, *Pliny* that thing elegantly witnessing, happened in the third year of the 158 Olympiad, of the City 608, before Christ 146.

(d) The same year also gave an end to the third *Punick War* in *Africa*, with the fall of *Carthage*. The colour for this War was gotten from King *Masaniissa*, whom the *Carthaginians* had beaten back by arms, invading their borders; and the cause being brought to the *Romans*, by their judgment they had been fined in Land, moreover and in money. But the *Romans* under any pretence had

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Per. od.  
unto 4713.

The Achaick War.

(a) Polyb. Ecl. 142. Paul. Ach. Just. 14. Orof. b. 5. c. 3. Flor. b. 2. c. 16. Velleius, 1. Epi. Liv. 52.

Corinth overthrown.

(b) See Plin. b. 8. Ep. the last, and our notes to the 35 Ep. Jul.

(c) Plin. b. 33. ch. 2.

(d) Flor. b. 2. ch. 45. Epi. Liv. 52. App. Lybian Eutr. 4. Ofor. 4. ch. 23. The third Punick-War, and Carthage overthrown.

(f) Polyb. Ecl. 93. Liv. b. 45. Epi. (g) App. Mith.

(a) Polyb. Ecl. 97. Livy 45. App. on Mith.

(a) Polyb. 5. Ecl. 128, 135. 136. App. Mith. Epi. Liv. 50.

(c) Liv. 44. Polyb. Ecl. 80. & 99.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

had decreed utterly to blot out *Carthage*, especially *Marcus Cato* the Censor urging it, who was wont to adde this, in the Senate, unto all his speeches. Therefore in the year of the City 605, the *Carthaginians* begun to be besieged by two Consuls, *Manilius*, and *Censorinus*, when they had yielded themselves to the *Romans*; which same thing, the *Uticenses* had done, in vain. They being commanded out of hand, their City being beaten down, to seat themselves ten miles from the Sea, being turned into madnesse and despair, they resisted beyond their strength; untill in the 4th year in the same, as I have said, in which *Corinth* was destroyed, by *Publius Cornelius Scipio* Proconsul, who being begotten by *Paulus Emilius*, was adopted for the son of *Scipio Africanus*; *Carthage* was taken, set on fire, and utterly overthrown. About, or a little before the beginning of the War, *Masaniſſa* King of *Numidians*, almost for sixty years (they are the (a) words of *Eutropius*) being a friend of the people of *Rome*, in the year of his life 97 dyed, leaving 44 sons. By whose desire *Scipio* being sent by *Manilius* the Consul, received the last breath of him dying, and divided his kingdom amongst his sons.

(a) Eutrop. 4.

(b) Vell. init.  
b. 2. Flor. 1. 3.  
ch. 17.  
Oros. 1. 5. c. 4.  
Eutrop.  
Livy 52.

The Viriathick War.

(c) See Sigon.  
Fast.  
(d) Cic. in  
Laelius.

The Numantine War.

(e) App. Epit.  
51. of Spain;  
Sec. Flor. 2.  
ch. 18.

(a) Epit. 55.  
Front. b. 3.  
App. Eutr. 4.  
Elin. of Illust.  
men.

(b) About the same time the *Lusitanians* in *Spain* grieve the *Romans* with a foul slaughter; *Viriathus* being Captain; who being suddenly made from a hunter, a robber; from a robber, a Captain and chief Commander, often overcame the Army of the *Romans*. That was memorable among other slaughters, wherein, in the year of the City built 608, as *Appian* writeth, he slew *Vetilius*, the Prætor being taken, his Armies being scattered. *Orosius* witnesseth of the year; but he reports *Vetilius* to have escaped by flight. Neither was he alone overcome by *Viriathus*: but others besides, of which the (c) *Annals* have made mention. Against whom first of all *Caius Lælius* the (d) Prætor, in the year 609, excellently fought. Afterwards *Quintus Fabius Maximus Emilius*, Proconsul, the warlike discipline being renewed, overcame the same man. Then *Quintus Fabius Maximus Servilianus* Consul, the brother of the other, forced, scattered and put him to flight, into *Lusitania*, in the 612th year. But when he being compassed about by *Viriathus*, might have been suddenly taken, to him, much desiring peace, he yielded on equal conditions. But that being lightly regarded, *Quintus Servilius Cæpio* in the year 614, suddenly setting upon *Viriathus*, his Embassadours being corrupted, slew him by deceit, it being a greater disgrace of the people of *Rome*, than worth their labour.

For a much more cruel War rose up in *Spain*. (e) For the *Numantines* when they had received the *Segidenſes*, their Companions, having escaped out of the hands of the *Romans*, being commanded by *Metellus* the Pro-consul, to yield them up in an humble manner, to lay down their arms to him, they refused to do either. Thereupon, although unequal in number and riches, they valiantly resisted the *Romans* some years; (a) The Army of *Marcus Tullius*, Proconsul, being beaten by them in the year of the City 616, and

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

and also in the following year thirty thousand of the *Romans*, their Captain *Manlius* being Consul, were scattered by four thousand *Numantines*; the which disgrace, a more shameful peace followed. But the Senate would not have it confirmed. Therefore in the 618 year of the City built, *Manlius* was given to the *Numantines* by that law, which he himself moved. But the *Numantines* received him not. (b) At length, *Scipio* being Captain, who had rooted out *Carthage*, the *Numantines* were overcome and put to flight; and being besieged within their own City with the utmost despair, they were constrained to dye. So none being left alive, (for all of them killed themselves together) *Numantia* is made equal to the ground in the ninth year after they had fallen off from the *Romans*; which same year is numbred by (c) *Eutropius* the fourteenth from *Carthage* being overthrown; but of the City built 621. So (d) *Florus* is to be interpreted, who saith, *Numantia* without a Wall, without Towers, situated by the River *Durius* on a little hill, meanly high, with four thousand *Spaniards*, to have alone withstood an Army of 40000 for 14 years; which cannot be understood of *Numantia* alone; but so, as that the War of *Viriathus* with the *Romans* must be comprehended together with it.

(b) Epit. 59.  
App. Sec.  
Numantia  
overthrown.

(c) Eutrop. 4.

(d) Flor. b. 2.  
ch. 10.

The *Achaïans* and *Carthaginians* had not yielded unto the *Roman* Generals, when (e) *Macedonia* was the third time by them ramed; the which *Andristus* a certain man of the lowest condition representing himself for *Philip* the son of *Perseus*, had possessed, in the year of the City 605. Who in the year 606 was overcome by *Quintus Cæcilius Metellus* the Prætor, 25 thousand of his Army being slain. From thence the surname of *Macedonicus* was put upon *Metellus*.

(e) Flor. b. 2.  
ch. 14. Eut. 4.  
Epit. 49.

The Macedonian War.

While the *Romans* are busied in *Spain*, with the *Spanisb* and *Numantine* War, a Servile or slavish Tumult arose in *Sicily*, in the year, (f) as *Orosius* thinketh, of the City 619. *Fulvius Flaccus*, and *Calpurnius Piso* being Consuls, a certain (g) *Syrian*, *Eunus* by name, a frantic rage being feigned, while he boasts of the Ceremonies of the *Syrian* goddess, he stirred up servants unto liberty and arms, as it were, by the command of the gods, as saith *Florus*. Hence great Armies being gathered, even to seventy thousand, and four *Roman* Prætors being overcome; at last in the fourth year, of the City 622, by *Publius Rupilius* Consul, he was put to flight.

The Servile War.

(f) Oros.  
b. 6. ch. 6.  
(g) Flor. b. 3.  
ch. 10. Epit.  
59. Valer.  
Max. b. 2.

## CHAP. XII.

What Men were accounted famous in the praise of Wit, from the 145 Olympiad, to the 162; or from the year of the City 564, to 622.

**C**æcilius a Comical Poet, *Insulher Ghllus*, and the chamber-fellow of *Ennius*, was accounted famous in the 150 Olympiad, of the City 574, as *Jerome* writeth in his Chronicle.

*Ennius* dyed, being seventy years old, *Cæpio* being Consul, and *Philip* the second time, of the City 585, *Cicero* being author, in his book of old age.

Ten years after, that is, of the City 595, *Terence* the Comical Poet, did his duty to Nature; it is witnessed in his life.

Also *Pacuvius*, and *Accius* were made famous: of whom the one is said by *Jerome* to have flourished about the year of the City 600; the other, 601.

Of Philosophers, three especially adorned that Age, *Diogenes* the Spick, *Carnades* the Academick, and *Critolaus* the Peripatetic, who were sent Embassadours from *Athens* to *Rome*, that they might require the fine of five hundred talents to be forgiven to the City, for the wasting of (b) *Oropus* which it had made, the *Syrrians* condemning them; to whom the judgment of that cause had been granted by the Senate: The time of that embassy is delivered with wonderful disagreement of Authors. *Gellius*, book 17, relateth those to have come to *Rome* under the second *Punic*-war; and maketh *Ennius* later than their coming. Which I think to be false. For *Ennius* dyed, as hath been said, in the year of the City of *Rome* 585. But *Cicero* (2. of Academicks) assigneth that embassy to *Publius Scipio*, and *Marcus Marcellus*, being Consuls, which is the year 585. But *Pausanias* in his *Achaicks*, under the (c) 603 year of the City, sheweth them to have come. For he writeth, *Menalcidas* bearing the Lieutenanthip of the *Achaians*, a little after that embassy, *Oropus* to have been spoyled by the *Athenians*; and not long after, *Metellus* to have led an Army against *Andriscus*.

In the same space of time, *Hipparchus* the Prince of Astronomy lived, whose first observation of the Æquinoctial of Autumn, agreeth with the year of the World 3822, of the City 592, as (a) *Ptolemy* is Author. But the last of the Spring Æquinoctial falls into the year of the World 3856, of the City 626. Wherefore the Lunar or Moon Eclipses, which *Ptolemy* sheweth out of *Hipparchus* in the end of the fourth book, whereof the first runneth into the year of the World 3783, of the City 553, do not seem to be marked with the eyes of *Hipparchus* himself; but to be taken by others. For the space between from this eclipse, unto the last Æquinoctial found out by *Hipparchus*, is of years, 74.

*Attalus* also lived in that Age, not an ignoble Grammarian, nor

(b) Paul. Ach. p. 216.  
Cic. Acad. Gell. b. 7.  
ch. 14. &  
b. 17. ch. 11st.

(c) In the same year causabon thinketh that to have happened, in his Synopsi to Polyb.

(a) Prol. 2.  
See b. 4. of Doct. Times, ch. 26.

nor ignorant of Astronomy, (b) who hath illustrated or made plain *Aratus* with Commentaries.

## CHAP. XIII.

The wars of the Seleucian and Egyptian Kings, and of the Jews, from the year of the World 3854, which was of the City 624, unto the year of the World 3865, of the City 665.

**A**ntiochus *Sidetes* in the ninth and last year of his reign, (for so many he reigned, as *Eusebius* is witness in his Chronicle) led an Army against the *Parthians*, under a pretence of recovering his brother *Demetrius*, as (c) *Appian* sheweth; but *Justine* sheweth a far differing cause. *Joannes Hircanus* went together with him with ayds of Jews. *Phaortes* King of the *Parthians* sends *Demetrius* into *Syria*, to possess the kingdom with a *Parthian* defence; and in the mean time sets upon *Antiochus* at unawares, who being forsaken of his souldiers, was slain, saith *Justine*. *Appian* affirmeth him to be killed with his own hand. But many think him to be that *Antiochus*, of whom mention is made in the (d) Epistle of the Jews at *Jerusalem* unto the *Egyptians*. Where *Antiochus* is said to be slain in the Temple of *Nanea*, when he would have robbed his moneys. It may be, that the Victory being lost, he desiring with the remainder of his army to fly upon that prey, and being shut in, brought death on himself. This thing happened, as is gathered from his beginning, and the space of his reign, in the year of the *Greeks* 183, of the world 3854, about winter, as *Justine* sheweth.

(a) *Hircanus* being a little before dismissed as appeareth, from *Antiochus*, his death being heard of, he vanquisheth some Towns, and among these *Garizim* of the *Samaritanes*, where he overthrew their Temple, built two hundred years before, in the time of *Alexander*.

*Demetrius* the second time enjoying the kingdom of *Syria*, held that four years, untill being hated of all, and overcome by *Alexander Zebinas*, whom *Ptolemy* had sent to the *Syrians* desiring a king, was by his Wife *Cleopatra* slain, bearing it unworthily that he had married *Rhodogunes*, as (b) *Appian* is Author. *Justine* affirmeth, when he went to *Tyre* by the command of the Governour, he was slain going out of the Ship, which happened in the year of the World 3859.

Unto *Demetrius* were born of *Cleopatra* two sons, *Seleucus*, and *Antiochus Grypus*. Unto *Antiochus Sidetes*, by the same, *Antiochus Cyzicenus*. *Seleucus*, because he had taken the Crown without his Mothers bidding, was by her struck throw with a Dart or Arrow, saith (c) *Appian*. *Grypus* married *Gryphina*, others call her *Tryphena*, the daughter of *Ptolemy*, he slew *Alexander*; his mother drinking poyson to him, he compelled her self to drink it, in the fourth

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(b) Hippas. b. 1. to Phaon, of Arat.

(c) App. Syr. Just.

(d) 2 Mach. ch. 1.

*Hircanus* High Priest.  
(a) Joseph. b. 23. ch. 17.

(b) App. Syr. Just. 39.  
See b. 10. of Doct. of times ch. 45.

(c) App. Syr. Just. 39.



Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4723.

(d) Joseph. b.  
13. ch. 21.

(e) Just. 37.

(f) See 10. b.  
of Doct. times,  
ch. 46.

Ptolomey King  
of Cyrenians.  
(a) Just. 39.  
Epit. 70.  
Jul. obl.

year of his reign. For he reigned twelve years, as *Eusebius* writes in his Chronicle. But *Justine* telleth, that he reigned eight years peaceably after the death of his mother, and indeed he added seventeen other years, in which he contended with continuall hatreds with his brother, as (d) *Josephus* sheweth, who writeth that he reigned 29. years.

Moreover *Ptolomey Euergetes* was the father in law of *Grypus*, whose wickednesses, and loose life, we have before sharply touched; and he, (c) his sister *Cleopatra* being reconciled to him, which was a great wonder, at what time he did favour *Antiochus Grypus* against *Alexander Zebina*; dying about the year of the World 367, of the City built 637, as the (f) race of the Kings of the *Egyptians* sheweth; he left the kingdom to his wife *Cleopatra*, the daughter of *Cleopatra*, his sister, and sometimes wife; and to that child of his, which she should choose. His children were 2, *Ptolomey Lathurus*, and *Ptolomey Alexander*; and besides these, a third born of an Harlot, *Ptolomey Apio*, to whom his father granted by will the Kingdom of the *Cyrenians*, (a) *Justine* being Author, who departing this life, about the year of the City built, 657. made the people of *Rome* his heir.

*Cleopatra* was more inclined toward her son *Alexander*: but being compelled by the people to chuse the elder; before she gave him the kingdom, she took away *Cleopatra* a most dear wife and sister to him, and for her she commanded him to marry the younger *Seleucus*. *Cleopatra* married *Antiochus Cyzicenus*, which, *Antiochia* being by *Grypus* taken, by the command of her sister *Gryphina*, the wife of *Grypus*, she is slain in the Temple. Neither much after, *Cyzicenus*, *Gryphina* being likewise slain, celebrated his wives funeral. The death of *Cleopatra* seemeth to have happened in the thirteenth year of *Grypus*, of the City 642, to wit, after those eight peaceable ones, which I have above mentioned out of *Justine*. But of *Gryphina*, the year following.

(b) In *Egypt*, *Cleopatra* the mother, expelled *Ptolomey Lathurus*, and for him appointed *Alexander* king, in the 654 year of the City, the 170 Olymp. entring, as is gathered out of the Chronicle of *Eusebius*, and the race of the *Egyptian* Kings. He being driven out, held *Cyprus*, and warred with *Alexander* king of the *Jews*. But *Cleopatra* persecuting him with an implacable hatred, fled from *Judea*, and at length was killed by her son *Alexander*, in the year of the City 664. Therefore this man being cast out by the *Alexandrians*, after he had reigned ten years, he also in the year of the City, 665. by *Chereas* a Ship-master, or Pilot, is slain. But then *Lathurus* being called back again, he afterwards finished eight years. This is that *Ptolomey*, the eighth from the son of *Lagus*, whom *Pausanias* calls *Philometor*, or lover, or beloved of his Mother, affirming that he was so called by a mock, because his Mother troubled him with more than step-mothers hatred. Which thing he hath put upon some of the writers of the Annals, who have passed over that declaration of *Pausanias*, unto the sixth *Ptolomey Philometor*.

(c) In

(c) In the mean time things chiefly flourished under *Hircanus* the High Priest; when as the power of the *Seleucians* being consumed with father-killing hatreds, and mutual slaughters, by little and little was waxen old or forgotten. Therefore *Hircanus* stretched forth the borders of his power or title, longly and largely. He compelled the *Idumeans*, being by war subdued, to receive Jewish customs, with Circumcision, (a) *Josephus* being witness. Neither yet used he a Crown, or a kingly name, (b) the while his son *Aristobulus* first appointed; who, the High Priest-hood being performed thirty and one years, succeeded his Father, a cursed and wicked man. For he killed both his Mother, and youngest brother, the other three he kept in bonds, in the year of the City 651. his Wife *Salome*, or *Saelina*, made *Alexander* one of the brethren of her Husband, an obtainer of his desire, or partaker of the kingdom, and of his wedlock. Who killed one of his brethren imploying himself about new matters; the other being contented with a private life and rest, he retained. The same man was hated of the *Jews*, and tossed to and fro by their hatreds and factions; whom likewise he cruelly was revenged of. For he slew no lesse than fifty thousand of them in six years. (c) He waged often wars, for these things, with *Ptolomey Lathurus*, and *Demetrius Eucerus* and others, and through the interchangeable course of fortune, his rule being nevertheless enlarged, he drew it out unto twenty and seven years, as *Josephus* Writeth.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4723.

(c) Joseph. b.  
13. ch. 7.  
*Hircanus*.  
(a) Joseph. 13.  
ch. 19.

(b) Joseph. in  
the same  
place.  
The first King  
of the *Jews*,  
after times of  
the *Macchabees*.

(c) Joseph. b.  
3. of Exc. ch.  
3. & 4.

#### CHAP. XIV.

The *Romane* affairs from the year of the City built, 621. to 662. Especially the seditions of the *Gracchians*, the wars of *Marius* with the *Cymbrians*, and *Teutons*: And also the *Jugurthine* war.

THAT I may touch at the *Romane* affairs, which fell into that time; *Attalus* the son of *Eumenes* (his Uncle *Attalus*, who after the death of *Eumenes*, took care of the Kingdom as a Guardian, ending his life) having reigned five years, and dying about the year of the City built 622. as is (d) gathered out of *Strabo*, he appointed the people of *Rome* his heir: the which *Aristonichus*, the son of *Eumenes* by an Harlot, taking grievously, he invadeth *Asia*, and overthroweth the Army. Afterwards by the Consul *Perperna* he was put to flight in the year 624, the remainder of which war, *Marcus Aquilius* Consul, in the year following finished. Which year was lamentable through the death of *Scipio Africanus* and *Numantinus*, who not without suspicion of a lustfull disease given him by his wife, was found dead in the bed, as *Velleius* writeth. *Asia* being made the *Romans*, saith *Justine*, with its riches, it passed over its vices also to *Rome*. In which year, *Attalus* made the people of *Rome* his heir, a cruel sedition arose at *Rome*.

(b) For

(d) *Strabo* b.  
13. Vell. b. 2.  
*Flor.* b. 2.  
ch. 20.  
*Eutr.* 4.  
*Oros.* 5. ch. 10.



Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

The sedition  
of those of  
Gracchus.

(b. L. v. Ep.  
58. Vel. 2.  
Flor. 3. ch.

13. App. 1.  
Civil.

Plut. in Grac.  
(c) The same

Flor. b. 3. ch.  
15.

(d) August. b. 3.  
of the City,  
ch. 24.

(e) The Allo-  
brog.

The Colony  
of Narbo.  
(f) Vel. ch. 1.

(g) Afcen. in  
Corn.  
Tac. of Ger.  
maners.

(i) Caesar 1.  
Committ. 75.

Epit. Liv. 75.  
Flor. l. 3. ch. 3.  
Just. 32.

(a) Epit. 63.  
Orof. b. 3.  
ch. 19.

(b) Plut. Mar.  
Epit. 68.

Orof. 5. ch.  
16. Flor. in  
the place ci-  
ted Eutr. 5.

(b) For *Tiberius Gracchus* the Tribune of the people (a Law for land being made, that none should possess more than fifty Acres of Ground) when he had taken away the office from *Obavius* his companion withstanding him, and moreover would have the money of King *Attalus* among the people, and also ambitiously sought for the Tribuneship on the year following, the Senators being by that thing moved, *Publius Cornelius Nasica* being the Author, in the Capiroll, in which he had betaken himself, was slain.

After the death of *Tiberius*, (c) *Caius* his brother following the same sect, by *Opimius* the Consul, in the year of the City built, 633, he was overcharged, and with him, *Fulvius Flaccus* one of the Councill, straitway *Opimius* exercised a most cruell examination, in the which three thousand men were slain, as (d) *Augustine* sheweth.

The Romans fought first in *France*, with the people beyond the *Alps*, in the year of the City built 629. (e) The beginning was caused by the *Salvians* and *Allobrogians*, whom *Fulvius Flaccus*, the same who after four years, as I have said, was slain with *Caius Gracchus*, tamed in war. But in the year 633, *Fabius* Consul finished the *Allobrogian* War, who overcame *Bituitus* King of the *Averni* in battell, 120000 of his army being slain at *Isara*, the King himself coming to *Rome* to satisfy the Senate, he was committed into custody at *Alba*. Then also *Narborny* in *France*, was made a Province, and a Colony, or Plantation, was brought unto *Narbo*, as (f) *Pelleius* teacheth in the 636 year of the City.

Afterwards the Romans had almost a continual strife with the *French*, by whom they received many and great slaughters. The *Cimbrians* and *Teutonians*, were a terrour above others; who, *France* and *Spain* being compassed, when as they desired *Italy*, and had not by request obtained ground from the Senate, they scattered *Marcus Silanus* the Consul, in the year of the City 645, as appeareth out of (g) *Afcenius*. In like manner in the year following *Scarrus* another Consul is overcome by the *Cimbrians*. (h) *Tacitus* being Author, by the *Tigurine Helvetians* (i) *Lucius Cassius*, Consul in the year of the City 647, in the borders of the *Allobrogians*; which thing is manifest out of *Caesar*. But more memorable than the rest was the calamity of *Quintus Cæpio*, of him who being Consul, *Tolosæ* being robbed among the *Tellusagi*, took away 110000 pound weight of Gold, five Millions in pound-weight of silver, as *Justine* writeth, which was done in the year of the City built, 648. (a) But in the following year, the Proconsul, with *Caius Manilius* Consul, purged away the theft by the slaughter of the *Romane* Army. It is manifest that there was slain of the Romans in that battell, and of their companions, 80 thousand, of slaves and drudges 60000. The command of *Rome* was repealed from *Cæpio*.

(b) At length by *Marius* the fourth time Consul, the *Teutons* and *Ambrones* being almost all killed, 200 thousand being slain, seventy thousand taken, in the year of the City 652. The same Consul

Consul in the year 653, with *Catulus* the Proconsul, he cut down the *Cymbrians* breaking in through *Noricum*, a hundred and twenty thousand being slain, sixty thousand taken.

Unto so many Victories *Marius* heaped up the victory gotten in the war with (c) *Jugurtha*. For in the 643 year of the City, as is gathered out of *Salust*, a war was taken up with *Jugurtha* King of *Numidia*, (d) because he had spoiled *Hiempsal*, and *Adherbal* the sons of *Micipsa*, the Nephews of *Masaniissa*, and his fathers brothers sons, of their Kingdom and life. But when he had vanquished the Romans for some years, rather by Gold than by weapons, first of all being broken by *Metellus* Consul, a commander of the ancient rigour: last of all by *Marius* the Consul, in the year of the City built 647. and in the year following he being Proconsul, beaten down, through the Treason of *Boothus* King of *Mauritania*, unto whom he had fled, he came into the power of the conquerour, whose triumph being honoured, he was killed in prison. Afterwards the frequent and most foul tempests at home interrupted the prosperous course of the *Romane* rule abroad, the beginnings of which sprung from the Tribunes, (e) *Saturninus*, a field law being made, that what land *Caius Marius*, the *Cymbrians* being driven out of *France*, had gotten, should be divided among the people, *Metellus Numidicus* resisting him, he punished with banishment, and at length by *Caius Marius* the sixth time Consul, in the year from the building of *Rome* 654, he was slain. *Metellus* the year following being called back from banishment.

(f) After this man *Lucius Drusus*, a Tribune of the common people, when to recover the ancient honour with the Senate, he would passe over judgments unto them, the which *Caius Gracchus* had communicated with horsemen, he took away the same field-Lawes, and gave hope to his fellows of obtaining the City, the which, when he could not perform, he runs into the hatred of all, and was privily thrust thorow with a Sword, in the year of the City six hundred sixty three.

## CHAP. XV.

The last Affairs of the Seleucians in Syria, and their downfall; and also of the Ptolemies in Egypt.

THE Kingdom of the *Seleucian* Kings in the East through riot and discord, by little and little came to ruine, *Antiochus Grypus* is killed by the lying in wait of *Heracleon*, in the 45 year of his age, of his reign 29, saith (a) *Josephus*, who impureth all that time to his reign, wherein others reigning, he was surviving; because in the mean time, he ruled in some part of *Syria*. For the Chronicle of *Eusebius* assigneth twelve years alone for his reign.

Anno 443.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

The victory of  
*Marius* over  
the *Cymbrians*.

(c) Plut. Mar.

(d) *Salust* of  
the *Jugurthian*  
War.

Plut. Mar. &  
Sylla.

Epit. 63.

Eutr. 4.  
Orof. 5.  
ch. 15.

(e) Epit. 69.

App. 1. of  
the City.

Plut. in Mar.

Orof. 5.  
ch. 17.

(f) Epit. Liv.

71. Flor. 3.  
ch. 27.

App. 3. City.

Orof. b. 5.  
ch. 28.

(a) *Josephus*.  
15. ch. 21.

Anno 443 1.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(b) b. 10. of  
Doctr. of  
Times, ch. 45.  
(c) Joseph. &  
App. Syr.

(d) Just. 40.  
(e) Appian.

(a) Cic. of the  
field-law, 1.  
& 2. Tiog.  
Pomp. 39.  
App. b. 1.  
Civil.  
(b) book 10.  
of Doctr.  
Times, ch. 46.

(c) Strabo 17.  
Elem. Alex.  
Strom. Euf.  
Chr. Epiph.  
of moneths.  
Chr. Alex.

(d) b. 17.

reign. He therefore, about the 658 year of the City dyeth, (b) four sons being left, *Seleucus*, *Antiochus*, *Philip*, *Demetrius Eucerus*, as *Josephus* is Author: *Seleucus* succeeded his father, who killed his Uncle *Antiochus Cyzicenus*, in the year 659; he (c) in the year following being by *Antiochus Pius* the son of *Cyzicenus*, driven away at *Mopsuestia*, by a civil sedition was burnt alive.

*Antiochus Pius* took to Wife *Selene*, which had first married his father *Cyzicenus*, and his uncle *Grypus*, and of her he begat *Antiochus*, surnamed *Asiaticus*. The same man deprived the son of *Grypus*, *Antiochus*, of his Army and life. But *Ptolemy Lathurus* carried on *Demetrius Eucerus* to the Kingdom. Thus at the same time there were many Kings in *Syria*; untill the *Syrians* through the weariness of so many civil Wars, and Parricides, called *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, at that season very mighty, thereunto: who, as (d) *Justine* writeth, held *Syria* quietly 18, but as *Appian*, 14 years. (e) He being overcome, *Lucullus* in the 686 year of the City built, saluted *Antiochus Asiaticus* King of *Syria*. Wherefore 18 years being withdrawn from 686, the 669 of the City is gathered, wherein *Tigranes* began to reign in *Syria*; and so *Antiochus Eusebes* reigned about nine years.

*Pompey* in the year of the City 688, *Tigranes* being received upon surrender, or made to yield, took away *Syria* from *Antiochus Asiaticus*. Therefore they reigned in *Syria* from the beginning of *Seleucus* the first, unto the beginning of *Tigranes* 228 years, to the last year of *Asiaticus* 247 years.

In *Egypt*, *Ptolemy Lathurus* dyed, in the year of the City built 623, in which *Lucius Sulla* made (a) *Alexander* the son of the brother of *Alexander Lathurus* King of *Egypt*. But he after 19 dayes being killed by the *Alexandrians*, another of the same name, and his Cousen-german obtained the Kingdom; the which we (b) shew in another work. And this man about the year 689 being driven away by his Subjects, departed unto *Tyre*, where he also dying, appointed the people of *Rome* to be his heir.

After this King, (c) *Ptolemy [Auletes]* so called, from the study of Pipes, followed; a stranger from the stock of the *Ptolemies*; who being guilty to himself, both of his own birth, and of the will of *Alexander*, bought the fellowship and friendship of the people of *Rome* with an infinite sum of money; by reason of which, he burthning the *Egyptians* with cruel Taxes, by their agreement he is driven away in the eighth year of his reign; of the City 697. Therefore he began in the year about 690. He being absent, the *Alexandrians* carry away the Scepter unto his eldest daughter, and compell her to marry *Cybio-sabas*, a filthy and obscure man of *Syria*, whom the Queen, a few dayes after slew. And then she married *Archelaus*, a Priest of the *Comani* in *Pontus*. *Auletes* two year after, of the City built 699, is, at the command of *Pompey*, restored by *Gabinus*. He took away his daughter with her husband; all which things (d) *Strabo* hath delivered to memory. This King seemeth to have done his duty to nature in the 703 year

year of the City; the which (e) *Cælius* writing unto *Cicero* sheweth. Therefore he reigned 13 years.

(f) *Ptolemy* surnamed [*Διδυμεύς*] that is, *Bacchus*, the son of this King, first with his sister *Cleopatra*; by and by, she, as it seemeth, in the year of the City 706, being driven away, held the Kingdom alone; (g) in which time *Cæsar* came into *Egypt*; *Ptolemy* his sister being cast out, that he might drive her from the entrance of the kingdom, was ready with an Army; the which is manifest out of *Dion*, to have been the 706 year. (h) Moreover, in the year following, he fighting against *Cæsar*, fell, and left the kingdom to his sister *Cleopatra*.

Anno 443 1.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(e) b. 8. Epist.  
Fa. ep. 5.  
(f) Vide 10.  
de Doct.  
Temp. c. 45.  
(g) App. 2.  
Civ. Dion. 42.  
(h) Mircan.  
of the Alex.  
War.

## CHAP. XVI.

Of the Social War, the War with Mithridates, of Sylla and Marius; the Sertorian War; the Servile War; the Conspiracy of Catiline.

THE ROMANS (a) almost at that time, waged two most hard and fearful Wars; whereof the one happened in *Italy*, the other without *Italy*. That was called the Social or *Marsian*, because it was first stirred up by the *Marsians*. For all the Latines, and most people of *Italy*, taking it unworthily, that they, who were partakers of all labours and dangers, should be shut out from the fellowship of Government and Honour, they endeavoured, the City through *Drusus* being vainly hoped for, to get that by weapons, which they could not by right. And first of all, at the time of the Latine holy-dayes or Solemnities, they endeavoured, in the year of the City 663, to kill both the Consuls, *Philip* and *Cæsar*: the thing being discovered, they fell off openly. They killed *Quintus Servilius* Proconsul, *Fonteius* the Embassadour, and all the Romans of *Asculum*. After these things they fought with a diverse event. The chief honour of victory *Cneius Pompeius Strabo*, the father of the Great *Pompey*, first of all the Embassadour of *Publius Rutilius* Consul, obtained against them, in the year of the City 664, in which, a breaking out being made out of the Town *Firminum*, he drave back the Latines besieging it, and chased them to *Asculum*, and then the Consul, in the year 665, wherein he took *Asculum*, reduced the *Vestini* and *Peligni* unto a surrender, and triumphed over them. Also *Lucius Sylla*, the Embassadour of *Lucius Cæsar*, Consul, in the year 664, many and the greatest battels being dispatched with the greatest praise, obtained the Consulship in the year 666; and in that, pursued the remainders of the war. (b) *Appian* writeth, in that War the free-men were first called to an oath.

(c) The other War was undertaken against *Mithridates* in *Asia*, who drew his beginning from the Kings of the *Persians*, and is numbred the sixteenth from *Darius* the son of *Hystaspis*, (for so it

(a) App. Civ.  
Epist. 71.  
Flor. 3. ch. 18.  
Plur. Syll.  
Eutr. 5.  
Orol. 5. ch. 18.

(b) App. Civ.  
1. Macrob.  
1. Sat. ch. 11.  
(c) Vell. 2.  
App. Mithr.  
Ep. 76. Sec.  
Flor. 3. ch. 5.  
Eutr. 5.  
Orol. 5. ch. 19.  
The War with  
Mithridates.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(b) b. 10. of  
Doctr. of  
Times, ch. 45.  
(c) Joseph, &  
App. Syr.

reign. He therefore, about the 658 year of the City dyeth, (b) four sons being left, *Seleucus, Antiochus, Philip, Demetrius Eucærus*, as *Josephus* is Author: *Seleucus* succeeded his father, who killed his Uncle *Antiochus Cyzicenus*, in the year 659; he (c) in the year following being by *Antiochus Pius* the son of *Cyzicenus*, driven away at *Mopsuestia*, by a civil sedition was burnt alive.

*Antiochus Pius* took to Wife *Selene*, which had first married his father *Cyzicenus*, and his uncle *Grypus*, and of her he begat *Antiochus*, surnamed *Asiaticus*. The same man deprived the son of *Grypus, Antiochus*, of his Army and life. But *Ptolemy Lathurus* carried on *Demetrius Eucærus* to the Kingdom. Thus at the same time there were many Kings in *Syria*; untill the *Syrians* through the weariness of so many civil Wars, and Parricides, called *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, at that season very mighty, thereunto: who, as (d) *Justin* writeth, held *Syria* quietly 18, but as *Appian*, 14 years. (c) He being overcome, *Lucullus* in the 686 year of the City built, saluted *Antiochus Asiaticus* King of *Syria*. Wherefore 18 years being withdrawn from 686, the 669 of the City is gathered, wherein *Tigranes* began to reign in *Syria*; and so *Antiochus Eusebes* reigned about nine years.

*Pompey* in the year of the City 688, *Tigranes* being received upon surrender, or made to yield, took away *Syria* from *Antiochus Asiaticus*. Therefore they reigned in *Syria* from the beginning of *Seleucus* the first, unto the beginning of *Tigranes* 228 years, to the last year of *Asiaticus* 247 years.

In *Egypt*, *Ptolemy Lathurus* dyed, in the year of the City built 623, in which *Lucius Sulla* made (a) *Alexander* the son of the brother of *Alexander Lathurus* King of *Egypt*. But he after 19 dayes being killed by the *Alexandrians*, another of the same name, and his Cousen-german obtained the Kingdom; the which we (b) shew in another work. And this man about the year 689 being driven away by his Subjects, departed unto *Tyre*, where he also dying, appointed the people of *Rome* to be his heir.

After this King, (c) *Ptolemy [Auletes]* so called, from the study of Pipes, followed; a stranger from the stock of the *Ptolemies*; who being guilty to himself, both of his own birth, and of the will of *Alexander*, bought the fellowship and friendship of the people of *Rome* with an infinite sum of money; by reason of which, he burthening the *Egyptians* with cruel Taxes, by their agreement he is driven away in the eighth year of his reign; of the City 697. Therefore he began in the year about 690. He being absent, the *Alexandrians* carry away the Scepter unto his eldest daughter, and compell her to marry *Cybius-sacras*, a filthy and obscure man of *Syria*, whom the Queen, a few dayes after slew. And then the married *Archelaus*, a Priest of the *Comani* in *Pontus*. *Auletes* two year after, of the City built 699, is, at the command of *Pompey*, restored by *Gabinus*. He took away his daughter with her husband; all which things (d) *Strabo* hath delivered to memory. This King seemeth to have done his duty to nature in the 703 year

(a) Cic. of the  
field-law, 1.  
& 2. Tiog.  
Pomp. 39.  
App. b. 1.  
Civill.

(b) book 10.  
of Doctr.  
Times, ch. 46.

(c) Strabo 17.  
Clem. Alex.  
Strom. Euf.  
Chr. Epiph.  
of nonethis.  
Chr. Alex.

(d) b. 17.

year of the City; the which (e) *Cælius* writing unto *Cicero* sheweth. Therefore he reigned 13 years.

(1) *Ptolemy* surnamed [*Διδυμεος*] that is, *Bacchus*, the son of this King, first with his sister *Cleopatra*; by and by, she, as it seemeth, in the year of the City 706, being driven away, held the Kingdom alone; (g) in which time *Cæsar* came into *Egypt*; *Ptolemy* his sister being cast out, that he might drive her from the entrance of the kingdom, was ready with an Army; the which is manifest out of *Dion*, to have been the 706 year. (h) Moreover, in the year following, he fighting against *Cæsar*, fell, and left the kingdom to his sister *Cleopatra*.

Anno 4431  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(e) b. 8. Epist.  
Fa. ep. 5.  
(f) Vide 10.  
de Doctr.  
Temp. c. 45.  
(g) App. 2.  
Civ. Dion. 42.  
(h) Hircan.  
of the Alex.  
War.

## CHAP. XVI.

Of the Social War, the War with Mithridates, of Sylla and Marius; the Sertorian War; the Servile War; the Conspiracy of Catiline.

THE ROMANS (a) almost at that time, waged two most hard and tearful Wars; whereof the one happened in *Italy*, the other without *Italy*. That was called the Social or *Marsian*, because it was first stirred up by the *Marsians*. For all the Latines, and most people of *Italy*, taking it unworthily, that they, who were partakers of all labours and dangers, should be shut out from the fellowship of Government and Honour, they endeavoured, the City through *Drusus* being vainly hoped for, to get that by weapons, which they could not by right. And first of all, at the time of the Latine holy-dayes or Solemnities, they endeavoured, in the year of the City 663, to kill both the Consuls, *Philip* and *Cæsar*: the thing being discovered, they fell off openly. They killed *Quintus Servilius* Proconsul, *Fonteius* the Embassadour, and all the Romans of *Asculum*. After these things they fought with a diverse event. The chief honour of victory *Cneius Pompeius Strabo*, the father of the Great *Pompey*, first of all the Embassadour of *Publius Rutilius* Consul, obtained against them, in the year of the City 664, in which, a breaking out being made out of the Town *Firminum*, he drave back the Latines besieging it, and chased them to *Asculum*, and then the Consul, in the year 665, wherein he took *Asculum*, reduced the *Vestini* and *Peligni* unto a surrender, and triumphed over them. Also *Lucius Sylla*, the Embassadour of *Lucius Cæsar*, Consul, in the year 664, many and the greatest battels being dispatched with the greatest praise, obtained the Consulship in the year 666; and in that, pursued the remainders of the war. (b) *Appian* writeth, in that War the free-men were first called to an oath.

(c) The other War was undertaken against *Mithridates* in *Asia*, who drew his beginning from the Kings of the *Persians*, and is numbred the sixteenth from *Darius* the son of *Hystaspis*, (for so it must

(a) App. Civ.  
Epist. 71.  
Flor. 3. ch. 18.  
Plut. Syll.  
Eutr. 5.  
Oros. 5. ch. 18.

(b) App. Civ.  
1. Macrob.  
1. Sat. ch. 11.  
(c) Vell. 2.  
App. Mithr.  
Ep. 76. &c.  
Flor. 3. ch. 5.  
Eutr. 5.  
Oros. 5. ch. 19.  
The War with  
Mithridates.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(d) App. in  
Mithr. ch. 149.  
Græcol.

(a) Epit. 74.  
see Sigon.

(b) Epit. 74.  
Appr. Mithr.  
Plur. Syll.  
& Pomp.  
Flor. 3. ch. 5.  
Eutr. 5.  
Orof. 6.  
ch. 2.

(c) Vell. 1.  
App. 1. Civ.  
Plur. Syll.  
& Mar.  
Flor. 3. ch. 22.  
Eutr. 5.

The factions  
of Sulp. Trib.  
of the com-  
mon people.

The Marian  
banishment.

(d) Vell. 2.  
Plur. in Sert.  
Ep. 96. Orof. 5.  
ch. 23.

(a) Plur. Syll.  
App. 1. Civ.  
Vell. Flor. 3.  
ch. 22. Orof. 5.  
The Civil  
War of Lepi-  
dus.

must needs be read (d) with *Appian*) ἐκκαὶ ἑκὰς ὅν ἐκ Δαρείου τὸ Τάμας, nor as is commonly read [ἰσθρὺς] the eighth from that *Mithridates*, who a little after the death of *Alexander*, fell away from the *Macedonians*; although *Appian* had thought him the sixth before him. The War arose from thence, because *Mithridates*, *Ariathes* King of *Cappadocia*, the husband of his sister being killed by lying in wait, then his son of the same name, possessed the Kingdom; and afterward he being driven away by an unjust possession, he had expelled (a) *Ariobarzanes* given unto the *Cappadocians* by the Senate; whom indeed *Lucius Sylla* a Proprætor restored in the year of the City built, 660.

(b) After these things, *Ariobarzanes* from *Cappadocia*, *Nicomedes* from *Bythynia*, being through the endeavour of *Mithridates*, expelled, by the decree of the Senate; they recovered their kingdoms; the which *Mithridates* taking grievously; and moreover, being provoked by Roman weapons, invadeth *Cappadocia* and *Bythynia*, puts to flight the Roman Armies, kills all the *Italians* at an appointed day, reduceth *Macedonia*, *Thracia*, *Greece*, and *Athens* into his power or title. Against this King *Sylla*, the Consul going, in the year of the City built 668, taketh *Athens*. The Captains of *Mithridates* being overcome, brings him to conditions of peace, That he should yield up, or depart from *Asia*, *Bythynia*, and *Cappadocia*.

(c) For a Civil War came on, the which also brought delays on *Sylla*, the Consul setting forward. For before this time, in the year of the City 666, *Marius*, although stricken with old age, burning with a desire of waging the *Mithridatick* War, though *Caius Sulpitius* the Tribune of the common people, he had taken away that Province of *Sylla*, and had passed it over unto himself or them. For which thing *Sylla* being much moved, possesseth the City, and *Sulpitius* being slain, he puts *Marius* to flight. But he being absent, *Cinna* the Consul in the year 667, much troubling the Common-wealth, by *Obavius*, his Companion in office, being driven out of the City, *Marius*, *Carbo*, and *Sertorius* being joynted unto him; the Armies being divided into four parts, he assaults his Country. That being taken, many Citizens are slain; *Marius* the year following was quenched by a disease.

A peace being made with *Mithridates*, *Sylla* being returned into *Italy*, in the year 671 he finished a Civil War, *Carbo*, *Norbane*, *Marius* the younger, and others being vanquished; and a Dictator in the year 672 was proclaimed, and he likewise took away very many of the *Marian* parties by banishment.

(d) *Quintus Sertorius* in the year 671, his parties despairing, goes into the farther *Spain*; where he underwent War for some years, with the like valour and industry.

(a) *Sylla*, when he had resigned himself of the Dictatorship in the year 675, he dyed in the year following of a lowzie disease, being 60 years old. After whose death *Lepidus* the Consul attempting destructive counsels of revoking his Acts, he is put to flight by *Catulus* his fellow-Consul, in the year of the City built 676.

676. But in that year that followed, he coming unto the City with an Army, he being overcome by the same *Catulus* and *Cneius Pompeius*, fleeth into *Sardinia*, where he dyed of a disease. The same *Pompey* being sent into *Spain* against *Sertorius*, that he might succour *Metellus*, he advanced not very much. But he being overcharged by the treachery of his own Souldiers, the other easily received the Province, in the year of the City built 682.

In the mean time, the War with *Mithridates* (*Sylla* as yet living) waxeth new again; the which was waged by *Lucius Murenas*, in the year of the City built 672, as the (b) Epitomy of *Livy* teacheth. After the death of *Sylla*, when as the King had made a league with *Sertorius*, and had possessed himself of *Bythynia* by Arms; the which *Nicomedes* dying in the year 679, had left unto the people of *Rome*. *Lucius Lucullus* Consul, in the year 680, going thither, by most prosperous battels made at Land and Sea, he constrained *Mithridates* first to fly into *Pontus*, and thence by and by into *Armenia* to *Tigranes*, in the year of the City built 683. So *Pontus* being subdued, he overcame in battle both Kings, going together with two hundred thousand footmen, sixty thousand horsemen, in the year 685; the which (c) *Phlegon* witnesseth, assigning that to the fourth year of the 177 Olympiad. About these times, *Tigranocerta* the head of *Armenia*, and also *Nisibis*, very great Cities, were taken. But at last, *Lucullus* being forsaken by his Souldiers, he was forced to yield up the fruit of so many labours and victories unto *Cneius Pompeius*, in the year 688. *Pompey*, a Law being made, in the year which I have said, by *Cneius Minilius* Tribune of the common people, he undertook a War with both Kings, he commanded *Tigranes*, being brought to a surrender, to be contented with *Armenia* alone. While he followed after *Mithridates*, he added the *Iberi*, and *Albanes* to the Roman Empire, in the year of the City 689. Lastly, *Mithridates* being beaten on every side, in the year 691, things being desperate at home, thinking of a flight into *France*, being very much affrighted through the failing or falling away of his son *Pharnaces*, and his Army, he took away his own life. Which account of Times, is manifest out of (a) old Historians, and yearly Registers.

Thus the *Mithridatick* War was ended in that year wherein *Cicero* was Consul, of the City 691, the which (b) *Florus* affirmeth to have remained 40 years. More, *Appian* in his beginning of *Mithridates*; but in the end 40: so many *Eutropius*. But *Orosius*, but 30 hath given, from the year 662, unto 691, wherein *Cicero* was Consul: But in the year, as I have above mentioned, 660, *Sylla* Proprætor restoreth *Ariobarzanes*, against *Mithridates*. Thence to the Consulship of *Cicero* are full 32 years. *Appian* reckons the moving of *Mithridates* from the 173 Olympiad, which began in the year of the City built 666; in which year, the matter was brought into an open War, and *Sylla* sailed into *Greece*. By this account, six and twenty, not forty, shall the years be thought or reckoned.

X 2

He

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

The *Mithridatick* War  
put to an end.  
(b) Vell. 2.  
Epit. 72.  
Plur. Luc.  
App. 1. Civ.  
Dio. 33.  
Eutr. 6.

(c) With  
Phor. Codi  
97.

The Law of  
Manilius.

(a) Dio. 36.  
Plur. Pomp.  
App. Mithr.

(b) Flor. 3.  
ch. 5.  
App. begin.  
of Mithr.  
Eutr. 6.  
Orof. ch. 6.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
anno 4713.

(c) Vell. 1.  
Epir. 96.  
Plur. Cras.  
Flor. 3. ch. 10.  
Eutr. 6.  
Orof. 5. ch. 24.  
The Spartans  
War,  
The Pirate  
War.  
(d) Plur.  
Pomp. Epir.  
99.  
(e) Sull. in  
Cataline  
War.  
Cic. in speech  
of Catil.  
Dio. 36.  
Jof. 14. ch. 8.  
Plur. Cic.  
Ep. 102.  
Flor. 4. ch. 1.

He lived, as the same *Appian* writeth, 68 years, or 69; he reigned 57. *Eutropius* thinks he reigned 40.

(c) The War with *Mithridates* being in a flame, a Servile war was blown together, in the year of the City 681, *Spartacus Oenomaus*, and *Crixus*, cut-throats, the School of *Lentulus* being broken up at *Capua*, and not a little company of loose fellows being gathered together, they more then once scattered the Roman Armies; and at length by *Craffus* the Prætor, and *Pompey*, they were put to flight, in the year 683.

Also (d) *Pirates*, who being stirred up or procured by *Mithridates*, troubled all Seas, and Coasts. *Pompey* in the year 687, in a short time brought under, having gotten an extraordinary power from the *Gabinian Law*.

(e) While the Roman Empire is enlarged abroad by *Pompey*, almost the head of the Empire was overthrown by the conspiracy of wicked Citizens; who, *Catiline* being Captain, *Lentulus* Prætor, *Cethegus* and other Senators joyned to them, had conspired of the death of *Cicero* the Consul, and of setting on fire, and robbing the City. But the watchfulness of the Consul disappointed the endeavours of these men. *Catiline* being cast without the walls, runs away to provide an Army; punishment being taken on *Lentulus* and the chief of the Conspirators, the very Consulship of *Cicero* going out in the year 691. The year following *Catiline* being overcome by *Petereius* the Embassadour of *Antonius* Proconsul, he fell in fight.

## CHAP. XVII.

*What things happened under Hircanus and Aristobulus; and how their liberty being lost, they were brought back into the power of the Romans.*

See b. 10. of  
Doct. Times,  
ch. 54.

(a) Joseph.  
Ant. b. 13.  
ch. 24.  
Hegef. 2.

(b) Joseph. in  
the same b.  
13. ch. 23.

THE Common-wealth of the Jews, through the ambition of the Princes and Civil discords, was brought into the utmost destruction. The first, as hath been said, in that Nation, *Aristobulus* of the *Hasmoneans*, usurpeth a Kingdom, the son of *Joannes Hircanus* high Priest, the Nephew of *Simon Machabæus*, who when he had reigned one year, had (a) *Alexander Jannæus* his brother, heir of the Kingdom and Priesthood, in the year of the City built 650, the first of the 169 Olympiad, who of *Salomes*, or *Alexandra*, or *Saalina*, before the wife of *Aristobulus*, begat two sons; *Hircanus*, more desirous of peace and rest, than of war; and *Aristobulus*, a man of a cruel disposition, and greedy of rule: and in the year of the City built 766, dying, he touched at the 27th year of his reign, as, *Josephus* being Author, is manifest. (b) *Salome* after the death of her husband, ordered the Kingdom nine years, and left the chief Priesthood to *Hircanus*, and lived 73 years. *Aristobulus* in the 9th year entring from the death of *Alexander*, falling off

from his Mother, attempts to possess Cities by force. She being dead, in the third year (c) saith *Josephus* of the 177 Olympiad, *Horrensus* and *Metellus Creticus* being Consuls, (this is the year *Varronian*, of the City 685, wherein the third year of the Olympiad ended, and the 4th began,) *Aristobulus* moveth war against *Hircanus* high Priest. But straightway a peace being composed, the Priesthood fell out to *Hircanus*, the Kingdom unto *Aristobulus*. A little after, (d) *Antipater*, an *Idumean*, a moneyed-man, rents *Hircanus* from that agreement, and desirous of new things, by whose persuasion *Hircanus* fleeth privily unto *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, until *Jerusalem* being taken by *Pompey* in the 179 Olympiad, *Cicero* and *Antonius* being Consuls, which is the year of the city 691. *Hircanus* received the chief Priesthood: But from that time, *Jerusalem* began to pay tribute to the Romans, and many Cities, which hitherto had been tributaries to the Jews, a chief ruler of their own being allowed them, the nation itself was reduced within its old bounds. (a) These things *Josephus*.

Which change of things is, to be accounted as it were a certain hinge before the eyes of the Jewish History, which ariseth afterwards. Therefore *Hircanus* bare the chief Priesthood twelve years, from the year of the city built six hundred seventy six, in which his Father *Alexander* died, even until the year six hundred eighty eight. For in this year he seemeth to have fled to the King of *Arabians*, although (b) *Josephus* saith, *Aristobulus* bare the High Priests office three years, and as many months after *Hircanus*, until *Jerusalem* was taken by *Pompey*, which by (c) the same Anchor is delivered, to be taken in the 691 year of the city built, on the third Month.

*Pompey* led away *Aristobulus*, with his son *Alexander* and *Antigonus*, and as many daughters to Rome. *Alexander* slipping away privily, ceased not to raise a tumult against *Hircanus* in *Judea*, until he had expelled him, (e) whom *Gabinus* restored, in the year of the city built six hundred ninety eight, who also appointed five Law-Sessions in *Judea*. *Gabinus* *Aristobulus* escaping out of bonds, and making a disturbance in *Judea*, he sent back to Rome. Who being loosed out of prison by *Jul. Cesar* in the year of the city built, seven hundred and five, was taken away by poison. But *Alexander*, by the command of *Pompey*, was smitten by *Scipio* with an hatchet. At length (f) *Antigonus*, *Asinius* and *Domitius* being consuls, which is the year of the city built seven hundred and fourteen, by the help of the *Parthians*, gave his Uncle *Hircanus*, having cut off his ears, to be led away by the same Barbarians. This breaking in of the *Parthians*, *Dio* brings into the year, which I have said, that therefore *Josephus* after *Jerusalem* being taken by *Pompey*, rightly reckoneth twenty four years to *Hircanus* the High Priest. But in the year seven hundred and seventeen, *Herod* by the endeavour of *Sofus*, the city being vanquished, quenched *Antigonus*, of which thing a little after. From those things it is manifest, that the Roman Empire was incredibly enlarged by *Pompey*.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
anno 4713.

(a) Joseph. b.  
14. ch. 1.

(d) Joseph. 1.  
ch. 2.  
Hegef. 1. ch.  
14.

(a) Joseph. b.  
14. ch. 8.

(b) b. 20. ch.  
(c) b. 14. ch. 8.

(e) Joseph. b.  
14. ch. 10.

(f) Joseph. in  
the same b.  
ch. 19.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

The praise of  
Pompey.  
(g) Plin. 7.  
ch. 26.

pey, an infinite of people being added to it. So that in a(g) speech or Oration, he gloried, He had taken in *Asia* (understand the Lesser) the farthermost of Provinces, and had restored half of the same unto his country.

## CHAP. XVIII

Of the Civill war of Pompey and Caesar.

**T**He whole World being now almost tamed; the fortune of the *Roman* Empire had come unto that state, that it could neither enlarge it self any farther, nor consist in that degree which it held. Therefore when there could be no force through the utmost attempts, for the overthrowing of this, at length it consumed it self by its own wealth. The which misery the ambition of Princes, and civill discord procured thereby, brought upon it.

(a) *Caius Caesar* by the City Praetorship, having gotten the Province of *Lisitania*, in the year of the City 693, and things in the same place being famously managed, obtained a triumph. But he put the sure hope of this, after the honour of the Consulship, the which while he earnestly sought in the year of the city 694, at the same time *Pompey*, *Lucullus* interrupting his acts, which he would have had made established decrees by the Senate, joyned himself with *Caesar* and *Craſſus*, and other chief ones. So *Caesar* obtained the Consulship in the year 695. wherein he also approved or confirmed *Pompey's* acts through the Senate, and divided the *Campanian* land, among very many citizens, and eased the common Farmers of the Knight order, desiring an abatement of a third part of their rents. A daughter of *Julia* being appointed for *Pompey*, he married *Calpurnia* of *Pison*. When as by these Arts and infinite bounty, he had gotten the favour of all ranks of men unto himself, he got the *French* Province, the which from the year of the city 696, he began to Govern, and ruled nine years, as (b) *Suetonius* is Author: In which space of time he reduced all *France*, which is contained by the *Pyrenean* Alps, the Rivers of *Rhene* and *Rhodane* or *Roan*, and imposed on it every year the debt or title of a Stipend or Subsidy: he also, first of the *Romans*, provoked the *Germans* beyond *Rhene*, a bridge being laid over *Rhene*. He also was present with the *Brittains*, whither none before had pierced. Among these things, in the year of the city built 698, he made such an agreement with *Pompey* and *Craſſus*, that the Province of *France* was continued unto him, *Pompey* enjoyed *Spain*, *Craſſus*, *Syria*, by *Ilor*, and the *Parthian* war, to which (c) he going in the year 699, in the third year from thence, he most miserably perished with the greater part of his Army. After that slaughter, the *Parthians* rushing into *Syria*, *Cassius* honourably beat back.

(a) *Craſſus*

(a) *Craſſus* being dead, when neither *Pompey* could bear his equally, nor *Caesar* any more a Superiour, a civill war arose. Those of *Pompey's* party working that that *Caesar* (the time being fullfilled) should part with the Province and army. Moreover, those of *Caesar's*, endeavouring the same thing as *Pompey* did, at last in the year 705, *Caius Claudius Marcellus*, and *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus*, Consul, (b) the Senate decreed, that before a certain day *Caesar* should dismiss his army: *Antonius* and *Cassius* interceding in vain, are constrained to flee unto *Caesar*; who hastening with his Army to the city, so affrighted *Pompey* and others, that without delay, the city, and after that, all *Italy* being left, they sailed into *Greece*. *Caesar* going into *Spain*, overcame *Afranius* and *Petreibus*, and brought their Army unto a surrender. In his return he vanquished *Masilia*, and entered into the first Dictatorship, the (c) which indeed he held four times, and last of all, always.

In the year 706, *Pompey* being overcome by *Caesar* in the *Pharsalian* fields, went away into *Egypt*, and there by the command of *Ptolomy* is slain, in the 59th year of his age. The same most dangerous battell being finished, when *Caesar* the year following had come to *Alexandria*, he granted the Kingdome of *Egypt* unto *Cleopatra* and her brother. The year following he overcame *Scipio* and *Cato* in *Africa*, with King *Juba*. *Cato* at *Utica* brought a voluntary death on himself. The year that followed this, of the City built 708, gave a beginning to a most excellent thing, the correcting of *Calendars*, and the year: the which *Caesar* in this year gathered; from whence the *Julian* years went forward. The beginning of which hath wont to be drawn from the Calends of *January*, of the year of the City 709. When by a most great and hard war, he had overcome the sons of *Pompey* the following year, which is of the City built 710, is numbred the second of the *Julian* setting forth, by the conspiracy of *Brutus* and *Cassius*, and other he was thrust thorow in the very Senate, in the fifty sixth year of his age, as saith *Plutarch*. Wherefore he was born in the year of the city built, 654. *Caius Marius* the sixth, and *Flaccus* being Consuls.

The civill war of *Caesar* and *Pompey*, both other wonders or signs foretold, and also a (a) fearful Eclipse or failing of the Sun, which happened in the year of the World 3933, which went next before the *Julian* year, in which the civill war was begun. But it happened on the seventh day of our *March*, nine digits or inches after noon, of which sign *Dio Lucan*, and *Petronius* are to be understood. Beside these shakings of weapons, with which the whole World was shaken, others less, rose up at *Rome* in the mean while. (b) *Clodius Pulcher*, or the fair, being passed over from the Senators, unto those of the common people, and made a Tribune of the common people, punished *Cicero* with banishment, in the year of the city 696, because he had condemned with death noble citizens, the companions of *Catiline*, the cause not being shown, the which misery he bare more gently, than for the other worthinesse

Anno 4186.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4430.

(a) Suet. in  
Jul. Plur. in  
Pomp. & Caesar  
Flor. 4. ch. 1.  
Dio. 46. & foll.  
App. 2. Civil.  
Eur. b. 6.  
Oros. 6.  
(b) Cels. 1.  
Civ. The Civ-  
vill war of  
Pompey and  
Caesar.  
(c) b. 10. of  
Doctr. times,  
ch. 97.

(a) Plur. Cels.  
Dio. 37. App.  
2. Civ. Vol. 2.  
Suet. Cels.  
Flor. 4. ch. 1.  
Eutr. 6. Oros.  
ch. 15. & foll.  
The deeds of  
Caesar.

(b) Suet. in Jul.  
ch. 25. See Ca-  
sar.

(c) Plur. Cels.  
Dio. App.  
Parth.

(a) b. 10.  
Doctr. times;  
ch. 18.  
An Eclipse of  
the Sun.

(b) Dio 39.  
App. 2. Civ.  
Plur. in Cic.  
Clodius calls  
out Cicero.

of

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(c) Plut. in  
Cat. & Craſ.  
Dio. 39.

of his life. But in the year following, he is by the endeavour of *Pompey*, and *Lentulus* Conſull, called back, and received with the greateſt honour. The ſame *Clodius* the people of *Rome* adjudged to *Cyprus*, to poſſeſſe which, *Cato* being ſent, *Pythomy*, King of that Iſland, his moneys being caſt into the Sea, prevented the reproach by a voluntary death, in the year of the city built 698. (c) The Senate decreed the Prætorſhip unto *Cato*, being returned to *Rome* without aſſemblies of election; Which honour he would not make uſe of, deſiring rather to obtain that by the lawfull voices of the people, but his hope deceived him. For by the faction of *Pompey* and *Craſſus*, he went without that office which he deſired, and *Vatinus* was preferred before him. After that, *Trebonius* the Tribune of the common people working, they obtain, *Craſſus*, *Syria*, *Pompey*, *Spain*, for five years. *France* being prolonged to *Cæſar* for three years ſpace. *Craſſus* went in his Conſullſhip into the Eaſt, in the year of the City ſix hundred ninety and nine.

(d) Affeſtation of honour, moreover, waxing hot in the aſſemblies of Elections, and the ſuiters in white garments filthily conſounding all things, when as there had been an intervall of Government a long time, at *Rome*; *Cneius Pompey*, after a new manner, neither hitherto heard of was created Conſull without a partner in the ſame office: in which Magiſtracy, he both moſt ſeverely purſued an examination of other faults, and alſo of the death of *Clodius*, whom *Attila* in the ſame year killed, and therefore he went away into baniſhment.

## CHAP. XIX.

Of Men Excelling in Learning which that Age brought forth, from the Year of the City, about 622, unto 710.

(a) See Miſcel.  
our Exer. to  
Julianus. ch. 8.

(b) Diog. Cæſ.  
Helych.

The death of  
*Carneades*.  
(c) Cic. 4.  
Acad. Val.  
Max. 8. ch. 7.

*Carneades* (a) with great commendation of Wiſedome flouriſhed in *Greece* before others, by country a *Cyrenian*, a ſtandard-bearer of Univerſity men. Of whoſe death it is a wonder that old Chronologers have delivered ſo uncertain, yea falſe, things. For *Apollodorus* with *Diogenes* in his chronicles, affirmed him to have died in the fourth year of the 162 Olymp. into which the 626 year of the City falleth, (b) in which time it is delivered to memory, the Moon to have failed of light. But it may be gathered out of *Cicero* that he deceaſed long after that time; with whom (in his firſt of an Oratour) *Antonius* ſaith, when he went into *Aſia*, Proconſull, he met with *Carneades* the Academick at *Athens*, who after his country manner, was contrary to all of the ſect in diſputing. That year of the Proconſulſhip of *Antonius* was from the building of the city 652. *Marius* 4. and *Catulus* being Conſulls. Therefore *Carneades* was yet a liver in that time. (c) Whom we read to have increaſed his age unto ninety ycars.

*Metrodorus*

(d) *Metrodorus* alſo, a Sceptick Philoſopher, and famous Orator; and endued, as alſo *Carneades*, with an excellling memory, lived in the time of *Mithridates*, and *Tigranes*: with whom he was in friendſhip.

Alſo (e) *Geminus* a Mathematician lived about the ſix hundred ſeventy ſeventh year of the City, as we have ſhewn out of *Geminus* himſelf.

But at *Rome*, and in *Italy*, as it were the glory of Learning being paſſed over with the Empire, many more in that age excelled in learning. Orators indeed alſo many, nothing inferiour to the old Greek, as *Marcus Antonius*, as *Lucius Craſſus*, and many others, whom

(i) *Cicero* reckons up, and among the reſt *Hortenſius*. But one darkned the brightneſſe of all *Latines*, and *Greeks* in the fame of Eloquence, *Cicero*, unto which alſo he joyned the Grace of Philoſophy. This man was born in the 600 fourty eighth year of the City, the third of the Nones of *January*, as (g) *Gellius* ſaith, in which year, nine Moneths after, *Pompey* was born, who, (a) *Pliny* is witneſſe, was born the day before the Kalends of *October*, moſt large honours being born in the Commonwealth, whoſe parent and builder, *Caſtine* being quenched, he deſerved to be called; he died in the ſixty fourth of his age, in the Triumviral or three men's, baniſhment, of the City built 711.

That I may be ſilent of *Cæſar*, who may be numbred up among the moſt learned and Eloquent, but that he had rather ſpread the bayes of his rule and triumph than wit. *Marcus Terentius Varro* obtained the chief in that age, of learning. There was alſo another of the ſame name, a Poet, *Publius Terentius Varro*, born in the Village *Attaces* in *Narborny*, (b) in the year of the City 672.

Alſo *Lucius Cælius Antipater*, a writer of Hiſtory, about the year of the City built 630. to wit in the time of the *Gracchi*. Likewiſe (c) *Caius Crifpus Saluſt*. Of the *Greeks*, *Diodorus Siculus*, as by his book appeareth. Alſo *Didymus* the Grammarian of *Alexandria* (d) ſo named *Chalcenterus*. But Poets in repute, were, *Turpilus* a Comicall, and *Lucilius* a Satyricall Poet; who, *Jerome* ſaith, died about the year of the City built 651. And alſo *Tullius Quintus Atta*, a writer of Gown-matters, died in the year of the City built

676. as the ſame ſheweth. Moreover, *Lucretius*, (e) who about the year of the city built 700. brought death on himſelf, 44 years of age. *Jerome* affirmeth *Catullus* to have been born in the 668 year of the City. In the (f) ſeventeenth year after, the year of the City 684, *Virgil* the Prince of Poets was born, in the Ides of *October*, *Virgilius* alſo was famous under *Jul. Cæſar*, in the knowledge of building, or Architecture: the which appeareth by his writings.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(d) Scab. 13.  
Cic. 2. of an  
Orat.  
(e) b. 2. Doct.  
times, ch. 6. &  
in notes on  
*Geminus*. p.  
411.

(b) of famous  
Orat.

(g) Gell. b.  
15. ch. 28.  
(a) Plin. b. 37.  
ch. 2. Vell. b. 2.  
Plut. Cic.

*Cæſar*.

Two *Varros*:

(b) Jerome.  
Chron.

(c) Valer.  
Max. 1. ch. 7.  
(d) Suidas.

(e) Jerome  
Chron.

(f) Phleg.  
with Phoc.  
Cod. 9. Dom.  
in the life of  
*Virgil*.

Y

CHAP.



## CHAP. XX.

What things happened unto the Roman Affairs, from Cæsar's death, unto the Actian Victory.

Cæsar dyed, as I have made mention above, in the year of the City built 710, the second Julian year, the Ides of March; which year indeed, the Sun was of an unusual paleness, foul, and wan, (g) as Pliny writeth, and Virgil; yet no other eclipse or failing of the Sun was in that year, as we have (h) taught in its place. (i) Cæsar being slain, Antonius Consul, so moved the people by a seditious speech, that they burnt his body openly, and threatned sword and faggot to the houses of the Citizens. After the tumults being appeased, he repeals the Dictatorship; Cæsar's will being made void, he attempts many things through force and Tyranny. Octavius Cæsar, born of Accia the daughter of his sister Julius, and adopted by the will of Julius Cæsar, when he was despised by Antonius, he gathereth an Army of old Souldiers, and opposeth himself to his Tyranny. Antonius obtaineth the Province of France from the people by force, whose passage to it, Martina being possessed, Decimus Brutus shuts up; therefore in the same place by Antonius he is besieged.

(a) Hortius and Pansæ being Consuls, in the year of the City 711, Cicero founding the Trumpet, a War is undertaken against Antonius, being judged an enemy, and Octavius is joyned unto both Consuls, with a Proconsular power, being about the (b) twentieth year of his age. There is made a fierce and cruel battle at Actina, (c) wherein the Prætorian Souldiers dyed every one. But Antonius is overcome, and Brutus freed of the siege; nevertheless both Consuls were slain.

(d) Which things, while they are carried on in Italy, in the very year of Rome built 711, Dolabella, when he came into Asia, Trebonius being laid hold of at Smyrna, an examination being first had for two dayes with stripes and torments, punished him of his head.

(e) Cassius (a great Army being got together, or made up, unto twelve Legions, one legion 6200 foot, and 730 horse-men,) forced likewise Dolabella, being besieged at Laodicea, to death.

(f) In Macedonia, Brutus lying in wait for him, killed Caim Antonius the brother of Marcus; and he got him a strong or stout Army. (g) After that, lest it should climb higher, the Senate appointed by little and little, to gather Octavius into an order or degree of dignity; the which he obtaining, agreeth with Antonius and Lepidus. So [Triumviri,] or the three men, are made for the setting in order the Common-wealth the 27 of November: who, the Roman Empire being three manner of wayes divided, they banished very many Citizens. Among these, Mar. Tull. Cicero, who going about to take his flight into Greece, while he stood

still a little while, his head being cut off by Popilius a Centurion, whom he had defended in the cause of his head, he dyeth the 7th of Decemb. the 64 year of his age. (a) In that banishment; many, and on both parts memorable examples, are set forth; and (b) Vel leius writeth, There was toward the banished men the greatest faithful dealing or ayd of their Wives, indifferent, of the freemen, some, of the servants; of their sons, none. The Epitome of Lity relates, That there was 130 names of Senators. (c) The same year of the City built 711, gave a beginning to the most noble Town of Lugdunum or Lyons in France, the Authour Munatius Plancus Proconsul, at the meeting together of the Rivers Arar and Rhodane.

But the year following, Octavius and Antonius contended in battle with Marcus Brutus, and the chief of the Conspirators, in Thessaly, at the City of Philippi, with an uncertain event. (d) For both the right wings of the Armies overcame, and the Camps were robbed on both sides. But Cassius, who was in that wing which was beaten, supposing the whole Army to be scattered, felt death to himself of his own accord. Brutus being overcome in another battle, he also ended his life with his own hand, living the seven and thirtieth year, saith Valleys. Moreover, none of the stabbers of Cæsar was living more than three years space; and all were taken away by a violent death, as saith Suetonius; some killed themselves with the same dagger, with which they had stabbed Cæsar.

(e) After the victory Antonius went into Asia, Octavius Cæsar into Italy. This Cæsar had war against Lucius Antonius the brother of the Triumviri, and his Wife Fulvia, a woman of a manly courage; and Lucius being driven out of the City, and judged an enemy, and shut up in Perugia, he forced to a surrender. (f) In the mean time, the Parthians being stirred up by Labienus of Pompey's parties, break into Syria; in the year of the City built 714, whom, in the following year, Ventidius (they being afflicted with a most great slaughter, their King being slain,) expelled, and recovered Syria.

(g) The brother of Cneius Pompey, commanding the Sea with a Navy, troubled it with robberies. Cæsar going against him, in a Sea-fight being overcome, put him to flight, in the year of the City built 718. In the same year Lepidus, who had passed over from Africa into Sicily, having put off the Government, he granted to live a private life. But (h) Sextus Pompey betaking himself unto Antonius, was by his command killed, being 40 years old. When as the same Antonius a little before, a dispatch being undertaken against the Parthians, had received a great slaughter.

(a) At last, Antonius, when he had given himself wholly unto Cleopatra, Octavia the sister of Cæsar being forsaken, he proclaimed war against him, and at length he was overcome by a Navy at Actium, a Promontory of Epirus. Cæsar had more than 400 ships, Antonius about 200, but of a huge bulk, that they yielded the shew

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(g) Plin. b. 1.  
ch. 30.  
Virg. b. 1.  
Georg.  
(h) b. 10.  
Doctr. of  
Times, ch. 61.  
(i) Plur. An-  
ton. Dio. 24.  
&c. App. 2. &c.  
Epic. 1. 7. &c.  
Vell. 2. Cic.  
Phil. 1.

(a) Plur. in  
Ant. and Brut.  
and Cic.  
Dio. 45. &c.  
App. 3. Civ.  
Epic. 117.  
Flor. 4. ch. 5.  
(b) Vell. 2.  
(c) App. 3.  
Civ.

(d) Dio. 47.  
App. 3. Civ.  
Cic. Phil. 11.

(e) App. 4.  
Civ.

(f) App. &c.

(g) Plur. Cic.  
App. Dio.  
Vell. &c.

The Trium-  
viri.

The death of  
Cicero.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(a) See App.  
4. Civ.  
(b) book 2.

(c) Dio. Stra-  
bo. Jerome.  
Chron.

The War of  
Brutus and  
Cassius.  
(d) Epic. 123.  
Dio. 47.  
Plur. Brut.  
App. 4. Civ.  
Flor. 4. ch. 6.

(e) Dio 48.  
Epic. 127. &c.  
Plur. 4.

(f) App. Parth.  
Flor. b. 4.  
ch. 9.

(g) App. 5. Civ.  
Dio. 49.  
Epic. 128. &c.  
Flor. 4. ch. 8.

(h) App. in the  
end Civ.  
Flor. 4. ch. 10.

(a) Epic. 132.  
& 133. Dio. 50.  
Plur. Ant.  
Flor. 4. ch. 11.



Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

The Asian  
Fight.

of Castles and Cities walking thorow the Sea. The astonished tumult of *Cleopatra*, otherwise a doubtful fight turned unto the destruction of *Antonius*. Who fleeing, being followed by *Octavius* into *Egypt*, and besieged at *Alexandria*, slew himself; whom straightway *Cleopatra* following, that she might not live at the will of the Conquerour, an Asp being put to her, perished.

## CHAP. XXI.

*Of the Roman Affairs, from the Asian Victory, unto the birth of Christ; and also of Learned Men, who lived, Augustus Caesar enjoying the affairs.*

- A**ntonius and *Cleopatra* being dead, *Egypt* was reduced into the form of a Province, in the 294th year after the posterity of *Lagus* ruled in it. (b) *Caesar* in the 725 year of the City built, made three Triumphs, the *Dalmatian*, *Asian* and *Egyptian*, in the same moneth (c) of August. After which, whether in earnest or feignedly, he deliberated with *Agrippa* and *Mecenas*, of laying down the Empire. The first perswading it, the latter affrighting from it; when he had determined to follow the counsel of this, nevertheless he declared to the Senate of resigning the Empire; and by this (d) cunning he brought it to passe, that it was confirmed unto him by the Senate and people, in the year of the City built 726.
- (e) *Cornelius Gallus* a Knight of *Rome*, Lievtenant in *Egypt*, for his proud boldness being condemned to banishment, killed himself in the year 728, when *Augustus* waged war some years by his Captains, with the *Cantabrians* and *Asturians*, from the year 729, to 735, in which they were tamed by *Agrippa*; (f) who indeed being returned, refused to make a triumph offered to him. *Phraates*, King of the *Parthians*, in the year 734, restored the *Roman* Ensigns taken away from *Craesus*.
- (a) But he had two friends in estimation above others, *Mecenas* and *Marcus Vipsanius Agrippa*. The one being contented with the degree of a Knight, dyed in the 38 Julian year, a singular refuge of learning and all learned men. *Augustus* made *Agrippa* his son in law, his daughter *Julia* being given him in marriage, which he begat of *Scribonia*, of whom were born *Caius* and *Lucius Caesar*. *Agrippa* a posthume, or born after his father's death, *Agrippina* married to *Germanicus* the son of *Drusus* the son of *Livia*; and *Julia*, whom *Emilius* married. Moreover, *Augustus* took away (b) *Livia*, being great with child, by her former husband *Tiberius Nero*, by whom he had no off-spring, when as she had brought forth by *Nero*, *Tiberius*, who afterwards reigned, and *Drusus*, who perished in *Germany*, in the (c) Julian year 37, *Agrippa* (d) being now dead in the Julian year 34. Moreover, *Caius Caesar Agrippa*, and *Julia*, was born in the Julian year 26; but *Lucius* in the year 29.

(e) *Tiberius* in the 40th Julian year, obtained the power of a Tribune for five years space, *Armenia* being committed unto him, in the following year he departed into the Isle of *Rhodes*; where fearing the ill will of his sons in law, he fate down seven years. The chief cause of his separating, was the hatred of his Wife *Julia*, who spent her life in all kinds of detestable wickednesses. Whom being found out, *Augustus* in the 44 Julian year, banished for the infamy of this thing.

The Age of this Emperour, was fruitful of great Wits. Among the Greeks *Dionysius of Halicarnassus*, who delivers that he lived, *Augustus* being Emperour, who famously, in brief, handled History: and *Nicolaus Damascenus*, who likewise was dear to *Augustus*, and *Herod* in a few things. Of the Latines, *Cornelius Nepos*, the son in law of *Atticus*. (f) *Salust*, who dyed four years before the *Asian* battel. *Marcus Porcius Latro*, famous in the faculty of speaking, through the wearisomnesse of a double quartane Ague, he brought violence on himself in 40 (g) year of *Augustus*. In Asia (h) *Hybreas*, an Orator, flourished under *Antonius* and *Cleopatra*. (i) At *Rome*, *Hyginus*, a Grammarian, by surname *Polihistor*. Also the most famous Poets of the whole Age lived in great number. (l) *Virgil* (*Sentius Saturnicus*, and *Lucretius Cinna*, Consuls) in the year of the World 3965, before Christ 19 years, Consuls) in the year of the World 3965, before Christ 19 years, dyeth at *Brundisium*, being fifty years old. (m) For he was born in the year of the City built 684. *Pompey* and *Craesus*, Consuls, before Christ, the seventieth, of the World 3914. (a) *Horace*, before Christ, the 57th year of his age *Censorinus*, and *Gallus* Consuls, dyed the 57th year of his age turning. For he was born, *Cotta* and *Torquatus* Consuls, in the year of the City built 689, the sixth of the *Ides* of *Decemb.* he dyed, *Censorinus* and *Gallus* Consuls, of the City 746, 5 Calends *Decemb.* in which same year also *Mecenas*, but he departed in the twelfth after *Virgil*. Also *Tibullus* and *Propertius*, writers of Elegies or mournful Verses, and the equal of them, *Ovid*, who was born, *Hirtus* and *Paisa* being Consuls, to wit, in the year as he hath sung, —

wherein, by equal destiny,  
Both Consuls fell, by Anthony.

He (b) ended his life in banishment at *Tomos*, a City in *Pontus*, in the year of Christ 17, of the City 770, of his age, 60.

CHAP.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

Tiberius en-  
dued with the  
Tribune  
power,  
(e) Sueton.

Vell. 2.  
Dio. 55.  
Men excell.  
ing in Learn-  
ing.

(f) Jerome  
Chron.

(g) Jerome  
Chron.

(h) In the  
same place.

(i) In the  
same place.

(l) Jerome  
Chron.

(m) *Dona* in  
the Life of  
*Virg.*

(a) The Life  
of *Horace*.

(b) In the  
same.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

## CHAP. XXII.

## The History of Herod.

See b. 10. of  
Doct. Times,  
ch. 85. and  
b. 11. ch. 1.  
82.

FOR the searching out the Birth of CHRIST the Saviour, the History of Herod is altogether needfull; whose beginning, and the years in which he reigned, we will set down in this Chapter.

This man was the son of Antipater an Idumean, therefore he also an Idumean by birth, not an Ascalonite; which thing (c) Africanus with Eusebius, from the report of some, hath delivered. We rather believe (d) Josephus, who maketh this man an Idumean; the which as 'tis more likely to be true, so that is least to be reproved, because all the ancient Fathers almost, do say Herod to have been a stranger. For the Idumæans are reckoned strangers, that is, born of another stock, not as from Jacob, although following the same Religion with the Jacobites, they were by profession Jews, not by stock. But of begetting and Nature we treat, not of Faith and Religion, when we seek concerning a Native and a stranger, as in that controversy of Herod. Antipater in that disagreement of brethren, of which we (e) have spoken before, adhered to Hircanus, and was appointed by Julius Caesar Solicitor of (f) Judæa, who presently made his son Herod Lieutenant of Galilee, about twenty five years old, not fifteen, as (g) Josephus is deceived. From the sixth year after, Herod was set over Cælosyria by Caesar, in the year of the City built seven hundred and seven. For in this sixth year Caesar appointed Legions of Souldiers over Syria, (h) Hirtius being Author; after the fight at Philippi, he (i) obtained a Tetrarchy with his brother Phasaelus, from Antonius, in the fifth Julian year. After that, the Parthians being stirred up in Judæa by Antigonus the brother of Aristobulus, for the bargain of a thousand talents, Herod flee:h unto Antonius; through whom, he was beyond hope, made King of Judæa by the Senate. (a) Calvinus and Pollio being Consuls, in the sixth Julian year, the 185 Olympiad entring. For with that purpose he had come to Rome, that he might ask the Kingdom for Alexander the Nephew of Aristobulus his Wives brother. He being returned into Judea, with Antigonus the brother of Aristobulus, he strove more than two years. At length, Sosius the Captain of Antonius bringing help, he besieged and took Jerusalem, wherein Antigonus had shut himself, in the third moneth in a day of fasting. (b) Dio writeth, it was the Sabbath day; Josephus, the year of Sabbaths; Agrippa and Gallus being Consuls. This year of the World is necessarily numbred by us, 3947. Julian, the 9th. Of the City, seven hundred and seventeen. Therefore Dio is to be corrected,

who

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period.  
unto 4713.

who assigneth him to Claudius and Norbanus Consuls, that is, in the 8th Julian year. But the Character of the year of Sabbath reproveh him of falshood. Antigonus being bound to a stake; and beaten with rods, a little after was smitten with a hatchet, as Dio and Josephus report.

Thus the chief rule of the Hasamoneans ceased, after the year, saith Josephus, 126; the which is most true. For Judas first was made chief Priest of that stock, in the year of the World 3820, of the City 90; from which, the hundred twenty sixth is the 717 year of the City.

Hence it appeareth, there was a two-fold beginning of the reign of Herod; one from the sixth Julian year; the other from the 9th: in the former, he was declared King by the Senate; in the latter, he reigned alone, his fellow-suiter being taken away. Moreover, (d) Josephus writeth, That from the former beginning, Herod enjoyed the Kingdome for thirty seven years; from the latter, thirty four; and the same man bringing some of his years to remembrance, in about (e) six places, he drawes them from the latter.

Herod married Mariamnes in the third year after he had been declared King by the Romans; that is, in that very year, where in Jerusalem was taken, (f) Josephus being witness; whose (g) brother Aristobulus he made high Priest in the eighteenth year of his age: And the same man he straightway stilled in a fishpond, because he seemed to be most acceptable to the people. The same in the War against Caesar, followed Antonius his parties, he being overcome, first Hircanus the grandfather of Mariamnes being killed, he goeth to Rhodes (h) unto Caesar, by whom he was courteously used: and by his authority, and a new decree of the Senate, the Kingdom was confirmed unto him. When as he returned to (a) Jerusalem, he slayeth Mariamnes his wife, and also her mother Alexandra.

(b) In the eighteenth year of his reign, which is the twenty eighth Julian, he began to repair the Temple at Jerusalem, even from the foundations, as Josephus writeth, or appointed to mend it.

(c) Last of all, being carried forth with a greater madnesse every day, the sons which he had begotten of Mariamnes, young men of a famous towardnesse, Alexander and Aristobulus being accused of false crimes by their brother Antipater, he killed, a few years before his death, which falls into the fourty two Julian year, if we believe Dio and Josephus; whereof the one writeth, Herod to have reigned thirty four years from the 9th Julian year, wherein Antigonus was slain. (d) But Dio from the Julian year fifty one, Lepidus and Aruntius being Consuls, saith, Herod the Palestine being accus'd by his brethren, beyond the Alps, was lifted up again by Augustus, and the Tetrarchy given to a Province. This can be no other than Archilaus, who, Herod being dead, obtain-

A double beginning of Herod.

(d) Joseph. 17. ch. 10.

(e) book 15. ch. 7. 12. 13.

(f) b. 16. ch. 9.

(g) b. 17. ch. 10.

(h) b. 11. of Doct. of Times, ch. 1.

(i) b. 14. ch. 27.

(j) Joseph. 15. ch. 3.

(k) In the same b. ch. 10.

(l) In the same b. ch. 11.

(m) In the same b. ch. 14.

(n) In the same b. ch. 16.

(o) In the same b. ch. 17.

(p) In the same b. ch. 18.

(q) In the same b. ch. 19.

(r) In the same b. ch. 20.

(s) In the same b. ch. 21.

(t) In the same b. ch. 22.

(u) In the same b. ch. 23.

(v) In the same b. ch. 24.

(w) In the same b. ch. 25.

(x) In the same b. ch. 26.

(y) In the same b. ch. 27.

(z) In the same b. ch. 28.

Anno 4431.  
Jul. Period,  
unto 4713.

(c) Joseph.  
b. 18. ch. 15.  
b. 17. ch. 8.  
& 17.

ed the Tetrarchy of of Judæa by request from *Augustus*, and was cast out from the same in the tenth year. Nine whole years being deducted from 51, the 42 Julian year is left, wherein *Herod* dyed; (c) whose death, an eclipse of the Moon went before, *Josephus* being witness; which in the same year is beheld *March 13.* almost the third hour from Mid-night.

### *The End of the Fourth Book.*

THE

Anno 1. of  
Chr'st, to  
the 34.



## THE Latter Section or Division OF *Dionysius Petavius*, Jesuite, OF THE Account of Time.

### *The Fifth Book.*

Containing Tears from the first of *CHRIST*, to the Thirty fourth.

#### CHAP. I.

*Of the death of Augustus Cæsar, and the Government and death of Tiberius Nero. And also of the Birth and Death of CHRIST; and the things which happened in those first Christian times.*

**I**N the year of Christ 14. at *Nola* in *Campania*, *Augustus* dyed, on the fourteenth of the Calends of *September*, in the year of his age 76. when he had lived 56. years from the first entrance into office: from the death of *Antonius*, forty and three, full: Sueton. August 100. Dio 56. *Augustus*. A Prince most excellent, and needful for the *Roman* Commonwealth. Which, labouring with too much happiness, nor capable of its own fortune, but running headlong into ruine, he supported; and both with the best Laws, and also riches, and all plenty of things, he so furnished it, the City it self also being adorned with stately works, that he might rightly be called, the second builder

Anno 1. of  
Christ, to  
the 34.

Tiberius.

(b) Sueton.  
Tiber. 5.

a) Tacitus. 2.

b) Tacit. 16.  
Dio 17. Suet.  
In Caio. 1. & 2.  
c) Tacit. 5.  
Seianus.  
d) Tacit. 4.  
Dio 58.

f) Tacit. 5.  
Dio 58.  
g) Tacit. 4. Dio.  
58.

The death of  
Tiberius.

builder of it, and father of his country, and [Augustus] that is, Magnificent, royall, or renowned.

Of which, cruelty and filthinesse increased a desire of Tiberius that was great of itself, whom he had his succeder. This man, his father Nero, Livia his Mother, was born the 16th Kalends of December, in the year of the City built 714. the 4th Julian year, (b) after the Philippian War. Being in the 55th year of his age, in that very year in which Augustus dyed; he reigned, the most sorrowfull of mortall men, and through cruelty, robbery, lust, and arrogancy, was hated of all: which vices notwithstanding, about the beginning of his chief rule, he dissembled with wonderfull cunning, through feare of Germanicus whom he by the death of his brother, had adopted the son of a Father in law, flourishing both in all the praise of virtues and famous warlike deeds, and because he was fitter for Government, very greatly mistrusted. This man when he had dispatched successfully the greatest wars, he passed over out of Germany into the East, and he (a) opposed the Parthians, in the year of the City built 769. Cneius Piso, at the same time an ordinary Lieutenent, being sent into Syria: with whom, & Germanicus there were great enimities. Therefore Germanicus was put out, not without suspicion of poyson given him by him, (b) in the year of the City built 772 in the fifth of Tiberius. For that crime, he being required to Rome for judgment, (c) Piso prevented the sentence by a voluntary death.

And then (d) *Elis Seianus*, carried up by Tiberius in the Knight order, after many wickednesses, now determining all the mightiest things in his mind, one letter of Tiberius being delivered to the Senate against him, he is cast down from that top or pitch, and by the hand of the Executioner, was killed with all his flock.

Two years before this time, that is, the 16. of Tiberius, the 29 of Christ, Livia the mother of Tiberius deceased, in (f) the year of her age 86. (g) Tiberius was then in the Island Caprea, whither about the thirteenth year of his reign, of Christ 26. he had departed, never to return afterwards to the City. Where the Judges being removed, he wallowed himself in all kinds of detestable acts. Among these disgraces, not more to all others, than cursed to himself, he died the seventeenth Kalends of April, of his reign the 23d year, of Christ 37. being in the 78 year of his life.

Augustus enjoying the affairs, Jesus Christ, the Son of God is born of the Virgin Mary, under the 194 Olymp. Tiberius reigning, when he had fulfilled the thirty fourth year, for the recovering the salvation of man-kind, he suffered voluntary pains, with the punishment of the Crosse. Tiberius Varro, and Seianus Consuls on the 23 of March. After that, on the third day, rising from the dead, on the fourtieth after he had revived, he was carried back into Heaven, before the eyes of his Disciples.

After the death of Christ, and the Holy Spirit having fallen on the

the Disciples boldly, they professing what they had seen, and openly; the Jews waxed bitterly cruell against them. (a) Stephen one of the seven, who were choien to perform profane and holy services in the company of the Christians, because he more fervently employed himself, in publishing the glory of Christ, being laid hold of by contentious, envious persons, was overwhelmed with stones.

From that time the chief of the Jews endeavoured to blot out the name of the Christians, by what means they could: but especially, (b) Saul burned against them, who, the largest power being made over to him from the High Priest, when as he bended to Damascus, that he might oppresse them, he is affrighted, and being struck down, he suddenly applyed himself wholly unto his worship. That happened on the third year from the death of Christ. For those thirty five years, wherein the Antients affirm Paul to have served Christ, as we have before taught, from the 13 of Nero; of Christ 67, numbred backward; end into that which is the third from the year of Christ's suffering.

## CHAP. II.

Of Caius Caligula, Claudius, and Nero: whose deeds are sharply touched.

From the 37. of Christ, to the 68.

Caius Caesar Caligula, so called from a warlike shoe or sock, which being a boy he was wont to use in the Camps (*Germanicus* his father, his Mother *Agrippina*, the daughter of *Marcus Agrippa*, and *Julia*) succeeded Tiberius, in the same year in which he died, in the year of Christ 37. (d) Who now ending his life is said to have hit or struck against his Jaws with his own hand. He was then entering the twenty fifth year of his age, for he was born faith Suetonius, at Antium the day before the Kalends of September, faith (e) Suetonius, his father and *Capito* being Consuls, which is of the Christian account, the twelfth year. Aftoon as he attained the Empire, there was great gladnesse of the people, nor lesse hope of the Diviners, that he would be like to his father *Germanicus*, (f) to whom it is delivered to memory, all vertues of the mind and body came. And indeed, as there are wont to be for the most part, the best beginnings of the worst Princes, he brought forth not a few signes of a moderate and civill mind; but a little after, as if he had put off Man, he overcame the very wild beasts in cruelty, striving for the slaughters of all ranks of men; he killed (a) *Macro* Lieutenent of the Prætorians, by whose endeavour he had been made Emperour. Also he accustomed to commit whoredome with his sisters. Infinite riches being exhausted, and

Z 2

Anno 37. of  
Christ, to  
the 68.

What things  
happened a  
little after the  
year of suffer-  
ing.

a) Act. 6 & 7.

b) Act. 6.  
The conversi-  
on of Paul.

d) Suet. Caius  
12.  
Caius Caligula.

e) Suet. ch. 8.

f) Suet. in the  
same 3.

a) Dio 59.  
Suet. 26.

tearce

Anno 1. of  
Christ, to  
the 34.

(c) Suet. 19.  
Dio. 9.

(a) Suet. Philo  
of Legat.  
Joseph. 19.  
Ant. ch. 2.  
Suet. 58.

(e) Chap. 59.  
Dio 59.

(f) Suet.  
Claud. Dio 59.

(g) Tacit. b.  
11. Suet.  
Dio 60.

(a) Tacit. 12.  
Suet.

(b) Dio 60.

(c) Suet. Dio.

(d) Suet. Dio.  
62.  
(e) Suet. Nero.  
8.

scarce a year turning about, that whole twenty and seven thousand *H. S.* the which *Tiberius* had gathered together, being consumed, the which amount almost to 72561500 Crowns of Gold, he turned his mind unto banishments, and robberies. Amongst other tokens of cruelty, this word was taken: Would the people of *Rome* had one neck! In his buildings, he coveted to effect no works so much, as what was denied could be effected. (c) He joynted together the middle space of the City, *Baia* in *Campania*, and the heaps or water-dams of *Putoli*, three miles, and fix hundred paces, with a bridge, in the year of Christ 39. (e) The same commanded, if he could, to be worshipped for a God throughout the whole world, and Temples to be built for him. At last the 9th Kalends Febr. he was killed by *Chereas Cassius* a Tribune of the *Pretorian* band, and other conspirators, in the year of Christ 41, when he had reigned three years, and ten Moneths, and eight daies as (e f) *Suetonius* Writeth, but he lived twenty and nine years.

(i) *Claudius Nero* the Uncle of *Caius Caligula*, the son of *Drusus* was chief after *Caius*, a man very little evil by nature, but foolish and blockish: Therefore he was not so much cruell of his own nature, as through others leading, and will, especially of freemen and wives, to whose power he committed himself, and all things. (g) He had first of all *Mesalina* to wife, whose whoredomes and unheard of wickednesses unknown to none, he alone knew not, untill she daring openly to marry *Silius* a Knight, by his command she is killed with the adulterer, *Narcissus* constraining him, who, with *Pallantes* another freeman, could do all things with him. That happened in the eighth year of his reign, of Christ 48. *Dio* and *Tacitus* being witnesses. Another token of foolishness was, that *Mesalina* being slain, of whom he had begotten *Britannicus*, a son, and *Othavia*; he married *Agrippina* the daughter of his brother *Germanicus*, the Mother of *Nero* by *Domitian*, in the ninth year of his reign, of Christ 49. And that at the perswasion of *Pallantes*; whose son (*Nero*) also by the intreaties of *Agrippina*, he adopted in the tenth year of his reign, and *Britannicus* being passed by he ordained him his successeur. The same drove away the Jews from *Rome*, in the year of Christ fourty and nine, the (a) Mathematicians from *Italy*, in the year fifty and two. An expedition being made into the Island *Brittain*, within sixteen dayes he subdued the whole, as saith (b) *Dio*, in the third year of his Empire. He dyeth, *Marcellus* and *Aviolar*, being Confuls, 3. Ides *October*, in the year of Christ fifty four, when as poyson was given him in a Mushrome by *Agrippina*. He (c) reigned thirteen years, eight Moneths, and twenty dayes; he lived sixty four years.

God being angry with the *Romans*, after the death of his father, in law, *Domitius Nero* took the Empire, being (e) seventeen years old, the which in the beginning he so carried on, that he might have

have been accounted the best of Princes: to wit, as long as he obeyed the precepts of his Master *Seneca*. Afterward, being corrupted through the liberty of age, and flattery, he was more like a Monster than a Man. He (i) beat back the *Parthians*, robbing or spoiling, *Armenia* being taken by *Corbulo*, a stout Captain, both of antient vertue and severenesse. Who also received *Armenia* in (g) seventh year of *Nero*, of Christ sixty, and compelled *Tiridates* the brother of *Vologesis*, King of the *Parthians*, to come to *Rome*, and to ask the Crown of *Nero*. Which was done, in the (h) year of Christ, sixty six, of *Nero*, thirteen, in which year also he compelled *Corbulo* honourably called back to dye. Presently as he began to reign, he took away *Britannicus* by poyson. His mother (i) *Agrippina* being first poyled of all honour, and driven out of her Palace, at last he commanded to be killed. Which Parricide least any thing should be wanting to the unhappinesse of those times, the Senate approved of. That fell out in the year of Christ fifty and nine, of *Nero* six. (l) After these things *Poppea* being brought in, which he had taken away from *Otho*, *Othavia* sent a far off, he slayeth. The (m) conspiracy of *Piso* and others against him, being disclosed he punished with death *Lucan*, the Poet, *Seneca* the Philosopher, with very many others in the year of Christ sixty and five, and in the same year he killed *Poppea* being great with child, with a stroke of his heel. He added to this cruelty, the reproach of a most shamefull disgrace, because he feared not to come forth on the Stage among Stage-players, or to play and sing among Harpers, and to ride about Horses, in the Circian or Circle-sports. Moreover that he might set forth the likeness of burning *Troy*, as it were by pastime, he set the City on fire, in the (a) year of Christ sixty four, by which detestable acts, when he had come into the hatred and contempt of his subjects, being forsaken of all, and sought out for punishment, he played the part of an Executioner on himself in the 14. year of his Empire, of the account of Christ, 68. (b) on that day wherein he killed *Othavia*.

Anno 1. of  
Christ, to  
the 34.

(f) Tac. 15.  
Dio 62. Cor-  
bulo an excel-  
lent Captain.  
(g) Tac. 14.

(h) Tac. 16.  
Dio 63.

(i) Suet. 34.  
Tar. 14.  
Dio 61.

(l) Suet. Dio.  
62. Tac. 14.

(m) Tac. 15.  
Dio 62. Suet.

(a) Tac. 15.  
Suet. Dio. 63.

(b) Suet.

### CHAP. III.

*Jewish and Christian affairs under Caius Claudius and Nero.*

From Christ 37. unto 68.

**A**grippa the son of *Aristobulus*, the Nephew of *Herod*, the Elder, being bound by *Tiberius*, because endeavouring for *Caius Caligula*, he had intreated for him the Empire; straightway as soon as *Tiberius* died, he was loosed by *Caius* from bonds, and was endowed with the Tetrarchies of *Philippi*, and *Lysania*, with the title of King, (c) *Josephus* being author; and the year fol-  
lowing

Seeb. 11. of  
doct. times,  
ch. 10. & foll.  
King Agrippa.

(c) Joseph. 18.  
Ant. 8.

Anno 37.  
of Christ,  
to the 68.

(d) Joseph. in  
the same ch.  
12.

(e) Joseph.  
ch. 11.

(f) Phil. b. of  
Embassad.  
Joseph. in the  
same, ch. 10.  
(g) In his Chr.  
& 2. Hist. 7.

(b) Joseph. b.  
19. ch. 4.

(c) Act. 9.

(d) Act. 12.  
Joseph. 19. ch.  
7.

The increase  
of Christian  
affairs.

(c) Euseb. 2.  
Hist. ch. 14.

lowing, the second year of *Caius*, as the same man sheweth, he layd unto his Kingdome, after whose imitation, his sister *Herodias*, who, her husband *Philip* being left, had joynd an incestuous marriage with his brother *Herod Antipater*, Tetrarch of *Galilee*, she contrained this very man to go unto *Rome*, to obtain the Kingly grace. But there, by the letters of *Agrippa*, he finds *Caius* to be offended with him, (d) and he changed his hoped-for honour of King, for banishment, and was sent away to *Lugdunum*, and *Agrippa* increased his Tetrarchy, the which to have happened in the third year of *Caius*, or the fourth entering, will be a little after manifested. At which time *Petronius* was granted successeful to *Vitellius* Lieutenant of *Syria*, to whom it was commanded by *Caius*, that he should place his Image, in the Temple of *Jerusalem*, but *Petronius* prolonging it, in the (e) mean time *Caius* dyed. The Jews also of *Alexandria* being unworthily used by *Flaccus Aulius* the Governour, they sent (f) *Philo*, a noble and discreet man of their own nation, in embassage unto *Caius*, by whom he was shifted off and cast out. Moreover in the same year, *Pilate* weary of his life, as we have learned (a) out of *Eusebius*, brought death on himself.

*Caius* taken from the living, *Claudius* who succeeded him in the year of Christ 41. (b) in that very year he enlarged the Kingdome of *Agrippas* *Judea*, and *Samaria* being added. So the Kingdome of *Herod*, after his death being divided into pieces, *Agrippa* first possessed the whole of it. Who presently going unto *Jerusalem*, he began to persecute the Christians, whereby he might make the Jews friends unto him, and first of all he (c) killed *James*: and then cast *Peter* into Prison: from whence he was snatched forth by the Angel. Neither forbore heavenly anger long, the cruell and ambitious Prince. After three years that he was made King of all *Palestina*, when he was at *Cesarea*, which is called *Strato's* Tower, (d) and made a speech at the Tribunall seat, suffering them to cry him up as it were a god, by the sudden wrath of God he was dispatched by a consumption of worms, issuing out of his body. You shall find the relation of his death in *Josephus*, a little differing from *Luke*. But of the time, that we have spoken he affirmeth; He affirmeth, that he reigned four years, *Caius* being Emperour, three under *Claudius*, in the whole seven years, afterward *Judea* was given to *Syria*, and ceased to have Kings of their own.

In the mean while Christian Godliness began to be increased through *Judea* and *Syria*, and farther also, the Disciples diligently imploying themselves in that matter, and especially *Peter* and *Paul*, of whom, the first travelling over *Syria*, is believed to have fastned the Bishop-seat of *Antiochia*, the seventh year after the suffering of Christ, the 37. of the common account, over which he was chief six whole years; from thence (e) about the second year of *Claudius*, he travelled to *Rome*, as *Eusebius* writeth in his Chronicle, who also sheweth, that *Peter* was Bishop of the City 25 years. *Dionysius Alexandrinus*, with *Eusebius*, is Author, that *Peter* preach-

ed first of all the Faith at *Rome*, or there founded a Church. The beginning of this seat falls into the third year of *Claudius*, of Christ 43, which is the next year from his going thither, when as *Paul* had not as yet come thither, who in the mean time purely administered the Gospell in *Asia* and *Greece*, and *Macedonia*: and in the 25. year after the suffering of Christ, of *Nero* the second, he was brought bound to *Rome*, (f) as *Jerome* witnesseth, which is the year of Christ 56. Therefore *Peter* came to *Rome* long before *Paul*.

*Paul* was heard before *Nero*, and was freed. But when through the endeavour of both Apostles, as appeareth, the Christian faith increased, *Nero* first persecuted it: who when he had set fire on the City, as was above said, in the 11 year of his reign, of the Christian account, 64. he falsly turned away the envy of his wickedness on the Christians. Therefore many were laid hold of, and afflicted with fearfull punishments, so that (a) some being smeared over with Tallow, fat and Pitch, burned like Torches for the use of night-light. Almost at the same time, *Simon Magus*, (b) who, *Philip* carrying the Christian Religion to *Samaria*, had given him that name, and had afterwards returned to mischievous arts, came to *Rome*, and deluded the *Romans* by his impostures. (c) Whom *Peter*, he being carried up into the Ayre, and flying, cast down by his praying. For that thing, by the command of *Nero*, as well he as *Paul*, were condemned of their life, the 3 Kalends of July, in the year of Christ, 67. the thirteenth of *Nero* going out. (d) *Peter*, the soles of his feet being turned inward, was fastned to a Crosse. (e) *Paul* the same day was beheaded with a sword.

No acts almost of the other Apostles are certain, and worthy credit, they lye hid comprehended in History in the dark. Of *Matthew*, (f) *Irenem* writeth the Gospell to be written by him, when *Peter* appointed the *Romane* Church. Also *James* the Lords younger brother, who was ordained the first chief ruler at *Jerusalem* by the Apostles, (g) in the thirtieth year of his seat, the seventh of *Nero*, the Jews slew, which beginneth on the 61 year of Christ. *Simon* succeeded *James*, *Linus*, *Peter*, who hitherto is thought to have been Bishop of some Region.

The time of either chair is supported with Authority. But the *Roman* intervall hath more witnesses than the *Antiochian*. For *Eusebius* alone is the assertor of this, in his Chronicle, who sets down its beginning at the last year of *Tiberius*, from the which in the seventh year after, he marks *Peter* to have gone to *Rome*. But that first rent from the *Antiochian* Seat, is not proper, seeing it neither appeareth in old books; and he teacheth absurdly, *Peter* to have remained 25. years at *Antioch*. Of the *Roman* seat the ancients speak more certainly, whose end was made in *Peters* death, in the year of Christ 67. the 13 of *Nero*, as yet sliding, and the fourteenth at hand, but that fourteenth year is reckoned by *Jerome*, who writeth both the Apostles to have dyed in that very year, and numbred 37 after the suffering of Christ. a) Moreover

Anno 37. of  
Christ, to  
the 68.

Peters seat at  
Rome.

(f) Jerome  
Writ of the  
Church.

The first per-  
secution under  
Nero.

(a) Tacit. Ann.  
13. Suet. 16.  
(b) Act. 8.  
(c) Amob. 2.  
Cyrill. Cat.  
Chrysol. Scr.  
47. 6. Sulp.  
b. 2. Chryl.  
Hom. 18. on  
acts Ephr.  
Ser. of heret.  
803. and o-  
thers.

The death of  
*Peter* and  
*Paul*.

(d) Ambr. on  
118. Pl. Oa.  
21. Euseb. 3;  
of Dem. p. 75.  
Aug. Ser. 28.  
of Sanct.

(e) Jerome of  
Scrip.  
Chryl. hom.  
2. on Ep. Rom  
(f) Iren. b. 2.  
ch. 1.

*James* the  
younger.

(g) Jerome of  
Writ. of the  
Church.

Euseb. Chron.  
The Roman  
seat is demon-  
strated.  
See the 11.  
of Doctr. of  
times, chap.  
13.

(a) Jerome  
of famous  
men.

Anno 68,  
of Christ,  
to 96.

he saith, *Peter* obtained the Roman seat 25 years. Whence it may seem that he made his beginning the 43 year of Christ, but of the seat of *Antioch* six years before, of Christ 37. Neither truly do the Ancients deliver the Roman Church only to be found by *Peter*. But also *Innocent* the first, in his first Epistle, it is manifest, saith he, into all *Italy, France, Spain, Africa, and Sicily*, and the Islands lying between them, none to have ordained Churches, but those Priests whom the reverend Apostle *Peter*, or his successors have appointed: If there be another Apostle, saith he, in these Provinces, they either send him as a Deputy, or he is chosen to have taught.

## CHAP. IV.

Of Galba, Otho, Vitellius, Vespasian, Titus, Domitian; and of the destruction of Jerusalem.

From the 68 of Christ, to 96.

(b) Suet. Ner. ch. 40. & 41. Xiph.

A Little before the death of *Nero*, (b) *Caius Julius*, a redresser of things, who governed *France* as a Prætor, openly falling off, instantly perswaded *Sergius Galba*, governing *Spain*, to take the Empire; the which, he, the redresser being a little while after killed with his own hand, continued steadfastly to do. (c) Thus, *Nero* being taken away, he reigned about seven moneths, already of a great age: and the year following, the 69 of Christ beginning, he perished with *Piso*, him whom he had adopted: when as now *Marcus Sylvius Otho* was proclaimed Emperour. But to this man, there was a very short space of reigning, as of three moneths.

(d) Tac. i. hist. & 2. Suet. in Otho & Vitell. Plut. in Otho, Xiphil.

In the mean time, (d) *Vitellius*, through the boldness of the *Germane* Legions, over whom, as the Consuls Embassadour, he was chief, usurps the name of Emperour; and at *Bebricum* by an easie battel he overcomes the Army of *Otho*, who being weary of Civil arms, killed himself about the moneth of *April*, in the 37th year of his age.

(a) Suet. Tac. Xiphil.

(a) *Vitellius* after *Otho* bare the Empire almost eight moneths in the same year of Christ 69; which space of time he fulfilled not alone. For *Flavius Vespasian*, who was sent by *Nero* to suppress the Jews, *Alexander* Lieutenant of *Egypt*, and *Mucianus* President of *Syria*, helping him, as it were, floring in the slaughter of three Princes, and he undertook an uncertain Empire. (b) First *Tiberius* in the Kalends of *July*, of the year of Christ 69, forced the Legions to an oath in his words; and he, the first day of his principality being celebrated the next day after, saith *Tacitus*,

(b) Tac. hist. 2.

(c) governed the Empire ten years with the greatest equity and clemency. He suffered the freedom of slanderers, and especially of Philosophers, most patiently. Yet he banished *Helvidius Priscus*

(c) Suet. XI. phil.

the

Anno 68 of  
Christ, to  
96.

the son in law of *Thraseas*, by sect a Stoick, and Prætor, being constrained by his too much insolency, and commanded him to be killed, and also he removed the Philosophers, one *Musonius* excepted, from the City, in the year of Christ 73. He embraced Wits and Learning with great liberality. He appointed an hundred pounds yearly to Latine and Greek Rhetoricians, out of his Exchequer. Onely covetousness of money was blamed in him; the which notwithstanding he was wont to excuse with the scarcity of the money-treasury, affirming, That there was four hundred thousand needful, that the Common-wealth might stand. That sum being reduced to our money, will make about 107500000 Crowns of gold.

The Jewish War was finished by that Emperour; unto which being as yet a private man, he was sent by *Nero*, as I have taught above. That had its beginning from some seditious persons; of whom (d) the Captain was *Eleazar* the son of *Arianas* the High Priest; who through shew of Religion raised arms against the *Romans*. Afterwards through the slaughter of their own Country-men, that were slain by the *Cæsarians*, and them of *Scythopolis*, and others here and there, the mad Nation contended the more stoutly against the *Romans*. *Cestius Gallus* the Embassadour of *Syria*, besieging *Jerusalem*, with a great slaughter of his Army is put to flight, in the (e) 12th year of *Nero*, in the moneth of *Novemb.* of Christ 65. The Conquerours returning to *Jerusalem*, as they choose both other Captains of the War, and also *Josephus* the son of *Matthias*, in the (a) year of Christ 67. *Vespasian* coasting about through *Galilee* and *Judea* with weapons, he reduced *Josephus* himself a Captain of the War, into his power: by whom also the Empire was foretold unto him. Last of all setting upon *Jerusalem*, the head of the Nation; straightway being now Emperour, he reneweth the siege by his son *Titus*, that was interrupted by the slaughter of *Nero* and others, in the second year of his reign, of Christ the 70, at the dayes of unleavened bread. And at length; on the (b) 10th of *Lois*, or the 5th day of *August*, the Temple being set on fire, the City was wholly taken, the (c) 8th of *Gorpiaus*, which answers to *Septemb.* 1. the 7th resting day; as *Xiphilinus*, hath declared out of *Dio*.

The destruction of Jerusalem. (d) Joseph. b. 2. of destruct. ch. 17. &c.

(e) Joseph. b. 2. ch. 24. Josephus the Historian.

(a) Joseph. b. 2. of destruct. ch. 14. Suet. Xiph.

(b) Joseph. b. 10. of destruct. ch. 26. (c) The same; book. 64, 7.

That slaughter brought destruction on the Jewish Nation and name, and so great a force of calamity, and such a manifold kind of evils was there, that it did appear for the most unworthy death of that Son of God, those punishments were thoughtly paid them. (d) For both, horrible hunger enforced, those that were shut up within the walls into that madness, that they did eat man's flesh; and also mothers consumed the bodies of their children; and eleven hundred thousand, which was scarce given credit to being spoken, perished in that one siege. Last of all, the City it self being made equal to the ground, (e) over which also the Conquerour thrust in the plow, in the third year of his reign, of Christ 71. (f) *Vespasian* with his son *Titus* triumphed over the Jews;

(d) Joseph. b. 7. of destruct. Dio 68.

(e) Jerome on 8. of Zach.

(f) Joseph. 7. ch. 24. or 44.

A a

and

Anno 68 of  
Christ, to  
96.

(g) The same  
booke, ch. 30.  
or 31.  
(h) Suet.  
Vesp. ch. 14.  
Dio. 65.

(i) Suet. Xi-  
phil.

(a) Xiphil.  
Plin. Jun.  
b. 6. Ep. 16.

(b) Sueton.

(c) Suet.  
Xiphil.

and then he shut up the Temple of *Janus*, and began to build a Temple of Peace. In the same year, the Jews making tumults at *Alexandria*, (g) *Lupus* the Governour stopped up their Temple *Onion*, so called from *Onias* the high Priest, who had founded it. Moreover, in his ninth Consulship, which he bare with *Titus* his son, (h) he deceased, of a discaie, while he answered or heard Embassages, affirming; It behoveth an Emperour to dye standing. This was the 79<sup>th</sup> year of Christ, the eighth day of the Calends of July, when he had lived 69 years, one moneth, seven dayes; he reigned ten years.

(i) Among the best Emperours, *Titus*, who was put in the place of his father *Vespasian*, is by right numbered; although before he reigned, he was mistrusted of cruelty, covetousnesse, and lust. But whatsoever were his manners, in his chief rule he so turned for the better, that he deserved to be called, *The Love and delight of Mankind*. There was an especial fame of meeknesse and readinesse in him. Being wont to deny any thing to none, he said, None ought to depart sorrowfull from his Prince. When after Supper, he had remembered, that he had performed nothing for any one that day; On friends, said he, I have lost a day. He being Emperour, in the year of Christ 80, a great force of flames of fire, and straightway althes, brake out of the Mountain *Vesuvius*. (a) But it passed through into *Africa*, *Syria*, and even to *Egypt*. Two Towns perished, of *Pompey* and *Hercules*. He dedicated the Amphitheatre or Play-house, and hot Baths, with his own name.

He dyeth in the year of Christ 81, in the Ides of September after two years, and as many moneths, and 20 dayes after he had succeeded his father, (b) in the forty and first year of his age, not without suspicion of poyson given him by *Domitian* his brother.

*Titus* dying, had left a great lack of him to the Senate and people. (c) *Domitian* increased that desire, his brother and succeder, the most naught of almost all Princes, who hitherto had, and afterwards lived. But among the beginnings of his principallity, some shew of clemency and justice utter'd it self. But straightway he betrayed his disposition, and shewes himself an imitator of *Nero*, in cruelty, robbery, and riot. Being lavish in gifts and spectacles, he, among other things, appointed a five years game, a three-fold, on the Capitol of *Jupiter*, a musical riding, and exercising game, in the year of Christ 86. He first would be called Lord, and God. When he had made a beginning of reigning in the year of Christ 81, he was quenched by the conspiracy of his Subjects, in the year 96, the fourteenth of the Kalends of O<sup>ctob</sup>. the 45 year of his age, when he had commanded 15 years, six dayes.

CHAP.

# CHAP. V.

Of Christian Affairs, from the death of Nero, unto the last year of Domitian; or from the year of Christ 68, unto 96.

Anno 68 of  
Christ, to  
96.

Christian Affairs of that time, are conversant in no great light: it was rather through the scarcenesse of Writers, than because there was nothing which might have been committed to letters. For it is to be believed, the Apostles and Disciples of Christ to have carried on neither small matters, nor things unworthy to be known: but many things are sprinkled with fables and uncertain tales. And also we have decreed to commit to this booke, not an exact history of all things, but only some chief heads of things.

*Peter* being slain by *Nero*, *Linus* undertook to govern the Roman Church, as (a) ancient Writers affirm, by whom is given by voyce an old table of the Roman Bishops, framed together in the time of *Librius*, the which we have in our possession. They assign to this man 11 years, two moneths, and some dayes; that he deceased in the year of Christ 78, whom *Cletus* afterward succeeded, whom *Irenaeus* calls *Anacletus*, as also many of the Greeks; and he sate twelve years, and seven moneths; and suffered Martyrdom in the year of Christ 91, and had *Clement* his successor. Furthermore, in the (b) 13th of *Domitian*, or 14th, a persecution began to wax hot against the Christian name; in which, Saint *John* the Apostle being banished into the Isle *Patmos*, (c) wrote the *Revelation*, (d) about the death of *Domitian*; when as before at *Rome*, being overwhelmed in burning oyl, he had come forth unhurt; the which (e) *Jerome* approveth of, out of *Tertullian*. Also *Flavius Clemens*, Consul, couzen of *Domitian*, and his Wife *Flavia Domitilla*, kinswoman of the same Emperour, suffered; on whom the crime of ungodlinesse and Judaisme was cast, as (f) *Dio* writeth; *Eusebius* saith, or *Jerome* in his Chronicle, *Domitilla* was the Nephewes of *Clement* the Consul by his sister; and he nameth the same Virgin, a famous Roman Martyr.

Moreover, there were many Hereticks in the same space of time; but the chief, *Simon Magus*, cast down from on high by the Apostle *Peter*: *Nicolas*, from whom the Sect of the *Nicolasians* flowed forth. (g) *Hymenaeus*, *Philetus*, *Phygellus*, *Alexander*, of whom the Apostle makes mention. (h) *Ebion*, after the destruction of *Jerusalem*, spread the poysons of his heresie, as *Epiphanius* writeth. *Menander* also, and *Cerinthus* lived in those dayes.

A a 2

CHAP.

(a) 2 Tim. 1.  
2. 24.  
(b) Epiph.  
har. 30.

The Roman  
Bishops.  
(a) Iren. b. 5.  
ch. 3. Terr.  
Carm. against  
Mar. b. 3.  
Euseb. Chron.  
Epiph. har.  
28.

(b) Euseb.  
Chron.

(c) Jerome of  
Writ. of the  
Church.  
(d) Iren. b. 5.  
ch. 30.  
(e) Jerome l. 1.  
in Jovin.

(f) Dio b. 67.



## CHAP. VI.

*Of Men excelling in the praise of Learning, who flourished from the birth of Christ, to the death of Domitian, almost a whole Age.*

Anno 96. of  
Christ, to  
138.

(a) Phil. of  
Embaf.

(b) Sen. Ep.  
63.

(c) Strabo.  
13.  
Famous Poets.

(d) Joseph. in  
End of 10.  
book.

(e) Phot. b.  
35.

(f) Plin. Jun.  
b. 6, Ep. 6.

**T**He Eloquence, and likewise the wisdom of *Philo* the Jew, made famous this Age; (a) who performed an Embassage for the Jews of *Alexandria*, with *Caius* the Emperour. As also *Musinius Tyrrhenus* sprung from the *Vulfinians*, by Sect a Stoick, who lived in *Nero's* time, as saith *Suidas*. *Apollonius Tyaneus*, a familiar friend of *Musonius*. *Demetrius* the Cynick much (b) praised by *Seneca*. But *Seneca* himself, the Stoick, was accounted far more famous, and the Master of *Nero*, and compelled by the same to dye. Under *Tiberius* flourished (c) *Strabo* a Philosopher, and likewise a Geographer. Under *Nero* famous Poets, were *Lucan Silius an Italian*, who being Consul, *Nero* dyed. *Persius* a writer of Satyrs. A little after, under *Domitian*, *Martial*, *Valerius Flaccus*, *Statius Juvenal*. Historians, *Suetonius*, *Tacitus*; Among the Jews (d) *Josephus*, who in the 13th year of *Domitian*, about the 93 of Christ finished the Jewish Antiquities, in the 56 year of his age, as he professeth. So he should be born in the 37th year of Christ, the first of *Caius Caligula*, the which he himself witnesseth in his life. His equal and imitator was *Iustus Tiberiadensis*, of whom (e) *Photius*. Also, *Vespasian* being Emperour, *Quintus Curtius*, a most polished or fine Historian is reported to have lived. Under *Tiberius*, *Appio* a Grammarian, born at *Alexandria*, bare the conquest of divers kinds of Learning; *Plinius* the elder, who, in the second year of *Titus*, while he beholdeth the flame of the Mount *Vesuvius* nearer than was safe, he was (f) quenched in the 80 year of Christ. Likewise *Pliny* the younger born of his sister, was famous under *Domitian* and *Trajan*, and *Quintilian* at the same time. *Afconius Pedianus*, a most noble Interpreter of *Cicero*, in the 7th year of *Vespasian*, as *Jerome* writeth in his Chronicle, being 73 years old, he was taken blind, he lived afterward twelve years.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of Nerva, Trajanus, and Hadrianus, and what things most remarkable have been done by them, and in their times.*

*From the 96 year of Christ, unto the 138.*

(a) Dio. 68.  
Aur. victor.  
Eutr. 5.

(a) **C**occeius *Nerva*, born in the Town of *Narney*, being already full of years, took the Empire after *Domitian*, in the 96 year of Christ's Nativity, and reigned one year, four moneths, and eleven dayes, a very good Prince, but despised by reason of his age,

Anno 96. of  
Christ, to  
138.

age; he revoked *Domitian's* Acts, and restored those that by violence and injustice had been nullified. He said, That he had so lived in the Throne, that he nothing feared to live securely, if he should be a private man again. But he wanted authority for to keep the Souldiery under: Therefore they that had slain *Domitian*, of whom he had received the Empire, he himself opposing to it, were killed by the Pretorian bands; wherefore he adopted for his son, *Trajanus*, then governing *Germany*, (b) with whom he lived three moneths; he dyed the 6th of *February*-Kalends, (c) having lived 65 years, 10 moneths, and 10 dayes: *Eutropius* saith, he lived 72 years.

(b) Viñor.  
(c) Dio.

Then *Ulpus Trajanus* took the Empire upon him in *Collen-Agripina*, the 98 year of Christ, being then 42 years old, born in the City *Tudertina*, as *Viñor* (d) writeth. *Eutropius* saith, that he was born in *Spain* near *Italy*; he was strong and expert in military affairs, wise, moderate, and courteous; so that by the general consent of all, he deserved the name of *Very good*. *Eutropius* saith, That his friends blaming him, because he was too familiar and courteous to all sorts of persons; he answered them, That He was such an Emperour to private persons, as when he was a private person he did desire Emperours to be towards him. He added to the Roman Provinces *Dacia* of *Schythia*, having conquered *Decebalus* the King, who dyed by his own proper hands the 102 year of Christ. (e) Being gone into the East, he subdued the *Armenians*, *Iberians*, the *Colchians*, the *Sarmates*, the *Osrhoines*, the *Arabians*, and the *Bosphorians*. Falling upon the *Parthians*, he brought under his power *Seleucia*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Babylon*, and several other Cities. But while he sails into the red-Sea, most of these people revolted from him, whom soon both in his own person, and by his Commanders he subdued again. (a) A huge Earthquake, whilest that he swayed the Scepter, overthrew *Antioch*, in the year of Christ 115;

(d) Dio. 1. 68.  
Victor. Eutrop. 8.

Trajan's golden Proverb.

(e) Dio. Ep. Ioh. Chro.

(a) Dio.

by which were stricken *Messala* and *Pedo*, of whom *Pedo* was on a sudden smothered in the ruine, *Trajanus* being drawn out through a window, escaped hardly. The *Cyrenian* Jews also with much cruelty against the *Romans* and *Grecians* did over-run *Egypt* and *Cyprus*, whom *Trajanus* defeated with a great slaughter, by *Martius Turbo*. At length the *Parthians* rebelling, who had chafed away the King given to them by the Roman Emperour, disposing himself to war against them, he fell sick, and of that disease, being carried into the City *Selinuntus* of *Cilicia*, there he dyed the 4th of August, the 117 year after Christ's birth, and from him was the City called *Trajanopolis*, he lived, as *Viñor* Records, 64 years; and *Eutropius* saith 63; he ruled the Empire 19 years, 6 moneths, and 15 dayes, as (b) *Diod.* saith.

(b) Dio. 68.  
(c) Spartia.  
Dio. 66.  
Victor. Eutrop. 8.

(c) *Aelius Hadrianus*, *Trajan's* Cousen-german and his Country-man, (for he was an *Italian*) by *Plotina's* favour, which was *Trajan's* Wife, began to reign in the 117 year of Christ; A man of much Wit and great sagacity, and fit for vertue, as well as for vice: he applied his mind almost to all sorts of Arts, both of

Anno 96. of  
Christ, to  
138.

(d) Spart.  
Dio. 69.  
Xiphil. Euseb.  
Chron.  
Oros. 7.  
c. 13.

Greg. Naz.  
Orat. 12.

(b) Spart.  
Dio. 69.  
Eutrop.  
Vita.

Dio. 69.  
Xiphil. Spart.  
vide 11. de  
Doct. Temp.  
c. 21.

of the exquisitest and smallest, the masters whereof, as emulators with him, he was wont to put down; he had an excellent memory, and he was careful and diligent in his Government of the Provinces, and therefore did no man travel so many Countreys as he did. After Trajan's death, he left *Parthia*, *Armenia*, *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*, he had also forsaken *Dacia*, had he not feared the loss of many thousand Roman Citizens that were in it.

(d) The Jews rising up in arms, were first suppressed under him by *Martinus Turbo* in the second year of his Empire. After this, he repaired *Jerusalem*, which he called *Ælia Capitolina*, and brought a Colony to it; and in the very same place where the Temple had been, there he built another to *Jupiter*. The which deed so moved the spirits of the Jews, that having taken up arms more fiercely than ever afore under their General *Barcocheba*, against whom *Hadrian* sent *Severus*, whom he had sent for from the *Britains*, with other chief Officers, by whom the Jews being by little and little suppressed, were at last utterly defeated, and in that battel were killed of the Jews fourscore thousand men, as *Diod.* saith, beside an infinite number that were devoured by famine, by sickness, and fire, so that all *Palestine* was almost reduced to a desert. From that time the Jews were forbidden to return to *Jerusalem* under pain of death, except for one day in the year to lament their great loss. This War was put to a period in the 135 year of Christ, at which time *Hadrian* was going into the twentieth year of his Empire.

(b) At last, growing ancient, and sickly, having no children, he adopted *Cæionus Commodus Verus* for his son, whom he named *Ælius Verus*, and created him *Cæsar*, in the 137 year of Christ; But he dyed in January-Kalends on the very next year, as *Spartianus* writeth. Thereupon *Hadrian* being sick, he adopted *Arrius Antoninus*, who afterwards was called *Pius*, upon those terms, that he should adopt two others to himself, viz. *Annius Verus*, *Ælius Verus* his son; and *Marcus Aurelius Antoninus*. At length, having killed *Servianus*, his sisters husband, a man of 90 years of age, having with vexation and weariness of his life several waies attempted to dispatch his life, he at last dyed at *Baia* the 6th of July, in the year of Christ 138, in the presence of *Antoninus Pius*, having lived 62 years, five moneths, and 17 dayes; and having reigned 22 years, and 11 moneths.

CHAP.

# CHAP. VIII.

Of *Antoninus Pius*, *M. Aurelius Verus*, *Commodus*.

Anno 138 of Christ, unto 192.

Anno 138.  
of Christ, to  
the 192.

*Antoninus Pius*, adopted by *Hadrian*, governed the Roman Empire in the year of Christ 138, with so much virtue and goodness, that he excelled all other examples. For he governed the Common-wealth rather by a fatherly, then Princely affection; and he governed the whole World by his sole authority; without any war, all the time of his Empire; therefore was he compared with *Numa*. The Forrain and far distant Princes and people did so dread him, that they would make him the Arbitrator of their differences, he forbid enquiry to be made after them that had conspired against him. He dieth in the year of his age 70, and of his Empire twenty four, *Victor* gives him up seventy two years, he died in the hundred sixty one year after Christ's Nativity, in the Moneth of March having taken the Scepter, the fifth of July, in the one hundred thirty eighth year of Christ; so that he Governed the Empire two and twenty years, and almost eight Moneths.

After him, ruled the Empire *M. Antoninus Verus*, *Pius*'s son in law; For he had in marriage his daughter *Valeria Faustina*. He from his very youth being brought up and instructed in the studies of virtue, as well as of all other Arts, he had vertue no lesse in his life and manners, then in his speeches and profession. At first he made *L. Ælius Verus*, to whom he had married his daughter *Lucilla*, his companion in the Government of the Empire; and then did first two Emperours by name of *Cæsars* rule at once. And this thing was so full of dignity and novelty, that some of the chief Consuls, took hence their order of Consuls, saith *Spartianus*. (b) They then reigned eleven years together, as the same with *Eutropius* Records, being of a contrary manner of his life: for *Verus* was sloathfull, drowned in riot and pleasure, and of an uncivill and unmanly disposition, which was moderated and mitigated by his brother's reverence and respect: By whom being sent against the *Parthians*, he for the space of four years, had by his chief officers prosperous success. Therefore they both triumphed over the *Parthians*: Then, after it, they undertook the *Marcoman-Wars*. But *Verus* died in that exploit of the Apoplexy, between *Concordia* and *Alinum*, in the 171 year of Christ's birth, if he attained the eleventh year of his Empire; or in the 189, if he did not exceed the ninth, for *Eusebius*'s Chronicles mention both: Therefore did *M. Aurelius* alone, fight for the space of three years with the *Marcomans*, to whom the *Quades*, the *Vandalls*, the *Sarmates*, the *Suedes*, and all the other barbarous nations there-about those parts, had joined themselves to; and at last overcame them in a most dangerous

Capitolinus  
Victor. Eutrop.  
8.

(b) Spart. in  
Veto. Eutrop.  
8.  
Capitol.

Anno 130  
of Christ,  
to 192.

Volcar. Gallus

Xiphil. Capi-  
tol. Herodia r.  
Victor. Eutrop.

Lampr.

gerous fight: whereing his Army languishing and perishing for want of water, the Christian Legion refreshed them with that rain that by their prayers they had obtained from Heaven, the which (as *Eusebius* sheweth) was the 174 year after. The publick treasure being spent, and exhausted, lest he should burthen any one by taxes, he sold and pawned all the plates, ornaments and Jewells that belonged to his imperiall Majesty, and after his victory he repayed the price back again to them that had bought them, and were willing to render them back: *Avidius Cassius* upon a false report of his death took the Government upon himself, and, after it, was killed within three Moneths. *M. Aurelius* having Governed the Empire 19 years, and 11 Moneths, he died in *Vienna*, of sicknesse, in the 180 year of Christ, being aged 59. years as *Victor* saith: for he was born, *Verus* his Grandfather being Consul, the Author of the Capitoll being *Augur*, which agrees with the 121 year of Christs birth.

To this very good father succeeded a very bad son *Aurelius Commodus Antoninus*, full of cruelty, lust, covetousnesse, and of sordid and villanous and mechanicall arts, unfit and unworthy an Emperour; very like to *Nero* for filthy life and conversation: Having quelled all in *Germany*, he triumphed in *Rome*: He killed *Lucilla* his sister, which with severall others had conspired against him. The Annuall Prefect *Prætor*, being the Judge of the fact, who himself being soon after deprehended in the same fault, had his head cut off: from that time were two invested with the Pretors office. To the perennall office succeeded *Cleander*, who for his cruelty and covetousnesse was hated of the people, who by the command of *Commodus*, was killed for having raised a sedition. He is insnared by the conspiracy of them of his own, whom he had appointed to death, and so he dieth, having swayed the Scepter twelve years, nine Moneths, and 14. dayes, as saith *Xiphilinus*, after he had lived one and thirty years and four Moneths: he died the first day of January-Calends, in the year 192 after Christs birth.

## CHAP. IX.

*Eynhom the Christian Interest, either by their blood, or by their rights, hath been defended, and under what Princes, and what were the worthy and renowned persons of that time, both of Gentiles and Hereticks for their Doctrine.*

Hier. de Script.  
er.  
Plin. l. 10.  
Ep. 68. Euf.  
3. Hist. c. 33.  
et in Chres.  
Text. Apol.

Whilest that *Trajan* ruled the Roman Empire, no new persecution suddenly arose; but *Domitian's* edict once published, caused some Martyrs. Amongst whom, was that renowned Bishop of *Rome*, *St. Clement*, who died in the third year of *Trajan's* Empire, having been nine years and six Moneths Bishop of the Diocese; whom *Anacleus* succeeded.

But

But in *Bythinia*, *C. Plinius*, Proconsull questioning the Christians, and finding them ordinarily accused of false crimes, having received an answer from *Trajan*, he desisted from farther enquiry; so that he punished onely those that were obstinate and refractory, being brought before him.

Again, about the tenth year of *Trajan's* Empire, was the third persecution stirred up; wherein *Simeon*, *Cleophas's* son, being 120. years old, was crucified: And also *Ignatius* brought out of *Asia* to *Rome*, is exposed to Lions in the Amphitheater, in the 108 year of Christs birth: and *Maximus* Martyr is mistaken, to place *Ignatius's* death before that of *Domitian*, because that *Dionysius* in his 5. ch. mentions *Ignatius* amongst the divine names. *Oneimus*, also *St. Pauls* Disciple, Bishop of *Ephesus* suffers for Christs name, and Pope *Anacleus* having had the Sea of *Rome*, 9. years and 3. Moneths, yet *Euarius* excepts him.

*Trajan's* successor, viz. *Hadrian*, increased the persecution, and shewed himself very cruell towards many Martyrs. Pope *Euarius* being by him put to death, left the seat to *Alexander*, which he by his Martyrdome in the 15. year of *Hadrian's* Empire left to *Sixtus*, *Fausinus*, and *Jovita*, both of *Brixia* in *Italy*, by his command having been put to death, about the fourth year of his Empire.

Under *Antonius Pius's* Empire, *Justine Martyr* made his first Apology and defence; and the other he made under *M. Aurelius*, and *L. Verus*; at the beginning of whose Empire, he underwent a most famous Martyrdome.

And these Roman Bishops suffered Martyrdome for Christs cause, *Sixtus* in the second year of *Antoninus Pius's* Empire, having officiated in the place near upon ten years. *Telephorus* in the 14 year of his Empire. *Haginus* in the 18. And *Pius* in the 5. year of *Aurelius*: To *Pius* succeeded *Anicetus*, who also suffered Martyrdome, in the 13 year of his Empire. Then to *Rome* went *Polycarpus*, the Bishop of the Church in *Asia*, and soon after about the seventh year of *Marcus Aurelius's* Empire, he underwent a most excellent combat for Christ in *Asia*. *Pionus* suffered also the same Martyrdome in the same Province: *Soter* having possessed the See of *Rome* four years after *Anicetus*, filled the place of the Emperours sacrifice; and to him was subrogated *Eleutherius*, about the 17 year of *M. Aurelius's* Empire, when in the *Gauls* and *France* many Christians suffered Martyrdome by the Emperours cruell edicts, amongst whom the Martyrs at *Lions* were the eminentest, chiefly, the Bishop *Photinus*, *Aitalus*, *Alexander Medicus*, *Blandina*: "And then were those the first Martyrdoms that were seen in *France* (saith *Severus*) Gods Religion being seriously received, and sincerely entertained beyond the Alps.

This came to passe in the 177 year after Christ, *St. Beatrix* also with her seven sons, suffered under *Aurelius*: Many excellent persons in that age, did defend the Christian faith against the Gentiles and Hereticks, as *Agrippa Castor*, who in *Hadrian's* time

Anno 96. of  
Christ, to  
the 192.

*Trajan's* Persecution:  
Euseb. Chron.  
and 3. Hist. c.  
32. & following.

Ada. S. S.  
Faust. et Jov.

*Justin Martyr*.  
Euseb. b. 4.  
Hist. c. 16.  
Nic. 1. de  
script.

*Polycarpus*.  
Iren. b. 3. c.  
3. Euf. b. 4.  
Hist. c. 14.  
and following.  
and Chron.

Euseb. l. 5.  
Hist. c. 1. and  
following.

Lib. 2.

Martyrolog.  
Rom.  
Euseb. 4. Hist.  
Hier. de script.

Anno 96. of  
Christ, to  
the 129.

Scriptores Ec-  
clesiastici, Pa-  
pias.

Xiphil. et Eu-  
seb. Chron.

Capitol. Euf.  
Chron.

Ptole. b. 7.  
270. Græ.

Philostr. Euf.  
Chron. Suid.

Suid.

Suid.

Capitol.

writ against *Basilides* the Heretick, *Quadratus* and *Aristides* the Athe-  
nian, who made the Christian Religion's Apology and defence,  
the same being Emperour.

Also like to them was *Papias*, John's Disciple, and *Hegesippus*  
who is recorded by *Hieronymus*, to have lived at Rome under *Ani-*  
*cetus*, and *Eleutherus*; that is, *Marcus Aurelius* and *Commodus* being  
Emperours, when *Melito* of *Sardis*, and *Apollinaris* the Hierapoli-  
tan, and *Dionysius* the Corinthian being Bishops, and *Athenagoras*  
the Athenian Philosopher, did spread abroad the fame of Godli-  
ness and Orthodox doctrine.

Amongst the Gentiles under *Trajan*, *Plutarchus* the *Cheronæan*  
was esteemed a notable and renowned Philosopher: so was also  
*Dio*, the *Prusæna*; under *Hadrian*, *Favorinus*, *Euphrates* the *Stoick*,  
who charged with age and sickness ended his dayes, with a  
draught of poyson, by *Hadrian's* leave. Also *Sextus*, *Agathobolus*,  
*Oenomaus*, under *Antoninus Pius*, did *Taurus Berisius* the *Platonick*  
live. Likewise *Arrianus* the *Nicomedian* Philosopher and Histo-  
rian. *Maximus Tyrius*, *Apollonius Chalcidicus* the *Stoick*, and *Ba-*  
*silides* the *Scythopolitan*; who were all *M. Aurelius's* tutors, in whose  
time *Peregrinus* the Philosopher, surnamed *Proteus*, burnt himself  
in the fire that was made at the Olympick-play in *Pisæ*, in the  
236 Olympiad, as *Eusebius* writeth in his Chron. *Lucius* mentions  
him in a particular book that he made of his death. *Menelaus* the  
Mathematician first observed in the first year of *Trajan*, the Moon  
in the sign of *Virgo*, in the 98 year after Christ, and a little after  
*Ptolemy* the Prince of *Astronomers* appeared under *Hadrian* and  
*Antoninus*.

For witty learning, and excellent speech, under *Trajan* the  
Emperour were esteemed *C. Plinius* the younger; *Dio Prisen*  
whom *Trajan* did wonderfully honour *Polemo*, of *Laodicea*, near *Ly-*  
*cus* the Rhetorician, and Sophista *Aristides's* Master who flourish-  
ed under *Hadrianus*, *Fronto* that famous Oratour, *Philostratus* of  
*Lernius*; *Herodes*, the *Athenian*, who was renowned in the time of  
these Emperours, *Trajan*, *Hadrian*, and *Antoninus*; *Hermogenes*  
the *Tarsian*, whom *Suidas* mentions to have been professor in  
Rhetorick with great admiration, when he was but 18. years old,  
and at the 24. year of his age, to have utterly forgotten all; no  
discontentment nor sickness appearing, to have waxed old in an  
extream folly and ignorance. *Phlegon*, *Hadrian's* servant, who  
produced his work unto the two hundred twenty ninth Olympiad,  
that is, unto *Hadrian's* death, and unto the hundred thirty seventh  
year after Christ. In the same age flourished *Galenus*, who was  
esteemed the Prince of Physicians.

These set forth Histories; *Pausanias*, *Herodes's* equal, *Appianus*,  
*Justinus*, *Eliauus Prænensis*, who for his own eloquence was pre-  
ferred to the *Grecians*: Also *Lucianus*, and *Apuleius* who followed  
him, all gallant Historiographers, are esteemed to have lived  
about this time. And of great Doctors at Law, these, in *Trajan's*  
and *Antoninus's* time, are esteemed most remarkable, *Nervius*  
*Priscus*,

*Priscus*, *Domitius Labes*, *Salvius Julianus*, *Volusius Matianus*. Gram-  
marians, *Aper*, *Pollio*, *Eutychius*, *Proculus Siccensis*, *Aulus Gel-*  
*lius*.

(d) The Hereticks under *Trajan* and *Hadrian*, most memorable,  
were these; *Elxais*, who, as *Epiphanius* saith, joyned himself to the  
*Offenes*, *Saturninus Antiochenus*, *Basilides Alexandrinus*, *Carpocrates*,  
of whom issued that unlucky sect of the *Gnosticks*. *Prodicus* and  
*Marcio Ponticus*, whom we find to have spread his poysonous  
doctrine about the 134th year of Christ, which was in the latter  
end of (c) *Hadrian's* life, came to Rome: *Cerdo*, *Tatianus*, *Justin*  
*Martyr's* disciple, the heretic of the (f) *Cataphrygians*, whereof  
*Montanus* was Author, and *Priscilla* and *Maximilla*, two mad and  
silly women, sprung up under *Aurelian's* Empire, as the *Annals*  
do testifie.

Amongst the Hereticks must these two Interpreters of the Bible  
be reckoned who lived in that Age, *Aquila*, a man half a Jew,  
and half a Christian, who, as (g) *Epiphanius* relates, lived unto  
*Hadrian's* time; and *Symmachus*, who writ under *M. Aurelius*,  
*Theodosius* was not far from these, as we have already observed.

## CHAP. X.

Of *Commodus*, *Pertinax*, *Julian*, *Severus Caracalla*, *Geta*, *Macrinus*,  
*Alagabalus*, *Alexander*.

Anno 193. of Christ, unto 235.

*Commodus* being slain in the beginning of the 193 year after  
Christ, *Helvius Pertinax* was made Emperour by them  
who had destroyed *Commodus*: who when he intended to govern  
the Common-wealth with good Lawes, and to crush the military  
ambition and rudeness, was cut off the 88th day of his Empire,  
at whose death *Didius Julianus* did presume to aspire to the govern-  
ment of the Empire, then floating and tottering. But two months  
and five dayes after, he is forsaken by the same persons; because  
he could not give them the whole gratuity and recompence that  
they expected, he is slain by *Septimius Severus's* command.

For this man being born in *Africk*, and Governour of *Pannonia*,  
through a shew of avenging *Pertinax*, he violently took the Empire  
upon himself. And first he discharged the Pretorian bauds cir-  
cumvented by his own servants for murdering *Pertinax* unwor-  
tily; then he went against *Pescennius Niger* Governour of *Syria*,  
and *Clodius Albinus* Governour of *Brittain*, and both competitors  
of the Empire. *Niger* being the first overcome, (*Antioch*, where  
he had fled, being taken) flying to *Euphrates*, was killed, as saith  
*Herodianus*. *Spartianus* saith, That he was killed near *Cyzicum*:  
*Niger* being suppressed, *Severus* took *Byzantium*, which persisted  
still in his obedience, after three years siege: and having deposed

Anno 193  
of Christ,  
to 235.

(d) Euseb. 4.  
h. st. Epiph.  
Hær. 19. & 27.

(c) Vide  
animad. ad  
Epiph. p. 83.

Iren. 1. 3. c. 4.  
Euf. 4. hist.

(f) Euf. Chr.  
Epiph. hær.  
48.

The Greek  
Interpreters  
of the Scrip-  
ture.

(g) Epiph. de  
Mens. et  
pond.

In animad. ad  
Epiph. p. 399.

Herod. 2. Xi-  
phil. Capitol.  
Eutr. Victor.

Spart. & alii  
Superiores.

Byzantium  
taken.

Anno 193  
of Christ,  
to 235.

Lions destroy-  
ed.

Spart.

Xiph.

Spart. Herod.  
4. Xiphil.  
Eutr. Vict.

it both of walls and of freedom, made it tributary to the *Perinthians*, near upon the fifth year of his Empire.

Having quieted all things in the East, he turned his arms against *Clodius Albinus*, whose friendship hitherto he had procured to himself, by offering him the dignity of *Cæsar*: encountering him with his Army near *Lions* in *France*, many being slain on both sides, and amongst the rest, *Albinus* himself, he alone enjoyed the Government. The City was burnt and demolished, and *Albinus*'s head sent to Rome, and much cruelty was used towards those of his party and his friends.

Thence again being gone into the East, he subdued the *Parthians*, the *Adiabians* and the *Arabians*, he granted a Charter of Corporation to the *Alexandrians*. *Plautianus* in the mean while governing all things at Rome, whose daughter *Plautilla* he had betrothed to his son *Antoninus*, and their wedding was solemnized about the tenth year of *Severus*'s Empire, and he had as much for her portion, as would have been a sufficient dowry for fifty Queens. But not long after, near upon the 204th year of Christ, *Plautianus* himself conspiring against the General, is slain by *Antoninus* his son in law, and many more were put to death after him, who were his Confederates in the Conspiracy.

*Severus* went to *Britain* in the 15th year of his Empire, with his two sons; *Bassianus*, whom he surnamed *Antoninus*, and had made *Augustus* in the seventh year of his Empire; and with *Geta*: There, having had a prosperous success of his affairs for four years space, he retired himself, and fortified it with a wall all round about the Island, and there at length he dyeth at *York* the ninth of *February*, in the year of Christ 211, his eldest son having often plotted against him, after he had governed the Empire 17 years, eight moneths, and three dayes. At his death he left in store seven years' revenues and provisions; so that every day might be spent seventy five thousand bushels of corn, and of oyl as much as might suffice all *Italy* in five years.

*Antoninus Caracalla*, and *Geta*, *Severus*'s two sons, by equal right obtained the Government of the Empire, after their father's death, in the year as I have said, 211 of Christ, who by reason of their contrary nature, had daily and continual dissention and difference together: *Geta* was of a meek and civil nature; the other was a turbulent and fiery man: by whom in the second year of his Empire was his brother, aged 23 years, slain, in the very bosom of their Mother, under a shew of a particular discourse, in the 212th year after Christ, as *Xiphilinus* doth record, and soon upon it was an infinite number of his favourites and friends put to death, amongst whom was that great Doctor in the Law *Papinianus*, because he would not by Law excuse his murder. After this *Antoninus* went into the East, and there he made a great slaughter of the *Alexandrian* Citizens, because they had once spoken some words against him, he deceitfully invaded *Artabanus* King of the *Parthians*, and spoiled his Kingdom, at length, six years and two moneths

Anno 193  
of Christ,  
to 235.

Capitol.  
Lamprid.  
Herodianus  
Xiph. Vict.  
Eutrop.

moneths after his father's death, he is slain by a Marshal Centurion, or Captain, by the order of *Opilius Macrinus* the Pretor, between *Edeffa* and *Carra* the sixth of April, as *Xiphilinus* saith in the year of Christ 217, and in the 29 of his age; but *Spartianus* gives him 43.

*Macrinus*, a year and two moneths after he had usurped the Empire, being slain by his Souldiers, *Aurelius Antoninus Alagabalus Varius*, together with *Diadumenus*, descended of *Jupiter's*, or *Sol's* Priest, commonly thought, though falsely, *Caracalla's* son, took the Empire. He was the vilest of all men, insomuch, that having cast off all manhood, he disformed himself into a woman, and did suffer any thing in his body. Therefore having ruled three years and nine moneths, by the consent of the Souldiers, he was slain with his Mother *Semiamira* or *Julia*, in the 222 year of Christ, his corps being dragg'd in the channel, and thence drawn into the River *Tiber*, in the 18th year of his age. Most Authors attribute to his Empire, two years and some moneths; and to his age 16 years: but we rather adhere to *Xiphilinus*, whose account is given in another place, where mention is made of *Alexander*.

In the year of Christ 222, *Aurelius Severus Alexander* obtained the Empire, having been made *Cæsar* the year before. A Prince far surpassing all in goodnesse; and most excellent and valiant, both in peace and war. He was wonderfully diligent either in giving judgment, or in requiring justice of the Judges, he reprehended and corrected those who by favour or bribes did exceed the bonds of Justice and right; he banished out of his Court all flatterers, scoffers, and shames of the Court. He forbade the Magistrates Offices to be bought, asserting, That it could not be, but what one had bought, he would sell it again for hire-sake; Therefore he did give a Salary out of the Treasury to the Governours of the Provinces, lest they should be burthen some to the people.

He was not an enemy to Christ; for he worshipped him in his Chappel, not being suffered by the Senate to give him any public divine honour, and to build him a Temple: In ministering Justice, he made use of the industry of the chiefest and ablest Lawyers, as (a) *Ulpianus*, *Pomponius*, *Celsus*, *Modestinus*, *Paulus*, *Proculus*, *Venuleius*. Of these, *Ulpianus* being advanced to the Pretorian dignity, he was killed in a mutiny of Souldiers, as *Zosimus* affirms. But he was a gallant Warrior, as well as an industrious Lawyer. In the fifth year of his Empire, *Ariaxerxes the Persian*, having overcome the *Parthians* in three field-battels, and slain their King *Artabanus*; he re-established the *Persian* Empire in the East, by whom the Magi began to be esteemed, as *Agathias* writes. Against whom, making incursion upon the Roman Territories, when *Alexander* could not affright him away by his Letters, he went out with an Army, and overcame him; as *Lampridius* records out of the Acts of the Senate; and triumphed the 7th of October. Although this Author relates, That *Herodianus* hath

(a) Lamprid.  
Zosimus 1.

Herodia. 6.  
Agath. 1.  
p. 61.  
Persians recover their Empire.

written

Anno 193  
of Christ,  
to 235.

Hier. in  
Chron. & Eul.  
Orof. 7. c. 5. 8.

Lamprid. in  
Alexander.  
Herod. 6.  
Zosim. 1.

written concerning this, far otherwife. Having performed this Expedition, he undertook another against the *Germans*, wherein by the conspiracy of a few Souldiers, he is killed with his Mother at *Moguntiacum*, who as long as he lived, shewed himself obedient, even unto envy itself; so say *Lampridius*, *Herodianus*, and *Zosimus*, by *Maximinus*, who had usurped the Empire, having betrayed him with his Mother. These things were done in the 235th year of Christ. He governed the Empire a little more than 13 years, and lived 29, and 3 moneths.

## CHAP. XI.

*Of the Christian Affairs in the time of those Emperours; and of the most famous Persons for Piety and Doctrine.*

Eul. 5. hist.  
c. 27.

IN the same year that *Commodus* was slain, Pope *Eleutherus* dying, had *Victor* of *Africa* for his Successour; who, excommunicated from the Church, *Theodotus*, a Tanner of *Byzantium*, having an erroneous opinion of Christ: then he pacified and composed the Controversie touching Easter, both in *Rome* and in other places by assembly of Synods: And he also intended to separate from the communion the *Asians*, who continued to celebrate it after the Jewish custom; but (a) *Irenæus* dissuaded him from this resolution: In the time of his Papacy, was the tempest of persecution very grievous upon the Christians, which *Eusebius's* Chronicles record to have been in the tenth year of *Severus*, and in the 202 of Christ. In this persecution, *Leonides*, *Origen's* Father, of *Alexandria*; and *Irenæus* of *Lions*, with almost all his people, did suffer Martyrdom. This persecution extended so far as to *Africa*, first under the government of *Saturninus*, then of *Scapula*, in that Province.

(a) Euseb. 6.  
hist.

Martyr. Rom.  
Jun. 28.

Tertul. in  
Scap.

Under *Alexander* the Emperour the Church did enjoy peace; for he is said to have been friendly to the Christians; yet taking into his counsel those, who, as they were best learned in the Law, so likewise were the bitterest and cruellest against Christians, then also were some few Martyrs put to death; amongst whom *Cecilia* was eminent; with *Tuburtius* and *Valerianus*; the sword did also at that time cut off *Urbanus*, who had been Pope seven years, being succeeded by *Zephyrinus*.

Martyr.  
S. Cecilia.

Hier. de  
Script.

These times were made more illustrious and memorable both by the excellent holiness, and also admirable learning of *Pantenus*, who of a Stoick became a Christian; who having been Rector of the School in *Alexandria*, went to the *Indies*, there to preach the Gospel, and flourished under *Severus* and *Caracalla*: *Asianus*, *Tatianus's* disciple, flourished at *Rhodes*, under *Commodus* and *Severus*, *Clemens* of *Alexandria*, *Pantenus's* Auditor, and *Origen's* Master: *Miltiades* and *Apollonius*, who writ against *Montanus* *Priscilla* and *Maximilla*, *Apollonius* the Senatour, who made

an

Anno 235  
of Christ,  
to 276.

an Apologie in the Senate, in the defence of the Christian faith, and by the Senates decree had his head cut off, *Commodus* then being Emperour. *Polycrates*, the Bishop of *Ephesus*, who resisted with much vehemency *Victor* the Pope of *Rome*, for the Lent. *Tertullian* in *Africa*, and *Minutius Felix* at *Rome*, flourished under *Severus* and *Caracalla*. *Origen* in *Alexandria*, who was born in the sixth year of *Commodus's* Empire, and about the 185th year of Christ; he was 17 years old when his Father *Leonides* suffered Martyrdom, as *Eusebius* relates. In that time was *Julius Africanus* eminent, to whom *Origenes* writ under *Alexander*. *Gregorius Thaumaturgus*, *Heracles* Bishop of *Alexandria*, *Ammonius* the Christian Philosopher in Philosopher in the same City, of whom *Plotinus Lycopolitanus* was a hearer, as *Porphyrius* records in his life. Concerning these and others, whom for brevities sake we omit, you may further consult *Hieronymus*.

Eul. 6. hist.  
c. 3. & in  
Chron. Hier.  
de Script.  
Ecl.

## CHAP. XII.

*Of Maximinus, the Gordians, Philip, Decius, Gallus and Volusianus, Valerianus, Gallienus, Claudius, Aurelianus, Tacitus; of the 30 Tyrants, and also of Odenetus and Zenobia.*

*From the 235 of Christ, to 276.*

**M**aximinus, *Gothus's* and *Alanus's* son, either having slain *Alexander*, as *Herodianus* will have it, or after his death, by no plot of his own contrived and attempted, was made Emperour 135 years after Christ's birth, who having prosperously put an end to the Wars of *Germany*, he wintered at *Sirmium*, and in the mean while by his Governours and Deputies, used much cruelty in *Rome*, and put many of the Nobles to death. In the midst of these things, the *Gordians*, both father and son, usurp the Empire in *Carthage*. The *Romans* by the order of the Senate forsake *Maximinus*, and Embassadors are sent every where to keep the Provinces under the power and command of the Senate, and 20 men are chosen for to keep and defend *Rome*. The *Gordians* within a year and few dayes being slain in *Africa* by *Capelianus*, *Maximinus's* General. *Balbinus* and *Maximinus Pupienus*, out of the 20 Governours of *Rome*, were by the Senate advanced to the Imperial dignity, in the year of Christ 237; wherein *Maximinus*, whilst he besieges *Aquileia*, is slain, with his son yet a boy, by his Souldiers; having lived two years and some moneths in great power and authority.

Lampr. Herod.  
dia. 7. hist.  
Victor.

(b) *Balbinus* and *Pupienus*, with *Gordianus* a youth, Nephew to that *Gordianus*, who with his son was slain in *Africa*, as saith *Capitolinus*; but *Eutropius* saith his son; governed a full year the Common-wealth. Then they, desiring to put down *Gordianus*, because he obtained the favour more than they; were slain by the Souldiers;

(b) Capitol.  
Herod. 8.  
Eut. 9.

Anno 235  
of Christ,  
to 276.

(c) Zof. 1.

Viâ. Euf.  
Zofim. 1.

Vide 1. 1. de  
Doâ. Temp.  
c. 25.  
(c) Zof. 2.

(d) Viâ. Zof.  
Euf.

(e) Viâ. Euf.  
Zof. 1. 1.  
Orof. 7. c. 21.

(f) Euf. 7.  
hist. c. 17.  
Cyp. de Mor.  
sal.

Souldiers, 238 years after Christ; since which time, (c) *Gordianus* alone enjoyed the Empire with the favour of all, being either 11, or 13, or 16 years old, (for it is ambiguously recorded) a child of a very good nature, made and fitted for all sorts of virtues which the discretion of *Misitheus*, a most discreet and learned person, whose daughter he had married, did moderate and direct; with whom both *Janus's* gates being opened, he went with a puissant Army in the fifth year of his Empire against the *Persians*, and regained from them *Carras*, *Nisibis*, and other Towns, and compelled them into their own Country. The next year following *Misitheus* being murdered by the snares and plot of *Philippus* the *Arabian*, soon after *Gordianus* is also murdered by those numerous Souldiers, whom *Philippus* had stirred up to such a villanie by bribes and gifts, in the 244th year of Christ, having ruled five years, whose dignity this very murderer did succeed; who having concluded a peace with *Sapor*, returned to *Rome*, in the 4th year of his Empire. At what time he had been Consul the third time, and his son *Philip, Cesar* the second time, were celebrated in *Rome* the secular Playes, being a thousand years after the building of the City, and 248 after Christ, about harvest-time, as we may gather out of (c) *Zosimus*. At length, having ruled 5 years the Empire; at the beginning of the sixth, the elder *Philip* hath his throat cut at *Verona*; the younger at *Rome*, by the Souldiers, in the year of Christ 249; having before taken to himself the purple Robe.

(d) *Decius* born in the lower *Pannonia*, a man of excellent virtue, and well exercised in War, as *Victor* setteth him forth; he ruled, as the same Author saith, two years and a half, and fighting against the *Barbarians*, he dyed in the promiscuous crowd of the Souldiers, by the floud of a sluice of a pond, opened upon them by the *Barbarians*; inasmuch, that his corps could not afterwards be found. By *Gallus's* treachery, as *Zosimus* writes, secretly conspiring with the *Barbarians*. This slaughter wherein *Decius's* son dyed, was in the 251 year of Christ.

(e) Hence *Gallus Hostilius* the chief Commander of the Army that defended the frontiers in *Mæsia*, being by the suffrage and general voyce of the Souldiers created Emperour; and having associated to himself *Volusianus* his son, two years and 4 months after he is slain, together with him, by the Souldiers, near *Imbrinna*, as he pursued *Emilianus* then raising new broyls in *Mæsia*. This came to passe in the 254 year of Christ. (f) In the time of his Government such a pestilential sicknesse did rage almost all over the World, as before that never was seen the like, in the year 252 after Christ, wherein the charity of Christians did marvelously shine even towards their persecutors.

But the *Persians* invading the borders of the East with an Army destroyed *Antioch*: The *Scythians* being passed over into *Asia*, spoiled and destroyed the Country far and near, whom *Emilianus* valiantly resisted; and having suppressed them, he by the general voyce

Anno 235  
of Christ,  
to 276.

(a) Trebell.  
Eutrop. Victor.  
Zof. 1. Orof. 7.  
c. 22.

(b) Euseb.  
Orat. Constan.  
ad San. 3. c. 24.  
Agath. 1. 4.  
P. 129.

(c) Trebell.

(d) Trebell.  
Viâ. Eutrop.  
Orof. 7. c. 22.

voyce of the Souldiers obtained the Imperial dignity, *Gallus*, as we have said, being slain: (a) Then, *Emilianus* being cut, off three moneths after, *Valerian* with *Galienus* his son enjoyed the Empire, with whom he governed seven years the Empire; and in this space of time the *Roman* power and dominion was much diminished and torn to pieces by the *Barbarians*. *St. Augustine* in his 80 Epistle saith, That in the time of *Galienus's* reign, the impressions, incursions, and cruelties were such, that they could have wished for the end of the World. In this time also did many Tyrants rise up, in several parts of the world; who are reckoned 30 in number by *Trebellius Pollio*: *Valerian* then being gone against the *Scythians* who had taken *Chakodon*, burnt *Nicea*, and the Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus*. Thence being gone against *Sapor*, then spoyling the East borders; and taken by him, and used in manner of a base slave, that as often as he got up his horse's back, he layed his foot upon his head, making him to bow down to the ground; (b) At length he commanded him to be slead alive and salted, as *Eusebius* records. This overthrow was in the 260th year of Christ. About what time *Odenatus* the Governour of the *Palmyrenians*, who had married *Zenobia*, did valiantly repulse and drive back the (c) *Persians*, who had far entered the *Roman* Empire, and defended the *Roman* power, having taken the title of King upon himself.

(d) In the mean while, *Galienus*, a man altogether given to lust and wickednesse suffered the Empire to be torn to pieces every where, both by the *Barbarians*, and also Tyrants. To whom when *Odenatus* having taken *Nisibis* and *Carras*, conquered *Mesopotamia*, put to flight the King of the *Persians*, slain many thousands, sent the Princes and chiefest of them bound; he, without any shame, as though he had conquered them himself, triumphed in *Rome*: This victory of *Odenatus* is ascribed by *Trebellius*, to be in the 262 year of Christ, when *Galienus* and *Saturninus* were Consuls. A few years after, *Odenatus* being declared Emperour by *Galienus*, he is murdered by conspiracy of his Couzen-german, together with *Herod's* son, whose wife *Zenobia*, a woman of a manly spirit, took the Empire upon her self. *Galienus* is slain near *Millain* by *Martianus* and *Cecropius*, both Generals of the Army that went against *Aureolus* the Tyrant, together with his brother *Valerian*; he governed almost seven years with his father, and eight alone.

Therefore in the 268. year after Christ, *Claudius*, about the 9th of April, as by *Trebellius* appears, began to rule, a providential and moderate man, and a Prince of great advantage to the Commonwealth, who having destroyed *Aureolus* the Tyrant, he fought gallantly against the Goths; it appears that he with his Army destroyed and killed 300020. of them, and defeated and destroyed two thousand ships of theirs; and them that remained of these *Barbarians*, the Famine and the Plague destroyed them, near about *Hæmimontum*; *Atticianus*, or *Antiochianus*, and *Orphius* being

Trebell. Viâ.  
Eutrop. Zof.  
1. 1. Orof. 7.  
c. 20.



Anno 235.  
of Christ, to  
276.

ing Consuls, which doth agree with the year of our Lord, 270. *Claudius* soon after, being infected of the plague, dyeth; having ruled a year, and a little more then nine Moneths, as *Eusebius* and *Cassiodorus* do record, but being that *Trebellius* asserts that he dyed in the two hundred seventieth year of Christ, it seems that he did near upon fill the two years; otherwise he died in the latter end of the 269 year.

His brother *Quintillus* having usurped the Empire, within sixteen dayes after, he was beheaded by the Souldiers: by whom was chosen *Aurelianus*, born of inferiour Parents, but reckoned by the Heathens amongst the most worthy and laudable Princes, unlesse that he inclined too much to cruelty. By him were subdued the *Alemans*, and the *Marcomans*, who had given a great defeat to the Romans, for which *Aurelianus* thought that it was expedient to go to the books of the Sybills, which happened the 3. day of January, in the year of Christ 271, as *Papiscus* saith. Coming to Rome after this his Victory, he put to death many of the Senators, he amplified the walls of the City, being gone into the East he overcame *Zenobia*, and led her in his triumph with *Tetricus* the Tyrant, who having received of the Catalonians at their yielding, he recovered France. Then suffering both to live afterwards, he made him the Correctour of *Lucania*, and kept her in the City. *Hieronymus* writes that from her did the Zenonian Family propagate. *Aurelius Victor* saith, that he was the first amongst the Roman Emperours that wore a Diadem upon his head, and that was seen clothed with a garment of embroidery and jewels. He gave order that Swines-flesh might freely be distributed amongst the people; he died in the beginning of the fifth year of his Empire, in the beginning of the 275th year of Christ, by the conspiracy of *Mnesitheus*, Secretary Generall, near Cænophrurium, betwixt Bizantium and Heraclea: After his death, there was an interregnum some seven Moneths, because that in the Election of an Emperour there was risen a great contest and contention between the Senate and the Souldiers, both attributing to themselves the right of Election: At length the 7. of October, he was created Emperour by the Senate.

*Tacitus*, a person of excellent breeding, and gifted for the Government of the Common-wealth, who had his pedigree of *Tacitus* the Historian. But he died on the two hundredth day after, at Tartus of a Fever, to whom *Florianus* his brother succeeding, *Probus* was made Emperour by the greatest part of the Souldiers, *Flavianus* cutting his own veins died within 60. dayes of his own accord, in the 276 year of Christ.

Vopiscus.  
Victor, Europ.  
Zof. Orol. 7.  
c. 13.

Zenobia taken  
with Tetricus.

Hier. Chron.

Victor.

Vopisc.  
Zof. Victor.

Victor.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of the Christian affairs and persecutions: and of the Hereticks; as also of those Men who were Illustrious and renowned for their Piety, Holiness, and Learning, who lived from Maximinus's time, unto Aurelianus.

**M**aximinus, as soon as he enjoyed the Empire, exercised great cruelty against the Christians, and, as its thought, he began the sixth Persecution, wherein died of Martyrdom *Pontianus*, a Pope of Rome, to whom succeeding *Anterus*, after the enjoyment of it for a Moneth, he obtained also the Title of Martyr.

But *Decius*, in the beginning of his Empire, in the year of Christ 258. stirred up the seventh Persecution, in which was slain *Fabianus*, the Bishop of Rome, the 20 of January, having held the seat 15 years. *Origines* being comprehended in this persecution, rather then to suffer abominable things, he would offer incense to the Idols, and thence retiring himself to Tyrus, five years after he died under *Valerian* and *Galiennus* the sixty ninth year of his age, as it may be gathered out of *Eusebius*; and *Hieronymus* records that he suffered death in Tyrus: In the last year of *Decius*, being the 251 of Christ, the Roman Sea having been vacant above one year, *Cornelius* succeeded to *Fabianus*, against whom *Novatianus* blowed up a schisme, and division, being chosen by some few of his own party. To whom *Novatus* the Bishop coming out of Africa, joyned himself, who by many is indifferently taken for *Novatianus*. Under *Decius* among many others, suffered *Agatha*, in Sicilia, and *Apollonia* of Alexandria, which cheerfully cast her self into the burning Scaffold, as *Eusebius* writes.

In the first or second year of *Decius's* reign being the 250 of Christ, when *Decius* and *Gratus* were Consuls, as *Gregorius Turonusis* saith, *Saturinus* Bishop of Tolose went to Rome; with whom were sent *Gratianus* Bishop of Turine, and *Dionysius* Bishop of Paris, and that they together with *Rusticus* and *Eleutherius* suffered their Martyrdom.

To whom agreeth the author of *St. Omers* life, who relates that *Eusebianus* and *Victorinus*, *St. Denys* companions, preached at the same time the faith of Christ. That *St. Quintins* did the same amongst the Ambianians, but they suffered the 11th of November under the Emperour, *Maximianus*; then *Denys* dyed not long before *Maximianus* time; that is, about 50. years.

*Decius's* followers, viz. *Gallus* and *Vulsius* prosecuted this same slaughter of the Christians; therefore *Cornelius* Pope of Rome within two years and two Moneths, suffered at Rome. And *Lucius* supplid his place, who being put to Martyrdom under *Valerian* and *Galiennus* left the See to *Steven*.

Anno 235.  
of Christ,  
to 276.

Maximinus's  
Persecution.  
Euf. 1. 6. Hist.  
c. 28. et in  
Chron. Orol.  
7. c. 19.

Decius's Persecution.  
Euf. 6. Hist.  
c. 32. Orol. 6. c.  
Origines facti-  
fice to Idols.  
Epiph. har.  
64. See our ob-  
servations.  
Euf. Hist. 7.  
c. 1. Epist. 55.  
ad Pammach.  
Cypr. Ep. 55.  
Epiph. Hær.  
59.

Novatianus's  
Schisme.

Vide Euf. 26.  
Hist. c. 41.

Greg. Tur. 1.  
1. Hist. c. 30.  
S. Dionysius  
parisiensis  
Episcopus.



Anno 235.  
of Christ, to  
276.

St. Cyprian.  
Cyp. Epist. 55.

Cyp. Epist.  
70. and fol-  
lowing. Aug.  
de bapt. Cont.  
Don. Vinc. Li-  
rin.  
The Cartha-  
ginian Synod  
for the rebap-  
tizing of Here-  
ticks.  
Cyprian's  
Martyrdom.

Aët. passio,  
S. Cyp. Hie-  
ron. de Script.

About the same time flourished that light of the Church of *Africa* *St. Cyprian*, Bishop of *Carthage*; Who when *Philip* was made *Augustus* the third time, and his son *Cæsar* Consul the second time, that is, in the year of Christ 248. was advanced to the office of Bishop. For he writes, that four years after he was invested with the office, there arose a Schism of one *Feliciſſimus*, when *Cornelius* was first made Pope of Rome, which was upon the 251. year of Christ.

When *Steven* possessed the Roman-See in the 256th year of Christ, *Cyprian* held a councill of Bishops at *Carthage*, wherein the Hereticks Baptisme was adjudged false, and to be done again anew: this very same thing did *Firmilianus* in *Cappadocia*, and *Dionysius* of *Alexandria* decree. But *Steven* by his Apostolick Authority resisted them all: But *Cyprian* not long after washed away this spot with his own blood under the Emperours *Valerian*, and *Galien*: By whom was revived the persecution about the 4th year of their Empire, which was the 257 year of Christ, that is, when *Valerian* was Consul the 4th time, and *Galien* the third, as *The Acts of Saint Cyprians sufferings* do witness; For being banished that very year, he for Christs sake ended his life the next year after, being the 258th year of Christ, the 18th of October, so he performed the office of a Bishop tenne full years, and some Moneths.

In this same persecution of *Valerian*, *Steven* having officiated in the Roman-See two years and three Moneths, suffered Martyrdom: And so likewise *Sixtus* his successour, having enjoyed the Papall office one year, and almost two Moneths, was put to death for the name of Christ the 8th of August of the 258 year of Christ, and four dayes after, *St. Laurence* and *Hippolitus*, with divers others.

But *Valerian* payed at last very dear for this his cruelty, for being taken by the Persians and constrained to do the sordid and base services of a slave, he was at length fled alive, and saved, as we have above observed: *Galienus* being taught by his fathers example, forbade that Christians should be further persecuted.

The Churches outward storm ceasing, then began the inward: *Paul Samosene*, Bishop of *Antioch*, emulating *Sabellius*, who had divulged a little before, a most pernicious doctrine against the holy Trinity at *Pislemas*, begins to oppose and deny the divine nature of the Son, against whom was the first Synod held at *Antioch*, in the year of Christ 260. wherein were *Firmilianus* of *Cæsarea*, *Gregorius* of *Neocæsarea*, and his brother *Athenodorus*. But when *Paul* by his deceitfull tergiversation mocked and shifted away the writings of the Fathers; yet in the next Council held at *Antioch*, he was condemned and turned out of his office; which he not willing to deliver up, *Aurelian* the Emperour being petitioned, turned him out per-force, in the two hundred seventieth year of Christ: for then *Aurelian* was somewhat well affected towards the Christians. But two years after, being the two hundred

Euf. 7. hist. 1.  
c. 13. Orof. 7.  
c. 22.  
Euf. 7. hist. c.  
8. Epiph. her.  
65.  
Paul. Samos.  
fate.  
Euf. 7. hist. c.  
22. 23. & 24.

Aurelian's his  
Persecution.

seventieth year of Christ, he stirred up the ninth persecution, as many do reckon, wherein an infinite number of Martyrs did suffer, to which *Tacitus* did put an end, as the Acts of *Chariton* the Martyr do testify:

*Paul the Hermite* was a great splendour to that age: who, when *Decius* afflicted the Christians, by reason of escaping death retired himself into a cave, wherein he embraced a solitary life, the 23 year of his age, and of Christ 250. which year brought also forth *Antonius* the Great, as we may gather out of *Hieronymus*, also *Dionysius* of *Alexandria* died in the thirteenth year of *Galien's* reign, as *Eusebius* saith, and so likewise *Gregorius Thaumaturgus*: of the Gentiles, *Plotinus* the Philosopher, died in the beginning of *Aurelian's* reign, being the 270 year of Christ, as may be gathered out of *Porphyrius*, upon his life.

*Suidas* saith, that he was very old under *Galien*, and that *Amelius* was his hearer, and that *Porphyrius* was *Amelius's* hearer, and *Jamblicus* the hearer of *Porphyrius*; and that *Porphyrius* flourished under *Aurelian*, and that he attained the dayes of *Dioclesian's* Empire. But *Eunapius* makes *Amelius* to be *Porphyrius's* School-fellow, and not his Master. He together with *Origenes Aquilinus*, and *Porphyrius* lengthened his dayes unto the time of *Aurelian's*, and *Probus's* Empire: at which time also lived *Dexippus* the Historian, *Longinus* is also reckoned amongst the learned ones of that age, by whom *Porphyrius* was taught and furnished, being before that called *Malchus*: but *Zenobia* making use of *Longinus* for to teach her Greek, *Aurelianus* therefore caused him to be put to death, as writes *Vopiscus*.

Anno 276.  
of Christ, to  
304.

Surius 28.  
Dept.  
St. Paul the  
hermit.  
Hier. in Paulo.  
lucm in Chro.  
Euf. 7. hist. c.  
28.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of *Probus*, *Carus*, *Numerianus*, *Carinus*, *Diocletian*, *Maximian*, *Constantius*, *Chlorus*, and *Armenianus*.

Anno 276 of Christ, unto 304.

*Tacitus* and *Florianus* his brother, being dead, *M. Aurelius Probus* by the Generall consent of the Souldiery, is invested with the Empire, the 276 year of Christ, born in *Pannonia Sirmienſis*, a person indued with all vertue, for he was admirables in feats of arms, and excellent in good manners, who as soon as he was created *Augustus*, he inquired after those Souldiers that had slain *Aurelianus*: Thence going into *France*, he regained sixty Towns out of the Barbarians hands, and killed of them near upon seventy thousand. Having quieted all things in *France*, he went into *Slavonia*, and overcame the Nations in *Scythia*. And being gone thence into the East, he gave battell to the *Persians*, and having overcome them, and taken some of their Cities, as he was returning to Italy, passing through *Slavonia*, he was killed at *Sirmium* by

Vopiscus. Vi-  
gor. Eutrop.  
Idarius in fa-  
tis Zofl. 2.

Anno 276  
of Christ,  
to 304.

Vopiscus. Vi-  
ctor. Eutrop.  
9. Zosim 2.  
Orat. 7. c. 14.  
Cassius Dio.  
and Numerianus.

Ibid.

by the Souldiers, who hated him for his too great severity, in the 282 year of Christ, and the 7th of his Empire, whereof he lived some four Moneths.

M. *Aurelius Carus* born in Narbon in France, succeeded *Probus*, who soon after created his sons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*, *Cæsars*; and having sent *Carinus* into France to keep it in peace, and Govern it, he, with *Numerianus* his son, went into the East, against the Persians: There having overcome Mesopotamia, being gone as far as *Ctesiphon*, he was stricken dead by a Thunderbolt, having governed the Empire about a whole year, it being the 283 year of Christ. *Numerianus*, being exceedingly afflicted for his fathers death, by reason of too much weeping fell into an ocular disease; and as he was carried in a Litter, he was murdered by the conspiracy of *Aprus* his father in law, in the two hundred eighty fourth year of Christ.

*Carinus*, of a far other temper than his father and brother, lived full of vices, and all defiled with wickedness: For its said that he wanted no manner of mischief and baseness, and that he had no token or spark of virtue and goodness: wherefore being hated both by great and small, a while after his fathers death, he contended against the people as well as against *Dioclesian*, by both whom he was hated; and he attained to the year of Christ 285, that is, one year after that *Dioclesian* was advanced to the Imperial dignity. For then, being betrayed by his own party near Margus a town of Moesia, he was killed by *Dioclesians* army, which overcame him.

Then about the Month of September, in the year of Christ 284, *Dioclesian* who before was called *Diocles*, after *Numerianus*'s death, received the Purple Robe presented to him by the Souldiers; born in *Dalmatia* of low Parentage, (for he is said to have been a bond-servant to *Anulinus* the Senatur) but a gallant warrior: He in the first Assembly, swore that *Numerianus* had been murdered without his consent, or knowledge, and thereupon killed the Murderer *Aprus* with his own hands, and by it fulfilled that Prophecy, that he had once received, That he should be Emperor, when he had killed *Aper* (which signifieth a Bore) with his own proper hands. Whence in his hunting as often as he lighted upon a Boor, he was wont to kill him with his own hands with a hunting staffe, but after he had slain *Aper*, then he boasted that at length he had found out the fatal Bore: Then the Peasants of France rising up in an uproar that were called *Bacaudes*, having sent *Maximian Herculanus* to them, he quieted them in the 285 year, whereupon *Maximian* was made *Cæsar* the first time: For the next year following being the 286 year, *Dioclesian* created him *Augustus*; because, saith *Idatius*, he might prop up and uphold the republick that was tottering and falling, what by the Barbarians incursions, what by the Tyrants oppressions. For at the same time *Carausius* being busied among the Britains, and *Achilleus* in Egypt, had both taken the purple Robe. And from the

East *Narses*, the King of *Persia* threatened hard with a puissant Army; and *Africa* was spoiled, and destroyed by the *Quinquagenians*. By which troubles and tempests was the Roman Empire tossed and agitated some years together. Therefore in the 7th year of his Empire, and the 291 year of Christ, that he might prevent and resist all these dangers, he created two *Cæsars*, *Constantius Chlorus*, who is said to be the Nephew of *Claudius* the second by his daughter, as *Eutropius* records; and *Galerius Maximian*, born in Dacia; not far from Sardica; who was surnamed *Armentarius*, because he had been a herdsman. *Dioclesian*, that he might joyn these to himself by affinity, gave to *Armentarius* his daughter *Valeria*; and to *Constantius*, *Maximianus Herculus* gave *Theodora* his daughter in Law: So having divided their Forces into four Armies, *Dioclesian* went into Egypt, *Herculus* into Africa, *Armentarius* into the East, and *Constantius* into Britain. By the long, tedious, and laborious Expeditions of them all, was the Roman world again settled in peace. About the end of the 12th year of *Dioclesian*'s Empire, it being the 296 of Christ, as *Eusebius* records in his Chronicle, *Alexandria* after eight moneths siege being taken, together with Egypt, was brought back again unto the obedience of the Romans.

*Carausius* seven years after his revolt, was killed by *Albaum* his Associate in the 293 year of Christ; and so the (b) Britains were (b) Eutrop. again recovered, in the tenth year after their revolt, saith *Eutropius*. At the same time were the *Quinquagenians* subdued by *Maximianus Herculus*, and *Galerius Armentarius*, being beaten by *Narses*, and proudly entertained by *Dioclesian*. (a) The year (a) Idat. following being the 297, he revenged himself for the ignominy and reproach he had received, defeating the Persian Army, and taking prisoners *Narses*'s Wife, his sisters, and his Children. (b) Therefore did *Dioclesian* receive him again with respect and (b) Eur. 9. honour in Mesopotamia. Victor.

(c) At length, after these two *Augustus*'s had both magnificently triumphed at Rome for their many and great exploits of Wars, they were both made private persons again, having layd down their purple Robes. *Dioclesian* lived at *Nicomedia*, and *Maximianus* at *Millan*: But *Dioclesian* did it of his own accord, or by reason of his old age, and tyred by his great labours, or being wearied and importuned about the Christian Concernments, whom he had no mind to persecute, he retired himself into a Garden in *Salone*. But *Maximian* was forced to it more by the authority of his Associate, then by his own will. This was done in the 20th year of *Dioclesian*'s Empire, and of Christ 304; at what time *Dioclesian* had been 9 times Consul, and *Maximianus* 8, as *Idatius* writes; who relates, That at that same time *Constantius Chlorus*, and *Galerius Maximianus Armentarius* were declared *Augustus*'s; and that *Severus*, and *Galerius Maximianus Armentarius* sister's son, were created *Cæsars*, as *Victor* saith also.

And so *Constantius* with *Galerius Maximianus* did enjoy the whole Roman

Anno 276  
of Christ,  
to 304.

Idat.

Constantius  
and Galerius  
created Cæsars  
by Dioclesian.

Idat.

(b) Eur. 9.  
Victor.

(c) Idem e.  
Zosim. Euseb.  
8. hist. c. 13.  
& in Chron.  
Orat. 7. c. 25.  
*Dioclesian* and  
*Maximian* lay  
down their  
purple Robes

Victor. Eutrop.  
10. Euseb. Chron.  
Fasti Siculi O-  
rat. 7. c. 25.

Anno 276  
of Christ,  
to 304.

Roman Empire, parting the same between themselves: and to *Galerius Maximinus's* lot, fell Scythia, Asia, and the East; to *Constantius's*, France, Italy, and Africk, who afterward gave Italy and Africk over to his Companion. And so *Maximian* established *Severus* over Italy, and *Maximinus* over the East. In the mean while, *Constantinus*, *Constantius Chlorus's* son, having been delivered by his father to *Dioclesian* and *Galerius Maximianus* for his hostage and pledg; and being re-demanded by his father, having been cast upon several dangers, and having escaped privately, he flyeth to his father at *Gessoriacum*. So a certain Author of a Manuscript, without name, doth declare.

## CHAP. XV.

*Of the state of the Christian Religion, from the year of Christ 276, where in Probus first entred into the Empire, unto the death of Constantius Chlorus, and the beginning of Constantinus; that is, unto the 305, or 306th year, wherein is spoken of Dioclesian's Persecution: Of the Original of the Donatists, and of several Pious and Learned Persons.*

IN these few years, that we comprehend in this Chapter, there were very great Troubles and Persecutions against the Church. In the beginning of *Probus's* Empire, that is, in his second year, and of Christ's 277, broke forth the heresie of the *Manichees*, as we read it in *Eusebius's* Chronicles: In which time also, notice is taken of the Account of the years of the Antiochenians, and Laodiceanians, &c. (Hereticks, so called). (a) Pope *Leo* endeth this year, when *Probus* and *Paulinus* were Consuls: At which time *Archelaus* Bishop of Caschara in Mesopotamia, renowned for his holiness and learning, resisted strongly and constantly the rage and madness of the *Manichees*.

But under *Dioclesian*, the persecution of the Christians was so grievous and so great, as afore this time there was never the like, at the latter end of his Empire. Although *Baronius* (c) gathereth out of *St. Sebastian's* Acts, that before this time he had already begun to exercise his cruelty; and saith, That he began in the second year of his Empire with *Tiburtius Chromatius*, and others.

But this fire of persecution did flame more vehemently in the latter end of *Dioclesian's* 18th year; or, as (d) *Eusebius* thinks, in the 19th of his Empire; which he begins to reckon from the month of Easter. Then it was (in those dayes of Christ's passion) that the Emperours commanded, by their Edicts, that all the Christian Churches should be demolished; and all the sacred books should be burnt; and that all those Christians that had any publick office, should be degraded and turned out, and all the others should be put to death. Thereupon an infinite number of Christians suffered Martyrdome by divers sorts of torments for Christ's

Christ's sake; of whom *Eusebius* nameth some, as *Procopius* in *Cesaria of Palestine*, *Alpheus*, *Zaccheus*, &c. But the Martyrdoms that are read in the Ecclesiastical Histories are innumerable; of whom were *Marcus*, and *Marcellian*; *Cosma*, and *Damianus*, two brothers; *Vincentius*, *Agnes*, *Lucia*, *Maurice*, and an infinite number of the *Thebeans*. Also Pope *Marcellinus*, in the year of Christ 304, (the Emperours being then reduced to order) suffered Martyrdome for Christ's sake, the 8th of May; and the next year after this great Persecution, both the Emperours laid down their dignity, as *Eusebius* saith.

And they who for fear and punishment did deliver their Bibles, were called in Africk *Traditores* or *Traitors*, which afterward was the seed of the *Donatist's* Schism: And first there was held a Council of Bishops, most of them infected with this crime in (e) *Cyrrha* of *Numidia*, wherein *Secundus Vigiliannus* the Primate of *Numidia* was President. In which, for avoiding of Schism, the *Donatists* were taken in, in the year of Christ 303.

And the Church was not onely celebrate and renowned by her Persecutions, but also by the Learning of rare Persons: For (f) *Anatolius of Laodicea*, a man of great learning, lived in *Probus's* time; and under *Carus* and *Dioclesian*, lived *Pierius* the elder, of *Alexandria*, and *Pamphilus*, who afterwards suffered under *Maximinus*: *Lucian* put to death in the same persecution. *Methodius* of *Olympus-Licia*, and then Bishop of *Tyrrus*, suffered under *Dioclesian*. Some think that he suffered under *Decius* and *Valerianus*, as *Hieronymus* saith; but the first is more likely, being he writ against *Porphyrius* and *Origen*, of whom the first attained to the dayes of *Dioclesian's* Empire; and the last lived after *Decius*. *Arnobius*, who under *Dioclesian* taught Rhetorick at *Sicca*, and afterwards became a Christian; and his disciple *Lactantius*. The chief Poets amongst the Gentiles under *Carus* and *Dioclesian*, were *Calpurnius*, *Siculus*, and *Nemesianus*; and the Historians were *Lamprius*, *Capitolinus*.

Anno 276  
of Christ,  
to 304.

Divers Mar-  
tyrs.

(e) Opatius  
1. 1. Aug. 3.  
Con. Cref.  
c. 16.

(f) Euseb.  
Chron.  
Hieron. de  
Script.  
The Learned  
and godly  
persons.

## The End of the Fifth Book.

Dd

THE

(a) Leo. Hom.  
2. de Pent.  
Vide Epiph.  
haz. 66. &  
animad. no-  
stra.  
Cyr. Cat. 6.  
Dioclesian's  
Persecution.

(c) Apud.  
Sur. Jan. 20.

(d) Euf. in  
Chron. & hist.  
3. Orat. 7.  
c. 25.

Divers Mar-  
tyrs.

Anno 304  
of Christ,  
to 337.



THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
VVORLD.  
OR, AN  
Account of Time.

The Sixth Book.

W Herein are contained the Tears from the 304 of CHRIST,  
unto 491.

CHAP. I.

Of Constantine Chlorus, and of his son Constantine; of Licinius  
and of the Warrs that were between them; and of the original of  
the Accounts of Times.

Anno 304 of Christ, unto 337.

(a) Idatius  
in fast.  
(b) Eutrop.  
l. 10. Victor.  
Scho. & in  
Cef. Orof. 7.  
c. 25. Zon.

**D**ioctlesian and Maximian laying down their dignity, and  
embracing a private life; that same year and day, were  
Julius Constantius Chlorus, and Galerianus Maximinus Ar-  
mentarius, from Caesars, honoured with the title of Au-  
gustus's, and Emperours, as (a) Idatius saith. Of whom the first  
contented himself with France and Brittain, and the (b) last pos-  
sessed all the other Dominions of the Empire: which when he  
could

could not rule and govern well alone, he divided the care of it  
with two more, viz. Severus and Galerius Maximinus both Scythians;  
the last being his own sisters son, whom he had also created Ce-  
sars. (c) In the same time when Constantinus was called Cesar, that  
was in the 305, or 306. year of Christ, Italy is committed to Se-  
verus, and the East to Maximinus, and Maximianus went into Scy-  
thia.

Constantius Chlorus enjoyed the dignity of Augustus a year or two  
only, as most do say, and he died in York of England, he was of  
a meek and civil nature, and liberrall, he did not suffer any per-  
secution to be inflicted upon the Christians; yea rather of all those  
of his company, the Christians were preferred before the  
others.

(c) To him fled Constantinus his son, who as a pledge lived in  
Bononia or Gallaricum, fearing Maximian's treachery; and his fa-  
ther embracing him, died in his arms at York, in the year 306.  
when Chlorus and Armentarius were Consuls the sixth time, as (a)  
Socrates saith.

(b) In this year did Constantinus begin to rule, although he was  
then contented with the title of Cesar, yet the year following he  
received the title of Augustus of Maximian, whose daughter he  
had married, he was then 32 or 33 years old, the which we shall  
better understand from his death hereafter, he was then born  
about the 273 year of Christ, of Helena Bithyna, whom (c) many say  
to have been a Concubine, and (d) Ambrosius saith that she was a  
viuall house-keeper; others say that she was his legiti-  
mate wife, but born of low degree, (e) Zonaras leaves it in doubt  
what she was.

(f) But Maxentius, Hercules's son, as soon as Constantinus's Ima-  
ges were brought to Rome, was immediately created Emperour  
by the Praetorian bands, who at the first for to obtain the favour of  
the people, seemed to favour the (g) Christians, and modera-  
ted the persecution, but soon after he weltered himself in all sort  
of cruelty, and wickedness: (h) Against him Maximian sent Severus  
Cesar; who being forsaken of his own Souldiers, fled to Ravenna,  
Galerius going to Rome with his Army, and in vain having exhor-  
ted Maxentius his son in law by Ambassadors, to deserve the Em-  
pire rather by prayers and love, then by Arms, he being cowardly  
and unworthily forsaken of his Army, fled into Scythia, where  
he created (i) Licinius Cesar in the 307 year of Christ: (k) where-  
by Hercules having raised his hope of recovering, what he had  
forsaken against his will, he returns to Rome from Lucania: He  
desires Dioclesian then living at Cornutum in Pannonia (and not  
Cornutum in Celtica, as (l) Zosimus wrongfully saith) or as Victor  
Salon, by letters to help him, but he refused. Then having de-  
prehended Severus in a perjury, and bringing him back from Ra-  
vens, he brought him in the habit and condition of a prisoner,  
and in the way going to Appium a mile from the City, he caused  
him to be strangled, as Idatius asserts: Hercules plotting some

D d 2

Anno 304  
of Christ,  
to 337.

(c) Victor.  
Schor.

(d) Eutrop.  
l. 10. Victor.  
Schor. Euf. 1.  
de vita Const.  
et in Chron.  
Orof. 7. c. 25.  
Zonar.

(e) Euf. 1. de  
vita Const. So-  
zoni. c. 7.  
Victor. Zon.  
Socr. l. c. 1.

(b) Paneg.  
Const. et Max.  
dictus.  
(c) Hier. Chro-  
zofim. l. 2. O-  
rof. 7. c. 25.  
Chr. Alex.

(d) Ambro-  
de fund. Theod.  
(e) Zonara. To-  
3.

(f) Eutrop. 10.  
Victor. Euf. 3.  
hist. 14. et de  
vita Const.  
(g) Euf. 8. hist.  
c. 14. Opori-  
l. 2.  
(h) Vid. Sch.  
Eutrop. 10.  
Zofim. 2.

(i) Eutrop. 10.  
Vict. Sch.  
(k) Eur. 10.  
Vict. Epist.  
Orof. 7.  
(l) Anon. Zof.  
2. Vict. Sch.  
Orof. ibid.

trca-

Anno 304.  
of Christ,  
337.

(m) Paneg.  
const. et Max.  
Eutrop. 2.  
Zosim. 2.  
(n) Hier. Chr.  
Ida. Fast. Vict.  
Sch.  
(o) Eutrop. 10.  
(p) Eutr. and  
others.

(q) Euf. 8.  
Hist. c. 17.  
(r) Euf. and  
Idat. fal.  
(s) Verus in-  
scr. nummi a-  
pud Baro.  
(b) Euf. 1. de  
vita. Const. c.  
23. & 9. Hist.  
c. 9. Zosim. 2.  
Vict. sch. Eutr.  
10.  
(c) Zosim. 2.  
Eutrop. 10.

(d) Euf. 8. Hist.  
c. 9. & 10.  
Zosim. 1. 2.  
Eutrop. 10.  
Vict. Sch.  
Orof. 7. c. 28.

(e) The same  
Authors.

(1a) Anonym.  
Zosim. 2. Euf.  
1. de vita.  
Const. &c.

treachery against *Maxentius* his son, he is driven out of *Rome*, and flyeth into France to *Constantine*, to whom he had given his daughter (m) *Fausta* in Marriage when he created him *Augustus*.

Then in the 308. wherein *Herculus* had been Consul ten times, and *Armentarius* seven, (n) *Lucinius* being created Emperour at Carnurum in November, as *Idatius* writes, The Commonwealth began to be governed (o) by four *Augustus*'s, by *Constantine* and *Maxentius*, sons of two *Augustus*'s, by *Galerianus Maximianus*, and *Lucinius* both persons of themselves raised up to dignity: (p) *Herculus* in the three hundred and tenth year of Christ, as he plots some wicked design against his son in Law *Constantine*, he is discovered by *Fausta* his daughter, and flying to *Marseilles*, there he suffereth for his treason, *Idatius* tells when: (q) *Galerius Maximianus* the year following, died of a foul disease the (r) ighth time he was Consul: whom *Maxentius* (a) his son in law did reckon and number amongst the gods.

(b) In the year three hundred and twelve, *Constantine* having seen the Apparition of the Crosse in Heaven, and being animated against *Maxentius*, and being gone over the Alps, having beaten his commanders, and their Armies unto *Verone*, he overcame him not far from the City: who hastily stealing away through the Bridge that he caused to be layed over the River (c) *Tiber*, being smothered in the fall of the Bridge, and so drowned, he died: his head was carried up and down in *Rome*, and in *Africk*, as *Naxarius* hath said in his Panegyricks.

Things being ordered and well settled in the City, going into Germany, he marrieth his sister, (d) *Constantia* to *Lucinius* in Milan, in the three hundred and thirteenth year of Christ, and in that same year *Galerius Maximianus*, that great murderer of Christians, having foolishly and indiscreetly taken up arms against these two Emperours, being beaten and routed in *Schythia*, by *Licinius*, he flyeth into Asia, and there in *Tarsus* of *Cilicia*, he was consumed by an horrid disease: Neither did these two Princes continue long in amity and friend-ship: (e) for they, as they were the fourth time Consuls, as *Idatius* relates, in the year of Christ three hundred and fifteen, having broken their league and friendship, they fought first near *Cibalis* a Town in *Pannonia*, upon the eighth of October; then again in the *Mardians* fields, where the *Lycinians* were defeated, routed and put to flight. At length being reconciled, and having concluded a peace, they of new divided the Empire between themselves, in the mean time *Dioclesian* died at *Salona* the third of December, as *Idatius* saith.

(a) In the three hundred twenty fourth year, *Licinius* having again taken up arms against *Constantinus*, accusing him to have broken into another mans dominion (although necessity had forced him to beat back and destroy those who spoiled and invaded the *Goths*, *Thracia*, and *Moesia*) he received a very great overthrow near *Hadrianopolis*, the ninth of July, as *Idatius* observes; having

35.

35 thousand slain of his Army, which consisted of 150 thousand foot Souldiers, and 15 thousand horsemen; then flying to *Byzantium*, he is also beaten by Sea; and lastly, being overcome in a field-battle near *Chalcedon*, he came into his Conquerour's hand; of whom having obtained his life by the interposition of his Wife, *Constantine's* sister; and being sent away to *Theſsalonica*, in the (b) year following being 325, he was put to death in the City, for plotting a new design. And thus ended these Intestines and Civil Wars.

Domestical troubles attended and received *Constantine*, having achieved his Martial Exploits to the terrour of his enemies, (c) *Crispus Caesar* his son by his first Wife *Minervina*, a youth of an excellent beauty and rare nature, being brought into suspicion of having attempted incest with his Mother-in-law, he is put to death at *Pola* in *Istria*, as (d) *Ammianus* writes; but (e) *Z.ſimus* saith, that it was at *Rome*; and (f) *Idatius* saith, That it was in the year of Christ 326. But God did not delay it long, before he avenged the innocent; because the next year was *Fausta* (which had accused wrongfully her son in law) put to death; which being apprehended and convinced of falsehood, by *Constantine's* command was smothered in a hot bath.

(g) *Byzantium* was built up again by *Constantine* the Emperour, and was enriched by the spoyles of almost all the world; insomuch, that it became equal to *Rome*, and received the name of its builder, as well as his Imperial Throne and Court. *Idatius* records, that it was dedicated the 5th of May, in the year 330. Now the Law being there brought and established, and insculpt in a pillar of stone; *Socrates* saith, that he commanded it to be called *New Rome*.

(h) The *Sarmatians* after this being subdued, and distributed into several places of the Roman Empire, the 4th year after, which was the 337th of Christ, on a Whitsunday, *Constantinus* dyeth in the Suburbs of *Nicomedia*, where most of the Antients affirm, that he was baptized a little before his death. (i) With whom Cardinal *Perron* of late did agree. But (k) *Eusebius* of *Nicomedia* asserts, That *Constantine* was baptized soon after the Convocation of the *Nicean Synod*.

It's ordinarily thought, That the (l) Inditions had first their original in *Constantine's* time, and that in the 6th year of his Empire, being the 312 of Christ: but I think, that those who are of that opinion, are in a dream, and speak not truly; for they alledge not one fit witnesse: (m) *Ambrose* makes mention of it in these words; Now the Indition beginneeth in the moneth of September. (n) And it is called in *Theod.* book, *The Valentinian Indition*; Ancient Authors than these, worthy of faith, cannot easily be found: And whence this word *Indition* came first, and what is its own proper notion, it's not clearer then before. Learned men agree amongst themselves in this, That *Inditions* are nothing else but Customs and Tributes, whose Canon or Modell was declared every

Anno 304  
of Christ,  
to 337.

(b) Idat.  
Lucinius's  
death.

(c) Crispus is put  
to death.  
(c) Orof. 7.  
c. 28.

(d) Amm. 14.  
(e) Zof. 2.  
(f) Idat.  
Fast. Hieron.  
Chron.

(g) Hieron.  
Chron.  
Zof. 2. Socr.  
1. c. 15.  
vide 11. de  
Doct. Temp.  
c. 42.

(h) Hieron.  
Chron. An-  
onym. Idat.

(i) Perron. in  
Resp. p. 39.

(k) Euseb. 4.  
de vita Const.

Hier. Chron.  
Ambro. Gra.

in fun.  
Theod. Socr.

Theod. Socr.  
(l) See b. 11. of  
Doct. Times,  
ch. 39. &c.

(m) In Epist.  
ad Episc.  
Amilise.

(n) Leg. 9.  
Cod. de In-  
dul.

Anno 304.  
of Christ, to  
337.

every year; but why he was pleased, that they should end 15 years after, and why first at what time they were begun, there being many conjectures of divers persons, none sufficiently probable is alledged. Now the use of these Indictions is threefold, for one is in September, and is called *Constantinopolitane*; another is in the 8th of September, and is called *Cæsarian*: which of them two is the ancientest, I am not yet well resolved. The third is called *Pontifick* or *Roman*, and is affixed to the Pope's bulls, and takes its beginning in *January*, following the two former Epoches.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the Affairs of the Church which came to passe in the time of Constantine the Emperour; of Maximian's Persecution; of the Schism of the Donatists; of the heresie of the Arrians; and of the Nicæan Synod; and also of those Persons eminent in Piety and Learning.*

THE Persecution commenced by *Dioclesian*, and continued after him and *Herculus* against the Christians, was propagated and increased by *Galerius Maximianus*, and by *Galerius Maximinus*; but *Constantine* who ruled France, did not onely abstain from shedding Christian blood, but also had the Christians in great esteem. Above the others, did (a) *Maximinus* rage in the East, putting an infinite number of Christians to Martyrdom; Excellent and renowned persons, were *Pamphilus*, a learned Elder of *Cæsaria*; and *Procopius*, who suffered in the same City. *Peter* Bishop of *Alexandria*, who excluded *Arrius* from the Communion by reason of his Schisms: (b) *St. Potamiana* of *Alexandria*; *Lucian* of *Nicomedia*, &c. (c) Also was spread abroad a most pernicious and detestable book under *Pilatus*'s acts by *Maximinus*'s command, wherein many wicked and horrid things were contained of Christ; And *Maxentius* raged as much at Rome. But *Constantine* the Victorious, did put a stop and period to the Persecution; under whose protection and favour the Christian Religion was propagated and enlarged, even farther then the Roman Territories.

After this *Licinius* (d) being become an enemy, from a friend and Protector; he made not a few Martyrs also, amongst whom 40 Souldiers of an excellent and commendable valour are reckoned, who were starved of cold in *Cappadocia*; *Basil* Bishop of *Amasta*, and others; when *Licinius* was slain by *Constantine*, then did the Christians enjoy peace.

Whilest this Tyrant rages with fire and sword against the Christians, the inward and domestick troubles did also afflict the Church; for its said, That two schisms and heresies had their rise under the beginning of *Constantine*'s and *Maxentius*'s Empire; The schism of the *Donatists* in *Africk*, and the schism of *Meletian* in *Egypt*. The first arose upon these causes.

(a) *Lucilla*

## Cap. 2. An Account of Time.

207

(a) *Lucilla* was a woman of *Chartages* in Spain, mighty and famous, who being reprehended by *Cecilian* the Arch-deacon, sought the occasion of revenging her self: It happened, that *Mensurinus* the Bishop of *Chartage*, being called to Rome by *Maximian*, he commended the Vessels to the care of the Elders: Who being dead, *Cecilian* was ordained in his place by *Felix Aprungitanus*, who asking of these Elders that that was left in their hands, they refused and opposed his communion, and to them joyned her self *Lucilla*. And this was the first original of the *Donatists*, who had their name from *Donatus*, of the black houses, the chief Author of this schism, by whom was *Majorinus* ordained, although that they had rather to have their denomination from the other *Donatus*, who succeeded *Majorinus*: (b) *Maxentius* being taken away, when the *Donatists* did petition *Constantine* against *Cecilian*, whom they affirmed to have been ordained by *Felix the Deliverer*. The Emperour committed the cause to *Melchisedech* the Pontiff of Rome, and to some other Bishops, of whom three were *French*, by whom in the year 313, the *Donatists* were condemned, with their grand-Leader *Donatus*, as Hereticks and Schismaticks. But they again troubling *Africk*, and condemned again by *Alian* Proconsul, they appeal to the Emperour, by whose command their cause was again examined by a Synod at *Arelata*, and the sentence was given in *Cecilian*'s behalf, in the year 314, *Volusianus* and *Amanus* being Consuls; but notwithstanding this, having again appealed to *Constantine*, being commanded first to come to Rome, then to *Millan*, there they were at last condemned, and punished by banishment, but *Constantine* afterwards recalled and pardoned their banishment.

The other was the Schism of *Meletians*. (c) The Author of it was *Meletius* Bishop of *Lycopolis*, who being degraded by *Peter* Bishop of *Alexandria*, for divers crimes, and for having offered sacrifice to Idols, fell off from him; this business was broached at the same time wherein that of the *Donatists* was.

Out of this faction came (d) *Arius*, an Elder of the *Alexandrian* Church, who spread abroad an ungodly and blasphemous heresie against the Son of God, for which being cast out of the Church, he sought for his advocates and defenders, *Eusebius* Bishop of *Nicomedia*, and another Bishop of *Cæsaria*, with divers others, the which burning, when *Constantine* could not restrain and quench it by letters, nor by his Embassadour *Hosius*, at length he ordained a Synod to be convoked at *Nicca*, in the year 325, wherein were present 318 Bishops.

By this Synod is condemned *Arius*'s heresie, and the Controversie about the Paschever is determined. (a) *Arius* and eight other that were of his party, by the consent of the Bishop of *Nicca* were again admitted to the faith, as (b) *Hieronymus* writes; *Arius* upon the condition not to return into *Alexandria*, (c) whose books indeed *Constantine* gave out an Edict, that they should be burnt, (d) and that they who maintained his opinion, should be called

*Porphyrians*.

Anno 304  
of Christ,  
to 337.

(a) Opt. 1.  
Aug. 1. Con.  
Parm. et in  
brevi & alibi  
tom. 7. part. 1.

The history of  
the Donatists.

(b) Opt. 1.  
Aug. Ep. 8.  
102. 165. and  
in severall  
other places.  
vide tom. 1.  
Conc. Gall.  
and Euf. 10.  
hist. c. 5.

(c) Athan.  
Apol. 1. 2.  
Soz. 1. Soz. 1.  
Theod. c. 9.

(d) Athan.  
passim. Soz. 1.  
28. Soz. 1. 25.  
Theod. 1. c. 30.  
Eph. hær.  
69.

(a) Athan.  
Apol. 1.  
(b) Hieron.  
con. Lucif.  
(c) Gelas. 1. 2.  
c. 36.  
(d) Soz. Trip.  
2. c. 15.

(a) Euf. hist.  
Martyrs under  
Maximinus.

(b) Pallad.  
Lauf. c. 1.  
(c) Eusef. 9.  
hist. c. 4.

(d) Euf. in  
vita. Const.  
Chro. Soz. 1.  
c. 8. Orof. 7.  
c. 22.

Anno 304  
of Christ,  
to 337.

(c) Theod.  
l. 15. c. 20.

(f) Athan.  
Apol. 2.  
Socr. 2.  
Theod. Soz. 1.  
25. Ruff. 1.  
Athanasius's  
Troubles,

(g) Ruff. l. c. 8  
Socr. l. 17.  
Soz. 2. 24.  
Ambr. de  
fund. Theod.  
Paul. epist. 2.  
Sever. Sulp.  
l. 2.  
(h) Euf. 3. de  
vita Const.  
(i) Ibid. &  
Theopha.  
Cedrenus.  
(k) Ruff. l. 1.  
c. 9. Socr. 1.  
c. 25.  
Theod. l. c. 23.  
Soz. 1. c. 23.  
(a) L. 1. Cod.  
Th. de Episc.

(b) Euf. 3. de  
vita, c. 61.  
Soz. 2. c. 32.

(c) To. 1.  
Conc.

(d) Socr. 1.  
c. 10, 11.

*Porphyrians*. Now *Athanasius* Deacon to *Alexander* Bishop of *Alexandria* turned upon himself the hatred of all the *Arrians*, because he had prosecuted the action more vehemently than any other. (c) And five months after this Synod, *Alexander* dying, he was ordained in his place; Neither could it ever be obtained by prayers nor threats from him, that *Arianus* might have the liberty to return into *Alexandria*. By reason of this being vexed by the Calumnies of the *Melitanians* and *Arians*; (f) at length, he was condemned in the year 335, of false crimes, and being come to the Emperour into *Constantinople*, being suspected by him, by reason of his enemies new machinations and false accusations, he is sent prisoner to *Treveris*, in the 336 year of Christ. *Arim* having by all means possible endeavoured to obtain the favour and communion of *Alexander* Bishop of *Constantinople*, as he hastened to the Church, he ended his life with an infamous death.

(g) *Helena*, *Constantine* the Emperour's Mother, found the cross of Christ in Jerusalem, (h) and erected two Cathedral Churches, and *Constantine* built a most magnificent one, with the very City.

*Sapores* persecutes the Christians in *Persia*, and puts to Martyrdom *Acepsima*, (i) *Aithales*, and many more, whom the Emperour endeavoured to moderate and mitigate by letters. (k) Again, *Frumentius* *Tyrius*, a Philosopher, propagated and divulged the Christian faith in the *Indies*, and being ordained Bishop by *Athanasius*, he returned thither the 327th year of Christ, at what time the light of the Gospel, by the means and labour of a certain bond-woman, began to shine amongst the *Scythians*. Now that the Christian concernments might go on prosperously, this godly Emperour provided the Christians with many good laws, (a) whereof this was very remarkable, viz. That Bishops should give their sentences in causes and Judgment, it was enacted the 314th year of Christ; he also by another Law granted immunity to the Clergy, (b) then he did forbid the Heretick's Conventicles, and commanded their Churches to be pulled down, and to be confiscated to the Catholics.

(c) Then Synods, kept in several places, did establish the Christian discipline, especially that at *Ancyra*, wherein *Basilium* Bishop of *Amasia*, who suffered Martyrdom by *Licinius*'s command, was present; and that held at *Gangria*, not certainly known what year.

And that Age was not less abounding with persons of holiness, and deep Learning, besides those whom here and there we have mentioned, most of them who were in the Nicæan Synod are commended for men of excellent and admirable piety, as *Nicholaus* the Bishop of *Mira*, (d) *Spyridio* of *Trimitum* in *Cyprus*, *Eustathius* of *Antioch*, *Paphnutius* of *Thebes*, and infinite number of others; also *Rheticus* the *Augustinian*, was also esteemed amongst the Learned, who together with *Melchisedes* was granted to the *Donatists* by *Constantine*, to be their Judge: *Hieronymus* reckoneth amongst these,

these; *Arnobius*, who of a Rhetorician and Gentile, became a Christian in the 20th year of *Constantine*; but I think that he was long before this time: for he is said to have set out books against the Gentiles; for a certain token that he had embraced the Christian faith, and it appears by his books, that he wrote them to the persecutors of the Christians; Then in his second book he testifieth, that it was 1050 years after the first building of the City, which by *Vare*'s account falls upon the 297th year of Christ, a little before *Dioclesian*'s persecution. *Arnobius* questionless writ under *Dioclesian*. But *Laſantius*, the most learned man of his time, *Crispus Cesar*'s Master, lived after him; (e) but so poor, that oftentimes he wanted things needful, as *Hieronymus* saith. Amongst the Poets, *Juvenius* a Spanish Elder was most excellent; and *Publius Optatianus Porphyrius*, who dedicated to *Constantine* his panegyrick, of a pensive Artificer's letters. *Nazarius* and *Paterna* were esteemed rare Orators in *France*, living at that time.

Anno 337  
of Christ,  
to 361.

(e) Hier.  
chron.

## CHAP. III.

Touching the sons of *Constantine* the Great, and their Successors, and chiefly of *Constantine* and *Gallus Cesar*, *Vetranus* and *Mag-  
nentius* the Tyrants, and of the Persian Wars.

From the 337 year of Christ, to 361.

*Constantine* left three sons, whom he had by *Fausta Maximian*'s daughter, heirs of the Empire, who also divided the Empire amongst themselves, *France* and all what was on this side the *Alpes*, fell to the lot of his eldest son (a) *Constantine* and *Rome*, (a) *Victor*, *Italy*, *Africa*, *Sicilia*, and all the other Islands, *Scythia*, *Thracia*, *Macedonia*, and *Greece*, to *Constantius*; and the second brother *Constantius* had for his lot all *Asia*, from the Sea *Propontides*, and all the East, with *Egypt*.

(b) *Constantinus* their father had two brothers, *Constantius*, *Julian*'s Father, and *Dalmatius*, some call him *Anabalianus*, he had two sons, *Dalmatius*, who was created *Cesar* in the year 335, as *Idatius* saith, and also called *Censor*, as (c) *Socrates* relates, and *Anabalianus* or *Annibalianus*, whom *Constantine* had established King of the Kings, and people of *Pontus*, therefore doth (d) *Am-  
mianus* call him King.

A sudden sedition after *Constantine*'s death, embroiled them all in blood, and wars, by the commotion or dissimulation of the Emperour *Constantin*. With them *Optatus*, invested with the title of *Patricius*, newly and first invented by *Constantine*, and *Ablan* the Governour, were slain in the Judgment-Hall: Then the son of *Constantinus* *Constantinus*'s brother, the brother of *Gallus* and *Julian*, writing to the *S. P. Q. Ath.* hardly escaped. *Gallus* who was sick,

(b) Socr. l. 1.  
c. 1. Zof. 1.  
Victor. Eur.

(c) Lib. 1.  
c. 27.

(d) Amm.  
l. 14.

The bloody  
beginnings of  
*Constantine*'s  
sons.

E c and



Anno 337.  
of Christ, 361.

(c) Eut. 10.  
Socr. 2. c. 5.  
Zosim. Vi. c. 10.  
Idat.  
Constantine the  
younger is  
slain.  
Then Con-  
stantine.  
(a) Socr. 2. c.  
4. Zozo. 4. 1.  
(b) Idem.

(c) Idat. Juli-  
an, Orat. 1.  
& 2.

(d) ViSor.  
Socr. 2. c. 31.  
Socr. 4. c. 7.  
Orul. 7. c. 29.

(e) Idat. Socr.  
1. 2. c. 31. Zof.  
Vi. Eur. &c.

Gallus Caesar.  
(f) Amm. 14.  
Idat. Socr. 1.  
c. 34. Vi. c.  
Eutrop. 10.  
Zof. 2.  
(g) Julia.  
Orat. 3. &c.  
Amm. 15. Zof.  
3. vide Ep. Jul.  
ad S. P. Q. A.

Julian is cre-  
ated Emperour.  
(i) Amm. Hier.  
Chr. Idat. Zof.  
Socr. 1. 3. c. 1.  
&c. sup. Epi.  
Constantius's  
death.  
(k) Vi. Epi.  
de Const.

and Julian by reason of his tender age (for he was then but five years old) during the fates and destinies of these horrid murders, these three brothers obtained the Empire, who were not in unity and peace long together: (e) For four years after their fathers death in the year of Christ 340. Constantinus raising wars against his brother Constant, and breaking into his territories, he was slain near Aquileia. Constant himself, ten years after, being the beginning of the 350th year, as we may gather from (a) Idatim, is slain by Gaision, Magnentius's General, near to the Pyrenees in Helens castle being then 30 years old, as Hieronymus writes in his Chronicles, although Aurelius Victor gives him but 27 (b) whose death being known Vetranus Commander in chief of the forces in Pannonia, near Murfa, and Nepotianus son of Constantius's sister possessed themselves of the Roman Empire, he in May, and this in June, and (c) Vetranus eight Months after, upon the eighth of January, being reduced to order, lives privately again: Nepotianus eight and twenty dayes after was suppressed by Magnentius's Army: but after that upon the fourth of October (d) next, there was a very hot and bloody fight between them in Pannonia near Morfa, where Constantius's Army being beaten at the first encounter, became at last victorious, and in this fight was the Roman power much weakened by the loss of an infinite number of people: this was done in the 351 year of our Lord, (e) two years after being the 353, Magnentius despairing of all, killed himself near Lyons in France, the third of August: Decentius his brother died the 15 of September amongst the Senones.

(i) Gallus being created Caesar in the year 351, and established over the East Countreys by Constantius, and abusing that great power committed into his hands by his cruelty and lust, being called back by Constantius, he was put to death in Scythia by his order. (g) Julian his brother having been preserved by the sudden arriving of Eusebia, Constantius's sister, and sent to Athens to study, afterwards in the year 355 he was invested with the dignity of Caesar, and married to Helena the Emperours sister, and made Deputy of France, whereto being come he performed many gallant exploits against the Germans, the French and Alemans: he sent Connodorius King of the Alemans bound to Rome: Whose prosperous success Constantius envying, he endeavoured to draw away the souldiers from him, and to transport them into the East against the Persians: (i) but the souldiers saluted Julian in Paris by the name of Emperour, as Constantius was a preparing war against the Persians, which being somewhat ended or rather delayed, as he was hastning against Julian, intending to be revenged of him, he died the third of November at Mopsucrenes near Tarsus. (k) ViSor saith that Constantius died in the 44 year of his age, and of his Empire 39, and that he was Augustus 24. times. Eutropim writes that he died in the 45 year of his age, and 35 of his Empire. But Ammian gives him but few dayes besides the forty years of his life and Empire. He was Baptized a little before his death by Eu-

Eu-  
saint

(i) an Arrian Bishop, as (a) Socrates saith. Indeed its true that (b) Lucifer Bishop of Calaris did warn him by Athanasius and other his companion-Bishops, to seek after the wholesome Baptism, and receive it.

In the time of his Empire Nisibis was thrice besieged by Sapor, as Rufus writes. (c) First soon after Constantines death, in the year 338. it was beleaguered almost two Moneths, when Constantius was at Antioch, where he was healed of his disease by (d) St. Spirido the Bishop of Trimitunth. Secondly in the year three hundred and fifty, when Constantim left the East, to follow Magnentius; for he being departed, (e) Julian asserts that Sapor did again assault it, and this siege lasted four Moneths, and was raised by the prayers of Saint James the Bishop, there being sent a great Army of Gnats amongst the Barbarians, which drove them away, and put them to flight. Thirdly, when Julian was Caesar, and had subdued the French, the Silians and the Quades; and when Constantius required of him two legions of Souldiers to send thither: and so Nisibis (as it appears) was besieged in the year three hundred and sixty, when Lucilianus defended it most valiantly, as (f) Zosimus saith.

Anno 337  
of Christ,  
to 361.

(a) Socr. 1. 2.  
c. 46.  
(b) Lucif. 1. 1.  
Pro. S. Ath.  
(c) Hieron.  
Chron.  
(d) Metaph.  
12, Sept.

(e) Julia O-  
rat. 1. Theod.  
2. Hist. c. 30.  
and in Philo-  
theus.

(f) Zof. 3.

#### CHAP. IV.

Of the Ecclesiasticall affairs, during the time of Constantius, and of the severall Councils; of Athanasius's Persecutions, and of the most eminent persons for Holinesse and Excellent Genius.

Grievous and lasting troubles did attend the Church infected with heresies during Constantius's Empire: for the Arrian peridious Heresy, which for the fear of Constantinus had been suppressed, now began again to lift up its head. One of the causes of so great an evil was a woman, Constantia by name, which had married (g) Licinius. Dying, she recommended to her brother Constantine the Emperour, a certain Elder infected with the opinion of (h) Arius, whom he had in great esteem afterwards; and as he died, he committed him his Will, and having delivered it into Constantius's hands, he was no lesse esteemed by him then by his father: wherefore as he had perswaded Constantinus to recall Arius, so at last he prevailed so with Constantius that he professed himself a strong upholder and preserver of that heresy, and on purpose to spread it abroad he mixt many other things with it.

Then the care and thoughts of all the Arrians were bent to the destroying of Athanasius: on whom at that time the Catholick Concerns did relye: (a) But Constantine the younger sends him from France, (b) where he had remained two years and four Moneths, back into Alexandria with very honourable and commendable Letters in the year of our Lord 338. But Eusebius of Nicomedia and others troubling him; Pope Julius warned them both

(g) Ruf. 1. 1.  
c. 11. Socr. 1.  
1. c. 26. Socr.  
1. 1. c. 38. and  
c. 34. and 1.  
2. c. 1. Theod.  
2. c. 3.  
Constantius  
propagates  
Arianus's He-  
resy.

(a) Athan. A-  
pol. 2. Theod.  
1. 2. c. 1. Socr.  
1. 2.  
(b) Theod. 1.  
2. c. 1.  
Athanasius  
brought to  
question.



Anno 337  
of Christ,  
to 361.

(c) Athan. A-  
pol. and Ep.  
ad Orth. Socr.  
1. 2. c. 10. The-  
od. 2. c. 4.  
The Council  
of Sardis.

(d) Idem. and  
Sulp. 3.

(e) Socr. 2. c.  
20. Sez. 3. c. 10

(f) Extrat. apud  
Hilar. in frag.  
(g) Sulp. 2.  
Socr. 2. c. 21.  
Theod. 2. c. 5.  
Socr. 4. c. 2.

A grievous  
Persecution  
for the cause  
of Athanasius.

(a) Athan. &c.  
citati. vide  
Anin. notitias  
ad Epiph.  
Hær. 73.  
(b) Amm. in  
fine l. 21.

to come before him to decide the controversy, but the Eusebians shifting, and putting off their appearing, and Athanasius having appeared, and stayed in Rome a year and a quarter, in the year 341. he returned into Alexandria: (c) But the same year was held a Council at Antioch, for to dedicate Constantines Cathedrall Church, wherein Athanasius being ejected, in his place was ordained Gregorius Cappadox, who possessed that place, having committed a great murder, Athanasius being secretly escaped, and gone to Rome, whether Paul, Bishop of Constantinople, and other Catholick Bishops, being expelled by the Arians, had retired themselves as to a sure place of refuge: (d) And for their cause, by the command of Constant and Constantius, was a generall Synod assembled at Sardis, in the year 347. By which the Arians retiring and hiding themselves, Athanasius was restored to his office, and all the other Bishops also, and the Hereticks being condemned, the Articles of Faith concluded at Nicene, were here ratified. (e) At the same time the Arians convoke a Conventicle at Philippis in Thracia, which they also called by the name of Sardis, where they forbade the Word of Consubstantiall evermore to be heard, (f) and sent their decree to them in Africa. But then Constantius being forced by Constant's threatening letters, commanded Athanasius to return into Alexandria: (g) But Paul being re-entered into Constantinople, and soon after calt out again, and brought to Cucusum, he was put to death by the Arians, and soon after this is also Athanasius turned out; And Constantius by all means possible seeking and endeavouring Athanasius's destruction, partly by force partly by threatnings he compells them to condemn him, and he punished partly by prison, partly by banishment, those who disowned and spoke ill of this wickedness. Eusebius of Verfelles, Disciple of Millan and Liberius the Pope are banished, who two years after, for desire of recovering the See of Rome, subscribes Athanasius's condemnation: but Osius of Cordubia, having constantly resisted and opposed it, at last, wearied out by sufferings and terrors, he assented also to it.

In the midst of all this, Athanasius being narrowly prosecuted to death, by the divine providence and protection, at last escaped.

(a) Now the Arians were making again new Articles of Faith, such as they had done within Eleven or Twelve years.

Never at any other time were Synods of Bishops more frequent then under this Emperour, the which (b) Ammianus an Heathen writer hath not ably observed as by his own words we may here see. Confounding (saith he) the absolute and simple Christian Religion with superstition, in the searching of which, with more perplexity then gravity in the composing of the same, he stirred up many dissensions, which being dispersed abroad, he maintained and fomented by contention of words, so that he cut off the sinews of the thing carried about, whilst he endeavourth to draw to his will the whole Ceremony of it, by multitudes

of Bishops riding far and near as publick labouring beasts to the Synods, as they call them: (c) Now the chiefest that were held by the Hereticks, are reckoned to be these, viz. That of Syrmia in the year 351. Wherein Photinus Marcellus, Anciranus's Disciple, (d) often brought into Judgment afore and condemned, at length he was reduced into order, Basilus chiefly prosecuting him, (e) And that of Arimina, and also that of Seleucia, both held at the same time in the three hundred fifty ninth year of Christ; wherein perfidiousness was strengthened by the fraud and impiety of the Arians.

Other Heresies besides that of Arius broke forth, as that of the Semirionians, who professed the Son of God, to be not of the same substance of the Father, but of a substance like to it, of the Marcellians, who revived (f) Sabellius's opinion: of the Photinians, who presumed to say that Christ was onely a meer man: of the Macedonians, or Pneumatomachians, who put the Holy Ghost in number of things created. (a) Also the Heresy of the Anomoeans, or Eunomians, from Eutius Syrus, and his Disciple Eunomus: who asserted the Son to be different from the Father, (b) then of the Audianians and Arians; of whom Epiphanius, Theodoretus, and others do speak.

The persons illustrious for their holiness that dyed in this Age were chiefly these, Paul the first Hermite, and Antonius the Monk: Hieronymus in his Chronicles writes, That in the 19 year of Constantius, dyed Antonius the Great; the which (c) Gregory of Turin hath followed; the which year in Scaliger's Edition is ascribed to the fourth year of the 283 Olympiad in Pontatena, to the first year of the 284 Olympiad, and to the 359th year of Christ; but the 19th year of Constantius began in the 355 of Christ, Arbitianus and Lollius being Consuls; whence it may be, that Antonius dyed the year following 356 in January. (d) He was 105 years old, therefore his birth falls upon the 250 year of Christ, Decius then possessing the Empire, and persecuting the Christians, as Hieronymus's Chronicles do relate.

Paul was older then Antonius by 23 years; yea Hieronymus in Paul's life relates, that Antonius was 90 years old when Paul dyed, in the 113 year of his life; by this account, this Paul was born about the 227th, or 228th year of Christ, and dyed the 340, or 341, and lived in the hermitage 90 years.

Neverthelesse, Hieronymus speaks somewhat confusedly about Paul; for he saith, That Paul, at that time when Antonius came to him, that he had already led an heavenly life for the space of 115 years, and that in the 15th year of his life, for to escape the Persecution, he hid himself in a cave, which doth not well agree together. If he had lived 113 years in the desert after Decius's persecution, he would be said to have dyed the 363d year of our Lord; after the death of Constantius and Antonius, and had lived 128 years, or Antonius, who lived after him 15 years, dyed in the year 378; which is altogether absurd.

Anno 337  
of Christ,  
to 361.

(c) Hilar. de  
Syn. Socr. l. 2.  
c. 29. Sez. l. 4.  
c. 6.  
Animadv. ad  
Epiph. Hær.  
73.

(d) Vide ap-  
pend. hujus  
operis.

(e) Athan. de  
Syn. Sever. 2.  
Socr. 2. c. 29.  
Sez. 4. c. 16.  
Ruff. l. 1. c. 21.  
Theod. 2. c. 18.

(f) Epiph.  
Theod. de  
hær. Aug. de  
hær. Sever. 1.  
(a) Epiph. hær.  
76. Sez. l. 2.  
c. 35.

(b) Epiph. hær.  
70. & 75.

Paul the first  
Hermite, and  
Antonius.

(c) Lib. 1.  
Hist. Franc.  
c. 38.

(d) Athan. in  
vita ejus,  
Hier. Chron.

Anno 361  
of Christ,  
to 363.

(e) Epiph.  
hær. 30.

At that time did flourish St. James Bishop of *Nisibis*; *Eusebius* of *Antioch* ejected out of his Office by the *Arrians* for his faith, in the year 340. *Hilarius* of *Piſawene* 355, banished by *Constantius*, (c) *Josephus Comes*, of a Jew became Christian; *Eusebius* of *Vercelles*, *Paulinus* of *Trevirenes*; And for deep Learning are praised *Eusebius* of *Cæsarea*, who dyed in the 340th year of Christ, *Viborinus* the Rhetorician, and *Donatus* the Grammarian, *Hieronymus*'s Schoolmaster.

## CHAP. V.

Of Julian, and of his Deeds.

Anno 361 of Christ, unto 363.

(a) Julian ad  
S. P. Q. Ath.  
Amm. 15.  
Zof. 3. Socr.  
3. Theod. 3.  
Soz. 4. Sulp. 2.  
Orof. 7. c. 10.  
(b) Idat. Fast.  
Socr. 2. c. 34.  
(c) Amm. 21.  
& 22.  
Socr. 3. c. 4.

(a) **J**ulianus, his Cousen-german *Constantius* being dead, alone governed the Empire in the year of our Lord 361, having already obtained of *Constantius* the title of (b) *Cæsar*, ever since the 8th of November 355; and having been entituled *Augustus* by the Souldiers, in the 36th year in the City of *Paris*; as soon as he alone enjoyed the whole Empire, he either put to death or banished all *Constantius*'s friends; (c) he opened again the Temples of the Idols, and having renounced all the Sacraments of the Christian Faith, he was consecrated High Priest by prophane ceremonies; then being gone against the *Persians*, in the year 362, being in *Antioch*, and mocked there by the people, he made a Satyrick book in his own vindication, that he entituled, *Mispogon*.

(d) Amm. 24.  
& 25.  
Zofim. 1. 3.

(d) After this in the 363 year, the third of *March*, having led his Army against the *Persians*, having somewhat prosperously pursued the War, he foolishly rejected the honourable and reasonable conditions of peace offered to him by the King of the *Persians*. At length, by his own indiscretion, his Navies being burnt up that went along with the Army to supply them with victuals, and all the provision that was in them being stopt upon the River, and he himself intercepted by the *Persians*, and being in want of all things, he dyed in the midst of the fight; but it's uncertain who shot his Arrow at him, in the (e) 26 of June, of the 363 year of Christ, of his own age 31, having governed the Empire after *Constantius*'s death one year and seven moneths. (f) It is said, That as he dyed, he took some blood out of his wound into his hand, and cast it up towards Heaven, with these words, *Now hast thou overcome, O Galilee*.

(e) Socr. 5.  
c. 21.  
Theod. 3.  
c. 25.  
(f) Theod. 3.  
c. 25.

(g) Hieron.  
Chron.  
Auff. 1. c. 32.  
& c. Supr. cit.

(g) Under this Emperour the Christian's Persecution was rather a flattering and enticing, then a forcing and constraining persecution, to make them to worship Idols, and sacrifice to them; for he fought against the Christian Faith by hidden and sly arts and practices: he advanced none but Heathens to places of publick

Anno 361  
of Christ,  
to 363.

lick employment; he forbad all Authors but Heathens, to be taught in the Schools: He suffered Prelates and Bishops of divers heresies to live at their own will and fancy, intending by it, that they should not live peaceably and quietly amongst themselves: yet he put some to death, as amongst others, *Artemius* the Governour of Egypt Augustal, who, under pretext of other crimes, being brought to *Antioch*, and accused with the constancy of his faith, to have presumed to blame and speak ill of the Emperour, was slain (a) the 20th of September.

(a) Marryr.  
Rom.  
(b) Socr. 3.  
c. 7, 8, 9.  
Theod. 1. 3.  
c. 4. & 5.

(b) Now *Julian* having by his Edict recalled all them that had been banished; *Athanasius* being returned into *Alexandria*, he convoked a Synod in the year of our Lord, 362, wherein it was decreed, That all the Bishops that had been turned out of their Offices, should again enjoy their places. *Lucifer Calaritannus* soon after came into *Antioch*, divided them into three factions; for some were called *Eusebians*; so called from that great *Eusebius*, who was ejected out of *Antioch* by the *Arrians*; some, *Meletians*, from *Meletius*, infected by the *Arrians* company, who hated the Catholicks; and thirdly, some, *Arrians*, over whom was *Euzoius*. Therefore *Lucifer* being come thither, he ordained *Paulinus*, *Eusebius*'s Presbyter, Bishop for the Catholicks; so that there were three Bishops in that City. After this *Eusebius* of *Vercelles* being come thither, disapproved what *Lucifer* had done; whereupon he being offended, and having taken it ill, that all those who had been dispossessed of their Offices, should repossesse and re-enjoy them again, he broke off from the communion of the Catholicks; and this was the first schism that was amongst the *Luciferians*.

The Luciferian  
Schism.

(c) Now at the instant request of the *Arrians*, *Julian* commanded *Athanasius* to be turned out of *Alexandria*, who being by the subtle counsel of his persecutor, persecuted to death, at last escaped their hands. (d) This same Emperour being petitioned by the Donatists, restored them to their former estate. (e) Again, he either commanded or suffered the Gentiles to exercise all sorts of villanies and cruelties against the Christians, without punishing them for it. Amongst other things, when those of *Alexandria* butchered (f) *Georgius*; who had been put in *Athanasius*'s place, he contented himself to reprehend them mildly. Upon whose death *Athanasius* seeing the place void, returned to it; whom *Julian* commanded again to be turned out.

(c) Ruff. 1. 2.  
c. 34.  
Socr. 1. 3. c. 9.  
Theod. 3.  
Soz. 3.  
(d) Opra. 2.  
(e) Socr. 1. 3.  
&c.

In this Emperour's time were these persons of great fame for their Learning, (a) *Prohæresius* the Sophist, a Christian, who by reason of *Julian*'s Edict, That no Christian Doctors should teach Schools, gave off keeping of School of his own free will; although *Julian* had excepted him by his own name, being then 85 years old; as it may be gathered out of *Eupanius*; and *Aimerius* also, a Sophist, *Prohæresius*'s emulator, as *Suidas* writes; also (b) *Themistius* the Philosopher, *Libanius* the Sophist, *Oribasius* the Physician, *Maximus* the Philosopher, and *Ecebolius*.

(f) Amm. 22.  
Julia. Ep. 10.

Persons of  
fame.  
(a) Hier.  
Chron.  
Eunap.  
(b) Aut. cit. &  
Suidas.

Anno 363  
of Christ,  
to 378.

## CHAP. VI.

Of Jovian, Valentinian, and Valens.

Anno 363 of Christ, unto 378.

(c) Amm. 25.  
Ruff. 2. c. 1.  
Socr. 3. c. 24.  
&c. Soz. 6.  
Theod. 4.  
Viâ. Eur. 19.  
Zosim. 1.3.

**J**ovian, born at (c) *Sigidon* in *Pannonia*, was saluted Emperour by the suffrage and common consent of the Souldiers, the 5th of July, the 363 year of our Lord, as *Idatius* writes. A man of an admirable proportion of body, yet of a more excellent mind for piety and goodnesse, who suddenly brought the Souldiers from the superstitious worship of the Heathens, to the true Christian Religion; And set out an Ediâ, That all the Idols Temples should be shut up, and the sacrifices utterly abolisht, having concluded a peace more for necessity then for honour, with *Sapor* King of *Persia* for 30 years, by which he yielded *Nisibis*, and the most part of *Mesopotamia*, he established the Roman estate. But as he was returning to *Constantinople*, he dyed at *Dadastane*, in the Territorics of *Galatia*, of a surfeit, or of the smell of Prunes, or by the fall of a new roof, the 11th of March, the 33 year of his age, and the eight moneth of his Reign.

(d) Athan. ad  
Jovia.

(d) He being an embracer and professor of the Christian faith, he required *Athanasius* to give him a rule and Canon of the same; and he rejected the *Arrians*, cunningly coming and creeping to him; who being met together in the Nicene Council, are said by (c) *Socrates* and *Sozomenus* to have made a form of it, *Meletius* being their chief Leader, and the *Arians* giving their voyces to it: But *Hieronymus* relates in his Chron. that they by a common decree established *homousium*, that is, the word *Consubstantial*, to be nullified; and the word *anomeum*, that is, *Unlike*, to be allowed and approved: That is to say, they approved and confirmed the opinions of the *Macedonians* and *Semiarrians*.

(f) Amm. 26.  
Zosim. fine. 3.  
& in 4. Viâ.  
Socr. 4.  
Theod. 4. c. 6.  
Ruff. 1.2. c. 2.

(f) *Jovianus* being dead in the very same year of Christ 364, *Valentinian* the next day after Bissextile was elected Emperour at *Nicea*, having shun'd the bissextile, as Ominous, as *Ammianus* writes, he under his Father *Gratian* governed the second Fencing-School of *Cybalis*, a City in *Pannonia*; but *Julian* removed him out of that dignity, because of his constant mind in the Christian Religion, who the same year intituled his own brother *Augustus*. In *Constantinople*, the 4th of April, (as *Idatius* saith,) (a) having committed the East to his charge, he goeth himself into the West; he was indued with many ornaments of virtue; but he exceeded most in the love of Justice, inso much, that sometimes he exceeded in punishing of vices, he had an admirable face, and an excellent genius, he was learned and experienced in divers Arts, he was wonderfully temperate, and yet more worthy of praises for his constancy and integrity in the Christian faith, and that much the more, because his brother did renounce it to his great defame. He

waged

Anno 363  
of Christ,  
to 378.

waged wars against the *Alemans*, the *Quades*, and the *Saxons*, besides other Nations: The *Quades* or *Sarmats* at length waisting the borders, when as he was a preparing an Army against them, and that they had sent their Embassadors to him in way of submission, being somewhat extraordinarily passionate against them; being suddenly taken with an Apoplexy, he dyed the 15 of December in *Pannonia*, in *Brigition's* Castle, as *Idatius* saith, (b) in the 55 year of his age, and the 12th of his Empire. He left his son *Gratian*, already made *Augustus* afore, to succeed him in the Empire. And (c) *Valentinian* his other son by *Justina*, six dayes after was invested with the same honour at *Acincum* in *Pannonia* by the Souldiers.

(b) Amm. 30.

(d) *Valens* at the very beginning of his Empire, envying and hating *Procopius Silex*, *Julian's* kinsman, because he had possessed himself of the Government of *Constantinople*, he subdued him in *Phrygia*, in the year 366, and put him to a cruel death the 6th of June; (e) Then he had continual Wars with the *Goths*; whose King asking peace of him, obtained it in the year 369. But in the year 379, he courteously and civilly entertained him and *Fritigernus*, when they were expelled out by the *Hunns*, (f) and settled them in *Thracia*, with the *Goths* there. They afterwards being stirred up by *Lupicinus's* covetousnesse, rose up against the *Romans*. (g) And *Valens* himself at length fighting against them near *H Adrianopolis*, and being wounded with a dart, was burnt with *Tugurium*, the Town whither he had retired himself the 5th of August 378, by the *Barbarians*, as *Idatius* witnesseth: he dyed; being almost 50 years old; and having governed the Empire 14 years, and some four moneths. *Ammian* records, That his manners and disposition were indeed tempered with some virtues, but with many more vices, especially of wrath, cruelty, and envy; which were the more violent, by reason of his impiety towards God, and the poyson of that contagious heresie of the *Arrians*.

(d) Arsm. 26.  
&c. Zosim. 4.  
Socr. 4. c. 3.  
& 5.  
Soz. 6. c. 8.  
Theod. 4. c. 12.  
Them.  
Orat. 9.  
Orol. 7.

(e) Amm. 27.  
vide Jornam.  
(f) Amm. 31.

(g) Hieron.  
Chron.  
Amm. 31.  
Zel. 4.  
Socr. 4. c. 38.  
Soz. 7. c. 48.  
Ruff. 1.2. c. 13.  
Orol. 7. c. 3.  
Theod. 4.  
c. 36.

(a) He shewed a notable testimony of his cruelty in the year 370, in which many were put to death by his command, because it was said, That he enquiring by curious arts, Who should be his successeur; and that the first part of his name was thus shewed to him, *THEOD*: (b) Whereupon *Theodosius* the elder, the Father of *Theodosius*, afterwards Emperour; is thought to have been put to death in *Asia*, having been baptized. A very unworthy reward for all his good services and deserts from the Commonwealth; for amongst others, he had subdued *Firmus* the Tyrant, who spoyle and destroyed *Africk*, with a great Army of *Moores*, and had followed and pursued him so close; that at length he killed both him and his brothers.

(a) Amm. 16.  
Zosim. 4.  
Socr. 4. c. 19.  
Soz. 6. c. 33.

(b) Hier. Chr.  
Orol. 7. c. 33.

(a) Amm. 30.  
Viâ.  
*Valentinian's*  
noble qualities.

## CHAP. VII.

The affairs of the Church worthy of memory under those Emperours, and the persons of fame for their Piety or for their Learning.

(c) Theod. 4. c. 12. Hier. Chron. &c. Valens Persecutes the Church.

(d) Socr. 4. c. 4. & 11. Basil. Ep. 54.

(a) Bas. Ep. 195. Socr. 4. c. 7.

(b) Socr. 4. c. 13. &c. Socr. b. c. 14. &c.

(c) Idem. et Naz. in Euc. Basil. & Ep. 10.

Basilus and Gregorius.

AT this time the Catholick interest was in the East in great troubles under an Arian Prince. (c) For *Valens* was infected with the Heresy of the Arians by reason of his familiarity and acquaintance with them; he vexed continually them that adhered to the Nicæan opinion and doctrine, chiefly after he was baptized by *Eudoxim* the usurper of the Bishoprick of Constantinople, in the very design of his Gothick expedition; and he going before he swore both that he never would forsake that impious opinion, and that he would oppose and pull down with all his power all the professors of the contrary opinion: and he performed both according to his promise; for he stirred up a cruel and bloody Persecution, wherein were many Bishops banished, and Catholicks of other ranks; the rest were afflicted divers wayes, not a few suffered very deep. (d) The Macedonians and Semiarians having made a confederacy together, sent Embassadours to the Pontiff of Rome, and many of them having approved the Articles of Faith, concluded in the Nicæan Synod, were re-established, and particularly *Sebastenus Eustathius* a subtil and crafty Arian.

(a) The Emperour disliking this their condescension, he would have an assembly of his own to be held at Nicea, by whom *Anomœus* the Prince of the *Anomœans* was created Bishop of *Cyzicum*, *Eleusius* being ejected, but afterwards he was turned out by the *Cyzinians*.

(b) After *Eudoxius's* death in the year 370. the Catholicks having substituted *Evagrius*, and the Arians *Demophilus*, *Valens* removed them both: the Catholicks afterwards being vexed and oppressed by the Arians, they sent eighty Ecclesiasticall persons to complain to the Emperour, whom *Modestus* the Governour by *Valens's* command, being embarked, and in the middle of the Sea, consumed both by fire and water. (c) Above all others, he hated the Monks, and by an edict forced to be lifted for Souldiers; yet notwithstanding all this, God was not wanting to his Church in this turbulent and distressed estate of hers: for he opposed to the Hereticks many rare and excellent persons, both for their godliness, and for their learning: Amongst them were these two, *Basilus*, and *Gregorius*, most eminent, who came as it were out of the Wildernesse to succour the Catholick party. *Valens* doth in vain oppose *Basilus* created Bishop of *Cæsarea* in *Cappadocia*, in the year three hundred and seventy, whose son *Galates* for his fathers fault, is punished with death, and *Gregorius* ordained Bishop of the *Sasimans* dyed. After *Nazantius* at this time did also flourish that other *Gregorius* Bishop of *Nisene*, and brother to *Basilus*, whom *Valens* deposed out of his office, as also *Meletius* of *Antioch*; *Eusebius*

## Cap. 7. An Account of Time.

him of *Samos*. (d) But intending also to dispossesse *Athanasius*, fearing that the Alexandrians would rise in an uproar, he desisted from his enterprize, but he being dead, and *Peter* being by the Catholicks ordained in his place, *Valens* commanded *Lucius* an Arian to be preferred to it, and *Peter* to be shut up in Prison. Hereupon the estate of the Church was very sad, which by the slaughter of the Catholicks, the ravishment of Virgins, and also by the turning away of the Monks; the banishment of some, and the tearing of others into factions, *Lucius* found. *Athanasius* died, as (c) *Socrates* saith, under the consulate of *Gracian* II. and *Probus* which was the year of our Lord three hundred seventy one, having been an officer of the Church fourty six years in the time of her great changes and alteration; At that time (f) when *Mauria* Queen of the *Saracens*, offered peace to the Romans upon that condition, that *Moses* that holy Hermite might be given for a Bishop to her Nation, who being brought into *Alexandria*, would never suffer *Lucius* to give him the imposition of hands, and at last obtained to be consecrated by a Catholick Prelate: *S. Epiphanius* was also a great splendour to the Churches of the East, who began to enter into the Ecclesiasticall office in the year three hundred seventy five, as also (a) *Didimus* of *Alexandria*, who being blind ever since he was five years old, yet flourished in all sorts of learning.

This great *Basilus* died in the beginning of the 379th year of our Lord in January; after whose death, in the ninth Moneth after, was convoked an assembly of Catholick Bishops at *Antioch*, wherein for to compose and quiet the dissensions of that Church, it was decreed by generall consent, that concerning *Paulus* and *Meletius*, that one of them being dead, the other should remain Bishop alone without any other: (c) And *Gregorius Nazianzenus*, is by the same Councill sent to Constantinople, there to order the Ecclesiasticall estate.

In the West which *Valentinian* a Catholick Prince did govern, there was scarce any trouble occasioned by the Hereticks, onely that (d) *Auxentius* Bishop of *Millain* of the Arian faction, under a pretence of Piety deceived the Emperour, who seeing *St. Hilary* a Pillar of the French Churches to be ready to dispute with *Auxentius*, commanded him to depart out of the City.

But there broke out a great schism at Rome, in the 367th year of Christ after the death of *Liberius* the High Priest. *Ursinus* being by a lawful consent and suffrage against *Damasus*, ordained Bishop, thence arose such a bitter sedition, that there were found in one day 137 dead corps in *Sicinius's* Cathedrall Church, as *Ammianus* witnesseth.

(f) Then *Auxentius* Bishop of *Millan* being dead, *Ambrosius* is created in his place, a person of Counsell, in the year 375. eight dayes after he was Baptized. And in the same year is (g) *St. Martin* made Bishop of *Turin* in *France*. (h) Five years before this time, being the 370th year, died *St. Eusebius Vercellensis*,

Anno 363 of Christ, to 378.

(d) Socr. 4. Theod. 4. Socr. 6.

(e) Socr. 4. c. 9. Theod. 4. c. 2.

(f) Socr. 4. c. 16. Socr. 6. c. 38. Russ. 2. c. 6.

(a) Hier. Chr. Socr. 4. c. 25. Russ. 2. c. 7.

(c) Socr. 1. c. 9. Socr. 1. 7. c. 3.

(d) Soc. Greg. ipse de vita sua. (a) Hilary. con. Auxen. Sulp. 2.

(f) Amm. 27. Socr. 4. c. 29. Russ. 2. c. 10.

(g) Paul. in vita Ambr. Hier. Chr. Russ. 2. c. 11. Socr. 4. c. 30.

(h) Greg. Tur. 1. c. 47.

Anno 363.  
of Christ, to  
378.

(f) Hier. Chr.  
(a) Hier. Chr.

sis, and *Lucifer Calaritanus*, who stirred up a Schism of his own name; (i) neither long after did also die *Hilarius* the Bishop of the Pictes, but (a) *Optatus* Bishop of Milevium in Africk, was then eminent, and confuted *Parmenianus Donatus's* succellour in a great and laborious volume of his own.

*Palestine* also in these times was adorned by *St. Hilarie's* piety who dyed about the 372 year of Christ, aged about eighty years, as *Hieronymus* writes upon his life, who then dwelt in Syria; and *Ephrem* that holy man and ornament of the *Edeſſean* Church was also living about these times.

(b) In the same Country of *Palestine* *Melania Marcellus* the Conſulls eldest daughter, was in these dayes highly recommended for her piety and holineſſe, although *Ruffius's* acquaintance imbued her a little with *Origen's* opinions.

Amongſt the Gentiles was (c) *Themistius*, surnamed *Euphrades*, in great eſteem and repute for his learning, who from *Conſtantinus* Empire unto *Theodoſius*, and unto *Arcadius*, beginning, was accounted the Prince of Philosophy and Eloquence; and *Amianus* who warred under *Valens*, and *Aurelius Victor* do obtain the praise of great Historians.

In this intervall of time broke forth the Apollinarians Hereſy, whose Author was (d) *Apollinaris* of Laodicea, whom *Damaſus* the Pope condemned together with his Diſciple *Vitalis*, in a Synod of Rome, in the three hundred ſeventy and third year of Christ.

*Valentinian's* Epock is remarked by that illuſtrious character of the year Biſſextil, which is the three hundred ſixty fourth year of our Lord as it appears out of (e) *Amianus*, and here ought to be a period of those times Chronology, which being compared with the books of the Conſulls and Emperours of that age affords the beginnings and endings of every one, as we have here ſet down.

## CHAP. VIII.

what things came to paſſe during *Gratian's*, *Valentinian's*, the younger, and *Theodoſius's* times; and of *Maximus* and *Eugenius* the Tyrants.

Anno 378. of Christ, unto 395.

**V**alentinian being *Augustus*, had two ſons, *Gratian* who was born the fourteenth of May, in the year of Christ three hundred fifty and nine, as *Idatius* ſaith in his records; and *Valentinian*, Junior, whom he begat of his Wife *Juſtina* (which had firſt married *Magneſius* the Tyrant as (a) *Zoſimus* writes) the eighteenth of January, in the year three hundred ſixty and ſix, by *Idatius's* accompts. *Valentinian* created his ſon (b) *Gratian*, *Auguſtus*,

(a) Zoſim. 4.

(b) Idat.

*ſius*, at *Amiens* in France the ninth of September, Anno three hundred ſixty ſeven. And *Valentinian* the younger, in the three hundred ſeventy fifth year, ſoon after his Fathers death by the generall voice of the Souldiers, was extolled to the ſame honour being but ten years old.

(d) *Gratian* was of an admirable Genius and propenſity to all virtue and honeſty, which was farther adorned by the excellent comelineſſe of his body: he was a reaſonable good Scholler, but he had no great ſkill to govern the publick, being wont to prefer Barbarian and raw Souldiers before the Roman and old-ones; (e) He, *Valens* being dead, when the Goths did over-run and ſpoil Thrace, and other territories of the Roman Empire, not being able to bear the whole burthen alone, after he had called *Theodoſius* the ſon of that *Theodoſius* which had innocently been put to death in *Africa* (f) as we here above have obſerved, out of Spain he made him his companion in the Empire when he was thirty three years old, as *Victor* writes, g) which was the three hundred ſeventy ninth year of our Lord, the fourteenth of February at *Sirmium*.

*Theodoſe* overcoming and defeating the Barbarians reſtored peace and quietneſſe to thoſe territories, and a while after received honourably *Athanasius* their King, expelled by his ſubjects, flying to him in *Conſtantinople*, in the year three hundred eighty and one, and the ſame Moneth of January that he had come to him, being dead, his Funerals were celebrated as becomes the eſtate of a King: but *Idatius* records that the whole Nation of the Goths, together with their King ſubmitted themſelves the next year to the Roman Empire, to whom the Emperour assigned a countrey to inhabit; the which *Syneſius* ſheweth in *Orat. de regno*.

a) After this, *Maximus* took upon himſelf the Government of Britain in the three hundred eighty and ſecond year, and having eſta bliſhed his Court at *Trivirum*; he by *Andragatius* his General, killed by treachery and fraud *Gratian*, as he was forſaken of his Souldiers near *Lions* the eighth of September, Anno 383. therefore *Gratian* died in the 25 year of his age, whose death (b) *Theodoſius* well revenged, and alſo reſtored *Valentinian* the younger into the Empire, who had been expelled out of Italy, c) and reconciled him with *Ambroſius*, and the Catholick Church, to whom both, having rejected his Mother, and the Arian faction, he wholly and conſtantly adhered: which was done in the 388, year of Christ, when by the ſpeciall protection and providence of God the (d) 5th of Au-guſt, he overcame and killed *Maximus* near *Aquila*: his ſon *Victor* ſew dayes after was put to death by the Earl *Agothaſes*, but *Andragatius* did precipitate himſelf into the Sea.

e) *Theodoſius* was adorned and enriched with all the virtues becoming a Chriſtian Emperour, and he was in no waies inferior to the Princes that went before, nor to them that came after him:

Anno 378.  
of Christ, to  
395.

(c) Amm. 30.  
Socr. 4. c. 31.  
Idat.  
d) Amm. 27.  
Victor.

(e) Zoſim. 4.  
Socr. 5. c. 2.  
Soz. 7. c. 12.  
Theod. 5. c. 9.  
Vict. Oroſ. 7.  
c. 24.  
(f) Cap. 6.

(g) Proſper.  
Chron. Idat.  
Marcell. Chr.  
Alex.

a) Sever. 2. Vi-  
dor. Zoſim. 4.  
Marcell. Socr. 5  
c. 1. Soz. 7. c. 13

(b) Lar. Pac.  
Paneg. Ida.  
Marcell. Ruff.  
2. c. 32. Socr.  
8c.  
(c) Ambr. Ep.  
57.

(d) Idat.

(e) Victor.  
Ambr. in fuſi.  
Theod.

Anno 378  
of Christ,  
to 395.

(f) Paul in  
v. Ambros.  
Russ. 1. c. 8.  
Theod. 5. c. 18.  
Soz. 7. c. 14.

(g) Chryf.  
Orat. 10. ad  
Pop.

(a) Zosim. 4.  
Marcell.  
Soz. 4. c. 72.  
Soz. 7. c. 25.  
Oros. 7. c. 5.  
(b) Epiph. de  
Ment. & Pond.  
Idat. Fast.

(c) Ruff. 2.  
c. 35.  
Theod. 4.  
c. 24. Prosp.  
Marcell.  
Aug. 5. de  
Civ. c. 26.  
Oros.  
(d) Victor.  
Soz. 5. c. 26.  
Idat. Chr.  
Alex. Theo. 4.  
c. 25.  
Soz. 7. c. 207.

him: Admirably valiant in wars, and yet engaged in none but such as were needfull, indued with singular clemency and humanity, he was officious and courteous to all, yet he was somewhat too soon moved to anger though it was for some unworthy things but he was soon appeased again. This, *Ambrose* did witness in his Sermon at his Funeral.

(f) He shewed a great testimony of this his disposition when he avenged himself of the Thessalonians sedition: for when that people had killed *Botbericus* their Governour, the Generall of the Scythians Army: *Theodosius* revenged this fact by the death of many of their Citizens, even of those that were innocent: For this cause, coming to Millan, he was by *Ambrose* forbidden admittance into the Church, the which he did not only bear patiently, but satisfying to the Pontific's injunction, he ordained a law, that all sentences given against Malefactors, should in their execution be delayed forty dayes after; This seems to have been done Anno three hundred and ninety. (g) But he had pardoned the Antiochians, (who in a certain sedition of his wife *Flaccilla*, had cast down the Images) in the year three hundred eighty eight by *Flavianus*'s intercession in his preparation for wars against *Maximus*, as *Zosimus* relates.

Not long after (a) *Eugenius* by the power of the Earl *Arbogastes*, usurped the Government in the year 391; and the year following, he said *Arbogastes* did kill *Valentinian* at *Vienna* in France: (b) *Epiphanius* saith, That he was strangled in his Palace on the first Sabbath day of May before Whitsunday, when *Arcadius* and *Rufinus* were Consuls, which of necessity was the 392 year of Christ, if he was 26 years and four moneths old: he was then catechized for his faith, and had required *Ambrosius* to baptize him, as he himself mentions in his speech at his funeral; for he had him in great reverence; and he elegantly set forth and left to posterity the excellent piety and rare virtues of this Prince.

(c) *Theodosius* put to death *Eugenius*, whom in the same year 394, he had conquered and taken prisoner, not so much by any humane power, as by the help of God who fought for him. *Arbogastes* killed himself. This was *Theodosius*'s last victory; for he dyed (d) the 395 year of our Lord, the 17th of January at *Millan*, having been Emperour 16 years, and having lived 50, as *Victor* saith; *Socrates* gives him 60; and the *Alexandrian's* Chronicles do attribute him 5. years more.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

Anno 378  
of Christ  
to 395.

The History of the Ecclesiastical Affairs, which came to passe during the time of these Emperours; an account of the Constantinopolitan Synod; the heresie of the Priscillianites; *Ambrose's* Confess; Then the renowned Persons for Piety and Learning.

Anno 378 of Christ, unto 395.

*Theodosius* embracing with much love the Catholick Religion, he employed all his power and industry in the preserving and adorning of it: And the baptism which of his own free motion and desire he received, did yet more kindle his zeal; being fallen sick, he was baptized (c) by *Ascholius* Bishop of *Thessalonica*: (f) Therefore he made a Law against all hereticks, and commanded all to embrace that onely Catholick faith that *Damasus* the Pontiff of *Rome* did then profess. (a) Then being gone into *Constantinople* the 18th of December, in the year of Christ 380, he confiscated to the Catholicks, the Churches that the *Arrians* had possessed for the space of 40 years. (b) At what time when the *Arrians*, who were many in *Constantinople*, did labour and endeavour to draw and win *Theodosius* to themselves, and chiefly *Enomius*, that notable and witty disputant, as he had a desire to hear him, his (c) godly and religious Wife *Flaccilla* dissuaded him from it, together with the deed of a certain Bishop's discretion and homeliness, who having saluted *Theodosius* very honourably, called his son *Arcadius*, who sat by him, as if he had been an ordinary boy; at which the Emperour being much displeased, commanded him to be turned out of his presence: Then the Bishop said to him, What dost thou think, O Emperour, who art angry at me for having denied thy son the honour due to him? Of what mind thinkest thou is God, when he seeth his Sonne despised by the Hereticks, and not honoured as himself. The Emperour well relishing this seasonable attempt of the Bishop, called him back, and had him in great estimation; and acknowledging his fault, he refused farther to hear the hereticks.

(d) A little before this, *Gregorius Nazianzenus*, being gone thither for to foment and uphold the Catholick faith, was at first contemned and despised, but afterwards he came to great esteem; so that by the general suffrage of the people he was made Bishop, *Peter Alexandrine* giving his consent to it; but soon after having changed his mind, he advanced to the place, *Maximus* a Cynick Philosopher. *Theodosius* both for to maintain the profession of the *Nicean* Synod, and to confirm *Gregory* in his new dignity, he assembled at *Constantinople* a general (e) Synod of 150 Bishops, which condemned *Maximus*, and all his ordinations rashly done, and having approved the Articles of faith concluded in the *Nicene* Council, and made a decree and assertion of the Holy Ghost's divinity

(e) Soz. 5.  
c. 6.  
Soz. 7. c. 4.  
(f) L. 5. cod.  
de her. & l. 2.  
cod. de fide  
Ath.  
(a) Soz. 5.  
c. 7. Idat.  
Soz. 7. c. 12.  
Marcell.  
(b) Soz. 1. 7.  
c. 6.  
(c) Theod. 1.  
c. 19.

d) Greg. Naz.  
Carm. de vita  
sua.  
Russ. 1. c. 9.  
Soz. 1. c. 6.  
& 7.  
Theod. 5. c. 8.  
Soz. 7. c. 7.  
Trip. 9.

(e) de qua  
tom. 1. Conc.

Anno 378  
of Christ,  
to 395.

vinity against *Macedonius*; and according to this, *Meletius* being dead, *Gregory* apprehending that *Flavianus* would succeed him, resisted it manfully; whereupon that whole Dioecesis would have fallen to *Paulinus*; but that it was so agreed, That whereas there were two Bishops of the Catholicks, to wit, *Paulinus*, and *Meletius*, that whoever of the two should first dye, the other should have the whole Dioecesis alone.

Hence a great contest arising, and *Timothy*, *Peter's* successor and Prelate of Alexandria, by his command denying a Bishop to Constantinople, *Gregory* for peace and quietness layed down his dignity of his own consent. And *Nectarius* supplied his place, after this, every ones Dioecesis was limited, and the same rites and privileges were granted to the Bishop of Constantinople, as the Bishop of Rome enjoyed onely, being after him in dignity: but the Authority of the Roman Pontiffe forbid the ratification of this decree: And this was the second generall Synod held at Constantinople in the year 391. (a) in which year was held another Synod at Aquileia in Italy, where *Ambrose* was the President; but the Palladian, and the Secundian Councell condemned the Arian Bishops.

(b) But in Spain, the new Heresy of the Priscillians breaking forth, which had adjoined it self to that of the Manicheans and others, almost about the same time was held a Council at Caesarea Augusta, in which *Priscilian* the Father of that Sect with some other Bishops, is put out, being himself a lay-man; those Bishops that by this Synod were condemned, made him Bishop of Abules, but *Idatius* and *Ithacius* both Bishops procured their banishment by *Gratians* edict: although soon after through their cunning and subtilty, they were again restored to their former dignities: After this, there was another Synod held at Burdingall, where *Priscillianus* was condemned, who appelling to *Maximus* the Governor, by his command having heard him at *Trevirum*, he was put to death with many others. *Ithacius* the Bishop and his adherents because they had intermeddled themselves unlawfully in this bloody matter, were judged not fit nor capable to enter into the Communion of the Church, which came to passe the three hundred eighty fifth year of Christ; (c) but in the next year, *Ithacius* is absolved at *Trevirum* by a Synod of those of his well-wishers: with whom *St. Martin* who was come thither for to Petition *Maximus* for something, having at first refused to communicate with him, soon after, that he might obtain what he came about, he yielded to the Emperours intreaties, by whom being invited to a feast both he and his Wife entertained him very honourably.

(d) In the mean time *Ambrosius* suffering many unworthy things by *Justina*, *Valentinian* the younger's mother, a woman of the Arian opinion, he by sacerdotall constancy resisted her weak praedice. And at that time she brought the Reliques of the Saints, *Gervasius* and *Protasius*, which were shewed with great reverence, into the Temple of *Ambrosius*, whose worship he established with great

great prodigies: as (a) *Ambrosius* himself doth witness, as well as (b) *Augustinus* who was present with him, by which things the ignorance (c) of *Molineus*, a Calvinian Minister, is convinced, who was consenting to this rashnesse; who not onely believed that the whole report, of the bodies that were found, was false; but also that that Epistle of *Ambrosius* did not belong to him, wherein he writes this very thing; than which nothing can be spoken of, more absurd. *Ambrosius* at length being sent Embassadour by *Justina* to *Maximus*, he reprehended an eminent Tyrant of Italy with like magnanimity, and opposed and rejected both his and the Ithacians company.

(d) *Theodosius* after *Maximus* death, commanded the Temples of Idol-gods to be pulled down, their Images to be broken to pieces, and their ceremonies to be abolished: Amongst other was the famous Temple of *Serapis* demolished by *Theophilus* Bishop of Alexandria, who about the same time was very helpfull to the Church of Antioch: (f) for he restored *Flavian* their Bishop into favour with *Siricius* the Pontiffe of Rome, and brought him again into the Church-Communion, of which he had been deprived for countenancing and maintaining a Schisme after *Meletius* his death.

These times were adorned and enriched with some persons of great learning and piety, amongst whom was *Basilus* who died in January Anno 379. having exercised the office of a Bishop nine years, who in the year of our Lord 370. supplied *Eusebius* after his death, wherefore he was Bishop of *Cæsaria* eight years, and some Moneths, (g) as both the *Gregories*, *Nyssen*, and *Nazianzen* do assert; both a great Ornament of this same age: of whom, the first being *Basilus's* cousin German, suffered much for the Catholick faith under *Valens*, and by him was banished some 8. years: And the other, one of *Basilus's* intimate friends, dyed in the year 389, as we may gather out of (i) *Hieronymus*: (k) *Socrates* seems to declare the time of *Basilus's* birth and death, who saith that a Synod was convoked at Antioch, for to settle the state of the Church after *Theodosius's* renunciation, the which *Nyssen* in his speech concerning *Macrinus's* death, writes to have been the ninth Moneth after *Basilus's* death, and *Theodosius* was created *Augustus* the sixteenth of January, Anno 379, as the same *Socrates* asserts.

(a) *Amphilochius* Bishop of Iconium; *Gelasius* of Caesarea in Palestine, *Ambrosius* of Milan, *Theodore* of Mopuestes, (b) *Exuperius* of Tolouse, *Simplicius* of Vienna, *Amandus* of Bourdeaux, *Mauris* of Anjou, were all accounted Bishops of great fame. Also (c) *Philastrius* of Breux. But likewise (d) *John* an Anchorite in Egypt, Couzell and advice of this man; Solikewise was (e) *Arsenius*, who was sent by *Damascus* the Pontiffe to instruct the Emperours son, and having secretly retired himself from the Court, went to dwell in a Wilderness.

Also these Widows were of a holy life and conversation, *Monica*,

Anno 378  
of Christ,  
to 395.

(a) Ep. 53. & 54.  
(b) L. 9. Conf.  
(c) L. 7. Con.  
Petron. cap. 12

(d) Aug. 5. civ. c. 26. Prosper de prom. 1.3. c. 38.  
(e) Ruff. 2. c. 29. Socr. 5. c. 16. Soz. 7. c. 19  
(f) Amb. Ep. 9. Socr. 5. c. 15. Theod. 5. c. 23.

Men of note,  
Basilus.

(g) Nyss. de S. Macrina. Naz. de S. Basil. quæ est 20. Gregorius Nazianzen. de Nyssen.  
(h) Nyss. de S. Macr.  
(i) Hier. de Script.  
(k) L. 5. c. 5.

(a) Hier. de Script. & histor. c. 1.  
(b) Greg. Turon. 2. hist. Fran. c. 13.  
(c) Aug. de her.  
(d) Aug. 5. civ. c. 26.  
(e) Ruff. 2. c. 32.  
(f) Vite P. P.

(a) Tom. 1. Concil.

The Sect of the Priscillians.  
(b) Sever. Sulp. l. 1. hist. Prosp. chron. Aug. de her.

(c) Sever. in the life of Martin.

(d) Paul. in the life of Ambrosius. he in Auxent. & Ep. 13, 14. & 36.



Anno 395.  
of Christ, to  
408.

(f) Aug. 9.  
Conf. c. 11.  
(g) Hier. Ep.  
Paul.

nica, *Augustines* Mother, (h) which died at the Gates of Tyber, Anno Domini 389, and of her age 56. And *Paula* the noblest of all the Women of Rome, (g) which having despised all her greatness and Riches, that she might wholly give her self up to Christ, travelled to Bethlehem about the year 384. as *Hieronymus* writes in her Epitaphy, who himself living in the same place filled the whole World with the fame of his great Learning and Piety.

In the same age was that Learned and Eloquent *Symmachus*, who being Governour of the City, petitioned *Valentinian* to restore and re-establish the Altar of Victory, whom *Ambrosius* opposed. *Macrobius* also lived under the Emperour *Theodosius*.

In the same age broke forth also some certain Heresies, as that of *Jovinian*, whom *Syriscus* the Pope condemned in the year of our Lord three hundred and ninety, and that of *Vigilantius*, which both were learnedly confuted by *Hierome*. The madnesse of *Origen's* his followers, were great in those times, of which number were *John* Bishop of Jerusalem, *Ruffin* Priest of Aquileia, *Palladius* the Galatian, whom *St. Epiphanius*, and *Hierome* confuted.

## CHAP. X.

Touching *Arcadius*, and *Honorius*, and the chief things of their Times; and of *Stilichon*, *Eutrop*, *Ruffin*, *Radagaisius*, *Alaricus*; and of the taking of Rome, and of the irruptions of the Barbarians, both into France, and Spain.

Anno 395 of Christ, unto 408.

**T**heodosius dying in the year of our Lord 393, as I have above said, he left two sons heirs of the Empire, *Arcadius* to whom he gave the East, and *Honorius* to whom he allotted the West, *Arcadius* was eighteen years old, (a) and *Honorius* eleven, if he was born at *Ricimeris* the fifth of September in the year 384. when *Clæarchus* was Consul, his brother *Arcadius* having been created *Augustus* by his father the year before the seventeenth of February: (b) And *Honorius* in the year three hundred eighty and nine, *Timasius* and *Promotus* being Consuls, attained to the same honour; (c) some say that it was when *Theodosius* the third, and *Abundantius* were Consuls.

*Arcadius* soon after his fathers death, married *Eudoxia*, *Eutrop* making the match lest he should marry *Ruffin's* daughter: for then the power and dignity of these two Princes was great amongst the Romans, viz. of *Ruffin* who then lived in Constantinople, and of *Stilichon* who lived in the West: *Stilichon* was a Vandal born, as (d) *Orosius* writes, who after (c) *Theodosius's* death, arrogating to himself

Anno 395.  
of Christ, to  
408.

himself the Guardian-ship and Government of both the Empires, intended to go into the East; whom to hinder *Ruffinus* with his Armies, stopped him the passages of Greece: then he stirred King *Alaricus* up to arms, whom *Stilico* put to flight, as he was a waiting and pillaging Greece, and sent his General *Gaisas* of the Goths Nation with his bands to *Arcadius*. By whose means *Ruffinus* had his head cut off by the Souldiers in the same year that *Theodosius* died, whom *Claudius* saith to have been born in Elusa a Town of Aquitania. *Eutropius Spado* with *Stilichon* were his Counsellours; but *Eutrop* fearing *Stilichon*, he caused him to be banished as an Enemy both to the Emperour and Senate, and procured to himself the friendship of (a) *Gildo* an Heathenish Earl whom *Theodosius* had established Governour of Africk, who having taken upon him the Title of a Tyrant King, and forbidden corn to be brought into the City, being routed and defeated by his brother *Masteezeles*, whom *Sticho* had sent with an army against him, he slayed himself; And not long after was *Masteezeles*, being returned into Italy, by *Stilichon's* command, cast headlong into the River by his souldiers from the bridge. (b) That Victory was obtained in Africk in the three hundred ninety and eighth year of Christ.

(c) In the year three hundred ninety and nine, when *Manlius Theodorus* and *Eutrop Eunuchus* were Consuls, *Gaisas* the Generall of the Army of the Goths, having been taken and sent by *Stilicho* to Constantinople, he conspires against *Arcadium* with his Kinsman *Trigibildus*, having so agreed together that *Trigibildus* should publicly revolt, and that *Gaisas* should be the Generall of his Army, and guide the whole design to the best advantage of both and so by *Gaisas* practise was *Eutrop* slain, having been plundered of all the very year that he was Consul, and his memory was put out of the Roman Chronicles, he being taken out of the way, *Gaisas* resolves easily to stir up a tumult, and sedition, and openly to war against the Common-wealth. Whose Treason being found out, and his private design of seizing upon Constantinople discovered, he is judged an enemy by *Arcadius*, and is beaten chiefly by the help of *Fravitta* the Goth a Gentile, and his army; and dyeth in Thracia upon the latter end of the year 400, or at the beginning of the following, as the Alexandrine Chronicles do shew: *Arcadius* after this dyeth, having done nothing of remark and memory in the year 408. He was of a peaceable or rather sloathfull disposition, and too much addicted to his wife, which pleasuring and contenting with too great expences, he undid no lesse the Common-wealth then the Church. (e) Dying, he left the Protection of his son *Theodosius* to *Jezdegirdus* King of the Persians by his Testament, who taking the charge layed upon him, charged *Antiochus*, a man of deep learning with the tuition of the Pupill, and he declared that he would act as a publick enemy against those who should dare to plot and conspire against the child. *Arcadius* dyed in May, in the 31. year of his age.

(a) Zof. 5. Jordanus d. Marcell. Orig. 7. c. 36.

(b) Idat. Marcell.

(c) Zof. 5. Socr. 1. 6. Oros. 7. Trosp. Marcellinus. Gaisas Eutrop. pii Mors.

(d) Socr. 6. c. 23.

(e) Procop. 1. Persic. init. Agath. 1. 4. p. 132.

(a) Idat. Marcell. Chron. Alex.

(b) Chr. Alex. (c) Prosp. Marcell.

(d) Oros. 7. c. 38.

(e) Zof. 4. Marcell. Jordan. de reg. succ. c. 94. Socr. 6. c. 1. Ruffinus c. 1. eon. Ruff. Eutrop.



Anno 397  
of Christ,  
to 408.

(a) Zof. 5.  
Prosper. Mar-  
cell. in  
Chron.  
Orof. 7. c. 37.  
Aug. 5. de  
Civ. c. 23.  
Jornandes.

(b) Zof. 5.  
O. of 7. c. 39.  
Jornand. de  
rep. suo c. 96.  
& de rebus  
Ger. c. 10.  
Mifcell. l. 13.

(c) Zofim. 6.  
Jornand.  
Marcell.  
Stilichon's  
death.

(d) Zof. 5.

(a) Prosp.  
Chron.  
Socr. 7. c. 10.  
Soz. 9. c. 6.  
Olymp. apud  
Phot. num. 80.  
Orof. 7. c. 39.  
Jornand.  
Marcell.

In the West, the many invasions and incursions of the *Barbarians* were almost the utter undoing of Rome and of the Roman Empire. (a) *Radagaisus* Prince of the Goths, with four hundred thousand of Souldiers, as Zof. records, or two hundred thousand, as *Orosius* and *Marcellus* do say, over-ran all Italy; he was the potentest of all the enemies the Romans had, and a most bitter enemy to the Christians. Which whole multitude, *Stilicho* by a wonderful success, having shut them up in the mountains, defeated and kill'd, having taken and kill'd the General himself. *Prosper* saith, that this wonderful victory was obtained in the year of Christ 405; but *Marcellus* assigneth it to the year following.

(b) After him, *Alaricus* King of the Goths, of the *Balthick* Family, having wasted and spoyleed Greece, and a long time remained at Epirus by *Stilichon's* command, who intended to draw and transport *Thracia* from *Arcadius's* dominion and rule, to *Honorius*, broke afterwards into Italy; whom to divert and hinder, *Honorius* granted him and his people to possess and inhabit France and Spain, because he could no longer retain and keep those Provinces himself; whereunto *Alaricus* going with his men, *Saul* a Captain of the Gentiles, to whom *Stilicho* had committed an Army, unadvisedly assaulding the Barbarians upon an Easter day, is by them overcome. By which success *Alaricus* being elevated in his mind, having drawn his forces nearer, and ransacked all Italy, he took Rome. (c) But *Stilicho* before this was already put to death by *Honorius's* command; but intending after *Theodosius's* death to take the whole Empire upon himself, and to create his son *Eucherius* (a Gentile, and cruel enemy to the Christians) Emperour; the sooner and better to bring his design to passe, he resolved to imbroyl all the Common-wealth; And therefore he underhand stirred up the Barbarians to invade and tear the Empire to pieces; for he brought the *Vandals*, the *Alans*, the *Suedes*, and the *Burgundians* into France and Spain, whither, *Prosper* in his *Chronicles* writes, that they advanced in the year 406; his affinity with the Emperour strengthened his courage, because he had married *Serena*, *Theodosius's* sister, and had by her two daughters, *Mary*, which soon after dyed, and *Theumantia* which he had married; but his secret practices and designs being discovered by *Olympius*, he is killed by *Heraclianus*, in the year of Christ 408, in *Ravenna's* Church being fled thither, who by that deed deferved, as it was bestowed upon him, the Government of *Africa*, as *Zofimus* saith; (d) then the year following, *Eucherius* is slain with *Seneca* his Mother. *Stilichon* being dead, *Alaricus* intending to enter into a league with *Honorius*, he was rejected by an indiscreet counsell. (a) Therefore at the example of the *Goths* and *Huns*, with great forces, together with *Athaulphus* his wives brother, he besiegeth *Rome*, and took it in the year of Christ 410; which having given to his Souldiers to plunder, he commanded them not to hurt or wrong any of them that fled into the Churches, and chiefly into the Cathedrals of *St. Peter*, and *St. Paul*. Six dayes af-

ter

ter departing from the City, and leaving to his brother *Athaulph* *Placidia* the Emperour's sister, he went to *Rhegium*, intending to go to *Scythia* and *Africa*; but there he dyed of a sicknesse, whose place his brother *Athaulph* supplying, having again plundered *Rome*, he carryed away along with him *Placidia*, and joynd her to himself at the Borough of *Cornelium*.

(b) Whilest this tempest rages in Italy, the like calamity oppressed *France* and *Spain*; the *Alans*, the *Vandals*, and the *Suedes*, having wasted and plundered *France*, and being past over the *Pyreneys*, possessed *Spain*, (c) in the year of our Lord 409, the *Vandals* and *Suedes* obtained for themselves *Gallicia*; the *Alans*, *Lusitania* and the *Carthaginian* Province; and the *Silinges*, who were another Nation of the *Vandals*, made an Invasion into *Ætolia*.

Anno 397  
of Christ,  
to 408.

(b) Idat.  
Orof. 7. c. 40.

(c) Idat.

## CHAP. XI.

The Ecclesiastical Affairs; and some of the most renowned Persons of that time; and of *St. Martin's* death; and something of *Chrysostom's* banishment.

**A**mbrosius lived near three years after the most Christian Emperour *Theodosius*, as *Paulinus* saith, who ended his life on a Sabbath day, being the 4th of *April* in the year of Christ 397, *Cæsarius* and *Atticus* being Consuls; by which account he had officiated the Bishops Office two and twenty years, and near a quarter; for in the year 374, that is, the year before *Valentinian* dyed, *Auxentius* being dead, he is recorded by *Hierome* to have succeeded him in his Bishoprick; yet *Marcellus* saith, that *Ambrose* dyed in the year 398, when *Honorius* and *Eutychianus* were Consuls; but his opinion is refuted by the *Annals* of the Church.

Paul. in vita  
S. Ambrosii.

The death of  
St. Ambrose.

(d) The other great Light of the West Countrey-Churches, dyed in the year 401, that great Prelate of *Turin*, *St. Martin*, born in *Sabaria* of *Pannonia*, who following *Hillarius* into *France* from his banishment, having there lived an austere and retired life, was created Bishop of *Turin* almost at that time that *Ambrosius* was established Bishop of *Millan*, namely, in the year of our Lord 375, A man to be admired far above all his Predecessors for piety, whom the Emperours themselves have had in great esteem, as amongst the rest *Maximus*, who feasted him, Anno 386, as he was come to him, in a feast that his wife the Emperesse had prepared, Vho supplied the place of a waiter, and attendant at the table her self.

(d) Severus  
in dial. Greg.  
Turon. l. 1.  
hist. Franc.  
c. 16. & l. 10.  
c. ult.

But *St. John* from a Priest at *Antioch*, being made Bishop of *Constantinople* after *Nestorius's* death which was in the year 397. the 27. of September as (b) *Socrates* saith, who relates, that *John* the 26 of February, in the year following, did sit in his Throne. Being advanced to that dignity, as he bitterly rebuked the corrupt life

(b) Pallad.  
in vita Chryf.  
Socr. 6. c. 2.  
Theod. 5. c. 14.  
Soz. 8. c. 17.

and

Anno 397  
of Christ,  
to 408.

(c) Photius  
Cod. 59.  
Soer. 6. c. 15.  
Soz. 7. c. 17.

(d) Soer. l. 6.  
c. 18.  
Soz. 8. c. 22.

(e) Soer. l. 6.  
c. 19. & 20.  
Soz. 8. c. 23.

Chrysostom's  
death.

(a) Soz. 8.  
c. 26.

(b) Soer. 6.  
c. 12.  
Soz. 8. c. 14.

The Origenists  
venced.

(c) Epiph.  
Epist. ad Job.  
Hier. Con.  
Ruff. & Con.  
Joan. Hier.

(d) Hier. ep.  
ad Demetr.  
& Avol. con.  
Ruff. & Ep.  
78. ad Pamp.  
& ad Marcel.  
(e) Soer. &  
Soz. cit.

and conversation of men, and especially of the Clergy, and of the Princes, he drew the hatred and ill-will of many upon himself, and chiefly the hatred of *Eudoxia* the Empreſſe; which being reprehended by him, constrained and induced *Theophilus* of *Alexandria* to plead and dispute against him in *Constantinople*, and for to condemn by a (c) tumultuous and abrupted Synod, that was held in the year of Christ 403, in the Suburbs of *Calchedon*, in a place called, *At the Oaks*. But there arising a great sedition of people, and a suddain Earthquake, the Emperour being affrighted by it, caused him to be recalled; but the year following, because he rebuked still with the same boldness both *Eudoxia*, and others, (d) being again condemned by her doings, he is banished away the 20th of June, having refrained himself from the administration of his Office two months before, being about Easter. The Greek Histories relate, That *Eudoxia* dyed three months after that *Chrysostome* had been ejected, being the 4th of October, Anno 404, there having fallen, four dayes before, hail of huge bignesse.

(e) *Asfacius* succeeded *Chrysostome* in the place, a man of no speech nor learning; then he being dead 14 months after, *Atticus* a Monk of *Armenia* succeeded. In the mean while, *Chrysostome* being afflicted with many miseries and griefs both in *Armenia* and *Isauria*, the Catholick Bishops labouring hard for him, and especially *Innocentius* the Roman Pontiff, to whom he had appealed, and whose faith he had implored; he dyed at *Comanum* near *Euxines* bridge the 18th of December, in the year 407; he lived 52 years, and 8 months, and he sate in the Bishops seat 9 years, 6 months, and 20 dayes; so that he was born in the year 355, about March. (a) Thereupon *Innocent*, and with him all the Churches of the West would have no communion with *Atticus*, and all the Churches of the East; untill that *Asfacius's* name being blotted out of the Diptycks, which are the Ecclesiastical Records, and *John's* name set down in his place.

(b) At the same time lived *Epiphanius*, a man highly recommended for his piety, he was Bishop of *Salamina* in *Cyprus*, who together with *John Chrysostome* vehemently contended against *Origen's* opinions; for then began his errors to be questioned, which were spread, without any punishment, through the Monasteries of Egypt; but they had for their defender, (c) *John* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, and *Rufinus* Priest of *Aquileia*, and *Palladius* a *Galatian*, from whom differed especially *Theophilus* and *Hierom*. But *Theophilus* at a Synod that was convoked in the year 399, was the first that condemned the *Origenists*, and sent the decrees of that Synod to *Anastasius* the Roman Pontiff, who in the year 398 had succeeded *Siricius* in the Roman See; then (d) *Anastasius* sends circular letters both to *Epiphanius* and *John Chrysostom*, having condemned *Origenet*. (e) *Chrysostome* resolving to consider the matter more punctually, would by no means condemn *Origen's* books, notwithstanding *Epiphanius's* and *Theophilus's* perswasions and instances; and for this cause *Epiphanius* being displeased, departed from him; and both,

as its reported, prophesied by the spirit of God, what should befall one to the other.

At that same time flourished also Saint *Asterius* the Prior of *Amasea*, whose Learned Homilies, composed in the year of Christ four hundred, we have unto this day: And also *Theophilus* Bishop of *Alexandria*; *Chrysostome* his enemy; a man indeed worthy of blame, for his great and immoderate covetousness, but of great learning, and *Hierome's* companion, who made *Serejus*, who from a Gentile Philosopher, became a Christian, Bishop of *Psolomais*, about the four hundred and tenth year of Christ, to wit, three years after *Chrysostome* his death, and *Theophilus* his reconciliation to his party, which was soon after his death.

(a) *S. Vigill* Bishop of *Trent* when *Stilicho* was Consul, suffered Martyrdom, as *Isuardus* Writes, and as it appears, (b) *St. Porphyrius* Bishop of *Gaza*, in the year four hundred, under *Aradius* the Emperour, did abundantly shew his piety, miracles and labours that he suffered for the Faith of Christ. And *Severianus Gabalitanus*, as he was a learned man, so likewise by reason of his emulation with *Chrysostome*, deserved lesse esteem in the memory of posterity; but *Sta. Paula* hath deserved an exceeding remarkable and excellent name, who dyed at *Bethlehem* the 404th year of our Lord, January the twenty sixth, being fifty six years six months and eleven dayes old, whereof she lived five years in Rome in her Religious design, and twenty at *Bethlehem*, as (c) *Hierom* testifieth.

*Prudentius* a Spanish Poet, did write about the same time, being born when *Philippus* and *Salva* were Consuls, in the year 348; as he himself (d) declares; and he composed some Verses when he was 57. years old, and so he made *ad Augustinum*, in the year 404.

*Eufinus* Priest of *Aquileia*, and a Monk, was of great renown for his Learning, first by his friendship with Saint *Hierome*; then more renowned for his offence, dyed, soon after that Rome was taken by *Alaricus*, as *Baronius* conjectures, at which time also *St. Marcella* the Widdow dyed, (e) as *Hierome* as- fers.

Amongst the Gentiles *Claudianus* was the Prince of Poets, a great stickler for *Stilichon*; but the chief Historians were *Zosimus*, and *Eupanius*.

Anno 397  
of Christ,  
to 408.

(a) Martyr.  
Rom. 26. Jun.  
& Ista  
(b) Vita S.  
Porphyrii apud  
Sur. 26. Febr.

(c) Hier. Ep.  
Paula.

(d) Prud. 24.  
Cathem.

(e) Hier. Ep.  
16.

## CHAP. XII.

Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

*What things worth memory came to passe under Theodose the younger, Honorius, and Valentinian the third, in both the Empires; and the violent assaults of the Vandals in Africk.*

Anno 408. of Christ, unto 450.

After Arcadius's death, the Roman Empire remained under two Princes, Honorius had the West, and Theodosius possessed the East. (a) He was born the 10th of Aprill, in the year 401. and the year following declared Augustus, under the tuition of the King of Persia. Antiochus being his tutor, began to reign alone in the East; he had four sisters, Flacilla, Pulcheria, Arcadia, and Mary, of whom Theodosius called Pulcheria, Augusta, in the year, as Marcellinus agrees with the Alexandrian Chronicles, 414. And not, as Theophanes saith, 411. And she is recorded to have been born in the year of Christ 399. (b) By her, Theodosius and his other sisters being instructed, they altogether, and onely advanced in piety and vertue, so that they differed in nothing from the Monks, and their Court was in a manner turned into a Religious house.

Theodosius, by the counsell of his sister Pulcheria, aged twenty years, married Athenaides the daughter of Leontius the Philosopher, a woman of rare qualities and of exquisite beauty and comeliness of body, which he named Eudoxia, he had by her a daughter, which having also called Eudoxia, he married to Valentinian the third. (c) Theodosius governed the Empire unto the 450th year of Christ, in which year he dyed in the Moneth of August; having first recalled and restored his sister Pulcheria, which through the calumnies of his Wife Eudoxia, and of Chrysaphius the Eunuch he had degraded and rejected: During the time of this Emperour, the peace and tranquillity of the East, was scarce at all disquieted by wars, except by some few broils of no long continuance, amongst which was the Persian war moved by Varasanes Isdegerdes's successeur in the year four hundred twenty two, by Ardaburius his General, and ended by a wonderfull miracle, the Barbarians being all affrighted and routed.

But in the West, both under Honorius and Valentinian, there was continuall civill and forreign wars, and the face of the Roman Empire was all disfigured, and defeated: for Honorius was of his nature, meek and jocond, and given to sloathfullnesse, and negligent of the Government of the Common-wealth, and of the affairs that concerned it; but he was inclined to piety and Religion, which he maintained with divers edicts. After the Gothick invasion, which like a Whirlwind in the four hundred and tenth year, rushed upon the City of Rome, and oppressed it, there arose divers usurpers in many places of the Empire. First (a) Attilus by

Alaricus

Alaricus command made Emperour by the Senate, having proudly refused Honorius's association which he offered him by Embassadors, being again brought back to a private life by Alaricus himself, and often after that restored and strengthened, and forsaken. At last having reassumed the usurpation and Government in France, being forsaken of the Goths, and taken by the Earl Constantinus in the year four hundred and fifteen (b) he came under Honorius's power, and having his hands cut off, was so left alive, the which Marcellinus saith, was in the four hundred and twelfth year, but Prosper saith the contrary.

At that time Constantine the Tyrant possessed France, who from a private Souldier, onely by reason of the name, was proclaimed Emperour in the year four hundred and seven, as (c) Olympiodorus, Prosper, and Zosimus do declare, Marcus and Gratianus having both taken the Government before him. Intending to secure and defend themselves with the Brittain Armies against the Vandalls and Alans, whom the same Author say to have broke in upon France, and invaded it: Thence being departed into France with his two sons, Constant, and Julian, being vanquished by the Earl Constantine, he was strangled at Vienna by Honorius's command, the 411th year, having fled as to his Sanctuary, to the Priests Oratory of (d) Arles.

After him, (e) Jovinus, and Sebastianus his brothers took the dominion upon themselves, were taken and slain near Narbon by Athaulph, Prince of the Goths, in the year 414. as Idatius and Marcellinus do testify.

Heracianus also, Earl in Africa, usurping also the power there, daring to sail into Italy against Honorius, with a Fleet of seven hundred ships, and three thousand souldiers, he was beaten by the Earl Marinus at Sea near Utriculum, and being returned into Africa, he is murdered at Carthage in the Temple of Memory (a) in the year four hundred and thirteen. Marinus being sent into Africa to settle it, whether by malice or corrupted with Gold, its uncertain, put to death Marcellinus the Tribune, who had magnanimously and valiantly carried himself for the Catholick faith against the Donatists, and soon after he was called back out of Africk, as Orosius writes.

Besides this multitude of Usurpers, the Barbarians did also invade, plunder, spoyl, and destroy the West; the Goths with Athaulph their King entred into France, (b) in the year 412; and the year following, the Burgundians, a people of Germany, possessed that Countrey of France near adjacent to the Rhine.

Athaulphus having married Placidia in January, Anno 414, as Olympiodorus writes, had by her Theodosius, who not long after dyed at Barcelona. (c) Athaulph by Placidia's means being induced to peace and quietnesse, having in vain endeavoured to transport both the Empire and the name unto the Goths, resolved at length to restore them the Empire, and to be expelled together with his Goths, out of Narbonne, and to be sent away into Spain;

H h

whilest

Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(b) Pros. Chr.  
Marcell. Orof.  
7. c. 42. Paulus  
Diac. 14.

(c) O'lymp.  
apud Phot.  
80. Pros.  
Chron. Zof. 6.  
Idat. Chr.  
Marcel.

(d) Olymp.  
(e) Idem. O.  
lymp. Idat.  
Marcel. Pros.  
Orof. c. 40.

(a) Pros. Idat.  
Marcell. Orof.  
7. c. 42.

The invasion  
of the Barba-  
rians.

(b) Pros.

(c) Olymp.  
apud Phot. 80.  
Jordan.

(a) Soer. 4. c.  
6. Marcel. Chr.  
Alex. Theo-  
pha.

(b) Soer. 7. c.  
22. Soz. 9. c. 1.

(c) Marcel.  
Chron. Alex.  
Zonar. Cedre.  
Theoph. hist.  
Misc. 24.

Theoph. Soer.  
7. c. 18.

The misery  
and loss of  
the Empire  
of the West  
under Honorius.

Divers Ty-  
rants.  
(a) Zof. 5. & 6.  
Olymp. apud  
Phot. 80.

Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(d) Prosper,  
Marcell.  
Idat. Oros.

(e) Olymp.  
Prosper.  
Jordan.  
Procop.

Constantius is  
made Em-  
perour.

whilest he had these thoughts, he is kill'd (d) by one of his own Nation, in the year 415; and *Sigericus*, *Sarus's* brother, possessed the Kingdom, who unworthily entreated *Placidia*, and within seven dayes after was slain, and *Wallia* succeeded him, who having made a peace with the *Romans*, restored *Placidia* to *Honorius*, having received (as *Olympiodorus* relates) 600000 bushels of corn, he went against the *Vandals*, *Alans*, *Swedes*, and other Nations which had seized themselves of *Spain*; and *Honorius* gave (e) *Placidia* against her own will to the Earl *Constantius*, in the 417th year of our Lord; and the same year he begat of her his daughter *Honorina*. But *Valentinian* the younger was born at *Ravenna* the 6th of July, in the year 418. *Constantius* ratified a sure peace with *Wallia*, and called him back into *France*, and granted him the Countrey of *Aquitania*, from *Tholouse* unto the Ocean, as *Idatius* writes; Then was *Tolouse* the head City of the Kingdom of the *Goths*, or *Wise-goths*, in the year 419. And the year following 420, *Constantius* was created Emperour by *Honorius*, (though against his will) and he was by him admitted to rule the Empire with him, as *Olympiodorus* saith, but seven moneths after he dyed, being the year of our Lord 420, if we may credit *Marcellinus*; but *Prosper* saith, that it was the year following, he was born at *Panefum*, a Town in *Scythia*; he had many honourable places and commands under *Theodosius*, but at last having attained to the highest places of dignities, being weary of them, he often complained, because he could not recreate himself in sports and games, as afore he was wont to do, as *Olympiodorus* writes; who farther relates thus much, That *Theodosius* would not ratifie to him the dignity of *Augustus*, and that therefore he had resolved to take up arms against him.

(a) Olymp.

(a) *Constantius* being dead, there was at first a great familiarity betwixt *Honorius* and *Placidia* his sister, and their fame lesse renowned; at last, soon after by the practice of *Placidia's* Nurse, and of *Leontius* her Curator, there arose such an hatred betwixt them, that after several quarrels at *Ravenna*, *Honorius* at length in the 423th year of Christ, banishes her with her children into the East.

*Honorius's*  
death.

(b) Prosper.  
Marcell.  
Olymp.

(c) Socr. 7.  
c. 23. &c.

A while after this, dyeth *Honorius*, in the 423 year of Christ, either the 15th of August, as *Theophanes* saith, or the 25 of the same, as *Olympiodorus* asserts in the 35 year of his age. *Theodosius* having honoured his sister (b) *Placidia* with the title of *Augusta*, and having first created *Valentinian* then about 5 years of age, *Cesar*; he sent him to Italy in the 424 year, who was very soon after created *Augustus* at *Rome*. (c) In the mean time *John*, the Attorney-General, takes the possession of *Ravenna*, usurping the Government thereof, against whom *Theodosius* sent *Ardaburius*, who being tossed and agitated with a tempest, fell into the Tyrants hands, but an Angel in the habit of a Shepherd having opened a way through the bogs that were in the way, brought *Aspares*, *Ardaburius's* son, safe into *Ravenna*.

So

So *John* being dead, (d) *Valentinian* was created Emperour at *Ravenna*, in the year of Christ 425, the 23 of October, as is recorded in *Alexander's* Chronicles.

Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(d) Idat. &  
Chron. Alex.

After this, the *Vandals*, whom the Earl *Boniface* had afore driven back from *Africa*, broke into it again from *Spain*, *Geisericus* being their General; for as *Boniface* was accused of Treason by *Aëtius*, and that *Sigisuntus* was sent against him, finding, that he was not able to encounter the Roman Army with his forces, he implored help of the *Vandals*, with whom he afore had made a league. (a) Therefore in the year 427, as we may gather out of *Prosper's* Chronicles, *Geisericus* with an Army of 80000 of *Vandals* and *Alans* sailed over into *Africa*, and by little and little brought it under subjection. (b) In the mean time, *Placidia* being reconciled, *Boniface* not being able to persuade the *Barbarians* to return back, striving to drive them out by force of arms, he is by them overcome; and in the year 432, coming to *Rome*, deposed of his command. He dyed not long after, either of a sickness, as *Prosper* writes, or, as *Marcellius* saith, of a wound that he had received of *Aëtius*; and dying, charged his Wife (c) *Pelagia* not to marry any one else but *Aëtius*.

(a) Prosper.  
Miscel. l. 14.  
Victor.

(b) Procop. 1.

(c) Marcell.

(d) *Aëtius* sustained, refreshed, and in some sort defended the Roman interest in *France* against the *Francks*, the *Goths*, the *Burgundians*, the *Hunns*, and other barbarous Nations. The *Francks* were defeated and subdued near the River of *Rhine*, when (e) *Felix* and *Taurus* were Consuls, being the year of Christ 428, And the *Burgundians*, with their King *Gundacarius*; in the year 435, to whom also *Aëtius* granted peace, as *Prosper* writes. (f) He also by his General *Litorius*, in the year 439, drove back the *Goths* from *Narbonne*, forcing them to raise the siege.

(d) Prosper.  
Idat.

(e) Prosper.

(f) Idat.  
Prosper.

*Aëtius* had chased the *Hunns* out of *Pannonia*, in the year 432, and made use of their help against the *Goths*; so hath (g) *Prosper* set it down in his Chronicles: But *Pitheanus* saith, That it was that *Aëtius* who was *Gaudenius's* son, which was kill'd by the Soldiers; he saith, that he brought in the *Hunns* to help *John* the Tyrant in the same year that he was killed, being the 425 year. Then it's like that he twice solicited the *Hunns*; but in the 434 year *Honorina*, *Valentinian's* sister, being driven out of the Court, and sent to *Theodosius*, because of the adultery she had committed with her procuror, she induced *Attila* to arms against the Commonwealth in the West, as *Marcellinus* writes: *Litorius* a Roman Commander being made Governour of the West, as he laboured to attain to greater glory than *Aëtius*, adding faith to what the Southsayers and Witches said, he unadvisedly gave battle to *Theodoricus* King of the *Goths*, who in a most humble submission had intreated peace; and having received a great defeat, he was taken and put to death when *Theodosius* and *Festus* were Consuls, in the year 439. (h) At what time also *Carthage* under pretence of peace, was on a suddain assaulted and taken by the *Vandals* upon (a) the 4th of November, and dismantled by the *Barbarians*, as all

(g) Prosper.  
Salvian. 7.  
Idat. Chron.  
Idat. Chron.  
Miscella. 24.

The Invasion  
of the Hunns

(h) Prosper.  
Jorn. de reb.  
Ger.  
(a) Prosper. &  
Idat.

H h 2

the

Anno 468  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(f) Prosper.

(c) Marcell.  
Alex. Chr.  
Jernandes.  
(d) Prosper.

(e) Gilda.  
Beda. 1.  
h. a. c. 13.

the ordinary Citizens were exposed by them to severall torments, so likewise were they most violent and cruel against the Nobility and the Clergy. (b) At length, *Valentinian* concluded a peace with *Gensericus*, in the year of Christ 442, and then was *Africa* divided between them by certain limits.

At which time *Theodosius* obtained peace, by paying a sum of money, of (c) *Bleda* and *Attila*, the *Hunns* two chief Commanders, who waisted and destroyed *Scythia* and *Thracia*. (d) Two years after, *Attila* ruled alone the *Hunns* after his brother was slain.

Again, the *Piſts* and the *Scots* made divers incursions into *Brittain*, and chiefly in the 446 year of Christ, when *Aetius* was Consul the third time, who being deeply engaged in other affairs, and especially in strengthening and fortifying *France* against the *Hunns*, was in vain petitioned by the *Brittains* to ayd them, and to revenge their quarrel; for the which are described by (e) *Gilda*, and by *Beda* after him.

### CHAP. XIII.

*Of the first rise of the Francks, and of the Kingdom by them established in Gallia.*

IN this Interval of time were laid down the beginnings and first foundations of the *Francks* Kingdom, the most noble Kingdom of all the World. Of what Countrey they first were, it's uncertain; neither is it sufficiently expressed by the ancientest Writers: (f) They are deceived, who esteem them to be of the *Trujan* stock, as *Gaguinus* and *Emilius* would have it. But the (g) opinion of them who think, that this name at first was not of one Nation onely, but of more, seems to me to be most likely, who combining together, did cast off the yoke of the *Romans*, and so were called *Francks* by reason of their liberty. (h) They are thought to be the *Bructerians*, the *Chamavians*, the *Ansvarians*, the *Chatti*, the *Mipians*, and *Tencteres*, who are contained under the name of *Gelderland*-people; the *Frisians*, the *Delgibians*, the *Chastivarians* and *Angrivarians*, who possessed all those Countreys of *Germany* that are between the Rivers *Albis* and *Rhine*, unto the Ocean, which now are called by the names of *westphalia*, *Frisia*, *Saxony*, *Turingia*, *Hessia*, *Misnia*, and *Franconia*, which yet seems to retain the very name.

(a) *Gregorius* saith, That it's uncertain whether they ever had a King before this, for their chief Officers were onely called Leaders, Captains or Governours. When *Maximus* the Tyrant ruled in *France*, *Alexander* records, that then the *Francks* called *Marcomer* and *Suno*, but petty Kings; but this same *Alexander* calls them promiscuously Governours or Kings.

The first that is set down in the list of Kings in the Annals, and first

first called King, was *Pharamund*, (b) *Marcomer*'s son, of whom *Gregory* mentions nothing. (c) *Prosper*'s Chronicle ascribes him the beginning of his reign in the 420th year of Christ, when *Honorius* was 26 years old; but after him reigned his son (d) *Chlodigis*, or (e) *Clovis*, or rather (f) *Clodius*, the son of (g) *Pharamund*, who retired himself to *Dispargum*, which *Gregory* saith is in the borders of *Thoringia*: but if it be so, it was very far distant in name to what it is now called; for that Town *Dispargum* was in *Sicambria*, or in the Confines thereof, *Clovis* began to reign in the 428, or 429 year of Christ, (h) five years after *Honorius*'s death, and he was the first that broke into *Gallia*: (i) But being driven back by General *Aetius*, he lost that part of *Gallia* that is near adjacent to the *Rhine*, which he with his people had inhabited; then about some 18 years after, leading his Army of *Francks* into the Territories of the *Atrebans* and *Camerians*, he beat the *Romans*, and routed them, and spread his borders unto the River *Sumina*, bringing all those people under his own subjection, (k) in the 445 year of Christ: (l) yet it seems, that he got some losse by *Aetius* and *Marianus*, as *Sidonius* declares: He reigned (m) almost 20 years; but (n) *Prosper* saith, That he reigned in *France* 25 years, being the 448, or 449 year of Christ; and so by this account *Pharamund* reigned 8 years.

(o) *Meroveus Clovis*'s kinsman enlarged the power and dominion of the *Francks* in *Gallia*, whom the (p) *Francks* Annals do record to have helped *Aetius* against *Attila*, and that he obtained the best part of the victory; his son and heir (q) *Childerick* was so wicked and lascivious, that he spared not the bodies of the noblest of the people, therefore was he mortally hated of them, and all the orders conspiring against him, he fled to *Thoringes*, having left at home one *Muinomadus*, in whose friendship and fidelity he much confided, who in his absence might reconcile him to the *Francks*; the which he most cunningly performed, for he exhorted the *Francks* to take for their King *Egidius* a Roman Senator; and by this means he easily brought it about, that the chieftest of the Nation, whom he chiefly knew were *Childerick*'s foes, were put to death under suspicion of Treason; so at last he perswaded the *Francks*, whose mind and inclination to be far from a new King, to recall *Childerick* from his banishment, who (a) eight years after he had been rejected, was again by them received and restored to his former dignity; he shut up in the City of *Saisons*, *Egidius*, whose Army he had defeated, he overcame (b) *Odoacrius* the Saxon; he subdued those of *Orleans* and *Anjou*; (c) having reigned 24 years, dying, he left the Kingdom to *Clodovius* his son, whom he had of *Basina* the wife of his host King of the *Thoringians*, who being born in the 482 year of Christ, (d) as he saith shall be declared: It appears, that *Childerick* began his reign either the 457, or 458 that he may have reigned 24; but *Meroveus* lived about some ten years.

Anno 428  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(b) Aimo. 1.  
c. 4. Ivon.  
Chr. Gesta  
Fr. Epit. c. 4.  
(c) Prosper. 2.  
Pich. editus.  
(d) Ita Greg.  
2. c. 9.  
(e) Ita Sidon.  
car. V. ver.  
212.  
(f) Prosper.  
Pich. Aimo. 2.  
c. 4.  
(g) Aimo. 1.  
c. 4. Ivon.  
Chr. Gesta.  
Franc. Epit.  
c. 5.  
(h) Prosper.  
Pich.  
(i) Prosper  
vulgatus.  
(k) Sigeb.  
Greg. 2. c. 9.  
Aimo. 1. c. 5.  
(l) Sidon.  
Car. V. ver.  
212.  
(m) Aimo. 1.  
c. 6.  
(n) Prosper.  
Pich.  
(o) Greg. 2.  
c. 9. Aimo. c. 6.  
Gest. Fr. c. 5.  
(p) Gag. Aimo.  
(q) Greg.  
Tur. 1. 2. c. 12.  
Aimo. 1. c. 7.  
Ivon. Gesta.  
Fr. c. 6. & 7.

(a) Greg.  
Turon. cir.

(b) Greg. 1.  
c. 18. Aimo. 1.  
c. 7. Gesta.  
Fr. c. 12.  
(c) Aimo. 1.  
c. 12. Ivon.  
(d) L. 7. c. 2.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of the first Originals of the Goths, and of their diversity; and of the Kingdoms that they established in Gallia, Spain, and Italy.

**I**T is very usefull for to understand the history of that Age, to know the first rise and increase of the Goths, who being dispersed far and near in Europe, brought forth a very flourishing Kingdom. We judge it very convenient to repeat what Jordan, or rather Jornand the Goth, and Paul Diacon, have recorded of it.

The name of Goths is come from *Scania*, or *Scandinavia*, which (c) *Jornandes* saith to be almost an Island, containing the Kingdoms of Norway and Swedland. They having for sometimes held and possessed the Countrey adjacent to the Baltick Seas, thence being past over into Scythia, they settled themselves in the borders of the Euxine Sea: (l) of whom those who went farther towards the East, were called *Ostrogoths*, that is, *Goths of the East*; and those who dwelt in the West part, were called *Visigoths*, that is, *Goths of the West*. Although some would have them to be called from *Ostrogotha*, a certain King of theirs, of *Amalus's* stock: (a) Therefore two Kingly families of the Goths, of the *Amalians* under whom were the *Ostrogoths*, and of the *Balthians* that ruled over the *Visigoths*, the first were so called from (b) *Amala*, a most ancient King of that Nation, and the others so called from boldness, because *Balth* signifieth bold: (d) These two people having lived in a long peace and friendship together; In the time that *Valens* was Emperour, there arose a cruell and bloody civill war amongst them: *Fridigernus*, or rather *Fritigernes*, was the Generall of the Goths of the West, and *Athavaricus* commanded the Goths of the East. *Fridigernus* not being equall in forces to the others, he requires *Valens* to help him by *Alphila* an Arian Bishop of his own Nation, (e) and to gratify him, he embraced the Christian Faith under the Arian profession, the which *Alphila* propagated far and near after the two Nations were reconciled together again; So were the Goths confirmed, and hardened in the profession of the Arian Heresy: But *Athavaricus* put many of the people to death for professing the Christian Faith, who are reckoned in the Church for Martyrs: (f) After these things, the Huns with their King *Balmir* having sailed over the Italian Seas, made a sudden invasion upon the *Ostrogoths*, to bring them under their subjection: At whose losse and overthrow the *Visigoths* being affrighted, implore again *Valens*, who allors them the Countrey of *Moestia* for their habitation: But being contumeliously and unworthily entertained by *Lupicinus*, and other Governours of the adjacent Countreys, they give battell to the Romans. And *Valens* the Emperour, (g) as we have already said, being overcome in the fight was burnt by them, suffering punishment for the violating of his religion, or Christian promise. But afterwards having composed

(c) *Jorn de reb. Get. c. 3. 4. &c.*

(f) *Paul. Diacon. in mife. l. 12. c. 11. Jorn. c. 4.*

(a) *Jorn. c. 5.*

(b) *Jorn. c. 14. c. 19.*

(d) *Soc. l. 4. c. 33. et sequen. Paul. in Mife. l. 2. c. 12.*

(e) *Paul. 12. Mife. c. 12.*

The Goths become Arians.

(f) *Vide Praef. ecc. cit. auctor. Procop. l. 4. Goth. p. 323. Soz. l. 6. c. 37. Jornand. de reb. Get. c. 14.*

(g) *Supr. c. 6.*

## Cap. 15. An Account of Time.

posed all differences with *Theodosius* who received them in friendship and alliance, they were properly called Allies, and (i) *Conferates*: After *Theodosius* death, *Alaricus* of the Balthick Family, with his wife *Gothe* broke into Italy, and his Army had such event as here above (i) I have declared in his Wars; (k) whose successours having subdued France and Spain, established there a Kingdom of the *Visigoths*, whereof we have already made mention.

(m) In the mean time the *Ostrogoths* under the Dominion of the Hunns, possessed still the same Countreys with their private Kings. *Hermanaricus*, in whose reign that invasion of the Hunns happened, as (a) *Jornandes* telleth; although others, which I have touched at above, do mention that to be done, *Athavaricus* being King: He had a son (b) *Huanimund*, of whom was begotten *Thorismund*. Whose son *Berimud* being weary of the *Hunnian* slavery, fled over into France to the *Visigoths*: when as *Theodorick* the first of that name, *Vallius* being now slain, reigned. The Nephew of *Berimud* was *Eubharick*, to whom *Theodorick* King of the *Ostrogoths*, gave *Amulasuntha* his daughter, in marriage. Unto this Family, as that which descended from the race of *Hermanicus*, the Right of the Kingdom of the *Ostrogoths* did properly belong; (c) but *Berimud* going aside, *Vuandular*, begotten by the brother of *Hermanicus*, held as it were a frail dominion. Three noble sons of this King lived in arms, and mutual agreement, *Vualamir*, and *Theodimir*, and *Videmir*; who strove with *Attila* against *Actius*, and their neighbours the *Visigoths* in France. At length *Attila* being put out, the other people, and also the *Ostrogoths*, shook off the yoke of the Hunns. (d) *Theodorick* was the son of *Theodimir* by a Concubine: who being given for a Pledge unto *Leo* the Emperour to establish a peace, grew to ripe years among the Romans. Then *Zeno* being Emperour, when he had received the Kingdom of the Goths, delivered him by his Father *Theodimir*, by the perswasion of the Emperour, he proceeded to recover Italy, which *Odoacrus* had invaded: and in the same place, which shall be spoken of afterwards, he built the Kingdom of the *Ostrogoths*; the which *Justinian* afterwards overthrew.

Anno 408 of Christ, to 450.

(h) *Jornand. c. 18.*

(i) *Cap. 10.*

(k) *Vide sup. c. 12.*

(m) *Jornand. c. 48.*

(a) *Jorn. ch. 25.*

(b) *Jorn. ch. 14.*

(c) *Jorn. ch. 48.*

(d) *Jorn. ch. 52.*

## CHAP. XV.

Ecclesiastical affairs under those Princes, and chiefly of the Pelagian Heresy, and Nestorian, and also an exact description of the Synod of Ephesus.

**H**ONORIO and *Theodosius* reigning, divers shakings were in the Church, and most famous strivings of the Catholick parties, with Heretiques; and against two Heresies especially, of *Pelagius*, and *Nestorius*, the combate was,

The History of the Pelagian Heresy.

*Pelagius*

Anno 418  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(c) Jerome  
P. 1. to b. 1.  
& 3. on Je-  
rome.  
(a) Aug. Ep.  
103.

(b) Jer. in the  
femt; Aug. 2.  
of Orig. Sin.  
ch. 3.

(c) Ep. of Coun.  
Carth. to  
Pope Inno-  
cent.

Aug. of Orig.  
fin.

(4) Aug. 2.  
Retr. ch. 47.  
and of deeds  
of Pel. 35.  
Phot. in the  
same 34.

(e) Aug. against  
Jul. ch. 5. &  
of deeds of  
Pel.

(f) Oros. Apol.  
(g) Tom. 1.  
Coun.

(h) Tom. 1.  
Coun. & Ep.  
Aug. 91. 93.

(i) Aug. 2. of  
Orig. fin.  
ch. 5. & 17.  
(k) Zof. Ep.  
Tom. 1. Coun.  
Where is also  
the confession  
of Pelagius.

(a) Aug. 2.  
ag. two Epist.  
of Pel. ch. 3.  
& 4.

(b) See Bar.  
in the year  
418. Post. in  
the life of  
Aug.

*Pelagius*, by (c) Nation a Scot, of the Isle of Britain: whence he is also (a) named *Brito*; he lived first a Monk in Palestine, where he conceived in his mind a most Pesticilent opinion against the Grace of Christ; (b) of which, to him *Ruffine* is delivered to have been the beginner. This man had *Caelestius* his Scholar, who first in Africa openly preaching Heresy, (c) in the year 412. was condemned at Carthage, *Paulinus* a Deacon of Carthage accusing him.

Afterwards *Eros*, and *Lazarus*, two Bishops of France, carried the name of *Pelagius* to the Palestine Bishops. (d) But when as a disease fell on one of them, they were hindered from being present at the time. Wherefore they sent heads gathered out of the books of *Pelagius*, and *Caelestius*. So a Synod being had at Diospolis in Palestine, in the year 415. in (e) which fourteen Bishops were present. *P. Lugi* being examined by them, easily shifted off by catching answers, the Greeks, men ignorant of his tongue, and deceit. Therefore being freed through the endeavour chiefly of *John Rufinus* of Jerusalem, and *Origen* his favourer; the which (f) *Orosius* sheweth, he took the greater courage. But first of all by the sharp manner of writing of *Jerome*, and also by the sentences of the African fathers, he began to be troubled. For in the year 416. (g) two Provincial Synods were solemnized; one at Carthage, wherein *Aurelius* was chief: the other at *Milevum* in Numidia, *Silvanus* being President, at which *Augustine* was present, and from thence the Synods opinions were sent to Pope *Innocent*, wherein they declare the errors of *Pelagius* and *Caelestius* to be so condemned by them, that they spared the authors themselves. (h) *Innocent* the year following, wherein *Honorius* and *Constantius* are marked to be Consults, (that is, the 417th of Christ) in the Moneth of January, answereth to both, and judged *Pelagius* and *Caelestius*, to be deprived of Church-fellowship. Which thing being found, *Pelagius* wrote to *Innocent*. But he

(i) dying that very year of Christ 417. 5. Cal. August, letters came to *Zosimus*. (k) Who first through the feigned profession of *Caelestius* (for this man had come to purge himself) as also being deceived by a subtle Epistle of *Pelagius*; with which he had lent a commendatory letter of *Praxius*, who had in the year 416, succeeded in the seat of Jerusalem, he was a little the more moved against the Fathers of Africa, and also against *Eros* and *Lazarus*. Neither yet restored he *Pelagius* and *Caelestius* to Communion, but set two Moneths day for this; at which their accusers should be present. In the meantime, the African Bishops bestirring themselves, the craftiness of the Heretiques being discovered at Rome by *Zosimus*, when *Caelestius* had privily withdrawn himself out of the City, he was (a) likewise condemned with *Pelagius* in the year four hundred and eighteen. There followed the same year, the day before the Calends of May, an (b) edit of *Honorius*, whereby they were both astonished or overcome. But the African Bishops, the decree of *Zosimus* being received, the very Calends of May of

the

the same year four hundred and eighteen, in a full assembly, as *Prosper* saith, of two hundred and thirteen Bishops, they framed eight Canons against the *Pelagian* Heresy; which are amisse, commonly attributed unto the Synod of *Milevum*. But that *Milevian* Synod determined nothing against *Pelagius*. And of those very eight Canons, the third, fourth, and fifth are cited by Pope (c) *Caelestine* under the name of the Council of Carthage. Lastly, in a general assembly of all Africa, not in a Provinciall, it ought to be pronounced concerning so great a matter. By this means the assembly decrees being brought to *Zosimus*, saith *Prosper*, even through the whole World the *Pelagian* Heresy was condemned. Of which being almost put to flight, *Julian* the son of *Memorius*, Bishop of Capua, and his successor, undertook the Patronage. Who for the same heresy being driven from his seat, entered a great combat with *Augustine*, a man of a ready tongue, and eloquent, but malepert and rash.

A certain appendice of the opinion of *Pelagius*, was the faction of the Semi or half-Pelagians; who affirmed the beginning of salvation to be from our selves, and thought otherwise of predetermination than *Augustine* did: (d) The which hiddenly going on, *Augustine* a few years before his death began to assault; and after him *Prosper* of *Aquitane*.

*Zosimus* being dead, Pope 7, the Kalends of January, of the year 418, *Boniface* was created, and about the same time *Eulalius* by *Chrysostom*; whom *Symmachus* the Governour of the City favoured. But he a little after fell from his cause, in the year of Christ 419. After *Boniface*, in the year 423 *Caelestine* was chief over the Roman Church; whose 6th year sliding, of Christ 419, (f) *Nestorius* of *Antioch* is ordained Bishop of *Constantinople*, in the place of *Sisinnius*; who a little after published a new heresie, affirming Christ to consist of a double person; and adding Blessed *Mary*, not to be the Mother of God, but onely of Christ a man. For the quenching this flame, *Cyril* before others (the chief Ruler of the Church of *Alexandria*) runneth; who from the year (a) 412, had been put in the place of his Uncle *Theophilus*: he being very much stirred up by the letters of *Caelestine*, in which he commanded him to search into *Nestorius* his cause, and to appoint him ten daies to repent; the which in the year 430. was by *Cyril* in vain tried.

(b) Wherefore in the year of Christ 431, an assembly was gathered together at *Ephesus*; unto which *Arcadius* and *Projetus* Bishops, and *Philip* an elder, the Embassadors of Pope *Caelestine* went. Moreover, there were above two hundred Bishops present: and for the hindering of tumults, *Candidian*, and *Irenaeus*, Earls, touched with the *Nestorian* spot, were appointed by *Theodosius* the Emperour. But the Eastern Bishops, who were called with *John* of *Antioch*, were more slowly present; because they were brought by constraint to condemn their Countrey-man or

I i

Companion.

Anno 418  
of Christ,  
to 450.

A common  
error of the  
*Milevian*  
Synod.  
c) Caelest. in p.  
to the Bishops  
of France.

*Julian* the  
*Pelagian*.

Semi-Pela-  
gians.

(d) Aug. book  
of Pred. of  
Saints.

The book  
of Vat. with  
Bar. to the  
year 419.  
(f) Marcell.  
Chron.

(a) Socr. 7.  
c. 7.

(b) The acts of  
the Synod. of  
Eph. & ep. of  
*Caelestine*.  
Prosper.  
Socr. b. 7.  
ch. 34.  
Evag. b. 1.  
Marcell.  
Theoph.  
Zona. Cedren.  
The Synod of  
*Ephesus*.



Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

Companion. Therefore when in the year spoken of, on 10 Kal. Jul. the Synod was begun, and being thrice summoned to appear, *Nestorius* was deposed from his seat; the fifth day after, *John* came with his Bishops; among whom *Theodoret* Bishop of *Cyrrus*, who presently appeared before them, a tumultuous small Council being gathered together, they repealed the acts of a lawfull Assembly, and condemned *Cyril* and *Memnon* Bishop of *Ephesus*. The Earls, all the letters of the Catholics being intercepted, they incensed the Emperour against them with letters full of reproaches; so that *Cyril* himself was cast into prison. At length, through a faithful man, who going to *Constantinople* in a beggars habite, brought away the letters of the Catholics inclosed in a reed, the Emperour was more certified of all things; and the Monks endeavouring it, and *Pulcheria* taking pains, the Acts of the Synod were confirmed by the Emperours authority, and *Nestorius* being cast out, *Maximian* was appointed in his room. Moreover, the (c) same *Pulcheria* built a Cathedral in *Blachernum*, in honour of the most holy Mother, by the Sea, which afterwards was famous for the Religion of the Greeks.

(c) Niceph. 5.  
ch. 2.

(a) Prosper  
against Col-  
lat.

(b) The Life  
of Sym. with  
Sur. 5. Jan.  
(c) Acts Epit.  
& Evag. 1.  
ch. 2.

The wretched  
end of *Nestorius*.

(d) Facund.  
b. 1. and a lit-  
tle book is  
extra tot Lep.  
Coif  
(e) Soer. 7.  
ch. 18.  
Theod. 5.  
ch. 39.  
Marcell.  
(f) Prosper,  
Victor,  
Huc. 1.

The assembly being ended, in (a) which also, *Prosper* is author, the Pelagian heresie was condemned; there remained between *John* and *Cyril*, and the Bishops divided on both sides, grudges for some time. Which by the endeavour of *Theodosius*, and coming between of that great (b) *Simeon Stylites*, were composed. (i) *Nestorius* being first of all sent back into his ancient Monastery of *Euprepus*, which was at *Antioch*; thence, because he should not blow on many with the infection of his error, he was commanded away into *Ossis* in the year 436, where a while after, his tongue breeding worms, he received a wretched deparrure of his life. His books by the appointment of *Theodosius*, were given to the flames.

(d) Furthermore, *Leporius* a French Monk made a flourish of the *Nestorian* heresie; who being untaught by *Augustine*, he asked pardon of his error for the war which he had offered; the which came to passe about the 420 year. In (c) which year also the whirlwind of a new persecution had troubled *Persia*, *Isdegerd*, or his son *Vatanes* reigning; for that is delivered doubtfully. (f) But also the Africane Church suffered grievous things under the tyranny of the *Vandals*, *Geseric* being King, who, amongst others, killed *Sebastian* an Earl, son in law of *Boniface*, who had fled to him for refuge, with the greatest treachery.

CHAP.

## CHAP. XVI.

Famous Men and Women in this Age.

Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

TWO Stars of the Church brought much brightnesse unto those times, not onely by their life, but also by their death, *Jerome*, and *Augustine*. The former of these departed in the year 420, the day before the Cal. Octob. 91 years of age, as (g) saith *Prosper*; but the (h) yearly regilters of *Baronius* set down but 78 or 79.

(g) Prosper.  
Chron.  
(h) Baron. to  
the year 372.

(i) *Augustine* dyed in the year 430, 5 Cal. Sept. of his age 76, of his Bishoprick 36; in which year the *Vandals* now besieged *Hippo* the third moneth, as (k) saith *Possidius*; he was born in the year 354, on the Ides of November, as he himself witnesseth in his book of a blessed life, and in his first of order, he was converted to Christ in the year 387, (l) about the vintage holy-dayes; and in the year following, about Easter, he was baptized; neither was he catechised or instructed for two years space, as some have thought. So in the 34 year of his age beginning, he received baptism. This man had a most sharp and continual war against heresies, and all sects, which then were rife in *Africa*; especially of the *Manichees*, *Pelagians*, and *Donatists*. (a) But against these, there was a memorable coming together or conference in the year 411, before *Marcellinus* the Tribune, a most religious man, whom *Honorius* had sent into *Africa* to pacifie the Church: of which *Augustine* was a great party. After this, the stubbornnesse of the *Donatists* was by (b) divers Edicts broken by the Emperour. (c) Moreover, the same *Honorius* in the year 412, banished *Jovinian* the heretique into the Island *Boas*.

(k) Poss. in  
the Life of  
Aug.

(l) Aug. 9.  
Con. ch. 2.  
See.

(a) Collar.  
Carth.

(b) L. 51. 242  
55. book  
Theod. of  
Heres.

(c) In the  
same b. 53. of  
heres.

(d) Greg.  
Pope 3. Dial.  
ch. 1. Sur. 22.  
Jun.

Amongst the famous chief ones in holinesse and learning, (d) *Paulinus* appeared, by Countrey an *Aquitane*, who Christian poverty being put after wealth and noblenesse of Birth, was afterwards made Bishop of *Nols*: in which dignity he set forth a memorable example to all Ages of Charity, and despising of himself, while, that he might redeem the captive son of a certain widow, he yielded himself into slavery to the *Vandals*. This man being made famous by the praises and friendship of *Ambrose*, *Augustine*, *Jerome*, *Martin*, and others, dyed 10 of Cal. Jul. in the year 431.

(e) Pope *Leo* wonderfully graced the Bishoprick of *Rome*, which he obtained in the year 440, with learning, piety, and famous deeds. (f) Also *Hilary* the Bishop of *Arelata* was famous, whom *Leo*, because he seemed to encroach on another's Diocess, strictly corrected. (g) And this man doth not seem to have exceeded the year 449. (h) For in that very year *Leo*, 7 Cal. Septemb. letters being granted to the Bishops of the Province, he confirmed *Raveanus* the succellour of *Hilary* by his opinion. Which *Hilary*, he nameth also of holy memory. But that *Hilary* was divers from

(e) Marcell.  
Chron.

(f) The Life  
of Hil. with  
Sur. May 5.  
Hilary of  
Arelat.

(g) Novell.  
Valent. b. 7.

Tit. 24. of  
ordain. Bish.

(h) Thom. 1.  
against Gall.

I i 2

this,



Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(i) Rubicus in  
his histor. of  
Raven.

(a) Marcell.

(b) Ep. Lucian.  
with Sur. 3.  
of Aug.  
(c) Vin. Lib.  
Commo.

(d) Prosper.  
Chron. &  
ag. Coll.  
Beda 3, hist.  
Aug. ch. 13.  
(e) Conf. in  
his life, Prof.  
Scal. Edit.

(f) Bede, l. 1.  
ch. 17.

(g) The life  
of Genov.  
1. Jan. with  
Sur.

(a) Synesep.  
66, and notes  
to the same.

this, who, with *Prosper*, wrote to *Augustine* about the remainder of the *Pelagians*. From whence the word of *Arelata* seemeth to have crept into those Epistles.

At *Ravenna* also flourished *Peter*, named from his eloquence (*Chrysologus*) that is, a golden Speaker; (i) who, by Pope *Sixtus*, through the advice of *Apollinar*, was granted Bishop to that City, about the year 433.

(a) *Orosius* an Elder of the Spanish kind was famous in writing history; the which he undertook by the persuasion of *Augustine*; and being sent by the same into the East, he from thence brought the remainders of *St. Stephen* into *Africa*, about the year 416;

(b) which reliques indeed *Lucian* an Elder, being shewn to him from God, had brought to light.

(c) *Vincentius Lirinensis* in the year 434, set forth a golden book against heresies, to wit, in the third year after the Synod of *Ephesus*, as he himself witnesseth. Likewise *Cassian*, by stock *Scythian*, the Schollar of *John Chrysostome*, built afterwards a Monastery at *Masilia*; who busying himself about the heresie of the Semi-pelagians, (the which had then possided the minds of many in *France*) *Prosper* of *Aquitane*, a learned man in that Age, and eloquent, confuted; a book being set forth against the partaker.

Besides, these chiefly got praise in the West. (d) *Palladius* who about the year 429, is sent by Bishop *Celestine*, the first Bishop unto the Scots.

(e) And also *Germanus* Bishop of *Antisiodor*, a most holy man, whom *Prosper* in his Chronicle makes mention of. *Palladius*, a Scottish Bishop, working to be sent by *Celestine* into *Brittain*, that he might quench the Pelagian heresie, *Florentius* and *Dionysius* being Consuls, that is, in the year 429. (f) But *Bede*, *Sigebert*, and others reckon that going of *Germanus* with *Lupus Trecentis* in the year 446; and the same *Bede* witnesseth, that he was sent by a certain French assembly. But the second, which he undertook with *Severus* Bishop of *Trevira* the Schollar of *Lupus*, *Bede* telleth, happened a little after, that is, as *Sigebert* saith, in the year 449.

(g) At the same time at *Lutetia* of *Paris*, *Genovesa* shone with the wonderfull light of all virtues, born in *Nemetodor*, a certain Village of the same City; the which *Germanus* in his former travel passing thither by chance acknowledged to be of God, and after that worshipped with the greatest reverence.

*Cyril* Bishop of *Alexandria*, enlightned the Eastern Church, who succeeded his Uncle *Theophilus*, in the year 412, as we have said already; and having performed many labours for the Catholique faith, and the worthinesse of the most holy Virgin, he departed in the year 444, the 9th of June, the which is gathered out of his Paschals.

(a) *Synesius* a Cyrenian, from a Heathen Philosopher, became a Christian, and was made Bishop of the same City by *Theophilus*, about

about the year 410; how long he late there, is not certainly known.

(a) *Theodoret* Bishop of *Cyrrus* in *Syria*, began to be chief over that Church about the year 423, and he excelled in Learning and Eloquence.

(c) Then lived that *Simeon Stylites*, so called from a pillar; in the which he standing dayes and nights, he began or led a life nearer to Angels than men in a mortal body.

(d) Also *Eustachium* the daughter of *Paula*, was famous with titles of Virginity and holy life, who out-living her mother 15 years, dyed in the year 419.

But two women were famous in Learning, (c) *Eudocia* the wife of *Theodosius* the younger: and *Hypatia* the daughter of *Theo* a Philosopher, and Mathematician, whom *Synesius* had in great esteem, and oftentimes nameth her his Mistressse. (f) But she in the sedition of the people in the year 415, was butchered by the *Alexandrians*, because she was thought to draw away *Orestes* the Governor from the friendship of *Cyril*.

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(b) See Bar.  
to the year  
413.

(c) His Life  
with Sur.  
5. Jan.

(d) Jerome  
cp. 79.

(e) Niceph.  
l. 14. ch. 13.

(f) Soet. b. 17.  
ch. 13. 20.

## CHAP. XVII.

Of *Marcion*, *Leo*, *Zeno*, *Anastasius*, and those things that happened under them in the Eastern Empire; where, of *Aspar*, and *Ardaburius*, *Basiliscus*, *Tyrants*.

Anno 450. of Christ, unto 491.

*M*arcian born in a mean place in *Illyricum*, but famous for warfar, (g) from a Tribune was made Emperour by *Pulcheria*, with whom also she agreed hand in hand, yet with that engagement, that she might be a Virgin. (h) The which happened in the year of Christ 450. The Common-wealth was managed by them both with the greatest agreement: and there was a like endeavour in them both, of defending both justice and Catholique piety. But *Marcian*, although now stricken in age, *Pulcheria* first dyed, after her great endeavour done for the Church, in the (a) year 453, 10th of Septemb. which day being consecrated, is gathered in Church-Tables. *Marcian* the fifth year after dyeth, to wit, of Christ the 457, (b) January going out, when he had commanded 6 years, and so many moneths.

Leo by birth a *Thracian*, (c) followeth *Marcian*, promoted by the endeavour of *Aspar*, of whom were three sons, *Ardaburius*, *Patricius*, and *Hermenaricus*, of whom, *Leo* had promised to make *Patricius* Emperour; the which when he had long deferred, (d) at length in the 12th year of his reign, of Christ 468, he perfected, his daughter *Ariadna* being espoused unto the same; but he made *Ardaburius Patricius*. (e) He beheadeth *Aspar*, being deceived by this deceit, with *Ardaburius*, by the sword of his Eunuches, *Patricius*,

(g) Theod.  
Lea.

(h) Marcell.  
Chron. Alex.  
Theoph.  
Miscel.

Evag. 2. ch. 1.  
Zon. Ccd.

(a) Marcell.  
Chr. Alex.  
Theoph. of  
Roman Mar.  
Eyr.

(b) Theod.  
Lea. 2.  
Collect.

(c) Candid.  
with Phot. 79.

(d) Cedrenus.  
Niceph. 15.  
c. 27.

(e) Marcell.  
Evag. 2. c. 15.  
Theoph.  
Jornand.

Anno 450  
of Christ, 10  
491.

(f) Can. ind.  
with Phor.

*Patricius*, beyond expectation, wounds being received, escaped safe. *Hermenaricus*, who was then absent, fleeth into *Isauria*; and *Zeno* being Emperour, returning to *Constantinople*, married his bastard daughter, saith *Theophanes*. (f) *Leo* passed over the affinity on *Tarasconius* *Isaurus*, named *Zeno*, whom first he had made his friend, and delivered unto him his daughter *Ariadna*, and the Lieutenanship of the East.

*Basiliscus* was the brother of renowned *Verina*, the wife of *Leo*, a treacherous and heretical man, who being made chief Commander by *Leo*, over a great Navy which he had provided against the *Vandals*, betrayed his master, whether corrupted with a summe of money by *Gensericus*, (g) or having covenanted for the Roman Empire from *Aspar* and *Aradaburius*, as a reward of this unfaithfulness. Who returning to *Constantinople*, fleeth to the Church, and being pardoned by the Emperour through the intreaties of his sister *Verina*, he was banished unto *Perinikum*; not long after being wholly restored, he drave away *Ostrys* the Protector of *Aspar*, and *Theodorick* the son of *Triarius*, whose sister *Aspar* had married, together with *Zeno*, from the siege of *Constantinople*, (h) in the year 472.

*Leo* dyeth, 17 years, 6 moneths of his rule being finished, (k) in the moneth of January, when as he had declared *Leo* the younger son of *Zeno* and *Ariadna*, Emperour; who the moneth of Febr. after crowned his father *Zeno* with his own hand, and appointed him *Augustus*; and 10 moneths being passed over, dyed with him in that very year, wherein his grandfather *Leo* had deceased 474. *Victor Tununenensis* saith, *Zeno* would have killed his son *Leo*, and another to be appointed by *Ariadna*, for him: but *Leo* lay hid under a Clerks shaving, and to have lived even untill the time of *Justinian*; the which is more like a fable then an history.

(a) *Zeno* therefore afterwards reigned alone, born in *Isauria*, no lesse foul in body than mind, saith *Zonarras*; and a stranger from the Catholique opinion; (b) who about the beginning of his reign, the Mother in law of *Verina*, and of *Basiliscus* the brother of this *Verina*, being assaulted by laying in wait, he ran away with *Ariadna* into *Isauria*, (c) who preferred conjugal troth before the flatteries of her Mother, and the Court. *Basiliscus* with his wife *Zenodia*, was proclaimed Emperour, a Prince in nothing more profitable than *Zeno*, and led by his Wife into the Eurychia heretic.

(d) *Candidius* writeth, That *Verina* was ensnared with the loves of her Master *Patricius*, that he might marry her for the dowry of the Empire, to have excluded her son in law: but against her hope, the top of things was brought on *Basiliscus*. *Zeno* was driven out in the year 476, *Basiliscus* and *Armatius* being Consuls; (e) which thing is gathered out of an Epistle of Pope *Simplicius*, these being Consuls, dated the 4th of the Ides of January, wherein he encourageth *Zeno*, That he would attempt some thing for being Emperour. But *Marcellinus* and *Victor Tununenensis* mention

Zeno

*Zeno* to be driven away, himself alone being Consul, in the year 475; and to have been restored in the following year, *Basiliscus* and *Armatius* being Consuls, whom the letters of *Simplicius* do overthrow; not the fourth onely, but also the seventh being dated after the Consulship of *Basiliscus* and *Armatius*, on the 8th of Ides of October, which is the year 477, in which he gives thanks with *Zeno* for the Empire being recovered. (t) But whilst *Basiliscus* abuleth through tyranny, the Empire ill-gotten, and his Wife stirring him up, he restored *Timothy* *Elurus*, and *Peter Fullo*, the worst of Hereticks, into their seats, from whence they were cast forth: *Acacius* the Bishop of *Constantinople*, a subtile heretique; and *Daniel Styliotes*, stoutly withstanding: and (g) *Verina*, her mind being changed into the favouring of her son in law, acting privily; *Zeno* in the 477 year recovered the Empire, after 20 moneths that he was cast out, as *Victor Tununenensis* is author, and *Armatius* the Cousen of *Basiliscus*, the master of the Souldiery being corrupted, who being in friendship with *Zenonis* the wife of this *Zeno*, through a custome of whoredom, he could do all things, he (a) shut up *Basiliscus*, being separated from the Church, in a Castle of *Cappadocia* at *Lemnos*, and there compelled him with his wife *Zenonis* to dye with hunger, (b) *Malchus* is author, that *Basiliscus* with his Wife and Children, was put to the sword. *Armatius* a little after, for the Military Lieutenanthip which *Zeno* had promised him, by the command of the same *Zeno* was slain. His son by an agreement was called *Cesar* by *Zeno*, he was reckoned for a (c) Clergy-man; and *Cyzicenus* being afterwards made Bishop, was chief over that Church with praise.

After these things, new shakings rose up against *Zeno*, (d) First *Marcian* the son of *Anthemius*, him who had been Emperour of the West, having *Leontia* the daughter of *Verina*, and the sister of *Ariadna* in marriage, challenged the Empire to himself by the right of his wife, because she was the daughter of *Leo* now holding the Empire, not as *Ariadna*, he being a private man. The matter therefore he valiantly attempting, *Zeno* being driven out, at last he corrupted a gotten victory with riot and sloath. Therefore straightway being overcome by the deceit of *Isaurus*, of the flock of *Illus Patricius*, he is consecrated an Elder by *Acacius* the Patriarch, (e) in the year 479.

The year following from hence, another storm fell on *Zeno*. This man banished *Verina* his Mother in law, by the counsel of *Illus*, with *Marcian* and her daughter *Leontia*, into a certain Castle; and by and by he tried to kill *Illus* himself, *Ariadna* stirring him up, (f) by a certain fellow *Alanus*. But his ear being onely cut off, *Illus* escaped. Whom that *Zeno* might appease, he made him Captain of the East, with the greatest power. (g) But he being misadful of the wrong, in the year 482, he brought by force *Verina* the Emperesse out of the *Papyrian* Castle of *Isauria*, that at *Tasus* a Town of *Cilicia*, he might make *Leontius Patricius* Emperour.

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(f) Evag. 1.  
c. 8.  
Theoph. Le&  
Marcell.  
Theoph. Zo-  
nar. Cedr.

(g) *Candidius*.

(a) *Procop. 1.*  
*Vand.*

(b) apud  
*Phor. Cod.*  
78.

(c) *Theoph.*

(d) *Evag. 3.*  
c. 26.

(e) *Theoph.*

(f) *Candid.*

(g) *Evag. &*  
*Theoph.*

After

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

After two years *Verina* dying, to wit, in the year 484, *Leontius* and *Illus* were overcome by *John* a Captain of *Zeno*, and shut themselves up in the Castle of *Papyrium*: the which after four years being vanquished, both their heads were cut off, being brought to *Constantinople* in the year 488.

The Emperour being unthankful against so many benefits of God, unto heretical ungodlinesse he added cruelty: and when he had learned from *Marian* a Knight, foretelling, That one of the School of the *Silentiaries* should be the succeder to him, of Empire and wedlock; he punished some innocent persons with death: but especially *Pelagius*, a man most highly endued with good arts and virtues; who had come up from the *Silentiary* School, unto a Senators dignity. That happened in the year 499. The next year from that, *Zeno* being taken with the falling evil, the which he had drawn by gluttony, calling on the name of *Pelagius* many times together, he departed out of this life, as *Elegium* writeth. Others tell, that he was buried, as yet living; and when the voyce of the awakened was heard by *Ariadna*, he being forbidden to be drawn out, there miserably dyed: God thus establishing the prayers of *Pelagius*, whom, he being about to dye, had called as a witness and revenger of his innocency.

## CHAP. XVIII

Of *Valentinian* 3d. *Maximus the Tyrant*, *Avitus*, *Majorianus*, *Anthemius*, *Olybrius*, *Glycerius*, *Nepos*, *Augustulus*, *Western Emperours*; Likewise of those things which happened in the Western Empire, from the year 450, to 491. Of *Atila*, *Odovacres*, *Theoderick*.

(a) Prosper.

**V**alentinian the third as yet surviving, *Atila*, who in the (a) year 444, his brother *Blodas* being slain, began to reign over the *Hunns*. In the sixth year after, he bended himself for France, which was of Christ 450. the which at that time the *Goths* held, whom the *Franks*, *Brugundians*, *Alanians*, and other Barbarians name *Wisigoths*, the Romans hardly defended a part of it, *Aetius* being Captain, who onely at that season, lest it should utterly perish, supported the Empire of the West. *Theoderick* reigned over the *Goths*; (b) whose daughter, *Geiserick*, she having married his son *Hunnericus*, for a suspicion of Poyson, her nose being cut short, and her Ears, he had sent back disgraced to her father. For this the *Vandal* fearing him, he provoked *Atila* against him with great gifts.

(b) Jorn de rebus Ger. a. 56.

(c) Jorn. of Ger. affairs, ch. 36.

(a) Gregor. Turon. l. 7. c. 7. Sidon. l. 8. epist. 25.

(c) Who led an Army unto *Aurelia*; For *Sangiban* King of the *Alanians*, had promised that he would deliver up this City unto him. Which thing being known, the Citizens defended themselves from his treachery. There was then in that City (a) *Ambian* a Bishop, famous in the appearance of Holiness and learnings who

who

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

who at the report of *Atila* approaching, had gone to *Arelate* unto *Aetius*, for to crave aid; and both by the confidence of this man, and also much more of divine help, he confirmed their trembling minds. Therefore *Aetius* commeth on *Atila*, besieging the *Aurelians* at unawares, with the covenanted Kings: whom he flying, departed into *Belgia*. (b) There in the year 451, a great battell being joyned, he was scattered in the *Catalonian* fields, which are also named *Manriacan*, saith *Jornandes*, the which lye open a hundred leagues, as the French call them, in length; they are broad seventy; the same Author affirmeth. Moreover a league hath a thousand and five hundred paces. (c) In that battell, saith *Jornandes*, were present with the *Romans*, the *Wisigoths*, *Franks*, *Sarmatians*, *Burgundians*, *Saxons*, and other Nations, with the *Hunns*, the *Gepidians*, and *Ostrogoths*, *Valamir* being Captain. Yet (d) *Sidonius* affirmeth, the *Franks*, and *Burgundians* to have been in *Atila's* Camps, the which may be understood of some part of both. *Theoderick* King of the *Wisigoths* was slain, and were killed on both sides, 170000, as saith *Jornandes*. *Idatius* 300000. It is manifest enough, that they might have been subdued with the *Hunns*, but that it was feared by *Aetius*, lest these being utterly put out, the *Goths* could not be upheld in France. (e) Therefore he perswaded *Theodismund* the son of *Theoderick*, through a shew of coming to his fathers Kingdome, to return into *Narbony*: (f) who, the year turning, was stabbed by his brothers, *Theoderick*, and *Fredrick*.

(b) Marc. Idac. chr. Alex. Theop. Paulus Diac. b. 15.

(c) Jorn.

(d) Carm. 7. 310.

(e) Greg. Tur. b. 2. ch. 7.

(f) Idac. Chr.

(g) *Atila* being beyond hope delivered, sendeth an Army into Italy: where *Aquileia* being taken by siege, he made it equal with the ground, from thence *Mediolanum*, *Ticinum*, and other Towns being wasted, he desiring Rome, being moved by an Embassage of *Leo*, who met him at the River *Mincius*, he went back into his Countrey, in the year 452. from whence going against the *Alanians* into France, who had set down beyond *Trigrisus*, he was, as *Jornandes* saith, put to flight by *Theodismund*, in like manner as in the *Catalonian* fields. (h) But in the year four hundred fifty and four, when as he had married a Maid, new Wine being largely drawn in; he came to his end by a sudden vomiting of blood.

(g) Jorn. Caffiod. chr. Paul. Diac. 15.

(h) Priscus with Jorn. Marc. Theop.

(a) They say the City of the *Venetians* took its beginning from that inroad of the *Barbarians*, many people of Italy, and especially of the *Patavians*, from the burnings of their Cities, and ruines, betaking themselves for refuge, unto overflowed places.

(b) But *Valentinian* through the death of his Mother *Placidia*, which deceased in the year four hundred fifty one; the Reins of liberty being let loose, he abuseth his Government by lust and cruelty, and when he had committed adultery on the wife of *Maximian*, a Senator, he beheadeth *Aetius* being returned to him, suspected for his crafty counsell in the Pallace, the year four hundred fifty four; and in the following year, by the deceit of the same *Maximian*, he is thrust thorow by the men of *Aetius* Guard, (c) the

(a) Blond. Dec. 3. b. 1. Sabell. Enead. 8. b. 1. Sig. of Emp. Ital. b. 13

The begin. of Venice. Valentinian slain.

(b) Marc. Idac. Paul. Diac. 15. Jorn. of succell. of Kings. Caffiod.

(c) Anonym. culpa.

K k

sixteenth

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(a) Maximus  
Procop. Vand.  
(c) Annon.  
Culp. of Max.  
see Sidon. b. 2.  
Ep. 3.  
(f) Paul. Diac.  
b. 15. ch. 5.

(g) Anon.  
Culp.  
(h) Theoph.

(j) Cassiod.  
Marc. Idar.  
Paul. Diac.

(k) Paul. 15.  
ch. 5.

(l) b. 2. ch. 7.

b) Marc. Idar.  
Paul. Diac.  
c) Non. Major.  
Tr. 3. to the  
Sen. Procop. 1.  
Vand. Jorn.  
Cassiod. An.  
non. Culpin.

sixteenth Cal. April. thirty six years old, of the Empire the third. (a) *Maximus* having enjoyed a Marriage with *Eudoxia*, the wife of *Valentinian*, when he had confessed that he for the love of her, had conspired against the death of *Valentinian*, she bearing unworthily that thing, called *Genferick* into Italy, out of *Africa*, at whose coming *Maximus* being affrighted, in the flight, (c) the day before the Ides of June, was torn in pieces, or cruelly killed by his own companions, and cast into *Tyber*, scarce the other Moneth of the Empire being finished. (f) *Genferick*, the City being taken, being made mild by the speech of Pope *Leo*, he abstained from firing and slaughter. Yet for (g) fourteen dayes, robbing all noy and profane Riches, heled away (h) *Eudoxia* the Emperesse, and her two daughters, *Eudocia* and *Placidia* into *Africa*, and coupled her to his son *Humerick*, this because she was already married to *Olybrius*, he kept *Eudoxia* in the year four hundred sixty two, was sent back to Constantinople. *Idatius* is Author. Her daughter, when she had lived sixteen years with *Humericus*, and had brought forth *Ilderius*, privily sliding into holy places, she fled in the year four hundred seventy two, as *Theophanes* writeth.

(i) In the mean time *Avitus Gallus*, in the same year four hundred fifty five, the sixth of the Ides July, as saith *Anonymus Culp.* being proclaimed Emperour by the French Army at *Tolosa*, he confirmed peace with the *Goths*. By whose persuasion *Theoderick* entring into *Spain*, he conquered the *Suevi*, their King *Ricimer* being slain, in the year four hundred fifty six. *Avitus* in the third year after he had been chosen, being forsaken by the *Goths*, failed of his Empire and life, as *Idatius* writeth. (k) *Paulus Diaconus* reports, that he having laid down the *Placentine*, was made Bishop, that happened in the year four hundred fifty seven, wherein also *Marcian* did his duty to nature in the East. *Anonymus Culp.* saith, that *Avitus* was taken in the year of *Placentius*, 13. of Cal. Octob. in which *John* and *Varran* were Consuls. Truly *Evagrius* a certain Historian, gives (a) no more, than ten Moneths and eight daies unto *Avitus*. But out of that *Anonymus*, more than 14. Moneths will agree; and the space of cessation of an Emperour, shall be six Moneths ten dayes. For he saith *Majorian* was lifted up in the year four hundred fifty seven, the Cal. of April, when as the day before the Cal. of March, he was made master of the souldiery, in which day also *Ricimer* from the Master of the Souldiers, was made Senatour: After this manner it may be true, which *Idatius* saith, in the third year, after he began to reign, *Avitus* was taken away, to wit, the space of cessation of rule being reckoned. Therefore in the year four hundred fifty seven by the will of *Leo* the Emperour, who succeeded *Marcian*. (b) *Majorian* undertook the Empire of *Ravenna*, a Prince of a great courage. (c) Who being covetous of recovering *Africa*, attempting a war against the *Vandalls*, went to *Genferick* in the shew of an Ambassadour. But being laid hold of by *Ricimer* a Senatour, and

Anno 408  
of Christ,  
to 450.

(d) Anon.  
Culp. Cassiod.  
Idar. Marc. &c.  
(e) Anon.  
Culp.

(f) Cassiod.  
Marc. Sidon.  
Panc. Evag.  
a. ch. 18.  
(g) Anon.  
Culp.

(h) The same.  
(i) Marc. Cassiod.

(j) Cassiod.  
Marc. Paul.  
Diac. 15. Jorn.  
of succ. of  
Kings.  
(k) Anon.  
Culp.  
(l) The same.

(m) Anon.  
Culp.

(n) Marc. Cassiod.  
(o) Anon.  
Culp.  
(p) Of Ger. aff.  
saith.

(q) Anon.  
Culp.  
(r) Marc. Jorn.

(s) Cassiod.  
(t) Anon.  
Culp.  
(u) Jornan.  
de rebus Ger.  
c. 46. Marc. I.  
(v) Anon.  
Culp.

and master of both kinds of warfare at *Dertona*, and compelled to give off, is slain in the year four hundred sixty one, when he had commanded four years and four Moneths. For he was stripped of his Empire by *Ricimer*, *Dagailaphus* and *Severinus* being Consuls, that is in the year four hundred sixty one, the fourth of the Nones of Aug. and was slain the seventh Ides of Aug. at the River *Hira*. And then *Ricimer* made *Severus* Emperour by an agreement in the same year four hundred sixty one, in the Moneth Novemb. the (d) thirteenth of Cal. Decemb. whom also in the fourth year of his Tyranny, he took away by poyson, (e) the eighteenth of Cal. September, of Christ four hundred sixty five. Afterwards there was a cessation of the Empire, the space of one year and some Moneths. Then in the year four hundred sixty seven, by the Authority of *Leo* the Emperour, there was sent an Emperour into the West.

(f) *Anthemius* a Senatour, the Nephew of *Anthemius*, who under *Theodosius* the younger, had held a chief place in the Commonwealth, his father being *Procopius*. (g) He was called Emperour of Rome the day before the Ides of Aprill. Moreover it had been thus agreed between *Leo* and *Ricimer*, that a Greek Emperour should be sent to Rome, whose daughter should marry *Ricimer*. So, that Barbarian being made the son in law of *Anthemius*, by a wanted treachery, he kills his father in law at Rome, first set upon by (a) a civil war, the (b) fifth Ides of Jul. in the year four hundred seventy two, when he had commanded five years, and some Moneths besides.

(c) *Olybrius* was placed in the room of *Anthemius* by *Ricimer* (d) who died fourty dayes after the death of *Anthemius*, thirteenth Cal. of September, neither had he *Olybrius* living long after. For he in the same year, (e) the tenth Cal. November, finishing his life, the seventh Moneth after he was created, *Gundiabalus* persuading it, whom *Olybrius* had made a Senatour, as *Cassiodorus* writeth, *Glycerius* took the Empire at *Ravenna*, in the year four hundred seventy three, (f) on 3. Non. March, which governed almost four Moneths above a year.

(g) *Julius* his Nephew in the year four hundred seventy four, succeeded in his place, (h) eighth Cal. Jul. who suffered *Glycerius* to be made Bishop in the Roman Ship-harbour by the Emperour, but (i) *Jornandes* saith, he was made Bishop of *Salo*. But *Marcellinus* *Glycerius* to have taken it in the year four hundred seventy five. Therefore he was chased to *Salo* by *Orestes*, (k) fifth Cal. Septem. and after five years (l) not far from thence, was slain in his own Village in the year 480, the seventh Ides May, as *Anonymus* with *Cyprian* is witness.

(m) *Attonillus*, who is also *Augustulus*, was put in place by his father *Orestes*, (n) the day before the Cal. November, the last of the Roman Emperours in the West. (o) For *Odoacre* King of the *Twistingians* possessed Italy with the *Scyrians*, and *Herulians*, assistants, (p) the 10. Cal. Septem. And the fifth of the same Cal.

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(q) Marcell.  
Cassid. Anon.  
Culp.  
(r) Cassiod.

(s) Cassiod.  
Chron.  
(t) Anon. Culp.  
(u) Eugip. n.  
the life of Se-  
ver.

(a) Marc.  
Jorn. 2. o  
1. Goth. Cal-  
lied. Chron.

(b) Anon.  
Culp.

Orestes being slain, and his brother Paul the day before the Nones September, he banished *Agastulus* into *Campania*, to the (q) Empire of the West was ended, *Basiliscus* and *Armarus* being Consuls, the fourteenth of *Constantines* annual account, in the year of Christ 476.

*Odoacre* held Italy by a Kingly name, (r) without his tokens of honour, about seventeen years before the *Ostrogoths*, *Theodoric* being King, came into it. (s) By him *Pheletheus*, or *Phæsa* King of the *Rugians*, was overthrown, and was taken with his most bad wife *Gista*, in the year fourty eight, (t) Novemb. 18, which slaughter *Severinus* a (u) Messenger of the *Noricians*, had foretold unto him. *Frederick* the son of *Pheletheus*, his Kingdome being recovered by the endeavour of *Theodoric*, was driven out by *Odoacre*, the whole Nation being brought over into Italy.

But in the year four hundred eighty nine, (a) *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*, by the encouragement of *Zeno* going to Italy, *Odoacre* being overcome in a double battle at the River *Isontus*, and at *Verona*; but the year following being thirdly overcome at the River *Ducis*, he constrained him to fly to *Ravenna* the Ides of Jul. as faith *Anonymus* of *Culp.* where he besieged him three years, and at last, a deceitfull covenant being made with him, (b) the third Nones of March, that they should hold Italy in common, a feast being made, slew him in the year four hundred ninety three in which year the Kingdome of the *Goths* had its beginning in Italy.

## CHAP. XIX.

Of Church-Affairs, from the year of Christ 450, to 491, where of the Synod of Chalcedon, and of the Heretiques Peter Fullo, Cnaphrus, Moggus, Acacius, and of Henoticus of Zeno; And of holy and Learned Men.

The fourth Oeconomical, or general Assembly, *Marcius* reigning as Emperour, and *Leo* chief Bishop, was solemnized in the year of Christ 451, in which *Eutyches* was condemned: the order or manner of whose proceeding I will conclude in a short abridgment.

*Eutyches*, an Abbot of *Constantinople*, was the author of a new heretic, which took away all difference of natures in Christ. He being (c) required for judgment by *Eusebius* Bishop of *Doryleum*, was condemned in an Assembly at *Constantinople*, by *Flavian* the Bishop of that City, in the year 448. The year following, through the endeavour of *Chrysaphius* an Eunuch, who was offended with *Flavian*, another Synod was had at *Ephesus*, which they name *Asquar*, that is, robbing; over which *Dioscorus* of *Alexandria* was chief, he who in the year 444, succeeded *Cyril*. In that Assembly *Eutyches* was restored to communion, *Flavian* being displaced;

(d) and

(i) and *Anatolius* an Elder, and Chancellor of *Dioscorus*, being ordained in his room. But both *Theodores* and *Domnus* of *Antioch*, were reduced into order; although this last is gathered to have subscribed unto that (small Council, together with *Juzenal* of *Jerusalem*. *Flavian* while he calls on the Roman Bishop, being driven into banishment, and evilly intreated with fifts and heels, he dyed. The Embassadors of Rome being vexed, Pope *Leo* condemned this Synod, with whom, likewise *Dioscorus*, through a wicked boldness, renounced communion at *Alexandria*. All these things, *Theodosius*, otherwise a most religious Prince winking at, but deceived by *Chrysaphius*, were finished: when as *Pulcheria* was absent; who had given place in the year 447, to the reproaches of that gelded one, and *Eudocia* the Empress, in the administering the Government. At length the error being acknowledged, *Theodosius* sends *Eudocia*, sharply chidden, unto *Jerusalem*, and called home *Pulcheria* in the year 450, in which same year he dying, *Marcian* with *Pulcheria* his wife received the Empire; the (a) commanding, *Chrysaphius* was slain.

(b) Furthermore, in the year 451, there was a general Assembly solemnized at *Chalcedon*, of 630 Fathers; at which, Roman Embassadors were present, *Paschasius Lilybetanus*, and three others; and also *Dioscorus* himself. Moreover *Marcian* the Emperour with *Pulcheria*, and Officers and Senators, were present. It was begun the 8th of the Ides of Octob. and after 13 sittings in Kal. Novemb. being finished, in which the Synod of robbers being repealed, (c) *Dioscorus* was condemned, and *Eutyches*; and the remembrance of *Flavian*, restored with honour. *Dioscorus* being sent away to *Gangra* of *Paphlagonia*, there ended his life. (d) The 29 Canons of that Council were least of all received by *Leo*. *Dioscorus* being driven out, and *Proterius* ordained in his place, the Alexandrians through the love of their new Prelate, were turned to sedition. But *Marcian* easily restrained them. After his death in the year 457. they began to tumult again, all the Hereticall Monks disturbing, whom *Timothy* *Elurus*, from a Monk, an Alexandrian Elder, (e) being, together with *Peter Moggus* a Deacon condemned by *Proterius*, a wicked and impure man, had moved against *Proterius*; (f) when as he running about throw their Cells, feigned that an Angel, was sent to him, and commanded to make *Timothy* Bishop in his place. Neither was there a vain hope of so blockish an invention. *Proterius* on the very day of the preparation fleeing into the washing font or vessel, by the mad people, (a) or by the Souldiers, whom *Timothy*, the fear being now possessed, had privily sent, he was beheaded. *Victor Tannensis* is witness in his Chronicle, *Constantine* and *Rufus* being Consuls, which is the 457 year, *Proterius* was slain on the sixth holy-day of the last week of fasting. That year, Easter fell out on the first day before the Kalends of April, so the preparation happened the 4th. Kalends, by which the place of *Victor* is to be corrected, which is commonly faulty.

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(d) Niceph.  
Chron.  
The robbery of  
the Synod  
of Ephesus.

(a) Marcell.  
Chr. Alex.  
Counf. Chal.  
Liberat.

Evag. b. 1.  
ch. 4.  
(b) Vict. Tun.  
The council of  
Chalcedon.

(c) Leo ep. 6.  
&c. Gelaf.  
little work of  
Excom.  
Anast. to John  
Diac. in Col.  
Pet. Sirm.  
(d) Liberat.

(e) Theod.  
Lect. 1.  
Colled.  
(f) Evag. 2.  
ch. 8.  
Vict. Tun.  
Chron. Liber.  
Theoph.  
(a) Evag.

The Eutychian Heresy and the Order of the Chal. Synod  
(c) Council.  
chal. Act. 1.  
Liber. in Bre-  
viar. Vict. Tun.  
Marcell.

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(b) Ep. 15.

(c) Theoph.  
Liberat.

(d) Leo Pope,  
ep. 99. & 100.  
Ev. g. 1.  
ch. 11.  
Viñ. Tann.

(e) Theoph.

(f) Felix P.  
ep. 3. 4.  
Trifig. cur-  
rip. sed.

(g) Liberat.  
ch. 10.  
Theoph.

(h) Viñ. Tan.

(i) Liberat.  
c. 16.

(k) Evag. 3.  
c. 11.

(a) Simp. P.  
ep. 14. & 16.  
Evag. 3.  
ch. 10.  
Theoph.

(b) Niceph.  
Chron.

(g) Simp.  
ep. 17. & 18.  
Liber. ch. 17.  
& 18.  
Evag. 3.  
ch. 14.  
Viñ. Tan.

faulty. The letters of the Bishops of Egypt unto *Leo* the Empe-  
rour, say, *Proterius* to be slain on the very day of Easter. Perhaps  
they so named the preparation, as in time past many had wont.  
(b) *Liberatus* affirmeth that was done on the day of the Lords Sup-  
per. Of the year, Pope *Leo* makes us certain in his Epistle 73, &c.  
which being dated in the year 457, do bewail that Tragedy of  
*Alexandria*.

*Leo* punished the authors of so great wickedness, with the (c)  
cutting out of their tongues: he reserved *Timothy* for the judgment  
of the Bishops: and lastly, Pope (d) *Leo* being urgent, he com-  
manded him to be carried farther off, first to *Gangra*, and then to  
*Cersusna*.

About that time another Plague infected the Church of *An-  
tioch*, *Peter Fullo* an Elder at *Chalcedo*, of the Church of *Bassa*, fol-  
lowing *Zeno* the Captain of the East, who afterwards was Em-  
perour, in the year 463, (e) a multitude being provoked against  
*Martyrius* Bishop of that City, invaded his seat, and renewed the  
heresie of the *Theopasites*, (f) those words being added to *Tri-  
sagius*, [who hast suffered for us.] But straightway being by the Em-  
perour condemned to banishment, he lay hid in the Monastery of  
the *Acemetes* at Constantinople. Untill *Leo* being dead, (g) *Ea-  
phrasius* the Tyrant taking the Empire, in the year 476, he resto-  
red as well this man as *Timothy*. Whom again *Zeno*, the domi-  
nion being recovered, in the year 477, expelled. (h) And in the  
same year *Alurus* dyed; whom (i) *Liberatus* affirmeth, to have  
taken away his life by poyson. Into whose place, the heretiques  
chose *Peter Mogus* Bishop; but *Timothy Solopaciolus* the succedent  
of *Proterius*, was restored to the seat by the Catholics; *Mogus*  
not being killed by *Zeno*, as (k) *Evagrius* hath written, but was  
compelled to live in exile.

(a) *Cnapheus* being cast out, *Stephen* a Catholique was ordained  
at *Antioch*; who in the year 479, was thrust thorow by the pages  
of *Fullo*, in the place of wathing; after whom another *Stephen* was  
appointed for this man at *Calenum*, both Catholics.

(b) Then *Acacius* governed the seat of *Constantinople*, who was put  
in place of *Gennadius* in the year 471; a crafty or turn-coat man,  
and privily favouring the *Eutychian* heresie; but a wonderfull  
crafts-master of dissembling. (c) By the perswasion of this man,  
*Zeno* cast out *John Talisidus*, who had been made Bishop of *Alexan-  
dria* after the death of *Timothy Solopaciolus*, and suffered *Peter  
Mogus* to return unto that seat in the year 482. Then he set  
forth a new form of faith so craftily composed, that the hereticks,  
even as the Catholics, might agree upon it; because he called it,  
*isurads*, that is, a Reconciler; but in that there was a disan-  
nulling of the Council of *Chalcedo*. *Viñor* saith, That was pub-  
lished *Trocundus* being Consul, which is the year 482. By the  
Emperour's Edi& the Catholique Bishops resisted this wicked  
fellow; and amongst others, the head of all, *Felix* Bishop of  
*Rome*,

*Rome*, who was chosen after *Simplicius* in the year 483. (d) He  
from the Roman Council sent three Embassadors unto *Constanti-  
nople*. *Vitalis Troentinus*, *Miscus* Bishops of *Cuma*, and *Felix*, a  
defender of the Roman Church: who also summoned *Acacius* unto  
the Judgment-seat of the Bishop of *Rome*; and took care, *Mogus*  
to be driven from *Alexandria*. *Miscus* and *Vitalis* being trou-  
bled by *Acacius*, they communed together with him and *Peter  
Mogus*: *Felix*, when as he stayed by reason of a disease, after-  
wards coming to *Constantinople*, was cast into prison. (e) For  
these things Pope *Felix* authorized two Embassadors, and de-  
clared a sentence of excommunication against *Acacius*: who re-  
paying like for like, blotted out the name of *Felix*, out of the  
[*Dptychs*,] which are Church-Tables. That happened in the  
year 484.

(f) Moreover, *Peter Mogus* at *Alexandria*, *Henoticus* being  
received, while he studieth to deserve well of the Catholics,  
even as of Hereticks; and swimming on both sides, sometimes  
calls off the *Chalcedonian* Assembly, sometimes acknowledgeth  
it, runs into the hatred of them both. For many *Eutychians* fell  
off from him: who because they were neither of the Catholique  
party, nor could agree with their Bishop, were called [*Acephali*,]  
as if they should say, Without an head. The same went into di-  
vers divisions of Sects; of which it shall be treated a little af-  
ter.

(a) At the same time, that is, about the year 485, *Xenais*, who  
is also *Philoxenus*, by birth a Persian, of a slavish condition, was  
made Bishop of *Serapols* by *Peter Cnapheus*; he first lifted up a stan-  
dard of impiety against holy Images.

(b) And then *Cnapheus* dyeth in the year 486; *Peter Mogus* in  
the year 498. But *Acacius* in the year 488, about the keeping of  
whose remembrance in Church-Tables, the Bishops of *Constanti-  
nople* strove very long with the Bishops of *Rome*, as for they  
which were Catholics; (c) as *Euphemius*, who after *Flavitus*  
the heretique was carried up unto that seat in the year 489,  
for that cause he feared not the fellowship of the Apostolique  
seat.

(d) In *France*, the heresie of the Predestinians stood up, which  
had its beginning out of the books of *Augustine*, being ill under-  
stood. Of that sect, *Lucidus*, a certain one being chastised by  
*Fausus Regiensis*, returned into the way. Eleven Bishops subscri-  
bed to the Epistle of *Fausus* in the Arelatian Council, in the year  
475; by which *Fausus* himself affirmeth, a hard piece of work  
was put upon him, of disputing concerning grace and free-will.  
he (a dart being let fly beyond his bounds) aspersed a little some  
Catholique things in his books. At the same time also was so-  
lemnized at *Lugdunum* an Assembly of 27 Bishops.

In *Africa* under the *Arrians* and Barbarian Princes, the Church  
was grievously oppressed: First of all *Geiserick* being King, who

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(d) Liberat.  
16. Evag. 3.  
ch. 10. & 11.

(e) Ep. Syni.  
Rom. Con. 2.  
under Felix.

(f) Leonti  
of Sects.  
Ad. 5.

The begin-  
ning of the  
Acephalisms.

(a) Anast.  
Diac. in Nic.  
Syn. 2. out  
of Theod.

Left. Theoph.  
The first oppo-  
ser of holy  
images.

(b) Theoph.  
(c) Niceph.  
16. ch. 9.

(d) Faustus  
ep. to Leon.  
rom. 3. Conq.  
France.

The Vandals  
trouble the  
Church in  
Africa.

Anno 450  
of Christ, to  
491.

(e) Vict. Uric.  
book 1. in the  
end, and b. 2.  
& 3.

(f) Marell.  
(g) Bneas  
Gaz. Marell.  
Vict. b. 3.  
Vict. Tunun.

37 years after *Carthage* was taken, in the 476, dyed, (e) as is gathered out of *Victor*. After this King *Hunericus* his son, when he had shewed himself moderate enough in the beginning, and less estranged from the Catholiques, at length in the eighth and last year of his reign, of Christ 484, (f) in the moneth of Febr. he exercised an unheard of cruelty against them, he thrust out more than 334 Bishops into banishment; he cut short many of their tongues and hands; (g) who being brought unto *Constantinople*, and into other places, were for a miracle, when as they spake nevertheless, with a perfect voyce. Which torment of the godly, a fearful death of the Tyrant in a short time followed; who in the going out of the 484 year, being consumed by worms, he perished.

Holy Men and  
Learned.

(a) Marell.

(b) Martyro-  
log.

For the greatest ornament to the Church in those times, in bo-  
lincise joyned together with Learning, were first of all *Leo* the  
Great, the Bishop of Rome, (a) who from the year 440, to 461, al-  
most 21 years, held the Roman Chair: and he dying, (b) April 11,  
had *Hilary* his succeder; a man excelling in godliness and  
knowledge, and ability of speaking: by which garrisons he both  
defended the whole Church from the spot of Hereticks; and *Italy*  
from the cruelty of invading Barbarians; that the surname of  
*Great*, hath deservedly cleaved unto him.

(c) Eaned. in  
his Life.

In *Italy* also (c) holy *Epiphanius* Prelate of *Ticinum*, in the year  
466, entered into the Bishoprick; whom *Theodorick* King of the  
Goths worshipped with singular observance; *Ennodius Ticinensis*  
wrote his Life.

(d) Sid. b. 5.  
Ep. 16. Greg.  
Tur. 1. Hist.  
Euant. ch. 21.

In France, *Anian* Bishop of *Aurelia*, of whom I have made  
mention above. But ancient Histories witnesse, That this man  
two years after *Anila* was overcome by *Aetius*, passed into Hea-  
ven, Novemb 17. in the year of Christ 453. But because they  
tell, the same man to have succeeded *Eortius*; if that be so, one  
of the two must needs have sate very long: for *Ewotius* is he,  
who subscribed to the *Valentine* Council in the year of Christ  
374, *Prosper* excepteth *Anian*, as *Sidonius* sheweth. In the same  
France, (d) *Sidonius Apollinaris* was famous, born of a famous  
stock; who had married *Papianilla* the daughter of *Avitus* the  
Emperour; and afterwards by the Governour was ordained Bi-  
shop of *Avernium* about the year 472; in which year also, or the  
foregoing, *Rhemigius* was taken to the Bishoprick of *Rhemes* very  
young. For (e) in an Epistle which he wrote in the year 523, he  
saith, he holds that dignity now 53 years.

(e) Tom. 1.  
Counc. Gal.  
p. 203.

(f) Mart.  
Rom. 29. July.

Also (f) *Lupus* Bishop of *Trecena*, about the year 478, when  
he had been chief in that seat 52 years.

(g) Sieber.  
& Martyr.

(g) There flourished at the same time *Principius* the brother  
of *Remigius*, Bishop of *Suessions*. *Vedastus* of *Atrebatum*, afterward  
made Bishop; *Solemnus Carnotensis*.

(h) Gennad.  
See book 2.  
Doct. Times,  
c. 62. & Ap-  
pen.

(h) *Vistorinus* of *Aquitane*, by the desire of Pope *Hilary*, set forth  
an Easter Circle of 532 years, in the year 463.

In

In the East, *Gennadius* Bishop of *Constantinople*, who (a) succeed-  
ed *Anatolius* in the year 458, excelled in learning and holi-  
ness.

Anno 450  
of Christ,  
to 491.

(b) *Severinus* Bishop of *Noricum*, dyed in the year 482.  
Jan. 8.

(a) Marcell.  
(b) Sur. 8.  
Jan.

(c) That admirable man, *Simcon* of *Sylites*, dyeth about the  
year 461, when he had attained to the 109th year; and he was  
(d) born in the year 351, whose death being certainly known  
from God, (e) *Daniel* took to himself the same good manner of  
life.

(c) Theoph.  
(d) Roderus  
1. Virid.  
Par. 3.

(f) *Stadius* a certain man, built a famous Monastery at *Con-  
stantinople*, into which he brought over some out of the house of  
the *Acemetes*, in the year 462.

(e) His life  
with Sur.  
Dec. 11.  
(f) Theophi:  
to 491.

## The End of the Sixth Book.

LI

THE

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.



# THE HISTORY OF THE VVORLD. OR, AN Account of Time.

## The Seventh Book.

W Herein are contained the Years from the 491 of CHRIST, unto 641.

### CHAP. I.

Of Anastasius, and Justinus; and what things (they reigning) were carried on in the Eastern Empire; from the year 491, to 527.

(a) Theod. I. c. 8.  
Evag. 3. ch. 29.  
(b) Vict. Tun. Marcell. Theoph.

(c) Leon. of Sc. A. The virtues of Anastasius mixt with vices.

**Z**eno (a) being dead with his wife *Ariadna*, *Anastasius* undertook the Empire of the East in the year 491, (b) *Olybrius* being alone Consul, of the order of the Gentleman-Ulthers, not as yet recorded among the Senate. His Country was *Dyrrachium*; and before that he took the Command, he gave unto *Euphemius* the Patriarch of *Chalcedon* a profession of his faith, witnessed with his own hand-writing. (c) For he was a favourer of the *Eutychian* Opinion, and of the flock of the Doubters, whereby he pleased *Henoticon*, or reconciler of *Zeno*. Therefore *Euphemius* believed that he was tyed fast by that Caution, the

## Cap. I. An Account of Time.

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.

which he laid up in the yearly Registers of the Church. But when he was made partaker of his desire, he openly returned to falshood, and ceased not to fight against the Catholics; otherwise a profitable Prince to the Common-wealth: the which being overcharged by too much taxes, he eased, with the highest approbation of all.

(d) He is praised especially in that kind, because he took away *Chrysargyrum*, or the gold and silver poll-money. That was a tribute, which had been laid upon all heads as well as on great beasts and lesser cattle; even on dogs: yea, he forbid it to be required in the ninth year of his Empire. As soon as he obtained the Empire, he had something to do with the *Isaurians*, who under *Zeno*, their friend and Countryman, could do much in the Common-wealth. *Longinus*, *Zeno's* brother being frustrated of his hope, to enjoy the Empire, was turned out into *Isaura*, and with him were all the people of *Isaura* to depart out of their City.

(a) Hence arose that *Isaurick* war, wherein *Longinus* was their General which began in the year of our Lord four hundred ninety two, and ended *Anno* 497. which was the sixth year of the Wars.

(b) Two years after, that is, in the 499th year, the *Bulgarians* first daring to make incursions into the Roman Territories, waited *Thracia*, and afterwards began to be formidable: (c) And the *Persians* in the mean time, that they might want nothing to keep a wicked Prince under, they over-ran the East, and took *Amida* by the treachery of the Monks of that place, whom *Vitor Cabades* commanded to be put to death for an example, *Anno* 502. *Anastasiu* sent three Generalls with three Armies against him, such great Armies as never before the like were seen, as (d) *Procopius*, but *Marcellinus* saith that they were not above 15000, but their discord amongst themselves, made this great preparation of no effect: yet soon after this, *Cabades* being defeated, by the virtue and magnanimity of *Celer*, Master of the offices, a very valiant man, he concluded a peace with the Romans, and having received a vast sum of money, he delivered up *Amida*, and some other Towns, *Anno* 505. as *Theophanes* and *Marcellinus* do declare. (e) In this same year, the temerity and indiscretion of the Roman Captains, brought not a small losse and detriment to the Romans, for *Sabinian* had a very bad successe in fighting against *Mundo Geta*. *Anastasiu* having hardened his heart against so many Arguments of an angry God, he ceased not to tread underfoot the Catholic interest, by divulging his own heresy.

(f) For he forbid by a wicked Appendix, the Trisagium hymn once to be sung, *Qui Crucifixus es pro nobis*, publicly in the Church, to his great danger: for hence arose a grievous sedition of the people, in the year 514. which drove *Anastasiu* to hide his head, his Wife *Ariadna* censuring him for his impiety. In the same year also (g) *Vitulianus*, a Scythian General of the confederates; for so

(d) Evag. 3. c. 39. Theoph. Cedren.

The Isaurick war. (a) Marcell. Theoph. Evag. 3. c. 35.

(b) Marcell. The Persian War. (c) Marcell. Theoph.

(d) Procop. apud Phot. N. 63.

(e) Marcell.

The Trisagium corrupted by Anastasius. (f) Theoph. (g) Marcell. Vict. Tun. Evag. 3. c. 24. Zon. Theoph.



Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.

were the Goths called, as *Jornandes* records, under pretence of defending the Catholick interest, he rebelled against *Anastasius*, and having made a great slaughter, and drawn his Army near to the City, he granted them peace upon that condition, that Pope *Hormisdas* should assemble a Synod, which might take a care of the state of the Church, which was in the 515 year of Christ, but *Anastasius* by his wonted practices, deluded and made void the desires and intentions of the Catholicks, making no Conscience to lye and forswear himself after the manner of the *Manichees*, whose erronious opinions he had embraced: *Evagrius* writes that there was also a Sea-fight, and that *Vitalian* was beaten by *Marinus Syrus*. But *Zonaras* saith, that by the industry of *Proclus* the Mathematician, were made Brasse Prospektives, which burnt *Vitalian* Navies, by which means *Maximus* obtained a most remarkable Victory, which soon after was followed with an agreement of peace.

(a) In that age, as *Marcellinus* saith, in the year five hundred and fifteen, the Hunns having passed through Armenia, wasted and destroyed all Cappadocia, and came unto *Lycania*. And *Ariadna Augusta*, having lived sixty years, dyed in her Palace.

(b) At last in the five hundred and eighteenth year of our Lord there having been such tumult as the like never was, because *Anastasius* had defiled and corrupted the *Trisagium* hymn, *Anastasius* laying down his imperial dignity, induced the people to compassion and tenderness towards him, who intreated him to reassume it again. (c) But the eleventh of Aprill was stricken dead by a Thunderbolt (d) in the eighty eighth year of his age, having governed the Empire (e) twenty seven years, and three Moneths. The rumour is, that a little before his death there appeared to him, a man of a dreadful shape, who holding a book in his hand shewed him that fourteen years should be cut off out of his life, because of his impiety. Its a thing admirable that he had such a long time appointed him to live, which if he had completed, he would have lived 102 years.

*Justine* being already aged, succeeded after *Anastasius* was dead, the 9th of July, in the same year, (f) 518. He was a Thracian by Nation, descended of Parents of low degree, but an eminent person in Religion and godliness: whose wife *Lupicina*, having changed her name, was called *Euphemia*. As soon as he had assumed the Purple Gown, he put to death *Amantius* the Steward, and *Andreas* the Chamberlain, and also *Theocritus* whom *Amantius* the Eunuch would have made Emperour: he made *Vitalian* in whom he much confided, General of the Militia, who in the seventh Moneth of his Consulship, in the five hundred and twentieth year of Christ, was stabbed in the Palace, as *Marcellus* saith; or by a sudden uproar of the people, as *Theophanes* asserts; or, as (a) *Evagrius* saith, by *Justins* treachery, or by *Justinian Patricius*'s tadion, as *Vitar Tununenfs* affirms.

(b) *Tzathius*

a) Marcell.  
Vi& Tun.

b) Evag. 2. in  
fine Marcell.

c) Theoph.  
*Anastasius*'s  
deplorable  
death.

d) Vi& Tun.  
e) Marcell.  
Zon. Ged.  
Theoph. Paul.  
Diac. l. 15.

f) Evag. 4.  
Marcell. Vi&  
Tun. Theoph.  
Zon. Cod.  
Niceph. 17.  
c. 1. Chr. Alex.  
Vitalian's  
death.

a) Evag. 4. c. 3.

(b) *Tzathius* the King of the Lazores, rebelling against the Persians, comes to *Justinus* to Constantinople in the year 522, and after he had embraced the Christian Faith, the Emperour bestowed upon him royall garments. Which deed *Cabades* King of the Persians taking ill, he resolved to declare wars to the Romans, but suddenly after he concluded a peace and alliance with them. (c) Then as he intended, that *Justine* should adopt *Chosroes* his youngest son, whom he had designed to succeed him, he was rejected by *Proclus* the Treasurer.

(d) In the dayes of this Emperour, *Antioch* was afflicted by a great losse, for it was almost all overthrown by a strong Earthquake upon the twenty ninth of May, in the year 526. being the 8th year of *Justin* Empire, and not the 7th; a great burning immediately followed the Earthquake.

At last *Justine*, in the 527th year, when (e) *Masurtius* was Consul, created Emperour *Justinian*, his sisters son, whom having made most noble, he had created *Cesar* in the year five hundred twenty four, as *Vitar Tunun* records, and thendied of a wound four Moneths after, in August, being the (f) seventy seventh year of his age, having ruled the Empire nine years and a Moneth.

*Procopius* in his Suppressed History, saith that he was wonderfully ignorant of Learning, in so much that he could not write his own name, wherefore what is read of *Justinian* in *Suidas*, that he was ἀπὸ τῶν μαθητῶν ἀνδρῶν & ἀνοήτων, ignorant of all learning, and not knowing the Letters, is to be understood of *Justinus*, and not of *Justinian*, saith (g) *Alemannius*, for he proves that *Justinian* was a very learned man. For which cause also *Suidas* supposeth that *Justinian* was taken for *Justinus*, concerning which we must consider farther.

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.

(b) Chron.  
Alex. Theoph.  
Zon. Ced. &c.  
(c) Procop. 1.  
Pers. Theoph.  
Zon.

(d) Evag. 4. c.  
5. Theoph.  
Nice. 1. c. 4.

(e) Marcell.  
Vi& Tun. Chr.  
Alex. Theoph.

(f) Ch. Alex.  
Theoph. Paul.  
Diac. in fine  
ch. 15.  
*Justinus* was no  
part of a  
Scholler.

(g) In Not. ad  
Procop.

## CHAP. II.

Of the affairs of the West under King Theodoricus, and of the Franks, and their Prince Chlodoveus, of the Burgundians, Wisigoths, and Alaricus.

Anno 491. of Christ, unto 527.

**T**heodoricus King of the Ostrogoths, having subdued *Odoacre* in the West, obtained Italy, Anno 493. (a) *Albinus* then being Consul, who endeavoured to establish and settle his Kingdom, by the affinity of the neighbour Princes: for he married *Amdeglenda* (b) sister to *Chlodoveus* King of the Franks, as *Aimanius* saith, and not his daughter: which *Jornandes* and (c) *Freculfus* do reckon amongst his daughters, which he had by his Concubine, one of whom was married to *Alaricus* King of the Wisigoths, and the other to *Sigismund* King of the Burgundians: And he so governed

Theodoricus  
King of the  
Ostrogoths.  
(a) Cassiod.

(b) Aim. 2.  
c. 1.  
(c) To. 2. l. 5.  
c. 18.

Anno 491  
or Chnut,  
to 577.

The exploits  
of the Franks  
under Chlo-  
doveus.

(d) Greg. 2. c.  
27. Aimoins  
1. c. 13.

(e) Greg. 3. c.  
2. Aimo. 1.  
c. 13.

(f) Greg. 2. c.  
31. Aimo. c. 19.

(g) Greg. Tu-  
ron. 1. c. 31.

(h) Tom. 1.  
Conc. Gall.

(i) Tom. 1.  
Con. Gall.

Hincm in cap.  
Cat. call. 35.

(b) In vita S.  
Rem. apud.  
Sur. 13. Jan.  
& in cap.  
Car. Cal. 35.

(c) Lib. 1. c. 13.

(d) Greg. Aimo.  
Chlodoveus's  
war with the  
Burgundians.

(e) Greg. Tu-  
ron. 1. c. 31.  
Aimo. p. a. c. 19

Gundobaldus's  
Laws.

verned the Republick at first, that he might worthily have been compared with any one of the best *Cæsars*: and although by the peoples Law, he maintained the *Arian* opinion, he with much faithfullness preserved the rights of the Romans, and the liberty of the Church, but waxing old, he became cruell and barbarous.

(d) At this time the Kingdome of the Franks in Gallia, under their King *Chlodoveus*, began to extend far and near. Having overcome and killed *Syagrius*, the Earl, *Egidius*'s son, who governed the *Soissons* in the fifth year of his reign, and of Christ four hundred eighty six, and in the tenth of his reign, and of Christ four hundred ninety one. Having subdued the (e) *Turingians*, he married *Chlorides*, daughter to *Chilpericus* of Burgundy, the brother of *Gundobald*, by which being often exhorted to embrace the Christian Religion, (f) at length he obeyed her advice, in the year six hundred ninety six, after that, in the fight that he fought with the *Alemans*, near *Tolbiacum* in the *Ubes*, he had experienced the present assistance of *Chlorides*'s God, whom he invoked. Having subdued his enemies near (g) *Remis*, he was received into the Communion of the Church by St *Remigius* Bishop of that City, (h) and with him his sister *Albofleda*, which died not long after, and also his other sister, *Lantibida*, from her *Arian* opinion became a good Catholic. He was baptized on the day of Christ's Nativity, as it appears by (a) *Avinus* Epistle, by which he congratulates him his assumption of the Christian Faith: (b) *Flodoardus* and *Aimoins* add farther, that when (c) *Hincmarus* a boy, carried a Viall wherein was the sacred unction, and was shut in by the flocking of the multitude, that then at the prayers and request of this Holy Prelate, there fled to him a Dove from Heaven, which brought another Viall in her beak, wherewith was *Chlodoveus* anointed: and since that time are all the kings of France consecrated and anointed at *Rheims*, but *Gregory* makes no mention of this.

(j) Not long after this did *Chlodoveus* make war against *Gundobaldus*, the king of the Burgundians, to revenge the death of *Chilpericus* his father in law: for *Gunderick* king of that Nation, taking his Originall of *A banaricus* Prince of the Goths, had left four sons, *Gundobaldus*, *Godegisilus*, *Chilpericus*, and *Godomarus*. *Gundobaldus*, having killed *Childevic* and his wife, as also *Godomar*, he reigned with *Godegisilus*; therefore at the instant request of *Chlorides*, and *Godegisilus*, he gave battell to (e) *Gundobaldus*. And having overcome him near *Dijons* Castle, commanded him to satisfy himself with the half of the kingdome, and the other half he gave to *Godegisilus*, and layed an impost upon both: *Chlodoveus* being departed, *Gundobaldus* kills his brother *Godegisilus*, having on a sudden besieged *Vienna* wherein he was, and taken it. Then having shaken off the French yoke, he recovered all that territory that now is known by the name of Burgundy, and ordained Laws to his people, which very likely were signed in the year five hundred and one, when *Arienus* was Consul, or enacted in the year following.

(h) *Alaricus*

(f) *Alaricus* king of the *Wisigoths* fearing, not without good reason, the increasing power of the French he desires to enter into friendship with *Chlodoveus*: but as they were of different religion, (for the Goths were *Arrians*) their friendship lasted not long, for a while after, from secret grudges, there broke forth an open hatred, and hence a war, *Chlodoveus* fought five years before his death, the five hundred and seventh year of Christ, as (g) *Gregorius* saith with *Alaricus* in the *Volcladians* fields, ten miles from the City of *Poitou*. And having defeated his Army, he killed him with his own hands, who had already ruled (a) twenty three years in *Gallia* and *Spain*, hence pursuing his victory, he added to his kingdome all that which was from the River *Ligeris* to the *Rhose* together with *Toulouse*. But the Province of *Narbonne*, which was called the first Province of France, remained in the Goths subjection, and thence it began to be called Gothia: For *Amalaricus*, his father *Alaricus* being dead, hastily flying into Spain, he retained under his power Spain, with that part of France which we have already named: *Theodoricus* king of Italy possessed all what was beyond the *Rhose*, that is the other Countrey of the *Narbonnes*, and the Alps by the Sea side. *Isidorus* saith, that *Alaricus* death was in the year 507. it being the same year that *Giseflicus* whom he had by his Concubine, striving to possess the Kingdome, was expelled out of it by *Theodoricus*, who having taken upon him the tuition and Guardianship of *Amalaricus*, his Nephew, he ruled Spain, and all the other Dominions of the *Wisigoths* 15 years, by Governours and Deputies, as *Isidorus* relates.

The divine providence gave to *Chlodoveus*, above all other Princes of the World, in those dayes such happy and joyfull success, as oftentimes by miracles, his wars were confirmed to be guided of God, such as are recorded by (b) *Gregory* of Turine, amongst which is that remarkable thing: That hastning against *Alaricus*, having encamped near the River *Vigenna*, he found a shallow place by the direction of a Hind that passed over the River before him, through which he transported his Army to the other side, and after this Victory preparing to besiege *Engoulesme*, the walls of the City falling down of their own accord, gave him an easy entrance into the City: (c) Which things being known. The Emperour *Anastasius* the year following, the victory of *Vales*, in the year of his Consulat, sent a standard to *Chlodoveus*. And he went in procession in St. *Martins* Church at Turine, under whose protection and help he thought he was come to so great an honour, with his belt, his Purple Gown, and his Diadem. Then coming to Paris, there he established his Throne in the year of our Lord 507, with so happy successes.

*Cassiodorus* saith, that in the year of Christ 508. the next year after the *Volcladian* fight, when *Celer* and *Venantius* were Consuls, the *Franks* were overcome by *Theodoricus* King of the *Ostrogoths*, and that *Gallia* was taken out of their hands: there being slain above

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.

(i) Greg. 2. c.  
35.

(g) Greg. 2.  
c. 43.

*Chlodoveus*  
overcometh  
*Alaricus* and  
the Goths in  
France.

(a) Ibid. Chr.

(b) Greg. 2.  
c. 37.  
Aimo. 1. c. 19.

(c) Greg. 2. c.  
38. Aimo.

Paris is made  
the head City  
of the King-  
dome.

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.

(a) Procop. 1.  
Goth.  
(b) Cassiod.  
8. ep. 10.

(c) Procop. 1.  
Goth.

(d) Greg. 3.  
c. 5.

(e) Ado.  
Chron.  
Anno 495.  
(f) Greg. 1.  
c. 42. & 43.  
Aimo. 1.  
c. 33.  
Chlodoveus's  
death.

(g) Tom. 1.  
Con. Gall.  
(h) Greg.  
Tur. 1.3. c. 1.

(i) Procop. 1.  
Goth.

Theodorick's  
depravation  
and death.

(a) Isid.  
Chron.

above 30000 of them, as saith *Jornandes*; but of this I have found nothing amongst our own Historiographers. *Procopius* (a) relates, That the *Franks* being driven away from the siege of *Carcassone*, and having forsaken the Countrey of *Narbonnes*, obtained *Aquitania*, and that *Theodorick* let them have that part of the Countrey, because he could not easily drive them out. (b) But that they defended and kept *Arelais* from being surrendered to the *Goths*, *Cyprian* in *Cesar's* life witnesseth it.

(c) Neither may I omit what our Historiographers themselves have not mentioned, whereof *Procopius* hath spoken; That the *Franks* made a League offensive with King *Theodorick* against the *Burgundians*, and that the *Goths* delaying the time purposely, at length arrived when the fight was ended, and so without receiving any losse or detriment, they divided the spoyle with the *Frank*, equally tharing the Kingdom, which it's like came to passe about the 508 year of Christ, it being after the *Visigoth's* great defeat, although at that time the *Burgundian* Kingdom was not utterly extinct out of *France*, (d) for *Gundebald* being defeated and dead, *Sigismund* his son kept still what remained, who hearkening to *St. Avit*, the Bishop of *Vienne*, he changed his *Arrian* heresie for the *Catholike* faith.

(f) At this time *Clodoveus* raging against his nearest friends, put them almost all to death; and at last in the 45th year of his age, and the 30th of his reign, 112 years after *St. Martin's* death, as *Gregorius* saith, he dyed in *Paris*, which seemeth to be the 5th of Christ, when *Secundinus* and *Felix* were Consuls; for whom *Felix* was Consul, upon the 6th of July, it's remarked, That *Chlotheus* convoked the (g) first Synod at *Orleans*.

(i) His four sons divided equally his Kingdom amongst themselves, as then was the custome. *Theodoricus* whom he had of a Concubine, kept the seat of his Kingdom at *Metz*, *Clodomirus* at *Orleans*, *Clotharins* at *Soissons*, and *Childebert* at *Paris*.

(i) *Theodorick* the King of the *Ostrogoths*, degenerating in his latter dayes from his first laudable and good qualities wherewith he was endowed, as we have said, into cruelty; he put to death *Symmachus*, and his son in law, who were both accused of a false crime; which deed having perpetrated, as he had the head of a huge fish set before him at Supper, he imagined that he saw *Symmachus's* head; and being affrighted by this dreadful sight, he soon after dyed, 35 years after the death of *Odoacer*, in the year of Christ 528, being the 564th year of *Spain*, as (a) *Isidorn* supposeth.

CHAP.

## CHAP. III.

The Ecclesiastical Affairs under Anastasius, and the other Princes, from the Year of Christ 491, unto 527.

THE Churches estate could not but be very full of trouble under an Emperour, who was such an opposite enemy to the Catholick parties.

*Anastasius*, of the number of the (b) *Acephalians* and *Hesitants*, and also adhering to the *Manicheans*, gave liberty to every one to profess what opinion he would: And he mortally hated the Catholick Bishops, expelling *Euphemius* Bishop of *Constantinople* out of his seat, having oftentimes laid snares for him; in whose place was ordained *Macedonius*, (c) Anno 495, in the 5th year of *Anastasius's* Empire, who subscribed to *Zenon's Henoicism*; and for this cause the Catholicks refusing his company, suffered much.

At that time was the Church of *Constantinople* separated and divided from the Society of the Roman-See, because the Bishops would not blot out of the sacred Tables of *Constantinople*, *Acacius's* name, who did dye in a Schism and heresie, or durst not: whom to recall to their duty and concord, the Pontiffs of Rome omitted nothing. First (d) *Gelasius*, who in the 492 year of Christ succeeded Pope *Felix*: (e) He the year following did in vain persuade *Euphemius* and *Anastasius* by the means of *Fausus* Master of the Offices, sent to *Constantinople* by *Theodorick*: Then *Anastasius*, who succeeded to *Gelasius* in the Papal office, in the 496 year of our Lord, and also *Symmachus*, who succeeded *Anastasius* in the 498 year, did all endeavour to obtain it; but it was so impossible to persuade the Emperour *Anastasius* to peace and unity, that on the contrary, he poured forth the pestilence of his breach and dissension upon the Catholike Church, which exhorted him to love and reconciliation: *Festus*, a certain Roman Senatour, being sent by *Theodorick* to *Constantinople*, having secretly promised to *Anastasius* the Emperour, that *Anastasius* the Pontiff of Rome should subscribe to *Zenon's Henoicism*; as he returned to Rome, and found Pope *Anastasius* dead, *Symmachus* being already by a legal election ordained, some certain factious persons being corrupted with money, opposed to him another Pope called *Lawrence*, in the year of Christ 498; whence arose murders and disboistnesses: which to prevent and remedy, the decision of the whole controversy, (according to *Odoacer's* law) was referred to the King, (who was *Theoricus*); he gave sentence in the behalf of *Symmachus*: So this burning, a little quenched, flamed out the more soon after: (a) Therefore in the year 501, and some following, were held several Synods at Rome about it, by King *Theodorick's* command; and *Lawrence* in the same year 501 was condemned. But the year following, *Odoacer's* Law was abrogated, by which he had forbid-

M m den

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.

(b) Evag. 3.  
c. 30. & 31.  
The Emperour  
*Anastasius* an  
Hercetick.

(c) Marcell.  
Theoph.  
Theod. Lib. 2.

The Schism  
of the Church  
of Constantinople  
because of  
*Acacius*.

(d) Anast.  
(e) Gelas.  
ep. Tom. 2.  
Conc.

The Schism  
of Rome under  
Pope  
*Symmachus*.

(a) Tom. 4.  
Conc. in Syn-  
odis temporis  
*Symmachi*.

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 517.

(b) Theoph.

Severus the  
Heretick's be-  
ginning.

(c) Marcell.  
Evag. 3.  
ch. 32.

(d) Marcell.  
(e) Anast.  
Biblioth.

(a) Hormisdas  
epist. tom. 2.  
Concil.  
The Peace of  
the Church  
mediated by  
Justinus.

(b) Suggestio  
legatorum  
ad Hormisd.  
Tom. 2. Conc.

(c) Lib. cont.  
Mocia. p. 165.

(d) Evag.  
(e) Evag. 4.  
ch. 4.  
Severus in-  
fected i. gypt.  
(f) Liberat.  
c. 19. Leont.  
de sectis.  
Act. r. & 10.  
Vic. Tunun.

den the election of the Roman Pontiff without the King's command; herein, above all others, was to praised the endeavour of *Eusebius* of *Tichick*, who gallantly pleaded *Symmachus*'s cause against the Schismatics: *Anastasi*us in the mean time endeavouring to amplify and spread his heresie, brought in every one; therefore did he admit into *Constantinople*, *Xenaya*, Prince of the *Manichees* in the (b) 506th year of Christ, and in the 509th year he received *Severus* of the *Acephalians* sect, a notorious person, with some 200 Monks coming along with him, and entertained them all very honourably: And this was the beginning of that filthy *Severus*, who in the year (c) 513, possessed by violence the Antiochian Bishoprick, out of which *Flavianus* because of his constant zeal for the Catholick profession had bin turned out, and he attempted to bring all them of the East to the condemnation of the Chalcedonian Synod: but he turned out of their places those Catholique Bishops, who opposed to him first *Elias* Bishop of *Jerusalem*, then (d) *Macedonius* in the 511th year of Christ.

(c) Pope *Symmachus* being taken out of this world, *Hormisdas* who was elected in his place, endeavoured as much as he could, to re-unite into one communion both the Churches, by the means of General *Vitelian*, who for that cause had taken up arms against *Anastasi*us; but he deceived them both by his old craftiness.

(a) He being dead, and *Justinian* a most Religious Prince governing the Empire, *Hormisdas* obtained what he had so earnestly endeavoured in the year of our Lord 519, having sent Embassadors to *Constantinople*, amongst whom *Germanus* of *Capua* was a very godly man, and therefore by their means and labour was condemned the memory of *Acacius*, *Euphemius*, and *Macedonius*, with all other hereticks; and also of *Zenon* and *Anastasi*us both Emperors, and there was a full peace concluded, and renewed unity by the East Countrey Churches with the See of *Rome*, (b) which as *Hormisdas*'s Embassadors went to declare and proclaim along the Countrey: amongst them was one *John* a Bishop of *Thessalonica*, who was cruelly and ignominiously entreated by the people of *Thessalonica*, who were of the faction of *Dorotheus* Bishop; for which cause *Dorotheus* being warned to appear before *Justinus*, the Judges being bribed, he escaped with a small punishment. This discord of the East and West Churches lasted almost 40 years, as

(c) *Facundus* writes, that is, reckoning exactly 36 years, which being numbred from the 484th year of Christ, at which time Pope *Felix* anathematized *Acacius*, unto the 519th of Christ, do belong unto the 6th of *Hormisdas*.

(d) Then *Justin*e by Edicts and punishments restrained the Hereticks, and restored the Catholick Bishops, he commanded *Severus*'s tongue to be pulled out of his mouth, because he had usurped by robbery the Bishoprick of Antioch; but he fled with *Julian* Bishop of *Halicarnassus* into Egypt, (e) the first year of *Justin*e's Empire, in the month of September, and there spread the contagion of his error, (f) insomuch, that at that time there was

divers

divers divorcements and separations of that sect in Alexandria, some of them affirming the body of Christ to be corruptible, as *Severus*; and others incorruptible, as *Julian* of *Halicarnassus*. *Timothy* of *Alexandria* followed *Severus*; and *Julianus* was followed by *Themistius* his Deacon, who separating himself from *Timothy*, brought forth the new heresie of the *Agnostians*; hence arose the division of the *Corrupticolites*, that is, that held Christ's body corruptible; and of the *Incorrupticolites*, which held Christ's body to be incorruptible, or of the phantasticks.

(g) There also arose in *Constantinople* an idle question by the Monks of *Strythia*, Whether any mention might be made of the Trinity; concerning which thing the Catholicks felt not a little at variance amongst themselves. (a) *Maxentius* was one of those Monks, who made his apology against the Pontiff *Hormisdas*'s Epistle, wherein he with his Companions was remarked.

(b) Now as *Justin*e was afflicting and tormenting the Hereticks, and especially the Arrians, whose Churches he joynted to the Catholicks: *Theodoricus* an Arrian Prince taking it ill, he sent Pope *John* who had succeeded *Hormisdas*, in the year 513, to *Justin*e, that he would abstain from farther wronging and injuring the Arrians, threatening, That if he did not do it, that he would reciprocally rage with cruelty all Italy over. The Emperour received most honourably the Pontiff, (c) and he the first of all the Emperours received of him the honour of Imperial Majesty. *Justin*e being overcome by his prayers, he desisted from farther persecuting the Arrians, if we may believe *Miscella* the Deacon; but this *John* himself saith quite otherwise, in his second Epistle, because that being then returned to *Rome*, he was cast into prison, where worn out with grief, he dyed at *Ravennes* the 12th of June, as *Anastasi*us saith, Anno 526; at which time also *Theodoricus* put to death by the sword *Boetius* and *Symmachus*, who dying 90 dayes after *John*, he seemed to a certain Fryer cast down into Hell headlong, (d) as *St. Gregory* relates in his Dialogues.

#### CHAP. IV.

Of Excellent Persons, who by their Piety and Learning adorned and enriched that Age.

IN that Age *Fulgentius* for Piety and Learned Divinity carried it above all others, (e) who went to *Rome* the same year that *Theodoric* entered into it, by *Cassiodorus*'s account, being the year of our Lord 500; but being made Bishop of *Rupes*, he was banished with others by King *Thrasamund* into *Sardinia*, and then after *Thrasamund*'s death in the (f) 512th year of Christ, he returned; after that *Hilderic*, *Hunrick*'s son, had restored peace to the Churches of *Africa*. *Ferrand Diaconus*, a most notable writer in those dayes was his disciple.

Anno 491  
of Christ,  
to 527.

(g) Epist.  
Hormif.  
Tom. 2.  
Conc.

(a) Tom. 4.  
Bibl. P. P.

(b) Marcell.  
Theoph.  
Diac. 15.  
Greg. Pop. 3.  
Dial. Niceph.  
17. c. 9.

(c) Anast.  
Bibl.

*Theodoric*'s  
cruelty.

(d) Greg. 4.  
Dial.

(e) Vita Fulgi  
apud Sur.  
Jan. 1.

(f) Ibid.  
Chron.

Anno 491  
of Chrſt,  
to 527.

(a) Tom. 1.  
Conc. Gall.

(b) Floard.  
l. 2. c. 21. &  
18.

(c) Tom. 1.  
Conc. Gall.  
p. 274.

(d) Tom. 1.  
Conc. Gall.

(e) Marianus  
Scorus Med-  
ſingh. in SS.  
Hiber.

(f) Cyril in  
vita S. Sab-  
bas.

(g) Niceph.  
17. c. 4. & 5.  
Evag. 4.  
c. 6.

(h) Aim. 1.  
c. 17.  
(i) Id. & Si-  
geb. Anno  
497.

(a) Sur. 11.  
Febr. Anno 11.  
c. 24.

In France shined S. *Casarius* Bishop of *Arles*, (a) whom we read to have been one of the Council of *Agathus*, held in the 506th year of Christ, and lived unto *Vigilius's* time, of whom he received a letter in the year 538.

Also *Arcius* Bishop of *Vienna*, of whom, and by whom the *Burgundians* received the Catholic faith.

(b) Item, St. *Rhemigius* Bishop of *Rhemes*, and deservedly called, *The Apostle of the Franks*; he was invested of that Bishoprick in the 571 year of Christ, being then 22 years old, as *Hincmarus* and *Floardus* do assert; for in his (c) Epistle that he writ in the year of Christ 523, unto the three Bishops, he testifieth, That he had executed the Bishop's office 53 years already; he dyed before the 535th year, being that in this same year was held a Council at *Auxergetes*, wherein was *Flavius* Bishop of *Rhemes*; Then are *Hincmarus* and *Floardus* mistaken, in saying, that he officiated in the Bishoprick 74 years, and lived 96.

In Italy *Ennodus* Bishop of *Ticena*, whose labour and work we have above declared to have been very great against the Schismatics under Pope *Symmachus*; also then lived *Claudius* Bishop of *Vesontium*, who was in the (d) *Epaonian* Synod, held in the year 517.

(e) In Ireland, St. *Patrick* first Bishop amongst them, dyed in the year 491, being then 82 years old, as it may be gathered out of *Marianus's* account; though he himself attributes him 92 years; and others 123, or 122, as *Sigebertus*; some say that he lived 134 years, whereof he lived 60 in that Island preaching Christ.

In the East lived (f) St. *Sabbas* the Fryer, who by his Piety and holiness adorned *Palestina*, and at that time maintained the Catholic Faith against the infectious impiety of *Anastafius* the Emperour. St. *John Silentarius*, who from Bishop of *Colen* in *Armenia*, turned a Monk, was his disciple.

(g) Two *Zofimus's* are reckoned amongst the Worthies of that Age, one living solitary in *Phoenicia*, and the other in a certain Monastery in *Palestina*, who both foresaw from God that calamity that befell *Antioch* in *Justinus's* time.

In Gallia, (h) *Launomarus* of *Carneton*, and (i) *Maximinus* of *Orleans*, were a great honour to the Fryeries; *Maximus* built the *Mician's* Monastery near to the City, he was St. *Euspicius's* Nephew. *Clodoveus* as he went first to *Orleans*, brought them both thither along with him, as writes *Aimoinus*; *Sigebert* calls that Monastery of the *Marians*, *Maximus's* Monastery; and *Aimoinus* calls it, the Monastery of the *Initians*, that is, the *Micians*, and retains still the name; also *Avitus* and *Carilefus*, *Maximus's* disciples. (a) Then *Severinus* the Abbot, who healed King *Chlodoveus* of a grievous sickness at *Paris*, in the year 508; *Aimoinus* calls him the Abbot of the *Aganlian* Monastery; but it's not like, that it was already built then, because that afterward it was built by *Sigismund* King of the *Burgundians*, St. *Avitus* being the Author of

it,

it, as *Ado* of *Vienna* writes; (b) St. *Equitius* flourished in Italy about the same time.

*Capinodorus* and *Beatus* have obtained great honour of sincerity, virtue and excellent doctrine under *Theodorick* King of Italy: (c) *papeſior* Bishop in *Africa* did write to Pope *Hormisdas* concerning the Chronicles of the Kings; also *John Maxentius*, one of those Monks of *Scythia*, of whom is here above made mention, hath presumed to write (d) against Pope *Hormisdas*, who seems somewhat altered with the *Eutychian* mist.

(e) Virgin St. *Genoveſa*, the Patroness of the *Parisians*, yea of all the *Franks*, is said by *Sigebertus* to have dyed in the year that the first Synod was kept at *Orleans*, being the last year of *Chlodoveus's* reign, and of our Lord 511, the being fourscore years old; and by this, her birth will appear to be about the year 431, and that will be more probable that *Beda* faith of St. *German* and *Lupus's* pilgrimage, and also *Sigebert*, that it was in the year 446, and not as *Prisper* faith 429, but (f) *Aimoinus* faith, That she attained to (f) *L. 1. c. 4.* *Clabarius*, and *Childebertus's* days.

## CHAP. V.

Of *Justinian the Emperour*, and of those things that came to passe during his Empire in the East, where it's spoken of the utter destruction of the Vandals power in Attick; and of the Gothick warr.

Anno 527 of Christ, unto 565.

WHEN *Marctium* was Consul, (a) as it is taken from the Records of all Annals, that is, in the 527 year of Christ, *Justinian*, in the month of April, his Uncle being alive; in the month of August, after his death, being already of age; for he was (b) either 45, (c) or 44 years old, governed the Empire. (d) Although *Procopius* thinks, that he was much younger, when he faith, That as *Justin* ruled the Empire *quodam* *modo*, he attained to the Government of the Common-wealth; he was a Prince of divers qualities, and indued with virtues, as well as besotted with vices; for he was vehemently zealous for Piety and Religion; the which he hath testified by several Edicts of his own, for the preservation and propagation of the Catholic Faith, and Ecclesiastical Government; but he at last fell into *Eutychius's* error, then all his life-time he was defiled with the spots of extortion, covetousness, and unfaithfulness; (e) *Procopius* in his work called *anecdota*, that is to say, *Suppressed*, declares that he was unjust in many and horrid things; the which he durst not have done in *Justinian's* days against the people, wherein he declares something of *Justinian*, *Theodora*, and *Belisarius*, to be wondered at, not so much as known or believed by the vulgar. None can dissent from him touching *Theodora*, *Justinian's* Wife, (for

Theophrast

Anno 527  
of Chrſt,  
to 565.

(b) Greg. p. 1.  
dialog. 1. 1.  
(c) Epit.  
Horm.

(d) Extat in  
Bibl. pat.

(e) The Life  
of S. Gen.  
apud Sur.  
Jan. 3.

(a) Marcel.  
Vid. Tun.  
Chr. Alex.

(b) Zon.  
(c) Onufrius.  
(d) Procop.  
Anecd.  
p. 29.

(e) Procop.  
in Anecd.  
p. 17.

Anno 527  
of Christ  
to 565.

*Theophanes* is mistaken to say that she did marry *Justinus*, when he saith that he was an impotent, covetous, lascivious, and Heretick woman: for from vile and scenick Arts, and by her whorish lucre she became the Emperours legitimate wife by reason of her great beauty, whom *Justinian* esteeming and loving above reason, committed many things as well to the detriment of the Church, as Republick, but its not convenient in this place to touch farther his private qualities and inclinations.

(a) Procop. 1.  
Pers.

Many and great were the wars in this Emperours dayes. (a) First the *Perſian* war which was undertaken by *Justinian* in the beginning of his Empire, in the behalf of the *Laziceans*, (which are the people of *Cholchos*) their king having embraced the Religion of the Romans with their alliance.

(b) Theoph.

(b) To this War was *Belisarius* sent General Anno five hundred twenty nine, who having but doubtfully acted the matter, he was called back the five hundred thirty one year of our Lord by *Justinian* to the war against the *Vandalls*, and the year, following at the (c) 11th Indiction, he concluded a peace with the *Persians* (d) in the sixth year of his Empire, and yet upon the condition that both should war against *Lazica*. In that same year arose up in *Constantinople*, a most dangerous sedition against the Emperour, whom the vulgar and commons called *Nika*, from a Dice. (e) By this seditious people, was *Hypatius* the Senatour created Emperour with *Pompey* and *Probus* his kinsmen, who were all three the Emperour *Anastasius*'s Nephews. *Justinian* doubting of his safe escape, by *Theodora*'s advice he fortified the Pallace, and in a short time by *Belisarius* and *Narsetes* he suppressed the muriny, having killed in (f) one day, being the 19th of January, 35000, or, as *Procopius* saith, 30000 of them. (g) Then were many Churches overthrowen, which *Justinian* mended afterwards, and chiefly *St. Sophies* Temple which he, in the 10th year of his Empire, began with exceeding great cost, to re-edifie.

(c) Marcell.  
(d) Procop. 1.  
Pers.

(e) Marcell.  
Theoph. Chr.  
Alex. Procop.  
1. Pers.  
A violent sedition against Justin.

(f) Theoph.

(g) Procop. 1.  
de ad. Just.

(h) Procop. 1.  
1. Pers. p. 39.  
& seq.

(h) In this sedition the rage of the people was most violent against two of *Justinianus* favourites, *Johannes Capadox* the Lord chief Justice, and *Tribonianus* the Treasurer: the last of whom though not very learned, yet he was a notable head-piece, and unreasonably greedy of money, and defiled with vices and great wickedness: and the first was born at *Pamphilia*, the most learned man of his age, and exceedingly well versed in the Law, but as avaricious and defiled with vices as the other. Wherefore he was daily wont either to make new lawes, or to abrogate those that were already. *Justinianus* being affrighted, for to condescend to the people, degraded them both of their dignities: but a while after he restored them to their former honours, (i) and *Tribonianus* having lived many years after, died invested with the same office. But *John* being turned out of all his estate, 10 years after, being the 542 year of Christ, he turned a Priest, and then he resided a time in the suburbs Church: thence being forced into Egypt, there he led a miserable life untill *Theodora*'s death, that is, unto the five

Anno 527  
of Christ, to  
565.

a) Procop. in  
line 1. 2.  
Persic.

five hundred fourty eighth year of Christ, (a) at which time *Justinian* recalled him, where he also retained a Priestly office, having a foolish hope of enjoying the dignity of *Augustus*, because of some false divinations, he at last found them to be but Chimeræes, and false imaginations, when he was thorn for a Priest, and constrained to take that Order's garments, because he had none of his own, a certain Priest named *Augustus* clothed him with his Gown and Coat.

(b) Then the *Vandalian* War began in Africk in the year 533. *Belisarius* being also Generall of the same, was ended the year following. *Geliber* ruled the *Vandals*, having slain *Hilderick* the son of *Huneric* and *Eudoxia* the daughter of *Valentinian* the third, *Belisarius* took *Carthage* at the end of that year; and the year following *Gilimer* having been besieged all that winter, came under his power, and was brought to *Justinian* to *Constantinople*, (c) when he was Consul the fourth time, by which deed *Belisarius* cleared himself of that calumny wherewith he was aspersed of usurping the Dominion of Africk, and got much honour by a kind of Triumph of a long continuance in great apparel and ceremony he walking along on foot, the captives being led before him, amongst whom was *Gilimer*, he went to *Justinian* who expected them in the Stileyard, whom *Gilimer* was forced to worship, crying aloud, *Vanity of vanity, &c.* *Belisarius* was honoured with a second triumph in the field of *Cappadocia*, but because he would not forsake the *Arians* Heresy, he was not suffered to be a Consul. The Kingdome of the *Vandalls* was utterly extinguishd ninety six years after their possession of *Carthage*, 108. years after their entry into Africk: Wherefore *Vitor Tununensis* is mistaken in saying that *Gilimer* was taken, and *Africk* freed from the *Vandals* ninety seven years after their invasion and ingresse into it.

b) Procop. in  
Vand.  
The Vandalian War.

c) Marcell.  
*Belisarius*'s  
triumph.

The Vandals  
Kingdome in  
Africa extinct.

(d) The *Vandals* after this, having retaken and recovered *Africa*; had continuall Wars with their neighbour Nations, and chiefly with the *Moors*, untill that *Salomon Spad*, a valiant man in feats of arms, who was sent thither, having suppressed the enemies, restored peace to that Province (a) the thirteenth of *Justinianus* Empire, in the year of Christ 539. (b) but two years after being forsaken by his souldiers, he was slain in the battell: and the *Barbarians* having retaken courage, being moved and irritated by the cruelty and unfaithfullness of the *Romans*, did much harm and hurt to them, giving them many routs, losses and defeats at severall times. Also at this time rose up many Tyrants and Usurpers (c) amongst whom was *Guntharus*, who had been Captain of *Salomon*'s Life-guard. He put to death *Areobinda* the Emperours kinsman, who was sent to *Africa* to govern it: he himself in the 36 day of his usurpation was slain by *Artabanes* the *Persian*, (d) in the 19 year of *Justinians* Empire.

d) Procop.  
Vand. 2. Theoph.

a) Procop. 1. 2.  
p. 151. v. 7.  
b) Procop.  
ibid. p. 154.

c) Id. Marcell.

d) Id. p. 163.  
Ver. 28.

e) Procop. 1.  
Goth. p. 76.  
Marcell. Theoph. Misc.  
Zon. Cedre.

The *Gothick* war began the (e) 9th year of *Justinians* Empire in the spring, as it may be collected out of *Procopius*, whercof this is the accompt.

*Theodorick*

Anno 527  
of Christ,  
to 561.

(j) Procop.  
lib. p. 167.  
(k) Id. p. 19.  
Joernand. de  
Iebus Get. c. 59

(h) In Asia.

(i) Procop.  
Goth.  
(k) Marcel. l.  
(l) Procop. p.  
272, Goth.

(m) Procop.  
Goth. p. 126.  
Græc.

(n) Procop. l. 3.  
Vitiges taken  
prisoner.  
(a) Procop. p.  
260, 261. Græc.  
comparat.  
cum. p. 205. v.  
23.

(b) Procop. 4. p.  
363. & seq.  
(c) Procop. p.  
270. v. 41.

(d) Procop. in  
fine. l. 4. Goth.  
(e) Procop.  
Pers. p. 32.  
v. 10.

Theodorick the King being dead, as we have said, in the 526 year of Christ: *Ashularicus* son of *Amalasuntha*, *Theodorick's* daughter, and of *Eutharicus* of the house of the *Amaleans*, reigned over the Goths, under his mothers regency, being then (f) eight years old, and (g) died the eighth year of his reign, being the 534 year of Christ: *Amalasuntha* fearing the Goths did transfer the Scepter upon *Theodaxus* son of *Amalasfrida*, *Theodorick's* sister, whereunto he being elevated above and beyond hope, and being very sloathfull and covetous of money, he put to death a most vertuous and rare woman, which had well deserved at his hands. This deed (as (h) *Procopius* saith) was done by the agitation and practise of *Theodora*, *Justinian's* wife, fearing that *Justinian* would esteem her above her self.

The Emperour being grievously moved and offended at her death, and also intending to recover Italy, being animated to it by his happy successe he had in Africk, he sends his conquering Army, (till under the command of (i) *Belisarius*) against the Goths in the year 535, at the (k) 15th indiction: beginning the war in *Sicilia* which he possessed all in the same year. And entred (l) *Syracusæ* the last day of his Consulate. The year following did the Goths chuse *Vitiges* to be their King, having put to death *Theodan* who valiantly resisted the Romans: *Belisarius* takes Rome in the 536 year of Christ, and delivereth the City afterwards, when it had been besieged by *Vitiges* (m) a year and nine dayes, near upon the Equinox of Winter, in the 538 year of our Lord: Thence *Ravenna* with *Vitiges* himself, and his Wife, being reduced under *Belisarius's* power, who having denyed to take upon him the Kingdome of the Goths as it was offered to him in the 540 year of Christ, and the (n) fifth of this Gothick war, he is called back again for to go against the Persians, and brings *Vitiges* to *Justinian*. *Idibaldus* was created King by the Goths, and after him *Eraricus*, then (i) in the year of our Lord 541. *Totilas*, *Idibaldus's* kinsman, a severe and discreet person who was indued with many excellent vertues besitting a Gallant Prince, he restored the decaying estate of the Goths in Italy, no lesse by justice and moderation, then by warlike generosity: having severall times routed and defeated the Romans, he re-took Rome, the five hundred fourty sixth year of Christ; which, *Belisarius* being again sent into Italy out of the East, took into his possession: but *Totilas* recovered it two years after.

Again in the (b) eighteenth year of this war being the 552 of Christ: *Narxes Spado* a Persian by Nation, overcame *Totilas* in battell, who flying from the fight, had his head cut off, (c) having reigned eleven years; after him *Theias* governed the Goths, who being soon after slain in battell, (d) upon the latter end of the 18th year of the wars, being the 553 of Christ, the battell was fought with the Goths. As the Gothick war was thus flaming, the Persian begun again of new in the East, (e) upon the latter end of the thirteenth of *Justinians* Empire; being the 540th year of Christ:

Christ: (f) *Vitiges* King of the Goths having induced *Cosroes* (who of himself was ready enough, because he envied *Justinian's* prosperous successes in Africk and Italy) to break and violate his peace with the Romans, having sent to him two Priests of *Liguria* (g) upon the latter end of the 4th year of the Gothick-war, which was the 539 year of Christ. Therefore the year following *Cosroes* having over-run *Syria*, he took *Antioch* and burnt it, and waited, destroyed and burnt the Countrey, all about the Roman borders, as if it had been in time of peace, not being fortified with any garrisons: At length cessation of arms was agreed upon for five years (h) about the 545 year of Christ, and the 19 of *Justinian*; so that the War in *Cholcos* was very slowly carried on: (i) Then the five years of cessation being ended, five other more were added to them in the 551 year of Christ, to the greater ignominy and shame of the Romans, who were constrained to pay tribute to the Persians.

(k) Then reigned in *Lazica*, (which is *Cholcos*) *Gubazes*, an intimate friend to the Roman, who being envied by *Martinus* and *Isidus*, both *Justinian's* Captains, because he had accused them to the Emperour of sloathfulness, being himself falsely accused, was killed by treachery at *Bessa*; which fact alienated the minds of the *Colchians*, and made them to joyn themselves to the Persians, in the year of Christ 455, as (a) *Agathias* saith; (b) Then *Tzathes* being given by *Justinian* to the *Lazians* for their ninth King; the Persians were overcome in a great battell, wherein were killed ten thousand of them. *Nathoragan* the General of the Persian Army being called back by *Cosroes*, had his skin pull'd off for his ill successe and bad government of that Military Expedition.

(c) About the time of this victory was brought into question by the Romans, *Gubazes's* murder, and the authours of it were punished. (d) *Cosroes* afterwards agreed with the Romans touching *Cholcos*, that whatever any of the two had of it, he should in the mean time possesse it, untill a more full and certain peace were agreed upon, (e) which was at last concluded 17 years after in the year of Christ 562.

(f) In the mean time, the *Hunns* made several excursions into *Thracia*, and having layd a strong garrison near to the City, they plundered and pillaged far and near, (g) especially in the 558th year of Christ: when the Emperour being then wearied out with age and lingering in his life, he wholly applied himself to rare buildings, and used all means to have and settle peace, casting off and neglecting all military care. ( ) At last, by *Belisarius's* counsel (who also was grown ancient) and valour, the Barbarians being suppressed by a great defeat, came to nothing, entering amongst themselves into a Civil Warr, they by it did utterly undo themselves.

(i) *Theodora* the Emperesse dyed the 14th year of the Gothick Wars, in the year of Christ 548, and of *Justinian's* Empire the 22, in the month of June, as *Theophanes* saith; but *Justinian* be-

Anno 537  
of Christ,  
to 561.

(f) Procop.  
Intr. l. 2.  
Pers. &  
Goth. 2.  
(g) Procop. 2.  
Goth. p. 244.  
ver. 5.

(h) Colligatur  
ex Procop. in  
fine 2. Persic.  
p. 90. v. 30.  
(i) Procop. 4.  
Goth. p. 343.

(k) Agath. l. 3.  
p. 60. Gr.

(a) Lib. 2.  
p. 62.  
(b) Agath. l. 3.  
p. 85.  
ib. p. 100.

(c) Agath. l. 4.  
p. 128.

(d) Agath. ib.  
p. 137.

(e) Theoph.

(f) Agath.  
l. 5. p. 150.  
ib.  
(g) Theoph.

(h) Agath. ib.  
p. 239.

(i) Procop. 2.



Anno 527  
of Chr. B.  
to 565.

(k) Evag. 4.  
ch. 39.

(l) Vita S.  
Eutych.

(m) Chron.  
Alexan. l.

Thcoph.

(n) Act. 4.  
p. 45.

The way how  
to make Silk.

(a) Procop.  
Goth. p. 345.

Zonar.

(b) Theoph.

ing full of age, dyeth in the 565 year of Christ, being then infected with that heresie (k) which denied, that Christ's flesh could suffer any thing, or be corrupted no more then after his resurrection; and having dejected (l) *Eutychius* a most godly and holy man out of his Bishoprick, because he would not consent with him in his opinion: He ruled the Empire 38 years and 8 moneths, as *Evagrus* saith, (m) for he dyed the 14th of November.

Pope *Agatho* extolls much the faith and piety of this Emperour, now dead, in his Epistle, (n) mentioned by the sixth Synod that was assembled during his Papacy.

In the time of his Empire some Monks who came to *Constantinople* from the *Indies*, taught the way of making silk, having brought from thence some silk-worms eggs; whereas before the Roman Merchants brought nothing but silk ready made from *Persia*, (a) which was, as *Procopius* saith, in the 25 year of *Justinian's* Empire.

*Belisarius* dyed (b) the same year that *Justinian* dyed, the 13th of March, being the 565 year of Christ, who two years before being suspected of conspiracy against the Emperour, and forbidden to go out of his house, being confined in it, was not long after reconciled, having all his estate restored to him with much honour.

## CHAP. VI.

*What things worthy came to passe in the time of the Emperour Justinian in other parts of the world, besides the Romans dominion, and of the Kings of the Franks, and of their Exploits.*

**T**He *Gothick* Affairs decaying in Italy, and at last being overthrown by the power of the Grecians, The Kingdom of the *Franks* encreased daily more and more, and by them was first the *Burgundians* Kingdom extinguishd. (c) *Sigismund*, *Gundehala's* son, he valiantly kept and defended from the *Franks* what was left to him of the Kingdom; who as he was to be esteemed and praised for changing his *Arrianism*, into the *Catholike* faith, by *St. Avitus's* exhortation; so likewise was he highly to be blamed for the murder of his innocent son, whom he had by *Theodorick's* daughter, and by his last Wife's instigation did put to death; nevertheless he blotted out this horrid crime in the *Agannenian* Monastery that he had built, by many dayes fasts and tears.

*Chlodomerus* who ruled over *Orleans* by his Mother *Chlodelis's* perswasion, declared war against him, and having overcome him in battel, he brought both him, his wife and children away in the year 527. In the mean while, *Gundomarus*, *Sigismund's* brother, recovered the Kingdom that the *Franks* had taken into their possession; The which *Chlodomerus* bearing impatiently, *Sigismund* and all his, being cast into a Well, Anno 528, he undertakes a new

The history of  
*Sigismund* of  
Burgundy.

new Expedition against the *Burgundians*, having defeated his enemies, as he advanced and ventured too much, into the thick crowd, being run through with a Spear, he dyed. The *Franks*, if we may believe (d) *Agathia*, being affrighted at their King's death, gave equal Laws and conditions of peace to their enemies, whom they had vanquishd. But our Historians relate, that they desirous to revenge their King's death, fell into such a rage, that they routed and utterly defeated them. (e) But four years after, *Childebertus* and *Clotharius* revenged their brothers death, who having expelled *Godomar*, brought the Kingdome of Burgundy to be part of the Kingdom of France.

In Spain, after the (a) death of *Theodorick* the King of the *Astrogoths*, his Tutor and Governour, which was in the year 526, as we have said above, *Amalaricus* King of the *Wisigoths* held the Scepter five years, being allied to the Kings of France, whose sister *Chlodia* he had married: As he, who was a Prince of the *Arrian* heresie, vexed her for her constancy in the *Catholique* faith, by several means and wayes; *Childebert* resolves to revenge that injury: (b) *Amalaricus* being vanquishd in battel, and preparing himself to flye, is strangled by some of his own party at *Marbonne* in the Marker-place, in the year of our Lord 531. *Childebertus* returns home, bringing a great booty and much spoyl along with his sister; which dying by the way, was buried in *Paris*.

About three years before this, (c) *Theodoricus* who reigned in the Territories of *Alets*, having called to his help his brother *Clothar*, undertook a War against the *Thoringians*, and having overcome *Hermenefridus* the King, (d) who had married *Amalaberga*, sister to *Theodorick* King of the *Ostrogths*, he added *Thoringia* to his Principality. *Clotharius* took in part of the spoyl amongst the Captives, *Radegundes* the daughter of *Bertarim* *Hermenefridus's* brother, whom he had himself slain, which he took for his wife, and having married her, he gave her leave to become a Nunne, that she might the better enjoy God.

As these Wars against their enemies were a great honour to the undertakers, so also their Civil Warrs amongst themselves bred great envy amongst their Children. (e) But chiefly *Clotharius's* murder, which he perpetrated with his own hands, with his brother *Childebertus*, for he stob'd with a knife *Theodoraldus* and *Guntharim*, the sons of *Clodomerus* their couzen-german, who was killed in the *Burgundian* Wars, the third son, *Clodovaldus* being escaped by flight, he was first admitted into the number of the Clergy; then because of his rare and excellent piety and holiness, he soon after was taken up into the heavenly Mansion, and is reckoned at *Neyen* for a Saint; which Town was upon that called by his name. *Sigebertus* hath observed this, unto the 531 year of Christ.

(f) Then the friendship of these two Kings being turned into a mortal hatred, *Childebertus* with *Theodebertus* son of *Theodorick's* brother, conspired *Clotharim's* ruine; and as both Armies were

N n 2

setting

Anno 527  
of Christ,  
to 565.

(d) Agath. 1.

(c) Greg. 3.  
c. 11.

Alm. 2. c. 7.  
Gesta Franc. 37.

Burgundy won  
by the Franks.

(a) Isidor.  
Chr. Greg. 3.  
c. 10.

(b) 164. Chr.  
Greg. 2. c. 10.  
Almo. 2. c. 8.

(c) Greg. 3.  
c. 4. & 7.

Almo. 2. c. 9.  
Sigeb. Journ.

de reb. Gett.  
(d) Greg. 1.  
c. 18, Sig.

(e) Almo. 2.  
c. 12. Gesta  
Franc. 38.

(f) Greg. 3.  
c. 18.

Almo. 2. c. 18.



Anno 527  
of Christ,  
to 05.

(a) Agath.  
l. 2.

(a) Greg.  
Tur. 3. c. 39.  
Aimo. 2. c. 19.  
The Franks  
Expedition in  
Spain.  
(c) Aimo. 2.  
c. 19.

(d) Aimo. 2.  
c. 20.

(e) Aimo. 2.  
c. 21.

(f) Procop.  
l. 4. p. 358.  
vide l. 3.  
p. 304.  
Gre. 3. c. 32.  
Aimo. 2. c. 21.  
(g) Lib. 2.

(h) Agath.  
l. 1.

(i) Agath.  
l. 2. p. 31.

(a) Agath.  
p. 34. &c.

letting themselves in battel-array, there arose a suddain tempest with great showers, hail, thunder and lightning, which defeated both Armies; and so God hearkening to their Mother *Clotildis*'s prayers stoppt the stream of blood in Civil Wars. I think that (a) *Agathias* the Historian had respect to this, when he praiseth the *Franks*, that when they were divided into more Kingdoms then one, if there was any dissention between them, and had taken up arms, they were wont to end the quarrel in that very Precinct by a mutual discourse, rather than by a battle. (b) Then soon after *Clotarum* and *Childebertus* having renewed their league and friendship, fall both upon Spain; the greatest part of which, as *Gregorius* saith, they conquered. (c) They also attempted to besiege *Saragossa*; of which siege the Inhabitants freed themselves, giving to *Childebert* St. *Vincent's* garment, in whose honour the King built a Cathedral in the Suburbs, which is now called St. *Germanus*; concerning which (d) we read, that the Charter was given in the 48 year of his reign, being the 559 of Christ: now this Spanish Expedition was in the year 542, (e) according to *Sigebert*.

(f) At the same time that the *Franks* glittered their arms over Spain, they extended their rage beyond the *Alps*. (g) *Theodebertus*, *Theodorick's* son, *Totilas* reigning over the *Goths*, and being engaged in the Roman Wars, he brought under his subjection *Liguria*, the *Alps Cottiae*, and part of the *Venetians* Territories; and departing thence, he left *Bucellinus*, who as our Chronicles record, did over-run all Italy and Sicily: But *Procopius* saith, That *Theodebertus* in the last year of *Vitigis's* reign, being accounted the 539 year of Christ, as *Bucellinus* was besieged in *Ravenna* by *Belisarius*, broke into Italy with an Army of an hundred thousand men, and that being beaten by the Romans, and the plague being very hot and violent there, he was forced to retire himself.

(h) After his death *Theobaldus* his son in the end of the Gothick Warr, being the 554 year of Christ; he commanded his Souldiers under the conduct of *Leutharis* and *Bucellinus*, to the Italian Expedition, (i) who, *Narsetes* no wayes resisting them, being gone as far as *Samnium*, in the year 555, divided their Army: *Bucellinus* (so he is called by *Agathias*) being advanced into the *Tyrrhenian* borders, he went as far as to the Sicilian Sea; there were in their Armies both *Franks* and *Alemans*; but the *Franks* who were of the same Religion with the *Romans* in plundering, abstained from sacriledge; but the *Alemans* being Gentiles, plundered all, not making any difference betwixt things common, and things holy, (a) having gotten a great booty. *Leutharis*, Summer drawing on, retired himself into the River *Poe*: *Bucellinus*, having engaged his faith to the *Goths*, and hoping to be admitted their King, remained with thirty thousand men, and was defeated by eighteen thousand Romans, commanded by *Narsetes* near the River *Castellum*, not far from *Capua*, all the whole Army, together with *Bucellinus*, being slain, but five onely. When *Leutharis* having

having lost the greatest part of his Army and booty, fell into a frenzie, and dyed of it. This overthrow was in the 555 year of Christ, the next year after *Theobaldus's* death, who, as we have declared, dyed the 554, and (c) *Agathias* recordeth it thus.

Now *Theodatus* King of the *Goths*, at the beginning of the Gothick war, as (d) *Procopius* saith, granted to the *Franks* that part of *Gallia*, which the *Goths* held, for to get them of his side; And *Vitigis* the year following ratified it, having drawn from thence the Gothick forces; (e) And *Justinian* in the year 548, desiring also the friendship of the *Franks*, confirmed them by his decree the possession of that Province, and from that time forth they celebrated at *Arles* the Knights Combat, and did bear pieces of gold, out of French metals, not as other Nations, even as the *Perthians* with the stamp and effigies of the Emperour, but coined it with their own proper stamp.

Now that I may return to our discourse of *Clodoveus's* Children, the three brothers and their children being all dead, there remained *Clotbarius* alive, who governed the Principality of the *Franks* somewhat above two years, and the last year of his reign he burnt (f) *Chramnus*, whom he had begotten of his Concubine, with his wife and children, being cast into a shed, in which they were all shut up, because of his constant rebellion and contumacy; then he dyed in the 51 year of his reign, and upon his death-bed, he uttered these words worthy of memory; Oh! what King thinkest thou the King of Heaven is, who thus destroyeth great Kings? (a) His four sons did again divide the Kingdome of the *Franks* between themselves, The Kingdom of *Childebertus* and his Throne of *Paris* fell to *Charibertus*, and to *Guntramms* *Clodomer's* Kingdom, who had his Throne at *Orleans*; and to *Clipericus* his father *Clotbarius's* Kingdom, who had his Throne at *Soissons*; and to *Sigebert*, *Theodorick's* Kingdome, whercof *Rhemes* was the head City.

*Procopius* mentioneth *Theodebert* in the fourth of his Gothicks; and he writes, that his sister was married to *Hermenisclus* Prince of the *Varnes*, whom he asserts to be divided from the French by the River *Rhine*: And that after his death his son in law *Rhadafis* married her by her Father's Will, who before was betrothed to the King of England his sister, which with an Army from her brother fell upon the *Varnes*; and having defeated their Army, and taken *Rhadafis* prisoner, she constrained him to marry her, and to reject his Mother in law.

Anno 557  
of Christ  
to 565.

(c) Lib. 2.  
c. 47.

The Franks  
obtain all what  
the Goths had  
in France.

(d) Procop. 1.  
Got. Sig.

A. 530.

(e) Procop.  
l. 3. Goth.

p. 204.  
Clotbarius  
reigneth alone.

(f) Greg.  
l. 4. c. 13, 16;

17. 20.

Aimo. 2. c. 30;  
Appen.  
Marcell.

(a) Greg. l. 4.  
c. 21.

Aimo. l. 2.  
c. 37.

Greg. ibid;  
c. 23.

## CHAP. VII.

The Ecclesiasticall affairs, of both the Empires, during Justinian; and of the three Chapters.

There was held a (b) Synod at *Orange*, in the year five hundred twenty nine, *Debius* the younger then being Consul, where *Casarius* of Arles was President: in this Synod was maintained and defended Christs free Grace, against *Pelagius* and his opinions.

But at *Constantinople*, *Epiphanius* the Bishop being dead, (c) *Anthimus* Bishop of *Trapenzonda*, was advanced to the place, by the practise of the Emperesse *Theodora*, addicted to the *Eutichian* party, whereof *Anthimus* was then the head: whom Pope *Agapetus* sent by *Theodatus* King of the Goths, (d) to *Justinian*, (e) having turned out of that Throne he deprived him of the Priesthood, and excommunicated him from the Christian Communion, and established *Menna* in his place in the year 536. who convoked (f) a Synod in the same year after *Agapetus*'s death, on the sixth of May, wherein *Anthimus*, *Severus* and other Hereticks were condemned, who were all banished by *Justinians* edict, their books being all burnt.

(a) The death *Agapetus* being heard of, *Silverius* the son of Pope *Hormisdas* was chosen at Rome. But *Theodora* having privily made a bargain with *Vigil* a Deacon of Rome, of restoring *Anthimus* and of nourishing other Hereticks, she took care that *Silverius* be sent by *Belisarius*, into banishment, and *Vigil* to be made Bishop of Rome in his stead, (b) in the year 538. Two years after *Silverius* being killed in the Island *Palmaria*, through miseries (c) and need, *Vigil* received the chief Bishoprick by lawfull assemblies for Election.

This man being chief Bishop, that famous controversy concerning the three heads arose, for the which the fifth Generall assembly was accomplished at *Constantinople*: the order of which thing, I will briefly explain.

(d) *Nestorius* being condemned, his favourers spread abroad books among the common people of *Theodore*, once Bishop of *Mopsuestia*, in which he so affirmed the two natures in Christ, that he might seem to give his voice for the *Nestorian* error. Of these books the Catholics disapproved among themselves a little after the Synod of Ephesus. The *Armenian* Monks withstanding *Theodore*, with many others, and among these *Rabulus* Bishop of *Edeßennum*, and then *John* of *Antioch*, and others standing for him; and also *Theodosius* the Emperour himself.

(e) Moreover *Ibas* Bishop of *Edeßennum*, the successour of *Rabulus* writ an Epistle unto *Maris* the *Persian*, wherein he reproveth *Cyrill* as well as *Nestorius*, as also *Rabulus*. But he greatly commended *Theodore*. The Councell of *Chalcedon* followed, in which

(a) Tom.  
Conc. Gall.

(c) Liberatus  
c. 29.

(d) Marcel.  
Append.  
(e) Liberatus  
c. 21.

(f) Conc. sub.  
Mena. Tom. 2.  
Conc.  
A Synod at  
Constantinople  
under  
Menna.

(a) Liberatus  
Anast.

(b) Marcell.  
(c) Liberat.

(d) Liberat.  
ch. 10. See  
Fac. m. Her.  
The Hist. of  
three certain  
heads, from  
the writing of  
*Theodore* of  
*Mopsuestia*.  
(e) The Coun-  
cil of Chalced.  
2. of the Epist.  
of Ibas.  
(f) Couns. of  
Chalced. act.  
10. Synod. 5.  
Collat. 1. Fa-  
cun. 6. ch. 3.

being by some required for judgment, and having been freed in the *Berytenian* assembly in the year 448, he is again received, after he pronounced a curse on *Nestorius* and *Eutyches*, and then his Epistle was read, and so far tolerated, that there was no hereticall opinion in it. For although he sharply touched *Cyrill*; yet the discord being as yet new between the Eastern and Egyptian Bishops, there seemed a necessity of pardoning that very thing. In the same Councell *Theodore*, who had been deposed by *Discolus* in the Ephesine robbery, was admitted into his seat, who indeed, that grudge which I have spoken of, flaming between *John* of Antioch, and *Cyrill*, had set forth a stinging Commentary against the twelve curses of this man.

(a) After these things, some Palestine Monks being urgent, and together with these *Pelagius* the Deacon of the Roman seat and Chanceller, *Origen* was by the decree of *Justinian* condemned, to which *Mennas* of Constantinople, and *Pelagius* subscribed; as also *Vigil* himself the Roman Bishop, and other Patriarchs. Which thing sorely offended *Theodore* Bishop of *Casarea*, the defender of *Origen*, and the *Acephalians*, with whom *Pelagius* had a grudge, This man by reason of that favour with which he prevailed with the Emperours, was the Author, that for the reconciling the *Acephalians* with the Catholics, *Theodore* of *Mopsuestia*, who was praised in the letter of *Ibas*, should be condemned, together with the letter itself, and the books of *Theodore* against *Cyrill*, which thing when it had greatly pleased *Justinian* through an hope of renewing concord, many Catholics came between, supposing, those three being condemned, the authority of the *Chalcedonian* Synod would be weakened, wherein both *Ibas* with his Epistle had been approved, and *Theodore* restored unto his seat. Yet the Emperour prevailed, and in the year 546, he set forth a book in which those three brief heads he condemned, and constrained *Mennas* and the rest of the Patriarchs to subscribe thereto. But he (b) provoked *Vigil* the Bishop of Rome to Constantinople: and a long time turning, drew him by force into his opinion. For the year following, he set forth a decree, which is called a [judgment] wherein, the reverence of the assembly of *Chalcedon* being preserved, he condemned those three heads. Furthermore, *Justinian* pursuing, that he might utter a condemnation without any mention of the assembly, *Vigil* refused, and abode with an unconquered courage, against all threatnings and reproaches.

(c) *Justinian* that he might put an end to that controversy, proclaimed a general Councell, which was solemnized, the fifth in order, at Constantinople, in the year 553. *Vigil* crying out against it, who took to him a patronage of the three brief heads against the Emperour. Nevertheless those same were condemned by the fifth Synod, and (d) *Origen* moreover, together with *Didymus* and *Evagrius*, were laid under excommunication. *Vigil* because he would not subscribe to his decree, was cast forth into banishment, and many others were vexed for the same cause,

Anno 527  
of Christ,  
to 567.

Of the writings of Theodoret against Nestorius.

(a) Liberatus  
ch. 23.

(b) Prochus mentions it b. 3. p. 279. Vigil hardly condemneth the three heads.

(c) The fifth Syn. Tom. 3. Counc. The fifth assembly.

(d) Cyr. in Sabba with Sur. 8. Decemb.

(a) c pe.

Anno 529  
of Christ,  
to 565.

(a) Vica. Tun.  
Facund Her.  
(b) Greg.  
Pope 1. Ep.  
24. & in other  
places here  
and there.  
The death of  
Vigill.  
(c) Anas. Si-  
gcb.

(a) especially the Africans, and Illyrians, who stuck stiffly in the profession of the three heads. (b) But the Synod being confirmed at length by the agreement of the Roman seat, held its place amongst Oecumenicall, or universall assemblies. *Vigil* being by the endeavour of *Narses* called back from banishment, while he is returning to Rome, he died with a discale of the stone after the 13. of C. of *Basil*, saith the Appendice of *Marcellinus*, or the 17th, as *Vistor* hath it. Whereof the first is, of Christ 554. the last 558.

(c) *Pelagius* received this man, who shook off the suspicion of death brought on *Vigill*, by a publique oath upon the Gospels and the Crosse.

## CHAP. VIII.

*Learned and holy Men, whom the time of Justinian brought forth;  
as also Heathens who were famous in Learning.*

*Justinian* enjoying the Empire, there were famous in Learning and holiness of manners, (d) *Cassiodore* a Senatour, who, King *Theodorick* being dead, was made a Monk of the *Clasienian* Monastery.

(e) *Dionysius* a small Abbot, who framed his Circle in the year 526.

(f) *Facundus* Bishop of *Hermania*, a defender of the three heads.

(g) *Liberatus* Arch-Deacon of the Church of *Carthage*, of the same f&c.

(h) *Vistor* Bishop of *Capua*, who refused *Vistorius* the framer of the Circle of 532. years.

*Vistor* Bishop of *Tunneis* in *Africa*, a Chronicle-writer.

*Arator* a Poet, who dedicated his book to Pope *Vigill*.

(i) There were Bishops in France, famous in holiness, *Gildard*, his brother *Medard*, Bishops of *Rotbomagia* and *Suesonia*; *Agerich* of *Verdunia*. In the East *Sabbas*, in the West, *Benedict*, Abbot.

(l) It is sure, that this man lived under *Justine* and *Justinian*; the year of his death is uncertain. (m) Also *Radequandis* illustrated France with wondrous holiness, who preferred the poverty of Christ before the marriage of King *Chlotharius*, and devoted her self unto him in the Covent of *Pistavia*.

The same *Justinian* reigning, *Procopius* and *Agathias*, and also *Marcellinus* an Earl, Historians, flourished (a) Philosophers, *Damasius* a Syrian, *Simplicius* a Cilician, *Eulaminus*, a Phrygian, *Priscian* a Lydian, *Hermias* and *Diogenes* a Phænician; *Isidore* of *Gaza*, all Heathens. Who being stirred up with a report of the Persians and *Cosroes*, went into the East to see them, and being deceived of their hope, when as they had there seen their manners and Laws publicly and in private, more corrupt then among their

their own Countrymen, returned home, as *Agathias* writeth, (b) who also delivereth *Cosroes* to have then been famous, with a false commendation of learning.

Anno 565  
of Christ, to  
600.

(b) Ag. p. 62.

## CHAP. IX.

*Of Justine the younger, Tiberius, and Maurice; and a worthy History:  
what things happened in the Eastern Empire, under them.*

Anno 565 of Christ, unto 600.

*Justinus* was born of (c) *Vigilantia* the sister of *Justinian*, and *Dul-*  
*justinus* his father, he was crowned by *Europalatus* in that year wherein *Justinian* departed, in the year 565. together with *So-*  
*phias* his wife, the (d) Nephew of *Theodora*, the Wife of *Justinian*,  
He was of an apt and ready mind toward the duties of piety; but  
a stranger from warlike affairs: a lover of Laws and Justice: the  
which being decayed through the weakness or willfullness of  
Princes, through a famous example of strictness he restored; of  
whom *Cedrenus* makes mention, and it is altogether a worthy deed  
the which here also may be read.

(c) Evag. 1.  
Theoph. Zon.  
Ced. Paul. Di-  
ac. b. 16.

(d) Vica. Tun.  
Justine the  
younger.

Cedr. p. 3319.

When as the Citizens ran on every side to *Justine*, as often as he  
went forth openly out of his Pallace, to complain of the wrongs of  
the mightier sort, and he had oftentimes in vain reported of that  
thing to the Senate, A certain one of that order rising up, received  
him; If he should be made Governour of the City, and a leave of  
the Emperour might be granted him of coming to him, as often  
as he would, and through the same it should be lawfull to use his  
power, he would bring it to passe within a Moneths time, that  
there should be no injuries and complaints left in the Citie, but if  
there should be any of any one, the web being brought to him he  
should not revenge, he would perform it with the punishment of  
his head. The condition being received, a little after, a woman  
of the common people, brought the name of a certain chief man,  
who had spoiled her of all her goods by deceit, and reproach. He,  
by the command of the Governour or Lievetenant, was summoned  
to appear the second time, when as he neither had stood before  
him, and the same day he had gone to a Banquet being invited by  
the Emperour, the Lievetenant breaking in a moment into the  
Pallace, warns the Emperour sitting at the Table of the agree-  
ment, who when he had said he forbade nothing, whereby he  
might the lesse do by the Law whatsoever he would; he forth-  
with commandeth the man to be led away, and being brought be-  
fore the seat of judgment, and convicted to be punished with  
stripes: then his head being shaven, carried upon an Ass, to be  
brought through the City, and all his fortunes or estate, to be ad-  
judged to the woman. When he had begun in this, and likewise  
in other things, he struck so great a terror on all, that afterward  
they

A famous deed  
of Justine.

(d) Sigeb. in  
the year 528.

(e) See 12. of  
Doctr. times  
ch. 3. & Ap-  
pend.

(f) Facund. in  
his books.

(g) Liber in  
his Breviar.  
Tom. 8. Coun.  
(h) Sigeb.  
Bed.

(i) Sigeb. in  
the year 535.

(l) Greg. 9.  
Dial.  
(m) Greg.  
Tur. 3. Hist.  
ch. 7.

(a) Agath. 2.  
p. 65.

W  
Anno 565  
of Christ,  
to 600.  
W

they abtained from wrongs. Then he going to the Emperour, said, I have done what I had promised: do thou, if it listeth thee, make triall. *Justine* straightway proceeding, when all things were largely quiet, neither did any one any more exclaim, he conferred a Senatours dignity on the commended man, and Lieutenantship of the City, for his whole life.

The same Emperour brake a peace agreed on with the *Avarians*, their yearly tribute being denyed, not seasonably enough, in the year 566. Likewise a *Persian* peace, with a far greater damage to the Common-Wealth. (a) For a war being undertaken for an honest cause, in the year 572. he unwisely and sloathfully managed.

(b) In the year 574. the 8th of *Constantines* account, now begun from Septemb. and on its seventh day, he declared *Tiberius* Lieutenant of the Watchers and Warders, to be *Cesar*, by whom afterwards the Commonwealth was governed. For *Justine* having recieved a slaughter in the East, being horribly affrighted, fell into a phrensy: (c) wherewith *Cosroes* being moved, granted a three yearstruce unto *Sophius* desiring it; So that in the mean time they strove onely in *Armenia*. There therefore, the war being renewed about the year 576, *Cosroes* was overcome (d) by *Justinus* his Captain, and was deprived of the Camp, and so great a fear took hold of him by that slaughter, that he established it by a continued law, that the King himself should not henceforward lead an Army against the *Romans*. (a) Some will have that victory to have happened, *Justinus* being dead; but *Simocrata*, *Ecagrius*, and *John Biclarisensis*, write, it was gotten, he being alive, yet *Tiberius*, who then governed all things, being the Author.

*Justine*, the disease growing heavy on him (b), on the 12th of *Constantine's* account, the 26 day of September, that is, the year 578, made *Tiberius*, of *Cesar*, *Augustus* or Emperour; and the October following, the 4th day, he departed from the living, when he had reigned 13 years, and lesse than one moneth.

(c) *Tiberius* therefore, by birth a *Thracian*, began to reign in the year 578; whom all Historians do diligently set out for his gentleness, justice, bounty, piety, and other virtues becoming an Emperour. In the beginning of his rule he reduced *Sophius*, hiddenly preparing ambushes for him, unto a private condition, (i) he slew the *Perians*, *Mauricius* being Captain, proudly refusing a Roman peace; and those things, which, *Justinian* being Emperour, were possessed by them, he in the fourth year of his Empire received. *Diocorus* writeth, the treasures of *Narses* were found by him. He reigned after the death of *Justine* 3 years, and about 10 moneths. For in the year 582, (e) the 15th of *Constantine's* account, the 14 day of August, he dyed of a disease: when as the day before, he had given his daughter *Constantine* unto *Mauricius*, and had ordained him his succeder, both of them being crowned.

*Mauricius*

*Mauricius*, (i) born at *Cappadocia* in the Town of *Arabisium*, is made Emperour of the Romans in the year of Christ 582, praised for his virtue and knowledge of warlike affairs. But the foul spot of covetousnesse deformed either comeliness; the which al- though at last turned unto his destruction. He successfully ordered a war undertaken with the *Perians*, *Justine* being Emperour, by his Captain *Philip* and others.

(g) The chief Victory was gotten by a Roman Captain, in the eighth year of *Mauricius*, the 7th *Constant*. account, and so in the year of Christ 589. For the which, *Hormisdas* being angry, he sent to *Baramus* their Captain a womans gown for a mock, who had fell off from that Army. In the mean time, *Hormisdas* being taken by *Indoes*, and a little after was made blind by his son *Cosroes*; and at length, because he made no end of cursing, he was killed with the beating of a club or cudgel. *Cosroes* for the partide being hated of his subjects, and *Baramus* rising up against him, fleeth unto *Mauricius*; by whom he was adopted for his son; and *Baramus*, by the endeavour of *Narses*, being overcome, he was restored into the Kingdom. Thus in the same year 589, an end was made to the *Persian* War; the which (a) *Simocrata* writeth not exactly enough, to have continued 20 years. For it was begun in the year 572, and held on 22 years.

The *Avarian* war succeeded the *Persian* war, *Chagan* King of the *Avarians*, watching an advantage; when as alio the *Sclavonians* and *Bulgarians* provoked the *Romans*.

*Comentolus* who was Captain in the *Avarian* War, by the command of *Maurice*, set (b) some thousands of seditious Soldiers lightly armed, against the *Barbarians*: the which being partly slain, partly taken, *Chagan*, a very little money being demanded for the redemption of the Captives, because the Emperour would not redeem them, he killed them all in the year 600, the (c) third *Const.* Account. *Mauricius* felt God to be angry with him for so great cruelty. Therefore, as he was religious and godly, letters being sent, throughout Monasteries, and all holy places, he commanded that God should be intreated; that he might pay the punishments of his committed offence, rather living than dead; the which, upon his desire, God granted to him.

For in the year 602, (d) 6 *Const.* Acc. in the moneth of November, *Phocas* a certain Centurion, of a ready tongue, and for that, acceptable to the common Souldiers, the Army being stirred up against *Mauricius*, he was saluted Emperour; and the 27 day of the same moneth, the third holiday, *Mauricius*, his sons being killed in his fight, he is beheaded at *Chalcedon*. But *Constantine* his wife three years after, (e) the 8. of *Const.* Acc. is slain, and together her three daughters with her.

(f) Nor any other Emperour had tryal of a more sharp fortune, or bare it more steadfastly. One speech of his in so great a torment of his sons, is taken; *Thou art righteous, O Lord, and thy judgment right.* Moreover, the Nurse hiding one of his sons as yet an Infant,

W  
Anno 565  
of Christ,  
to 600.  
W

(1) Evag. 7.  
ch. 13. Simo-  
crata.

(g) Simoc. 9.  
ch. 6. Theoph.  
Paul. Dia.  
book 17.

*Cosroes* kills  
his father.

(a) Simoc. 3.  
ch. 9.

The *Avarian*  
War.

(b) Theoph.  
Paul. Dia. 17.  
ch. 19.  
Chr. Alex.  
Zon.

(c) Theoph.  
Simoc. 8.  
ch. 11.

(d) Chron:  
Alex.

The miserable  
death of  
*Maurice*.

(e) Chron:  
Alex.

(f) Simoc.  
1. 8. c. 11.

Theoph.  
Paul. Dia.  
17. ch. 52.  
Zon. Cedi.

Anno 565  
of Christ,  
to 600.

Infant, and offering her own to death for him, *Maurice* of his own accord discovered the deceit; neither suffered he the strange child to be killed. He Reigned 20 years, three moneths, and some days.

## CHAP. X.

*What things were carried on in the west, Justin 2d, Tiberius, and Maurice being Emperours. And the first Kingdom of the Longobards in Italy; and of the three Narictes; as also of the Exarchi or chief Governours, or Lieutenants of Ravenna.*

(a) Paul.  
Vuarnef. b. 2.  
ch. 9.  
(b) The same,  
ch. 1.  
(c) Prosper.

(d) Paul.  
Vuarnef. b. 1.  
ch. 12.  
(e) The same,  
b. 2, ch. 7.  
(f) Procop.  
p. 307. & 360.  
(g) Procop.  
p. 301.  
Vuarnef. a.  
ch.

The coming of  
the Longobards  
into Italy.

(h) Vuarnef.  
2. ch. 7. & 15.  
& Paul. Diac.  
in Msc. 16.  
ch. 35.

(i) Vuarnef.  
ch. 26.  
(k) Greg.  
Turon. 4. c. 35.  
Paul. Vuarnef.  
b. 1. about the  
end, & b. 1.  
ch. 28.

(a) Greg.  
Turon. 4. ch. 35.  
(b) Vuarnef.

**T**HE Longobards, (a) so named from their long beards, when as they were before called *Vuinlians*, from thence they came (b) out of *Scandinavia*, from whence also the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Regans*, *Herulians*, *Turcilingians* came. They, (c) *Ibores* and *Aun* being Captains, *Aufanius*, and *Olybrius*, Consuls, that is, in the year of Christ 379, the *Vandals* being overcome, possessed many seats; and at length, *Audoinus* being King, which is reckoned the (d) ninth by *Paul*, invaded *Pannonia*, (e) in the year of Christ 526. A league being entered with the *Romans*, being holpen by their riches, they made prosperous battels against the *Gepides*, in the 14 and 17th year of the Gothick War, as (f) *Procopius* writeth, of Christ 548, and likewise they also came foray to the *Romans* in the same Gothick war: (g) At which time *Narses* being sent into Italy, warred with the *Goths*, their King *Totila* being slain, in the year 552, as I have minded above. But when they assaulted all Italy after the manner of beasts; and wasting all things with sword and fire, they defiled the very holy houses with whoredomes: *Narses* sent him away from him as soon as might be, into *Pannonia*. *Audoinus* then reigned over the *Longobards*, whose son *Alboinus* first came into Italy, *Justine* the second being Emperour, in the year of Christ 568, 1 *Const. Account*; in which year, Easter was celebrated on the Calends of April. So (h) *Paul Vuarnefride*. The year following, the 3d *Const. Account* entering, he vanquished almost all *Liguria*, except the Sea-Cities; entering into *Mediolan*, he besieged *Ticinum* full three years; which Town at length he enjoyed in the year 572, and afterwards roving throughout the rest of Italy, he possessed almost all places (i) besides *Rome* and *Ravenna*. This man was joyned in affinity with *Clotharim* the son of *Clodoveus*, whose daughter *Chlothinda* he had in marriage. She being dead, he married *Rosamund* the daughter of *Cunimund* King of the *Gepides*, whom he had killed with his own hand; by which daughters lying in wait, he was killed, when he had reigned three years and six moneths in *Italy*; or from his entrance he touched the seventh year, as our (a) *Gregory* hath delivered. Therefore he perished in the year 572. (b) *Rosamund* flying with the treasures of *Alboinus*, and her adulterer *Hermiget*,  
unto

Anno 565  
of Christ,  
to 600.

unto *Longinus* the *Exarch* chief Lieutenant to *Ravenna*, by his perswasion he drank poyson to her, part whereof being drank, he compelled her to drink the rest, with the drawn sword of *Hermiges*. So both the adulterers paid the punishments of their wicked parricide.

(c) *Anastasius* and *Vuarnefride* affirmeth, That the author of this breaking in of the *Longobards*, was *Narses* a Senatour, a gelded man, by whom the kingdom of the *Goths* was blotted out. For when he was by the *Romans* brought in for an accusation before *Justine*, he was commanded by reproachfull letters of *Sophia* the Emperesse to return to the spinning of wooll, as became an Eunuch; he answered, he would weave such a web for her, the which neither she, nor her husband, should ever unweave: and so called forth the *Longobards* to invade *Italy*. These things *Vuarnefride*. Which things are therefore thought to be refuted by some, because *Narses* then lived at *Constantinople*, as *Corippus* affirmeth, and because the same man afterwards resided in that City, far most dear unto the Emperours: untill by *Phocas* in the year 605, he was burnt alive, as *Theophanes* writeth. But the history of those times sheweth many of that name. For *Justinian* being Emperour, (d) *Procopius* mentioneth there were two *Narsetes*; whereof the one was a gelded man, and was now Treasurer of the common treasury the 4th year of *Justinian*, of Christ 530, by whom the affairs of the *Goths* were overthrown in *Italy*, *Totilas* being slain in the year 553, as I have shewn above. (e) And this man was a *Pers. Armenian* by birth. The other arising from thence, with his brother *Aratius* and his Mother, fell away to the *Romans* in the same 4th year of *Justinian*, and was received by the former *Narses*. Of these, *Anastasius* telleth, that the former dyed in the year of Christ 572, after he called out the *Longobards*. I have not remembered I have read of the death of the latter. *Corippus* treating of the Consulship of *Justine* the second, nameth *Narses* his Armour-bearer, who as he there singeth, was

*Of goodly shape, and hair com'd out so fine;  
And comely speech, was all of golden mine.*

This cannot be that gelded one, which was then somewhat old and mishapen. But neither was the latter of the stock of *Aratius*, unless we would think him to have been almost a child when he went over unto the *Romans*. Therefore it is not an absurd suspicion, that he was the son of this man, to whom (a) *Gregory* gave an Epistle, unless thou hadst rather he should belong unto the very father of this. Moreover, I judge the same *Narses*, the son of the latter, to have been burned alive by *Phocas*; whom they who think him to have been that famous Eunuch, do greatly erre; as amongst others, *Constance Manasses*.

That I may return to the *Longobards*, these by little and little got *Italy*; *Rome*, as hath been said, and *Ravenna* excepted; and from them

(c) *Anastasius*  
Joan. 3.  
Vuarnef.  
ch. 25.  
The History of  
Narles.

(d) *Procopius*.  
Perf. p. 25.  
Got. p. 280.

(e) *Procopius*.  
Perf. p. 25.

(a) *Greg. I. x.*  
ep. 6.

Anno 565  
of Christ,  
to 600.

(b) Paulus  
Vuarnefr. b. 6.  
ch. last.

them the name of *Longobardy* being drawn almost through the large Province of Italy, and to this day keepeth it. They reigned 206 years. For (b) the last King *Desiderius* being overcome by *Charls* the Great, king of the *Franks*, in the year 773, and shut up in *Ticinum*, the following year, the City being taken, he was brought into *France*. His son *Adelgisus* fled to *Constantinople*. Where by *Constantine*, *Copronymus*, he got the honour of a Senatourship; the which our Annals witness; and also *Paul Vuarnefride*.

Furthermore, at the same time, wherein the *Longobards* bare rule in Italy, [*Exarchs*] or dispatching-Princes held *Ravenna*. They were Greek Governours, who had wont to be sent by the Emperour from *Constantinople*; and in some sort resisting the *Longobards*, they defended there the remainder of the Empire; but through wilfulness and covetousness, they brought more hurt unto their own Citizens, than the enemies themselves.

Therefore about the year 568, (c) *Longinus* a Senatour is sent the first *Exarch* to *Ravenna*, *Narses* being removed, *Justine* the younger commanding. The last was *Eutychius*, under whom *Aistulphus* King of the *Longobards* possessed *Ravenna* by arms, (d) about the year 752. After this account, the Greek *Exarchs*, or dispatching Princes, were chief over *Ravenna*, about 185 years.

## CHAP. XI.

What things were done in France and Spain, in the mean while, from about the year 565. to 600. whereof the four sons of *Clotharius*, *Charibert*, *Chilperick*, *Sigebert*, *Gunthchramnus*, and the Prosperity of *Sigebert*, as also of *Levigild* King of Spain, *Hermenigild*, and *Ricared*.

(a) Ch. 6.

**F**rance being divided into so many parts, obeyed the four sons of *Clotharius*; as (a) we have above mentioned. The worst were *Charibert* and *Chilperick*, in whom, besides the not punishing of Luists, and liberty of them, thou mightest acknowledge nothing of a King. (b) *Sigebert*, that he might reprove the disgracefull wedlocks of these, he desired the affinity of *Athanasild* King of the *Wifigoths* in Spain, his daughter *Brunchild* being married. (c) Whom *Chilperick* imitating, a little after took unto him his sister *Gafuniba* *Fredegund* a Harlot, being cast off, by whose flatteries he being afterwards insnared, deprived the harmlesse woman of her life, and took the Harlot in her room. For that thing *Gregory* tells he was driven by his brothers from his Kingdome, the which nevertheless he a little after received.

The Chronicle of *Sigebert* seemeth to bring back the marriages of both brethren, into the year 569. But *Athanasild*, who being author, those two married, as saith *Gregory*, died before that year, (d) to wit, of *Justine* 2d. and so in the year of Christ 567, in which year *Liuba* succeeded.

*Charibert*

(d) Joan.  
Bielar.  
Isidor. in  
Chron.

*Charibert*, for his lawfull wife *Ingolberta* being cast off, and the wedlocks of *Meropjedes*, and afterwards of her sister, being again renewed, he being by *Germane* Bishop of *Paris*, forbidden of holy things, died at *Blaxia* in *Santlon*, (c) in the 9th year of his Kingdome, therefore of Christ about 570. (f) whole Kingdome, his brothers divided among themselves.

*Chilperick* and *Sigebert* being continuall enemies against each other, waged more often wars with themselves, than with strangers. While this follows after the *Huns* with weapons, (g) *Chilperick* invaded some Cities of him being absent. Neither yet rejoiced he long in this victory. For *Sigebert* having returned, taketh the Town *Suesonum*, and in it, *Theodebert* the son of *Chilperick* by *Audovera*: whom, an Oath being first required, that he should not take up arms against him henceforward, the year turning, he sent away. (a) That fell out a little after the Marriage of *Brunchild*.

Another Civill war after the death of *Charibert* was raised by *Chilperick*. (b) Who in a hostile manner invaded the *Turonians*, and *Pistarians*, whom *Sigebert* hath taken by lot from the dividing of his brothers Kingdome. But *Sigebert*, his forces being joyned with *Guntramnus*, through *Eunius* surnamed *Mummolus*, a most valiant Captain at that time, recovered all, a little after the year in which *Charibert* dyed, of Christ 574. The fifth year after, after the slaughter of *Alboinus*, as (c) *Warnefride* sheweth, of Christ 574. or the year following, some Princes of the (3) *Longobards* of those ten which succeeded *Alboinus*, brake out into France, and troubled the *Burgundians* with slaughters and sackings. But *Mummolus* slew them at *Ebredunum*. Neither long after, he (c) crushed the *Saxons*, who had joyned themselves unto the *Longobards*, with no lesse slaughter.

(f) The third civill war, the same *Chilperick* moved, the *Turonians*, *Pistarians*, *Leuovicinians*, *Cadurcinians*, and other Provinces, of *Sigebert* being possessed, and like an enemy wasted. With which things he being much moved, the people beyond *Rhene* being called out to his help, he so affrighted *Chilperick*, although trusting to the aid of *Guntramnus*, that of his own accord, all being restored, he desired peace. But that was broken after one year by the same *Chilperick*, who again drew to him *Guntramnus* into a fellowship of the war, but he being easily reconciled, *Sigebert* put *Chilperick* to flight, and all places even unto *Paris* and *Rothomagus* being largely reduced into his power, he being fenced with a buckler by the French, according to a solemn custome, was proclaimed King in the place of *Chilperick*. From hence Armies being sent before to besiege *Tornacum* in *Nervii*, in which City *Chilperick*, with his wife and children had hedged himself, by two privy murderers, whom *Fredegund* had privately sent, their knives being dipped in poyson, he was thrust thorow, in the (g) 14th year of his reign, of his age 40, of Christ 575. *Brunchild* was then at *Lueta*, whose son *Childebert* a (1) child of five years

Anno 569  
of Christ,  
to 600.

*Charibert* ex-  
communicated.

(c) Sigeb. in  
Chron.  
(f) Greg. 4.  
ch. 26. Aimo  
3. ch. 2.  
(g) Greg. 4.  
ch. 23.

(a) Greg. Sigeb. & Aimo.

(b) Greg. 4.  
ch. 40.

(c) Book 1. ch. 32. & b. 35. c. 10.  
(d) Greg. 4.  
ch. 36. & foll.  
Vuarnefr. b. 3.  
ch. 16. & foll.  
(e) Aimo 5. ch. 7. Vuarnefr. b. 3. ch. 5.

(f) Greg. 4. ch. 42. & foll.  
Aimo 3. ch. 14.

The death of  
*Sigebert*.  
(g) Greg.  
in end of b. 4.  
a) Greg. 5.  
ch. 1.

old

Anno 565  
of Christ,  
to 600.

(b) Greg. 19.  
ch. 1. 14. 19.  
Aimo 5. ch.  
14. & 15.

(c) Greg. 5.  
ch. 6. & 16.  
(d) Ch. 17.

(e) Greg. 6.  
ch. 40.

(f) Greg. 6. ch.  
33.

(g) Aimo. 3.  
ch. 56.

(h) Greg. 7.  
ch. 6.

(i) Greg. 7.  
ch. 6.

(l) Greg. b. 7.  
th. 7.

(m) Greg. 6.  
ch. 41.  
Vuar. 3. ch.  
16.

(n) Greg. 9.  
ch. 5. & 26.  
Vuar. b. 3.  
ch. 28.

(o) Greg. 8.  
ch. 30.

(p) It appears  
out of b. 7. of  
Greg. ch. 24.  
& 8. ch. 58.

(a) Greg. 9. ch.  
31. John Bicl.  
clar. 16d. Chr.

(b) Fred. in  
Chron. ch. 14.  
Aimo 3. ch.  
51.  
(c) Martyr.  
Rom.

old, is by *Gundobald* his fathers Captain, led away by stealth, to the Kingdom of *Austrasia*. *Brunechild* being spoiled of all by *Chilperick*, is sent away to *Rotbomagum*. (b) With whose love *Amerceus* the son of *Chilperick* being taken, he took her as his Wife without his fathers knowledge, and at last, souldiers being sent to lay hold of him, that he might not come under his fathers power he yielded himself to a certain familiar friend of his to be slain, in the year of Christ 577. as is manifest from the (c) years of *Childebert*, numbred by *Gregory*: and also from (d) *Easter*, the which that year was solemnized, he saith, in *France*, 14th Cal. May. In *Spain*, 12. Cal. April.

*Childebert* in the mean time under the Protection of his Mother *Brunechild*, reigned in *Austrasia*, who in like manner waged wars with his Unkles. (c) *Chilperick* when he had seen *Clotharius* born to him of *Fredegund*, the 4th Moneth after, a little before night, returning from hunting, is by privy murderers killed, in the year of Christ 584. to wit, in the 9th year of *Childebert*, as (f) *Gregory* telleth. Whose Sepulchre is also at this day seen in *Basilica* at the City of *Vincent*. (g) That murder is said to have been done by the Counsell of *Fredegund*, by *Landerick* an adulterer of hers, which thing *Gregory* hath been silent in. Who (h) writeth this one thing, the was required by *Childebert* to declare the cause, and, whereby the might the lesse do it, *Guntramnus* interceded. (i) But this man being called by *Fredegund* to *Lutetia*, took the Kingdom of *Charebert* and *Chilperick*. For he undertook the tuition of *Clotharius* the 2d son of *Chilperick*, who in the same year in which his father was killed, (l) in the fourth Moneth of his age, was declared King.

After these things (m) *Childebert* being hired by *Maurice* against the *Longobards*, he through fear forced them to an yielding. But when in the 13. (n) year of his reign, he had again sent an Army against them, it was almost wholly overthrown, (o) *Guntramnus* uled nothing a more prosperous fortune against the *Goths*, who sent an army into *Septimania*, which then belonged to the Gothick title or jurisdiction. Those wheresoever they took their journey, having spoiled all things, holy and profane, in a hostile manner, blotted out this wickedness, with their great slaughters (p) in the year of *Childebert* 10. of Christ, 586.

(a) Then in the fourth year after, of Christ 589. *Septimania* being again attempted, the Army of *Guntramnus* was cut off by a greater destruction. The Captain of the *Goths* was *Claudius*: who, *John Biclariensis* is Author, with no more then three hundred men, scattered sixty thousand of the *French* or *Franks*, which thing is not likely to be true.

(b) *Guntramnus* dieth in the year of Christ 593. or 594. 5 Cal. of April, having left a famous remembrance of godlinesse and other vertues, the which being (c) committed to Church-Tables, is repeated every year on the 28. of March. His Kingdom came to *Childebert*. This King having followed after old enmities, framed

med a strong Army against *Clotharim* and his mother *Fredegund*. (d) *Fredegund*, a woman bold beyond a womans capacity, shewing *Clotharim* whom she carried in her arms, caused to great a courage in those Souldiers, that a great force being made on the enemies at unawares, they brought forth a Victory through their great slaughter. *Clotharim* was then at least nine years old, who was born in the year of Christ five hundred eighty four, as we have above taught.

(e) *Childebert* in the fourth year from the death of *Guntramnus*, of Christ 596, is with his wife, taken away by poyson, whom *Theodebert* and *Theodorick* his sons succeeded, under the tuition of their Grandmother *Brunechild*. (f) But *Fredegund*, *Lutetia* being taken, with other neighbouring towns, scattered the conjoynd Armies of both the brethren unto the destruction of *Clotharim* her son, and in the year following, she having finished her life, is buried at the City *Lutetia*, in the Chappel Cup of *Vincent*.

(g) The sons of *Childebert*, their Grandmother stirring them up, fight against *Clotharim*, and compell him to part with the greatest part of his Kingdom, being overcome in battell.

But in *Spain* *Leovigild* being received into the fellowship of the Kingdom by his father *Liubas*, in the (h) third year of *Justine*, married *Goswintha* the wife of *Athanagild*, in the year of Christ 568, when as now he had two sons, *Hermenigild* and *Ricared*, by *Theodora* the daughter of *Severian* Duke of *Carthage*, (i) the sister of *Leander*, and *Isidore*, and he very much enlarged the affairs of the *Goths* by warlike vertue and victories, in *Spain*. But being beseamed with the *Arrian* poyson, he cruelly persecuted the *Catholicks*: so that for that cause, (a) he condemned *Hermenigild*, with death. *Ingund* the daughter of *Sigebert* King of the *Metenians* had married this man, by whole perswasion he changed the *Arian* Heresy for *Catholick* Godlinesse: and fearing the offence of his father, and lyings in wait, he fell off from him, and desired aid from the *Romans*, and sent *Leander* an Embassador unto *Tiberius* the Emperour. But they delaying, *Leovigild* in the mean time following *Hermenigild* close with war, reduced him under his power, and banished him to *Valentia*, (b) in the second year of *Maurice* the Emperour, of Christ 584, & the year following, on the very night of *Easter*, which happened the 15th of April, in the year 585. deprived him, denying to communicate with the *Arians*, of his life. Whose death, (c) *Pope Gregory*, witnesseth to have been made famous by very many miracles. Moreover neither *Biclariensis* nor *Gregory Turonensis* have made mention of his Martyrdom.

*Leovigild* (d) in the fourth year of *Maurice*, of Christ 585, dieth at *Toletum*, and *Ricared* reigned in his stead, (e) unto whom, his father dying, is said to have given a command, that he should embrace the *Catholique* faith, the which, *Leander* being Author, he performed with so great zeal, that he joynd the whole Kingdom by little and little to the fellowship of the *Catholick* Church

Anno 517  
of Christ,  
to 565.

(d) Aimo 8.  
ch. 82.

(e) Aimo 3.  
ch. 84.  
Fred. ch. 17.

(f) Aimo 3.  
ch. 86. Fred.  
ch. 17.

(g) Fred. ch.  
20. Aimo. 3.  
ch. 87.

(h) John Bicl.  
clar. 16d. Ro-  
der. Tolet. 3.  
ch. 14.  
(i) John Valsus  
in his Chron.

(a) Greg. of  
Turon. 5. ch.  
39. & b. 9.  
ch. 28.  
*Hermenigild*  
killed by his  
father.

(b) John Bicl.  
clar. Greg.  
Tur. 8. ch. 28.  
Vuar. 3. of  
things done  
Long. ch. 27.  
(c) Greg. P. 3.  
Dial. ch. 31.

(d) Biclari. 16d.  
in Chron.  
(e) Turon. 8.  
ch. 40.  
The piety of  
*Ricared*.



Anno 565  
of Christ,  
to 600.

Church. The same man being famous for war, established and encreased the Rule of the Goths. A peace being from King *Gunttramnus* desired in vain, the war brought on him by the other, as we have plainly shewn above, he valiantly repulsed.

## CHAP. XII.

Some chief heads of Church-Affairs, as also some men famous in holiness and Learning, from the year 565, unto the year 600.

(f) Eust. in  
his life with  
Sar. Apr. 6.

(g) Theoph.  
Cedr.

(a) Joan. Dia.  
in the life of  
Greg.

(b) Greg.  
Turon. b. 10.  
ch. 1.

(c) Greg.  
Tur. 5. ch. 21.

(d) Council.  
Lugd. 1.  
Tom. 1.  
Conc.  
France.  
p. 315.

(e) Greg.  
Tur. 5. ch. 18.

(f) Greg.  
Tur. 2. ch. 2.  
(g) Greg. 8.  
ch. 43.

The difference  
in the  
Monastery of  
Radegund.

(h) Paris ex  
Greg. 9. c. 26,  
59. &c. and  
1. 10. c. 17.  
& 16.

(i) Bedal 7.  
Hist. of En-  
gland, ch. 4.

IN the last year of *Justinian*, of Christ, 565, (f) *Eutychius* Bishop of *Constantinople*, a holy man; because he condemned the Emperours heresie, was cast out of his seat the 22 Jan. and carried away to *Amasea*, and after 13 years being restored by *Justin* the third of October, (g) 11 of *Constant*. Account, of Christ 577, dyeth in the last year of *Tiberius*, of Christ 582. This is that *Eutychius*, whom not thinking rightly of the resurrection, (a) *Gregory* both Chancellor of *P. Iagius*, chief Bishop, (b) and himself afterward made chief Bishop in the year 590, untaught. Who when as he had in vain avoided that dignity with what reasons he could, carried on so great matters in it, that the surname of *Grus* was deservedly given unto him.

(c) In France, *Sagittarius*, and *Salonius*; the first of *Ebreduna*, the other of *Vapinga*, Bishops; for their wickednesses, and also because being armed, they fought in manner of Soldiers, in the assembly of *Lugdunum*, were deprived of the honour of Bishoprick in the (d) 6th year of *Gunttramnus*, which is of Christ, 567; but they appealing to *John*, by his command they were restored; at last, because they continued in heynous offences, they were again by the *Cabillonian* Council spoiled of all dignity, as (e) saith *Gregory*, in the 4th year of *Childebert*, of *Gunttramnus* and *Chilperick* the 18, which was of Christ 579.

(f) *Radegund* dyed at *Augustorum*, of the *Pi&ts*, the 14 August, 4th holiday as her acts teach us, in the year of Christ 587, (g) to wit, the 12th of *Childebert*, in whose Monastery were some Virgins sprung from a royal stock; who after his death being listed up in pride against *Leubovera* the governess of the Nunnery, first of all departed from her: the men of the guard being sent into the Monastery, and all things taken away, they drew out *Leubovera* by force from thence. At length, by the command of *Childebert*, a Council of Bishops being gathered together in *Pi&avia*, they were cast off from communion, and *Leubovera* restored into her former place. (h) That seemeth to have been begun the 14th year of *Childebert*, of Christ 589, to be ended the following year.

In the Island of Britain, Christian Religion was much propagated, through the labour and endeavour of *Columban*, a most holy man; who coming out of *Ireland*, brought over the Northern *Pi&ts* unto it, (i) in the year 585. But the English Saxons, who possessed

possessed in times past the Southern part of the Island, *Gregory* Bishop of Rome (l) converted to the same faith, *Augustine*, and other Monks being sent thither, in the 14th year of *Mauricius*, of Christ 596.

Besides these, highly holy in that Age, flourished another *Gregory* Bishop of *Turo* in France, *Germane* of *Paris*, (m) who dyed in the first year of *Childebert*, of Christ 576. (n) *Salvius* of *Albigenum*, he dyed in the same year wherein *Chilperick*, of Christ 584. (a) *Dumol* of *Cenomania*. (b) *Sulpitius* of *Bituricenum*. These were all Bishops. Besides these, (c) *Hesperius* of *Nicaea*, leading a retired life, *Eparchius* of *Ingolisma*, wonderful in the like purpose of life, and many others.

In the East, (d) *Anastasius Sinaita*, Bishop of *Antioch*; (e) *Eulogius* of *Alexandria*, both familiar friends to *Gregory* the Great. In Spain, *Leander* Bishop of *Hispalia*. (f) *Martin* of *Gallecia*, who dyed in the year 580, when he had held that seat 30 years; whence from the same place also that great Prelate of *Turo*, to wit, our of *Thannonia* arising, was excelling in Learning.

## CHAP. XIII.

Of the Affairs of the Eastern Empire, from the year 600, unto 641, under the Emperours *Phocas* and *Heraclius*; and of *Mahumet* builder of the Arabian sect; and the beginning of the Monothelites, or once-ovely-willers.

*Phocas*, *Mauricius* being slain, governed the Empire almost eight years, with the same cruelty whereby he had got it to himself. For he began the 602 of Christ, the (g) 6 *Const*. Account, the 23 day of Novemb. 6 holiday, in which *Cyriack* the Patriarch crowned him; and being taken by *Heraclius*, he was slain in the year 610, the 14 of *Const*. Account.

(h) He reigning, *Cosroes* King of the Persians, as it were revenged the death of *Maurice*, with whom he had made peace with great deserts of his towards him, on the authors; he sacked the Roman borders; and snatching away all things like a current of waters, came through *Chalcedon* even unto *Bitthynia*. When *Phocas* in the mean while, being in all things secure, and settling himself at home in filthy lusts, satisfied himself with the blood of the Princes. When as this thing could not longer be born, (i) *Heraclius* the son of *Heraclius* Lieutenant of *Africa*, in the year, as we have said, 610, in the moneth October; loosing from thence, obtained *Constantinople*, and *Phocas* being laid hold of, taketh punishment of him. Among these things, that Persian flame came forcibly on, which snatched away the East, and Asia in a moment.

(a) Furthermore, in the year 614, in the moneth of June, 2 *Const*. Account, Jerusalem was taken by the Persians, and many Clerks and Monks of both sexes being killed, the reverend *Crosse* was carried

Anno 600  
of Christ,  
to 641.

(l) Bedal 1. 1. 1.  
ch. 23. &c.  
John Dia. in  
the life of

Greg. b. 2.  
ch. 34. Greg.  
P. of B. h. b. 5.

ep. 52. &c.  
(m) Greg.  
Tur. b. 5.  
ch. 6. & 8.

(n) Greg. b. 7.  
ch. 1.

(a) Greg.  
ch. 9.

(b) The same,  
b. 6. ch. 39.

(c) The same,  
ch. 8.

(d) Evag. 9.  
ch. 5.

(e) Niceph.  
Chron.

(f) Greg. 5.  
ch. 38.

(g) Chr. Alex.  
Theoph.

Paul. Dia.  
b. 17. Zon.  
Cedr.

(h) The same  
Authors.

(i) See the  
same Authors;  
& b. 4. Part. 2.

ch. 24.  
Niceph.

Breviar. and  
Notes on the  
same.

(a) Chr. Alex.  
Theoph.



Anno 600  
of Christ,  
to 641.

(b) Paul.  
Diac. b. 18.  
ch. 6.  
(c) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
b. 18.

carried away into Persia; the year following 615, *Saer* the Captain of *Cosroes* besieged Chalcedon: this is *Kaxxandras*, not *Kaxxandras*, as *Cedrenus* amissly hath it; and (b) *Paul Diaconus*, who turns it [*Carthage*]. Thence the error was set into the Annals, that *Cosroes* pierced even to *Carthage*: the which is otherwise: For the Persians never held Africa. The same year the Persians enjoyed Egypt, Alexandria, and Lybia. (c) With which calamities *Heraclius* being sore abashed, desired peace in an humble manner from *Cosroes*: but he proudly answered, He would have no condition of Peace, unless they would renounce their crucified God, and worship the Sun.

Moreover, that no kind of evil might be absent, at the same time the *Atarians* made an inroad into *Thracia*; who being hardly appeased, he wholly applyed himself unto the Persian War, whose successe, God favouring, was better than all their desire. An Army being (d) transported into Asia in the year of Christ 621, he often fought in battel with the Captains of *Cosroes*; and their great Armies being overthrown, he brake into *Persia* in the year 627. *Cosroes*, all things being without hope, ordained *Merdeses*, in the night, his youngest son, his successeur. The which *Siroes* the elder taking grievously, conspiring with the chief of *Persia* against his father, first making him a laughing-stock, and compelled to see all his sons slain before his face, commanded him to be expoled to darts or arrows. He agreed a place out of hand with *Heraclius*, the Captives being set at liberty and restored, which had been taken away out of all Roman Provinces; as also the holy crosse being restored, in the year of Christ 628; the which in the Spring following, *Heraclius* brought over to Jerusalem with the greatest reverence.

(e) This man commanding, *Mahumet* a Prince of the *Arabians* raised up a destructive sect; the which also he by force of arms farther extended. This fellow, from a shepherd of Camels, being made a husband of a wealthy mistress, went into *Palestina*, where talking with Christians and Jews, *Sergius* a Monk being his assistant, who had been cast out of the Church for heresie, cut of the filthy heap of all sects, framed that new Monster: unto which blockish lye he added authority. For when ever and anon he was tossed by the devil and falling-sickness, or grew weak, he persuaded his wife grieving for that thing, that he being astonished at the sight and talk of the Angel *Gabriel*, was so moved: That, *Sergius* confirming, was largely dispersed by the endeavour of the poor woman, and was commonly believed. *Theophanes* writeth, that heresie to have lien hid ten years; and nineteen years after to have avouched it, being spread abroad by power and sword. That is manifest, in the year of Christ 622, the 16 day of July, the 6th holy or resting day, he took his flight, when as for the newness of the error he was in danger of his life. From this flight, which the *Arabians* call *Hegyra*, that is, *daying*, or persecution, their new *Epocha*, or stop, or measure of time, goeth forward.

This

This man in the year of Christ 628 coming unto *Heraclius* out of *Aethiopia*, a Country of *Arabia Felix*, with his *Saracens*, begged a piece of Land to inhabit in; and afterwards in (b) the 631 year dyed. From which time the *Saracens* his successeurs, subjected by degrees, Syria, Egypt, *Palestina*, *Heraclius* reigning, unto themselves. Moreover also in the year 640, King *Hormisdas* being put to flight, they took *Persia*.

*Heraclius* gave a beginning to so many miseries of his Empire, the wrath of God being provoked against him, whilest he obstinately defends the heresie of the *Monothelites* or maintainers of one will, being rashly received. (c) That took its beginning in the year of Christ 630; in which, when *Heraclius* was at *Jerapole*, being asked by *Athanasius* the Patriarch of the Jacobites, whether there were two wills and actions in Christ, or onely one; from this same man, and from *Sergius* of *Constantinople*, and *Cyrus* of *Alexandria*, Bishops, he learned to profess one onely will: (d) the which also by an Edict, or as they call it, an [*Eshesis*,] he openly set forth in the year 639. (e) *Heraclius* dyeth at length on the 11th day of March, in the year of his age 66, when he had reigned 20 years, 4 moneths, and 6 dayes, of Christ 641, of water between the skin gathered, and other diseases, with which, he is believed to have paid the punishment of the incestuous marriage with *Martina* his brothers daughter.

Anno 600  
of Christ,  
to 641.

(b) Theoph.  
Misel. 18.  
ch. 38.

(c) Theoph.  
Diac.  
The beginning  
of the Mono-  
thelites.

(d) Syn. La-  
ter. under  
Mar. Secret.  
1. & 3.  
(e) Niceph.  
Breviar. p. 83.  
Theoph. Diac.  
Zon. Cedr.

#### CHAP. XIV.

Of the Affairs of the western Empire at the same time, and especially the French, and also of famous Men.

IN France, the two sons of *Childebert*, *Theodebert* and *Theodorick*, (their Grandmother *Brunehild* working that thing) reigned with perpetual disagreement together among themselves, and with *Clotharius*. *Clotharius* was first of all overcome by them, (a) in the year from the death of *Childebert* their father, five, which is of Christ 600. Then again (b) after four years, he is overcome by *Theodorick*, when as against this King, *Meroveus* the son of *Clotharius* was chief Commander of his Army; as *Fredegarius* saith: the which seemeth absurd. For *Clotharius* was born in the year of Christ 584. Therefore in the year 604, he had exceeded the twentieth year of his age at the highest.

After that, those same brethren burned with mutual hatreds amongst themselves. *Theodebert* being overcome by his brother in battel, in (c) the 17th year of their reign, of Christ, 612, is (d) slain by his own Souldiers at *Colonia*. *Theodorick* dyeth the year following, 5 bastard sons being left, because he wanted a lawfull wife, his grandmother endeavouring that, whereby the might have her Nephew the more subject to her, (e) who a little after paid the punishment of her wicked acts unto *Clotharius*; for the

(a) Fredeg. in  
App. ch. 10.  
Almo. 3.  
ch. 87.  
(b) Fred.  
ch. 16.  
The error of  
Fredegarius.

(c) Fred.  
ch. 38.  
(d) Almo. 3.  
c. 98.

(e) Fred. 40.  
& 41.

which

(d) Niceph.  
Breviar.  
Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
Zon. Cedr.

The slaughter  
and death of  
Cosroes.

(e) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
Zon. Ced. &c.  
The time of  
Mahumet.

Anno 600  
of Christ,  
to 641.

(f) Siebert.  
Clotharius kills  
Brunchild.  
(g) Frede.  
(h) Aimo, 4.  
ch. 8.

(i) Fred. ch.  
56. &c.

(a) Fred. 6.

(b) Fred. 6.

(c) John Disc.  
in the life of  
Greg.

(d) In the  
Notes to Ni-  
ceph. Brev.  
& 11. of the  
Doct. Times,  
ch. 49.  
(e) See the  
same places.

(f) Tom. 1.  
of the Greek  
Bibl. PP.

which, she was hated of the French; (f) who in the same year of Christ 613, having obtained the whole Kingdom of the French, he bound *Brunchild* in a Cable-rope, led about with wild horses, and tare her to pieces. After these things, the affairs of the *Franks* were at rest, and flourishing, this and his son *Dagobert* being King. (g) Whom in the year 622, being called into the fellowship of the kingdom, he made Lieutenant of *Austrasia*. (h) He revenged the same man, in a war against the Saxons, being evilly treated by them, and wounded in the head, with a great slaughter of his enemies; when as indeed, none of them who was greater than his sword, he left alive.

(i) *Clotharius* dyeth in the year 628, of his dominion 45, whose kingdom *Dagobert* wholly received, his brother *Charibert* endeavouring in vain, he being begotten of *Sichild*, the latter wife; *Dagobert* was born with *Berthrude*. Who at length taking pity on his brother, granted him the greatest part of *Aquitania*. And this man, the seat of the Kingdom being appointed at *Tolousa*, he subdued all *Asiony* unto himself. *Dagobert*, having made use of the counsels of *Arnulph*, Bishop of *Metenum*; and also of *Pipin* of *Austrasium* governed the Kingdom with the greatest equity and prudence. (a) Afterward being let loose into riot, he is said to have had three wives, beside many Concubines at the same time. Yet being liberal towards those in want, and given to piety, He revered especially *Dionysius* Bishop of *Paris*: to whom he built a Temple not far from the City; the which he enriched with the spoils of others. (b) He also compelled the Jews, through the persuasion of *Heracius* the Emperour to undergo Christian rites; which very thing *Heracius* himself in the East had done.

*Phocas* reigning, (c) Pope *Gregory* dyed in the year of Christ 604, 7 *Const.* Account. But *Heracius* being Emperour, *John* Bishop of *Alexandria* surnamed [*Eleemon*] or mercifully flourished; in the framing of whose years, there is a great blemish of the *Annals*, (d) which we have elsewhere corrected. That is certain, the *Persians* in the 6th year of *Heracius*, of Christ 616, took *Alexandria*; whence, if he were made Bishop by *Heracius*, it must be, that he dyed short of the thirty year of his dignity. (e) *Aaastafius* a Persian, a Monk, and Martyr, suffered for Christ about the 622 year, of *Heracius* the 12th.

Equall to these, was (f) *Antiochus*, a Monk, and Abbot of *Sabalasat Laura*, who prosecuted the slaughter at Jerusalem, and that *Persian* whirlwind, in his 107 Homily, and in his confession, in a sorrowful style: And the same man writeth down a doleful end of a certain Monk. Who after many years passed over in a private life by all the ornaments of virtues, the devil set before his sight on this side, the Apostles, Martyrs, and all Christians wan or black and blew, and in a filthy and unhandsome habit: on that side *Moses* with the Prophets, and multitude of the Jews, neat and shining; and drave him so far, that Christian Religion being

condemned,

condemned, he made himself a Jew, and being circumcised, married a wife. In which wickedness, ere the third year that he wrought those things, his body breeding worms, the Homily sheweth he was, by his worst destiny, consumed.

In *France*, a very famous name of holiness, got (g) *Amandus* Bishop of *Trajeſtum* under King *Dagobert*. (a) *Arnulph* of *Me-* *tenum*, the son of *Arnold*, the Nephew of *Anstert*, whom *Blithild* the daughter of *Clotharius* the first had married. *Austregisil* of *Bituricenum*; *Lupus* Bishop of *Senonenum*; (b) besides *Bavo* converted from a robber, by *Amandus*. *Columbane* likewise being very much vexed by *Brunchild*, lived under *Clotharius*, and his Schol-  
ler *Gallus*. In *Spain*, *Isidor* Bishop of *Hispalenum*.

Anno 600  
of Christ,  
to 641.

(g) Sieb.  
(a) Sieb. in  
the year 625.

(b) Sig. stylo;

## The End of the Seventh Book.

THE

Anno 641  
of Christ,  
to 685.



THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
VVORLD.  
OR, AN  
Account of Time.

The Eighth Book.

W Herein are contained the Years from the 641 of CHRIST,  
unto 1100.

CHAP. I.

Affairs of the Eastern Empire under the Successors of Heraclius, from  
the year 641. to 685. Of the sixth Synod against the Monothe-  
lites.

a) Niceph.  
Brev. Theoph.  
Miscel. in fine  
l. 1.

b) Theoph.  
Zon. Cedr.  
Diac. in Misc.  
cel. 18.

**C**onstantine the son of Heraclius, by his former Wife (a)  
reigned after this in the year of Christ, 641. and in  
the fourth Moneth is taken away by poyson, by his step-  
mother Martina.

(b) Heraclionas, with Martina his Mother, reigneth no more  
than six Moneths. Which being finished, his Nose, and his  
Mothers tongue, is cut off by the decree of the Senate: and Con-  
stance the son of Constantine is made Emperour, the Nephew of  
Heraclius: who had rather in the worship of Religion, be like his  
Grandfather

Grandfather than his father, for he was a *Monotheliste*, when as his  
father had been a Catholike.

He being stained with this Heresy, snatched away Pope *Martin*  
a most holy man, (because being commanded to subscribe to  
the form of *Heraclius*, he had condemned him in an assembly, (c)  
with the error of the *Monothelites*, in the year 649.) by *Theodore*  
*Calliopas* his Exarch unto *Constantinople*, in (d) the year 653. to  
wit, in which he was 13th Cal. July, 4. Holiday: and thence ban-  
nished him unto *Chersona*. Where he in the year 655, dieth,  
14. Conf. Acc. 16. Septem. as it is in the (a) collections of *Anastasi-  
us*. (b) Also *Maximus* a Monk, a great contender for the Ca-  
tholique Faith, being cut short in tongue and hand, he carried  
away into exile.

With which wicked acts, God being offended, he suffered the  
*Romane* Empire to be torn by the weapons of the Saracens. (c)  
Against whom in the year 654, in a sea-battell, he most unhap-  
pily fought. (d) Being weary of *Constantinople*, he passed over  
thence into Italy, where with no more prosperous warlike success  
he fought against the *Longobards*. He being incensed by that  
slaughter, sacked *Rome* with a barbarous fury: and passed over  
into *Sicily*, where when he had remained six years, he was killed  
in a Bath by his own *Syracusans*, in the year 668. (e) after he had  
reigned 27. years.

(1) *Constantine* the son of this, beginning to reign in the same  
year, restored Catholique worship. *Theophanes* writeth, and our  
of him *Paul Deacon*, that both his brothers *Noses*, *Tiberius*, and *He-  
raclius*, were cut off by his command, in the beginning of his reign.  
but the same men relate, those same, in the 14th year of his Em-  
pire, of Christ 681. to have been cast out from rule, and *Constantine*  
alone with his son *Justinian*, to have managed the Commonwealth  
which are least agreeable.

(2) The *Saracens* having proceeded further by conquering, be-  
sieged *Constantinople* seven years. But when as both the *Mardaites*,  
inhabitants of *Libanus*, had stopped them by a homebred war,  
and the *Romans* valiantly resisted; at last they made peace for  
thirty years on these conditions, that they should weigh to the *Ro-  
mans* every year 365 thousand Crowns of Gold, and the heads of  
fifty men, noble Horses 50. The Navy of the *Saracens* being cast  
away with a tempest, in the return all perished by shipwreck, the  
which *Theophanes*, and others write to have happened after the  
peace granted. *Nicephorus* affirmeth, the peace to have been the  
latter, and to be desired through occasion of this destruction by  
the *Barbarians*. *Theophanes* delivereth, the *Saracens* began to assault  
*Constantinople* in the fifth year of *Constantine*, and out of him *Cedre-  
nus*, and *Paul Deacon*: but in the ninth year, the peace to have  
been begun. By this means it shall be false, that it was besieged  
seven years: which they do number up, as well as *Nicephorus*, in  
his Breviary. At or about the same time, that fire that is called  
commonly [*Greek*] was invented by ascertain man *Callinismus*, whose  
force

Anno 641  
of Christ,  
to 685.

c) Anast. Col-  
lect. & in Mar-  
tino Theoph.  
Miscel. 16.  
d) Exilii S.  
Mart. historia  
in Collec. p. 79.  
e) Anast. Col-  
le. p. 204.  
b) iad. p. 196.  
& 264.  
Theoph. &c.

c) Theoph.  
Misc.

d) Paul. Vuff.  
5. de gest.  
Lang. c. 12.

e) Theoph. Zo-  
na. &c.

f) Theoph.  
Misc. &c.

g) Niceph.  
Brev. p. 99.  
& seq. Theoph.  
Pa. l. Diac. 19.  
Cedr.

Anno 641  
of Christ,  
to 685.

(a) Niceph.  
Erev.  
(b) Theoph.  
Diac.

(c) Niceph.  
Erev. p. 109.  
(d) Anast. in  
Agath. Theoph.  
Diac. 19.  
Zon. Cedr.

(c) John in  
Ep. to Constant.  
in the  
Collect. of Anast.

(i) Niceph. p.  
109. Theoph.  
Diac. Zon.  
Cedr.

force is such, that it burneth in the very waters. The (a) *Avarians* following the example of the *Saracens*, and other *Barbarians* intreated peace of the *Romans*. (b) The which two years after, from the *Bulgarians*, who at first, that is, in the year of Christ, six hundred seventy seven, had forced on the *Romane* borders, he, was constrained to redeem, with the agreement of an yearly Tribute.

The quiet of the Commonwealth being established, the Emperor passed over his Councils to pacify the Church. (c) For which thing, he called the sixth generall Council, *Agatho* being *Romane* Bishop, the which being begun in (d) the year 680. the 9th of *Novemb.* was ended the year following. In that Council, five universall Synods being approved of, it was decreed, there was two Wills, and as many actions in Christ, as there were natures in him: and those who had taught otherwise, were condemned for Heretiques, *Sergius*, *Pyrrhus*, *Cyrus*, *Paulus*, and others, to whom also, *Honorius* in the Acts, is joyned, who had sat *Romane* Bishop, *Heraclius* being Emperour. But (e) *John* the 4th, drives away this reproach from him, who held the chief Bishoprick the third from him. Where he teacheth to *Sergius*, subtilly asking concerning one will in Christ, *Honorius* answered, there were not two resisting wills, and contrary, as we experience in our selves; but two natures in him, and as many wills were acknowledged by him. (f) *Constance* died in the year six hundred eighty five, when he had commanded 17 years.

## CHAP. II.

The History of the Western World belonging to the above space of time, as also what *Athen* were accounted Famous for Godlinesse and Learning.

(g) Fred. 79.  
(h) Fred. ch. 16.  
Aimo 4.  
ch. 50.  
(i) Fred. 19.  
Aimo 4. ch. 20.

(a) Fred. 76.  
Aimo 4. c. 27.  
(b) Fred. 80.

(c) Fred. 76.

(d) Fred. 82.  
& Tell. Aimo.  
4. ch. 57.  
& foll.

**D**agobert died in France (g) in the 16. year of his Kingdom, of Christ 644, the 19. of Jan, to whom *Chlodoveus* was born of (h) *Nanchild* a Nun, (i) when before he had, in the 629 year, begotten *Sigebert* of *Ragintruda* a Harlot, that is, in the seventh year after the beginning of his reign. *Sigebert* being a child, was made King of *Austrasia* by his father, in the year 632. other Kingdoms being left unto *Chlodoveus*, (a) that is, of *Neustria* and *Burgundy*, under the tuition of his Mother *Nanchild*. (b) *Agas* also Master of the Pallace, a most laudable man, being added. *Chlodoveus* was 12 years of age, for he was born (c) in the twelfth year of *Dagobert*, from the former beginning as appeareth, of Christ 633.

(d) *Agas* being dead, in the year 646. *Erchenwald* Mayor of the Pallace, or house in the Kingdom of *Neustria*, and *Flaothate*, in *Burgundia*, are chosen. But *Pipin* dying in the same year, *Grim-*

ald his son performed the same worthinesse of office in *Austrasia* the Kingdom of *Sigebert*.

(e) *Sigebert* without hope of off-spring, adopteth *Hildebert* the son of *Grimoaldus*, and ordained him his successeur in the (f) seventh year of his reign, of Christ 651. But when as beyond hope he had begotten *Dagobert*, he being committed unto the trust of *Grimoald*, dieth in the eleventh year of King *Chlodoveus*, of Christ 554. *Grimoald* sent *Dagobert* being shaven, into *Scotland*, and brought up his son *Hildebert* unto the Kingdom. With which unfaithfullnesse, the *French* being offended, make *Grimoald* being, laid hold of, to stand to the judgment of *Chlodoveus*; who, he being condemned with imprisonment, and *Hildebert* removed, himself gave his own son *Hilderick* a King to the *Austrasians*, whom (g) he had begotten of *Bathild* a *Saxon* woman, with two others, *Chlotharius*, and *Theodorick*.

Moreover, the singular bounty of *Chlodoveus* towards the poor, is praised in the Annals: (h) Whom that he might succour in a very great scarcity of Victuals, he commanded the Gold and silver wherewith his father had adorned the Graves of *Dionysius* and his fellow Martyrs, Saints, and to be divided amongst them. *Aimo* reckoneth that to the 14th year of his reign, which falls into the 657 of Christ.

(i) And that he might recompence this, whatsoever injury of the holy place, two years after, a most famous assembly of Bishops being had, he appointed the Monastery of *Dionysius*, which his father had built nigh to the City, to be free from the jurisdiction of all Bishops; *Lauderick* the chief ruler of *Paris* agreeing to it. Concerning which thing, an ordinance of *Chlodoveus* being set forth is read the 10. Cal. July, in the 16 year.

*Chlodoveus* died in the year 660. of the Kingdom the 17. and at the same time, *Erchenwald* Lieutenant of the Pallace dying, the *French* ordain *Ebrune* a man famous for cruelty and treachery. (a) From which time, the *French* Kings being let loose into riot and sloath by little and little, the top of affairs came to the Governours of the Pallace: when by them all things were ordered, but the kings contented onely with a name or title, contained themselves in their Pallace; neither came they but once every year, on the Cal. of May, into open view of the people. Which thing also is read in the yearly Register of the *Greeks*, with this most foolish fable; the kings of France being like Hogs, have a Wheyey back, and therefore were called [*Trichorachatos*.]

(c) *Chlotarius*, who had succeeded his father *Chlodoveus*, after four years of his reign, dying, about the year of Christ 664. *Theodorick* his brother, for a short space was chief. For the *French* being quickly weary of this man, chose *Childerick*, who reigned at *Austrasia* king; they shut up *Theodorick* with *Ebroin*, shaven, in a Monastery; the one, in that of *Dionysius* at *Latetia*: this, in that at *Luxovicum*. *Childerick* having run out three years in the kingdom: of Christ 667. by *Bodilo* a noble Frank, whom he had

Anno 641  
of Christ,  
to 685.

(e) Append.  
Aimo. Sig.  
(f) Trithem.

(g) Fred. 91.  
Aimo 4. ch. 45.

(h) Aimo 4.  
ch. 41.

(i) Aimo in  
the same Mo-  
nast. Dionys.  
b. 3. ch. 4.

(a) Sig. in the  
year 662.

(c) Fred. 95.  
94. Aimo 4.  
ch. 44. Sigeb.

Anno 641  
of Christ,  
to 685.

(c) P. Simon  
mentions him  
in Notes to  
To. 1. Coun.  
p. 620.

(e) The life of  
Leodeg.

(f) Fred. 96.  
Sig. Aim. 4.  
ch. 44.

The cruelty of  
Elroin on Le-  
deg. and others

(g) Utine in  
the life of Le-  
odeg. 2. Ofr.

with Sur. Sig.  
Fred. Aimo.

(h) To. 1.  
Coun. Franc.  
p. 510.

(i) Balderick. b.  
1. Chron. Ca-  
merac. ch. 25.

See Sir. Nar.  
to 1. To. of  
Coun. Franc.  
p. 610.

Holy men in  
France.

(a) Audo. in  
life of Elig.  
b. 2. ch. 2.

(b) And in the  
same ch. 22.

(c) The life of  
Audo. Aug.  
24.

(d) Siegb.

(e) Siegb. in  
the year 698.

(f) Siegb. in  
the year 661.

(g) Beda. b. 3.  
ch. 6. & 9.

Hist. Eng.  
(h) Ruder. To-  
let. b. 3. ch. 1.

manded, being bound to the stump of a Tree, to be punished with rods, he was after *Easter*, with his Wife great with child, slain, whole son *Chilperick*, (d) is read in the first year of his reign, registered in a certain Bull or Writ of *Corbeia*: of whom there is no mention any where made, (e) and presently *Theodorick* is called unto the Kingdome, to whom, *Leudegism* the son of *Erchenwald* is given as master of the Pallace.

But (f) *Elroin* breaking out of secret places of the Monastery, again invaded the Lieutenantship of the Pallace, *Leudegism* being killed as also (g) *Leodegar*, chief Ruler of *Augustodunum*, whom being many waies tortured with divers torments, and in a Councell of Bishops spoyled of his dignity, he commanded to be smitten with a sword. *Sigebert* hath brought that to the year 685. (h) in which year indeed that Councell is said to have been solemnized in the Kings Country-house. That it must needs be, those to erre, who bring the death of holy *Leodegar* into the year 672. (i) seeing in the seventh year of *Theodorick*, 2. *Const. Acc.* that is, in the year six hundred seventy four, he is read under-written in the Letters of *Vindician*.

There were many men at those times flourishing in holiness especially in *France*. Amongst whom *Eligius* and *Audoenus*, famous Bishops are mentioned, the one of *Noyonum*, this of *Rothomagus*, made in the same day, (a) in the third year of *Chlodoveus*; of Christ 646. to wit, the 14th day of the third Moneth, which is May; Which was the Lords day before the greater Lentanas, or Supplications. (b) *Eligius* died in the 70 year of his age, about the beginning of *Clotharius*. (c) Moreover *Audoenus* dieth being ninety years old, when he was working out the 44 year of his Bishoprick. Besides these, *Chlodoveus* being King, were most holy Bishops, (d) *Remacius* of *Trajectum*. *Autbert* of *Cameraca*. *Theodard* a Martyr, of *Trajectum*: whom *Lambert* succeeded; who also himself afterwards died a Martyrs death, in the second year of *Childebert*, that is, of Christ 696. (e) *Audomar* of *Tarvenum*, who while the reliques of *Pedastus* were brought over, his sight, which through old age he had lost, being restored unto him, as soon again as he wanted the same, he obtained, supposing a sharpness of mind or understanding, to be better then the soundness of his eyes. Private persons also graced *France* with an exact holiness of life: *Fursus*, *Foillanus*, *Altan*; who having come out of *Ireland*, built Monasteries. *Jodocus* son of the King of *Briton*, who, riches being despised, gave himself to a solitary life. Also (f) *Bathild* the wife of *Chlodoveus*, which built the *Corbeian* and *Calenian* Monasteries, and also *Itta* the Widdow of *Pipin*, who with her daughter *Gertrude*, consecrated her self to God.

In *Brittain*, not a few were famous for the same ornament of holiness. (g) But before others, holy *Oswald*, who fighting against the Heathens for his Countrey, fell in battle.

In *Spain*, the piety of King *Bambus* is praised, who in the 714th year of their money or tributes-reckoning, as saith (h) *Rudrick*, that

that is, in the year of Christ 676. (but as *V. Jeas* writeth) in his Chronicle, in the year 672, he was compelled by force to take the Kingdom; the which had been conferred upon him by the consent of all. Which afterwards even unto the tenth year he managed; that being resigned, he made himself a Monk, that he might be the readier to take a heavenly life on earth. (1) Likewise holy *Illephonsus* Bishop of *Toledo*, who for a patronage of the Blessed Virgin undertaken against heretiques, was endowed by her, with a garment brought from Heaven.

## CHAP. III.

What things happened under Justinian the second, Leontius, Artemius, and Theodosius in the East, from the year 685, to the year 717; and of the appendice or addition of the sixth Assembly in Trullum or the Palace.

(a) Justinian the second, surnamed *Rhinometus*, from his nose being cut off, as shall be said afterwards, succeeded his father *Constantine* in the year of Christ 685, (b) sixteen years old, who through a childish lightness and weakness undid the Common-wealth. He drew down the *Mardaites*, the Inhabitants of *Libanus*, the onely terror of the Saracen Nation, and strength of their Empire, out of *Libanus*. After that, (c) in the year of his Command, the 7th, he dissolved the peace entered into with the same Saracens, with the like blockishness, trusting to the ayds of the *Selaxonians*, by whom being forsaken, a victory now gotten, he corrupted by a shameful flight. From which time *Mahomet* Prince of the *Arabians*, wasted the Roman borders without controule. Unto that rashness in warlike affairs and counsels, when headed also cruelty and robbery at home, he runs into the hatred of the people; therefore by the encouragement of two Monks, *Paul* and *Gregory*, (d) *Leontius* a Senator being sent by *Justinian* out of prison to govern Greece, he layes hold on this very man, and sent him far away, being mangled in the nose, into *Chersana*, in the year 695; and so he got the dominion promised him long ago by the same Monks through their skill in the Stars: the which he bare three years space.

(e) *Leontius* being Emperour, *Carthage* was vanquished by the *Saracens*, in the year 698. To recover this, an Army being sent by Sea by *Leontius*, the matter being ill carried on, he being afraid at the losse of it, he carried forth *Appianus*, a certain one, to the Government, and called him *Tiberius*.

(f) *Tiberius* *Appianus* in the same year 698, hedged *Leontius* in a Monastery, being rendred deformed through the like spoyl of his nose, as this had made *Justinian*. A little after this, two hundred thousand *Saracens*, it is delivered by (g) *Theophanes*, were slain in *Syria* by the Romans, in the third year of *Tiberius*; he reigned 7 years.

(a) For

Anno 685  
of Christ, to  
717.

(i) Ruder. 2.  
ch. 12.

(a) Theoph.  
Paul. Dia.  
b. 9. Zon.  
Cedr.  
(b) Niceph.  
brev.

(c) Theoph.  
Misc. 19.

(d) Niceph.

(e) Niceph.  
Brev. Theoph.  
Diac. Zon.  
Cedr.

(f) Niceph.  
Theoph.  
Miscel. the  
same.  
(g) Miscel.  
book 20.

Anno 685  
of Christ,  
to 717.

(a) Theoph.  
Mücel. Brev.  
Anast. in  
Joan. 7.

The cruelty  
of Justinian.

(b) Theoph.  
Mücel. &c.  
Zona.

(c) Niceph.  
Breviar.  
Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
Zon. Ced.

(a) Theoph.  
Niceph.  
Mücel. &c.

(a) For *Justinian* fleeing from *Chersona* unto *Chagan* King of the *Abarians*, he led his sister or daughter in marriage; by whose shewing, lyings in wait being found, provided by his father-in-law, he passed over to the *Bulgarians*; by whose help after ten years banishment, being restored, he in the year 705 had a new beginning of commanding. First of all, *Apfimarum* and *Leontias* being a long time led through the horse-race, and mocked, he cut off their necks. And then, the peace which he had agreed with the *Bulgarians*, being rashly violated, he paid the punishment of an unthankfull mind towards them by whom he was helped, with disgrace, and the slaughter of his subjects, in the 4th year of his Empire. At last, being offended with the *Chersonites*, because he had remembered, layings in wait were made for him by them, a strong Navy being sent against them, he caused them almost all to be killed. The which Navy, in the month of October returning, a cruel tempest drowned by shipwrack, wherein seventy and three thousand men perished. *Justinian* being secure for so great a slaughter, when as he had taken that one thing grievously, that the Souldier in that destruction of the *Chersonites* had abstained from the slaughter of the little ones, he led a new Navy thither to kill them. But the Princes being moved with hatred of so mad cruelty, proclaim *Bardan Philippick* Emperour, in the year 711, when *Justinian* lived the sixth year from the Empire recovered; who by the command of *Philippick*, he with his son *Tiberius* was slain. *Anastasius* sheweth in the life of Pope *Constantine*, this voracious man being called forth to *Constantinople* by *Justinian*, set forward from Rome the 5th of October, 9th *Const.* Account, that is, the year 710, and there being received with the greatest honour, to have returned the 24 of October, 10 *Const.* Account, which is the 711th year; and after three moneths, a Messenger to have brought word to Rome of the death of *Justinian*. Wherefore about the end of the 711th year, or the 712th, *Justinian* was slain. (b) A wicked word gathered from his mouth, witnesseth the fierce and unmild spirit of this Prince. When as a dangerous tempest arising, to one admonishing him, that he would make a vow unto God, If he would go forth safe out of it, to spare all his enemies: He answered, *Yea, let me here miserably perish, if I shall even spare one.*

(c) *Philippick* foolishly and neglectfully governed the Empire through wickedness gotten, and lavished out the riches gotten by *Justinian*, through too many, and unprofitable charges. *Cyrus* being driven away, he brought up *John* to the Constantinopolitan seat, an impure and heretical man, who being his assistant, by Bishops of the same faction, made void the sixth Synod in the year 712, and renewed the heresie of the Monothelites. Of which impiety a little after he experienced God to be a revenger. (a) For after he had reigned two years, and some moneths, when as a horse-exercise being had, he slept after dinner, in a place apart, he

he was taken by force by conspirators, and deprived of his eyes the day before Pentecost; which fell out in that year the 713, On the 4th of June. (b) On which Eve of Whitsontide, *Nicephorus* and *Theophanes* do fully affirm the birth-day to have agreed or met at *Constantinople*.

(c) *Artemius*, who was Secretary to *Philippick*, his name being changed, was called *Anastasius*, he reigned the same year of Christ 712; which thing the (d) publique acts of the Virgin that was freed from the devil, the 12th *Const.* Account, in the moneth October, *Anastasius* being Emperour, do witness.

He made ready a great Navy against the Saracens, who had brought ships to the Isle of Rhodes to cut timber. But a division arising in the Army, and the Captain being killed, the Souldiers bring *Theodosius* of *Adramyttium*, a certain gatherer of Customes, a quiet man, and lying hid, to take the Empire. *Anastasius* mistrusting his affairs, his promise or faith being received, and the famous things of rule being laid aside, made himself a Monk, and was passed over to *Thessalonica*, in the year of Christ 715, when he had reigned two years. This man was excellently garnished with Learning, and a favourer of the Catholique party. Therefore *John* the heretique being cast off, he brought over *Germane*, Bishop at *Cyzicum* to *Constantinople*, the 15th of *Const.* Account, as *Theophanes* writeth, that is, in the year 715.

(c) *Theodosius* of *Adramyttium*, being made Emperour, as it were, by sport, reigned about two years, even till the year 717, in which he gave place in the Empire of his own accord, unto *Leo* of *Isaurus*, who was carried up thereto by the voyces of the Souldiers, and, with his son, being shaven into a Clergy-man, he passed away the remainder of his age in rest. He dyed at *Ephesus*, faith *Cedrenus*; and commanded this word to be written on his tomb, *Tristitia*; that is, *Healthis*. Moreover, there is a report, that he was famous for miracles after death.

(a) He reigning, *Musalmes* Prince of the *Saracens*, setting upon *Constantinople*, run out into *Asia*, and possessed *Cappadocia*.

(b) *Justinian* enjoying the affairs, and in the year of Christ 707, there was an assembly had of Greek Prelates at *Constantinople* in the *Trullam*, so they named the Palace, by which were made 105 Canons; which Synod they called *trullorum*, that is, a five-sixth, as it were, to supply the 5 and 6 Universal assemblies, in which there were no Canons or rules set forth. (c) But those Canons being foolishly, and beyond all right registred, they wanted authority by a decree of the Roman Bishops.

Anno 685  
of Christ,  
to 717.

(b) See Notes  
to the Brev.  
of Niceph.  
p. 198.  
(c) Niceph.  
Theoph. Diac.  
Zon. Cedr.  
(d) Baron. to  
the year 713.

(e) Niceph.  
Breviar.  
Theoph. Diac.  
Zon. Cedr.

(a) Niceph.  
Breviar.  
Theoph.  
(b) Theoph.  
to the old  
year of Poge-  
natus, Syn. is  
extant, with  
a Commenta-  
ry. Zona. &  
Balsam.  
(c) Anast. in  
Serg. Bode  
of the sixth  
Age.

## CHAP. IV.

*Of the Affairs of the western world, especially in France and Spain, in that same space of time. Of the last Kings of the Franks, from the flock of Meroveus; and of the Saracens invading Spain; likewise of Men eminent in holiness of life.*

IN France, *Ebroine* Governour of the Palace, (*Theodorick* obtaining even but in name, the Kingdom of *France*, which they called the Kingdom of *Neustria*;) rag'd with cruel tyranny. In like manner the Kingdom of *Austrasia* obeyed the Governours of the Palace. *Vulfoaldus* being dead, *Pipin* the son of *Ansegisus* took that dignity, (d) in the year of Christ 687, who in the beginning joyn'd in battel with *Theodorick* and *Ebroine*, is overcome: and his Companion in office, *Martin*, against promise made, is kill'd by *Ebroine*. *Ebroine* himself in the year, as appeareth, 688, (e) that is, in the third after the death of *Leodegar*, was thrust thorow by *Hermenfride*. But then *Pipin*, *Theodorick* being overcome, held the mastership of both kingdoms (f) in the year 691, an excellent man, and most worthy of the command of the *French*: but that one stain of lust darkeneth this man's memory. For besides *Platide* a noble Wife, he had *Elpais* a Harlot, of whom was begotten *Charls Martell*: in which one man afterwards, the worthinesse of the French Nation stood. (a) This his intemperance *Lambert* Bishop of *Leodium* daring to correct, he was beleached by *Dado* the brother of *Elpais*; in whose place holy *Hubert* was ordained; which *Sigebert* hath shewn to be in the year 698.

(b) *Pipin*, the Frisians being subdued, and their Captain *Rathbod*, and the Kingdom of *France* managed 27 years with the greatest equity, dyeth (c) in the year 714, whom *Charls* succeeded, begotten of *Elpais*, of whom, afterwards. Now I will expresse the other Kings of *France* even unto *Pipin* the son of *Charls*; who are reckoned with a title onely, when as all the power was after that, in the power of the Lieutenants of the Palace, whom they name Mayors.

*Theodorick* the son of *Clodoveus* the second, dying about the year of Christ 690, left an empty possession of a kingly title unto *Clodoveus* his son, the third of that name; the which he held 4 years, and dying in the year 694, delivered it to his brother *Childebert*; *Childebert* numbred the (c) 17th year of the Kingdom, and dyed (f) in the year 711.

(g) *Dagobert* his son reigned five years, whom the *Pithean* Anals shew to have dyed in the 715th year.

(h) The *French* appoint for this, *Daniel*, a certain Clerk, of a kingly spirit, but not enough assuredly known; whom his name being changed, they call *Chilperick*;

(i) *Raginfred* is joyn'd to this King as Lieutenant of the Palace: Both being overcome by *Charls Martell*, he runs away to *Eudo* Prince

## Cap. 4. An Account of Time.

Prince of the *Vascones*; but he also being broken, and put to flight, *Chilperick* who had yielded to *Charls*, dyeth in the 5th year of his reign, (l) of Christ 720; in the same year *Charls* makes *Theodorick* King, who (m) reigned 15 years. Therefore he deceas'd about the year 735.

After this man, there was a (n) cessation of a King about 7 years, which turning over, the last of the posterity of *Meroveus*, *Childebert* the third, began in the year 742, who had the likeness of a kingdom until the year 752. For in this very year, *Pipin*, *Childebert* being shut into a Monastery and shaven, began to be called King of the *French*; which year, from the beginning of the kingdom of the *Franks*, that is, from the year of Christ 420, is numbred 333.

But in *Spain*, the *Saracens* pouring out of *Africa*, *Ruderick* reigning, oppress'd the *Goths*, being call'd thither by *Julian* an Earl; whose daughter, or wife, *Ruderick* had forced with whoredome. The beginning of that slaughter *Ruderick* noteth to be (a) in the 91 year of *Mahumet's* flight, of the Spanish account 712. (b) Two years after, *Ruderick* the King, in a great battel joyn'd, being betrayed and forsaken by his own; was slain. (c) So *Spain* came into the power of the *Saracens*. The remainders of the *Goths* had their retiring place in *Asturia* and *Cantabria*; and there the *Barbarians* being valiantly beat off, they, they held however the possession of the ancient Kingdom, *Pelagius* being their Captain; who first reigned over the *Asturians*.

Not a few in that space of time made proof of their holiness; in *England* *Cuthbert*, whom (d) *Bede* witnesseth to have been made Bishop about the year 685. (e) From thence also *Vuilebrod* coming with his 12 companions, and being sent by *Pipin* into *Frisia*, brought the light of the Gospel unto the barbarous people, and appointed the seat at *Trajectum*, as *Sigebert* hath it, in the year 697; in which year he declareth holy *Kilian* to have dyed a Martyr's death. Also *Bede* made his *Brittain* famous with no lesse godliness and learning, than history, who even unto the year 735 hath concluded the Christian beginnings of that Nation. Most holy Monks at the same time beautified *France*, *Vandregisl* a *Fiscanian*, and of *Fontinel*, a builder of Monasteries, of whom in the year 692, *Sigebert* maketh mention. (f) *Ursmar* of *Lobia*, a founder of a Monastery. *Bertine* Abbot of *Sithiena*. (g) *Egidius* who coming out of *Greece*, made the Province famous. *Childebert* reigning, in the year 709, the same *Sigebert* writeth, that rock by the appointment of *Michael* Arch-Angel, which is worshipp'd in the *Abrincatean* Diocess by his name and religion, was consecrated by *Antibbert* the Bishop.

Anno 687  
of Christ,  
to 717.

(l) Ann. Pith.  
(m) Sigeb.  
(n) Probar.  
Sirm. in notes  
to Tom. 2. of  
Counc. Franc.  
p. 621.

Saracens in-  
vade Spain.

(a) Ruder.  
Tol. 3.  
ch. 18.  
(b) In the  
same place,  
ch. 19.  
(c) Ruder.  
Tol. 4. ch. 1.

(d) 4. Hist.  
ch. 6. 82.  
(e) Sigeb.  
anno 692.  
& 697.

(f) Sigeb.  
698.  
(g) The same,  
715.

The Temple of  
Michael in  
France,

Anno 687  
of Christ,  
to 717.

(d) Fred.  
Chron.  
Sigeb.  
Pipin Mayor  
of the house.  
The death of  
Ebroine.  
(e) Ursin. in  
codeg.  
(f) Octob.  
(g) Breviar.  
of the French  
Kings. Fred.

(a) Sigeb.

(b) Fred. 102.

(c) Annal.  
Pith. Sig.

(e) Things  
done, in  
French Epit.  
c. 15.  
(f) Frag.  
book Nazar.  
(g) Affairs of  
France,  
ch. 51.  
Aimo. 4. c. 51.  
Ivo.  
(h) In the  
same place.  
(i) Ann. Pith.  
Sigeb.

## CHAP. V.

Of Leo of Isauria; the heresie of the Iconoclastarians; and other things of the East, from the year 717, to 741. And also of western Affairs; and of Charls Martell, and the Saracens overthrowing him.

**L**EO, born of an obscure stock in *Isauria*, who first was called *Conon*, came to the Empire in the year 717, 15 of *Const. Acc.* 25 day of March, as (a) *Theophanes* writeth, repulsed the (b) *Saracens*, *Asia* being waited, and *Pergamus* vanquished, besieging *Syzantium*, with a great put down of them, about the very beginning of his reign. He quenched *Tiberius* a Tyrant in *Sicily* by his Captains, and made the West quiet in the year 719. At length he brought forth an impiety, in times past conceived in his mind against holy Images, using a Jew his author, in the year 726; (c) in which by his guard-men he threw down the Image of our Saviour: Who being slain by the people, the Prince burning with wrath, most cruelly prosecuted their slaughter; and waxed cruel, especially on a Colledge of Learned men, gathered together out of the professors of all arts, when he had stirred them up in vain unto the fellowship of unfaithfulness. (d) Which wickedness of his, the falling away of Greece, and the *Cycladians*, and a prosperous success in suppressing it, made the sharper, in the year 727. Therefore three years after, he set out a cruel Edict against worshipful images, (e) 13 *Const. Acc.* 7th Jan. 7th holiday. That is, in the year of Christ 730. *Germane* the Bishop, in vain interposing his fury, resigned himself of his own accord; and on the 22 Jan. *Anastafius* was appointed in his room, a partaker of the impiety, when as *Germane* almost lived the hundredth year of his age; for he is he whom in the year 726, *Gregory* the second in an epistle affirmeth to have lived ninety and five years, which is in the 7th Synod. Many keepers of the ancient faith, being afflicted with divers torments and punishments by the Tyrant, had glorious ends. (f) This madness of *Leo*, *Gregory* the second, Bishop of *Rome*, when he could not restrain by letters, he (a) cast the Emperour, and those touched with his heresie, under excommunication; and whatsoever was left of Italy, he drew away from the command of the Greeks; and further, he forbade them to pay tribute unto them. For these things, *Leo* burning in anger prepared a Navy against the Rebels the Italians. (b) which perished with a Tempest in the *Adriatick* Sea in the 732. A little before he endeavoured to oppress (c) *Rome* with the chief Bishop himself, by the dispatching Princes of *Ravenna* and *Luitprand* King of the *Longobards*. But the Bishop came of his own accord to the *Longobard* hanging over the City, and so bended him by his steadfastness and speech, that he coming unto his feet, whatsoever he had asked, he readily did.

(d) There

## Cap. 5. An Account of Time.

(d) There was in the last year of *Leo* a fierce Earthquake, the 9th, saint *Theophanes*, of *Const. Acc.* the 26 Octob. 4th holiday, the 8th hour, (so that this was the year of Christ 740) whereby *Thracia* and *Bybintia* being shaken, and especially *Constantinople*, *Nicomedia* and *Nicaea*, a great destruction happened. All the Temples of *Nicaea* besides one, went to decay. That misery yielded to the Emperour an occasion of a new tax. For to repair the walls, he increased the measure of the tributes; the which after that he continued. (e) He dyeth of a pain between the skin, or grief of the bowels, the 24 year of Rule being finished, and three months above; the 18th of June, the 9th of *Const. Account*, of Christ 741.

Which same year, 11th Cal. Novemb. was the last to *Charles* surnamed *Martell* or *Tudites*, when he had now governed *France* the eight and twentieth year, a Prince famous for warlike valour and deeds done. (f) *Pipin* his father being dead in the year 714, being cast into prison by his step-mother *Plastrude*, & slipping out from thence, the following year, he was bold to provoke *Raginfride* chosen Mayor of the house, as was then the manner of speaking; and he being first by him overcome, he was afterward the chief (g) in the year 717, the 12th Cal. Apr. (h) on the Lord's day. He scattered in a renewed battel in the year 718, the same man trusting to the aid of *Eudo* Duke of *Aquitane*, and then he subdued the *Saxons*, *Almains*, *Bajovarians*, *Noricans*; and, *Eudo* being put to flight, the *Aquitanes*. *Eudo* distrustful his affairs, called out the *Saracens*, with their King *Abdiramus* from *Spain*, in the year 725, whom largely sacking holy and profane places, *Charles* met, and killed them with a universal slaughter. There were slain in one day three hundred seventy and five thousand; when as of the *Franks* there were no more than 1500 slain, as (a) *Anastafius* writeth. Straightway having obtained *Burgundy* and *Lugdunum* in the year 727; the year following, *Eudo* finishing his life, he invaded *Aquitane*; he again threw to ground the *Saracens* in great number running into *France* to revenge their slaughter, in the year 731, and received *Avenion* taken by them. Then going to *Narbonne* which those held possessed with *Spain*, to whom it was made tributary, he vanquished its head *Narbonas*, and afterward other Towns, the *Saracens* being slain, who often came to bring help. (b) Last of all, he frightened away *Luitprand*, being humbly besought by *Gregory* the third, King of the *Longobards*, hurtful to the Roman Church. These things, the old Annals of the *Franks* set forth by *Pithaus*, *Fredeger*, *Sigebert*, *Aimoinus*.

*Leo* being Emperour, *John Damascene* was famous in *Syria*, who contended, for the worshipping of holy Images, with a sharp pen. In Germany, *Boniface* a Messenger of this Province was consecrated Bishop of *Rome* (c) in the month of Decemb. 6th *Const. Acc.* in the year 722, he there promoted Christian Religion for a long time. But the year following, *Eucherius* of *Aurelian* de-

R r 2

parted

Anno 717  
of Christ,  
to 741.

(a) Theoph.  
at the last  
year of Leo,  
Paul. Diac.  
21. ch. 32.  
Niceph.  
Brev.

(b) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
21. Cedr.  
(c) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
21. Cedr.  
Zonar.

(d) Theoph.  
Niceph. Brev.  
Diac. Cedr.

(e) Theoph.  
Diac. Niceph.

(f) Theoph.  
Diac. Anast.  
(a) Zonar.  
*Rome* and *Italy*  
withdrawn  
from the com-  
mand of the  
Greeks.

(b) Theoph.  
Breviar.

(c) Anast. in  
Greg.

Anno 717  
of Christ,  
to 741.

(d) Niceph.  
Brev. Theoph.  
Diac. Zon.  
Cedric.

(e) The same.

(f) Arnals  
of Pith. Fred.  
104. &c.

(g) Fred. 106.  
(h) Affairs of  
the French  
Epi. b. 1.  
ch. 53.

A wonderful  
slaughter of  
the Saracens.

(a) Anast. in  
Greg. 2. p. 97.

(b) Tom. 1.  
Counc. of  
France Ep.  
Greg. 3.

(c) Tom. 11  
Counc. of  
France. pag.  
512.



Anna 741  
of Christ,  
to 800.

parted into banishment, into which he was driven by *Charls*, as *Sigebert* is Author.

## CHAP. VI.

Of Affairs of the Western Empire under Copronymus, Leo, Constantine, and Irene. From the year 741. to 800.

A Far more foul Offspring succeeded an Heretical and wicked father: who, from the dung which the Infant being moved into the water in Baptism, had dashed forth, deserved the name of *Copronymus*, (d) from the which, German the Patriarch who baptized him, took no vain guesse of his ungodlinesse. That happened in the third (e) year of *Leo*, of Christ 719. Octob. 25. Therefore, he began to reign in the 22. year of his age sliding, to wit, of Christ 741. To this man, *Irene* the daughter of *Chagan* King of the *Avarians* had married, in the year seven hundred thirty two, who, being a young beginner in Christian Ceremonies, constantly held sincere piety.

*Constantine* in the beginning had *Artabasdas*, the husband of his sister *Anne*, corral of the Empire, himself being hated by the common people for Heresy, and a very bad disposition, found out by no obscure tokens. Therefore being expelled; and fled from *Constantinople*, *Artabasdas* is saluted Emperour; who straightway restored Catholique worship. But in the year 743. (b) 12 *Conf. Acc.* in the Moneth Septem. he was taken with his son, by *Constantine*, and made blind.

(c) This man being Emperour, a cruell Plague from An. 741. continued for three years space, and wandring thorow *Sicily*, *Calabria*, and the East, so raged, especially in *Constantinople*, that there well nigh wanted a place for burying the dead carcases, and those who should bury them. Besides this, being vexed with the wars of the *Saracens*, *Sclavonians*, and *Bulgarians*; by these also being overcome in some battells; when he led an Army against the same, being taken by a deadly sicknesse, and unknown to the Physicians, and put into a Ship, he breathed out his wretched Soul, (i) the 14 day of Septemb. 14. *Conf. Acc.* of Christ 775, when he had commanded 34. years and almost 3. Moneths. (i) He dying, witnessed that he, for disgracing the blessed Virgin, the Mother of God, was damned in the eternall flame, and commanded worship to be given to her hence-forward. This was the departure of the unfaithfull and most cruell Prince: (i) Who denied the holy Virgin to be the Mother of God, Christ himself to be God, forbade honour to be done to Saints, had overthrowen holy images. (e) The which also, a Councell being gathered together at *Constantinople* of 338 Bishops, he endeavoured to have condemned, 7. *Conf. Acc.* in the year 754. being angry chiefly against the Monks, of whom he, a great number, as also of other orders, whom

he had known to disagree from his wickednesse, afflicted with divers kinds of punishments.

In his 20th year, an Eclipse of the Sun happened, Aug. 15th. (as saith *Theophanes*) 6th holiday, 10th hour. Which is the year of Christ 760.—Whence the beginning of *Constantine* is affirmed.

Leo his son succeeded this, an heir of his fathers ungodlinesse, living the twenty sixth year. (a) For he was born in the year 750. Jan 25. *Conf. Acc.* 5. who at the beginning feigning himself a Catholick, after that, through bounty, he had gotten to himself the people's favour, he broke out into the open profession of Heresy, the which also he increased with Sacriledge. (b) For being covetous of pretious stones, a Crown glittering with little stones, the which *Maurice* had in time past dedicated in the greater Church, being taken away from thence, he placed on his own head. For which wickednesse, punishment presently followed from God: *Carbuncles* breaking out from the same head, whereby a burning Feaver arising, in a short time killed the man, Sept. 8. (c) in the year of Christ 780. when he had commanded almost five years. For he began in the year 775. Sept. 14. He left an Heir, *Constantine*, under the tuition of his Mother *Irene*, whom being born at *Aibens*, he had married, (d) in the year 771. Jan. fourteen. Therefore he began his reign in the eighteenth year of his age.

*Constantine* therefore with his Mother *Irene*, commanded about ten years, in which time, all things were managed by the Councell of *Stauracius* a Senatour. By these, the ancient piety with worshipping of Images was called back. (e) *Tarasius* a most holy man being made Patriarch on the very Birth-Day of Christ, of the year 784, when as first he had made a sure promise of gathering together a universal Assembly. Of which, the Emperours (i) had already writtne to Pope *African* in the same year; 7. *Conf. Acc.* Therefore the matter was deferred untill the 787 of Christ, and 21. *Conf. Acc.* in which they consulted, having transported the Synod to *Nicea* on the eighth Cal. Octob, which ended in the Moneth Octob, the third of its Ides, 250. Fathers came together, two *Peters*, Ambassadors of the Bishop of *Rome* being present, one a chief Elder, the other an Elder and Governour of *Sabbas*, with *Tarasius*, and other Vicars of the other Patriarchs. (h) In that Councell, which is called the seventh *Oecumenicall*, the Heresy of *Iconoclastians* or cryers out against Images, being banished, the worship of holy Images was restored. Which year an Eclipse of the Sun made famous: which happened in the eighth year of *Constantine* and *Irene*, as *Theophanes* writeth, on the Lords day, Sept. 16.

After these things, *Irene* constrained her son *Constantine*, (a) to whom she had espoused *Rorude* the daughter of *Charls* King of the French, in the year 782) to marry *Mary*, a woman born in *Armenia*, in the Moneth November, of the year 788. From which

Anna 741  
of Christ,  
to 800.

(a) Theoph.  
Diac. 22. ch.  
22.

(b) The same.

(c) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
Cedr.

(d) Theoph.

(e) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
23. ch. 14. &  
fol. 20. c. d.  
(f) It is in an  
Ep. in 7.  
Synod.  
(g) Synod. 7.  
Act. 1. p. 377.  
Act. 7. p. 654.

(h) See Theoph.  
Diac. 23.  
ch. 21.

(d) Theoph.  
Diac. Cedr.  
Zon.  
(e) Theoph.  
Diac. 21. ch. 14.

(b) Theoph.  
Mise. 22.

(c) Niceo b.  
brev. Theoph.  
Diac. Zon.  
Cedr.

(d) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
(e) Cedren.  
Theoph. Zon.  
The d. spair-  
ing death of  
*copronymus*.

(g) Theoph.  
Mise. 12. ch.  
24.

(a) Theoph.  
Diac. 21. ch.  
22. the life of  
*Charls* the  
Great.

Anno 741  
of Christ,  
to 800.

(b) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
31. c. 32. Ccd.

(c) Theoph.  
Mile. 23. ch.  
36.  
(d) The same  
Zon. Ccd.

(e) Theoph.  
Diac. Ccd.

which marriage, he disagreeing, and also being weary of the unlimited power of *Sauracius*, he at last, in the year 790. reduced his Mother into Order, and reigned alone eight years. Which power he greenly and immoderately using, (b) deprived *Nicephorus* his Uncle, and *Alexius* his Captain, of their eyes; he cut out the Tongues of others in the Month of August, 15. *Const. Acc.* of Christ 792. Three years after, *Mary* his Wife being cast off, and thrust down into a Monastery, he married *Theodota* his Chambermaid. *Joseph* a certain Abbot joyning that marriage; but *Tarajius* winking at it, for fear least (which he threatened) the young man burning with lust, should set open Idoll-Temples, which thing filled the Eastern Church with tumults, and disagreements. (c) For two most holy men of this age, *Plato*, and *Theodore Studita*, departed from the fellowship of *Tarajius*. (d) At length, in the 18. year of his Empire, of Christ 797. he was taken by the deceit of his Mother *Irene*, and *Stauracius*, and cruelly made blind in the Moneth August, on the Sabbath, on which day five year he had deprived his Uncle before of his sight. *Constantine*, his eyes being digged out, is said to have given up the Ghost a little after; (e) which parricide, or child-murder, some of the Greeks brought unto *Irene's* praise; but how hatefull it was to God, a fearfull darkness of seventeen daies witnessed, which followed his death. *Irene* also, the sixth year after, of Christ, 802. 11. *Const. Acc.* 08. 13. Holiday 2, being stripped by *Nicephorus* of Government, and all her fortunes, and carried away into *Lesbos*, a year not yet turning about, dyed.

## CHAP. VII.

Of the affairs of the West, and of Pipin, and Charls the Great,  
From the year 741. to 800.

(a) Fred. 1. 10. **T**WO sons succeed *Charls Martel* Prince of the French, (a) *Carloman* and *Pipin*: to the one he granted the West part of *Fraunce*, with the *Strates* or *Almain*, and *Thuringia*; to *Pipin*, *Burgundy*, *Provance*, and *Newstria*. (b) *Griphe* the brother of them both, for he was the eldest, begotten on the daughter of *Odilo* Duke of the *Bajoarians*, seeing himself excluded, possesseth *Laudurum*; where being besieged by his brethren, surrender being made, he is by *Carloman* cast into prison. (c) And then *Hunald* Duke of *Aquitane*, and also *Odilo* the *Bajoarian*, and the *Almain* being by them both tamed, *Carloman* in the year 747, through the love of an heavenly life, first of all embraceth a monastick manner of living in *SoraBeth*, afterward, being unknown at *Casinum*. *Griphe*, loosed out of Prison, rebelleth against *Pipin*, and being taken by him, at length slipping into *Italy* by flight, is beheaded in the Alps, in the year 751. When as now *Pipin* by the former authority of *Zachary* chief Bishop, and the consent of the heads of *France*, had added unto the

Pipin is made  
King of  
France.

the Kingly power, which he long since held, a new title of *French King*. (d) For in this year of Christ, which is numbred 752. *Hil-drick* the last King of the *Merovingians*, for his sloath being put out of office, and thrust away into a Monastery, the Kingdome of the *Franks* passed over into a new Family. *Pipin* his first care was to ease the *Roman* Bishop oppressed by the *Longoards*. (e) He had brought back *Rachisius* king of that Nation, who being moved from the siege of *Perusia*, by a speech of Pope *Zachary*, resigning his Kingdome, unto a Monkish kind of life, in the year 750, *Aistulph* his brother had succeeded. (f) Whom hurting the *Romans*, Pope *Steven* the third, flying from, came to *Pipin* into *France*; by whom being received with incredible honour, he perswade him, that he would bring war on the *Longoards*. Therefore in the year 754. passing over the Alps, *Pipin* constrained *Aistulph* shut up in *Papia*, to swear that he would restore all places that belonged to the *Roman* title, and again, delaying to perform his promises, but also watching over the walls of the City for evill, he passing over into *Italy*, called back unto the faithfull performance of his Covenants (a) in the year 756. And then (b) by *Fulrade* an Abbot, he delivered the Exarch-ship of *Ravenna*; which they call *Romania*, and *Pentapolis*, that is, *Ancona*, with four Towns of *Picenum*, and other places, unto the Bishop of *Rome*. (c) Which places being taken out of the hands of the *Greek* Emperours by *Aistulph*, *Copronymus* in vain by Embassadours required of *Pipin*. With the same endeavour of detending the Church, *Pipin* overthrew (d) *Vaipharius*, Duke of *Aquitane*, making a prey on holy things, and rebelling, in his seventh dispatch into *Aquitane*, the which in the year 768, ended with the death of *Vaiphar*. Who being slain, and all *Aquitane* subdued, *Pipin* dyed at *Paris* 8. day Cal. Octob. the seven-teenth year of his reign.

† Therefore in the year of Christ 768. *Charls* with his brother *Carloman* divided their fathers Kingdome. But he in this year 771. dying, *Charls* reigned alone, without controversy the greatest Prince. For he being both unconquered by weapons, and Garnished with the studies of Learning, was a most diligent favourer of them, and he revered onely the Catholique Religion, and its head, the *Romane* Bishop. (c) He being moved by the intricacies of this man, (it was that *Adrian* who was ordained in *Stephen* his place, in the year 772) he undertook a war against *Desiderius* King of the *Longoards*, an enemy of the seat of *Rome*, in the year 773, and being besieged at *Ticinum*, and brought under his power, he brought into *France* in the year 774. But when he would have all things which had been given him by *Pipin* his father, to be confirmed to the *Roman* Bishop, then also he added very many others; the Territory of *Sabinum*, the Dutchy of *Spoleto*, and *Benevento*, which are repeated by (f) *Anastafius*, and to those, the Provinces of *Venetia*, and *Histria*, are joynd. After these things with a most long war, and continuing nigh (g) thirty and three years, he very much tamed the *Saxons*. That began in the year

Anno 741  
of Christ,  
to 800.

(a) Ann. Pith.

(c) Anast. in  
Zachar. Paul.  
Vuarnef. 8. c. 9.

(f) Anast. in  
Steph. 10. 2.  
Coun. France.

(a) Ann. Pith.  
(b) Anast. in  
Steph. 3.

(c) Anast.

(d) Annal.  
Pith. Adel.  
Ado. in the  
life of Charls  
the Great.  
Sicob.

† Egin. in the  
life of Charls  
the Great.  
Ann. Pith. Ai-  
mo. 8c.  
The begin-  
ning of Charls  
the Great.

(c) Ann. Pith.  
Anast. in Adri-  
an.

Charls over-  
throweth the  
Kingdome of the  
Longo-  
bards.

(f) Anast. in  
Adrian.

(g) Egin.  
Aim. Pith.  
the life of  
Charls the  
Great, an un-  
certain author.

Anno 741  
of Christ,  
to 800.

(h) Ann.  
Charls the  
Great.  
Egin. Sigeb.  
&c.

(a) Eginh.  
(b) Ann. of  
Charls the  
Great, &  
Pich.

A slaughter  
of the French  
in the Pyrenean  
Mountains.

(c) Eginh.

(d) Baron. in  
the year 778.  
(e) Eginh. &  
Ann. of Charls  
the Great.

(f) Roder.  
Tolet. b. 4.  
ch. 11.

(g) Ann. of  
Charls the  
Great, & Pich.  
Alcuin. 1.  
Counc. Elipant.

(h) In the  
same place,  
See T. m. 2.  
Coun. France.  
P. 193.

(i) To. 2.  
Conc. Gal.  
(k) The life  
of Alcuine.

772, and was ended in 804; when he transported all those beyond *Albania*, with their households into *France*. Likewise he brought over the *Slavonians*, and also the *Bavarians*, with their Duke *Tassilo* rebelling, unto his obedience. (h) Also a war undertaken with the *Avarians*, or *Hunns*, in the year 791, he finished with their great slaughter; and so much prey gotten, *Eginhart* writeth, as in no other War.

(a) Moreover, the *Saracens* being beaten down in *Spain*, he subdued no small part thereof unto French weapons. (b) But especially in the year 778, an Expedition being made into *Spain*, attempting *Casaraugusta*, pledges being received, he departed thence unto *Pampilona*; whose walls being thrown down, whiles he goeth forth through the *Pyrenean* Mountains into *France*, the *Vascons* rising up in a very great company by the Straights, some slaughter of the chief being made, and hinderances removed, they saved themselves in unpassable woods and hiding places from the weapons of the *French*. (c) There was slain amongst others, *Rutland*, a Governour of the *Brittain* Coast: The yearly Registers of that Nation affirm, that slaughter to have been brought on them by *Alphonse Castus* King of *Spain*, who had provoked *Charls* into *Spain*; which thing (d) *Baronius* out of the just writers of those times (e) refuteth. Who mention, that there was between both those Kings a most firm league of friendship; and also they do shew those things were long before the beginning of *Alphonse*; who indeed (f) began to reign in their account 825, of Christ 787, also a valiant and religious Prince, and from his continual chastity obtained the surname of *Chaste*.

Nor *Charls* less burning with an endeavour of promoting the Catholique Religion, than his Kingdom, he for that purpose solemnized often Councils of Bishops. (g) Amongst which, that was famous in the year 792, because the heresie of *Orgelitanus* and *Elipandrus* Bishops of *Toledo*, was in the Assembly of *Ratisbon* condemned, who affirmed Christ to be the adopted Son of God. (h) And the same heresie was again considered in the Assembly of *Frankford*, at the River *Mainus*; in which Synod seventh Universal Assembly was rejected by the Bishops that were ignorant of its decrees, in the year 794. When as about the same question of images, *Pipin* being King, another was celebrated at *Gentiliacum*, in the (i) year 767.

(k) Under this King, *Alcuine* coming out of *England* into *France*, flourished with the greatest opinion of Learning, whom *Charls* made very much use of as a Master, he also himself being in a few things instructed in divine and humane learning, whom he made Governour of the Monastery of *Martin* amongst the *Turrians*, and some others; neither yet was he a Monk, nor a Priest, but being contented with the order of a Deacon, he ceased to live, in the year of Christ 804, on the very day of *Whitsonide*, which happened on May the nineteenth.

## CHAP. VIII.

Anno 800  
of Christ,  
to 840.

Of *Charls the Great*, the first or chief Emperour of the West; and *Ludovicus Pius*; and the Deeds of both, from the year 800, to 840.

THE eight hundredth year of Christ brought a new *Augustus* unto the West, he least of all indulging or giving respect to the piety of the *French*, got that dignity, which the Greeks in the East, by reason of haughtiness and impiety, by degrees lost.

(a) *Leo* the third, who was chosen in the room of *Adrian*, in the year 795, was by a faction of some persons, maimed in his eyes and tongue, and vexed after an unworthy manner in the year 799. And although God by an unusual wonder, had restored unto him his eyes (b) and tongue, yet *Charls* being very much moved with the cruelty of the wicked act, came to Rome. Where when the most harmless Bishop had washed away the faults laid against him by an oath, (c) on the very day of the Lord's birth, in the year 800, he coming on, *Charls* not thinking of it, put the Crown on his head, and saluteth him Emperour of the Romans. Unto whom *Charls* from that time required the good turn by obedience and bounty.

(d) The year straightway following on, there is an examination had concerning the parricides; and being condemned of their life, the Bishop intreating, they changed their soyl. A little after these things, the *Danes* (e) with their King *Godefride* were crushed; and also the *Venetians*, who also were received upon yielding by *Pipin* the son of *Charls* in the year 810, which was the last year to *Pipin* himself. For he dyed the 8 Ides July. Also he drave back the Moors, sacking Italy and the Islands, by his Captains. (f) About the end of his life, being wholly bent on the duties of Religion and godlinesse, he closed his day 5 Cal. Feb. at *Aquisgrane*, in the year of Christ 814, of his age 71, of his kingdom 47, and of Empire the 14.

(g) *Ludovicus*, having gotten the surname either from his remarkable love and affection towards divine matters, or towards his Subjects, being already the former year taken from the King of *Aquitane*, into the fellowship of the Empire; he succeeded the same, on a holiday, in the year, as hath been spoken, 814, the other sons of *Charls* being dead, he as yet surviving; *Pipin* in the year 811, *Charls* the year following. (a) He received *Stephen* the 5th, being in the room of *Leo* the third, at *Rhemes* in the year 816, and by him the imperial Crown was beautified.

The year following, *Bernard* the son of his brother *Pipin* (b) by a Concubine, King of *Italy*, rebelling against *Ludovicus*, and then for fear of him, a surrender being made, is deprived of his eyes; many chief ones being condemned for offence of Treason, and punished with banishment; amongst whom were *Anselm* of *Mediolan*,

(a) Anast. in  
Leont. 3.

(b) Anast. in  
the same.  
Charls is made  
Emperour.

(c) Eginh.  
Ann. Charls  
& Pich.  
Theoph.

(d) Anast.  
The Deeds of  
Charls.

(e) Ann.  
Charls &  
Pich.

(f) Eginh.  
The death of  
Charls.

(g) Ann. Lud.  
dov. & Chr.  
Pich. Theog.  
gan. in the  
life of Lud.

(a) Annal.  
Adel. Anast.

(b) Theog.  
&c.

Anno 800  
of Christ,  
to 840.

(c) The same  
Authors.

The Sons of  
Ludovick rebell  
against their  
Father.

(d) Ann. Pith.

(e) Ann. Pith.  
The Life of Lu-  
dovick. Nichar-  
dus. Tot 2.  
Gauze. Franc.  
& To. 3.

(f) Conc.  
Franc. To. 2.

(g) To. 3. of  
Council of  
France in a  
Synodical  
Council of  
Tricaissa.

(a) Ann. in  
the life of Lu-  
dov.

The death of  
Lewis.

(b) In the life  
of Lewis, Ann.

diolan, and Theodulf of Aurelia, Bishops; on the son of whose brother he inflicted voluntary punishments of strictness from the will of the Bishops, in the year 822. (c) *Irmingard* the 9th of Octob. of the year 818, dying, (in which year the Sun, 8 Ides of July, is said to have been eclipsed, of *Ludovick* year 5,) he married *Judith* the daughter of *Vuelpus* an Earl; of whom was begotten *Charls*, by surname *Calvus*, or the *Bald*; when as he had already three sons, *Lotharius*, *Ludovick*, and *Pipin*, who when they could nor suffer with a quiet mind *Charls* to be preferred before them, at once rose up against their father. (d) First of all in the year 830, *Pipin* King of Aquitaine, conspiring with the chief Governours, lay hold of the Emperour, and shuts up *Judith* into a Monastery, *Lotharius* straightway coming upon it and approving it. But in the following year, through the endeavour of the Germans, *Ludovick* received the Empire. (e) From the which again, in the year 833, he being by the conspiracy of the three sons, and advice of the Bishops, withdrawn and compelled to resign; not long after he is wholly restored, in the year 834, wherein *Lotharius*, who had dealt more disgracefully with his father than the rest, favour being more slowly reconciled with him, confounded France with Civil War; untill through the Emperour's clemency all things being pardoned, a peace however grew between them. After these things an Assembly of Prelates being solemnized at the Village of *Theodones*, (f) *Ebbo* Bishop of Rhemes, parracker of that wicked conspiracy against *Ludovick*, with *Agobard* of Lugdunum, was deposed, in the year 835. (g) And after the death of *Ludovick*, in the very year 840, was by *Lotharius* restored; a little after, for fear of *Charls*, he fled to the same Emperour. Last of all, the office of preaching the Gospel to the *Northmannes*, being committed to him by *Paschall* chief Bishop, he obtained the seat of *Hildensheim* in Saxony, not far from their borders, by the bounty of *Ludovick* King of Germany, and there deceased.

(a) At length *Pipin* being dead in the year 837, *Ludovick*, the kingdom being divided among the other three, while he hasteneth to prevent *Ludovick* his son preparing war for the unjust dividing of the kingdom, dyed 12 Cal. Jul. of the year 840, in the year of his life 64, of rule 27; and was buried among the *Mediametricans* in the Cathedral of *Arnulph* by his brother *Drogon* Bishop of that City. Whose departure, a dire eclipse of the Sun foreshewed (b) the day before Lords-day of the Ascension; which was the day before the Nones of May, the 9th hour of the day.

CHAP.

## CHAP. IX.

Anno 800  
of Christ,  
to 841.

that things were carried on under Nicephorus, Michael Curopalates, Leo the Armenian, Michael Balbus, Theophilus, in the East, from the year 800, to 841.

IN the East, *Irenes*, as we have said, being cast forth in the year 802, *Nicephorus* took to him the Empire and *Bardas*, who was brought up by the Souldiers against his will to the same height being removed, he took to him *Stauracius* his son, a parracker of imperial Majesty, (c) 12 *Const.* Account, in the moneth Decemb. of the year 803, a covetous man, and treacherous, through the learning of the *Manichees*, unto whose magical arts he was given. Therefore disagreeing from the holy things of Christians, he dealt very badly with Bishops, Clerks and Monks, and commanded them to be oppressed and trodden under foot by the Magistrates. He had a War with the *Saracens*, from whom Peace being purchased on most shamefull conditions, he warlike faithfully performed it. He going about to lead an Army against the *Bulgarians*, made the Churches tributaries. Concerning which thing to a certain familiar friend complaining, his heart was hardened, as once *Pharaoh's*, he confessed, God so willing it. Neither was the punishment of his wicked head, long deferred. He being compassed about by the *Bulgarians*, fell with the flous of his whole Empire, (d) in the year 811, July 26. when he had commanded 9 years. (e) *Stauracius* being wounded in fight, reigned a few moneths.

For in the same year (a) *Michael Curopalates*, by surname *Rengabe* 5. Octob. week-day 5, is proclaimed Emperour, a man famous for godlinesse and peaceable arts; but therefore not fit for warlike affairs. Wherefore he being overcome by the *Bulgarians* in the year 813, he gave place in Dominion unto *Leo* of *Armenia* not against his will, who was crowned by *Nicephorus* the Patriarch, 6 *Const.* Acc. 11 day of July, 2d. week-day: when in the same year (which must needs be of Christ the 813, the Sun had the 4th day of May suffered an Eclipse, as (b) *Theophanes* writeth, whose history endeth this year.

Furthermore, the same (c) *Theophanes* being witness, *Michael* bent all his endeavour to establish the agreement of the Eastern Church. For it was rent into parties, when as *Plato* and *Theodore* Governours of the Studites, loaded with all praise, did therefore disagree from *Nicephorus*, otherwise a most holy man; because he, of a lay-man, had been made a Bishop; both because he had received to communion *Joseph* the steward of the house, who had joynd the marriage of *Constantine* the son of *Irenes*, and *Theodota*. For which cause *Theodore* with his brother *Joseph* Bishop of *Thessalonica*, and *Plato*, was banished, in the year 809, in the moneth of

S f 2

January

(a) Theoph.  
Paul. Diac.  
b. 24.

(d) Theoph.  
Miscel. 24.  
ch. 25.

(e) The same,  
(a) Theoph.  
Misc. ch. 24.  
zon. Ccd.

(b) Theoph.  
Misc. ch. 24.  
2. 42.

(c) Theoph.  
Misc. 24.  
ch. 31.

Anno 800  
of Christ,  
to 841.

(d.) Curopal.  
Zon. Cedr.

(e) Ced. Zon.

(f) Curop.  
Zon. Cedr.

(g) Zon.  
Cedr.

(h) Cedr.

(a) Curopal.  
Zon. Cedr.

(b) Cedre.  
Zon.

(c) The same  
authors.

(d) The same  
Authors.

January, from which banishment, *Michael* a little after called him back again.

(d) *Leo* of *Armenia*, in the year 813, in the month of July took the Empire, much unlike to *Michael*. For he raged on holy images, and Catholics, especially Monks, with all cruelty, using *Theodoros* his encourager unto that thing: whom indeed, *Nicephorus* the Patriarch being driven away, he made Prelate of *Constantinople*, (e) a Prince otherwise not unprofitable to the Commonwealth. He commanded 7 years, 5 months; and on the very day of the Lords birth, by *Michael Balbus*, whom as guilty against Prerogative-royal, he held in prison, he was amongst his very holy duties slain in the year of Christ 820, in which presently reigned (f) *Michael* from a default of his tongue called [*Balbus*] or Stuttering, born at *Amdrium*, which is a Town of *Phrygia*, (g) where had lived a certain sect, out of the filth of Jews, *Manichees*, and other pests; the which *Michael* having followed, he banished holy images, and all Catholike name or authority: (h) he thrust out *Euthymius* and *Methodius*, most holy men, into banishment; also by his son *Theophilus* he received the one with lether whips even to death. *Methodius* afterwards held the Patriarchship of *Constantinople*. (a) He overcame *Thomas* a certain Tyrant, providing against him with the help of the *Bulgarians*, and butchered him with all kind of cruelty.

(b) *Crete* about this time being possessed by the *Saracens* of *Spain*, about the year 823. But *Sicily* by the *Africans* in the year 828, through the treason of *Euphemius*, who being thrust thorow in the siege of *Syracusa*, paid the punishment of his treachery. After that, *Calabria*, and *Apulia*, and many places of *Italy* obeyed the *Saracens*. (c) He dyed in the year 829, after 8 years, and nine months rule.

(3) *Theophilus* his son followed this in the month of Oct: 8 Conf. Acc. as *Cedrenus* writeth: without doubt in the year which I have said, 829, an imitator of his Father's ungodliness. For he both persecuted the worshippers of Images, and chiefly dealt disgracefully with *Theophanes* and *Theodore*, brethren far excellling in piety. Yet the same man is reported to have been a most strict Requirer of Justice. And enjoying the Empire 12 years and three months, he departed out of this life in the year of Christ 841, being the next after the death of *Lodovick Pius*.

CHAP.

# CHAP. X.

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

Of affairs of the western Empire under the successor of CHARLS the GREAT; And of others, from the year 841. to about 900. And especially of the Kings of France; and of Famous Men.

AFTER the departure of *Ludovick Pius* the Emperour, there arose a disagreement amongst his sons concerning the right of the Kingdom, or reign, and borders. *Lotharius* the Emperour who was eldest, desired to draw all unto himself. This man, *Ludovick* and *Charls*, their forces being joyned together, resisted; and being overcome 7. Cal. July, they chased him in a great battell unto *Fontinata* a Village, (c) in the year of Christ 841. In which fight, so great a slaughter of the French was made, as they had not remembered hitherto to have been.

The year following, *Lotharius* being again put to flight, at length they agree among themselves, and thus they divided their fathers kingdom: Unto *Lotharius*, besides the *Roman* Empire, that is, (f) *Rome*, and *Italy*, (a) the seat of *Belgica*: which is said to have got the name of *Lorraine* from him, and is environed by these two Rivers *Scald* and *Rhine*, as *Sigebert* saith in the year 844, and also the Province of *Burgundy*. And to *Ludovick* all *Germany* unto the River *Rhine*, (b) and beyond it for convenience of Wine, three Cities more, viz. *Mentz*, *Spire*, and *Worms*. And *Charls* had to his lot the West Countreys of *France*, (c) from the River *Maze* unto the *English* Seas. Therefore he constrained *Pipin* and *Charls*, sons of his Brother *Pipin*, because they claimed the right of *Aquitane* to become Monks, and *Sigebert* refers this to the year eight hundred fifty two.

(d) His daughter *Judith*, which he had begotten of *Hermetrude* being married to *Ethelred* (e) King of *England*, after his death returned into *France*, and was ravished not unwillingly by the Earl *Baldwin* (f) in the year 862. Wherefore *Baldwin* being (g) anathematized by the Bishops sentence, he went to Pope *Nicholas* to *Rome*, who with earnest prayers, at last obtained his pardon from the King, *Baldwin* being then reconciled, and the marriage celebrated, he received *Flanders* from the King for her Dowry, in the year of our Lord 866.

(h) Then was *Lotharius* the third, Emperour of the West after *Charls* the Great, and governed the Empire about some fifteen years, but in the year of Christ 855 being wearied with the management of humane affairs, he gave over to his three sons the government of the Kingdom, and became a Monk in the *Prumian* Monastery, where he died the third of October, his sons were *Lewis* to whom he left *Italy* with the Empire, *Lotharius* to whom he gave *Lorain*, and *Charls* who had *Burgundy*, (i) after whose death the two other brothers divided his estate; and of it *Lions*, *Belanson* and *Vienna* fell to *Lotharius* the Lot.

The Civil wa  
of the sons of  
*Ludovick*.

(e) Chron.  
Pith. Regim.  
Herman. O  
tho. Fris. 5. ch.  
15. Mary of  
Scotland.

(f) Regim.  
(a) Otho. Fris.  
1. 5. c. 35. fig.

(b) Anno 844.  
19. Sigeb. A.  
844.  
(c) Otho. Regim.  
fig. vide c.  
car. cal. 37.  
and firm. ibid.

(d) Concil.  
Gall. To. 2. p.  
194. & seq.  
Flodoar. 1. 3. c.  
12. Meyerus.  
(e) Flodoar.  
(f) Conc. Gall.  
Tom. 3.  
*Judith* *Calvus*  
daughter ra-  
vished by *Bal-  
dwin*.  
(g) Conc. Gall.  
p. 113. To. 3.  
(h) Ann. Pith.  
scgb. Her.  
Moris. Regim.  
Otho. Fris. 9.

(i) Cap. Carr.  
Cal. Loc. Cit.

*Lewis*

Anno 841  
of Christ, to  
900.

(k) Ocho. Frif.  
5. c. 6.  
(i) Ocho. Frif.  
5. c. 4. Siegb.  
(m) Tom. 3.  
Con. Gall. p.  
189. Ocho.  
Frif. 1. 5. c. 3.  
& 4. Herm.  
Aimo. 5. c. 29.  
Siegb. Anno.  
863.  
Anast. in Ni-  
col. prim. Ann.  
Pith. 863.  
(a) Con. Gal.  
To. 3. p. 217.  
An. Pith.

(b) Regino. &  
Cet. citati.  
Lotharius's  
dreadfull  
death.

(c) Regino.  
(d) Ann. Pith.

(e) Cap. Car.  
Cal. Tit. 357.  
Herm. Reg.

Charls Calvus  
King of France  
(f) Cap. Car.  
Cal. p. 497.  
Aimo 5. c. 32.  
Regin. Her-  
man. Marian.  
(g) Sig. 876.

Lewis the II. was the fourth Emperour, and began to rule in the year 855. (x) and Governed the Empire 19. years, unto the year 875, he warred against the *African Saracens* who spoyled and destroyed *Italy*, and he brought under subjection (l) *Adelgisus* the Captain of the *Herpines*, and although that being by him circumvented he made an ignominious agreement, having driven him out of *Italy*, he forced him to fly into the Isle of *Corfis*: (m) His brother *Lotharius* being insnared by the love of *Waldrada* the Harlot, he resolved to reject and repudiate his wife, *Theurberga*, *Bosones*'s daughter, charging her with false crimes, about which thing having first written to *Nicholaus* the Popish Bishop, delaying too long, he assembled a Synod at *Aquisgrane*, the third of May, in the year 862. of eight Bishops, the chiefest of whom were *Guntharius* of *Agrippina*, and *Thurgandus* of *Treveris*, who permitted him to marry *Waldrada*: (a) The which *Nicholaus* disapproving, and having convoked another Synod at *Drudorum* in *Brabant*, it was held the year following being the 865th year, with an event as the first, and from this Councell were sent Ambassadors to *Rome*, *Guntharius* and *Thurgandus*, whom *Nicholas* the Pontiff degraded, and anathematized the *Metensian* Synod, in the Councell of *Lateran*, yet they despising the Pope's authority, still behaved themselves as Bishops, but *Nicholas* ordained others to be created in their places. (b) *Lotharius* after frequent overthwarting, at length being called by the Emperour *Lewis*, to help him against the *Saracens*, he went to *Rome* in the year 869. two years after *Nicholas*'s death, and having by deceit and lying, obtained his pardon of *Hadrian*, *Nicholas* his succellour, having sworn by the Communion of our Lords body, that he would restrain himself from the company of *Waldrada* the Harlot, and that he would be under the Pope, his power and Law, he was deservedly punished for this his perjury, and horrid offence, being eaten up with a grievous sickness, he died at *Placentia*, (c) the sixth of *August* in the same year. (d) Some say that he dyed *July*, and that he did not obtain of *Hadrian* what he was come forth to do. *Charls Calvus*, and *Lewis* King of *Germany*, did divide his Kingdome amongst themselves. It seems that rather by him, then by his father, his Kingdome was called *Lorain*.

In the time of those Emperours *Charls* surnamed *Calvus*, was King of the West Countreys of *France*: he was a cunning and fraudulent Prince, thirsting after the right of others, (f) who in the thirty sixth year of *Francis*, and of our Lord 875, having heard of *Lewis* the Emperours death, flying to *Rome*, he was crowned *August* by *John* the eighth, on *Christmas* day. (g) Whereupon he raised his spirit very high, and after the *Grecians* custome, walked with a Surplice. After this he dyeth in the Moneth of *October*, in the year of our Lord eight hundred seventy seven, as the third of his Empire, saith *Floardus*; after the death of his father *Pius*, thirty seven years; being poisoned by *Sedecias* the Jew, whom he employed for one of his chief Physicians. His brother *Lewis* King of

of *Germany* dyed in the year of our Lord eight hundred seventy and six, leaving three sons behind, (a) *Carlemannus*, who had for his lot *Bavaria*, *Pannonia*, *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*; *Lewis*, who had the East Countreys of *France*, *Thuringia*, *Saxony*, *Friesland*, and *Lorain*; and *Charls* *Craffus*, who obtained *Almain*. Of whom, (b) *Lewis* *Calvus* repulsed back *Calvus* from the borders of *Lorain*, with a great slaughter, as he was invading the Country in the eight hundred seventy sixth year, in the Moneth of *October* and it is recorded that he died the thirteenth of *December* (c) Anno 882,

*Carlemannus* King of *Bavaria*, dyed in the 880th year of Christ, as *Pinboem*'s Chronicles do record, having a son called *Arnolphus*, of whom we shall speak hereafter.

*Charls* *Calvus* the fifth Emperour being dead, then was the sixth Elected.

Who was *Charls* *Craffus* the son of *Lewis* King of *Germany* (d) in the year 888, for they are mistaken that reckon *Lewis* *Balbus*, *Calvus*'s son amongst the Emperours: the mistake doth arise hence, (e) that he is said to have been crowned by Pope *John*, the seventh of *September*, in the year 878. but that was his kingly Coronation, and not his Imperiall, although *John* favouring *Balbus*, and for this cause being vexed by the *Romans*, he was constrained to depart the Town, as *Segebert* relates unto the year of Christ 878. Thence being gone to *Balbus*, he was a whole year with him: (f) then dyed *Balbus* three years after his father, the fourth of *April*, (g) *Palisene*: Which character happened in the year 879. which is the Sign punctually remarked by the Annals, (h) by reason of the two Eclipses that were the year before, one of the Moon the fourteenth of *October*, and the other of the Sun upon the 29th of the same Moneth, which were in the year 878. being the year immediately fore-going, that wherein *Lewis* dyed. He had by *Arnsgardis* his first wife (which afterwards, by his fathers command, he rejected) two sons, *Lewis* and *Charlemain*; and by *Adelaidis*, *Charls* the Simple whom, (i) dying, he then left in the Cradle. After a long contest then were the kings of *France* created.

(k) *Lewis* to whom by lot fell *France*, and *Normandy*, and *Charlemain*, who had *Burgandy*, and *Aquitane*, *Boson* being rejected, who was brother to *Richildis*, *Calvus*'s wife, the son in Law of *Lewis* the Emperour, son of the Emperour *Lotharius*, whom the same *Charls* *Calvus* had made king of *Provence*, in the year 878, as *Segebert* saith, as he then possessed *Lorraine*: *Hugo*, *Lotharius*'s son by *Waldrada*, dyed, (a) and *Lewis* in the year eight hundred eighty two in *August*; and *Charlemain*, also died in the eight hundred eighty fourth year of Christ.

(b) They being dead, then is *Charls* *le Gros* created Emperour in the year 885. who possessed not this new kingdome of *France* longer then unto the year 889, which he was forced to forsake by reason of his distemper, both in mind and body. Having had ill success against the *Normans*, he fell into that calamity, that he did

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

(a) Ocho. 6.  
c. 6.  
(b) Ann. Pith.  
Aimo. 5. c. 33.  
& 34.

(c) Pith. An.  
Herman. Aimo.  
5. c. 40.

(d) Aimo. 5.  
c. 40. Ocho.  
Frif. 6. c. 8.  
(e) Aimo. 5.  
c. 37.

(f) Ann. Pith.  
(g) Aimo c. 39.

(h) Ann. Pith.  
& Regino. Siegb.

(i) Aimo 5. c.  
42. and Floriac.  
Chr. Fragan.  
(k) Cap. Cal.  
Aimo. 5. c. 40.  
Siegb. 878.

(a) Aimo c. 5.  
39. & 40.

(b) Ocho. Frif.  
1. 6. c. 8. and 9.  
Siegb. Herm.

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

did beg his sustenance of *Arnulphus*, son to *Charlemain* king of *Bavaria*. He died in the year 888. *Otto Frisigenfis*, *Hermannus*, and *Regino* do commend him for his piety: but yet he is not prayed in that he was jealous without cause of his Wife, which was a most chaste woman, and that he divorced her from himself.

*Charls* being taken out of the way, both the *Romane* Empire and the Kingdom of *France*, were for a time in a floting condition. And so is *Berengarius*, son to *Ebergardus*, Duke of *Forojulium*, made King. (c) *Wido*, being cast out of hope of enjoying the Kingdom of *France*, after *Calvus*, who was son to *Lambertus*, Duke of *Spoleum*, he takes up Arms against *Berengarius*, and having overcome him, forceth him to fly to *Arnulphus*, whom the hope of enjoying *Italy* soon led thither. (d) Now *Wido* enjoying the name of Emperour, died in *Italy*, in the year 894. (e) whose son *Lambertus* who in the eight hundred ninety and second year of Christ, had received the title of Emperour, was killed Anno 899, as he was a hunting.

Then *Arnulphus*, *Charlemaine's* son, as *Lambert* was yet alive, was created Emperour of the West, by Pope *Formosus*, in the year of Christ eight hundred ninety six: (f) who from Bishop of *Torquemada* was made Pope of *Rome*, in the year eight hundred ninety one, *Sergius* being ejected out of the place, who by violence had invested himself of the Priests dignity. But *Arnulphus* was Emperour but three years; for he died eaten up by Vermin (g) in the year 899, the fifth of *December*, as *Luithprandus* records.

Now *Formosus* being dead in the year eight hundred ninety six, he was digged out of his Grave the year following by *Stephen* his successour, and being unclothed of his holy Garments, and three of his fingers being cut off, he was cast into the *Tyber*, because he had left his first seat and usurped the *Roman* See. But this his act was recalled and nullified by the Councell assembled at *Revenus* by *John* the ninth, in the year 898, as *Sigonius* saith, who records the decrees of that Councell, (a) of which also treateth *Rubens*, Others, as *Baronius*, say that it was in the year 904. and *Sigebert* would have it the year before.

In the mean while, the *French* by *Arnulphus's* consent, elect (b) *Otto* or rather *Odo* the Earl of *Paris* for their King, in the year 889, untill that *Charls* son to *Balbus Lewis* came to age: he was son to *Robert* Duke of *France*, (c) who was slain by the Normans, in the year 878. And he governed the *French* nine years, unto the year (d) 898, when dying the third of *January*, he charged and be-fought all the other Princes of *France*, to confer and yield the King-dome, to *Charls*, *Lewis Balbus's* son, with whom he had already waged war for some years: But *Sigebert* saith that the *Frankis*, *Odo* tarrying too long in *Aquitaine*, recalled *CHARLS* to the Crown, being then about twelve years old (as *Sigebert* saith); but we shall shew afterward that he was older, since which time there is a Civil War between *CHARLS* and (e) *Odo*. The History of Pope *Joanna*, was about this time, for she is recorded to have been in the year eight hundred fifty and fourth year of Christ, in both the Chronicles of *Marianus Scotus*, and *Sigebert*, and

(c) Lukh.  
Prand. l. i. c. 6.

(d) Maria.  
(e) Lukh. i.  
c. 20. Otto  
Prif. 6. c. 13.  
Sigon. 6. de  
Reg. Ital.  
Onurf. 3. de  
Rom. Princ.  
(f) Lukh. i. 8.  
Herna. Otto.  
Prif.

(g) Regino  
Luith. Maria.  
Lamp.  
Shaph. Herm.  
Sig. 903. Ursp.

(a) Lib. 5.

(b) Regino  
Fræg. Pith.

(c) Regino.

(d) Reg. Sig.  
Odorapnus.

(e) Sigebert.  
de obs. Par. l. 2.

and she is reckoned between *L. 0* the 4th, and *Benedict* the 3d. But there is no mention made of this *Joane* in any of the emended ex-emplaries: and also (f) *Photius*, who lived in that same Age, names *Benedictus*, *Nicolaus*, and then *John*, without interlining any other between them; that it might appear that this sporting fable was feigned by some idle Jesters.

This is that *Leo* the 4th, (g) who added to old *Rome*, new *Rome*, which he called *Leonina*, when the *Saracens* over-ran *Italy*, de-feated the *Venetians* Fleet, and affrighted the Romans farre and near.

In the time of *Lotharius* the Emperour, flourished (h) *Rhabanus Maurus*, who from a Monk was made Bishop of *Mentz* in *Germany*: and *Hincmarus* Bishop of *Rhemes* in *France*, under King *Charles Cal-vm*. (i) By these two was refuted and condemned *Godescalus* Monk of *Orbes*, who is thought to have renewed the Doctrine of the predestinarians. And he being convicted in the Synod at *Mentz*, wherein *Rabanus* was President, and by it condemned in the year 848, and in the same year having received the same sen-tence at *Rhemes* of *Hincmarus*; after he was whipt, he was forced to cast himself his own books into the fire, and then was cast into a prison: But *Florus*, Master-Deacon of *Lyons*, in the name of the Church of *Lyons* refuted *Hincmarus*, and reprehended and dis-appointed the whole transaction against *Godescalus*, by publishing a learned and exquisite Treatise. (a) In the time of *Nicolaus*, the first, *Johannes Scotus* a very learned man lived then in *France*, he turned *Dionysius's* books into Latine, concerning which inter-pretation Pope *Nicolaus* writ to *Charles Calvus*.

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

(f) Leo Al-  
latus Com-  
de Joanna  
Pap.  
(g) Anast. in  
Leone.

(h) Siegb.

(i) Conc. Gal.  
Tom. 3. p. 64.  
8cc.

(a) Tom. 3.  
Conc. Gal.  
p. 352.

## CHAP. XI.

Of the Normans Incurfions, and of the divers overthrowes they gave at feveral times to the French, and of Normandy (then call'd Neuf-Stria) granted to them to inhabit.

IN this time the *Norman's* Incurfions and Robberies were fre-quent all over *France*, and very hartfull to all the Provinces thereof: They are reported to be *Danes* by Nation, and that they came out of *Scanzia* which now is called *Norway*, (b) who, when *Charles* the Great swayd the Scepter, had resolved to sail along the North Seas of *France*, to pillage and plunder the Sea Coast; and to indammage and over-run the borders of *Frisland* and *Scotland*; but because that there the limits and Confines of the Empire were strongly fortified, their assaults were soon refelled, and those their assaults they endeavoured to continue during *Lewis Pius*; but after his death, (c) when as the whole Empire was tossed by civill commotions the Souldiers being drawn away from the Sea-garri-fons, that so the maritime Countrey might be destitute of forces, then began they more boldly to run abroad and make excursions

(b) Annal.  
Pith. an.  
Bio. 8cc.

(c) Chron.  
Beseuse in  
Script. Nort.  
p. 22.

T t

without



Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

(d) Gesta  
North.

(a) Chron.  
Turon. in hist.  
North. p. 25.  
& Odo. clun.  
Traict. de re-  
verf. St. Mart.  
in Bibl. clun.  
p. 117.

(b) Gesta  
North. &  
Chron. verus  
Scriptum.

(c) Gesta  
North. theg.  
Odo. Clun. &  
Chron. Turon.  
Sig.

Transportation  
of St. Martin.

(d) Gesta  
North.

(c) Chron.  
Fuld. in Hist.  
North. p. 15.

(a) Gesta  
North.

without any danger, and then they no more fell upon pyrratical excursions, but made lawfull and gallant Expeditions into the heart of the Kingdom. (d) In the year immediately following, *Lewis* death, being the 841 year of Christ, having on a suddain seized upon *Rouen*, they spoiled and destroyed all with fire and sword, and having run and destroyed all along the *Seine*, they got infinite store of plunder and booty. (a) In the same year being gone out under their General *Hasting*, against those of *Tours*, as they had environed the City round about, they were repulsed from the walls of the City by *St. Martin's* help, upon the 4th of May. (b) Two years after, they were conveyed and advanced into the passages of the River *Liger*, by the treason of Count *Lambert*, who had revolted from the French to *Nomenius of Britain*; they take the Towne of *Nentz*, where they put to death the Bishop as he was employed in the holy Ceremony on the Lords day, with many Clergy men, and a great multitude of men and women: Some Annals do record that this was done in the year 843, but *Regin* refers it to the issue of 853, at which time he writes that the *Normans* fleet aboard the banks of *Liger*, to which the *Fuldenian* Chronicle and *Sigebert* do consent: but it is very like that in each year they invaded (c) *Nentz* by their entry at the River *Liger*, also in the latter year after they had plundered and sacked the Town being advanced against those of *Tours*, and so being shut up by the Channels of the two Rivers *Care* and *Liger* that were exceedingly encreased, and so being hindered from approaching to the City, they burnt all the suburbs and parts adjacent to the City together with the Monastery that was called the *great*, so renowned by reason of *St. Martin's* habitation in it, having sacrificed an hundred and twenty Fryers in it, and exposed Abbot *Heberne* to cruell Torments, and thence having plundered the Countrey of *Le Main*, as the report was, that they were returning against *Tours*, the Clergy carried *St. Martin's* body first all about Orleans, and thence amongst the *Antisidorian*s, where having been kept for some years, it became famous by several and strange miracles; which when those of *Tours*, all things being pacified, went to fetch back and redemand, and that the *Antisidorian*s refused to deliver again, *Ingelgerius* Earl of *Angers*, having recovered it by force of arms, carried it back into its former seat in the year of Christ 885: (d) But the *Normans* upon the 6th of November, in that year 853, destroyed the City of *Tours*, with *St. Martin's* Cathedral, and other Churches that were all burnt, and also *Julianus* of *Angier*. (e) By which sacriledges and wicked deeds, the Deity being moved to anger, there arose civill divisions and wars amongst them; wherein besides an infinite number of Commons, the Nobility was almost all destroyed, so that the royal line was all destroyed by it, but one onely child; The *Fuldenian* Annals say, that this happened in the year of Christ 854. (a) And in the year following, as they went against the City of *Poitiers*, they were routed with a great slaughter by the *Guyannians*,

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

(h) Gesta  
North.

(c) Ead. Gesta.  
St. Croix the

Cathedral of  
Orleans mira-  
culously preserv-  
ed.

(d) Gesta  
North.

(e) Ead. Gesta.  
and Rhegn.

(f) Gesta  
North.

(a) Rheg. Si-  
geb. A. 875.

*nians*, insomuch, that not many above 300 escaped: But two years after, being the 857th of Christ, having assaulted *Paris*, they burnt down the Suburbs, and divers Churches in them, amongst whom was the Church of *St. Genovesa*: the Citizens obtained of them with a vaste summe of money, that they burnt no more.

(b) Then being carried, after a long and vaste circuit between Spain and Africk, by the passage out of the *Mediterranean* Sea into the Ocean, and going upon the *Rhosne*, they spoiled all the Countreys along unto *Valentia*, and making an excursion into Italy, they on a suddain plundered *Pisa* in *Thufcia*. Being returned to *Paris* (c) in the year 861, they burnt the Cathedral of *St. Vincent*, or rather *St. German*, which had four years before been redeemed with a vast summe of money, as we have already shewed. They made also an excursion in Orleans, and the Countrey all about, in the year 865, and having burnt the Monastery of *St. Floris*, they destroyed the City at the same time. In which Town all the other Churches being consumed, the onely Cathedral called *St. Croix*, could not be destroyed by fire, although the Barbarians cast upon it an infinite number of faggots and billers.

At that time did *Charls Calvus* reign in France, (d) who being more unable by his mind then by his power, to withstand and repell such calamity, he unworthily made a League with them, with a great summe of money in the year 867; (e) nevertheless, their rage could not be so restrained, but that in the same year under *Hasting* their General, being carried along the River *Liger*, being joyned with the Brittaines, they destroyed as they were wont to do the Countrey of *Nentz*, *Angers*, *Lemain* and *Tours*; but thence returning loaded with great booty and plunder, and being set upon by *Rupert* the Governour, and *Ragnold* Duke of *Aquitane*, and having slain them both, and routed the French, they safely retired themselves with their booty into their Navies, (f) the Annals record, that the Barbarians at that time were not above four hundred, and that by so small a party their Generals were slain, and their great Armies defeated, one of whom wrongfully detained the Monastery of *St. Hilary*, and the other that of *St. Martin*. *Hugo* surnamed *Abbas* supplied *Rupert's* office, and, as well as they, was Superintendent over some certain Monasteries in the office of an Abbot; for his two sons *Eudo*, or rather *Odo* and *Rutbert* could not yet by reason of their young age assume the dignity upon them.

(a) The Barbarians being puffed up by this successe, that they might leave off pyrracy, and settle themselves in some certain place in France, they took possession of *Angiers* then destitute of her Citizens who were all fled away, and resolve to fortifie it, and bring their Wives and children with all their goods into it: At which *Charls* being displeased, he calls to his help *Solomon*, petty King of *Guien*, and having gathered a strong Army, he besieges the Town: but *Charls* being tired, and his Army wearied and decay-



Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

(b) Rheg.

(c) Gest. Nort.  
Fuld. Chr.  
Rheg.  
Ann. 5. c. 61.

(d) Ibid.

(e) Gest.  
Nort.  
Rheg. Sig. A.  
880.

(f) Gest.  
Nort. Rheg.  
Sig. A. 885.

(a) Abbo. Flo.  
ri ac Gest.  
Nort.

(b) Joan. Af.  
fer.

Pich. editus  
anre Abbonem  
F. 11. Chr.  
Toti ge of  
Paris.

(c) Rheg.

(d) A. 888.

(e) Abbo. I. 2.  
de obfid. Lat.  
p. 476.  
Edit. Pich.

(f) Otho. Frif.  
1. 6. c. 11. Si-  
geb. A. 895.

ed, what with famine, what with pestilence, and by the tedious-  
ness of the siege, suffered them to depart the Town upon Articles  
in the year of Christ 873, having received a summe of mo-  
ney.

(b) King *Carlus* and his son *Lenis* being dead, *Lewis Karloman-*  
*nus's* brother restrained with some good successe these *Normans*  
from farther pillaging *Belgia* and *Somona*, in the year 881. (c) But  
they having turned their courses and excursions into that part of  
Germany, which is on this side the *Rhine*, they left every where  
Monuments of their rage, they then burnt the Palace of *Aquis-*  
*grane*, and the City *Trier* and *Cullen* in the 882 year of our Lord.

(d) *Charls Crassus* who was then Emperour, mistrusting his  
strength, he concluded peace with their Kings *Godefridus* and *Sige-*  
*fridus*, having yielded to them *Friesland*, and given them many  
great gifts. (e) Some Annals adde, that *Godefridus* having been  
baptized, and admitted into the Church, and having the Empe-  
rour for his Godfather, married *Gisla* or rather *Gilla*, King *Lotha-*  
*rius's* daughter.

(f) The *Normans* being departed thence, advance their Forces  
against *Carlomanus*, who, his brother *Lewis* being dead, reigned  
alone in France, and screws from him a good summe of money,  
and charge him with a tribute for the future, Anno 883, but he  
dying the year following, they returned again into his Kingdom  
to plunder and sack it with a puissant Army, and they said, That  
they might lawfully thus do, because that they had made no peace  
with any but with the King. Whereby the Princes being affright-  
ed, they desire *Charls Crassus* the Emperour to take the kingdom  
of France upon himself, hoping and assuring themselves to be well  
garded and secured by his Armies and power, who was ruler of  
to many Nations against the attempts and invasions of the *Nor-*  
*mans*; but they were much deceived in their hope.

(a) For the Barbarians having a stronger Army then this King,  
did hazard to besiege *Paris*, (b) in the year 886, but the City  
was relieved, and the siege raised by *Odo* a valiant Commander  
son to *Rutbert*, and *Gysline* the Bishop, who defended it, and they  
returned against it in the year 887; until that *Charls* in vain assault-  
ing them, (c) at length made composition with them, granting them  
to go into *Neustria* which had rebelled against him, and to sack it  
and pillage it: (d) *Sigebert* declares, that all that part of France  
was granted to the *Normans*, not to spoyl it, but to possess it by a  
perpetual right and privilege.

(e) That peace was concluded, as it appears in the moneth of  
March, in the year 887, and *Charls* retired thence in *November*  
following, neither did he long after this enjoy his Kingdom, nor  
his life, for the Kingdom was taken away from him; And *Arn-*  
*nulfus* was made Emperour in his place, and *Odo Roberts* son was  
made King of France, who both did not a little endamage the  
*Normans*. (f) *Arnulphus* as they were making incursion into *Lo-*  
*vain*, cut them almost all off in the year 893. *Abbo* of Florence, a  
man

man of great piety, and renowned for the glory of his Martyrdom,  
writes thus much touching *Odo's* warrs against the *Normans*. The  
*Normans*, *Charls Crassus* being yet alive, contrary to their agree-  
ment of peace with him, being again returned against *Paris*, were  
at length hemmed in by the *Parisians*, and so being constrained  
to intreat pardon, they ingaged their faith never again to return  
to it, being dismissed upon these terms; yet soon after according  
to their custome, they returned and made great slaughter and  
robberies, at which the *Parisians* being exceedingly moved, they  
put to death as many of the *Normans* as they found (now there  
were about some five hundred). After this, when *Charls Crassus*  
was dispossessed, *Odo* having accepted the title of King, fought  
valiantly against the *Normans*, and routed 18 thousand of them  
upon Mount *Faulcon*, (which is a hill near the Suburbs of the Ci-  
ty) and this was done in the year 898.

(g) The *Normans* last attempt against *Paris* in the year 890, (g) Rheg.  
had no better successe then the former; so that despairing the ta-  
king of it, at last they went away. (a) Some Annals assert, that  
this last siege lasted seven years; but I think that by intervals of  
time, they at divers times renewed the siege; for *Sigebert* saith,  
that they did so for some years, and that whilest *Charls* the Simple  
reigned after *Odo's* death, the *Normans* under the command of  
*Rollo*, made excursions into *Paris*, over-running all the Countrey  
about; and this is also recorded as worth memory by ancient  
Historians, that as *Chartres* was by them besieged the Virgin *Ma-*  
*ry's* smock being carried, which *Charls Calvus* had brought from  
*Beleson* into that place, cast in them such a terroure and fear, that  
they fled away headlong, and in a confusion. This is mentioned  
in one (b) Chronicle to have been in the 6th year of *Arnulphus*,  
(c) and in another to have been seven years after *Odo's* death,  
which is thought to be the 905th year of Christ; (d) some say,  
that it was in the 911th year of our Lord, when the battel was  
fought by *Richard* and *Robert*, the two Generals, near *Chartres*,  
with the *Normans*, who by them were defeated, of which ex-  
pediton (e) *Dudo* makes mention.

(f) At length, *Rollo* General of the *Normans* by the means of  
*Franco* Bishop of *Rozen*, made peace and alliance with *Charls* the  
simple, and *Charls* gave him his daughter *Gisla* after he was Bap-  
tized and admitted into the Church, with all the *Maritime* coun-  
treys of France, which extends from the River *Epta* unto the Sea,  
and is from them called *Normandy*, *Robert* Duke of the French,  
was his Godfather, and was by him called *Robert*, (g) this was  
done in the year 712, as *Dudo* saith, who farther adds this; That  
*Neustria* by reason of their frequent excursions and devastations,  
being uninhabited and ruined, and not being sufficient to yield  
them plenty enough, then King *Charls* granted them the lesser *Bri-*  
*tain*, whereupon they might live.

And thus did the *Normans*, after they had over-run, almost by  
the space of a hundred years, a great part of Europe, and chiefly  
France,

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

(g) Rheg.

(a) Besunses  
in hist. North.  
Dudo. l. 2.

(b) Turon.  
p. 26. hist.  
North.

(c) Amba-  
zienfi. p. 25.  
ibid.

(d) In veteris  
membrana.

(e) Lib. 2.  
(f) Dudo.  
l. 2. gesta  
North. Flo-  
riac. Chr.  
p. 34. Hist.  
North.

(g) Orderic.  
cu. l. 3.

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
to 900.

France, which they had exceedingly molested by their faggaging and pillaging of it, at last they obtained in it a certain habitation, and thence going against other Nations, they got a great renown in War, and the power and dominion of some of those Nations.

## CHAP. XII.

Of the Empire of the East under Michael, and his Mother Theodora, Barda, Basilus, Macedo, Leo the Philosopher, and of St. Ignatius, Photius, and of the eighth Synod.

(a) r. Curo-  
pal. Zon. Ced.  
Glycas. Const.  
Manass.  
Michael and  
Theodora.  
The Bulgari-  
ans converted  
to Christ.

(a) **T**heophilus dying, left his son Michael to be Emperour of the East, under the regency of his Mother Theodora, a religious and Heroick woman, which, restoring the holy images, created Methodius a very godly man Patriarch, she turned away Bogoris king of Bulgaria, and drove him back as he was going to war against the Romans: and he by his sisters exhortation, which being taken Prisoner in war, had embraced the Christian faith at Rome, gave up his name with all his people to Christ, which deed the Pithian Annals relate to have been in the year of Christ eight hundred sixty five.

(b) Sigeb. 855.

(b) It is recorded that for quietness and privacy sake he became a Monk, but understanding that his son, who was his successor, did ill govern the Common-wealth, and intended to return to his former superstition, he took again the Kingdom upon himself, and having put out the eyes of this his son, and conferred the authority and dominion upon his younger son, he returned into a Monastery.

Michael's sloathfullness, and his Uncle Barda's ambition, troubled and molested this so happy and flourishing Empire: for by this mans counsell Michael drove his Mother Theodora to a private life in the year 855. (c) after she had ruled the Common-wealth, 14. years. Then all things being carried on according to Barda's will, who was made Curopalates, then Cesar, Michael gave himself over to all sorts of games, sports, and drinking. (d) At last Bardas Cesar by Michaels consent, together with that of Basilus Macedo the Protestatour, is slain the 5th of Aprill in the year 866. Indiſ. 14. as Curopalates saith: (e) After this, Basilus is made Emperour by Michael, the twenty sixth of May on a Whitsunday, who as he desired to recall him from his wickedness, and loose conversation to an amendment of life, he provoked his hatred against himself and by it moved him to treachery. Now to avoid these snares Basilus slew Michael as he was drunken with Wine, because he had offered the Government to a Water-man, after he had ruled the Empire 25. years, that is 11. alone, and 14. with his Mother.

During Michaels Empire, St. Ignatius, son to the Emperour Curopalates, made Eunuch by Leo the Armenian, and shut up into a Monastery

(c) Curo-  
pal. Bardas.

(d) Idem. et  
Nictas in S.  
Igna.

(e) Eutrop.  
Ced.

Monastery, was created (a) Constantinopolitan Patriarch, after Methodius in the year 847, and thence being expelled by Bardas means 11. years after, because he would not excommunicate Theodora after she was degraded, and yet had driven Bardas out of the Communion, because of his customary incest with his sons wife, in whose place, Photius a laick man was ordained by Bardas, and so Ignatius was condemned by him in a Councill, who likewise made no scruple to passe sentence upon Nicholas.

(b) Basilus Macedo, Michael being taken away, ruled alone the Empire in the year 876. he was of low extraction born in Macedonia, as Zonaras writes, detracting from Curopalates, and secretly speaking ill of him because he did fetch Basilus's pedigree from the Arsacides: for Basilus's Predecessours had their Originall from Armenia. He refreshed and restored the Common-wealth which was undone by Michaels sloathfullness; for he committed the Magistracy to very honest persons, and willed them to execute Justice and equity, and he himself sometimes appeared in the Judgment-seat. Also he had a prosperous success in his war again the Saracens, and the Manichees by Chrysocoris his General as they molested and troubled the Romans, and he in the first place was a true lover of the Catholick faith, and took great care to preserve it. St. Ignatius was recalled from banishment by him, and Photius rejected, against whom, in the 869th year was the 8th Provinciall Synod convoked at Constantinople, by which Photius was banished. But in the year 878, at which time Ignatius died, he recovered the seat, being recalled by Basilus, who was cheated by the delusions of one Santabarenum, and of Photius himself. He governed the Empire with (c) Michael one year, and alone 19. and he died in the year 889. of Christ. At which time Leo, Basilus's son, or, as other do say, of Michael (d) who gave Eudoxia his concubine whom he had begotten with child, to Basilus for his Wife, attained the Empire of the East: he was much addicted to the Study of Philosophy, whence he was called by the name of Philosopher, (e) Basilus had put him up in prison for suspicion by reason of the calumnies of Theodorus Santabarenum the Monk, and at the Senate's request had released him: But as soon as he took the Empire upon him, he revenged the injury upon Santabarenum, and his friend and upholder Photius the Patriarch, whom he turned out of his seat. He fought with a bad success against the Bulgarians, their King Simeon disturbing the peace, but then he overcame them by the help of the Turks. He governed the Empire (a) 25. years, and three Moneths; he died in the year 911, the 11th of June.

Anno 841  
of Christ,  
500.

(a) Nicetas in  
Ignat. Curo-  
pal. Zon. Ced. A-  
nast. pr. in 8.  
Synod.

Photius con-  
demns Ignatius.  
(b) Curo-  
pal. Zon. Ced.  
Glyc.

She 8th Synod

(c) Curo-  
pal. Ced.

(d) Zon-  
Glyc.

(e) Curo-  
pal. Zon. Ced.  
Glyc. Man.

(a) Zonaras  
Curo-  
pal. 11.

## CHAP. XIII.

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 966.

The Kings of Italy, and the tumult under Vido, Lambert, Berengarius, Radulphus, Hugo, and of the Germans first entrance into the Kingdom of Italy.

From the year 900, or thereabouts, unto the 966.

Afterwards there was a continual commotion of civil wars, especially in Italy and France, the Kingdoms sometimes being for these, and sometimes for those: of which vicissitudes and alterations, I shall observe the summe.

Vido and his son Lambert being dead, the principality of Italy fell upon Berengarius; (b) but Lewis being stirred up to be his competitor in the Province on this side the Alps by Adelbert Marquis of Tuscya, Boson's son, by Hermingarde, daughter to Lewis Junior, the Emperour, whom we have mentioned to be born when Lotharius was Emperour, he having put Berengarius to flight, he was created Emperour at Rome by the Pope in the year (c) 901, who three years after, by the Treachery of the said Adelbert, by whom he was called, being taken at Verona by Berengarius, was deprived of his Eyes and the Empire, in (d) August in the year 904, as Regin. saith; but Godfridus Viterb. asserts, that it was in the year following; so also Otto Frisingensis.

(c) Then Berengarius his competitor being cut off, he again obtained the Kingdom of Italy, and was anointed by John the 10th in September, Anno 915, as (1) Sigonius sheweth by his Bulls; but Adelbert Marquis of Eporedia, and some other Nobles of Italy called (a) Rodulphus King of Burgundy at Berengarius's long delay, to take the Kingdom of Italy. And he not long delaying, he went thither (b) in the year 922, as Flodoard saith, and having routed Berengarius's Army, he was called King of Italy. Berengarius is killed by the treachery of one Flambert (c) in the year 924, at Verona, whither he had fled from the snares that were laid for him, he had a daughter called Chisela, by whom Adelbert Marquis of Eporedia begat Berengarius, who was afterward King of Italy.

Rodulphus kept not long the Kingdom of Italy after Berengarius's death, because it was conferred by the Italian's conspiracy upon Hugo Earl of Provence (d) in the year 926. (e) Luisprandus saith, That he was a valiant man, lover of piety as well as of learning; but that waxing somewhat lascivious, he had many Concubines, but that he begat of his lawful wife Alda, Lotharius, who afterward reigned with him; Rodulphus went into Burgundy, (f) where he dyed in the year 937, having reigned 48 years, beginning at the 898 year of our Lord, at which time he put the crown upon his head, and was the first King of Burgundy, (as Siebert saith) or rather of Gallia on this side the Alps, as Flodoard in his Chronicles calls him in the year 937, who writes, that his son Conradus succeeded him.

Then

Then in the year of Christ 926, Hugo began to reign in Italy, who was Earl of Arles, (g) and remained in that dignity about some 20 years: At that time Marosia, Pope Sergius the third's Strumpet, oppressed Rome by her usurpation and tyranny; and of her he begat John, who also afterwards was Pope; And Adelbertus Marquis of Tuscya, begat also Albericum by her: which after she had married Vuido, Adalbertus's son by Bertha, he being dead, married with Hugo, bringing him for her dowry the Principality of Rome, in the year of Christ 928; but he was soon after ejected thence by Albericus, Marosia's son: Then he took for his co-partner in the Kingdom his son Lotharius, in the year of our Lord 932, having given him to his wife Adeleidis, Rodulphus's daughter.

At length, Berengarius, the second Berengarius's Nephew, having plotted new practices against Hugo, he fled to Otho King of Germany in the year 939, thence being returned into Italy six years after, viz. (a) in the year 945, he thus covenanted with Hugo, who then was forsaken of all, that he with his son Lotharius should content themselves with the title of King, & that the management of the Kingdom and of all things should be left to Berengarius; so Hugo having left his son Lotharius in Italy, he returned into Provence in the year 947, two years after Lotharius's being dead.

Berengarius took upon him the title of King (b) in the year 950, together with his son Adalbertus, to whom intending to give for wife Adeleidis, Lotharius's widow, she invited Otho King of Germany into Italy, (c) and married him in the year 951. Berengarius, after petitions and requests made to Otho, obtained afterwards the kingdom of Italy for some 12 years, untill that all the Italians being offended at the Government of this Tyrant, fled again to Otho for ayd, who being gone into Italy, (d) in the year 962, received the Crown of the Empire of Pope John, Albericus's son, and was saluted the first Emperour of Germany; he two years after led away (e) Berengarius into Bavaria, who at last dyed (f) in the year 966 at Bamberg.

The most remarkable achievement that Hugo did above others, is his disturbing and dispossessing the Saracens of Fraxine's Castle, (g) which they had possessed for some years, situated in Cottia, and strengthened by the natural situation of the Alps, and therefore inaccessible and impregnable, and thence sallying and making excursions into the neighbour-Provinces, had been a terror to the Christians, endamaging them not a little; Hugo put them to flight, by casting artificial fire into it in the year 841, as Siebert writes.

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 966.

(g) Sig. &  
Onuf.  
Luth. 2.  
c. 13.

(a) Flodoard.

Berengarius  
King of Italy.

(b) Flod.

(c) Regin.  
Suppl. Flod.

(d) Flod. reg.  
Lamb.  
Schaph. Joan.  
Villa 3. c. 3.  
(e) Lamb.  
(f) Reg.  
Suppl.

(g) Luth.

(b) Luth. 2.  
c. 10. Regino.  
Marian. Gotfr.  
Viterb. Joan.  
Villan. 1. 3.  
ch. 4.

(c) Diplo. eju.  
apud Sigon. 6.  
de reg. Ital.  
Onuf. 3. de  
Rom. Prin.  
(d) Regino  
Gotfr. Otto. 6.  
ch. 15.

(c) Luth.  
1. 2.

(f) Sigo. 6.  
de reg. Ital.

(a) Luth. 2.  
c. 26.

(b) Sigon. 6.  
de reg. Ital.  
Flodoard.  
Onuf. 3.  
Rom. Prin.  
(c) Flod. in  
Chron.  
Luth. c. 23.  
Sigo.

(d) Flod.  
(e) Luth. 3.  
c. 3. & 5.

(f) Flod.  
Chr. Suppl.  
Regino.

## CHAP. XIV.

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

*The Kings of Germany, and then the Emperours of it, since the year 900, unto 985, Conrad, Henrick Auceps, Otto I. Otto II. And those things worthy of memory that came to passe in the west under them.*

During this time, *Lewis*, son to *Arnulphus* the Emperour, is elected in Germany by the Princes, (h) in the year 900: he reigned two years, but he neither had the Crown, nor the Title of Emperour; (i) For the Hungarians as he reigned, over-running Germany, and having overcome him, carried away much plunder and booty; (a) he dyed in the year 911, and with him ended the posterity of the *Carolians*, as (b) *Otto Frisingensis* saith.

And in his place did succeed (c) *Conrad*, the son of *Conrad*, who was slain by *Adalbert* or rather *Albert*, Earl of the Franks, in the year 905, and obtained the kingdom of Germany Anno 912; (d) yet some of the chiefest denied his command, but he adjoynd them to himself with a great deal of discretion; seven years are attributed to his reign, which seem to end in the year 918; at which time *Marianus* and (e) *Tribemius* say, that he dyed the 10th of June. (f) It is said, that dying, he enjoyed his Princes not to choose any other Successor, then *Henrick* son of *Otho* Duke of Saxony, of *Vitikingus*'s stock, who was brought by *Charls* the Great to embrace the Christian faith.

Then was *Conrad* succeeded by *Henrick*, surnamed the Fowler, because he was much given to fowling, (g) in the year 919, who obtained a memorable victory over the *Hungarians*, as they spoiled and wasted Germany. *Sigebert* records two victories of great note, the first in the 15th, the other in the 33 of his reign. (h) *Luitprandus* records the first, and asserts, that he obtained it from and by the special providence of God, because of the vow he had made to destroy utterly the Simoniack heresie; the which *Sigebert* saith, was in the 922 year of Christ; and *Flodoard* in his *Chronicles* saith, That the last was in the year 933; after which the Germans ceased to pay tribute to the Saracens, saith *Sigebert*: He governed the Empire 17 years, and dyed the (i) 6th of July, in the 60th year of his age, (k) in the year of Christ 936, as he was preparing his journey to Rome. Thence he took away from *Rudolph* King of the Burgundians by force of Arms *Constantinus*'s Spear that was adorned with Christ's nailes; which afterwards was wont to be carried before the Emperours; *Sigebert* saith, that he got it in the year of our Lord 929.

*Otho* son to *Henrick* the Fowler by *Malthides*, daughter to *Theodorick* Prince of the Saxons, was inaugurated king of Germany, (l) in the year 936, and obtained the kingdom some (m) 37 years, and was surnamed *Great*, not more by name then by desert. The

*Slavonians*, or rather *Bohemians* were subdued by him after fourteen years War that he had with their King, who had slain *St. Vincent*. *Sigebert* observes that this was in the year 968. And then also the *Belge*, or rather the *Lorains*, under their General *Gisbert*, husband to *Gerberga*, *Otho*'s sister, with whom *Henrick*, *Otho*'s Brother, and other of the chiefest men had conspired: (a) who were all conquered by *Otho*, in the year nine hundred thirty nine, at which time *Lewis* King of the *Franks* of the West, the son of *Charls* the Simple, having made an invasion into *Alsacia*, was routed by *Otho*, and the Kingdome of *Lorain* came under the Conquerours power, (b) and afterwards remained under the Dominion of the *Almains*, and thence being invited into *Italy* by *Adelaide*, Widow of *Lotharius*, *Hugo*'s son, he married her, after he had betrothed the daughter of *Edmond* King of *England*. *Sigebert* remarks, that it was in the year 934. At what time he brought *Berengarius* the second under his subjection, and defeated the *Hungarians*, (c) in the year nine hundred fifty and five, inasmuch that it is reported that not above seven of them of their whole Army remained alive.

(d) Which Victory *Otho* himself ascribed to the Merits of *St. Adalricus* the Priest of the *Augustines*, who being illustrious for his holiness, was created Bishop, (e) in the year 924. and having officiated 50. years, he died in the 973. by *Herman*'s testimony. At length *Otho* being gone to *Rome*, he was saluted Emperour in the year 962.

So the *Roman* Empire of the West descended from the posterity of *Charls* the Great unto the *Lombards*, and from them to the *Saxons*, (f) of whom *Otho* was the first Emperour. Although some *Germans* do reckon *Conrade* and *Henrick Auceps*, amongst the Emperours: who nevertheless are omitted by others, because they were neither anointed, nor crowned by the *Roman* Pontiff; wherefore he is esteemed the first of the *Almains*.

(g) *Otho* the Great was created Emperour of the West, and Crowned by Pope *John* the twelfth, in the year 962. But after he was departed out of *Rome*, *John*, who was *Albericus*'s son, being called before that *Ostavianus*, revolting from *Otho*, called to *Rome* *Adalbert*, *Berengarius*'s son. Against whom being returned with an Army, and having put them both to flight, he convoked a Synod of Bishops at *Rome*, wherein *John* was abrogated from his Pontificate, and *Leo* was ordained in his place (h) in the year of Christ 963. Again the *Romans* indiscreetly rising up in Arms, the year following were by him defeated with a great slaughter. (a) A Pope *John* in the midst of this being dead, the second of May in the year 964. was succeeded by *Benedictus*, whom the *Romans* had created Pope; but *Otho* having degraded him, fled him away prisoner into *Germany*: (b) After these things having avenged himself of the treachery of the Greeks, who then were governed by *Nicephorus Phocas*, he drove them out of *Calabria*, and *Apulia*, as some Authors do write, or made them pay tribute, as *Ditmarus* hath ob-

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

(a) Flod. Reg.  
gin.

(b) Otho. Frif.  
6. c. 19. Got.  
Viter.

(c) Reg. Herm.  
Flodoard.

(d) Oth. Frif.  
Aug. 6. c. 20.

(e) Herman.  
Otho the Em-  
perour. Charls  
posterity fail-  
ing.

(f) Vid. Otton.  
Frif. 6. c. 1. &  
2. 2. Got. Viter.  
Ulspurg.

(g) Luit. 8. c.  
6. & seq. Otton.  
Frif. 6. c. 2. 1.  
& seq. Regin.  
fig. Marian.  
Gotfr. Viter.  
Joan. Vill. 1. 4.  
c. 1.

(h) Reg. in.  
Lambert.

(a) Otton. Frif.  
Sig. reg.

(b) Witik. 3.

(h) Marian.  
Regino. Otton.  
Prif. 6. c. 15.  
Gotfr. Viterb.  
Ulspurg.  
(i) Regino  
app. Lam.  
(a) Regino  
Herra.  
(b) Marian.  
(c) Otton 6.  
c. 15.  
(d) Luit. 2.  
c. 7. Reg.  
Gotfr. Otton 6.  
c. 6. Lamb.  
Marian.  
(e) Trif. in  
Hiflan. Chr.  
(f) Luit. 2.  
c. 7. Regino.

(g) Lamb.  
Marian.  
Vuitich. 2.  
Ditm. 2.  
(h) Luit. 2.  
c. 3. & 9.

(i) Reg. Ma-  
ria. Gotfr.  
Vuitich.  
(k) Vuitich.  
1. Ulspurg.  
Gotfr. Viterb.

(l) Marian.  
Lamb. Schaf.  
Gotfr. Reg.  
(m) Gotfr.  
Viter. Vuitich.  
1. 6. c. 2.  
Ditm. 2.

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

(c) Herm. Ma-  
rian, Lamb.  
Ditm. 2. Ur-  
sper. Witi. 3.

(d) Lamb.  
(c) Witich. 3.

(f) Lam. A.  
970. Witich. 3.  
Siegb. Herm.  
Lamb. Goth.  
Ditm. 2.  
(g) Siegb.  
(h) Ditm. 3.

(i) Matian.  
Herm.  
(l) Lamb. Eg.  
Ursperg.

served in his second book, he died the fourth day before Whit-  
sunday, (c) in the year 973, being the Moneth of May, as *Uspen-  
genfis* saith, with *Witichindus*, and was buried at *Madeburg*. *Her-  
man* saith that *St. Adalricus* died the same year, the fourth of July  
on a Friday: by which token of times, is declared the year of  
Christ, which had Whitfunday upon the eleventh of May, with  
the letter E. And so *Otho* reigned about some 37. years, of which  
he was Emperour eleven years, and some Moneths.

*Otho* the second being made companion in the Government of  
the Empire by his father, and crowned by *John* the XIII. (d) in  
the year 967, (e) on Christmas-day, he alone Governed the Em-  
pire after his death, 19. years and 7 Moneths.

(i) He married *Theophania* daughter to *Constantine* the Empe-  
rour: (g) but in the year 982, he had very bad successe, fighting  
against the Greeks, who by the help of the *Saracens*, recovered *Ca-  
labria* and *Apulia*, for they wholly defeated his Army, and he by  
swimming escaping in secret, fled away: (h) *Theophania* insulting  
over the Latins, because her Countrey-people had overcome them,  
by which thing she procured against her self the hatred of the  
*Germans*: (i) *Otho* for grief of mind, falling into a distemper, dy-  
ed at *Rome* the eighth of December, (l) in the year nine hundred  
eighty three.

## CHAP. XV.

The Emperours of the EAST, *Constantine, Son of Porphyrys*  
by *Zoe, Romanus, Nicephorus Phocas, John Tzimiscus.*

**L**EO the Philosopher being dead, his Brother *Alexander* un-  
der the name of Tutor began to govern (a) the Eastern Em-  
pire in the year of Christ 911, *Constantine Porphy.* *Leo's* son by *Zoe*  
his fourth Wife being yet a very young child: for which cause  
*Nicholas* the Patriark, having prohibited *Leo* entrance into the  
Church, was deposed of his office, and *Euthymius* ordained in his  
place.

*Alexander*, as soon as he began to govern, he abrogated the dig-  
nity from *Euthymius*, and re-established *Nicholas*. And having  
spent thirteen months in the Empire without any action worthy of  
a man, much lesse of a Prince, drowning himself in lust, and  
drunkenness, he died on the seventh of June, in the year 912, ha-  
ving lost much blood by his Nose and secret parts, surfeiting him-  
self with drink, with play at Tennis-hall, and often riding with  
violence without moderation.

(b) *Constantine Porphy.* being deprived of such a Guardian,  
and that indeed not much to his damage, he governed the Empire  
at seven years of age, by the care of *Nicholas* the Patriark, and of  
other persons, to whom, *Alexander* dying, had recommended him;  
as also of *Zoe* his Mother, which having been ejected by *Alexander*

was by the consent and desire of the Tutors recalled: *Constantine*  
*Ducas* the Tyrant is subdued. The *Bulgarians*, making irruption  
under their King *Simeon*, and being put up by the Victorie that  
they had obtained, were at last overcome by *Leo Phocas*, who by  
this his successe aspiring to the Empire, in his attempt to obtain it  
was slain.

Eight years after, *Zoe*, the Emperours Mother being removed  
from the Palace, *Romanus Lecapenus*, (c) *Constantine's* son in law is  
made the guardian and father of the Emperour, by a new title  
of honour not known before that time, nor used now adays; and  
soon after upon the (d) 24 of September, in the year 919, he is  
created *Cesar*, and in December following saluted *Augustus*; and  
he in the year following advanced his son *Christopher* to the same  
honours, and his two other sons, *Steven* and *Constantine*, in the year  
928, (a) upon a Christmas day; he made also *Theophylactus* his  
son, Patriark in the place of *Steven*, when he was 16 years old,  
in which dignity he lived twenty three years in all manner of  
loosenesse and debauchedness, delighting much to breed good  
horses for the manage. *Curolopatas* saith, That he dyed the 27 of  
February, in the year 956, at which time also was the Roman  
See desiled with such lewdness and impiety by *Osavianus, Alber-  
icus's* son, who was called *John* the XII, as *Curopal.* and *Cedrinus*  
have remarked.

The Empire being established and strengthened with so many  
and so great defences, *Romanus* began to despise *Constantinus*, and  
to offer him place after himself, chiefly after he had concluded a  
league and friendship with *Peter* King of the *Bulgarians*, to whom  
he gave to wife his Niece *Christopher's* daughter; which impiety  
and unfaithfulness towards to his Prince, God punished also by  
his own son's wickedness towards him; for in the twenty sixth  
year of his association into the Empire, (b) the 16 of December,  
in the year 944. *Steven* his son having deprived his father of  
the *Augustian* dignity, banisheth him into an Island. At whose  
example *Constantinus*, *Leo's* son, being stirred up, having thrown  
out *Romanus's* Children, he began alone to rule the Empire; and  
he governed it in drunkenness and debauchedness some fifteen  
years, then he dyed (c) the 9th of November, in the year 959; it is  
reported, that *Romanus* his sons did murder him in the 54th year  
of his age, after he had ruled with his father, with his Uncle  
*Alexander*, and his Mother, 13 years, and with *Romanus* 26, and  
alone 15.

(d) He was of the same nature and disposition as his father, viz.  
of an effeminate and dissolute life; he admitted *Romanus* to the  
Empire the 959 year of Christ, who ruled with him three years  
and 4 moneths, and dyed the 24 year of his age, in the year 963.  
During his reign, *Nicephorus Phocas* recovered *Crete* by force of  
arms, from the *Saracens*, Anno 961.

After him, this *Nicephorus Phocas* ruled the Empire in the year  
963, whole filthy and covetous mind is remarked by the Annals;  
for

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

(c) Glycas  
Manasses.

(d) Curop.  
Cedr.

(a) Curop.  
Cedr.

(b) Curop.  
Cedr.

(c) Curop.  
Cedr.

(d) Curop.  
Cedr.  
Zun. Glyc.  
Const.

(a) Curop.  
Cadr. Zon.  
Glycas.  
Const. Man.

Alexander  
Emperour.

(b) Ibid.

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

(a) Europ.  
Ced. Luich.

(b) Europ.  
Ced. Glyc-  
man.

John Tzimif-  
is's Piety re-  
wards the  
Virgin Mary.

for having burthened and oppressed the Churches with many great taxes, yet he was a gallant Warriour, and had prosperous successes in his wars against the Saracens both in *Cilicia* and *Syria*, and recovered out of their hands divers Towns, whereof Antioch was one. This is that *Nicephorus* to whom *Luitprandus* was sent Ambassadour with great magnificence by *Otho*; which Ambassage of his, he hath described in a particular book; he was killed by the treachery of his wife *Theophanon*, and *John Tzimisces* the 11th of December, in the year of our Lord 969, whose death is the more remarked by reason of a great Sun's eclipse, which is observed to have been the (a) 22 of December, at 3. of the clock, in the year of our Lord 968.

(b) Therefore was *John Tzimisces* saluted Emperour in the year 969, who soon after associated to himself in the Government of the Empire, *Basilus* and *Constantine*, *Romanus*'s sons. He by the command of *Polyseus* the Patriarch banished *Theophanon*, *Nicephorus*'s wife and others, by whose help *Nicephorus* had been slain: he drove the Saracens back from Antioch, he overcame the Bulgarians and the Russians, and forced them to a composition of peace; which war having ended, entering into *Constantinople* after the manner of a triumphant Conquerour, he caused the Virgin Mary's Image, to be carried before him by a Chariot that was adorned and enriched with other spoils, which together with the Image he had got from the Bulgarians in solemn pomp and magnificence, as yielding the honour and power of his victory to her presence and protection.

Another argument of his piety was, That he first coined pieces of gold with our Saviour's picture, with this Inscription, *Jesus Christ King of Kings*. Having ruled six years and six months, being poisoned by *Basilus* his Chamberlain, whose great covetousness he had checked and suppressed; he dyed in his Syrian Expedition the 4th of December, in the year of our Lord 975.

## CHAP. XVI.

*The Affairs of the Franks under their Kings, Charls the Simple, Rodolph, Lewis Transmarinus, Lotharius, and Lewis in whom Charls's issue ended.*

IN this time *Charls* the Great his posterity did valiantly defend and keep the kingdom of the Franks in Gallia from the oppression of those Princes who possessed the Provinces; not by the will of the king, and for a time, but as their own proper right for ever. Amongst whom was most eminent *Rubert* the son of that *Rubert* who was killed in battle by the Normans in the year 867, who was brother to that *Odo*, or rather *Eudo*, who succeeded *Charls le Grosse*, and *Heribert* Earl of *Verone*, (a) who had given his sister to wife to *Robert*, and had brought him forth *Hugo*. At this

this time *Charls* the Simple reigned in France, who after *Eudo*'s death alone obtained the name of King from the year 898, he added to his Dominions *Lotharius*'s kingdom, as appears by his Edicts: (b) he concluded peace the same year with the Danes or other Normans, who then wasted and spoiled France, and made a league of friendship with them, having given his daughter *Gysla* in Matrimony to *Rollo* their General, (c) as we have above mentioned.

Then the regall authority growing out of date, the Princes by a consent at *Soissons* revolted from *Charls* in the (d) 920th year of Christ, because he took into his private Council *Haganon*, a man of mean sort, and raised him up to high dignities, *Heriveus* Bishop of *Rhemes* relieved and helped the King with his means after he was forsaken of all his Nobles, and reduced them all into the Kings favour; but this breach being but slightly made up, broke out again into a greater mischief two years after: (e) for in the year 922 *Robert* is chosen King by the Princes faction, and is consecrated by *Heriveus* Bishop of *Rhemes* at the latter end of June; but this rebellion did cost them their fatal undoing. Three years after this dyeth *Heriveus*, (f) and the year following *Robert* with *Heribert*, whose sister he had married, and by whom he had his son *Hugo*, fighting against *Charls*, was slain at *Soissons*, (g) having his mouth pierced with a lance, that it might appear that member which had deceived his Prince, suffered condigne punishment to his offence; yet as he dyed, he left his Army victorious. This battle was fought (a) the 15 of June on a Sunday, as the old Chronicles do record, whence it's gathered, that it was in the year of Christ 923. Not long after, *Rodolph* Duke of Burgundy was called to the possession of the kingdom as though it had been vacant, and was saluted king with all solemn ceremonies at *Soissons*, (b) *Charls* under pretext of a treaty of peace is led by *Heribert* into *Theodorick*'s Castle near the River *Marne*, whence afterwards he is carried to *Perone*, where he dyed the (c) 929 year of Christ, leaving his son *Lewis* whom he had by *Eadgina* daughter to *Alfama* king of the English Saxons, who when his father was taken prisoner fled into Britain to his Grandfather, and thence afterwards being returned, he reigned. So then *Charls* reigned after *Odo*'s death 25 years, viz. from the 898 year, unto the 923; yet in his patents which are read in the first foundation of *St. Denys*'s Monastery near the City, the beginning of his reign is taken from the year of Christ 893; at what time we have mentioned that he was created king by the Franks for to oppose *Eudo*. And in one of them is read this Subscription, *The IV of Febr. Indi. I. of the V. year of the most gracious King Charls the first restored*. This is that year 898, wherein *Eudo* dying the 3d of January, he began his new kingdom, having first began in the year 893. Again, in another Patent, *Given the V. of June, Indi. V. the 25 year of our most glorious King Charls*, the 20th year of his renovation, and the 6th after his having obtained a larger and greater inheritance. This year is demonstrated

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

(b) Eudo, I. a.  
de mor. &  
Ad. North.  
(c) Chap. 11.

(d) Flod.  
Chr.  
Charls is for-  
saken.

(e) Flod.  
Robert usurps  
the Kingdom.

(f) Flod.  
Chr. Odoran.  
Pith. edius  
297. Anno 5.  
c. 43.  
(g) Regino.

(a) Odora.  
Robert suffer-  
eth for his  
treachery.

(b) Flo. Aim.  
reg. Odoran.

(c) Flod.

Sigebert's  
Erio. r.

(a) Anno. 5.  
ch. 43.

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 958.

(d) Oloran.  
Aimo. 5. c. 43.  
Flod. A. 923.  
Glaber. 1. c. 2.

(a) Frag. Chr.  
Flor. by Pich.

(b) Flod. Aim.  
5. ch. 43.

(c) Flod.

(d) Flod. Reg.  
Herm. Maria.  
Ulsparg.

(e) Glaber. 1.  
ch. 15.  
The wretched  
death of Heri-  
bert.  
(f) Flod.  
(g) Ulvill.  
Gem. b. 3. ch.  
12. No. m. Hist.

(h) Flod.  
Otto the Em-  
perour breaks  
into France.

monstrated to be the 917th of Christ, which is six years after his possession of the kingdom of Lorain, and the 20th from the year 898, and the 25th from the year of our Lord 893. Whence it appears, that he was 12 years older then *Sigebert* hath declared; we have afore shewed, that he first began to reign when he was yet in the cradle, in the year of our Lord 879.

*Charls* being thus dethroned and degraded, *Rudolph* began to rule the kingdom of the Franks in the year 923, whom (d) *Odo-  
vanus* and *Aimo* do report to have been rejected by the sentence of *Hugo* and the rest of the Princes when *Charls* was shut up in prison; he was son to *Richard Robert's* son in law, whose daughter *Emma* had married the sister of *Hugo* the great. (a) He slew the *Danes* robbing and killing in *Aquitane*, almost to one. But he prolonged the Kingdome troubled by the disturbing parties of *Heribert* and *Hugo*, unto the year 936, (b) in which year dying, he is buried in the Monastery of *Columba* at *Seno*, in the thirteenth year of his reign, and in the same year 936; I have taught above, *Henry* *Auceps* King of *Germany* to have departed; and *Flodoard* writeth that the Moon was Eclipsed, in that very year, the day before the Nones of Septem. This man the Abbot of *Usparg* hath rashly confounded with the other *Rudolph* whom we have shewn before, being called unto the Kingdome by the *Italians*, and to have been driven away by *Hugo*. But there is no doubt that they were diverse, and that *Flodoard* sheweth in the year 923, 935, and 937. Where he calls him the *Italian* and *Juvenian* King of France on this side the Alps, and in the year 937, the other after the King of France he telleth that he died.

(c) *Ludovick* the son of *Simplex*, being called back by *Hugo* out of England, took the Kingdome in the year 936: whom, from that travell beyond the Sea, they commonly name *Transmarine*. The climbing pride of *Heribert*, and *Hugo*, made the kingdome in nothing more quiet to this man than to his father *Charls*. Yet requiring by arms *Lotharingia*, in which, *Charls*, his affairs being without hope, had yielded unto *Henry* King of *Germany*, he is driven away by *Otho*, the son of *Henry*, in the (d) year 939, in which, *Gislebert* the son in law of *Henry*, Lieutenant of *Lotharingia*, with other Rebels, being overcome by *Otho*, was slain. Whose wife *Gerberga* the sister of *Otho*, *Ludovick* took in marriage. (e) *Heribert* Earl of the *Viromanduns*, a seditious and traitcherous man, dyed a wretched death, in like manner detecting the wickedness taken up against *Charls*, in the (f) year 943. (g) to wit, in the same year wherein *Wilhelm* his son in Law, the son of *Rollo*, Duke of *Northmannia*. Which Province *Ludovick* invading, under the name of a Defender, brought away *Richard* the son of *Wilhelm*. But he being received by his friends, he himself being after that taken, is let go by the coming between of *Hugo*; Whose power a little while after he not bearing, he humbly craveth the aid of *Otho* his Wives Cousin-Germane. Who (h) in the year 948, a great Army being led into France, and some Towns being vanquished, and

*Rothomagus*

*Rothomagus* besieged in vain, he made no great price of his labour. Although the (a) *Germane* Writers do more greatly extoll that expedition.

Last of all *Ludovick* dyed (b) in the year 954, in the Month Septemb. when as with full speed, he pursuing a Wolf, and falling on the ground, his body being bruised, fell into a Leprosy. He was buried at *Durocortorum* of *Rhemes* in the Cathedrall of *Remigius*. (c) He begat two sons of *Gerberga*, *Lotharius* and *Charls*. *Aimon* appoints to him 16 years, but there is reckoned two years more.

*Lotharius* the heir, both of his fathers Kingdome and misery, began (e) in the year 954, the day before the Ides Nov. anointed at *Rhemes*: he bare the likeness of Kingly Majesty about two and thirty years. (f) In the third year of this King, *Hugo* of (g) *Orleans*, the great French Duke died the 15 Cal. July, and was buried in the Cathedrall of *Dyonysius* near the City. He left three sons of (h) *Mathilde* the sister of *Otho* the Emperour, *Hugo Capetus*, *Otho*, and *Henry*; *Emma* a daughter, (i) who married *Richard* Duke of the Normans. *Hugo* enjoyed the Dukedome of the French after his father: *Otho*, of *Burgundy*, after *Gislebert*: *Henry* succeeded *Otho*, dying a little after.

(l) *Lotharius* in the year 955, waged War with *Hugo* the great, in *Pidonia*, against Duke *Wilhelm*. Then *Lotharius* fought against *Otho*, that he might recover *Lotharingia*, or *Interamensis* of *Belgium*, the which *Otho* the second had granted to his father *Charls*, (m) in the year 977. Whom staying by chance at *Aquisgrane*, he pressing hard upon at unawares, and unprovided, he put to flight in (n) the year 978. That *Otho* might blot out this disgrace, he wandring thorow the fields of *Rhemes*, and the neighbouring Cities, and *Paris*, (o) while he passed over, in his return, the River *Axona*, *Lotharius* following after, together with hinderances, he lost no few souldiers.

(p) A little after, *Lotharius* having talk with *Otho* upon the River *Cherus*, he let go *Lotharingia* to him. Which being done, he rendered the wills of his Princes more strange from him. (q) Therefore after some years, the same things being again attempted, and *Viridunum* taken; but presently restored, (a) he deceased in the year 986. and was buried at *Rhemes*, in the Cathedrall of *Remigius*.

*Ludovick* the son of *Lotharius* the last of the stock of *Charls*, began his reign (b) in the year 986, committed to *Hugo* by his dying Father, and being famous in no warlike act, dying at *Compendium* without off-spring, is buried in the Church of *Cornelius* and *Cyprian*, in the year 987. In him the off-spring of *Charls*, and the second family of the Kings ceased, after the consecrating of *Pipin* 235.

Neither shall I let that passe, that there are two opinions meet in the Annals about the Kingdome of *Lotharius*, and *Ludovick*. (c) Some add to *Lotharius* about twenty two years, and make him to dye

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

(a) Ulsparg.  
Ulrich. 2. Al-  
bert. Krant. 3.  
ch. 53.  
(b) Flod. Ai-  
mo. 5. ch. 43.  
(c) Aimo in  
the same.

(e) Aimo 5.  
ch. 44.  
(f) Flod. Odo-  
ran.  
(g) Oederic.  
Ulrich. 1. Aim.  
5. ch. 44.  
(h) Sig. in the  
year 965.  
(i) Glaber. ch. 4.  
(l) Flod. in  
the year 960.

(l) Flod.  
The War of  
Lotharius with  
Otho.

(m) Sigeb.

(n) Sigeb.  
Herm. Lamb.  
Aimo 5. ch. 45.  
Vuil. Nang.  
Chron.

(o) Sig. Aim.  
Oederic.  
Ulrich. b. 1.  
Glab. 1.  
chap. 3.

(p) Sig. Aim.  
(q) Sigeb. in  
the year 984.  
(a) Sigeb.

(b) Sig. Vuil.  
Nang. Chron.

(c) Ut Aim.  
5. ch. 45.  
Oloran. Ode-  
ric. Ulrich. b. 1.



Anno 900  
of Christ, to  
987.

(d) Sig. Ivo.  
Carn. in Chr.  
Aquit. with  
Pith. Frag.  
flower of  
Chron. with  
the same.  
(e) Aim. Sup.  
b. 5. ch. 44.  
Sig. Nang.  
(f) In the year  
987. & Mang.  
(g) Glab. 1.  
ch. 1. Odoran.  
(h) Oderi. fer  
forth by Pith.  
(i) Frag. of  
flowers fer  
forth by Pith.  
(l) The same.

(m) Sig. Nang.  
(n) The same  
Authors.

(o) Nang.

(p) Sigeb.  
(a) The same  
Author.

(b) Nang.  
(c) Frag. Hist.  
aqu. & Aim.  
5. ch. 44.  
(d) Nang.  
(e) Frag. Hist.  
Aquit. fer forth  
by Pith. of  
Asceline Bi-  
shop of Lau-  
dunum.

(f) Gerbert.  
with Masson.  
in Hist. of  
the kings of  
France & Ro-  
bert. in French  
Christi.

in the year of Christ 976. Moreover they appoint to his son *Ludovick* 9 years. (d) Others far more able both in number and authority, make with us.

(e) *Ludovick* dying without off-spring, the Kingdome did of right belong unto *Charls*, his Uncle, the son of *Ludovick Transmarine*; who was then Duke of *Lotharingia*, or *Lorrain*, from the year nine hundred seventy seven: therefore made, as *Sigebert* sheweth, that he might withstand the endeavours of his brother *Lotharim*, and toward him the desires of the *French* did bend. But whiles he by delaying, brought the matter unto Council or debate, as (f) *Sigebert* saith, the top of the affairs is passed over on *Hugo Capet*, who was the son of *Hugo* the great Duke, by surname *Abbot*, of *Haubude* the sister of *Oibo* the first Emperour of that name. Unto which Authority of the Princes, the will of *Ludovick* the last of the stock of *Charls* King of the French had come; who as (h) *Odoran* writeth, dying, had given the Kingdome unto *Hugo*. (i) Therefore in the year nine hundred eighty seven. *Hugo* took the Kingly token of honour at *Noviodunum* in *Belgia*. (l) And 5. Nones July, was anointed at *Rhemes*. The which thing *Charls* grievously bearing, moveth war on him without delay: and first of all taketh *Laudunum* into possession. (m) in the year 988. But being in a short time after besieged by *Hugo*, (n) in the second Month of the Siege, a sudden breaking out of the gates being made, he kills not a few; he put the rest being much affrighted, with *Hugo*, to flight; he freeth the City from besieging. (o) He taketh *Durocortorus* of *Rhemes*, through the treachery of *Adelgarius* an Elder, in the year either 989, (p) or the year following; (a) and he made *Arnulph* Bishop in that City, the son of his brother by a Concubine; *Adalbero*, who then was Chief over that Church, being taken away: where a little after, he departed out of life. (b) But *Hugo*, a very great Army being drawn together, besiegeth *Charls* being shut up in *Laudunum* with his Wife *Herbertes* the daughter of the Duke of *Trevaria*. (c) *Asceline*, or (d) *Anselm* Bishop of *Laudunum*, of the nearest friendship to *Charls*, and being partaker of his Counsellis, is said to have made a foul business: for he led, as they report, *Hugo* by night into the City, and betrayed *Charls* unto him, at or about the dayes of the Holyer week. There is among the Epistles of *Gerbert*, who being advanced to the *Romane* Bishoprick, was called *Sylvester* the second of that name, a certain letter unto *Apollinus* or *Ascelinus* Bishop of *Laudunum*, full of sharpnesse and stomach, in which he upbraids his unfaithfullnesse towards his king, not as against *Charls*, whom he had as a Capitall enemy; but against *Hugo*, for the insurrection or bringing up of whose son *Robert*, he had been chief. Also he calls forth *Asceline* to *Rome*, to declare the cause, that thereby there may be a conjecture; the same man who had once broken his trust with *Charls*, to have performed no greater afterwards to *Hugo*. (i) Although I find *Adalbero* at that time, wherein *Charls* was taken to have been Bishop of *Laudunum*.

(g) *Hugo*

(g) *Hugo* brought *Charls*, being reduced into his power, unto Orleans; where he being shut up in the Tower, ended his dayes. He left a son (h) *Ottones* by his former wife, who also had the Duke-dome of *Lorain* after his father: but by another wife, *Lewis* and *Charls*. Of whom the first is declared, by *Vuilelm Nangius*, (i) and other writers, to have been Duke of *Lorain* after his father. But I see more to agree with *Sigebert*. (k) Some yearly Registers deliver, that both these were born in prison; (l) and being driven out by the French, to have betaken themselves to the Emperour.

(m) Besides, *Charls* is said to have begotten two daughters, *Haida* and *Emengard*. This married the Earl of *Namursia*; and of her *Baldwin* drew his beginning, Earl of *Hannonia*, whose daughter *Mabell*, *Philip* the Emperour took for a wife; which brought forth *Lewis* the eighth, father of a Saint: that by that reason the successours of Saint *Lewis* drew their mothers stock, at leastwise from *Charls* the Great. So *Vuilelm Nangius*.

(a) But *Hugo* drawing out his conceived hatred against *Arnulph* Bishop of *Rhemes*, did his endeavour, that he, a Council of Bishops being gathered together at *Rhemes*, should be displaced: and when he had kept him three years in prison at Orleans, and gave *Gerbert*, who, as I have said, *Robert* his son had used for his Master, a successour for him in the year 992. At which thing *John* the 15th, the Bishop of *Rome* being moved, forbade all the Bishops who had done that, holy things; and caused, that *Gerbert* being removed, *Arnulph* should be wholly restored; the which (b) *Aimoin* sheweth, was perfected under Pope *Gregory*, and King *Robert*.

The Cluniacian Order took beginning in that age from *Bernon* Abbot of *Gigniacia*; whom dying in the year 912, saith *Sigebert*, he had made *Odo* sometimes a Musician, Abbot of the Cluniacian Monastery. Moreover, *Odo* to have departed in 937, and *Ademare* to have succeeded him: This man *Maiolus*, in the year 943, then *Odo* in the year 992, the same *Sigebert* affirmeth.

## CHAP. XVII.

Of the Affairs of the Western Empire under Otho the third, Henry the second, Conrade, Henry the third, and the rent or schism of this Emperour; From the year of Christ 984, to 1106.

(c) Otho the third, a very boy, reigned in Germany in the year ( ) 984, being endowed with the title and crown of Emperour, at *Rome*, by *Gregory* the 5th, chief Bishop in the year 990; two years after, (e) *Crescentius* through the honour of the Consulship, tyrannically assaulting people in the same City, he condemned of his head: whose Wife being taken in marriage, he afterwards let go. For his former wife *Mary* the Emperesse, the daughter

Anno 984  
of Christ,  
to 1106.

(g) Aimoin.  
Suppl. 5.  
ch. 44. Nang.  
(i) Sig. 991.  
(j) Chron.  
Dionys. Ni-  
coll. Gill.  
See Haillan.  
(k) Aimoin. 5.  
c. 44. & Frag.  
Aquit.  
(l) Frag.  
Aquit.  
(m) Vill.  
Nang. Till.  
in Comm.

(a) Aimoin. 1.  
ch. 45. Sig.  
in the year  
992.

(b) In the life  
Abbon. Flor.  
ch. 11.

(c) Otho Fri-  
sing. 6. ch. 15.  
Lamb. Horm.  
(d) Lamb.  
(e) Lamb.  
Glab. b. 1.  
ch. 4.



Anno 984  
of Christ,  
to 1106.

(f) Guffr.  
Vicer.  
Claus.

A memorable  
Example  
of Justice in  
Orho.

daughter of the King of *Arragon*, he is reported by a wonderfull example of Justice, to have condemned to the flames at *Mutina*, the which they tell to have fell out thns.

(f) By chance the Empreſſe being taken with the love of an Earl no leſſe chaſte than beautifull, when ſhe was by him beat off; accuſed this very man of that attempted wickedneſſe that ſhe had deſigned to her husband; who out of hand paſſed a ſentence of his head on the young Earl. The Earl's wife, whom the man that was to dye, had made knowing of this thing, coming to the Emperour, declared right on the ſeat of Judgment, and opened before him both the innocency of her husband, and the wicked act of the Empreſſe: and to confirm the truth of both, ſhe handled a bright burning plate of metal with an unhurt hand. By which token, the Emperour's wife being reproved both of unchaſtity, and reproach or falſe accuſation, ſuffered puniſhment by the burning flame.

(a) There is a report, the ſame man being Emperour, that *Gregory* the 5th tyed up the right of chooſing the Emperour unto the voyces of certain Princes; whom either he himſelf, or ſome ſucceſſor of him is believed to have appointed ſeven in number. (b) The Hungarians and Tranſylvanians under him embraced the Chriſtian faith.

Moſt holy men lived at that time, *Romuald*: *Adalbert* in Pruſſia having ſuffered Martyrdom: (c) *Stephen* King of Hungary; (d) *Maiol* Abbot of Cluniaca, from the year 943. *Gerbert* excelled in learning, being from the ſeat of *Rhemes*, and *Ravenna*, carried up unto the Roman ſeat by *Orho* in the year 999, a little after *Silveſter* the ſecond by name. (e) *Orho* dyed in the year 1002, January 23.

(f) *Orho* being dead without children, *Henry* the Bavarian, the ſecond of that name from *Auceps*, the firſt of the Imperial title, reigned about 23 years; he took the honourable tokens of Rule, (g) in the year 1014, from *Benedict* the eight; (h) at which time the Greeks with the Normans, and, with them both, the Saracens ſtrove about the poſſeſſion of *Apulia*. The Normans almoſt at the beginning of *Henry* the Emperour had begun to come into the coaſt of Italy. Which thing how it was carried on, ſhall not be from the matter to unfold.

(i) *Leo Oſtienſis* writeth, in the 7th year of *Arnulph* Abbot of *Caſinum*; whoſe third year he ſaith doth agree with the year of Chriſt 1014, that his firſt may be of Chriſt 1012, the Normans began to invade *Apulia*; (this ſhall be the 1018 year) when as almoſt ſixteen years before they had firſt come thither. For about the year of Chriſt 1002, fourty Normans returning from a travel to *Jeruſalem*, came to *Salernum*, of a great ſtature of body, and ſtout in war. That Town was then beſieged by the Saracens, and *Gaimar* a Prince was in it, who, as *Pandulph Collenuſius* is Author in his third book, was of the Norman ſtock; who then already from the year of Chriſt 900, telleth, the Warrs of the Normans

Anno 984  
of Christ,  
to 1106.

mans began to be brought on through *Emilia*, *Flaminia*, *Tuſcia*, and *Campania*. Therefore thoſe fourty, when they had obtained weapons and horſes by requeſt from the Prince, brake out upon the enemies; and very many being killed, the reſt put to flight, they got a wonderfull victory.

*Gaimar* being bound by ſo great a benefit, great gifts being offered, and greater ſhewa, endcavoured to keep them with him. But when as he had obtained neither, (becauſe they ſaid alſo this acceptable work by them ordered was from the love of God alone) neither could they be abſent any longer from their Countrey: he commandeth Embaſſadours to go along with them, who ſhewing in a bravery Citron Apples, and other fruits of that ſort of that Countrey, with precious garments, and horſe-trappings, they ſtirred up the Normans to come to a Province fruitfull of ſuch good things. By chance it fell out about that time, that *Giflebert* and *Vuillme Repoſtellus*, born of the higheſt rank among the Normans, diſagreed from each other: and *Giflebert* before *Robert* himſelf Duke of Normandy in hunting killed *Repoſtell*. Who fearing the anger of *Robert*, and the near friends of *Repoſtell*, with his four brethren *Rainulph*, *Aſcitine*, *Oſmund*, and *Rodulph*, and other Nobles, followed the Embaſſadours of *Salerno* into *Apulia*. (a) But *Vuillme* a Monk of *Gemmeticum*, named him who did the murder, *Oſmund Drengore*. When they came into Italy, they joynded themſelves to *Pandulph* a Lord of great power at *Capua*, and under him and other Princes, receiving ſouldiers payes, they undertook a profitable and glorious work againſt the Greeks and Saracens. Neither neglected they their own affairs in the mean time. For they having obtained ſome Towns, they made Dukes of their own Nation chief over them. Whereof the firſt is delivered by *Vuillme*, to be *Turſine*, by ſurname *Scitell*. (b) *Pandulph* calls him

*Triſtane*, who mentioneth his ſucceſſours even to *Robert Viſcard*; a little otherwiſe than *Vuillme*. (a) There was *Tancrede* a certain Duke in Normandy, who took his ſurname from *Alia Villa*, that is, a high Village. This man begat twelve ſons of two wives, *Sarnus*, *Goſfride*, *Drogon*, *Tancrede*, *William Ferrebrachius*, *Humphrey*, *Robert Viſcard*, *Roger*, *Richard*, another *Goſfride*, *Fruſentine*, *Molugell*. Of theſe *William Ferrebrachius* is choſen Duke by thoſe which inhabited *Apulia*; who beat down the Saracens, and alſo the Greeks. (b) The Saracens coming again unto *Apulia*, their Army being divided into two parts, at the ſame beſiege *Capua* and *Barium*. But *Gregory* Captain of the Grecians, holpen by the forces of the Venetians, freed *Barium* from beſieging. *Henry* the Emperour brought help unto *Capua*, who was then at Rome, and had received the Crown, as I have ſhewed a little before, from *Benedict* chief Biſhop in the year 1014. He, the Saracens being overthrown, cruſhed the Grecians with the ſame force, and took away Troy from them; which Town had been of late built by them in *Apulia*; and ſo reſtored peace to Italy. So

*Pandulph.*

(a) See Bel-  
larm. b. 3.  
of paſſing  
over the Em-  
pire, ch. 1.  
Baron. in the  
year 996.

(b) See Sc-  
phen with  
Sor. 15.  
Aug. Bonfin.  
Dec. 2. b. 1.  
(c) His life.  
20. Aug.  
(d) Sigeb.  
(e) Lamb.  
Herm.

(f) Eichm. 7.  
John Villa.

(g) Herm.  
Lamb. Sig.  
Ulſperg.  
(h) Pand.  
Collen. b. 3.  
p. 96.

(i) Book 2.  
Chr. Caſin.  
cn. 38.

(a) Book 7.  
ch. 3.

(b) Book 3.  
p. 94.

(a) Pandul.

(b) Pand. 3.  
p. 96.

Anno 934  
of Christ,  
to 1106.

(c) Book 1.  
ch. 40. &c.  
The same  
thing have  
Herman.  
Vrperg.  
(d) The same.  
44.  
(e) Leo Off.  
b. 2. ch. 47.  
&c.  
(f) Herm.  
Sig. Lamb.  
Orho Frif.  
b. 6. ch. 27.  
Ufperg.  
(g) Sig. 1070.

(a) Aimo. In  
his life, ch.  
laft.  
Glaber. 3.  
ch. 3. Sigeb.  
(b) Herm.  
Sigeb.  
(c) Baron.  
Sigeb. in the  
year 1018.  
(d) H. rom.  
Maria. Ufperg.  
(e) The same.  
(f) Glaber.  
Merman.

The Kingdom  
of Burgundy  
caufeth to be.

(g) Herm.  
Lamb.  
Ufperg. Sigeb.  
(h) Glaber. 4.  
ch. 9. Herm.  
Ufperg. Sig.

*Pandulph.* (c) But *Leo Optatus* writeth this dispatch of the Emperour, wherein he took Troy in that same year in which it was built by the Greeks, by surrender, to have happened in the year 1022. (d) At which time when he had come into the Monastery of Casinum, and there grievously laboured with the stone, in the night *Benedict* appeared unto him, and made a promise, that his body should lye in that place, of which he hitherto doubted, and in the same moment restored health unto him.

(e) In a short time after, he, shining in holiness went out of the body into Heaven, having kept a continued flour of Virginity in marriage with *Kunegund*, (f) in the year 1024, the third Ides of July, and was buried in the Church of Bamberg, the which he had built there, with the Bishop's house. (g) This Emperour was joyued in affinity with *Stephen* King of Hungary, very equally holy; his sister *Gisla* being given him in marriage. By whose endeavour the Hungarians were converted to the Christian faith. This man being Emperour, *Albo* Abbot of Floriacum in Valcony, while he went in the middle between them brawling, being thrust thorow, hath deserved to be registred among the Martyrs, (a) in the year 1004, 2d. *Conf.* Account, Novemb. 13, being made famous by many wonders. (b) *Heribert* Bishop of Colonia dyeth, the same man being Emperour, in the year 1021. (c) The following year gave a beginning to a new and more brief kind of musick, *Aetion* a Monk of Guido being the inventor; by whom those six notes, which we use at this day, were appointed.

(d) *Conrade* who was King of Germany in the year 1024, is saluted Emperour in the year 1026. Unto this man *Rodulph* King of Burgundy dying, appointed his Crown with his Kingdome, (e) in the year 1032; the which he came to, in the year following, (f) wherein the Sun is delivered to have suffered an eclipse the 29 of June, the 6th hour. *Sigebert* who gives that to the year 1034, saith *Rodulph*, being offended with the Burgundians, because they proceeded to be proudly bold against their King, to have passed over his kingdome unto *Conrade*, which from the time of *Arnulph* the Emperour had obtained Kings of their own Nation, more than an hundred and thirty years, and so at last Burgundy to have been reduced into a Province. This is that kingdom of Burgundy, which *Rodulph* in the year 890, began to consult of, as we have mentioned above in the 13th Chapter out of *Sigebert*. The same *Sigebert* telleth, that *Odo* of Campania, *Rodulph's* sisters son, bearing that grievously, when he could not obtain that Province by request from *Conrade*, warred against him, and to have besieged Lorain. But being overcome at *Barum* by *Gothelo* the Captain, in battel, with a great slaughter of the French, to have been slain. (g) Which falleth into the year 1037. Two years after *Conrade* dyed, the day before the Nones of June, and was buried at *Spira*; (h) which year an eclipse of the Sun makes famous, on the eleventh Cal. Sepr. the sixth hour, 4th week.

week-day, noted in the Annals, in the year of Christ 1039. He commanded 15 years, (i) *Conrade* reigning, holy *Kunegund* dyed the year 1038; and in the same year *Stephen* King of Hungary, whom *Peter* succeeded.

(l) *Henry* of the Emperours called the second of that name, of the Kings the third, was ordained in the room of his father *Conrade*, in the year 1039. by whom the *Bohemians* were subdued in war, and also the *Hungarians*, whom their King *Peter* being cast out, had made *Ovo* chief over them. But this man being driven out by the Forces of *Henry*, *Peter* was wholly restored. (a) From this Emperour *Leo* the ninth chief Bishop, received *Benevuntum*, on this Law or condition, that he should forgive the Tribute of the Church of *Bamberg*. *Marian* a Scot, a noble Chronologer flourished in this age, who in the year 1056, witnesseth that he was made a *Fuldenian* Monk. (b) *Henry* dieth in the year 1056, the third of the Nones of October: when he had reigned seventeen years. (c) He left, of *Agnes* the daughter of *Wilhelm* Earl of *Alsacians*, *Henry* his heir. This man Raigning, *Peter Damian* was accounted a most learned and most holy man, (d) who, in the year after, 1057. was by *Stephen* the tenth made a Cardinal, and Bishop of *Ofia*.

In the year of Christ 1056. *Henry*, of Emperours the third of that name, of the Kings of *Germany* the fourth, (e) a child of five years old, began his reign, the which he drew out unto two and fifty years, to the great losse of Christian affairs. For he was rent from the Bishop of *Rome*, with a foul and almost continuall discord, (f) because he ordained Bishops and Abbots partly for reward, partly by a private Authority which they commonly call an investing. He had a chief combat with *Gregory* the seventh, a Bishop of great courage, who (g) in the year 1073. succeeded *Alexander* the second, before called *Hildebrand*. The beginning of the rent was made (h) in the year 1076. in which *Gregory* forbade *Henry* the fellowship of holy things. (i) The same man the year following being reconciled; but a little after being returned to his former manners, at length he astonished or overthrew him by his sentence. (l) In the mean time, the *Saxons* fall off from *Henry*, and choose *Rodulph* Duke of *Saxonia* King, who at first (m) put *Henry* to flight in the year 1080, the sixth of the Calends of February, and in the second joyning, he in the like manner being put to flight; when as he fought valiantly amongst the chief men, he dyed in the Ides of October, the Victory being left in the power of his Souldiers, (n) in the same year 1080, in which year *Henry* made *Guibert* Bishop of *Ravenna*, being condemned three years before by *Gregory* with excommunication, chose Pope in a small Councell of his own. From whom also at *Rome*, *Gregory* being shut up in the Tower of *Angelm*, he took the honourable tokens of the Empire (o) in the year 1084, on the very day of Easter.

Again the covenanted Princes of the Catholique parties, carry the

Anno 984  
of Christ  
to 1106.

(i) Herman.  
Macia.  
(l) Marian.  
Herm. Lamb.  
Ufper. Glab.  
3. ch. 2. & 4.  
Sigeb.

(a) Leo. Off.  
2. ch. 106.

(b) Maria.  
Lamb.

(c) Glab.  
ch. 1.

(d) Leo Off.  
2. ch. 102.

(e) Lamb.

(f) Vuill.  
Tyrus b. 1.  
ch. 13.

(g) Lamb.  
Bertol.

(h) Sigeb.  
Bertol.

The schism of  
Hemp.

(i) Bertol.  
John Vill. 4.  
ch. 21.

(l) Orho Frif.  
5. ch. 15.

(m) Bertol.  
Leo Off. 3.  
ch. 8.

(n) Maria.  
Guibert. Anst.  
Pope.

(o) Bertol.

Anno 984  
of Christ,  
to 1106.

(a) Maria.  
Berol. Sig.  
(b) Berol.  
(c) Berol. Leo  
Oft. 3. ch. 64.  
(d) Sigeb.  
(e) Otto Fris.  
7. ch. 11. & 12.  
Ursperg.

The warlike  
deeds of Ro-  
bert Wiscard.

(f) Leo Ost. 3.  
ch. 68. Vuill.  
Germet. b. 7.  
ch. 30.

(g) Leo Ost.  
Otto Fris. 1.  
of affairs  
Frid. ch. 3.  
(h) Greg. Ep.  
with Baro.

(i) Leo Ost. 3.  
ch. 48. Zon.  
in Alexie.

(j) Berol.

(k) Berol. Leo  
Oft. 3. ch. 52.  
Pand. 3. John.  
Villa. 4. ch. 17.

(l) Pandul. 3.  
p. 108.  
(e) Fazell.  
(d) B. 3. ch. 56.  
compared  
with 64.  
(e) Baron. out  
of Romualdus

the Kingdom to *Hermane of Lorraine*, (a) in the year 1082, who in the 7th (b) year, of Christ 1088, 12. *Conf. Acc.* died in *Lorraine*, and was buried at *Meta*. (c) Three years before, that is, in the year 1085. the eighth of *Conf. Acc.* the eighth of the Cal. Jun. *Gregory* dyed, but *Guibert* (d) in the year 1100. Neither yet by the death of this man, were the studies of disturbing parties quenched *Henry* as yet surviving. (e) Who at length being spoiled of his Empire, by *Henry* his son, the year 1105. going out, on the very birthday of Christ, and running away, he deceased at *Leodium* in the year 1106. the seventh of the Ides of Aug. the third day of the Week, of his age 55.

The *Normans* at the time of these tumults, *Robert Wiscard* being their Duke, performed very famous and faithfull obedience unto the *Roman* Bishop, when as now they had joynd *Apulia*, being taken from the *Greeks*, unto their power; (f) from the year 1041. in which *Arduine* a certain *Longobard* overcame *Ducian* Captain of the *Grecians*, and others by the help of the *Normans*, whence it came to passe that they enjoyed *Apulia*. And first of all *William*, of whom I have made a little mention above, the son of *Tancred*, and also *Drogo*, were Princes of the Nation. *Hunfride* succeeded *Drogo*: this man, *Robert Wiscard*; who were all brethren, (g) *Robert* being least of all contented with *Apulia*, subdued *Calabria* and *Sicily* by weapons. For that thing he being forbidden the use of holy things (h) in the year 1074, and being the seventh year after reconciled, which was the 1080, he held all those Provinces by a bountifull right from him, and paid Tributes. A most prosperous course of things followed this peace. (i) In the year following with fifteen thousand armed Souldiers, the Sea being crossed, he contended against *Alexis* the Greek Emperour in *Thracia*; and he overcame in battell, he meeting him with a hundred and seventy thousand. (l) *Alexis* covenanted with *Henry* the Emperour for a great sum of Money, that he would withhold *Robert*, hanging over the Empire of the East, by war, in the year 1084. Which money, he contrary to the rye of an oath, spent in bountifull gifts, to bring over the minds of the *Romans* unto him, when indeed he had taken the *Lateran* Palace, with *Guibert* the Antipope, on the fifth day of the Week, before the Palm-Lords day, into possession, but *Gregory* had betaken himself into the Tower of *Angelus*. (a) Which things being heard of, *Robert* after the Kal. of May, lying unto the City with an Army, so frightened *Henry*, that he speedily fleeing out of the City, hastned with a continued course into *Germany*. *Robert*, the rebellious City being plundered, and in great part consumed with fire, drew *Gregory* safe out of the Tower, and brought him away to *Salernum*; where also he dyed. *Robert* also, about the same time in the Moneth of July departed. But the year, by the disagreement of Writers, is most uncertain. For (b) some will have him dye in 1082. (c) others in the following year. (d) *Leo* of *Offia* seemeth to appoint 1084. *Bertold* 1086. (e) Some 1085. He was of a great and lo-  
ty

ty mind, and excelling in warlike praise, in a very short space he enlarged his affairs in a wonderfull manner. (f) Also his piety towards God and the Saints is commended, the which he left witnessed by many and great gifts.

Anno 976  
of Christ,  
to 1118.

(g) Leo. Ost.  
3. ch. 57.

## CHAP. XVIII

Of affairs of the Eastern Empire, From the year 976. to 1118.

(g) *Zimisces* being dead in the year 975. the Empire returned unto *Basil* and *Constantine*, the sons of *Romanus* the younger, to which *Basil* held fifty years; *Constantine* three years more. Not a few usurped Tyranny against them. First of all *Bardas* by surname *exaneps*, that is, Hard. Who established a league with the the *Saracens* by affinity. Then *Bardas Phocas*, by whom *Hard* was taken up by deceit. The same *Phocas*; 2. *Conf. Acc.* in the year 989, being slain in fight, was reconciled to the Emperour. *Basil*, these affairs being dispatched, *Syria* being appeased, subjected *Bulgaria* by a dayly War, to himself, *Samuel* the King being overcome, 15 thousand of whose Souldiers being made blind, he sent back to him, all the Captains of hundreds with one onely eye going before them, at whose sight the *Bulgarian* being very much affrighted, a little after he dyed. (h) It is delivered in the *Aquitain* Annals, *Basil* to have vowed he would be a Monk, if he should overcome; being condemned of his vow, that which was left of his life, he wearing a Monks habit hiddenly under honourable tokens of the Empire, abstained from copulation and flesh. He died being 70. years old, 9. *Conf. Acc.* in the Moneth Decemb. in the year of Christ 1025, a Prince stout in war; but ended with covetousnesse, and ravenousnesse, and Greek craftinesse. Yet *Constantine* his brother, a worse then he, overlived him three years, a man of no thrift, and given to sports and jests or scoffs, he departed in the year 1028, in the Moneth Novemb. the 12. *Conf. Acc.*

(g) Curop. Co-  
dr. Zon. Gyc.

(h) Frag. Annae  
Aquit.

(a) *Argyrum* the Roman, being constrained to leave his former Wife, took the Empire with *Zoe* the daughter of *Constantine*. In the beginning he shewed himself a moderate and just man, but his manners being changed for the worse, he drew out the wealth of private men with unlimited taxes or exactions; he lost *Syria* through his own default, taken back again by former Emperours; the which *George Maniac* a most valiant Captain however held again. He perished by the lying in wait of *Zoe* his Wife; in the year 1034. April the 11th, the fifth week-day, of the greater Week; as it is with *Curopolat* the Grecian. For *Cedrenus* who Copied out this man, was corrupted in this place. He reigned five years six Moneths.

(a) Curop.  
Cedr. Zon. &c.

(b) *Michael*, the adulterer of *Zoe*, who stirring him up, he had killed *Romanus*, passed over almost the whole time of his rule evil-  
ly

(b) The same  
Michael  
Paphlago.

Anno 976  
of Christ,  
to 1118.

ly vexed with a Devill, which was seven years, eight Moneths. The health of his body being despaired of, he determined to take care of his mind, and being thaven into a Monk, he died in the year 1041, Decemb. 10. *Const. Acc.* 101. having abhorred his parricide with great grief. This man reduced *Zoe* into an order. *George Maniatic*, he commanding as Emperour, recovered *Sicily* from the *Saracens*. But when by false reproaches he was cast into bonds, he being absent, *Sicily* was lost. Unto which misery the falling away of the *Bulgarians* happened.

(c) The same.

(c) *Papblogo* being dead, the height of affairs returned upon *Zoe*; who, knowing a woman to be unfit for so great a weight, adopted *Michael Calphate*, the son of *Stephen*, (who had lost the businesse of *Sicily*) *Cesar*, and made him Emperour, an oath being first taken by him, that he should alwayes have her in the place of a Mother, and Mistresse. He having forgotten this covenant, desiring to remove *Zoe*: while he begins to move the minds of the common people, he inflameth his endeavours against *Zoe* and her sister *Theodora*. On whom the Empire was suddenly brought over, whose hope was for ever taken away from *Calephate*, with his eyes.

(a) The same.

(a) *Constantine Atonomach*, being taken by *Zoe* a companion of her bed, and also of command, is crowned in the same year 1042, 12th of June. This man being Emperour, great slaughters were received by the Greeks. First by the *Sueves* they were very evilly intreated, fourty thousand being slain. Then by the Normans in *Apulia*, by whose ayd *George Maniatic* rebelled. Who afterward being taken away, the same Normans remained in the possession of *Apulia*.

The Normans  
obtain Apulia.

At the same time, the Turks receiving Souldiers pay, under *Mahumed* the Saracen, Prince of the Persians, fall off from him; and he being often overcome, and at length dying, they invade Persia, whose first Sultan or Emperour is by *Curopolates* guessed to be *Tragolipace Mucalatt*. The Temple at Jerusalem of the Lord's resurrection, was renewed from the foundations in the year 1048, before 57 years overthrowen by the Saracens; as (b) *Vuilelm Tyrinus* writeth; he dyeth of a discafe when he had reigned 12 years, 8. *Const. Acc.* in the year 1054. *Theodora*, after this, reigned one year, when *Zoe* had now dyed: and she dyed in the year 1055, 9th *Const. Account*, in the moneth of August.

(b) Book 1.  
ch. 7.

(c) Eo. 1.  
Leon. Sig.

(d) Leo P. ep.  
7. & 8. Leo  
Oft. 2. 89.  
Sig.

(e) See Ba-  
108. 2

(c) *Constantine* being Emperour, *Michael Cerular*, Patriarch of Constantinople fought against the Roman Church by writings, in the year 1053, whom *Leo* chief Bishop learnedly confuted. (d) But the year following he sent Ambassadours to Constantinople, *Ham- bert* Bishop of *Sylvia the white*, a man very learned in that Age, and *Frederick*, both Cardinals, with *Peter* Bishop of *Amalphantania*; (e) who being courteously heard by the Emperour, *Nicetas Studensis* a Monk, what things he had rashly written against the Latines, they compelled to revoke. But *Michael* the Patriarch, stubborn in his error, they openly condemned.

(f) No

Anno 976  
of Christ,  
to 1108.

(f) The  
same.

(f) No more than one years rule happened unto *Michael Stratioticus* after *Theodora*; a man for his age, and unskillfulnesse of unings least of all fit. But such a one the gelded ones of *Palatina* had chose in that Council, as he was, who being contented with a shew of honour, left the businesse and profit of the Empire unto them. While therefore he had the chief men in contempt, and in a proud manner, he kindled their hatreds. Therefore (a) *Isaac* *Comnenus* was made Emperour against this man, the 8th of June, 10 *Const. Account*, in the year 1057. *Stratioticus* somewhat delaying, he at length asked the Bishops, whom the Patriarch had sent unto him, that they might perswade him to a private life, What reward there should be of laying down the Empire? They answering, *A heavenly Kingdom*. He straightway put off his purple, on the last day of August, of the year 1057, 10 *Const. Acc.* Thus *Cedrenus*, whose history here endeth.

(a) Ced. 201.

(b) *Isaac Comnenus* is saluted Emperour in the same year 1057, the Cal. Septemb. the 11th *Const. Acc.* entring, he is said to have been of a sharp wit, and famous, but of a proud disposition; and the same most skillfull in war. Two years and three moneths being finished, health being despaired of, he ordained *Ducas* Emperour: and betook him into the Monastery of *Studia*, where he being eased of his grief, he nevertheless persisted in what he had begun.

(b) Zonst.  
Glyc. Manass.

(c) *Constantine Ducas* entred in the year 1059, of profitable behaviour, and a mind readily inclined toward Justice, but dull and slow. Therefore under this Emperour the Barbarians robbing and killing without controul, the Empire was mangled: He reigned seven years and six moneths, three sons being left with his wife *Eudocia*, *Michael*, and *Andronicus*, whom he had begotten, being a private man: and *Constantine* who was born while he was Emperour, who therefore was called *Porphyrogenitus*, that is, begotten in purple: he dyed therefore in the year 1067. (d) *John Xiphiline* of *Trapezunte*, being of a Monk a Patriarch, flourished, *Constantine* being Emperour.

(c) The same.

(d) Zonari

(e) *Eudocia*, against the oath which she had promised to her dying husband, That she would yield none to be a father in law to her children in common, after the seventh moneth, married *Romanus Diogenes*; of whom she had determined there was need, the affairs of the East then decaying. Moreover, she craftily by the Patriarch expressed the bond of the oath; when she had feigned, she had a great desire to the next wedlock of him. This man, some prosperous dispatches being made against the Turks; at last his Ensigns being placed, being overcome by the treason of *Andronicus*, he came under the power of the Sultan. Of whom being kindly received, the (a) Greek Annals do mention, he was also honourably let go. But (b) *Vuilelm Tyrinus* writeth, *Diogenes* to have been to the Barbarian, going up into his Throne, or coming down, for a foot-stool.

(e) The same.

(a) Zonari  
Glyc. Manass.

(b) Vuill.  
Tyr. 1. ch. 9.

(c) Zonar.  
Glyc. Manass.  
Vuill. Tyr.

In the mean time *Eudocia* being banished into a Monastery at  
Y y 2 Constanti-

Anno 976  
of Christ,  
to 1108.

(d) Zonar.  
Glyc.  
Manass.

Constantinople, a new Emperour is chosen. *Diogenes* being let go by the Sultan, found lesse humanity among his own, than among the Barbarians. For contrary to promise his eyes being cruelly digged out, nor his wounds taken care of, his head swelling and abounding with worms, he was in a short time consumed in the third year of his command, and above the eighth month, which seemeth to have happened in the year 1071.

(d) *Michael Parapinace* the son of *Constantine Ducas*, was chosen for his father in law in the year 1071, whose sloath was the Turks increase, who subdued the Coast of Pontus by arms; the which he calleth the Kingdom of Turcomannia; and at the same time, two *Nicephori*, *Botoniates* and *Bryennius*; the one in the East, the other in the West, where he was chief over *Dyrrachium*, usurp the Empire. *Botoniates* trusting to the ayd of the Turks, first possessed the Palace, and on the 25 of March was after the tokean custome proclaimed Emperour. *Michael* being passed over into the Studien Monastery, changeth his purple for a mourning cloak, the day before Easter, that is, the 7th of April, in the year 1078, when he had been chief Ruler 6 years, and as many months. About this time *John Xiphiline* dyed, having performed the Patriarchship eleven years and seven moneths.

(e) Zonar.  
Glyc. Manass.

(c) *Nicephorus Botoniates* in the beginning of his Dominion, brake *Bryennius*, proudly refusing all conditions of peace by *Alexius Comnenus*, and deprived him of his eyes, a little after an eclipse of the Moon, whereof *Glycas* makes mention. Which indeed happened at Constantinople in the same year of Christ 1078, January 31, the first hour after midnight. But while age now growing great, and by reason of inbred sickness, he neither rightly managed the Common-wealth, nor made he sit Magistrates over it; he came into contempt of his subjects: and being by the *Comnens*, spoiled of his dignity, he is registred among the Monks, when he had commanded three years, in the year of Christ 1081. In this Emperour, *Constantine Manasses* endeth his History.

(a) Zonar.

(a) Of the two *Comnens*, *Isaac* and *Alexius*, this, although the younger came to the Empire, because he excelled both in favor, & skillfulness of warlike affairs; he began in the year 1081, 4th Conf. Acc. April 1. the 5th week-day of the greater week; as it is in the Chronicle by us set forth, together with the breviary of *Nicophorus*, wicked man, and unfaithfull, and to fill up the common treasury, which he had drawn dry by infinite bountifull expences, sparing the wealth of none. This man was evilly intreated by the French; (b) chiefly by *Robert Guiscard* Duke of Apulia; as we have minded in the former Chapter; the which, *Zonaras* is witness, happened in the year 1081, the reign of *Alexius* beginning. (c) After that, when he withstood the French hastening into Palestine, *Godfride* being their Captain, he was driven back with a great slaughter of the Grecians in the year 1096. But truly nothing in that Emperour was more deceitful and unjust than this whole

(b) Leo Off.  
3. ch. 48. Zonar.

(c) Vuill.  
Tyr. 1. ch. 8.  
Otho. Frif.  
b. 1. ch. 2.

dispatch

Anno 987  
of Christ,  
to 1108.

dispatch of our Countrymen, nothing in his successours, as long as Christian affairs there stood, he was more cruel and perfidious against them. He lived about 70 years, and commanded 37 years, and about 4 moneths, and some dayes; and he dyed in the year 1118, a little before his death forsaken of all, not indeed lifted up with an Emperour's funeral; his son, whom he being alive had called *Augustus*, being left his succeder. In this man *Zonaras* bounded his history, and almost *Curopolates*; which Greek Author we have had in our keeping.

## CHAP. XIX.

Of the Affairs of France, from the year 987, and the beginning of Hugo Capet, unto the year 1108, under the Kings Hugo, Robert, Henry the first, Philip the first, and also of the shakings of Italy, and Apulia possessed by the Normans; as also the dispatch of Godfrey Duke of Bulloign, into Palestina.

THE Kingdome of France passed over from the posterity of *Charls* the Great, unto a Family of the Saxon-birth; *Hugo Capet* the son of Great *Hugo*, being carried up by the agreement of the chief men unto that dignity, whom (a) *Vuillielm Nangium* thinketh to have belonged unto the stock of *Charls* by the Mothers kind. Because *Matbild* the Wife of *Henry Auceps*, the mother of *Otho*, was begotten by *Ludovick* the son of *Arnulph*, the Nephew of *Carloman*. Of which *Matbild* was born to *Henry*, *Avoida*, the mother of *Hugo Capet*. But the authority of the Antients perfwadeth that to be false. (b) Who shew *Matbild* to have been the daughter of *Theoderick* the Saxon, and to have sprung from that *Vuitikind*, who had war with *Charls* the Great. Therefore *Capet* had nothing common with *Charls* his race. Who held *Charls* the son of *Lothar*, the brother of *Ludovick*, as hath been said, in Prison. (c) This King in the beginning of his new dominion, by Counsell and industry overcame not a few of the chief ones, having gotten them against him. (d) He dyed in the year 997, whom *Robert* his son followed from the (e) year of Christ 998, being now made partaker of the Crown and kingdom; he was endued with the greatest piety and prudence. Moreover, with no common knowledge of learning; (f) who, an incestuous marriage being taken away by the injunction of *Gregory* the 5th Roman Bishop, he married (g) *Constantia* the daughter of *Vuillielm* Earl of Tolouise. He added Burgundy, being by weapons tamed, unto the kingdom of the French. He built very many holy houses and Monasteries, among which, he took care, that that which was dedicated unto (h) *Auzan* at Orleans, should be consecrated with solemn ceremony in the year 1029, Conf. Acc. 12. (a) which City, the same being King, being consumed by fire in the 999, *Arnulph* chief Bishop, at first repaired

(a) Auz. Pich.  
set forth in  
French Ann.

(b) Vuillielm.  
b. 1. Lixpt. 4.  
ch. 7. Sig. in  
the year 937.  
Uirperg.  
See John  
Villa, b. 4.  
ch. 3.

(c) Glaber. 2.  
ch. 1.  
(d) Frag.  
Floriac.  
(e) Glaber.  
Rod.

(f) Frag.  
Floriac.  
(g) Helgal in the  
life of Robert.  
Frag. Aquit.  
Pich.

(h) Helgal in  
the life of  
Robert. p. 73.  
& 77.  
(a) Glaber. 2.  
ch. 5.

Anno 987  
of Christ,  
to 1108.

(b) Helgal.  
p. 77.

(c) Helgal.  
in the same  
plac. Glab. 4.  
ch. 9.

(d) Helgal.  
Glab. 3. ch. 7.

(e) Frag.  
Aquit. Hist.  
Triche.  
(f) Frag.  
Floriac.

(g) Frag.  
Floriac.

(h) Frag.  
Floriac.

(i) Herm.  
(j) Lamber.  
Herman. Leo  
Ost. 2. ch. 88.  
Orho Fril. 6.  
ch. 53. Sig. 8.  
of the Kings  
of Italy.  
Pandul. b. 3.

(a) The same,  
& Leo Ost. 2.  
ch. 88.

(b) Frag.  
Floriac.

(c) Aimo. 5.  
ch. 47.

(d) Book 3.  
the beginning  
of Dionysius,  
ch. 12. &c.

(e) Frag. Flor.  
Aimo. 5.

repaired the Cathedral of the Crosse at his own charges, then being helped with a very great summe of gold; which he found while they digged. The most holy King departed, (b) and is made famous by many miracles from God in the year of Christ 1033, (c) the thirteenth Cal. August, 21 dayes after that the Sun had been eclipsed; which eclipse fell out on 5 Cal. July, of the year 1033. But *Helgal* saith, the King dyed the 5th week-day, when as the 13 of Cal. of August was the sixth week-day. He reigned after his father's death 36 years. In which thing the Annals are to be corrected, who number 33 or 34. (d) His body was brought into the Cathedral of *Donyssus* at Milodunum, where he had dyed. (e) This man dying, through the perswasion of the Jews that were at Orleans, the Prince of Babylon overthrew the Temple which was at Jerusalem over the Sepulchre of Christ. (f) Which deceit of the Jews being known, very many being killed, theret were made to flee out of the Roman World. (g) At that season *Fulbert* Bishop of Carnota, with rare holinesse, and the like learning, adorned France.

In the year of Christ 1033, *Henry* the first reigned over the French, his Mother *Constantia* being unwilling, who did prefer *Robert* the younger, appointed by his Father. (h) He overcame *Teibald* and *Stephen* the rebellious sons of *Odo* Earl of *Carnota*, by *Godfride* Earl of the *Andeganians*; unto whom he gave the City of *Turo*. He restored *Vuillielm* the bastard-son of *Richard* Duke of the Normans, being commended for his faith, into his fathers title, (i) in the year 1047, thirty thousand Normans being scattered, when as he had no more than three thousand. (j) Pope *Lea* the 9th, he reigning, by the intreaty of *Hemer* Abbot of *Remigium*, came into *Rhemes*; where he consecrated a Monastery built by that Abbot, with solemn pomp, in the year 1049, wherein it was accomplished on the 6th of Decemb. on the Lords day. He in the year 1053, sets upon the Duke of the Normans in *Apulia*, requiring peace with the most humble intreaties, being holpen by the ayds of the Germans; by whom 14th Cal. July, he was overcome in battle, almost every one of the Germans being slain; when as the Longobards being at the first onset affrighted, had turned their backs. (a) *Leo* being by the same besieged in a certain Castle, he was brought forth to Beneventum honourably from thence; and at length let go. *Henry* finished his life in the (b) eight and twentieth year of his *Viutiacan* kingdom, of Christ (c) 1060, as appeareth out of the writs or bulls; (d) in one whereof, the year of *Philip* is compared with the year of Christ 1060, in the other the 8th year of the same *Philip* with 1068. *Const. Acc.* 6. on Cal. August. In the third, the 14th year of *Philip*, with the 1073 of Christ. This King reigning, *Casimir* from a Monk of *Cluniaca*, being made King of *Polonia*, lived most holily.

(e) Of *Henry* the first, *Philip*, being begotten from *Anne* the daughter of the King of the *Russians*, began to reign being a child, *Baldwine*

Anno 987  
of Christ,  
to 1108.

(f) Frag.  
Hist. of France,  
from Robert  
to Phil.

(g) Sig. Aimo.  
b. 5. ch. 49.  
(h) Berthold.

(i) Berthold.  
Vuill. Tyr. 1.  
ch. 14. Aimo. 5.  
ch. 48.  
(j) Vuill. Tyr.  
1. ch. 11. &  
13.

(m) Vuill.  
Tyr. 1. ch. 2.  
Marrh. Paris.  
(n) Tyr. 8.  
ch. 24.  
(o) Tyr. 9.  
ch. 1.  
(p) Id. ch. 5.  
Sig. 1089.

(a) Frag.  
Floriac.  
Aimo. 5.  
ch. 49.

(b) Vuill.  
Malmes.  
Roger. Vuill.  
Gemmae.  
Nubr.  
Marrh. Paris  
Polyd. 7.

(c) Polyd.

*Baldwine* Earl of *Flanders* being given for a guardian; whose Nephew *Arnulph*, being cast out of his Dominion by *Robert* his Uncle, *Philip* endeavoured to restore by arms, was overcome by *Robert*, in which combat *Arnulph* dyed in the year (as *Sigebert* thinketh) 1072. He had *Berta* the daughter of *Frisius* (f) Duke of *Florence*, his wife, the sister of *Robert* of *Flanders*. Of whom he begat *Ludovick*. (g) Who after being cast off, he took *Berivarda* the wife of *Fulco* Earl of *Andegavia*. For that thing he was by *Urban* chief Bishop forbidden the use of holy things (h) in the year 1094. Two years after, when he had abundantly satisfied him, he was reconciled with the Church. By the same *Urbane* at *Clarus* the Mountain, the Town of *Avernia*, a Synod was solemnized (i) in the year 1095, in the month November, *Const. Acc.* as saith *Tyrius*; in which the Bishop of *Rome* perswaded the Christians unto a holy dispatch into *Palestina*; (j) he being moved by a speech of *Peter* a French Hermite, who had come from *Jerusalem* for to urge the thing. They being as it were by that Trumpet called up, poured forth Armies gathered together at divers places and times, unto that warfare.

(m) *Godfrey* of *Bulloign* in the year 1096, the fifth day of August, setting forward with his Souldiers, after infinite pains, (n) at length in the year 1099, the 15 day of July, 6th week-day, about the 9th hour of the day, vanquished *Jerusalem*, and by the voyces of all (o) was first chosen King. (p) His man was the son of *Eustachius* Earl of *Bononia*, *Ida* his mother, the sister of *Godfrey* the Crook-back, Duke of *Lorain*; who dying without children, appointed a Kinsman the son of his sister, his heir and successor.

(a) The death of *Philip* happened on the year 1108, the third Cal. Aug. and he reigned 49 years, two months, seven dayes, and was buried in the *Floriacian* Monastery.

He reigning the seventh year, (b) a great turn of things was made in *England*; the Government being conferred on a Prince of a strange birth; the which happened almost in this manner; *Ethelred* King of *England*, of the old stock of the *Angle Saxons*, had *Emma* the sister of *Richard* of Normans, the second of this name, in marriage, and of her he begat *Alfred* and *Edward*. This King being overcome by *Sueno* King of *Denmark*, and forced to depart the Island about the year 1013, fleeth unto *Richard* the brother of his wife; by whose help, after the death of *Sueno*, his son *Canutus* reigning, he recovereth the kingdom. But afterwards being overcome by *Canutus*, dyeth in the (c) year of his kingdom 38, of Christ 1016. The son of this King, *Edmund* (whom he had begotten of *Ethelgine* a former wife) made peace with *Canutus* on that condition, that they should divide the kingdom equally betwixt them; the which a year sliding out, the Dane received whole: For *Edmund* reigned no more than one year, *Canutus* had two sons by a Concubine, *Harald* and *Sueno*. Therefore that

Anno 987  
of Christ,  
to 1108.

that he might sometime supply himself with lawfull offspring he coupled *Emma* once, the wife of *Ethelred*; being called back out of Normandy, and *Canutus* being begotten of her, he dyed in the year 1036. This *Harald* followed; then *Canutus*. Who having finished his life, the kingdom is brought on *Alfred* the son of *Ethelred*, all the Danes being killed, the eight and twentieth year after they had come with *Sueno* into England.

*Alfred* when he had passed over into England to take the kingdom, is privily slain by *Godwine*, a very mighty man, who had *Thira* the sister of *Canutus* the second, his wife, and of her had begotten *Harald*. He, that he might turn away from himself the suspicion of the parricide, or father-murder, was an author to the English, that they should make *Edward* the brother of *Alfred*, (being called out of Normandy) King. So *Edward* received his father's kingdom about the year of Christ 1043, and took to him *Edith* the daughter of *Godwine* in wedlock; with whom he kept the continual flowr of integrity, with many and the highest virtues, and miracles, the witnesses of virtues, being made famous from God. (a) For which things (three and twenty years in the kingdom being finished, and six months) he was received into heaven, in the year 1066, and afterwards written down among the number of the heavenly ones. After this man, *Harald* the brother of *Edith* possesseth the kingdom; the which when, *Edward* living, had promised to *Wilhelm* the bastard, Duke of Normandy, his near kinsman: This man, a most strong Army being brought over out of Normandy, overthrew *Harald* in battle, in which *Harald* himself valiantly fighting, dyed (b) in the year 1066, the day before the Ides of October, on the Sabbath day. From which time the Normans hence forward, ruled in Britain, in the 618 year after the Angles and Saxons came into that Island, which happened in the year four hundred forty and nine.

In this Age learned and holy men not a few came forth. (c) *Hilperick* set forth a learned account in the year 1005; (d) also *Franco* a Schoolman of Leodium wrote of the Squaring of the Circle, in the year 1047.

(e) *Leo* himself the 9th, lived with the greatest learning, and alike soundness of manners; from Bishop of Tullia in France, made chief Bishop, in the year 1049. Likewise Cardinal *Humbert*; who confuted the Greeks themselves, both by disputing before them at Constantinople, and by writing afterwards. *Lanfrank* from an Abbot made Bishop of Canterbury, (f) in the year 1070; and he that succeeded him in the year 1090, his scholar *Aufelm*, both, but this especially, brought (in holiness and learning) light unto that Age. And this indeed having finished many labours, and banishments for the liberty of the Church, deceased in the (g) year 1071, the 8th Kal. May, on the very day of *Mark*, of his age 76, of his chief Bishoprick 16.

(h) More-

(i) Moreover, *Ivo* made Bishop of *Carnota* by the preferment of *Quintine* of Belvacum, was famous with both ornaments, by *Nibon* the second, in the year 1092. (i) *Odilo Arvernus* being brought over from the Brivatian Monastery unto the Clunian after *Maiolus*, in the year nine hundred ninety three, when he had been chief over this, six and fifty years, he passed into Heaven in the year 1048, the very Kalends of January. (a) Moreover, *Arnulph* a Monk of the Monastery of Medard in Succiona was famous in the praise of holiness, and afterwards Bishop of the same City. And also *Theobald* a noble Frank, who being shut up in the Cell of Vincentia in Venetia, the twelfth year after dyeth, and is beautified from God with many miracles after death; whose bones were carried into France. *Sigebert* hath mentioned in the year 1050.

(b) Also *Bruno*, Canon of the Church of Colonia and Rhemes, bare the praise of Learning and holiness, and Master of the Schools, by whom the Order of the Carthusians was begun in the year 1086 *Hugo* a most holy Prelate of Gratianopolis, whose beginnings

(c) *Peter Cluniacensis* describeth: and also *Guibert* Abbot of Non-gentum, who was the equal of *Bruno*, in the (d) Treatise concerning his life. Neither have both the Canons mentioned that Parisian, who after his death reviving, is reported to have put the standers about in fear with a denouncing of a cruel Judgment concerning them: as neither *Sigebert*, who lived in the same age. Which History notwithstanding many learned and weighty men have delivered to letters.

The Cistercian Order two years after, to wit, in the year 1098, had its beginning, as *Sigebert* is author; begun by *Robert* Abbot of Molisma.

(e) On the contrary, *Berengarius* Arch-deacon of Andegavia, is the author of a shamefull heresie; which denyeth the body of Christ to be in very deed contained in the most holy Sacrament of the Eucharist; he sprinkled a disgrace on the French Nation. But this man when he had found his errour often condemned by them, it is said, he dying in the year 1088, at the last revealed it.

Anno 987  
of Christ,  
to 1108.

(h) *Ivo* ep. 1.  
Sigeb.  
(i) Sigeb. his  
life with Sur.  
(a) Sig.  
1086.

(b) Sigeb.  
1084. the  
life of Hugo  
with Sur.  
Apr. 1.

(c) *Peter*  
Clun. b. 2.  
of miracles,  
ch. 28.  
(d) Whose  
fragments  
Cl. Homerius  
set forth in  
Carthu-  
sian.

(e) Malmef.  
b. 3. Sigeb.  
1051.

Holy Edward  
King of En-  
gland.

(a) Roger  
Par. 1.

(b) Roger  
Malmef.  
Neubrig.  
Matth. Paris.  
Matth. Paris.  
Vuill. Gem.  
b. 7. ch. 37.

(c) Sig.  
(d) The same.

(e) Sigeb. Leo  
Oft 2. ch. 82.

(f) Vuill.  
Malmef. 1.  
Matth. Paris.

(g) Edinerve  
in his life.  
Malmef.  
Matth. Paris.  
8cc.



## CHAP. XX.

Of Italian and German Affairs from the year 1109, and about 1200. Henry the V. Lotharius, Conrad the III. Frederick Barbarossa, Henry the VI. Emperours; and also of a double Rent or Schism; and of Bernard, and other famous Men.

(a) Otho Fris. 7. ch. 14. & b. 1. of deeds of Gotfr. Viterb. Sig. Ursp. (b) Sig. Gotfr. Dodechinus M. sp.

(c) Ursp.

(d) Ansel. in App. to Sig. Rob. of Moun. rain Gotfr. Ursp. (e) Otho 7. ch. 16.

(f) Anselm. in Append. (g) Ursp.

(h) Anselm. Ursp. (i) Anselm. (j) Ursp. Otho Fris. 7. ch. 16.

(m) Ursp.

(n) Otho Fris. 7. ch. 17. (a) Otho Fris. addit. ad Lamb. Ansel. Viterb. Goth. Joan. Villa. 4. c. 33. (b) Otho Fris. Chr. 7. c. 17. & 1. de Gest. Frid. c. 16. Viterb. Ansel. Goth. (c) Otho 7. Chron. c. 17. Ansel. Goth.

(a) HENRY the fifth, the son of the fourth, not only imitated the violent mind of his father, against the seat of Rome, whole Avenger he had professed himself, but also, he being dead, exceeded. For as soon as he came to Rome, he laid hands on Paschal, 12. and from him he by force wrung out all rights, concerning which there had so great a strife arisen. Thus the Emperour was consecrated, in the (b) year 1111. 4. Conf. Acc. But as soon as he departed from Italy, (c) the Roman Fathers decreed those things to be void, Paschal surviving, and he having finished his life, his successors being Gelasius the second, and Calixtus the second. (d) Henry, Gelasius being duly chosen in the year 1118, opposed Burdine as a Pope against him, a runaway man out of Spain, chosen by the voices of his own Bishops, whom they named Gregory. (e) For these things he being renounced by the curses of Pope Calixtus, when as he saw himself by little and little to be forsaken by his own, being affrighted with the example of his fathers misery, returned unto his duty, all things being repealed which through Tyranny, he had pronounced. (f) By this means peace was restored to the Church in the year 1122. (g) Two years after, an Army being provided against Ludovick King of France; that he might bring help to Henry King of England, whose daughter Mathild he had married, being affrighted at the meeting of the French, he went back again, and (h) in the year 1125, deceased of a disease at Traiectum, (i) the fifth day of the Week of Pentecost; or, as it pleaseth others, (l) the tenth Calends of June, which was the Sabbath after Pentecost, of his Kingdom 19, of the Empire 14. year. This man being Emperour, Otho Bishop of Bamberg, instructed the Pomeranians in Christian Principles, (m) in the year 1124. Conf. Acc. 2.

The vacant Empire of the Germans being by the death of Henry, on Lotharius the Saxon, (n) although resisting, yet unwillingly is transported (a) in the year 1123. (b) The Annals do record that he was a Prince very temperate, and a great lover of Justice, he had for corrivalls, his kinsmen; Frederick and Conrad, his sisters sons, at the beginning of his reign, (c) whom Honorius the Pope excommunicated, because of their stubbornness and contumacy, but St. Bernard reconciled them afterwards to the Emperour. At that time was a sad Division in the Church of Rome, in the year of our Lord 1130, after Honorius's death. After whom Gregorius being lawfully created, who was called Innocent the second, Peter of Lions was chose by his adverse party under the name of Anacletus the

the second; (d) The greatest part of the World did obey Innocent, especially by the means and endeavours of Bernard, Bishop of Carreallas, a man of great fame and note, who made use both of Authority, and miracles for to reconcile the Church. Roger son of Roger, which was son to Robert Giscard's son, favoured Anacletus; now this Roger was Earl of Sicilia, and Duke of Apulia and Calabria after the death of Vuillelmus his uncle, which was in the year 1127. Anacletus for to obtain his favour, and to have him on his side, (e) gave him the name and title of King in the year 1130. (f) Lotharius going to Rome with Innocent, and Bernard of Carreallas was honoured with the title of Emperour, in which year, the Annals (g) do record, that the fourth of August the sun was Eclipsed, being the year 1133. at which time the same Annals observe that Lotharius was Crowned. Then the Emperour had War with Roger, whom having beaten out of Apulia and Calabria, he established Rainald Governour thereof, and soon after being called back into Germany, (g) he died by the way, in August, in the year of his reign thirteen, and of his Empire six, and of Christ, 1137. (h) Some say that he died not till the year following.

(i) It is said that he ordained the Roman civil Law to be executed in all places of Judicature; thereupon begun the Civil Law to be taught and professed at Bononia, and other Cities of Italy.

Conrad the third, son to Frederick, Duke of Swedes, by the sister of Henry the younger, began to reign (k) in the year 1139. He was not crowned by the Pope, because I think that Italy was then in a combustion of Civil wars, for Roger after Rainolds death, boldly and without resistance, wasted and destroyed the Countrey about, (a) whom Innocent pursuing with an Army, he was taken by him, and being honourably entertained by him, he granted him the Principality of Apuleia, Calabria, and Capua, with the title of King the twenty fourth of July, (b) in the year 1139.

(c) At the same time Arnoldus Braxianus, Atelardus's Disciple under the habit of a Fryer, imbroyled the Roman-See with tumults and seditions; for he inticed the people to create Jordanus Senatour, under whose command and conduct they cast off the Pontiffs yoke, feeding themselves with the hope and Image of old liberty. (d) When the Cities of Italy could not agree amongst themselves, and all Italy was in commotion and in confusion of Wars, (e) These Roman troubles being somewhat appeased and calmed by Eugenius the third, who being first Abbot, and St. Bernard's Disciple, was created Pope, in the year 1145. who as soon as he understood that the Saracens had taken Edeffa, the East City of Syria beyond Euphrates, brought the Christian Princes into an unanimous consent, to undertake the expedition of the holy Wars, (f) and Conrad King of Germany, and Lewis King of France, were the chief leaders, who had the Cross in their Colours, by St. Bernard's exhortations, and with their Armies advanced to Jerusalem. Conrad

Z z 2

with

Anno 1109. of Christ, to 1200.

(d) S. Bernardi vita plac.

(e) Anacleti diploma apud. Baron. 1130.

(f) Ansel. Rob. de Mon. Ursp.

(g) Ansel. Rob. de Mon. Gotfr. (h) Ursp. Onufr.

(i) Sigon. vida Ursp.

(k) Otho Fris. 7. c. 22.

(a) Otho Fris. 7. c. 24.

(b) Ursp.

(c) Otho Fris. 1. de Gest. Frid. c. 27. &c.

(d) Otho Fris. Chr. 7. c. 29. (e) Otho Fris. Chr. 7. c. 31. at seq.

(f) Urill. Tyc. c. 16.



Anno 1109  
of Christ,  
to 1200.

(c) Otho a S.  
Blasio in App.  
Fifing, & O-  
tho Fris. in r.  
de Gest. Frid.  
c. 58. Append.  
Laub. Kob. de  
Monte.

(h) Otho 1. de  
gest. Frid. c. 63.  
(i) Baron.  
(k) Otho Fris.  
in rebus gest.  
Frid. & Rade-  
vic. Fris. de ill.  
dem. Otho a S.  
St. Blasio Joan  
Villa s. c. 1.

(l) Otho a S.  
Blas. App.  
Lamb. Dodech  
Auctar. Sig.  
Urip.  
(a) Otho a S.  
Blas.

(b) Otho a S.  
Blas. Auct.  
Aquicla.

(c) Vesp.  
Auct. Aquicla.  
Otho a S.  
Blas.

(d) Goetfrid.  
Viterb. Auct.  
Aquicla. Jo.  
an. Villa. s.  
c. 15. &c.  
(e) Anton. &  
Pand. l. 4.  
Aliq. Vide  
Baron. A. 1197  
(f) Auct. In-  
quicla.  
(g) Vrip.

with an Army of 50000. men, and *Lewis* with 30000 Horses, be-  
sides an huge body of Foot Souldiers, as the *Gemblacian Annals*  
do record. (c) This Expedition was in the year 1147; but being  
betrayed by the Greeks, they returned without any memorable  
advantage. *Conrade* died in the year (h) 1152. the 15th of March.  
(i) *Grattianus*, Fryer at *Bononia*, under this King, made the book of  
*Canons* in the year 1151. And *St. Bernard* died in the year 1152.  
being 63. years old, having retired himself into the *Cistercian Mo-*  
nastery, with divers others, as we read it in his life, and in *Ro-*  
*bert Montanus's* works: for *Sigebert* ended his *Chronicles* in the  
year 1112; and *Eugenius*, *Bernard's* Disciple, died the eighth of Ju-  
ly, in the year 1153. (k) *Frederick Enobarbus*, who succeeded his  
Uncle *Conrade*, was of an excellent nature, and disposition to all  
virtues; but his hatred against the Pope of *Rome* by breaking the  
peace of the Church, did much obscure it, (l) having been created  
King of *Germany* in the year 1152, he obtained the title of Empe-  
rour, of *Adrian* the 4th at *Rome*, in the year 1155, but soon af-  
ter, the Pope having been his opposite enemy, dyed in the year  
(1) 1160, and he preferred *Victor* to *Alexander*, (who had succe-  
ded him) in the Councell held at *Pavia*. Then having taken war  
against the *Ligurians*, and *Lombards*, who fought for the Pope  
against him, he often defeated their Armies, and so defeated the  
*Milanois*, that he utterly destroyed and demolished their City (b)  
in the year 1162. But the *Ligurians* rebelling again, and suddenly  
falling on him unawares, defeated his Army, and brought him  
under the Popes subjection, and hereby did the Church recover  
her former peace, in the year 1177.

*Frederick*, for to blot out this his offence, hearing that *Saladine*  
had taken *Jerusalem*, in the year 1187. he went thither with an  
Army of *Germans*, bearing the Cross in his Standard; and having  
performed divers gallant achievements, both in *Thracia* and *Asia*  
against the Emperour of *Constantinople*, and the *Saracenian* Princes,  
refreshing his hot body on a Summers day in the cold River of  
*Cydnum*, in *Tarvis*, he died (c) in the year 1190, having been King  
thirty eight years, and Emperour 35.

*Henrick*, the fourth, son to *Enobarbus*, is related to have been of  
a cruell and rash humour; being made co-partner of the Kingdom  
by his father, he married (d) *Constantia*, daughter to *Roger*, first  
King of *Sicilia*, being one and twenty years old, in the  
year 1168, upon the sixth of February, though some (e) errone-  
ously say that she was a Nun, and that she was 50 years old when  
she married him.

*Frederick*, his father being dead, he with his Wife received the  
Empires Crown of *Clestinus* the third, (f) in the year 1191. ha-  
ving first been forced to deliver up to the *Romans* (g) *Tusculum*, who  
being inveterate enemies to the Inhabitants of the Town, by  
whom they oftentimes had been beaten, put part of them to death  
and part of them they sent into banishment, and demolished their

Town.

Town, *Henrick* (*William*, *Roger's* son, being dead) received into his  
Dominion *Apuleia*, *Calabria*, and *Sicilia*; and afterwards he exer-  
cised all manner of cruelty against them, but especially against the  
*Sicilians*, in the year 1193, and following.

(h) *Alexius Angelus* Emperour of the East, threatening him out  
of his Kindome, did cast him into such a fear, that he drove him  
to pay him tribute, which as he was gathering of his subjects in  
the eighth year of his reign, and (i) of Christ, 1199. he died at *Mes-*  
*sana*, (k) being poisoned by his Wife, as some Authors do think,  
leaving a young child called *Frederick*: he was excommunicated  
by the Pope; because he had cast in Prison (a) *Richard* King of  
*England*, as he returned from the Holy Land, (b) in the year  
one thousand one hundred and ninety, and had constrained him to  
pay his ranfome.

(h) Nicetas  
Chr.

(i) Auct. A-  
quicla.  
(k) Vrip.  
(a) Roger. in  
Annal.  
(b) Otho a S.  
Blas.

## CHAP. XXI.

The affairs of the EASTERN Empire, from the year 1118, unto  
1204. At what time the LATINES possessed Constantinople.

*John Comnenus*, who was also called *Calo Joannes*, *Alexius's* son  
Joan (c) in the year 1118 to govern the Grecian Empire, he  
was somewhat more renowned and expert then his father in  
Martiall achievements: for in *Thrace*, he put to flight the *Scy-*  
*thians* and *Hungarians*, who had got over the *Isther*; (d) in the  
fifth year of his Empire; and then the *Persarmenians* in *Asia*.

(e) After which Victory, having commanded a triumph, he  
brought back into the City the Virgin *Maries* Image, layed in a  
Chariot, drawn with four Milkwhite horses in great pomp. Then  
being honoured and crowned with the glory of divers gallant at-  
chievements in *Asia*, he advanced as far as *Antioch*, hoping to win  
it by composition from (f) Prince *Raimund*; but being frustrated  
and deceived of his hope, having spoiled and over-run his Coun-  
trety, he returned through *Silicia*, where, as he was a hunting,  
shooting an arrow, the head whereof was rubbed over with poison,  
which touched his hand, and so poisoned it, which poison spread-  
ing it self throughout all his body by little and little, he died in  
*April*; having governed the Empire (g) twenty four years, and  
eight Months; (h) in the year of our Lord 1143, the year after  
the taking of *Edessa* by the *Saracens*, as (i) *William Tyrus* declares:  
Therefore was *Edessa* taken in the year 1142, but (k) some say in  
the year 1155; and (l) *Tyrm*, in the year 1124, came under the  
power of the Christians.

(c) Nicetas  
Choniates.  
Vuil. Tyr. l. 11.  
c. 31. & l. 12.  
c. 5.

(d) Nicetas.  
The piety of  
*John Comnenus*  
towards the  
Virgin *Mary*.

(f) Nicetas  
Tyr. l. 15. c. 22.

(g) Vuil. Tyr.  
15. c. 23.  
(h) Otho Fris.  
7. Chr. c. 28.  
(i) Tyrus l. 14.  
c. 3. & 4.  
(k) Otho Fris.  
7. c. 30.  
(l) Vuil. Tyr.  
23. c. 14.  
Ansel. Gembl.

(m) *Manuel*

Anno 1118  
of Christ,  
to 1204.

(m) Nicetas.

(n) Vuil. Tyr.  
16. 18.  
Nicetas.

(a) Nicetas.

(b) Nicetas.

(c) Nicetas.  
(d) Vuill. Tyr.  
1. 23. c. 5.

(e) Nicetas.  
Eustathius Ho-  
mer's Inter-  
preter.

(f) Nicetas.

(g) Guil. Tyr.  
22. c. 4.  
(h) Nicetas.

(i) Guil. Tyr.  
22. c. 10. & seq.  
The Latines  
slain in Con-  
stantinople.

(k) Nicetas.

Andronicus's  
lamentable  
death.

(m) *Manuel Comnenus* his younger son, was by him preferred before *Isaac* his elder brother, and by him made Emperour, he was a crafty man, and a great enemy to the Christian affairs, which did concern the *Latines*, yea, he was so wicked, that he conspired their ruine with the *Saracens*.

(n) It sufficiently appears that the Armies of *Conrade* King of *Germany*, and of *Lewis* King of *France* were overthrown and deicated, in the year 1147, by his treachery and perfidiousness. (a) Which injury and wrong, *Roger* King of *Sicilia* avenged, who sayling along the coast of *Greece*, spoyled and destroyed the Countrey far and near. (b) *Manuel*, upon the latter end of his life, grew so mad and out of his wit, that he could almost have joynd to the *Saracens* decrees. At length promising himself a longer life, he dyed the thirty eighth year of his age, (c) in the Month of September, in the year 1180. d) *William Tyrius* exalts him highly for his freeness, and liberality, and faith, that he died the third of October, in the fourtieth year of his Empire, and one and fourtieth of his life, wherein he is much out of the way. (e) *Eustathius* that learned man, *Homer's* interpreter, lived in his dayes, he was Bishop of *Theſſalonica*, who constantly resisted him who asserted the Heresy of *Muhammedes*, as *Nicetas* records.

(f) *Alexius*, *Manuel's* son, being about twelve years of age succeeded his father, he married *Agnetes* daughter to *Lewis* King of *France*, being but eight years old, as (g) *William Tyrius* saith, but *Nicetas* calls her *Anne*. (h) He had the name of Emperour almost for three years space, and then was slain by *Andronicus* his fathers Uncle, whom he unwillingly had admitted to be his partner in the Government of the Empire, not having yet fully compleated the fifteenth year of his age; But before this, *Andronicus* had put all the (i) *French* and *Latines* to death that were in *Constantinople*, who had been *Manuel's* best friends in Counsell and security, and whom he knew would oppose his Tyranny, and Usurpation.

Which great slaughter the *Latines*, who by flight could escape, did revenge with no lesse hurt and destruction of the *Greeks*. For Sayling along the Maritime Coasts of *Thrace*, and *Greece*, with a gallant Fleet, they put all to fire and Sword whatsoever was in their way.

(k) *Andronicus* having murdered *Alexius*, began to rule alone in the year 1183; he married *Agnetes* which was betrothed to *Alexius* at eleven years of age, now grown in years; but he enjoyed not long the Empire, which he had obtained by so vile and wicked deed. For two year after, as he plotted the death of *Isaac Angelus*, he was set upon by the people who rose in an uproar, and being carried through the Town upon a Camel, having one hand cut off and one eye put out, he was torn to pieces by the rage of the multitude, saying in the midst of all the reproaches and ignominies that were cast upon him, these words, *Lord have Mercy*, and,

vvv

Why do you bruise a broken Reed. He died in the year of our Lord 1185. And thus ended the Family of the *Comneni's*.

(1) *Isaac Angelus* was made by the same faction *Augustus*, and enjoyed the title 9 years, and eight Moneths. He overcame the *Sicilians* Fleet near *Strymon*, and took their two Admiralls, *Richard* and *Baldwin*; he in vain attempted with his Fleet to recover *Cyprus* out of the hands of *Isaac Comnenus* the Tyrant; he had but bad success in his wars against the *Myssians* or *Valachians*. He moved, to his own great disadvantage, *Frederick Enobarbus* to fight against him, because he would stop his passage into *Palestine* through *Thrace* and *Asia*, he was at last deprived both of the Empire, and of his eyes, in the year of Christ 1195. by his brother *Alexius Angelus*.

(b) *Alexius Angelus* furnaming himself *Comnenus*, governed the Empire eight years three Moneths and three dayes. *Philip*, Emperour of *Germany*, had married *Irene*, *Isaac Angelus's* daughter, to whom the said *Isaac* fled, by whose intreaties and persuasions, *Dandulus* Duke of *Venice*, *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and divers other Princes, having all ingaged and undertook an expedition into the holy land, against *Alexius Comnenus*: who despising his enemies, and not being in capacity to defend himself, nor having prepared any strong Army, was forced to fly into *Debelium*; the City being taken and burnt in the year 1203. He being gone,

*Isaac Angelus* the blind, entred into his former dignity with his son *Alexius* (c) in the year following, being the year of our Lord 1204, but they neither agreeing between themselves, and a certain *Alexius Mursiphilus* usurping the Government; the Army of the confederates took *Constantinople*, the 12. of Aprill, the last Week in Lent, as *Nicetas* saith, which Character sheweth it to have been the year of Christ 1204.

Then was *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* 32 years old, by the common voice of all, created at *Constantinople* the first Emperour amongst the *Latines*. (a) He was highly praised and esteemed by the *Greeks* for his great vertue.

Anno 1109  
of Christ,  
to 1200.

(a) Nicetas.

(b) Nicetas.

(c) Nicetas vi.  
de. et Joan.  
villa.  
Constantinople  
taken by the  
Latines.

(a) Nicetas  
vide Rigor, in  
Philippe.

Anno 1108  
of Christ,  
to 1223.

## CHAP. XXII.

Of the Kings of France, Lewis the sixth, Lewis the seventh,  
and Philip Augustus.

From 1108 of Christ, unto 1223.

(b) L. 3. Orig.  
S. Dio c. 13.  
(c) Suger. in  
vita Ludov.  
Groff.

(d) Vita Iven.  
Ep. 50. Anno.  
5. c. 49.

(e) Augar.  
Gemb. Vest-  
menast.  
(f) Sigeb.

(g) Ansel.  
Gemb. Rob.  
de Monte.  
(h) Trith.  
(i) Ansel.  
Gemb. & Ro-  
ber.  
(k) Suger.

(l) Vita S. Ber-  
nard. l. 2. c. 6.  
& Theobal.  
in vita S.  
Guillelmi.  
apud. Sur. Feb.  
10.  
(a) Suger. in  
Ludov. Juni-  
ore. Robert.  
Augar. Gemb.  
Suger. Vuill.  
Tyr. l. 16. c. 18.  
Joan. Vill. 4.  
34.

(b) Augar.  
Gemb.

(c) Vuill. Tyr.  
l. 17. c. 8.

IN the year 1108, began *Lewis* the sixth, surnamed *Le Gros* to reign in France, as (b) by his Patents it appears, being but 12, or 13 years of age, as (c) *Sugerius* records, but rather 30 years, because he died the 60th year of his age, and of his reign the 30th. He was anointed at *Orleans*, and crowned by *Damberius* of *Seissans*, moved unto it (d) by *Ivon* of *Chartres*, because that the Bishop of *Rheims* was then at variance; neither is it so needfull that the Kings of France be all consecrated at *Rheims*, saith the said *Ivo* Bishop of *Chartres*. *Sugerius*, Abbot of *St. Denis*, hath written the life of this *Lewis*. He died of a sickness (e) in the year of Christ 1137. (f) in August, having ruled 30. years.

During his reign, was held a Synod at *Cavevaletis*, wherein *St. Bernard* the Abbot was President, (g) in the year 1115. The *Priemonstratensian* order began to be established in the year 1120, as *St. Norbert* saith. (h) At this time was in great fame, *Hugo St. Victor*, and *Hugo* the *Gratiopolitan* Bishop, who died in (i) the year 1132. He was a very devout and pious man.

(k) *Lewis* the seventh, surnamed the younger, swayed the Scepter over the French, in the year 1137. who of his own Supreme power, married *Alienora* the daughter of *William* Duke of *Aquitaine*, and had with her the whole Lordship and dominion of the said *William* for her Dowry. (l) This is that *William* Earl of *Poitiers*, and Duke of *Aquitaine*, who adhering to *Anacletus* against *Innocentius*, was brought to a better mind by *St. Bernard*: Whom (a) *Sugerius*, who then was living, records to have died in *Spain* soon after, that is, at the end of *Crausus* his reign, and beginning of *Lewis* the younger, being gone thither to procession to *St. James's*. *Robert Montanus* asserts that he died in the year 1137. in *St. James's* Church, in the last Week of Lent, and that he was buried before the Altar. Hereby it appears that *Theobaldus* the Recorder of his life is mistaken, in saying that he died in the year 1156.

*Lewis* in the year 1147. after Whit-Sunday, engaging himself for the Holy Wars, dispatches his expedition into *Palestina* with (b) 30000 Horsemen, and a great Army of Foot. But such a mighty Army perished there, more by the treachery of the Greeks than by the valour and power of the Saracens. Then (c) having stayed there a year, and being returned into France, in the year 1150. he divorced his Wife *Alienora*, and married the daughter of *Alphonsum* the 7th, who called himself Emperour of *Spain*, which is called

by

by *Tyrius*, and *Sugerius* Mary, but the (d) Annals of *Spain* call her *Beatrix*. (e) *Alienora* the year following married *Henry* Duke of *Normandy* and Earl of *Anjou*, who reigned in *England* after *Steven* the second of that name, in the year 1154. wherein *Steven* is (f) reported by the English Annals to have died the 8th of November, and *Henry* to have been consecrated the 14th of January, following upon a Lords day. (g) Which proved the seed of a most bloody war, which arose between the French and the English about the right and possession of the Dukedom of *Aquitaine*, (h) which was somewhat pacified after six years by the marriage of *Margaret*, *Lewis's* daughter, to *Henry's* son: (i) In the time of this *Henry*, *St. Thomas* Bishop of *Canterbury* was first banished for his defending and preferring the rights and privileges of the Church; then suffered a glorious death in the year 1171. being murdered in the Church. (k) King *Henry* sorrowed publickly for the suspicion of this Murder, and in recompence of it, he received many great benefits for his penitence sake.

*Lewis* dyed in *Paris* in the year 1180, (l) the 28 of September, the 44 year of his reign; during his reign was eminent, *Peter Lombard* Bishop of *Paris*, entituled Master of the Sentences; and also *Peter Comestor*.

*Philip*, *Lewis's* son, intituled *Augustus*, and commonly called *Adeardus*, his father being yet living, was saluted King (a) in the year 1179, in the moneth of November; and the year following being 16 years old, he reigned alone; (b) for he was born 8 weeks after the assumption day, which was in the year 1164, and not 1165, as *Rigord* saith, and *Aimoinus's* Annals do record. Who at the very beginning of his reign, after his father's death caused the Jews throughout all France to be apprehended (c) the 16th of March, on a Sabbath-day, in the year 1181, because that in derision of the Christian rights and Religion, they put children to death, committing also some other grievous offences; then in July next after, he banished them all for ever. Then having heard that *Jerusalem* was taken by the Saracens, having engaged himself for the Expedition into the Holy Land, he with *Richard* King of *England* went into the East, (d) in the year 1190; (e) and the year following he arrived into *Palestina*, and came to *Accona* with the other confederate Princes the 4th of (f) June, in the year 1191; in which year was a memorable eclipse of the Sun, which is observed by *Rigordus*, *Rogerius*, and *Westmonasteriensis*, to have bin upon a Sunday the 23 of June. But these confederate Princes falling out amongst themselves, *Philip* returned that same year into his kingdom, and (g) *Richard* of *England* having sold *Cyprus*; which he had taken, to the Templers, and to *Guido*, sometimes King of *Jerusalem*, and having put to death 5000 Saracens, being in his return intercepted and seized upon by *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, he returned at last into *England* (h) in the year 1194, and waged Warr for the space of five years with *Philip* of France,

A 22

(i) untill

Anno 1108  
of Christ,  
to 1208.

(a) West. Mon.  
Paris. Math.

(c) Ruderic.  
Par. 3. c. 31.  
Alph. a Cath.

(e) 77. Suger.  
Westm. Math.  
Paris. Am. 5.

(f) Rogerius  
de Hoveden.  
West. Monast.

(g) Asst. gen.  
ad Sigeb.

(h) Asst. ad.  
Hist. Roger.  
West. Math.

(i) Paris. Otho a  
S. Basilio. Aut.  
Aquin.

(k) Idem Ann.  
Angl.

(l) Rigord. in  
vita Philip.

(a) Rigord.  
(b) Rigord.  
Anno 9. c. 16.

(c) Rigord.  
The Jews ban-  
ished out of  
France.

(d) Rogerius.  
(e) Rigord.  
Aut. Aquin.

(f) Westm.

(g) Rigord.  
Uxip.

(h) Rigord.  
Westm.

Anno 1109  
of Christ,  
to 1200.

(i) Rigor. Ro-  
ger. Westm.  
Math. Paris.  
Aust. Aquic.  
England sub-  
jected to the  
See of Rome.  
(k) Roger.  
Westm.  
Math. Par.  
(a) Rigor.  
(b) Westm.  
Math. Par.  
Rigor.

(c) Rigor.

(i) untill that at the siege of a Castle he dyed, in the year 1199, of an Arrow shot by a crois-bow the 8th of April, as *Roger* saith, and was buried in the Monastery of Fountain-Ebrald, where did also lye his father's body. And to *Richard* succeeded *John* his brother, comanonly called, *without Land*, who renewed the Wars with *Philip*, and subjected to the (k) See of Rome the kingdoms of England and Ireland, in the year 1213, which were to yield and pay him an annual tribute instead of a benefice. (a) But *Philip* having obtained two victories in a year, and his son *Lewis* having overcome the English in Poictou, and himself having vanquished *Otho* the Emperour in Flanders, a Synod held at Sylvanectum established and decreed Monuments of Trophies and victory to the honour of them both; (b) After this *Lewis* sayling into England, and having driven out *John*, he received it under his power and subjection; but as soon as he was departed thence, the whole Land revolted from him to *Henry* the third, *John's* son; this was done in the year of our Lord 1214. (c) *Philip* departed this life in the year 1223, in July having reigned after his father's death 43 years, wanting some three months.

*The End of the Eighth Book.*

THE



Anno 1200  
of Christ,  
to 1250.

# THE HISTORY OF THE VVORLD. OR, AN Account of Time.

*The Ninth Book.*

W Herein are contained the Years from the 1200 of CHRIST, unto 1632.

## CHAP. I.

What things came to passe both in Germany and Italy, from the Year 1200, unto 1250, under Philip, Otho, and Frederick the second, and of the sad division of the Church under him; and of persons of renown for Piety and Learning.

H Enrick the 6th, Frederick's son, (a) as here above we have mentioned, being dead, the Princes fell out amongst themselves in the election of a Successour in the Empire; for some attributed the honour of the Empire to *Philip*, *Henrick's* brother; and others giving it to *Otho* Duke of Saxony. The King of France held for *Philip*; and *Innocent* the third for *Otho*, who hated the posterity of *Frederick*, because he had once been anathematized: *Philip* obtained first the Empire

(a) Ursberg.  
Vincent.  
Bellou. l. 26.  
c. 59. Si fid.  
Frag. Incer.  
And. Alberto  
præsum.  
Blond. l. 64.  
dec. 2.

Anno 1200  
to Christ,  
of 1550.

(b) Siffid.  
Frag. Incer.

(c) Ursperg.  
(a) Ursperg.  
Vincent.

tom. 4. l. 29.  
c. 10. Frag.  
Incer. Aut.

Siffid. Anto-  
ninus Tri-  
them.

(b) Vincent.  
l. 29. c. 106.

Ursperg. Rob.  
de Monte.

Siff. Chr.  
Cicir. Anton.  
Joan. Villa. 5.

c. 35.  
(c) Ursperg.  
Vinc. tom. 4.

l. 30. c. 93.  
Rigor. Anton.  
Part. 3. Tit. 9.

c. 3.  
(d) Ursperg.  
vide tom. 4.

l. 10. c. 64.  
Anton. Tit. 19.

tom. 3. c. 1.  
Paragaph. 6.  
Chr. Incer.

(c) Chr. Col-  
mar. Frag.  
Incer. Tri-  
them. in Hir-  
sing. Chr.

(f) Ursperg.  
Monach. Pad.  
Chr. Colmar.

Frag. Incer.  
Aut.

(g) Vincent.  
tom. 4. l. 31.

c. 1.  
(h) Ursperg.  
Chr. Incer.

Colm. Cicir.  
Triche. vide  
Joan. Vill.

l. 6. c. 1.  
(i) Vinc. tom. 4.

l. 50. c. 125.  
(k) Trith. in  
Husau. Chr.

(l) Mon. Pad.  
1224.

(m) Monach.  
Pad. 1220.  
Ursperg.

(a) Triche.

at Aquilgratum (b) In the year 1198. Whereunto *Otho* soon after attained; and having gotten the kingdom into his hands, he warred against *Philip* for some time, (c) until that they agreed; so that, during *Philip's* life, *Otho* should abstain himself from the title of King; and after his death should lawfully enjoy it. (a) *Philip* reigned 10 years, and was slain the 23 of June in the year 1208, by one *Otho* a Palatine, whose wife the daughter of *Isaac* Emperour of Constantinople, having heard of her husband's death, ended also her life.

*Otho* entered into the possession of the Roman Empire, which then was void by the death of his competitor, and upon these conditions married *Philip's* daughter; (b) whom *Innocent* created Emperour with due rites and ceremonies, performed at Rome in the year 1209; but he rejected him afterwards from the communion of the Church, because that against his engagement he did violate and break the Romans rights and privileges, in the year 1210. This is that *Otho*, who together with his Uncle *Richard* King of England, fighting against *Philip* of France, (c) near Bovina, was by him overcome and put to flight in the year 1214. Hence, the year following, was celebrated at Rome the Council of Laurent, by *Innocent* the third; to which out of all the parts of Christendom resorted (d) 412 Bishops; in it was confirmed the Transubstantiation both in name and deed; and by it was condemned the book of Abbot *Joachim*, which he had composed against *Peter Lombard*.

*Otho* thus forsaken of all, and worn out with grief, dyed (e) in the year 1216; but some say the year following; and some others, in the year 1218. (f) *Innocent* dyed in the same year the 16th of July, in whose seat was elected *Honorius*.

*Frederick* the second, the son of *Henrick* the 6th, Nephew to *Frederick* the first, *Otho* having been degraded in the year 1211, as saith (g) *Vincent*, is elected Emperour by the Germans suffrage three years after his Uncle *Philip's* death, having before that contented himself with his Mothers kingdom of Apulia and Sicilia; (h) but in the year 1219, upon St. *Cecill's* day he was created Emperour at Rome by *Honorius*. But being perswaded by his son in law's fatal hatred against the Romans, he falsified his faith: for which cause being first excommunicated by *Honorius*, John *Brennus* King of Jerusalem interceding for him, reconciled them (i) in the year 1222; at what time *Frederick* married *Jolanta*, *Brennus's* daughter, after the death of his wife (k) *Mary*, the daughter of the King of *Arragon*, by whom he had gotten *Henrick* and *Conrad*, (l) from him succeeded the title of Kings of Jerusalem, to the Kings of Sicily; (m) he transplanted the Saracens out of the Mountains of Sicily into Apulia, and placed them in *Niceria*.

*Honorius* being dead in the year 1227, was succeeded by *Gregorius* the 9th, (a) who anathematized *Frederick*, because contrary to his engagement and vow he delayed his Expedition into *Palestina*.

*lestina*. (b) And the Emperour the year following sayling into Syria, he betrayed the Christian interest by a disadvantageous and unworthy peace with the Sultan, of whom he obtained by prayers, and under specious pretence, Jerusalem: Being returned from the East, he filled all Italy with inward hatred and factions, which upon it was divided into two parts, whereof the party adhering to the Pope, was called the Guelphians; and the other which followed the Emperour, had the name of Gibellines. Tacle denominations were first given them near *Pistorium*, in the year 1240, as (c) *Blondus* relates; but (d) *Nauclem* saith, that it was long before that, when *Conrad* the third reigned, then did this hatred break into a certain demonstration of warr, but was at length propagated by the studies and endeavours of *Frederick*, and dispersed it self through all Italy into a civil and pernicious war.

(e) The chief Pillar and General of the Gibellines on this side the Padua, was *Ecelinus* the tyrant of the Teutonick family, who for 30 years together held under his power, Trent, Tarvisium, Padua, Verona, Brescia and other Towns and Cities; he was in favour with *Frederick*, and lived 10 years after him; but being wounded in fight with a dart in the year 1260, and taken by his enemies; he dyed in the 80 year of his age. (f) *Frederick* did suppress *Henry* his son, who had risen in rebellion against him, and banished him into Apulia, in the year 1235. Where the year following he dyed, but not at all relenting his pertinacy and hatred against the Roman See, he was excommunicated in a Council held at Lions by *Innocent* the 4th, *Gregory's* Successour, after *Celestinus* (g) in the year 1241, after two years inter-reign; (h) which Council was celebrated in the year 1245, and then he deposed him of the Imperial dignity. In this Council was the honour of the scarlet-Cap given to the Cardinals. Upon this, in opposition to *Frederick*, was *Henrick Landgrave* of Hafia elected Emperour, and enjoyed the same Imperial dignity two years, and dyed in the 1247, to whom (b) *William* Earl of Holland, in the year following succeeded by the suffrage of the Princes Electors. (i) *Frederick* being then deeply engaged against the tumults that were in Gallia Cisalpina, for the whole people of Lombardy had revolted from him; against whom engaging, he besieged Parma in the year 1247; but being repelled by a suddain falliey of the Towns-men, with much ado he escaped by flight into the Territories of Cremona in 1248; and (a) two years after (b) upon the 18th of October, he dyed in Apulia, in the 32 year of his Empire, and of his age 57. (c) The report is, that he was stifled by *Manfredus* (whom he had gotten by a Concubine) in a feather-bed.

(d) During *Frederick's* Empire, were two Orders of Fryers created, whereof were Authors St. *Dominick* and St. *Francis*, who are said to have set up their Orders at two divers times; the first dyed (e) in the year 1221. And *Francis* (f) 1226. Besides them were these following persons renowned and eminent; *Anthony* of

Anno 900  
of Christ,  
to 985.

(b) Id. &  
Villa. 6. c. 27.

(c) Blond.  
Dec. 2. l. 77.

(d) Trithem.  
Naucl. Gen.

42. p. 953.  
Vide Jan.  
Villa. 5. c. 37.

(e) Vide Mo-  
nach. Pad. l. 2.

(f) Blond.

(g) Fragm.  
Incer. Blond.  
& Aeneas Sil.  
1. 7. Dec. 2.

(h) Vincent.  
l. 31. c. 1.

Anton. Tit.  
19. c. 45.

Mon. Pad.  
Blond. l. 7.

Dec. 2. Joan.  
Villa. 6. c. 25.

(i) Siffid.  
Mon. Pad.

(a) Mon. Pad.  
Villa. 6. c. 42.

(b) Trith.

(c) Blond.  
Dec. 2. l. 7.

Anton. Tit.  
19. c. 6. Pa-  
ragraph. 4.

(d) Joan. Vil-  
la. 5. c. 23. 4.

(e) Vincent.  
l. 30. c. 124.

Siffid. Colm.  
(f) Triche.

Anno 1251  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

(g) Vincent.  
l. 30. & An-  
ton.

of Padua, of the society of the Minors; *Alexander* of Alençon of the Dominicans order, *Albert* the Great, *Vincent* of Belvasia, and *William* of Paris, with others mentioned by *Vincentius*, and *Antoninus*. In this Age lived also those Women, highly commended for their Piety, *Elizabeth* the Wife of the Landgrave of Thuringem, and (g) *Mary Oregniacensis*, whose life *Jacob* of Vitrey hath well described.

## CHAP. II.

*Of the Affairs of Germany and Italy, from the year 1251, unto 1300 or thereabout; then of Conrad, Manfredus and Conradine; and touching the entrance of the French into Sicily, and of their overthrow there; and of the Spaniards possessing Sicily.*

**A**fter *Frederick's* degradation, was *William* of Holland created by the Germans King of the Empire; but six years after being surprized by the Ambushes of the Frisians, he dyed (n) in the year 1256.

After his death, the designs and intentions of the German Princes being divided and distracted (i) in the year 1257. Some of them declared *Richard* Prince of Cornwall, the King of England's brother, King of the Romans; and others *Alphonfus* King of Castile, a renowned Astronomer; (k) He contenting himself with the onely title of the Empire, did not move his foot out of Spain; *Richard* hastening to Franckford, and there having been admitted into the Government of the kingdom with all ceremonies therein required, having wasted all his estate in sumptuous and superfluous expences, he was despised of them that had called him to that dignity; wherefore on a suddain returning into England, he left the Empire void; and this Inter-regnum of the Empire lasted (a) untill that by Pope *Gregory* the 10th's Patents, the Princes Electors chose (b) *Rodulph* Earl of Alfatia, in the year 1273, whom (c) Histories do highly commend for his Piety, Justice and magnanimity in wars: he suppressed and put to death *Ottocar* King of Bohemia, who had revolted from him in the year 1278; (i) he dyed in the 19th year of his reign, and (e) in the year of Christ 1291.

(f) The year next immediately following, *Adolphus* Earl of Nassau was saluted King of the Romans; (g) but by reason of his cruelty and great covetousness was soon degraded, and in his place was elected *Albert* Duke of Austria, against whom *Adolph* fighting a field-battle near Worms, was killed (h) in the year of Christ 1298.

At this time all things were infected with Civil Wars throughout all Italy, for *Conrad* son to *Frederick* the second, came out of Germany (i) in the year 1251, to possess the kingdom of Apulia and Sicilia, and having subdued the Neapolitans, and dismantled their

their City, enjoying both the Sicilians, he was poisoned by *Manfredus* his brother *Frederick's* natural son, (k) in the year 1234, leaving behind him his son (l) *Conrad*, whom the Italians called *Conradine*.

(m) In the interim *Manfredus* governing the kingdom as if it were for the pupill, he waged war against the Pope of Rome, by the help of the Saracens, who had *Lucerca* under their dominion.

*Urban* the 4th, who was born at Troy in Champagne, succeeded *Alexander* the 4th, in the year 1261; to whom by his command there was a day every (n) year instituted for receiving of the Sacrament. *Charles* declared the Earl of Anjou, *St. Lewis's* Cousen-German, King of Sicily.

But whilest he prepares himself for this Expedition, *Urban* dyed, whom *Clement* the 4th succeeded, by whose will *Charles* being made Senatour of the City of Rome, and King of both the Sicilies, having an annual pension of 48000 Ducats, he subdued *Manfredus*, putting him to death (a) in the year 1266. And two years after, he overcame *Conrad*, who with an Army of the Gibellines was gone against Italy; and having taken him prisoner, he cut off his head, in the year 1268, by whose death the family of *Frederick*, and house of *Sweden*, was utterly extinguished.

In the year 1274, *Gregory* the 10th who succeeded *Clement* that dyed in the year 1270, (b) celebrated a Synod at Lions, wherein he ordained some things concerning the creation of Popes, and received the Greeks to the unity of the Roman Church. (c) In this Council were assembled 500 Bishops. (d) *Peter* King of Arragon, *Manfredus's* son in law, whose daughter *Constantia* he had married, by the perswasion of *John* sometimes Lord of the Island *Prochyta*, and of *Michael Paleologian* to the Emperour of the Greeks, who feared *Charles*, applied his mind and study to invade Sicily, as his wives Dowry; therefore by the instigation of them both, a hidden Plot and Conspiracy being attempted throughout all Sicily, and executed upon Easter-Sunday by the Sicilians, all the French without difference or respect of either sex or age, were killed and murdered by them, who suddenly on an evening all armed did fall upon them; and their cruelty was such against them, that they ripp'd open the womb of women with child, searching their children with their Swords; and this was called alwayes afterwards, *The Sicilians Evening*. This Massacre was done the 30 of March, (e) in the year 1282; and so by this means *Peter* entred into the possession of the kingdom of Sicily, and so held it, though cursed and anathematized by the Pope; The which *Charles* in vain attempting by arms to regain, received also a great overthrow; for his son *Charles* the lame was overcome in a Sea-fight, and taken prisoner (f) in the year 1284. *Peter* pardoned him beyond all hope, because it was thought

Anno 1205  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

(k) Colmar.  
Chron.  
(l) Triche.  
(m) Blond.  
Anton.  
Naucl. Nan-  
gis in vita  
S. Lud.  
Joan. Villa. 6.  
c. 47. & 90.  
& l. 7.  
(n) Siffid.  
Blondus  
Dec. 2. l. 8.  
Anton. Triche.  
Naucl. Nan-  
gis.

(a) Pand.  
Villa. 7. c. 9.  
&c.

(b) Trich.  
Blond. Dec. 2.  
l. 8. Nang.  
Philip. Joan.  
Villa. 7. c. 4.  
(c) Nangus  
in vita Phil.  
lippl.  
(d) Blond.  
Fazel. l. 8.  
Par. 2.  
Anton. Tit.  
20. c. 4.  
Nang. in vita  
Philippl.  
Pand. Collen.  
Joan. Villa. 7.  
c. 57. &c.

(e) Blond.  
Dec. 2. l. 8.

(f) Colm.  
Villa. 7. c. 92.  
&c.

(h) Colm.  
Chron. Siffid.

(i) Trich. in  
Hist. Chr.  
Vide Joan.  
Villa. 6. c. 75.  
(k) Trich.

(a) Trich.  
(b) Siffid.  
Colmar.  
Chron.  
(c) Siffid.  
Trichem.

(d) Siffid.  
Colm.  
(e) Villa. 7.  
c. 145. Siff.  
Trichem.  
(f) Anton.  
Naucl. Vil-  
la. 7. c. 152.  
(g) Siffid.  
(h) Siffid.  
Albertus  
Argentin.

(i) Blond.  
dec. 2. l. 8.  
Anton. Tit. 20.  
c. 2.

Anno 1251  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

(g) Blond.  
1. 8. Dec. 2.

(a) Naucl.

(b) Fazel.  
Dec. 1. 9.

(c) Naucl.

(d) Blond.  
Dec. 2. 1. 8.

(e) Naucl.

(f) Triche.  
in Chr. Mir.  
saug.  
(g) Anton. 2.  
C. 1m.

(h) Anton.

(i) Naucl.

Lutzeberg.  
(k) Beinaud

thought that he would avenge upon him the death of Conradine his kinsman, who ended his life in (g) the year 1285; wherein also *Charls* King of Sicily dyed the 7th of January, as *Nangis* writes in *Philip's* life. As he defended his father's kingdom, that by a cruel sentence was given over to spoil, fighting against *Philip* King of France, he was slain, having by his will made his sons heirs, viz. *Frederick* heir of Arragon; *James* heir of Sicily: and, at the intreaties of his Mother *Constance*, he dismiss'd his son *Charls* upon some certain terms and conditions in (a) the year 1288; amongst which, this was one, That he might obtain both the right of the kingdom of Arragon, and also that of Sicily, with the favour of the Pontiff of Rome, which *Nicolas* the fourth absolutely denied him; whence broke forth between them a bloody War, (b) which by the reconciliation of *Bonifacius* the VIII, who did succeed *St. Celestine* the third, which of his free will had laid down his office, was pacified in the year 1299, *Jacob* yielding Sicily. But the Sicilians having advanced (c) *Frederick*, *Jacob's* brother, to the Royal dignity, resisted and opposed *Charls* and the Roman Pontiff.

At the same time all the rest of Italy was in an inward uproar and commotion, especially the chiefest of the Venetians and Genoans, who with all sort of cruelty fought the ruine and destruction one of another; whose first dissention arose from small beginnings at Ptolemais a Town in Syria, in the (d) year 1260, and brought to both of them mutual calamities.

In this Age the Church was honoured and enriched in Piety and Learning by *Bonaventura* and *Thomas Aquinas*, (e) who both were taken up into Heaven in the year of our Lord 1274. And also by *Albertus Magnus*, *Thomas's* Master, (f) who dyed in the year 1280, in the 87 year of his age: Also by (g) *Peter Martyr*, who was beheaded by the Hereticks in the year 1252. At this time also dyed *St. Claire*, *St. Francis's* Countrywoman, (h) in the year 1252; and *St. Lewis* Bishop of Tolouse, son to *Charls* the second King of Sicily and Apulia. (i) At this time also lived *Nicolas Liranus*, Doctor in Paris, of the Order of the Minimes.

(k) *Rymond Lullus* of Majorca, flourished in very great fame in that Island about the year 1290. *St. Ivo* in Gaen, and *St. Roche* in the Province of Narbonne, were highly renowned for their piety.

CHAP.

### CHAP. III.

Of the Latine Emperours of Constantinople, and of the affairs transacted in the EAST, from the year 1205. unto 1300. wherein it is discoursed, of the recovery of Constantinople by the GREEKS; of the Tartars excursions; and of the Holy Land wholly taken away from the CHRISTIANS.

THE Latines held Constantinople in their hands fifty and eight years. The first of them that reigned in it was *Baldwin*, as we have already observed, who with his other companions in the expedition, divided the Empire, chiefly with the Venetians and Genoans, the first of whom took the Isles of the Egean Sea; *Creet*, *Eubœa*, and others, saith (a) *Blondus*; but *Nicetas* hath recorded that the Genoans possessed *Creet*: *Bonifacius*, Marquis of *Montferrat* establishes the new Kingdom of *Thessalonica* at this time.

(c) *Baldwin* at the revolution of the year being overcome by the Bulgarians, and taken prisoner in the year 1205, the 15th of April, and having been kept close prisoner sixteen Moneths, he is at last put to death by the cruelty of *John* King of the Bulgarians. (d) And then *Henrick*, *Baldwin's* brother is advanced to the Government of the Empire in the year 1206. *Nicetas* extolls this moderation of the Latines, who would not usurp too hastily and rashly, the Kingdom before the death of the true and legitimate Prince and successor: but he abhors the pride and cruelty of his own Country-men, who were wont to attain to the Imperial Majesty by the death of the other Emperours: *Henrick* ruled the Empire near upon ten years, and died the (e) first year of *Honorius* the third, and of Christ 1216. whom *Peter Antiochensis*, who had married *Jolanta*, *Henricks* sister, as (f) *Nicephorus* saith, or as others would have it, his daughter, (g) he being crowned by *Honorius* the third at Rome, as he advanced his journey into Thracia, he is treacherously taken by *Theodorus*, Prince of *Dyrrachium*, and is slain by *Theodorus Lascaris*.

*Robert*, *Peter's* son, governed the Empire after his father. Then *Baldwin*, *Robert's* brother, who (h) in the year 1261. having recovered Constantinople from the Greeks, and being returned into the West, went to *Charls* King of Sicily, and betrothed his son to his daughter, having promised him Constantinople if by his help and aid he could recover it. And thus did the Latines possess Constantinople, the space of 58 years.

As the Latines thus held Constantinople, (a) *Theodore Lascaris* was created Emperour by the Greeks, and kept his Throne at *Nicea* in *Bythinia*; he was a valiant man in feats of Arms, wholly applying himself to it, he defeated the Turks with a great slaughter; whom his father in law had stirred up to arms against him, and slew with his own hands their great Sultan: dying (b) in the 18th year

B b b

Anno 1205  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

*Baldwin* Em-  
perour of Con-  
stantinople.

(a) Blond.  
Dec. 2. 1. 6.

(b) Niceph.  
Greg. 1. 1.

(c) Nicetas.

(d) Nicetas.

(e) Anton. Tk.  
19. c. 3.

(f) Niceph.  
Greg. p. 11.

(g) Anton.  
Tk. 19. c. 3.

(h) Nangis in  
vita S. Ludov.  
p. 448. Nic.  
p. 58. Naucl.

(a) Nicetas  
Niceph. Greg.  
p. 7.

(b) Niceph.  
of p. 11.

Ann. 1205  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

(f) Niceph. in  
finc. l. 2.  
(d) Niceph.  
initio. l. 3.  
(e) Niceph. l.  
3. p. 29.

(f) Niceph. l.  
4. Joan. Vuill.  
l. 6. c. 72.

(g) Niceph.  
p. 43.

(h) Pashin. in  
Fragm. Anch.  
p. 300.

(i) Vide Ni-  
ceph. Greg. l. 5

(k) Anton. Ti.  
20. c. 4.  
Paragr. 1.

(l) Niceph.  
p. 72.

(m) Niceph. 6.

(a) Niceph.  
Greg.

(b) Niceph. l.  
10. p. 125.

(c) Vincen. l.  
29. c. 69.  
Naucl. Gen.  
47. Vol. 2.  
Vide Joan. in  
Hist. St. Ludo-  
vici. p. 120. l. 3.  
an. Vill. 6. c. 28

of his Empire, and of Christ 1222. He appointed *John Ducas* his son in law to be his successeur, who recovered many places from the *Latines*, ( ) and having been Emperour thirty three years, he died in the year 1255.

*Theodore Lascaris*, *John's* son, succeeded his father, when he was (d) thirty three years old, and ruled the Empire four years, dying in the year 1259. and so he was (c) thirty six years old at his death, leaving behind him his son *John*, of six years of age.

( ) But *Michael Paleologus Comnenus*, deriving his Pedigree by his Mothers side of *Alexius*, who was the son of *Andronicus Paleologus*, four years after, having put out the Pupils eyes, who was then (g) ten years old, he usurped the Empire; By whose stratagems, *Constantinople* was treacherously taken by *Alexius Cesar* with no greater Army then 800 Souldiers: yet hence fearing *Charls* King of *Sicilia*, who dayly threatned *Constantinople*, he sought his reconciliation and Concord with the Roman Church. And sent Ambassadors as far as *Africk*, to *Saint Lewis* in the year wherein he died, which was, as (h) *Pachymeres* saith, in the year one thousand two hundred and seventy, and in the year one thousand two hundred seventy four, (i) he sent his Ambassadors to the Councell then celebrated at *Lyons*, and confirmed and ratified the Articles of Faith that they had made and ordained. (k) It was he that promoted, advanced, and caused both by his Authority and supplies of all things, that cruell and Barbarous conspiracy of the *Sicilians* against the *French* to be executed in the year one thousand two hundred eighty two. He died in the year of the (l) *Greeks* account, 6791, which was the year of our Lord one thousand two hundred eighty three. And because he inclined to the *Latines*, and had made a strict league with the Pope, (m) his son *Andronicus* did not so much as honour him with ordinary Funeralls, for not far from the Camp Castle, wherein he then was, he caused him to be covered with Earth after he had reigned since *John* the *Pupil's* abdication, near upon some twenty three years.

(a) *Andronicus*, *Michael's* son, after the death of his son *Michael* designed his son *Andronicus* to be heir of the Empire, who ostentiously rebelling against his Grandfather, at length forced him to retire himself into banishment upon his old age, having taken *Constantinople*, and being thus deprived of his Imperiall dignity, and remaining a private man, he died [b] in the year according to the *GREEKS*, six thousand eight hundred and forty which was the year of Christ one thousand three hundred thirty two.

In this age the *Tartars* having shaken off the yoke of the *Indian* Kings, and having erected a new Monarchy amongst themselves [c] in the year one thousand two hundred and two, extended far and near: part of whom having destroyed *Georgiana Armenia*, and others

other Provinces, did over-run, sack, spoil, and plunder *Transilvania* and *Polonia*, near about the (d) year of our Lord, one thousand two hundred fourty one, (e) under their Generall *Batho*. But he being dead, by reason of their wants and Famine, after three years space, they were forced to retire back. (f) The other Colony of them drove the *Chorasmians*, who were descended of the *Parthians*, out of their seats and habitations, who being hired and taken into pay by the *Sultan* of *Egypt*, dispersed and routed the *French* out of *Palestina*, and overthrew and demolished the Tomb of our Lord, (g) in the year one thousand two hundred fourty four. The *Tartars* following them, invade *Persia*, out of which they expell (h) the *Turks*, and put to flight their *Sultan*, who reigned at *Iconium*. (i) But the *Turks* the year following engaging to pay them a tribute, redeem themselves, and obtain peace: for this cause *Innocent* the fourth, sent some Fryers of *St. Dominicks* Order to the *Tartars*; whose progresse is mentioned by (k) *Vincenium*.

The Christians also atchieved some exploits in *Palestina*, (l) whereof that in the year 1213, was of great fame. When *Leo*, *old Duke of Austria*, and *Andrew* King of *Hungary*, with *John Brennus* of *Jerusalem*, took *Damiata*, having besieged it 18. Moneths. But having their spirits heightened by this successe, and by it being much encouraged, as they pursued the *Barbarians*, *Nile's* Channell being broken into their Camp, they were constrained to accept conditions of peace, restoring to them all what they had gotten, this was done in the year 1221. (m) But two years before, *Conrade Saphadin's* son, did utterly demolish *Jerusalem*, except the Temple, and the Tower of *David*. Afterwards *Innocent* the fourth in the *Lateran* Councill in the year 1245, engaged the Princes of Christendome to the holy Wars, whither *St. Lewis* being the Generall, sailed with a great Army, (n) in the year 1248. The whole burthen and engagement of this War was against *Damiata* a City in *Egypt*, which was subdued under the power of the *French*; in the year 1249: but the Plague raging throughout their Camp and Army, they were forced to surrender it, and to accept of peace upon condition that they might safely depart, *Damiata* being yielded up: (a) Then in the year of our Lord 1291, did *Prothaima's* *Tyrum*, and whatsoever yet remained in *Syria* in the Christians hands, come all under the power and jurisdiction of the *Turks*; and since that time did the Christians desist from attempting any other expedition into the East.

Anne 1200  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

(d) Monach.  
Pad.

(e) Naucl.  
Vol. 2. Gen.

(f) Vincen. l.  
29. c. 88.

(g) Vincen.  
ib. &c. 89. &

(h) Vinc. 30.  
c. 50.

(i) Vinc. c. 31.  
c. 28. Nang.

(j) Vinc. in vita. S. Ludo-  
vici.

(k) Vinc. l. 31.  
Joan. Vill. 6.

(l) Mon. Pad.  
Vinc. l. 30.

(m) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(n) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(o) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(p) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(q) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(r) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(s) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(t) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(u) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(v) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(w) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(x) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.

(y) Vinc. l. 30.  
c. 84. & seq.



ANNO 1200  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

## CHAP. IV.

Of those things that were transacted from about the year of our Lord 1200, unto 1300, by the French, under Philip, Lewis the 8th, Lewis the 9th, Philip the Hardy, and Philip the Fair.

(b) Hist. AL  
big. Vincent.  
1. 29. & 30.  
Anton. Tir.  
29. c. 3.  
The Albigan  
Warr.

(c) Vinc. 30.  
c. 35. Ant.

(d) Rodor.  
Sant. p. 3. c. 35.  
Franc. Ta-  
raph. Maria.  
1. 11. c. 23. &c.  
Blond. Dec. 2.  
1. 6.

(a) Gesta  
Ludov. 8.  
Vinc. 1. 30.

(b) Gesta  
Ludov. 8.

(c) Nangis.  
Vinc. 30.  
c. 129.

(b) **D**uring Philip's reign in France, there arose a holy war in Tolouse, and in Occitania a Countrey of Narbon, against the Albigan Hereticks, and villainous company of Manichims, whose part was taken by Raymond Earl of Tolouse, and King of Arragon, and by him strongly defended; Against whom by the perswasion of Innocent the third, the Catholick Princes engaged, who made Simon Montford the General of their Army, a Religious valiant man, who having oftentimes defeated their forces, dyed triumphantly in the siege of Tolose, (c) in the year 1218; This War that was begun in the year 1226 by Lewis the 8th, St. Lewis's father, was ended by his son in the year 1229. At what time Raymond the Earl of Tolose, having renounced his heretic in Paris, he gave his daughter in marriage to Alphonsus, St. Lewis's brother, with the Earldom of Tolose for her Patrimony.

(d) At the same time was Alphonsus King of Castile, successfully and prosperously engaged in war against the Saracens, Miramolinus King of Tunis having victoriously over-run all Spain, he broke into the Countrey as far as Arles and Avignon; but in the year 1212, the four Kings of Castile, Arragon, Lusitania, and Navarr, advancing their Armies to Tolose a Town in Spain, round to the Arabians, that (as it's reported) no less of them were slain than two hundred thousand; and of the Christians not above 25; This battle was fought the 16th of July, as Mariana writes; since which the Saracens affairs and interests fell to decay; so that having lost by little and little the other Provinces, they had nothing left them but the kingdom of Granada.

(a) Lewis the 8th, after his father Philip's death, reigned in France in the year 1223; he having demolished Rochel and other Towns in Garona, he chased away from all the parts of the farther Aquitania the English, (b) in the year 1224, and two years after returning from the Albigan Expedition, he dyed in Auvergues, at Montpentfier, the 4th year of his reign, the 8th of November, upon a Sunday.

(c) In the same year was Lewis the 9th, son to Lewis the 8th, consecrated at Rhemes, (the honour and glory of the French) in the 12th year of his age; but Vincent attributes to him 14 years, who was put in the number of the Saints for his pious and innocent life, by Boniface the 8th. He at the beginning of his reign forced Theobald Earl of Champagne, Hugo of Marches, with some other Princes, who having entred into a conspiracy against their new King, had taken up arms to submit to his favour: hence having quieted all, and recovered peace every where, and being recovered

recovered out of a dangerous sickness, (d) in the year 1244; he took the sign of the Cross, and advanced into Egypt with that Army, as I have already mentioned, wherein he spent five years in all duties and practices of Christian Religion; whilest that Blanche his Mother, daughter to Alphonsus King of Castile, and of Eleanor the daughter of Henry the second, King of England, governed the kingdom.

After whose death being returned home, he was enriched with all the Christian virtues that can make a perfect and compleat Prince; (e) but being daily more and more zealous to propagate the Christian Religion, as if the first had been according to his desire, he undertook a new Expedition into Africk against the Saracens, in the year 1269; and the year following having encamped against Tunis, being infected with that disease that then was amongst his Souldiers, he yielded up to God his pious Soul the 8th of September, in the 56th year of his life, and of his reign 44, and of Christ 1270.

(f) The same day that this Lewis dyed his brother Charles King of Sicilia arrived into the Coasts of Africa with a strong Army, by whose help the French were so encouraged, that they overcame and beat the Barbarians, and forced them to seek and intreat peace, to their great disadvantage.

(a) Philip, Lewis's son, called the Hardy, being proclaimed in Africk, King of France, in the year 1270, was the year following consecrated on the Assumption-day at Rhemes: his Uncle Alphonsus Earl of Poitou, and Tolose, returning from Africk, dyed in Tuscia, whose inheritance then void of any other Successour, fell to Philip: He reduced under his dominion the Vascônes, who are called Navarreans, having taken Pampelopolis, (b) in the year 1276. (c) But Peter king of Tarragon, whom we have above said to possess Sicily, being excommunicated by the Pope, and his kingdom being given to Charles of Valois, Philip's son; Philip that he might send him to possess it, fought with all his force and power against him, and took Gerona in the year 1284. In which siege Peter dyed of a mortal wound, (d) but the Pestilence raging much, the French retired thence. Roger the Admiral of the Tarragonian Navy fell upon them at unawares, and on a suddain, who having cast wild-fire from the ships into the Town, made themselves passage with their swords through the straits of Mount Pireneus. Philip his sickness encreasing, dyed in Perpignan in October, 1285. (e) who was at the funerals of three kings, viz. Charles of Sicilia, Peter of Tarragon, and Philip of France did reign above 15 years, (f) he left behind him Philip the Fair, whom he had by Isabella of Arragon; and Charles of Valois; and by Mary of Brabant, he had Lewis of Brabant.

(g) Philip the Fair entred into the Government of the kingdom in the year 1285, but was consecrated the 8th of January, in the year 1286, and reigned 29 years; during which time he had almost continual wars with the English, and the Flemings their

ANNO 1286  
of Christ,  
to 1300.

(d) Nangis,  
Vincent.  
Joia.

(e) Idem &  
Joan. Vill. 1.  
c. 36.

(f) Nangis,  
Vill. c. 39.

(g) Nangis,  
in vita Phi-  
lipi.

(b) Nangis.  
(c) Id. &  
Joan. Vill. 1.  
c. 10. &c.

(d) Vill. 7.  
c. 104. Ga-  
guin. Mail.

(e) Paul.  
Mail.  
Philip.  
(f) Gaguin.  
Mail. Till.

(g) Anon.  
Franc. Ga-  
guin. Mail.

Anno 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.

(a) Joan.  
Villa. 8. c. 55.

(b) Joan.  
Villa. 8. c. 62.  
Blond. Dec. 2.  
1. 9.  
(c) Chron.  
Colmar.  
Conrad.  
Vecer. in  
Men. 7.  
Plat. Vill.

(d) Joan. Vil.  
la. 8. c. 60.  
Ber. Guidonis  
Plat.

(e) Albert.  
Argent. Plat.  
Villa. 8. c. 93.

(f) Gaguin.  
Amil.

(g) Joan.  
Villa. 9. c. 65.  
Til.

(h) Joinuill.

(i) Gench.

their confederates: *Edward* the second King of England invading Normandy and Aquitaine, was repulsed with a great loss by the Army commanded by *Charles de Valois*, in the year 1293; who recovered again all Aquitaine.

*Guido* Earl of Flanders, embracing *Edward's* part, was overcome with him at Furnes, in the year 1295; then having been subdued by *Valefium*, rebelled again from him in the year 1299; (a) whose Army had a bad success against the rebels in the year 1302 at Gurrack; but two years after they came to a composition, their Army being defeated at St. Omer.

(b) *Philip* the 8th had also something to do with Pope *Boniface* the 8th, who delaying and putting off the holy wars, was by him excommunicated in the year (c) 1302: *Savva Columensis* being gone into Italy with the Knight *Nagoretus*, seizing upon him at unawares at Anagnia, brought him to Rome, where for grief of mind he dyed the 11th of October, in the year 1303. *Benedictus* succeeding *Boniface*, restored *Philip* into the Churches communion. And *Clemens* the 5th succeeded *Benedict*, being first Archbishop of Bourdeaux in the year (d) 1305, who transported the Pontifical seat to Avignon, where it remained full seventy years. (e) He condemned by a Decree the Templars, and having caused King *Philip* to punish them in the year 1307, and their goods, adjudged their goods to the Hospitals, and the other part confiscated. *Philip* dyed, as (f) some say, in the year 1313; (g) others say, in the year following, the 29 of November; which is the most approved: whence it appears, that he dyed at the beginning of the 30th year of his reign.

While *St. Lewis* reigned, (h) *Robert Sorbona* established a College of Theologians, which unto this hour retains his name; (i) about the year 1343.

## CHAP. V.

Of the Affairs of the western Empire, both in Germany and Italy.

From the year 1300 of Christ, unto 1400.

(a) Conrad.  
Vecer. in  
vita Henrici 7.  
Albertus  
Argentin.  
Blond. dec. 2.  
1. 9. Nauch.  
(b) Albert.  
(c) Albert.  
Nauch. Vil.  
la. 9. c. 42.

(a) *Albert* of Austria King of the Romans, son to the Emperor *Rudolph*, was cruelly murdered by *John* his brother, in May; Anno 1308, in the 10th of his reign: and in his place is elected *Henrick* of Luxemburg (b) in November following, who being advanced into Italy, fought valiantly against the Gibellinian factions; and having taken divers places, what by composition, what by force, he was crowned in Rome, (c) in the year 1312. *Robert* at this time held in his possession the kingdom of Naples, from the year 1309, wherein his father *Charles* the second, surnamed the lame, dyed. *Henrick* pursuing him with his Army, having banished him by his Imperial Majesty, resolved to drive

drive him out of Italy; (d) but he dyed in this his enterprise in the Territories of Gehoa, not without suspicion of being poisoned by a Fryar of *St. Dominick's* Order.

After the inter-reign of 14 moneths, the Princes being divided into two parties, many of them ordained *Lewis* of Bavaria to be Emperour; and others chose *Frederick* of Austria; *Lewis* computing himself as Emperour against the will of the Pontiff of Rome, who then had his seat at Avignon, it was *John* the 22. (e) who after the death of *Clemens* the 5th, after two years interval entered into the Pontifical dignity the 7th of August, on a Saturday, in the year 1216, exasperated his spirit against him. Wherefore *Frederick* being overcome and taken prisoner by *Lewis*, who exulted exceedingly at his victory, *Lewis* was anathematized the year following by Pope *John*; (f) which Curse *Lewis* scorned and despising, he advanced into Italy, and having assumed the Title of Emperour, he advanced to the Pontificate, *Peter* of Corbey, a Franciscan, who was called *Nicholas* the Fifth.

(g) In the midst of all this was Italy enflamed all over with Civil broyles, and in several places did many Princes and great men take to themselves the Rule and Government of Cities, whom Pope *Benedict* the XII, legitimated Princes of the same, that they might be ready and willing to help and defend him against *Lewis* of Bavaria; so that Verona belonged to the *Scaligers*, with the neighbour Towns; and *Ferraria* to the *Este*s; and *Mantua* to the *Gonzages*.

*Robert* King of Naples espoused his son at seven years of age to *Joanna* Nece of *Andrew* King of Hungaria, (a) in the year 1333: (b) then he celebrated their wedding a little before his death, which fell upon the 19th of July, Anno 1343. *Joanna* two years after, (c) viz. in the year 1345, strangled *Andrew* with an halter, and then married *Lewis* of Tarentum; then fearing *Lewis* King of Hungaria, who had taken up Arms to avenge the death of his brother, (d) she concluded peace and confederacy with the King of Sicily in the year 1347; thence she retired her self into a Province of her own Jurisdiction the year following, (e) wherein the invasion of the kingdom of Naples by *Lewis* of Hungaria, (f) *Clemens* the 6th bought Avignon of her, (g) and restored *Joanna* into the Neapolitan kingdom, having concluded some certain agreements of peace with *Lewis* of Hungaria.

*Lewis* of Bavaria dyed (h) in the year 1347, the 11th of October, there being appointed another Emperour in the year before to oppose him.

(i) *Charles* the 4th of Luxemburg, son to *John* King of Bohemia, was crowned in Rome the 5th of April (k) on an Easter-day, in the year 1355, and soon after by the order of the Pontiff of Rome, he departed both out of Rome and Italy; he ruled the Empire after *Lewis's* death 31 years, and almost two moneths; (l) for he dyed in the year 1378, the 29 of November, having created two years (l) Albert

Anno 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.

(d) Conrad.  
Vecer. Alb.  
Argent.  
Nauch.  
Blond. dec. 2.  
1. 9. Villa. 9.  
c. 51.  
(e) Bernard.  
Guidonis.  
Nauch. Plat.  
Joan. Vill. 9.

(f) Blond.  
Albertus.  
Plat. Villa.  
1. 10.

(g) Villa. 9.  
& 10. Blond.  
Dec. 2. 1. 10.

(a) Joan. Vil.  
la. 10. c. 225.  
(b) Id. lib. 12.  
c. 9.

(c) Joan. Vil.  
la. c. 50. &c.  
Alb. Nauch.  
Pand. 5.  
March. Vill.  
1. c. 8.

(d) Fazel. po.  
ster. Dec. 1. 9.  
(e) Joan. 5.  
Joan. Vill. 12.  
c. 106. &c.

(f) Plat.  
Paul. Am.  
(g) Gest.  
Pont. Aquie.  
Pandul.

(h) Albert.  
Nau. Vide  
Joan. Villa.  
1. 12. c. 59. &  
105.

(i) Nauch.  
Triche.  
Albert.

(k) Mart.  
Vill. 5. c. 7.  
(l) Albert

Anno 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.

(m) Hist.  
Rom. Pont.  
Bosq. edita  
Naucel. Plat.  
(n) Naucel.  
Plat. Onu.  
Froffar. l. 2.  
c. 12.

(a) Naucel.  
Enail. Pand.  
Collen. 5.

(b) Naucel.  
(c) Joas.  
Tilius.  
(d) Naucel.  
Vol. 2.  
Gen. 46.

(e) Naucel.  
Eonar.  
Enail. in  
Caro. 6.  
(f) To. vn.  
Germ. Script.  
in fine. Tric.  
(g) Polyd. l. 2.  
de Inu. c. 10.  
(h) Aaron.  
Marth. Pal-  
mer.

(i) Anton.

years before *Wenceslaus* his son King of the Romans, buying th  
infrages of the Electors with a great sum of money.

(m) In the same year 1376, *Gregory* the XI, by the exhortation  
of *St. Katherine*, which then was eminent in piety, being departed  
from Avignon in the moneth of September, returned to Rome  
seventy one years after the transportation of the Roman See into  
France; but (n) after *Gregory's* death, which fell upon the year  
of our Lord 1378, there was a sad and tedious Schism for almost  
40 years, some of the Popes erecting their seats at Rome, and  
some at Avignon: This began first by the means of *Joanna* of  
Naples, which fearing *Urban* the 6th, *Gregory's* Successour, to  
raised up the spirits of the French Cardinals, that causing the  
Chamber of Election to be on their side, they created *Clement* the  
7th Pope, who established his seat at Avignon, (a) whom *Joanna*  
following, she adopted *Lewis* of Anjou, brother to *Charls* King of  
France; she at last was put to death in the same manner that she  
had slain her first husband, by *Charls Dirrachinus*, son to *Charls Dir-  
rachinus*, upon whom *Urban* did transfer the kingdom of Naples.  
*Lewis* (b) two years after he passed into Italy, dyed, with most of  
his Nobility, as it's reported, by waters whereof the Fountains  
were poisoned, (c) 1383.

(d) *St. Bridget* arrived at Rome when *Urban* the 5th was Pope,  
and dwelt in the City, and had made an Order, which was con-  
firmed in the year 1366; and not long after *John Columbinus* be-  
gan the Order of the Jesuites. At this time *Francis Petrarcha*, and  
*John Boscassius*, both of Etruria, were very famous for their learn-  
ing, and also *Paul* of Burges the Theologian; also *Bartolus* and  
*Baldus*, learned Doctors in the Law, and whilst *Lewis* of Bavaria  
was Emperour, lived *John Okam*, a man of great acuity of spi-  
rit.

(e) *Wenceslaus* after his father *Charls's* death, governed so the  
Empire some 22 years, that by the general vote and consent of the  
Princes, he was dispossessed of his Imperial dignity (f) in the year  
1400. (g) Under this Emperour was invented by a German an  
engine of warr called *Bombarda*, from the noise and terror it  
gives; and the Venetians are reported to be the first that made  
use of it in the Rampier *Clodia*, when they were at wars with the  
Genoans in the year 1380; the said Emperour created *John Ga-  
leatus* Duke of Millan for a great sum of money, who having slain  
his Uncle *Bernabon* who likewise was his son in law, had invaded  
Millain; and having reduced it under his power, confirmed and  
secured it by his affinity and league with other great Princes.  
*Lewis* of Orleans, Cousen-german to *Charls* the sixth, King of  
France, married his daughter *Valentina*: (i) He raising up his  
spirits daily, and waxing high in mind, aynd in his heart at the  
whole Principality of Italy, possessing already besides Infubria,  
Bononia, Sena, Peroufa, part of the Dutchy of Spoletum and Pi-  
sa, Verona and Vicentia, with several other Cities, and yet aspi-

red at the state of Florence, with whom he had continuall  
war.

The French, whilst *Wenceslaus* was Emperour, (a) in the year  
1396, achieved a great expedition, whereof *Philip* Duke of Bur-  
gundy made his son *John* General, when *Sigismund* King of Hunga-  
ry, implored help of the Christians against *Bazajetib*, Emperour  
of the Turks, over-running *Pannonia*, and making sad havock, cruel  
slaughter in the Countrey: but the battell beginning very fiercely  
and cruelly near *Nicopolis*, the Turk got the victory by reason of  
the Christians rashness and temerity: many of ours in this bat-  
tel were killed, and many taken Prisoners, *John* himself the Ge-  
nerall with other Princes, obtained his life with great difficul-  
ty, and payed a vast sum of money for his ransom.

## CHAP. VI.

The affairs of FRANCE from the year 1300, unto 1400. or there  
abouts, under *Lewis* Hutin, *Philip the Long*; *Charls the  
Fair*, *Philip of Valois*, *Charls the V.* and *VI.*

(b) IN France, *Lewis* Hutin, which word signifieth contenti-  
ous and obstinate, reigned after *Philip* the fair, in the year  
1315: having already been created King of *Navarre*, dyed sixteen  
Moneths after, (c) he ordained an ordinary Parliament to be as-  
sembled in the Palace-Royall at *Paris*, he died in the year 1316.  
the fifth of June, leaving *Clementia* his Wife big with child,  
which brought forth *John* after his fathers death, but he dying  
before he was eight dayes old;

(d) *Philip* the Long, *Hutins* brother, was created King of France (d) *Idem.*  
by the Salick Law, *Joanna*, *Hutins's* daughter being rejected, who  
reigned five years, and died in the year 1322. the sixth of Janu-  
ary.

(e) *Charls* his Cousen-German succeeded him, he was surna-  
med the Fair, he died in the year 1328. having reigned six years;  
there remaining none of *Philip* the Fair's stock alive.

(f) *Philip* of Valois, son to *Charls* of Valois, who was *Philip* the  
Fair's brother, succeeded him by the Salick Law, the English not  
at all opposing it; (g) Notwithstanding that their King *Edward*  
the third, whose Mother *Isabella* was daughter to *Philip* the Fair,  
claimed an Inheritance to the Crown of France: this contest did  
almost at last consume both Nations; with cruel Wars and great  
calamities.

(a) This war begun in the year 1336, *Robert* Earl of Artois re-  
volting from the French to the English, because that having a quar-  
rel and suit at law with *Mathildes* wife to the Duke of Burgundy, he  
said he had been wronged in it by *Philip*.

And then were the French first defeated at *Cluses* in Flanders, in  
a Sea-fight, (b) in the year 1340. the three and twentieth of June;  
Ccc then

Anno 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.

(e) Hist. l. 1.  
Froff. l. 4.

(b) Gagueu.  
Enail.

(c) Annal.  
Franc.

(e) Idem.

(d) Idem. et  
Villa. to. c. 88.  
(g) Froff. l. 1.  
c. 4.

(a) Froff. l. 1.  
Gag. Am.

(b) Froff. l. c.  
51. Pont. Rom.  
Hist. Bosq.  
in Clem. 6. Gag.  
Am. Vill. 11.  
c. 109. & l. 12.

Anno 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.

(e) Frof. 1. c.  
133.

(d) Frof. 1. c.  
129. Alb. Ar-  
gent.

(e) Frof. 1. c.  
145. Math.  
Vill. 1. c. 25.

(f) Albert.  
Gag. Ann.  
Math. Villa.

(g) Idem.  
(h) Frof. 1.  
c. 113. Math.  
Vill. 1. c. 74.

(i) Ann. Till.

then again at *Crefy*, were the *French* beaten, in which battell were killed twelve Princes, twelve hundred horse-men, and 30000, foot-men, this battell was fought in the year 1346. on a Saturday, (c) the 26th of *August*, and thenceforth did (d) *Calice* come under the power of the *ENGLISH*.

(c) *Humbert* Prince of *Vienna*, mitigated a little these great losses of the *French* by selling (f) in the year 1349, the *Daulphinie* to King *Philip*, and retired himself amongst the *Dominicans*. (g) *Philip* died in the year 1350, the (h) two and twentieth of *August*, having reigned twenty three years; its uncertain what day it was properly.

(i) During his reign, there were great disputes about the Church Jurisdiction, hence it came to passe that *Peter Cantreim* who was the Kings Advocate in the Parliament of *Paris*, stood it out against the Clergy, for to maintain the Kings Rites and Priviledges, and on the other side *Peter Bertrand* Bishop of *Augustodunum*, afterwards made *Carainall* defended their part, in favour of whom King *Philip* himself gave sentence, after a long contest and dispute in the year 1379. the very same day that *Thomas of Canterbury* suffered death for maintaining the priviledges of the Church, hence did *Philip* obtain the name of Catholic.

*John* succeeded his father *Philip*, whom he had by *Joanna* daughter to *Robert* Duke of *Burgundy*, who had worse success in wars with the *English* then his father had; (k) for fighting a field battell in *Poitou* the (l) 18th of September, 1356. against *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, son to King *Edward*, his Army being beaten and defeated he was taken prisoner, with his son *Philip*, and carried away into *ENGLAND*, where he remained Prisoner four years, after which, having concluded a peace, he was freed. After so many and so great calamities, as he prepared himself for the Holy War, appointing his son *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy* to go in his room, he sailed over into *ENGLAND*, for to conclude a firm peace with *EDWARD* their King. Then he died in the year of our Lord 1368. the eighth of Aprill, having been king fourteen years.

*CHARLS* the V. his son, Surnamed the *WISE*, succeeded him, but died when he was seventeen years of age, in the year of Christ one thousand three hundred and eighty; During his time, there arose a cruell war betwixt *Charls* of *Boyes*, and *John Montfort*, about their rights of *Britain* in *France* which was ended by *Charls* of *Boyes* death, (a) who in it was slain in the year one thousand three hundred sixty nine. In which year *Philip the Bold*, Duke of *Burgundy*, king *Charls* his brother, married *Margaret* daughter to *Lewis*, Earl of *Flanders*. Hence afterwards, after his Father in Law's death, he had in the year one thousand three hundred eighty four, *Flanders* for his Wife's Portion, which he revived and comforted by his meeknesse and discretion when it was almost overflown with miseries, and destructions; At the same time was the War with the *ENGLISH* renewed.

(k) Frof. 1. c.  
132. & seq.  
Math. Villa.  
9. c. 15.

(l) Math. Vil-  
la. Ibid.  
Gag. Ann.

(a) Gag. & Ann.

renewed, (b) for the Earl of *Armignack*, and the *Gascon*, having complained to the king of *France* how many great wrongs they suffered by *Edward* Prince of *Wales*'s unjust oppressions, prevailed with *Charls* to send him a writ of appearance; but he refusing, the War was again set on foot, wherein *John Montfort* Lord of little *Britain*, revolting from the *French*, adhered to the *ENGLISH*; this War as well as the former, proved the more violent and cruell by reason of the same, and valour of *Bertrand Gueslin* of *Guennet*, (c) who a little before had got a renown in feats of Arms, and an immortal name by his magnanimity in *Spain*, when he fought against *Peter* of *Castille*, for *Henry* his illegitimate brother. For by his means, chiefly after divers turns of fortune; *Henry* overcame *Peter*, and put him to death (d) in the year 1369.

(e) *Charls* the V. reigned longer then any one of the others since *Saint Lewis* unto this age, but to the *Frenches* greater hurt and detriment. *Charls* the V. son to *Charls* the V. began to reign in the year of Christ 1380, being so young that his age was not fit to rule the Common-wealth, to whom his father by his will appointed for Guardians and Tutors, his Uncles, *John* Duke of *Aquitain*, and *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, making *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou* the eldest of all his Uncles, chief Governour of all things during his minority. After this arose great troubles both at home and abroad, and the commons broke out into a tumult, and sedition, because of the too many and grievous taxes that were layed upon them: for truly *Lewis* of *Anjou*, whom we have said above *Joanna* of *Naples* adopted, soon exhausted the treasures by his expedition into *Italy*, and other great expences and charges; but not long after he was killed in *Italy*. (a) Upon this began the *Flemish* War; this war was caused by the rebellion of the *Flemings*, and especially of those of *Gaunt*, who under the command of *Philip Artevellem* assaulting *Lewis* their Earl, forced him to implore the aid of the *French*.

King *Charls* learned his first rudiments of Military Discipline in this war against the *Flemings*, wherein its said that there were killed of the Rebels 40000. amongst whom dyed also their General *Artevellem*: This battell was fought the 27th of *November*, being the fifth day of the Week; (b) in the year 1382. (c) Two years after this, *Lewis* of *Flanders* died the 30th of January, Anno 1384. (d) whose Heir, *Philip the Hardy* Duke of *Burgundy* having suppressed this sedition, at length restored peace to the country in the year 1385. (e) But King *Charls* being offended at *John*, petty-King of the lesser *Britain*, as he advanced an Army against him, being in the Countrey of *Lemain*, his head being hurt by the great heat of the sun, he fell into a madnesse and Frenzy, which now and then seized upon him, the power and administration of all things returned into the hands of his Uncles, viz. of *John* Duke of *Aquitain*, and *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*, *Lewis* the kings brother Duke of *Orleans*, being rejected. This was the seed of an implacable

Ccc 2

Anno 1360  
of Christ,  
to 1400.

(b) Frof. 1. c.  
246. Gag. Ann.

(c) Hoffer.  
Gueff. Frof.  
1. 1. c. 247.  
Gag. Mariana.

(d) Tapha.

(e) Frof. 1. c.  
Gag. Ann.

(a) Joan. Till.  
Meyer. Gag.  
Ann.

(b) Frof. 1. c.  
c. 126.

(c) Frof. 2.  
c. 48.  
Gag. Ann.  
Meyer.

(d) Frof. 2. c.  
178. Meyer.

(e) Frof. 4. c.  
43. Ann.  
Gag. Meyer.

Ann. 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.  
(f) Meyer.

(g) Alanns  
Carter.  
Montfrel. l. 1.  
c. 36. Ga-  
guin. Anil.  
Meyer.

(h) Proff. 4.  
c. 107. &c.  
Gaguin.  
Anil.  
(a) Alan.  
Montfrel. 1.  
c. 11. Oli-  
var. 1. c. 2.  
(b) Meyer.  
Gaguin.  
Anil.

(c) Montfrel.  
l. 2. c. 197.  
Gaguin.  
Anil.

ble and irreconcilable hatred between the Duke of Burgundy and the Duke of Orleans, and their posterity also. *Philip the Bold* (f) dyed in the year 1404. His son *John Duke of Nevers*, more active and violent than his father, having an old grudge against *Lewis of Orleans*, did not question to execute it by his death, hiring a private murderer, who unawares did set upon him at Paris, the (g) 10th of December 1407. Hence broke forth a bloody Civil War; And at this same time was also the old war renewed with the English, who had given aid to the Duke of Orleans, and destroyed the Countrey far and near. *Henry of Lancaster* reigned then in England, on whom was the kingdom of England transferred; King *Richard* being condemned to perpetual prison; (h) in the year 1399.

*Philip of Burgundy* Prince of Flanders joyned himself to him, as he arrived into France, with a numerous and comberfome Army, intending to revenge the death of *John* his father; (a) who was slain at Mountreuil, whither he was gone to parley with *Charles*, son of *Charles* the sixth, even in the sight and presence of him, (b) in the year 1419. Therefore the King of England accrewing and increasing in power and strength without any resistance or opposition, as a destroying fire, devoured all before him, and left all wasted after him. In the midst of these things, *Charles*, through publick and private griefs, having lived in his best strength 42 years, dyed the 22 of October, (c) in the year 1422.

## CHAP. VII.

*Of the rest of the Emperours of Constantinople, untill the time that the Turks took the possession of it; wherein also is made mention of the Turks Original, and of their encrease; Also of Usumcaffanes, Ismael Sophus; and likewise of the beginning of the Persians Dominions at this day.*

**T**He Affairs of the East were in no better and quieter estate than those of the West, which as we have declared, were all brought to a confusion and ruine by wars and tumults amongst themselves; for the Empire of Constantinople was in a languishing and tottering condition. And as a Whale cast upon the Sea-shore, and grievously wounded, decays and dyes by little and little, striving against death for life; Or as a body poysoned decayeth by little and little, and then dyes when once the poyson attains to the heart; So likewise the Greeks Empire, the Barbarians roving and ranging in the bowels of it, adding to their power Provinces after Provinces, the Imperial City and Fortresses being by them taken, was at last utterly demolished and overthrown.

After the death of *Andronicus*, son to *Michael* the elder, which was in the year 1332, the *Paleologus's* posterity reigned in Constantinople 121 years. (d) *Andro-*

(d) *Andronicus* the younger, as we have above observed, having ejected his Grandfather, reigned about some eight years, unto the year of Christ 1341; in which dying, he committed the care and tuition of his two sons, *John Paleologus*, and *Manuel*, to *John Cantacuzenus*; Sixteen years after this, being the year of our Lord 1357, was *Cantacuzenus* dispossessed of his Office: then *John Paleologus* reigned 27 years, and *Manuel* his brother did succeed him in the Government of the Empire in the year 1384; who having completed 37 years, left the Empire to his son *John*, (a) in the year 1419, which he possessed 27 years: At last, *Constantine* the 8th, and last, began to govern the Empire in the year 1445. In the 8th year of his Empire, being the year of Christ 1453, *Constantinople* came under the power and dominion of the Turks.

(b) The Original of the Turkish Nation, which in this Age, and that following, increased mightily, did quite extinguish the Greeks name. It is diversly reported by Authors, most part do think, that they had their beginning from *Sarmatia* or *Scythia*, who falling out of the Caspian Ports, when *Menacitus* was Emperour, (c) being the 625th year of Christ, wasted and depopulated Persia, and came to aid the Romans against *Cosroes*; then when *Constantine Monomachus* ruled in Persia, (d) being the year 1042. The Persians being subdued by them who had been their Tributaries, they extracted from them their Mahometick superstition; then they dispersed themselves, and extended their arms into Syria, Cappadocia, and other Provinces of Asia minor, dividing themselves into severall Principalities, but they were all extinguished and suppressed, but onely the family of *Othomans*, which enjoyed all. From him, were afterwards the Princes of the Turks alone so called.

Their first settlement is ordinarily accounted to have been in the year of our Lord, (e) 1300; but if *Othoman* ruled the Empire 29 years, as the Turks Annals record; and if he dyed in the year of Christ, 1326, upon the latter end of November, *Othoman* must needs have begun his Empire before the year 1300, or else he ruled but 27 years.

Now the first of the *Othoman's* within lesse then (f) 29 years increased wonderfully his Empire and the Turkish Dominion, and subdued a great part of Bithynia, and established the Throne of his kingdom at Prusa.

Dying, he delivered the kingdom to his son *Urchanus* in the year of Christ 1326, who brought under his power and dominion Mysia, Lycaonia, Phrygia, Caria, and all the rest unto Hellepont and Euxinum, whilest that *Cantacuzenus* and the *Paleologi* fight both with hatred and arms one against the other. He reigned 32 years.

(g) *Amurath* succeeded his father *Urchanus* in the beginning of the year 1357, his elder brother *Soliman* being then dead, who is recorded in the Turks Annals to be the first that entred into Europe with an Army: *Amurath* took into his possession (a) Calliopolis,

Ann. 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.  
(d) Hignac.  
Cuiropia.  
Onuf.

(a) Vide  
Vignier. Tqm.  
3. Bibl.

(b) Chalq.

(c) Theoph.  
Cedre. Ni-  
coph. Brev.  
(d) Europ.

(e) Annal.  
Turc. 1. Eg-  
nat.

I.  
(f) Annal.  
Turc. Chal.

II.

III.

(g) Annal.  
Turc.  
(a) Annal.  
Tur. Chalq.

Anno 1309  
of Christ.  
to 1400.

(b) Annal.  
(c) Cypin.  
IV.

(d) Frois. 4.  
c. 67. Gag.  
Amil. Chal.  
2.

(e) Annal.  
Tur. Chal.  
1.3. Nau.  
Gen. 47.  
Bisartus 9.  
Hist. Pers.

(f) Annal.  
Turc.

V.  
VI.

VII.

VIII.

IX.

(a) Cypin.

polis, (b) Hadrianopolis, and the adjacent Provinces. (c) Some say, that he lived but 23 years: The Annals of the Turks record, that he lived 32 years, and record, that he dyed in the year of our Lord 1388.

*Bajazeth*, *Amurath's* son, who is called *Gilderim*, by the Turks Annals, succeeded his father: he exceeded all his predecessors in cruelty and valour; he subjected to his Turkish Dominions, Thessalia, Macedonia, Phocis, Attica, Mysia and Bulgaria; and besieged Constantinople many years.

(d) Against whom the Emperor *Immanuel* imploring the aid of *Charls* the 6th King of France, coming into France for that purpose; but *Sigismund* King of Hungaria imploring it also, some of the Christian Princes engaged for an Expedition into the Holy Land; amongst whom was *John* of Nevers, son to *Philip* of Burgundy, but as they rashly and unadvisedly engaged in the battle, part of them, were killed, and part taken by the Barbarians, together with *John* their General.

(e) But God not long after avenged himself of *Bajazeth's* pride, who by this his great success was puffed up in his heart: For *Great Tamberlain*, whom the Turks Annals call *Temiris*, broke into Asia with an innumerable Army of Tartars, whom *Bajazeth* meeting with a huge Army, and both Armies engaging, *Bajazeth* had the worse; for there being killed in the battle 200000 Turks, *Bajazeth* himself was taken prisoner, and put in an Iron-Cage, as a wild-beast, he carried him so away along with him for to make sport and derision of him; so that he was glad to seek a way how to end his life, for to be freed of this calamity: The Turks Annals record, that this Tartarian Expedition was in the year of our Lord 1401, and relate, that *Bajazeth* before this his overthrow ruled the Empire 14 years; and that great *Tamberlain* ruled 40 years: *Froissard* and others do call this *Bajazeth* *Lamoraquinn*; I think, that they deducted this name from *Amurath*, as if it were *Amurathberg*, *Bajazeth* left behind (1) him 5 sons, of whom one and that the 5th.

Who was named *Isazebell*, as he had taken the name of Emperor, he was slain by *Solyman* his brother, who usurped the kingdom in the year of Christ 1402, or 1403; and held it 7 years, and then dyed.

Whom his brother *Musa* succeeded, and swayed the Scepter 4 years, at the end whereof he was slain by his brother *Mahammedes* in the year of Christ 1413, who was succeeded in the year of our Lord, 1421, by

*Amurath* his son, he leading an Army out of Asia through Hellespont, took Thessalonica, he had cruel Wars against the Hungarians, and *Uladislaus* their King, whom they had chosen after *Albert* *Cesar*, and *John Huniades* their General, (a) wherein being often worsted at last in the year 1444, he gave a great overthrow to the Christians, in the battle at *Warnes*, wherein King *Uladislaus* himself was slain the 10th of November; he had also a ve-

ry bloody war with *Scanderbeg* King of *Epirum*, a gallant Warriour; but as the chief City of his kingdom *Croia* was besieged, he dyed of grief the (b) 31 year of his reign, the 75 of his age, in the year 1451.

*Mahammedes* succeeded *Amurath*, he was his second son, and the year following he besieged Constantinople, and took it in the year 1453, the 29 of May, (c) as above we have shewed.

Though his Mother was a Christian, he was a meer contemptor of all Religion, (d) and yet was educated in several disciplines, especially in Astronomy, and in the acuity of the Greek, Latine, Arabick, and Persick tongues; but he is recorded to have been unreasonably cruel, and treacherous: but being a gallant Warriour, and rare Commander, he enlarged mightily his Turkish power and dominion, for he overthrew two Christian Monarchies: Also he subdued under his power the kingdom and City of (e) *Trapezunda*, besides that of Constantinople with *Colchis*; bring thence *David Comnenus* *Musca* *Karon's* father in law, who ruled and governed it, with his whole family into Constantinople, and soon after put him to death; which Empire *Comnenus* had about some 350 years before erected, after the taking of Constantinople by the Latines. He is recorded to have brought under his subjection twelve Kingdoms, and above 300 Cities, being driven back from before Belgradum, by the valour and magnanimity of *John Huniades*. He took from the Venetians, Corinth, Lemnos, Mitylena and Euboea: from the Genoans he strived to get *Capha*, *Theodosia*, and *Rhodes*; but his labour was lost. Yet he took *Otronta* in Italy. Then he dyed in the year 1481, the third of May, being

(f) 53 years old, as some assert; (b) but some say 58; and others 76, or 74: it's certain he exceeded the 53 year of his age, if his son lived 74 years, and reigned 31; for 53 and 31 make up 84; whereof taking 74, there remains ten; at what time *Mahammedes* had begotten *Bajazeth* the second; but this is incredible: Wherefore *Nauclerus* may perhaps have spoken truth, when he saith, that he lived 58 years.

(c) His son *Bajazeth*, the second of the name, is chosen by the Pretorians, and preferred before his elder brother *Zifimus*, who flying to the Christians, dyed in Italy, at what time *Charls* the 8th King of France, invaded the kingdom of Naples.

This *Bajazeth* took from the Venetians, *Naupactum*, *Metona* and *Dyrachium*; but being forced by the conspiracy of his Princes to abdicate himself from the Empire, he yielded it to his son in the 74 year of his age, and of his reign 31, and of Christ 1512.

*Selimus* his son defeated the *Mammelucks* or *Circassies* in Egypt, and hanged their Sultan *Tommambasim* at Cairus, in the 923 year of (d) *Hegira*, being the 1517 of Christ, the 9th of April. Since this, Egypt hath been constrained to pay tribute to the Turks. Three years after, (e) *Selimus* dyed the 9th year of his Empire, the 22 of September, in the year of Christ 1520.

(f) *Solyman*,

Anno 1309  
of Christ.  
to 1400.

(b) Annal.  
Turc. Leucl.  
Naucl. in Scand.  
der.

X.  
(c) Lib. 1. de  
Doct. Temp.  
c. 53.  
(d) Chalcond.  
1. 2.

(e) Chalcond.  
1. 9. Paul  
Mahom.  
Leuclius.

(a) Paul. Jov.  
in lib. de reb.  
Tur. Supp.  
Chal. & Hist.  
Turc.  
(b) Naucl.

XI.  
(a) Paul. Jov.  
Hist.

XII.  
(d) Annal.  
Turc. Leucl.  
Jov. Supp.  
Chal.  
(e) Lib. An.  
nal. &c.

Anno 1300  
of Christ,  
to 1400.

XIII.

(f) lid.

(a) Hist. ob-  
sid. Melit.  
Supp. Chal.

XIV.

XV.

XVI.

XVII.

XVIII.

XIX.  
(b) Suppl.  
Chalcon.  
l. 10.

(f) *Solyman*, *Selim's* son, a discreet man, and being a Barbarian, was reasonably meek, yet was stout and magnanimous, he took Belgradum in the year 1521; and the year following he took Rhodes, which he had besieged six years, the 22 of December, having routed the Hungarian Forces, and slain their King *Lewis*, he took Buda in the year 1526, being repulsed from before Vienna, where he received a great overthrow in the year 1529. He brought under his jurisdiction Alba-regia, Strigonium, and other Cities in Pannonia; by his assistance *Barbarossa*, that notable Pirate, took Tunesum in Africa: He had as prosperous success against the Persians by those two Generals he sent thither: (a) he besieged Miletia in the year 1565; but the year following he dyed at Sigerum a Castle in Hungaria: He was near 80 years old, having ruled the Empire 47 years, he dyed in the year of our Lord 1566.

After him ruled *Selim* the second; he brought Cyprus under the Turks Dominion in the year 1571; he dyed in the year 1574, having ruled the Empire 8 years after that memorable victory of the Christians, which was in the year 1573.

Him succeeded *Amarath* the third, who dyed in the year 1595, and in the 21 of his Empire.

*Machomet* the third was a sloathfull and lascivious Prince, he dyed the 9th year of his Empire, which was the year of Christ, 1604.

*Achmet* ruled 14 years, and dyed in the year of our Lord 1617, whose eldest son *Osman* was not above twelve years old; and therefore was saluted Emperour by the Pretorians.

*Mustapha*, *Achmet's* brother, a sloathfull and foolish man lived a solitary and retired life in a cave; but two months after was put up in custody and security.

(b) *Osman*, *Achmet's* son, is declared Emperour, a youth of great acuity of spirit, whose spirit reached to great things above his capacity; but fortune first crossed his designs, then his subjects put him to death with great indignity and defame; he was scarce grown to a youth's estate, before that he had a great and eager desire to avenge himself of that overthrow which he had received of the Polanders in Moldavia; and to invade Poland. Therefore having gathered up all his forces and riches for this Expedition, advancing thither with an Army of four hundred thousand men, he was beaten back with great ignominy, having lost the greatest part of his men; it's recorded, that above 100000 were then killed, besides the multitude that dyed in the tedious and long march, what by sickness, what by famine. Now he daily imputing this his calamity and overthrow to the seditions of the Pretorians, he resolved to cashier and discharge them; and to transport the Throne of his Empire out of Constantinople into Syria, and to establish it in Damascus; but his design being discovered, his Souldiers rebelled from him; and having brought *Mustapha* his Uncle out of prison, they declared him Emperour:

Then

then having disrobed *Osman* of all Imperial dignities, and leading him with a horse in a most sad and deplorable spectacle, they strangled him with a bowstring the (a) 20th of May, in the year 1622.

And so by this means did *Mustapha* again obtain the Empire; but the year following returning unto his former condition, he was again shut up in prison.

And *Amurath* was chosen in his place, being *Osman's* brother, who is said to rule in this year 1632, wherein we writte his book.

And thus much concerning the *Othoman's* Family; (b) Besides which, there were three other Princely families, viz. the family of the *Assimbeiores*, of the *Candelores*, and of the *Caramaniores*; the two last were suppressed by the arms of the *Othomans*, and so were expelled out of their kingdoms, and fled to the *Assimbeiores*, who had possessed *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia* the lesse, after that the *Candelores* had for a long time inhabited part of Pontus, and the *Caramaniores* Cilicia.

*Usuncassanes* had his original from the *Assimbeiores*, who being expell'd out of Armenia by *Bajazeth* the first, Emperour of the Turks, fled with his father *Casanes* to Tamberlain King of the Tartars, by whom both he and his children were re-established into their kingdome; but the Tartars being afterwards overcome, he enjoyed the Persian Empire (c) in the year 1470. Then he fought against the Turks and *Mahomet* the second, with no good success; (d) in the year 1474; (e) at what time *Mahomet* subdued Paphlagonia and Trapezon, and brought to Constantinople *Daria*, *Usuncassanes's* father-in-law, with all the family and posterity of the *Comneni*; (f) yet *Usuncassanes* desisted not to have war with the Turks, but also engaged against divers other Eastern Nations, and so hath extended his Dominions far and near in the East; whence he hath obtained so great fame and renown throughout the whole world; so that *Calixtus* Pope of Rome sent him letters, whereby he intreated and exhorted him eagerly to continue his war with the *Othoman's*, and that the Venetians would do the like, and make a strict covenant and friendship with him; (g) he lived 78 years, and dyed in the year of Christ 1478 in January; his son *Jacupp* succeeded him, and seven years after being poisoned, together with his son, by his adulterous wife, he dyed of it; and she her self being constrained to drink of the same potion, dyed the same day also: other Kings did succeed unto the time of *Immanuel Sophus*, whose rise we must fetch a little higher.

(a) *Hales* was Cousen-german and son in law to *Mahomet* the Legislator of the Saracens and Turks, who changing his lawes partly adding to them, and partly taking from them, and by expounding what was received into practice, he set up a new sect, but it by little and little being neglected, became obscure; the discipline of *Homarus Mahomet* entring into greater force and ac-

ceptance

Anno 1300  
of Christ  
to 1400.

(a) Suppl.  
Chalcon.  
l. 10. p. 981.

X X.  
XXI.

(b) Volaterr.  
l. 7.  
Bisarius l. 9.  
Hist.  
Pers. p. 294.  
&c.

(c) Bifar. l. 9.  
p. 317. &  
l. 10.  
(d) Annal.  
Turc.  
(e) Bifar.

(f) Bifar. ib.

(g) Bifar. ib.  
p. 329.

(a) Bifar. l. 6.  
p. 295. & l. 10.  
p. 323.  
Suppl.  
Chalc. l. 2.



Anno 1400  
of Christ,  
to 1437.

(b) Bizar.  
l. 10. p. 383.  
(c) lid.

ceptance amongst the people: (b) Unrill the year 1350, that a certain petty King called *Sophus*, drawing his pedigree from *Hales*, restored that discipline which for a long space of time had layn dead and buried, when the Turks were yet oppressed by the Empire of the Tartars. (c) His son *Guines* encreased much this sect, by the conceit they had of his piety and learning, whom *Tamberlain* the Scythian is recorded to have much honoured: then *Sicaidares*, *Guines*'s son, called by his Countrey *Harduell*, by the same art and cunning encreased both this sect, and his authority and power: Him did *Assimbeius Usamefsanes* adopt for his son in law, giving him *Martha* his daughter to wife, which he had of the daughter of *Trapezont*-Emperour. Now as all the Countrey about both out of Armenia and Persia resorted to him, as he preached and declared *Hales*'s Laws and Institutions, *Rustanus* King of Persia hindred their concourse; he suppressed *Sicaidares* with a great many of the faction: but *Ismael Sophus*; *Sicaidares*'s son, escaped away, being yet but a boy: And also *Techelles Sicaidares*'s disciple, who was esteemed no wayes inferiour to his Master, nor in vertue, nor in knowledge; *Ismael* growing into age, followed his father's steps, and renewed the sect again: and being excellent in speech, eloquence, magnanimity of spirit, and acuity of wit, he soon attained to great power and credit.

(d) Then the King of Persia being conquered and slain by the Turks, the Persian Empire was transported after a long space of time from the Turks to the natural people of the Countrey, in the year 1499, and unto this day is possessed by some of the same family, which have almost always continual wars with the *Othomans*. So was God pleased to provide for the security of Christendome, that such a powerfull enemy as the Turk is, having his forces divided, might the more easily be resisted.

## CHAP. VIII.

Of Robert, and Sigismond, Emperours; and of those things that under them were acted both in Germany and Italy.

From the year 1400 of Christ, unto 1437.

**V**enceslaus the Emperour of the Romans being degraded of his Imperial dignity by reason of his sloathfulness, Robert Duke of *Bavaria* was elected in his place, (a) in the year 1400, who being intreated by the Florentines to help them against Viscount *Galecius* Duke of *Millan*, advanced into Italy; but having atchieved nothing of great consideration, he returned into Germany, leaving a cruel war: from whence he retired. *Galecius* dying a little while after, (b) being the year 1402, most part of those Cities stood up for their liberty, and freed themselves; and some of them were added to other Princes's Dominions. The Venetians

(a) Anton. 3.  
Par. Tit. 22.  
c. 3. Naucl.  
Langius. l.  
Chr. Germ.  
l. 26. Culp.

(b) Anton.  
Palmer.  
Naucl.

netians took under their protection *Vercina* and *Padua*, (c) in the year 1405, at what time the Dominions and Principalities of the *Saligerians* and *Carrarifians* was wholly extinguished, and the Inhabitants of *Pisa* submitted themselves to the Florentines. This change of things brought great and almost fatal troubles to Italy. (d) At this time did *Ladislaus* reign in *Apulia*: he was son to *Charles Dirrachius* King of *Apulia* and *Pannonia*, who taking occasion by the divisions and distractions that were in *Rome*, attempted twice the taking of it; he was overcome and suppressed (e) by *Lewis*, son to *Lewis* Duke of *Andes*, who dyed in the wars he had in *Apulia* against *Charles Dirrachius*, (f) in the year 1410; but *Lewis* not knowing how to make use of his victory and advantage, returned into *France*.

In the midst of these times, an old and bitter division did tear the bowels of the Church, two Popes at the same time attributing each to themselves the Pontifical office; but as the cause of *Peter Lunensis*, who had changed his name into *Benedict*, and lived in *France*, was worse; so also did his authority daily decrease and lessen amongst those of his party, so that being forsaken by the French, he fled into *Spain*, where he was born, where for a long time he was maintained by the *Arragonians*. But *Gregory* the 13th remained in *Italy*. (a) Princes of both sides met together at *Pisa*, for to bring them to order and reconciliation; and having deprived them both of the Pontifical, they elected *Alexander* the 5th, of the Order of the *Minimes*, in the year 1409; by this action they made one Pope more. (b) Robert dyed in the year 1410, having ruled the Empire 10 years.

(c) *Sigismond* was after him elected Emperour by the suffrage of the Electors; he was King of *Hungaria*, and son to *Charles* the 4th Emperour, and brother to the Emperour *Venceslaus*, who is recorded to have been much adorned with discretion, magnanimity, liberality, & with all other virtues proper for a Prince; but he had no good success in military affairs; but was excellent in piety, and in the zeal of Religion; for he sent Ambassadors all over Christendome for to order and reconcile the peace of the Church, and hazarded to go into *France*, *England*, *Spain*, in his own person, and in *Italy* also; and at last by his assidual care and diligence, prevailed with Pope *John* the 23d, who in the year 1410 had succeeded *Alexander*, to assemble a Synod.

Therefore by *Sigismond*'s labour, was kept a general Council at *Constance* in the year (d) 1414, (e) on the 5th of November, being the second day of the week, (f) which lasted four years, ending the (g) 22 of April, Anno 1418. (h) In this Synod was condemned the opinion of *wickliff* and *John Huss*, he himself being then present, and not yielding to the Churches authority, was burnt the 6th of July, (i) in the year 1415; and the year following *Hierome* of *Prague* was also burnt for the same cause, being both glorious Martyrs for the truth of the Gospel. Now after *John* the XXIII, and *Benedict* the XII, were both deposed of

Ddd 2

Anno 1400  
of Christ,  
to 1437.

(c) Naucl.  
Sanlivinus.  
Anton.  
(d) Pand. l. 5.  
Palm. Naucl.  
Barlet. 10.  
Scanderb.  
(e) Pand. 5.  
Palmer.  
(f) Pand. 5.

(a) Anton.  
Palmer.  
Naucl.

(b) Naucl.  
Chr. Germ.  
Onuf.

(c) Anton. 3.  
Par. Tit. 22.  
c. 3. Naucl.  
Palmer.  
Chr. Germ.  
Culpin.

(d) Concil.  
Constance.  
Anton. Aneas  
Silv. Hist.  
Beem. c. 38.  
Naucl. Lang.  
gus Chron.  
Citiz. Chr.  
Germ. Hist.  
(e) Concil.  
Constance. l.  
(f) lb. Sess.  
45.

(g) Ea. Syl.  
c. 36.

(h) Chron.  
Citiz. Hist.  
Boem.

(i) Conc.  
Constance. l. 42.

the



Anno 1400  
of Christ,  
to 1437.

(h) Naucel. &c.  
(i) Lang. in  
Citic. Chr.

(a) An. Sylv.  
c. 37. & seq.  
Naucel. langus.

(b) An. Sylv.  
c. 38.

(c) An. Sylv.  
c. 40. 46.

(d) Naucel.

(e) Pand. l. 5.  
Anon. Par. 3.  
Tit. 12. c. 7.  
Plat. in Mar. 5.  
(f) Olivar.  
Mar. c. 1. Pand.  
Col. Lenar.

(g) Bertho Fa-  
cius l. 1. & l. q.  
Alphonfus king  
of Aragon goes  
to possess the  
Kingdome of  
Naples.  
(h) Pand.  
(i) Bertho Fa-  
cius l. 1. & seq.  
Pand.

(k) Facius l. 4.  
Pand.

the Papacy. Odo of Colen is chosen in their room, in the year 1417. (k) the eleventh of November, and was called Martin the fifth.

So was ended the Schism that had lasted fourty years, (l) though Benedictus strived still to oppose, but he died in Spain, in the year 1424. But the two Cardinals of his faction chose Clement the VIII. in his place, who four years after was fully suppressed; therefore some do record that this Schism lasted 50. years. During this Council, the Prince of Savoy, from an Earl, was created Duke by the Emperour Sigismond, in the year of our Lord 1415.

(a) But John Huss's Disciples and followers who already had taken up Arms in Bohemia for to avenge his death, did over-run all this Country: they were encouraged to it by Venceslaus's sloathfulness, who being dead in the year 1419. they elected for their Generall against the Emperour Sigismond, Ziska, a (b) valiant acute and notable warrior. He in a short time having raised up a great Army, took by force of Arms most part of the Towns and Cities of Bohemia, and often routed Sigismonds Army. He built a Town fortified by nature upon an exceeding high Rock (c) which he called Thaboris, hence were the inhabitants called Thaborites. It is said that as he died, he gave order, that of his skin should be made the bottom of a Drum, which being beaten, might cheer up their Souldiers, and give terrour to their enemies. (d) This was in the year 1424.

In Italy, king Ladislaus dying in the year 1414. as (e) Pandolphus relates, his sister Johanna swayed the Neapolitan Scepter: she was light of carriage and lewd, (f) she having married James of Bourbon, Earl of March: she afterwards forced him to flye back again into France, because he assumed the greatest power and authority of the kingdome upon himself, where despising all worldly things, he took the habit and Order of Saint Francis at Bezzan-son.

(g) Joanna having alienated from her self the Heart of Pope Martin the V. and fearing the Arms of the great Duke Sforza, she implored to her aid Alphonfus king of Aragon and Sicilia, whom upon conditions, she adopted (h) seven years after the death of Ladislaus.

(i) Now Martin the Pope had already entitled Lewis of Anjou, the third of that name, son to Lewis the second, king of Naples, and given to him all the Rites thereunto belonging, having degraded Joanna, allowing him Duke Sforza, for help in the carrying on of the expedition. Hence arose a most cruell and bloody War between Alphonfus and Lewis: not long after this broke forth a dissen- sion and division between Queen Joanna and Alphonfus, where- by Lewis by the means and endevours of the Duke Sforza, be- ing ingratiated and adopted, obtained the kingdome in the year 1431. (k) Three years after this, Lewis died of a sicknesse in the year 1434, Then was Rainer, who also is called Reinat, Lewis's brother, named heir of the Crown, by Joanna her self, whilst he yet

yet was retained prisoner by the Duke of Burgundy, (a) In the in- terim, Alphonfus relying upon the former dedition of the King- dome, done to him by the Queen, he attempted the possession of the same: but being overcome in a Sea fight by the Genoas, and by them taken Prisoner, he is carried to (b) Philip Duke of Mil- lan, under whose dominion then Genoa was, of whom he was re- ceived exceeding courteously: and a little after by him released, he again attempts to recover the Kingdome, which had already been possessed by Isabella, Reiners Wife, who then was come to Naples to her, being released from his imprisonment of Burgundy. (c) Alphonfus took Naples, sending his souldiers into it by that Channell, through which Belisarius's Army had broken into Na- ples, (d) this was in the year one thousand four hundred forty two. At which time Reiner being received into France, Alphon- fus reigned without any competitor, and having agreed with Eu- genius, he confirmed his right to the Crown, both upon himself, and his illegitimate son Ferdinando.

At this time Philip Maria the Vicount son to John Galeaceus, af- ter the death of John Maria his brother, holding Millan in his power, (e) in the year 1415. which was the cause of all the trou- bles of Italy, having concluded a peace with the Florentines, he brought under his subj<sup>o</sup>tion Genoa, having chased out of it Tho- mas Fregosius, Duke thereof, (f) then by Pope Martins agitation, he put an end to the Wars, which he had again begun with the Florentines, and Venetians, in the year 1427. But not long after they (g) fell to it again.

In the interim, Pope Martin having convoked a Councill in Basill, died in the year 1431, after whom Eugenius the I V. was chosen: he forbade the fathers convoked at Basill to proceed fur- ther: but nevertheless they continued their assembly, and con- demned Eugenius himself; therefore lasted this Council (h) from the seventh of December, 1431, unto the seventeenth of June (i) in the year 1448. being seventeen years. But Eugenius at last pre- vailed against them, so then was their authority nullified. And (k) Amedus called by the Duke of Savoy, Felix the V. who by this Synod had been made Pope, abdicated himself the seventeenth of November, in the year 1439. after Eugenius's death; and was dig- nified by Nicholas the fifth, Eugenius's successor, in the year 1449, with the order of the Purple-Gown Prelates. (a) Yet the Articles of Faith established by that Synod, were admitted and received in France, both by Charles the VII. King of France, and by the Parliament of Paris, but was abrogated by King Francis many years after.

Before this the Emperour Sigismond dyed the ninth of Decemb. (b) in the year 1437, and of his age the 70th 26. years after his Election, and six years after his coronation at Rome by Pope Euge- nius (c) which was done in the year 1432, (d) when he also crea- ted Francis Gonzaga Marquis of Mantua.

Anno 1430  
of Christ,  
to 1437.

(a) Pand. l. 6.  
& Fac.  
(b) Pand. bid.  
Palm. Fac. l. 4.

(c) Fac. l. 7.  
Pand. 6.

(d) Pand.  
Palm.

(e) Naucel. de  
e. Facius. l. 4.  
sub. fin.

(f) Anon. Par.  
3. Tit. 22. c. 8.

(g) Anon.  
ibid. c. 9. & seq.

(h) Conc. Ba-  
sil. Sess. 1.

(i) Sess. 4.  
Lang. in Chr.  
Citic.

(k) Conc. Bas.  
Sess. 39.

(a) Tilius.

(b) Plat. Cusp.  
Onuf.

(c) Naucel. Ci-  
tiz. Chron.

(c) During

Anno 1438  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(c) Chron. Cl.  
riz. An. 1417.  
(f) Chr. Citiz.  
Trieth.  
(g) Paul. Jov.  
in Eleg.  
(h) Trieth.  
(i) Trieth.  
(k) Trieth.

(l) Anton. 5.  
Par. Tit. 22. c.  
5.  
(m) Trieth.

(c) During this Emperours dayes, these persons flourished in Learning and Piety, *Peter of Alenon* Bishop of *Cameracum*, *John Gerson* Chancellour of the University of *Paris*; he was sent Embassadour by the king of France, (f) to the Synod of *Constance*, *Emmanuel Christoforus* a Grecian, who first acquainted Italy with his Country studies, and (g) dyed during the sitting of the Synod at *Constance*, (h) *Leonard Aretinus*, *Poghius*, who both were Italians, (i) *John of Turrecremata* Cardinall, *Alphonfus Tostatus* Bishop of *Alba* in Spain; (k) *Thomas Valdensis*, *Dionysius Ribell* Carthusian, a man of as great Learning as piety, he died in the year 1471. *Paul* who from a Jew became Christian, and Bishop of *Burges*; *Flavius Blondus Forojulienfis* the Historian, *Nicholas de Tudescht* Cardinal, and *Panormitanus* Archbishop, Prince of the Canonick Laws of that age. But these following surpassed all others in holinesse, (l) *Bernard Senensis* a Minime, *Laurentius Justinian* Patriark of *Venice*, *Vincent of Ferrara* a (m) Spaniard, who died in the year 1418. *Catherine Senensis*, and others, whose age is recorded, partly in their lives, partly in the Histories, and Chronicles of the times.

## CHAP. IX.

What things have been ailed in Germany, Pannonia, Italy, Cyprus, and all the parts of the East, under the Emperours Albert, Frederick, and Maximilian, and the renowned persons of their time.

From the year 1438. unto 1500. or thereabouts.

(a) Nauc.  
Culpi. Onurf.  
vide A. Sylv.  
de Hist. B. jem.  
c. 96. & in Eu-  
ropa. Bonf.  
Dec. 3. l. 4.  
(b) Flor. Con.  
Plat. in Eng.  
Pal. in Citiz.  
Chr. Nauc.

(c) Cufoin.  
Onurf. Pa'm.  
N. ucl. Citiz.  
Chr.  
(d) Egnar.

**A**LBERT Duke of *Austria* (a) in the year 1438. received the Title of the Empire, then vacant by the death of *Sigismund* his father in law, who in a short time having achieved many gallant enterprizes, against the *Mores*, the *Bohemians*, and the *Turks*, died at last in an expedition against the *Turks* in *November* the second year of his Empire, in the year 1439. (b) In this year *Eugenius* having interdicted the Synod of *Basill* to assemble any longer, he convoked another to *Florence* where *John Palaeologus* Emperour of *Constantinople* was present with *Joseph* the Patriarch, who died there the same year, the *Greeks* were then reconciled with the *Latines*, and also the *Armenians*, who had a form of the Catholick Faith given to them by *Eugenius*, but the *Grecians* being returned into the East, they broke off from the *Roman* society by the remonstrance and perswasion of *Mark of Ephesus*, and *Scholarium* both deeply Learned and Wise.

(c) *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, *Ernestus*'s son, obtained the Kingdome of the *Romans* in the year 1440. Under his Empire (d) *Germany* was more at peace and quiet then it was wont, whilst that the other parts of Christendome, were all in an uproar and distraction by fire and sword.

Francis

*Francis Sfortia* his son, who following *Lewis* of *Anjou* had fought valiantly in *Apulia* against *Alphonfus*, advancing against the *Venetians* for to help (e) *Philip* Prince of *Millan*, whose illegitimate daughter (f) *Blanche* he had married, overthrew him, and lost the battell, whereupon (g) *Philip* died without any heir the sixth of August, in the year 1448. At what time there was an Eclipse of the Sun at seven of the Clock in the morning, as *Antonius* saith; by this may *Bandolphus* and *Platina* be convinced, who say that this *Philip* dyed the year before. But *Francis* subdued under his power the *Milanois*, who earnestly, though in vain, endeavoured to get their liberty. *Alphonfus* King of *Aragon* and *Apulia*, dissembled with them, because *Philip* had made him his heir, as *Colenutius* asserts. *Charles*, Duke of *Orleans*, *Lewis*'s son, claimed no lesse of right and title to this Province, as being son to *Valentina*, *Galeace*'s daughter, and sister to *Philip*; (a) but upon this, the *Venetians* fearing such a potent neighbour, they conclude peace and league with *Alphonfus*; then the *Florentines* entreated the alliance and society of the French, and by this means was a cruell war renewed in Italy, but afterwards *Francis Sfortia* did conclude a peace and friendship with *Alphonfus*, (b) in the year 1454. and gave his daughter *Hippolyta* to Wife to *Alphonso* his Nephew, *Ferdinand*'s illegitimate son. (c) And four years after this died *Alphonso* the elder in July, 1458, being 66. years old, leaving the kingdomes of *Aragon* and *Sicilia* to his brother *John*, and to *Ferdinando*'s son, the kingdome of *Naples*; (d) *Alphonfus*'s generous and magnanimous spirit is highly commended by the Historians, and also for his love and respect he bore to learning and learned men, and in remembrance thereof, they have extolled his name to Posterity.

In *Pannonia* and *Albania*, the undoubted virtue of these two Princes, *John Corvinus Hunides*, and *Alexander* king of *Epirus*, who ordinarily is called *Scanderbeg*, upheld the Christian interest in this age. (e) The first, whose Father was *Walachus*, born of a Greek woman, not of ignoble stock, in the Town of *Corvinum*, thence had the surname of *Corvinus*; and he was called *Hunides* from a Lordship that *Sigismund* had given him.

*Scanderbeg*'s valour stopped that rod of the Christians, *Amurath*, who with his mighty power threatened and affrighted all Europe, and forced him upon very reasonable terms to conclude peace with *Ladislaus*, king of *Hungaria*, but the Hungarians themselves broke it: when the *Turks* were engaged in Asia, but it was to the great detriment of the Christians, (f) for their Army was routed and defeated by the *Turks* at *Warna*, in which battell both *Ladislaus* the king, and *Julianus* the Cardinall, who was the Author of the breach of the Peace, died the tenth of November, in the year 1444. (g) After this overthrow, *Ladislaus* son to *Albert Cesar* by *Elizabeth*, *Sigismunds* daughter, being but five years old, is elected king by the States of *Hungary*. *John Huniades* in the time of his minority, was made Protectour of the kingdome, because *Frederick* the

Anno 1438  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(c) Nauc.  
(f) Palm.  
(g) Anton. 3.  
Par. Tit. 22.  
c. 12. Parag.  
1. & 2. Plat. in  
Nichol. 5. 3.

(a) Anton. 2.  
Tit. 22. c. 12.

(b) Pand. l. 6.

(c) Pand. 6.  
Monfr. 1. Jov.  
l. 1. Hist.

(d) Plus 2. in  
Eur. c. 65.  
Pand. 6. Facius.

(e) Bonfin.  
Dec. 3. l. 3.  
Chalc. l. 6.

(f) Plus Pont.  
Europ. c. 5.  
Bonfin. Dec. 1.  
l. 6. Nauc.

(g) An. Sylv. in  
Europa. Bon-  
fin. &c.

Anno 1438  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(b) Pius 2d.

(c) Bonfin.

dec. 3. l. 7.

(d) Anton.

Par. 3. Tit. 22.

c. 13. Bonfin.

dec. 3. l. 8.

Nauch.

Palmer.

Chr. Citiz.

(e) Idem.

& Vill. An.

Boëm. Hist.

c. 65. Chale.

l. 8.

(f) Bonfin.

Anton. &c.

(g) Nauch.

(h) An. Syl.

c. 70. Boëm.

Bonfin. dec. 3.

l. 8.

(i) Barlet.

An. Syl.

in Europa,

c. 15.

(k) Libr. 13.

hist. Scand.

in fine.

(l) Plat. An-

ton. Par. 3.

Tit. 12. c. 12.

Chr. Citiz.

(a) Plat.

Anton.

(b) Plat. An-

ton. c. 14.

(c) Pand. l. 6.

Nauch. Plat.

(d) Palmer.

Plat. Nauch.

(e) Palmer.

the Emperour, (b) to whose trust his Mother had recommended the Crown of the kingdom, would not deliver him up to them: (c) At which *Huniades* being displeased, he over-run and wasted Austria and other Provinces belonging to *Frederick*, in the year 1445; he also fought often with great success against *Amurath*; and, *Amurath* dying at *Croia* in Epirus, fought against his son *Mahomet*, who took *Constantinople* (d) in the year of Christ, 1453; the 29 of May; (e) but three years after as he besieged *Taurinum*, which is called *Alba*, he drove him back with much disgrace, and great losse of his Army, in the year 1456, on *Magdalen's* day. Pope *Calistus* decreed a holy-day to be celebrated in remembrance of this great victory. In the obtaining of this and other remarkable victories, appeared the piety and devotion of *John Capistranus* of the order of the *Minimes*; and as he thus behaved himself, many embraced the Cross, and engaged for the Holy Wars.

(f) In the same year *John Huniades* Prince of Transylvania, as they are wont to say, with happy and prosperous issue, ended his life the 4th of September; and *Capistranus* himself dyed not long after, (g) whose sanctity was made illustrious by prodigious miracles.

*Ladislaus* being dead, the (h) 10th of December, in the year 1458, *Matthias Corvinus*, *John's* son, is elected King by the Hungarians; he was in nothing unlike his father, and by him were the Turks often beaten.

(i) *Scanderbeg* being escaped from the hands of the Turks, and having recovered his fathers right of Epirus, often vanquished several petty Kings and Bahaws of the Turks, who assaulted him with huge and innumerable Armies, with a handfull of valiant Souldiers; and as long as he lived, he was a great terrour to them.

(k) *Marin Barlet* records, that he began to reign the 4th of December, in the year 1443; and having reigned 23 years, he dyed in the year 1466, in the 63 year of his life.

In Italy (l) *Eugenius* the Pope being dead the 23 of February, in the year 1447; after him was elected (a) *Nicolas* the 5th, a great lover of Sciences, and of learned men; he erected the Vatican Library, having sought Volumes and Writings from all the parts of the World, even from the East also: (b) he dyed the 8th year of his Pontificat the 25 of March, in the year 1455, whom *Calistus* the third succeeded; and after him was elected *Pius* the second, a man of deep learning, who before was called *Aneas Sylvius*; in the year 1458, he wholly and unanimously aymed at the carrying on of the War against the Turks; (c) therefore did he conclude peace with *Ferdinand* King of Naples, *Alphonfus's* son, (d) and ordered the Christian Princes to resort to Mantua to consult upon it; but nothing could be done, because all the Princes applied their mind to domestical affairs, and were unwilling to engage in forreign wars; (e) therefore did this Princely assembly at Mantua break up in the eighth moneth of their sitting.

(f) *Alphonfus*

(f) *Alphonfus's* death being known, *John* son to *Renate* of Anjou, whom we have already shewed to have been driven back into his own Countrey, having levied a strong Army, advanced into Apulia, and having set up his Standard, he put *Ferdinand* to flight, and took possession of his Fortresse, defeating all his Army, and he had been quite undone, had not *Scanderbeg* by the entreaties of *Alphonfus* and Pope *Pius* assisted him, and came to help him with an Army. (g) *Maurin Barlet* complains, that the Historians and Chronologians did not fully record this Expedition of *Scanderbeg* into Italy.

At the same time the Genoans being vexed and infested by King *Alphonfus*, they yielded themselves to the protection of *Charles* the 7th King of France, (h) in the year 1458; whither *John, Renate's* son being sent, he fortified the City; (i) but it revolted again three years after from the French, under command of *Prosper Adurnus*; which *Lewis* the 11th granted to *Francis Sfortia* Duke of Millain (k) in the year 1464. (l) In which year Pope *Pius* dyed at Ancone, having got much glory in a short time; for he lived in the Office but six years: him followed *Paul* the second of that name.

Whilest Europe is troubled all over with intestine dissention and tempest, the like calamity and distraction afflicted also Asia. (a) *Richard* King of England had granted the Island *Cyprus*, being taken away from the Greeks, unto *Guido Lusanna* of the French stock, who did take to himself the right or title of the kingdom of Jerusalem.

His successours reigning in it, the *Genoans*, a slaughter of their Countreymen being there made, provide a strong Navy, *Trugosius* being chief Commander, to revenge them: in a short space, the whole Island, with the King and Queen, came under their power. To those, when they had been sometime held in prison, at length pardon is granted. But a tribute laid on the kingdom, and *Salamis*, which is *Famagusta*, a common Mart-Town for Traffiques, yielded to the Conquerour for a prey. The King would have his son that was born in prison, to be called *Janus*, because it is the custome to call *Genna*, commonly *Janus*. This King, the Sultan of Egypt, *Cyprus* being taken and plundered, and many mortals killed, made tributary. *John* his son succeeded his dead father; for riot and delights, more like a woman, than a man; who took *Helena* of the blood of the *Paleologians* in wedlock, of whom he begot *Carlotta*; but of a Concubine, *James*. *Carlotta* married *Lewis* the son of the Duke of the *Allobrogiens*. *James*, whom that his father might shut out from hope of the kingdom, by the perswasion of *Helena*, he had made chief Ruler of *Nicosia*; both being dead, being more desirous of obtaining *Cyprus*, than became a Christian, came to the Sultan of Egypt; in whose words a wicked oath being taken, he is brought by the same into the kingdom: *Lewis* the husband of *Carlotta* being driven away, (b) about the year 1459. Afterward, the *Genoans* being cast out, and *Salamis*

Ecc

Anno 1438  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(f) Nauch.

Pand. 6.

Barlet.

(g) Lib. 10.

degest. Scand.

(h) Palm.

Til. in Chr.

(i) Palm.

(k) Palm.

(l) Id. Palm.

Plat. Nauch.

(a) Pius

Pont. in Asia,

c. 97. Nauch.

Hist. Cyprus.

How the King

dome of Cy-

prus came to

the Venetians.

(b) Nauch.

Anno 1438  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(c) The same  
& Palm.  
(d) Culpin.  
Naucl. Chr.  
Spenheim.  
Trith. S. ppl.  
Palmer.  
(e) Onoff.  
Culpin.

being taken back again, James drave away *Acaterina* his Wife, the daughter of *Marcom Cornelius* of the Venetians; whom the Senate of Venice adopted for a daughter. (c) The King being dead, and his Postume *James*, that kingdom came into the power of the Venetians by a right of inheritance, in the year 1476.

*Frederick* the Emperour made an end of living (d) in the year 1493, August the 19, of his Command the 52 year, whom his son *Maximilian* succeeded, chosen King of the Romans 7 years before.

(c) This man came even unto the year of Christ 1519, of his Empire 26, and the day before the Ides of January, in the 63 year of his age, he decaied. Many shakings there were, and great, this man being Emperour, especially in Italy, about his beginning: which shall be explained in the French affairs.

As those things sorrowfull to be remembred, so these things joyfull, then happened. (a) *Ferdinand* King of Spain vanquisheth *Granata*, which remnant had sat down in a City of the Moors, in the year 1492; in which year the Rule of the Saracens ceased in Spain after 780 years that they had come thither. (b) And the same year, 171 thousand families of the Jewish stock went away into banishment, which are said to have been to the number of 800000 heads.

Many unknown Countreys in the outmost borders of the East and West began to be entred; the passage unto them being made plain by the Spanish and Lusitanian ships. (c) *Christopher Columbus*, by Countrey a *Genoan*, most knowing in Sea-Affairs, loosing from Spain under the authority of *Ferdinand* and *Isabell*, Kings, in the year 1499, found new Islands. Whose example others following, by little and little opened that wide Continent, which maketh the fourth part of the World. (d) *Vascul Gama*, a Lusitanian enslaved with the same study, having gone by the command of *Emmanuel* from Ulyssipon, into the East, in the year 1497, on the seventh of the Ides of July; the year following 13 Kalends of June came to *Calcutte*; and he sheweth by the saylings of the Lusitanians unto these places, the way to Indian Commercies or Traffiques.

Learning, *Frederick* reigning, was in great brightnesse thorough our Italy, the most learned of the Greeks, who, Greece being taken, ran unto it, sharpening the studies of the Latines through a striving to imitate them. Cardinal *Bessarion* was accounted chief, as in worthinesse, of Office, so in the learning of the Greeks. (c) whom, in the year 1472, France saw as an Embassadour. Whence returning to Rome, he dyed at Ravenna, in the 77 year of his age. Likewise *Theodore Gaza* of Thessalonica; who (f) in the year 1470, wrote a book concerning the moneths, (g) and dyed in the year 1478. (h) *George Trapezunte*, a Cretian, dyed 1485, *Argyropylus* of Byzantium, and *Demetrius Chalcondylus*, lived at the same time. (i) Among the Latines, *Pim* the second chief Bishop, highly flourished, who was called before *Acaterina* Sylvium.

(a) Tarafa.  
Maria.

(b) Naucl.  
Maria.

(c) Histor. of  
India, Append. Palm.

(d) Ofor. b. r.  
of the Deeds  
of Eum.

Famous Men.

(c) Palm.  
Paul. Jov.  
(f) Book of  
the moneth,  
ch. 16.  
(g) Palm.  
Trith.  
(h) Palm. Jov.  
(i) Jov.  
(j) Trith.

*Sylvium*. Likewise *Laurentius Valla*, of a sharp and biting wit, (a) dyed in the year of Christ, 1457. *Francis Philolphus*, (b) who dyed, being 90 years old, in the year 1481. (c) But *Flavius Blond* an Historian, in the year 1473, of his age 57. (d) *Nicolas Perrotus Platina*, who wrote thorowly the lives of the Roman Bishops, even untill *Paul* the second. *Matthieu Palmerius* a Florentine writer of a Chronicle, (e) who for a heretic delivered in a writing concerning Angels, is punished with the burning flame, as faith *Trithemius*. Others affirm, nor himself, but his book to have been burnt; the which also is more like to truth. *Domitius Calderinus*, who (f) perished in the year 1477. (g) *Rodolph Agricola*, (h) *John de Monte Regio*, that is, of the King's Mountain, a Mathematician, he dyed at Rome in the year 1476. *John Picus* of Mirandula, *Hermolaus Barbarus* followed; whom *Trithemius* writeth to have dyed in the 39th year of his age, and of Christ 1493. *Angelus Politianus* (i) in the year 1494, (k) of his age 40. *Marsilius Ficinus*, *Sabellicus* an Historian, *Antonine* a Florentine Bishop. Neither indeed doth it concern us to make mention of all; of whom *Trithemius* a writer of that same Age, and *Paul Jovius* in his Elogies or commendatory Writings, and many others, have written.

But it fityly happeneth, that (when Barbarism being wiped away, Learning should lift up its head) for the committing so many births of great Wits unto eternity, the Art of Printing should shew itself forth (l) in the year 1440, *John Guttemberg* a Knight of Moguntia being the finder of it out.

Anno 1422  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(a) Jov.  
(b) Trith.  
(c) Palmer.  
(d) Jov.  
(e) Trith.

(f) Trith.  
(g) The same.  
(h) Palm.  
(i) Trith.  
(k) Palm.

(j) Trith.  
(k) Palm.

Printing  
Invented.

(l) Palm.  
in the year  
1457.

## CHAP. X.

Of the French Affairs, and other things done on this side the Alps, by Charls the seventh, Lewis the eleventh, and Charls the eighth, Kings of France; and of the shakings of Italy, which were infuled, this last reigning, with the affairs of France.

*Charls* the seventh, in the year 1422, entred a wretched and troubled Kingdom, the English holding many places of France, with whom, *Philip* Duke of Burgundy for revenging of his father's death, had joyned his Forces. The first breaking out of the English into France, happened (a) in the year 1415, *Henry* the fifth being King. In which a battle was joyned at *Azincourt*, not far from the Town of *Calice*; and in that fight the flower of the French Nobility was partly slain, partly came into the hands of their Enemies. *Charls* Duke of Orleans was taken; who was in custody (b) 25 years, and other Princes. After that, the fellowship of the Burgundian made all things readily inclinable to the English, who had in his power the King of France, partaker neither of his understanding, nor his right, with the Queen and her daughter *Katherine*. *Henry* (Paris, the Castle

The English  
Warr.

(a) Alan.  
Monfr. b. 1.  
ch. 139.  
Naucl. Mey.  
Eim. Gagu.

(b) Monfr.  
b. 3. fol. 106.

Anno 1423  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(c) Monfr.  
b. 1. ch. 143.  
& b. 1. ch. 214.  
(d) Monfr. 1.  
ch. 265.  
(e) Olivar. 1.  
ch. 3, &c.

(f) Alan.  
Monfr. 2.  
Meyer. Emil.  
& c. Micquel-  
lus.

Joan the Maid  
of Arcelia.

(a) Alan. &c.

(b) Monfr.  
b. 2. fol. 59.  
Emil. Gag.  
Mey.  
(c) book 2.  
fol. 76.

(d) See the  
hist. of Joan  
set forth by  
many.  
Bellesor. in  
Chron. in  
Charls 7. &  
to Nicol. Gil.  
(e) Alan.  
Monfr. 2.  
fol. 112.  
Oliv. 1. ch. 3.  
(f) Monfr.  
b. 3. Polyd. 23.  
Alan.

Homebred  
Troubles of  
England.

(g) Polyd.  
Virg. b. 20.  
(h) The same,  
in the end of  
22. book.

of the kingdom, being possessed in the (c) year 1418, (d) two years after in Tricassia, took *Katherine* in wedlock, with the kingdoms Dowry; *Charls* the Dolphin being shut out. But *Henry* had a very short fruit of so great success, dying in the very same year, in which we have taught *Charls* the 6th to have perished, (e) in the year 1422, August 29. *Henry* the 6th, is put in the room of this: *Charls* the seventh in the room of *Charls*, two months after having finished his life. There was thereby, or from that time, a continual course of the English victory; Towns daily falling off from *Charls*. Moreover, the chief bending of affairs is made against the people of Orleans, the most noble City of Celtica. (f) The English King had besieged it in the year 1428, the 4th Ides of October. The Duke of Salisbury who was slain in that siege; but *John* a bastard, the natural son of *Lewis* Duke of Orleans, who was slain by *John* of Burgundy, defending. God by a wonder rare to this day, brought help to the Townsmen now fearing the extreamest things. *Joan Duvica* was a Maid, her father being a husbandman, in the Tullian field, a keeper of sheep: she being inwardly stirred by words from God, to loose the siege of Orleans, and deliver *Charls* out of so many straights, came of her own accord unto this King: And a promise being made, she being sent to Orleans with ayds, beat back the English broken in some battels from the City, in (a) the year 1429, May 12. She brought the King to *Durocortum* of Rhemes, to take of right, the holy things or ceremonies of the kingdom. The enemy being often scattered, she was at length taken at Compendium in the year 1430; (b) whom after a long debate had concerning her, *Peter Cauchon*, Bishop of Beilovacia, condemned. The English burnt her alive in the year 1431; at which time, (c) saith *Monstrelet*, an Assembly began to be had at Basil. Concerning this Virgin, who is commonly called, *The Maid of Orleans*, some reproachful things are falsely vaunted of by some. But that she was innocent and dear to God, both many things do perswade, (d) which are read, delivered in full Volumes; and also a most prosperous issue of the thing having followed; as it may be right to ascribe it to none but God as the Author. For afterwards all things waxed worse with the English. *Charls* (the Burgundian being reconciled unto him) (e) in the year 1435 by degrees received his kingdom out of the hand of the enemies; (f) so that in the year 1453, *Talbot*, a man of great valour being slain, and Aquitaine again taken away, he caused nothing to be left unto the English in France, beside Callice. After this manner the English tumult, after two and forty years, took an end.

A civil disagreement at home followed the English, being beaten out of other mens borders. There were two Kingly Families amongst them; the one of *York*, the other of those of *Lancaster*. *Henry* of *Lancaster*, *Richard* the second being compelled to resign, and being slain, had usurped the Kingdom (g) in the year 1399; and being called the 4th of that name, departed in the (h) year 1413.

1413. This man *Henry* the 5th his son succeeded; who, a fellowship being made with *Philip* the Burgundian, weakened the riches of the French; and *Henry* the 6th being begotten from *Katherine* the daughter of *Charls* the 6th, he dyed in the year 1422, as I have above related.

After the English cast out of France, (i) in the year 1453, a faction of the chief ones arising, whose author was *Richard* of York, King *Henry*, their Ensigns being joyned, is overcome by him in the year 1460, and by the sentence of the Council, the succession of the kingdom is ordained to *Richard*. In the mean time, *Margaret*, daughter of *Renatus* Duke of the Andegavians, a woman endued with a manly courage, the wife of *Henry*, no small company being gathered together, overcometh *Richard* in battle, and slew him; then another *Richard*, Earl of Warwick, being thrust out of the Camps, he put to flight, and restored her husband into his kingdom. Afterwards *Edward* the son of *Richard* Earl of March, by the help of him of Warwick, driveth *Henry* and *Margaret* out of England, and is declared King himself in the (a) year 1461. the fourth Cal. July. And then the Earl of Warwick, a grudge arising between them both, by the help of *Ludovick* the X I. King of France, put this man to flight: and brought back *Henry* unto his ancient dignity, in the year 1471. But *Edward* by the assistance of *Charls* Duke of Burgundy, received the Kingdom that he had lost, the sixth Moneth after; and *Richard* of Warwick, being killed in fight, he took away the life from *Henry*, and also *Edward* his onely son. This *Henry* was a very holy man: so that he was famous for miracles alive and dead. (b) *Polydore* is witnesse. He had the name of King 38 years six Moneths. *Margaret* his Wife being spoiled of her son and the Kingdom, returned to her father into France.

*Edward* reigned twenty and three years, and then died in the year 1483. whose brother *Richard* Duke of Gloucester a wicked man, his sons being slain, usurpt the Tyranny; for the which, he being at length besieged in the third year, by *Henry* of Richmond, the son of *John*, who was the brother of *Henry* the sixth, he lost, with his life. Moreover, this *Henry* began to govern the kingdom in the year 1486, the seventh of that name, the father of that *Henry*, who departed from the Communion of Catholiques. And he married *Elizabeth* the daughter of king *Edward* the fourth, of the Family of York. (c) Which being done, those famous and destructive hatreds to the English, of the houses of Lancaster and York, were quenched.

In France, the Lordly rule of the English being shaken off, *Charls* took breath again; but that rest being gotten from war, he fell into homebred tumults. (d) For *Ludovick* his son being offended with his father, betook himself to *Philip* the Burgundian, in the year 1456. neither returned he thence into France before his death which fell out in the year 1461. July 22.

Therefore *Ludovick* the XI. of that name, came in the same year,

Anno 1423  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(i) Polyb. b. 23.

(a) Polyb. b. 24  
See Comm. on  
Ch. 50. & foll.

(b) Book 24.

(c) Polyb. b.  
26.

(d) Monfr. b.  
3. fol. 68. O.  
liv. b. 1. ch. 36.

Anno 1422  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(a) Monfr. b.  
3. Chr. Lud.  
10. Comm.  
ch. 8.  
Monfr. b. 3.  
p. 13. Oliv.  
b. 1. ch. 37.

(b) Comm.  
Til. Armil. Ga.  
guin.

(c) Comm. ch.  
95. Aemil. Gag.  
Til. Append.  
Monfr. Fol.  
150.

(d) Comm. ch.  
136.  
(e) Comm. ch.  
130.

(f) Chr. Lud.  
21. Til.

(g) Gaguin.  
Aemil.

(a) Chron. of  
Charls the 8.  
out of Jallig-  
nius, &c. &c.  
thered out of  
Godfr.  
(b) Idip. 166.  
(c) Gaguin.  
Collections of  
Jallig. &c. Til.

year, into his fathers place, a crafty and subtle man; Who about the beginning of his reign, being troubled with the factions of the chief ones, conspiring among themselves, he shook off their endeavours by Council and prudence. For, by giving liberally to all what they should ask, he afterwards set upon every one, divided from each other. (a) This agreement, that fight went before, which was made at Mount *Leberick*, about eight miles from the City, in the year 1465. in which, a Victory sufficiently prosperous, was manifest to neither. *Charls* Earl of *Carolefia* was chief of the contrary party, the son of *Philip* Duke of *Burgundy*. He, when through the death of his father, which happened in the year 1467, June the 15th, the second day of the week, was in most large wealth and power; as he was by nature cruell, and desirous of new things, ceased not to provoke his borderers: (b) but especially *Renatus* Duke of *Lorain*, and the *Helvetians*; with whom *Ludovick* had made a fellowship against the common enemy. As *Charls* easily overcame *Renatus*, and being almost stripped of his dominion, he constrained him to fly into *France*: So a slaughter being twice received by the *Helvetians*, when *Renatus* had recovered his Province, he contended against him in *Lorain*. There while he besiegeth *Nantz*, being overcome by *Renatus*, furnished with *Germane* and *Helvetian* aids, he fell in battell in (c) the year 1477. January the fifth, onely one daughter *Mary* being left, which married *Maximilian* the son of *Frederick* the Emperour. The death of *Charls* being heard of, *Ludovick* out of hand subjected *Burgundy*, and his old Title in *Belgica*, unto his power.

(d) He died in *Turo* in the year of Christ 1483, the third Calends September, the Seventh day of the week; (e) when as he had first called unto him *Francis Paulanus* out of *Italy*, a most holy man, and famous for miracles: by whom, the Order of the Minims or least sort of Friars was appointed.

*Charls* the 8th, the sonne of *Ludovick*, living the thirteenth year, (f) for he was born in the year 1470, the day before the Ides of July, undertook the Kingdom under the tuition of his sister *Anne*, whom *Peter Borbon* a Frenchman had married. (g) *Ludovick* the brother of *Charls*, the Nephew of that *Ludovick*, whom we have shewn to have been thrust thorow at *Paris* by the command of *John* of *Burgundy*, Duke of *Orleans*, took it grievously that he should be chief over them. Therefore flying unto *Francis* Duke of *Britain*, when as many had come into the fellowship of the Governours; a battell being joyned with the Kings Captains, at the Temple of *Albine*, in *Aremoricum*, fell in Victory, and likewise in liberty (a) in the year 1488. (b) and was held in a three years custody. Peace was granted to the Duke being humble, with that condition, that what had been gotten by the Kings weapons, that should remain in his power. (c) Between these things the Duke dying, *Charls* took *Anne* his daughter, betroathed unto *Maximilian* king of the *Romans* to Wife, *Margaret* being divorced,

the

Anno 1422  
of Christ,  
to 1500.

(d) The same.

(e) Comm.  
in Charls 8.  
Guic. Append.  
Monfr. Gag.  
Jallig. Coll. &c.  
Ferro.

(f) Gag. Gil-  
lius Ferro.

(g) Comm.  
Guic. &c.

(h) Till.

(i) Guic.  
(l) Comm.  
Guic.

(a) Guic.  
(b) Append.  
Monfr. Gill.

(c) Guic. 2.  
Comm.

(d) Guic.

(e) Guic. 2.  
Comm. ch. 3.  
& foll. Gag.  
Append.  
Monfr. Col-  
lect. Jallig. &c.  
(f) Gaguin.  
(g) Collect.  
Jallig. &c.

(h) Comm.  
ch. 38. Guic.  
2.

the daughter of *Maximilian*, whom he had espoused to himself, his father *Ludovick* being Author. (d) *Maximilian* for that thing waging war; at last a peace followed: when as the fellowship of the County of the *Arelatians* had yielded to him from the will of the king.

(c) Peace being made in the kingdom, *Charls* much desired Wars afar off, An Expedition being undertaken into *Italy*, to recover the *Neapolitane* kingdom; Which being passed over by *Renatus* Duke of *Andegavians*, on *Ludovick* the eleventh, *Ferdinand* the son of *Alphonfus* the Great, possessed; the Father of another *Alphonfus*, whose son in Law was *John Galeacius*, obtaining nothing of the *Mediolan* dominion besides a title, when as all the rule was in the power of *Ludovick Sfortia* his Uncle, the which he had drawn to himself under the pretence of Guardian-ship. Indeed *Alphonfus* bare that thing grievously, and for his son in Law prepared War. This War, that *Ludovick* might turn away, he called forth *Charls*, in hope of obtaining *Apulia* in *Italy*. Therefore that he might leave nothing of an enemy behind him, (h) he granted of his own accord, *Rufcio*, and *Perpinian*, unto *Ferdinand* King of *Spain*, concerning which there was a strife between them; then in the (g) year of Christ 1494, the *Alps* being overcome, he descended into *Italy*. The which when he had accomplished by a sudden affrightment; he took a quick journey through *Tuscia* even to *Rome*, and afterwards to *Neapolis*. (h) At *Rome* he took the title (from *Alexander* the sixth) of the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, in the year 1495 when as (i) in the former year *Ferdinand* had departed this life, January the 25th, (l) Whose son *Alphonfus* being very much affrighted at the coming of *Charls*, passed over into *Sicily*, and resigning himself of the Kingdom, left it unto his son *Ferdinand*. (a) *Ferdinand* for fear of the *French*, betook himself into the Island *Istria*, *Charls* entering *Neapolis* (b) on the 12th day of Febr. in a short time obtained the whole kingdom.

These sudden successes of the *French*, caused envy with the Princes and Cities of *Italy*. (c) Therefore *Maximilian* the Emperour being joyned unto them, and *Ferdinand* king of *Spain*, also *Alexander* chief Bishop privily favouring it; the *Venetians*, and *Ludovick Sfortia*, to whom, (d) *Galeacius* being dead, *Maximilian* the Emperour had granted the right and Title of Duke of *Mediolanum*, make a conspiracy; and endeavour, things being ordered in *Apulia*, to shut in the king of *France* returning into *France*. (c) They fought the day before the Nones of July at the Market place, or Wine-press of the *Novanians*, not far from *Parma*, and by a small company of the *French*, (f) (they are delivered to have been no more then seven thousand) fourty thousand of the enemies, especially of the *Venetians* were broken through. *Charls*, (g) *Ludovick* Duke of *Orleans* being received, who being besieged by *Ludovick Sfortia* at *Novaria*, had come into the greatest straits, returned full of Grace and glory into *France*, in the same year in which he had come to *Rome* and *Neapolis*. (h) He scarce going aside, the *Neapolitans* and

Anno 1500  
of Christ,  
to 1547.

(i) Comma. 38.  
Guic. &c.  
(l) Comma. in  
Charls ch. 25.  
Append. Palm.  
Nauel.  
(m) Guic. in  
the end of b.  
3. Nauel.  
(n) Comm. ch.  
13. Guic. b. 3.  
Till. 23. &c.  
(o) Guic. 4.  
Comm. Till.  
Ferron. &c.  
(p) Guic.

(a) Guic. 4.  
Till. Ferron.  
Nauel.

and all the rest fell away to Ferdinand, the French, Gilbert Musper for the Lieutenant being dead, a little after they all departed. (i) This slaughter of Italy, and the coming of Charls, Jerome Salanola a Dominican Frier, a famous and wonderfully acceptable Oratour unto the Florentines, is said often to have foretold, (l) who for his stubbornness, and seditious Sermons, paid the last punishment, the day after that day, wherein Charls departed out of life. [m] Who at Ambasia in Turo, died suddenly of an Apoplexy, the 7th Ides Aprill, in the year 1498, the 15th year of his reign.

(n) Ludovick the 12th of that name Charls dying without an heir, succeeded by Law, the son of Charls, Duke of Orleans: [o] who by and by would be called King of either Sicily, and Jerusalem, and Duke of Mediolanum; and forth-with, wholly employed himself towards an Italian expedition: (p) Anne the Widow being first married, a Princess of the Armericans, sometime the Wife of Charls the eighth, and a divorce being made with Joanna, the daughter of Ludovick the 11th, whom his father had brought on him against his will, who indeed going to Biurgia, was afterwards in great fame for holiness. (a) Mediolanum through the flight of Ludovick Sportias, came into the power of the French, with the other Insurbians in the year 1499.

## CHAP. XI.

What things were carried on through the whole world, from the year 1500 to 1547. Maximilian and Charls being Emperours, and Ludovick the 12th, and Francis, Kings of France.

Guic. 4. & foll.  
Till. Addition  
to Mont. Fer-  
ron. the Ap-  
pend. of Vel-  
leus to Ga-  
guin. The Hi-  
story of Bay-  
ard.

(b) Guic. 4.  
(c) Guic.

(d) The same  
book of Fer-  
ron.

Maximilian being Emperour, and Ludovick the 12th King of France, a cruell war was renewed in Italy.

The Mediolans had hated Trivulciu, who did govern the Insurbians in the name of Ludovick the 12th (b) because he was of the Guelfick Faction, for this City did anciently favour the Gibellines party. Therefore they privily call back Ludovick Sportias living with Maximilian, and deliver themselves unto him in the year 1500. But a little after Ludovick being taken by the French, with his brother Ascaniu the Cardinal, he is sent into prison to the Castle of Lechia, in which he lived ten years.

(d) After these things, a league being made with Ferdinand King of Spain, Ludovick possesseth the kingdom of Neapolis, which legacy Frederick then held for himself from Ferdinand the son of his brother Alphonsus. And this man resigning himself on condition, that the Province should be given him from the king with yearly stipends, he departed to the Andegavians, in the year 1501. The Neapolitan Kingdom being divided among the French and Spaniards, there could be no long peace.

Consalve

Consalve the Captain of Ferdinand, within two years time, drove the French quite out from thence: and for that thing obtained the name of Great Captain. (c) The French departed from all the Towns in the year 1504.

After that, Ludovick conspireth with Maximilian, and Julius the 2d, Bishop of Rome, against the Venetians, a very mighty City in Italy, and heartfull to its neighbours; in the year 1503. Moreover in the year following, the Venetians being overcome by Ludovick in battell, whatsoever was in the adjoining Countrey, they did almost lose. But Julius, the Venetians being reconciled unto him, turneth his weapons against Ludovick. Vasto Flusast Duke of Nemora, was chief over the French affairs in Italy, who, all places being largely wasted, when as he encountered with the Armies of the Venetians, and Spaniards, and Julius at Ravenna: and a memorable Victory being gotten, he being rashly brought among his enemies, was slain, Ravenna was spoiled by the Conquerours. At this battell, which happened in (a) the year one thousand five hundred and twelve, on the very day of Easter, Bayard an Allobrogian knight, a most valiant and famous man, at that time was present. Ludovick being earnestly bent on the Italian affairs, the neighbouring Princes brought war on France. Ferdinand the Spanish king stripped John Albert of the kingdom of the Walcois, which they call Navarre. Henry the 8th, King of England, who succeeded his Father, being of his surname, in the year 1509, setting upon Picardy, possesseth the Morinians, and Nervians. Thus the French being besieged by so many enemies, let go Italy in the year 1513, in which year Pope Julius dieth. (b) But Ludovick King of France, things with the English king being composed, and Mary the sister of Henry being taken in Marriage; for Anne had now died; Claudia and Renata, his children being alive, while he provideth a new war against the Insurbians, he finisheth his life on the (c) very Call of Jan. of the 1515th year entering.

Leo the 10th, of the stock of the Medices, is chosen in the room of Pope Julius; Francis Duke of the Valcians for Lewis the King, and Earl of Ingolefm, his son in law: for he had married Claudia the daughter of him and Anne, after the death of her mother. Charls was father to this man, the son of John of Ingolefm, a man famous in holiness, and for miracles, after death; whose father was Lewis Duke of Orleans, slain at Paris by a privy murderer.

Francis, as soon as he was made King, his Forces being turned towards a Mediolan Expedition; he slew the Helvetians, who had opposed themselves against him, in two dayes fight at Marignan, (d) in the year 1515, Sept. 13 & 14. By which victory, a surrender of the dominion of Mediolum followed. Pope Leo was then chief over the Roman Church, who had succeeded Julius the second, from the year 1513. A discourse being had with this man at Bononia, he made an effectual promise of making voyd the King's answer by letter, and of receiving Concordatum, (a) in the

Fff

year

Anno 1547  
of Christ,  
to 1589.

(e) Guic. 6.  
(f) Guic. 8. &  
foll. Ferron.  
Till. Chron.  
History of  
Bayard, &c.

(a) Guic. 10.  
History of  
Bayard.

(b) Bellacut  
1. Commion.

(c) Bellacut  
Till. Parad. &c.

(d) Till. Bel-  
lacut, Guic. b.  
12. Parad. b. 1.

(a) The same  
Authority.



Anno 1500  
of Christ,  
to 1547.

(b) Cechl.  
Til. Guic. &c.

Charls the 5th  
Emperour.

(a) Guic. 13.  
Til. Bellai.  
Parad. 1.

(d) The same.

The Wars of  
Francis and  
Charls, Empe-  
rour.

year 1516. And then an end was put to the Council of Lateran, the which had been begun from the year 1512, in the year 1517, and a dispatch into Turkey was decreed.

The same year fell out lamentable unto Germany and the whole Church, through the rising up of a pestilent heretic; whose framer was *Luther*, (b) born at Isleby in Saxony in the year 1483, Novemb. 10th: In that year 1517, he began to cry out against Pardons. From which spark, by little and little the flame waxed hot; wherewith all Europe burned.

In the mean time, through the death of *Maximilian*, *Charls* his Nephew, the son of *Philip* of Austria, and *Joane* the daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Isabel*, in (c) the year of Christ 1519, took the Empire the 20th year of his age; for in the year 1500, Febr. 24, he was brought forth to light. With this Emperour, *Francis* had almost continual war, the which was proclaimed (d) in the year 1521. Therefore at the same time, two most mighty Kings, *Charls*, and *Henry* of England fighting against *Francis*, he underwent wars in three places. In Vascony the matter went on prosperously at the beginning, *Pompeopolis*, the Castle of the kingdom being taken: In which siege, *Ignatius Loiola*, a Cantabrian or Spaniard, defending the Town against the French, his leg being broken with the stroke of a stone, came into the utmost danger of life: which wound brought forth unto *Ignatius* the health of his soul, and a new order to the Church, of the Jesuites or Society of Jesus. The Spaniards a little after, the French being cast out, recovered all that they had lost. There was the like unsuccessfulness of King *Francis* in Italy. For the *Insurbians* rebelling against *Odetus Flustas Lautrecius*, they drave away the French from thence, in the very year 1521.

In which year *Emmanuel* King of Lusitania, a very great Prince, dyed the 13th of December, and his son *John* succeeded him; the third of that name.

But indeed *Leo* the tenth having dyed a sudden death on the Kal. of Decemb. of the same year, *Adrian* the 6th, who did then govern Spain, undertook his place Jan. 9th of the year following. Which year, the slaughter at Rhodes made mournfull to the Christians. (e) For *Solyman* the Turk, after six moneths siege, the City being taken, reduced this Island into bondage, in the year 1522, Decemb. 22. through the treachery of *Andrew Meralim*, a Lusitanian Knight. (f) The seventh year after the Knights being transported into the Island Melita or Malta, they there hither to proceed to be a safeguard to the Christian affairs, against the Barbarians.

In France, *Charls Borbon* Master of both Souldiery, whom they call Earl of the Stable, being offended with the King, fell away to the Spaniard in the year 1523. (a) Forthwith, the 1525th year entring, *Francis* (*Mediolan*, and other Towns of the *Insurbians* being received) being taken in the siege of Ticinum, Febr. 24. is sent unto *Charls* into Spain; by whom the (b) following year, with

little

little honest conditions he is let go, the King's children being given for pledges. Who (c) in the year 1529, peace being established on more equal terms, they were redeemed with twenty hundred thousand crowns of gold.

But *Charls Borbon* moving war against *Clement* the 7th, estranged from *Charls* the 5th, his Armies being moved to the City, whiles he sealed the wall among the first, being stricken thorow with an iron bullet, he was slain (d) in the year 1527, whose Souldiers, Rome being taken, with the Bishop, they foully plundered it. *Francis* sent *Lautrecius* with an armed company into Italy to free the chief Bishop. He besieging Neapolis, a plague being made common throughout the Army, he dyed, in the year 1528.

(e) Amongst these noyles of weapons, *Solyman* entring *Pannonia*, vanquished Buda, and overthrew king *Luderick*. He after that, his horse running away, fleeing thorow the Marshes, being infolded within a muddy gulph, dyed Aug. 29. in the year 1526. *Ferdinand* the Emperour's brother is chosen in his place.

In Germany the Lutheran Opinion creeping on, Christian profession was rent into divers heresies, while that every one was ready with tongue and boldness, rather to be the author of his own sect, than to rest upon another. Whose infection of poison at last passed through into the Island of Britain. (f) *Henry* the 8th, who, a large work being of late set forth against *Luther*, had deserved the title of Defender of the Faith, in the year 1521, being taken by the allurements of *Anne* an Harlot, when as he made divorce with *Katherine* his wife, the Aunt of *Charls* the Emperour, in the year 1532. For that thing, he being made notorious by the sentence of the Roman Bishop, he rent himself with all his kingdom from his communion: and took unto himself the chiefdom of that Church. Then he also punished the highest, and famous men, disagreeing from those wicked Councils. Amongst these, *Thomas Moor*, Chancellor of the kingdom, an honest and learned man; and *John Fisher* Bishop of Rochester, adorned with a Purple garment by the chief Bishop, in the year 1535, he subjected to the sword. (a) Whilest *Charls* the Emperour, a Navy being passed over into Africa, *Barbarossa*, the famous Sea-Robber being driven out, who had lately possessed Algier, and Coletum, a most strong Castle, not far from that place, where Carthage was situated, being subdued, he restored *Muleassus* into his kingdom.

(b) The same man, the Princes rebelling in Germany, whom the poison of *Luther* had blown upon; and being oftentimes by repeated discourses in vain invited unto agreement, he forced them, being overcome in a great fight, unto their duty, in the year 1546: (c) when as two years before he had made peace with king *Francis*, being thereby brought to it, because he had not undertaken the last dispatch into France, with any like issue as he hoped for. For while he delayed in vanquishing some small Towns, he lessened his Army, and lost the occasion of greater matters.

Anno 1500  
of Christ,  
to 1547.

(c) The same.  
Rome is taken.

(d) Til. Bellai.  
Guic. b. 28.  
Parad.

(e) Til. Pa-  
rad. b. 3. ch. 7.

(f) History  
of English  
Souldiers.  
Guic. 20.  
Til.

(a) Parad.  
b. 3. ch. 8.  
Til.

(b) Parad.  
b. 4. ch. 8.  
Til.

(c) Bella.  
Cam. 10. Til.  
The besieging  
of the City  
Sandefiderie.

Rhodes taken.

(e) Parad. 1.  
ch. 7.  
Guic. b. 15.  
Turkish  
Annals.  
(f) Parad.  
b. 3.

(a) Til. Bellaius, b. 2.  
Parad. b. 1.  
ch. 6.  
Guic. b. 15.  
(b) Guic. b. 16.  
Bella. Til.  
Parad.



W  
 Anno 1422  
 of Christ,  
 to 1500.  
 W

matters. His chief loss was at *Sandefideria*; which very small place in the passage of French Campania, and ill fenced, he rising up against, with all his forces, could not overcome by six months siege, nor reduced he it into his power, but on most equal conditions, in the year 1544. In the mean time, the King of England on the other side setting upon the French, waged war not sloathfully on the *Morinians*; who the same time took *Bonnia*, with the Antients called *Gessoriacum*, by surrender. But in the year following, which was of Christ 1545, he likewise made peace which *Francis*. Moreover, in the year 1547, both those Kings, *Henry of England*, and *Francis of France*, chanced to receive an unlike departure of life: He being confirmed in his schism; This, all the Sacraments being rightly received, closed his last day in the confession of the Catholique faith, the day before the Kalends of April, the 33 year of his reign; when as *Henry* had dyed the January going before.

Learned and  
 godly Men.

(a) Til.

Learned men.

(b) Til.

(c) Hist. of  
 Society of  
 Jesus. Ribad.

(d) The same,  
 and of Tur-  
 fellus.

The Learning of France owes much to this Prince. For by his liberal bounty, men furnished with all kind of Arts being on every side called unto him; publike Schools, with suitable allowances were appointed at Paris in the year 1530. Unto which thing he made use of *John Belain*, who was afterwards a Cardinal; and *William Budeus*, a man every way most learned, as encouragers: When as *Desiderius Erasmus* of Batavia flourished at the same time; who in the year 1536, being seventy years old, is reported to have dyed; *Budeus* in the year, 1540. And many others also left a famous name unto posterity: as in Germany, *John Eckius*, and *John Cochlaus*, *Albert Pighius*, who contended most sharply against *Luther* for the Catholique party. In Italy, *Thomas of Vio*, Cardinal *Cajetan*; *Ambrose Catharinus* of the Family of *Dominick*, Divines. But in a more polished Learning were accounted excelling, *Paul Jovius* Bishop of Coma, *James Sadolus* Bishop of Carpentoraça; *Peter Bembus*, *Andrew Alcinate*, who in the year 1548 dyed: when as in the year before, *Francis Valables* Professor of the Hebrew Tongue, had deceased (b) the same year wherein *James Tusan*, on the 13th day of March: *Paul Emilini*, *Guicciard*, Historians. In holiness, (c) *Ignatius* builder of the Society of Jesus, beautified this Age; the which in the year 1549, *Paul* the third, chief Bishop, on the 27th day of Sept. commanded to be confirmed: and (d) *Francis Xavierius* a Cantabrian; who in the year 1541, the first of the Schollars of *Ignatius*, going into the outmost part of the East, great things and miracles being there done, he deserved to be called the Apostle of the Indians.

CHAP.

CHAP. XII.

W  
 Anno 1547  
 of Christ,  
 to 1589.  
 W

Of those things which happened throughout the World worthy to be remembered, from the year 1547, to 1589, under *Charls* the Fifth, *Ferdinand*, *Maximilian*, *Rodolph*, Emperours; and *Henry* the second, *Francis* the second, *Charls* the ninth, *Henry* Valefius, Kings of France.

*Charls* the 5th, Emperour, out-lived *Francis* king of France almost 12 years: in which, *Henry* the son of *Francis* reigned in France. In Germany, *Luther*, the author of all troubles being taken away, who (c) in the year 1546, had dyed a suddain death, yet civill disturbances were not at rest. (a) For they which through occasion of maintaining the German liberty, and defending a new opinion, had brought a War on *Charls*, are scattered by him at the River *Albis*, in the year 1547. The chief of these was *Frederick* Duke of Saxony, who came under the power of the Conquerour; and being by him condemned of his head, a little after by the intreaty of the chief Governours, he suffered a milder punishment: And with him was taken also *Philip* the Landgrave. By the punishment of these men, the tumults of Germany were a little allayed.

(c) Cochl.  
 (a) Guicci.  
 Contin. b. 2.

(b) *Henry*, in the mean time, king of France, that he might establish the Common-wealth, having begun with Religion, restrained the *Lutherans*, secretly ranging abroad in the Countreys, with most strict Edicts; neither punished he a few of that sect, being laid hold on with the burning flame. It was the custom then, to call men of any sort of heresie, *Lutherans*. And then a new error of *Calvin* grew more and more through France; and they who did spread it, had allured not a few under the colour and shew of a feigned integrity. Against all these at that time a Synod was had at Trent, begun from the year 1545, *Paul* the third being chief Bishop. But by reason of the Civil disagreements of Christians, drawn out for a long time, at last under *Pius* the 4th, took its end in the year 1563.

(b) Annals  
 of France  
 of Bellefor.  
 Marsh. Field.  
 The Reign of  
 Henry the  
 second.

The Assembly  
 of Trent.

Between these things, *Henry* renewed war with *Charls* the Emperour, in the year 1551, and Towns being taken on both sides, the French made the *Mediomatricans*, and other Towns lying about them, subject to their power, in the year 1552. *Charls* besieged *Diviodurum* the head Town of the *Mediomatricans*, whom they call the *Merians*, with an hundred thousand armed men. But *Francis* of Guise defending it, he departed thence through a despair of conquering it.

Then, being separated from the weariness and love of humane Affairs, (c) in the year 1555, casting off from him his Kingdome and Empire at *Bruxels*, he passed over that unto *Philip* his son; the governing of this, unto *Ferdinand* his brother. Being as it were eased of this burthen; he sailed into Spain; and there enclosed himself

(c) Guicci.  
 Contin. b. 2.

Anno 1547  
of Christ,  
to 1589.

(d) Guic.  
c. 2.  
(b) Hist. of  
Schism.

himself within the Monastery of *Justus*: whence (d) in the year 1558, *Ferdinand* being by the seven Men or Princes pronounced Emperor, he ceased to live.

(c) In *England* the Catholike faith took a little breath in the year 1553, when as after the death of *Edward*, *Mary* the daughter of *Henry* the 8th, and *Katherine*, began to reign. But she being married to *Philip* Prince of Spain in the year 1554, *Reginald* Pool Cardinal, her kinsman, being called unto her, he restored the whole Island to Roman faith and fellowship. But the sixth year after, which was of Christ 1558, *Mary* being dead, *Elizabeth* the daughter of *Henry* and *Anne* of Bulloign, called back the former unfaithfulness.

(a) Annals  
of France.  
The dispatch  
of Guise into  
Italy.

(a) In the mean time, the French not sloathfully enforced the war with *Philip* his son, which they had waged with *Charles*. *Francis* of Guise led an Army into Campania and the Neapolitan kingdom in the year 1557; in which year indeed the French were by *Philip* slain at the Town of Quintine in Veromandua, the 10th day of August, when they had run together to loose the siege. In that battle many Nobles being taken, the Townesmen yielded. But the Spaniards knew not how to make use of a Victory. At last peace by both Kings was received with alike desire of them both, and was tyed together by a nuptial League, *Elizabeth* the daughter of *Henry* being given to *Philip* in wedlock, (b) in the year 1559, of June 29.

(b) Bellef.  
Sec.

But, as humane affairs are, so great mirth is in a short time recompensed with great grief, through the death of *Henry*; who at a pastime horse-exercise, received a deadly wound in the head, and dyed July the 10th, of his age 43, of his reign 13.

The death of  
Henry the  
second.

(c) Ann. of  
France.  
*Francis* the  
second.

(c) *Francis* the son of *Henry* the second, who in the 17th year of his age was put in his father's place, had almost an year and half dominion. And that space was unquiet through the seditions of the *Calvinists*, whom they call *Hugonots*: although there was a strict examination had concerning them; and *Annas Burgin* of the order of Senators, who by the command of *Henry* had been cast into bonds, was openly hanged on a gibbet, and his dead carcase burnt, Decemb. 23, of the 1559 year. The *Hugonots* being stirred by these punishments, conspire against the King, and endeavour to draw him privily out of Ambasia, where he then was. But the thing, by certain that gave notice, being known; *Ludovick Borbon* Prince of *Conde* being brought under suspicion, is delivered to custody: and while it is inquired against him concerning his life, at Orleans, wherein men, chosen of the ranks of the whole kingdom, had come together, *Francis* the King dyed of a disease in the year 1560, Decemb. 5.

Charles the 9th.

*Charles* the next elder brother followed him. Under whom the fury of the *Hugonots*, a greater boldness being taken, brake forth into open rebellion. To bring these into agreement, if upon any account it might be done, an Assembly is held at *Pisistack*, in the year 1561; in which, the Protestants came into contention con-

cerning

Anno 1547  
of Christ,  
to 1589.

cerning Controversies of Faith, with the Catholique Divines. When as nothing could go forward, the matter is brought to arms. The Protestants were rather overcome in many battles, than tamed; of which there were chiefly three. First, at the Town *Drocas*, wherein the Prince of *Conde* was taken by *Francis* of Guise, Captain of the Catholique parties in the year 1561. The second at *Jarnacum*, among the *Santonians*: in which, *Henry* the brother of *Charles* leading the Catholiques, the same Prince of *Conde* was slain, in the year 1569. The third battel was made among the *Pisistians* at *Moncontorium*, both the same year, and General. The stubborn enemies were slain in great number.

Two years after they were slain in greater number at Paris, when as they were come thither to solemnize the marriage of *Henry Borbon* King of Navarr, who was then of those parties, with *Margaret* the sister of *Charles*. With the like slaughter they were killed in many Cities of France. That was begun on the 9th Kalends of September, of the year 1572, at Paris, on a day, holy to St. *Bartholomew*; from whom afterwards it found a name.

Before these things, *Maximilian* the second, (by the death of *Ferdinand* the Emperor) his son took the title of the Roman Empire in the 1564; which year brought that remarkable thing to the account of reckoning times, because it was provided by the Edict of *Charles* in France, that the beginning of years, should be reckoned in private and publique Tables, from the Kalends of January; which hitherto have been accustomed to be taken from Easter, or the birth of Christ. Also the same year dyed *John Calvin*, the 27 of May.

The begin-  
ing of the year  
ceased to be  
taken from  
Easter in  
France.

In *Belgium* (the which *Margaret* governed in the name of her brother *Philip*) like as in the rest of France, all places were troubled with the weapons of Protestants; *Ferdinand* Duke of *Albania* being sent to pacifie this Province, in the year 1567, through the roughness of judgment; and especially, through the punishment of two Earls of chief nobleness, of *Egmond* and *Horn*, provoked them of *Flanders* in the year 1568; In which year *Charles* the son of *Philip* King of Spain by *Mary*, a *Lusitanian*, being committed to custody by his father, by his command is delivered to death. The *Batavians*, whom they call the *Hollanders*, and the Inhabitants of the *Mattiacarian* Islands, they commonly call them *Isles* of *Zeland*, first lifted up the Ensign of freedom in the year 1572, the rule of the Spaniard being shaken off; which the *Alban* Duke had rendred hatefull by immoderate exactions. A little after, other Cities came unto their League, and grew together into that Commonwealth, which also at this day is called *The weal-publique of the Conenanted Orders, or United Provinces*.

Belgick  
Troubles.

The falling  
off, of the *Ba-  
tavians* from  
Spain.

Scotland drew a pestilent heresie through the infection of her Neighbour England. Into which, *Mary Stuart* the Queen, when, after the death of *Francis* the second her husband, King of France; had

Anno 1500  
of Christ.  
to 1547.

had betaken her self, and had desired *Henry Stuart* Duke of Lenox for her husband in the year 1564, he being slain by the Protestants she having slipped to *Elizabeth* Queen of England, out of prison, in which *James* a bastard had inclosed her, by her most unjust sentence, after 20 years imprisonment, was punished with the losse of her head, in the year 1587.

(a) Bizarre in  
Hist. of Cyprus

(a) Between these tumults of Christians in Europe, the Turkish affairs grew up with great increases. *Piols* the Bathaw returning from the besieging of Malta, which happened in the year 1565, the matter not ended, took away *Chios* the Island, the year following from the Genoans. After that, *Mussapha* took away Cyprus from the Venetians, in the year 1571, when as he had compassed *Salamina* with a siege of eleven Months. Which City having conquered, against a covenanted promise, he killed all the Christians; But *Bragandine* the Governour having his Nose and Ears cut short, was slayed alive. *Pim* the fifth, a most holy chief Bishop, being very much moved with that unworthiness, (this man, the fourth of his surname having finished his life in the year 1565; was the year following chosen in his room) raised a holy war against them. Therefore the chief bishops, the *Spaniards* and *Venetians* ships being drawn together into one Navy, a fight is made at *Naupactum* in the Sea-bosome of Corinth, in which the Barbarians being overcome, two hundred Gallies with Oars, partly taken, partly sunk, there were slain or taken Captive, to the number of 25 thousand *Turks*: twenty thousand Christians being restored to liberty.

The fight at  
Naupactum.

The Covenanted Navy, a strife arising among the chief ones, wasted, without any price of their labour, which might have been very great. The day of the Victory was the seventh of October in the year 1571. Neither long, after this and other things well carried on in his Prelateship, survived Pope *Pim*. For in that year which followed, 1572. on the Calends of May he departed this life; The seventh Month before that, a new Star was seen in Heaven, which indeed having begun to be seen in *Cassiopeia*, and by degrees lessened, the 1574th year of Christ entering, ceased to appear. That year 1573 which was between, *Henry* the brother of *Charles*, besieged Rochell a very strong Castle among the Santonians, possessed by the Hugonots. But when at the same time, by the voices of the Polonian Princes, he was required to the Kingdome of that Nation, he departed from that City. *Ludovick* the 13th, laying up the honour of this City, being conquered; by whom the six and fiftieth year after, being taken, it ceased to be a refuge of Rebellious Heretiques. *Henry* went into *Polonia* in January of the following year, 1574. and returning from thence the sixth Month after, he hastened into France to take the Kingdome; which the death of *Charles* had made void of a ruler, May the 30th, of his reign 14.

(a) Henry 3.  
Ann. Franc.

(a) *Henry the Valesian* the third of that name, having consulted of, or begun his reign in the year of this Age 1574, drew it out unto

Anno 1547  
of Christ.  
to 1589.

unto fifteen years and above two Months, all which time he spent in vexations, and dangers, being tossed with homebred, and likewise with foreign tumults. *Francis Alenconius*, his brother, a Prince, fell off from him in the year one thousand five hundred seventy five, the Prison-keepers being cunningly deceived by the industry of his sister *Margaret*, by whom he had been commanded to be kept by reason of suspicions. With this man, *Henry* *Berbon* King of the *Vascoins*, and *Henry of Condé* another of his fathers brothers sons, is joyned with no small company of *Hugonots*, the *Germans* being hired for aid. But by the interposing of *Katherine* their mother, the brethren being reconciled among themselves, An assembly of the Kingdome of all ranks is gathered together at *Bles*, in the year one thousand five hundred seventy and six, in which the large edicts in favour of the Protestants, are revoked, which thing a little after stirred up greater troubles.

(b) Through *Belgium* in the mean time, the force of the covenanted Provinces against the *Spaniards* being crushed by *John* of *Austria*; who in the year one thousand five hundred seventy eight, had departed from the living, the height of rule is brought on *Francis Alenconius* by the conspired Orders. He being brought out of *ENGLAND*, unto *Belgium*, (whither he had sailed in hope of finishing a marriage with Queen *ELIZABETH*) in the year one thousand five hundred eighty two, and earnestly received by all; the year following he returned into France, when as he had found their desires by whom he was called, to be changed towards him. *Alexander Farnesius* Duke of *Perma* was present for the *Spaniards*; who, the rebels being scattered and cast out by little and little, brought back the Cities unto obedience, especially in one thousand five hundred eighty three, and onethousand five hundred eighty four. In this latter year, *William* of *Auranis* being slain, *Maurice* his son is chosen Captain by the Covenanters, being but eighteen years of age.

(b) The same  
Ann. & Hist. of  
Flanders.

(a) In the mean time the *Lusitanians* received a great slaughter in *Africa* by the *Saracens*, King *Sebastian* with the flower of the Nobility of *Lusitania* being there slain: who in the four and twentieth year of his age, to bring back *Muleius* by Arms, who was cast forth of his Kingdome, had undertaken rather a glorious or boasting, than profitable expedition, in the year one thousand five hundred seventy eight. *Henry* the Cardinal, brother of his Grandfather, now of a great age, and crazy health, succeeded this; and he being dead, *Philip* King of *Spain*, came to a feeble possession of the Kingdome, many things drawing towards him, in the year 1580.

(a) Hist. of the  
African expedition.

(b) But in *ENGLAND*, *ELIZABETH* vexed the Catholics with all kind of torments. Among whom *Edmund Campian* of the Society of *Jesus*, in the year one thousand five hundred eighty three, was famous in an honourable confession of the

(b) History of  
Schisme of  
England.

Ggg

Faith,

Anno 1547  
of Christ  
to 1589.

Faith, that I may let passe the rest, both for number, and constancy to be remembred. The year that went before this, one thousand five hundred eighty two, was famous in amending of the Church Calender, the which *Gregory* the thirteenth, chief Bishop, appointed with the greatest praise and profit. Three years after, the same man, obedience being received of three Princes of *Japania*, by Ambassadors of that Nation, he died the tenth of April, for whom *Sixtus* the fifth was chosen. And in the same year, Civil storms being renewed in France, the Catholique Princes entered into a secret league among themselves, of putting the Protestants to flight, especially *Henry* of Guise, and *Charles Borbon* Cardinall, the Uncle of *Henry* of Navarre; which conspiracy we have wont to call [*Liga*] a bond, tie or League. *Sixtus*, chief Bishop, a curse being pronounced again the *Henries*, the *Vasconian* and the *Condern*, he pronounced either of them unworthy the succession of the Kingdome, which next belonged unto them from the year one thousand five hundred eighty four, in which *Francis Alenconius* had yielded to nature's destiny, the tenth of June, at the Camp of *Theodorium*. Hence a most cruel war was largely spread over all France. *Henry* King of the *Navarrians* had married the *Germane* souldiers. *Robert* of *Bullein* being Captain, while he goeth to meet this man, resisting him, he overthrew *Anas Joisius* meeting him with his Army at *Cartasium* in *Aquitaine*, in which fight the Duke himself was slain, in the year one thousand five hundred eighty seven. Moreover the *Germanes* being stirred up in many battels by *Henry* of Guise, at last they are put to flight at *Alencon* in *Belfa*. The year after, which was eighty eight, *Henry* of *Condy* dyed the fifth of March, having left behind him an heir of the same name, who was born in the Month of September, who afterwards followed the communion of Rome, and obtaineth unto this day his father's and Grandfather's Nobility, increased with the praise of sincere piety.

That same year was lamentable through the death of *Henry* of Guise, and Cardinall *Ludovick* his brother: who by the *Blesensian* assemblies of the whole Kingdome, were, by the command of King *Henry* slain; chiefly for that thing intended, because when he had been at *Paris* a little before, in the Month of May, He being suddenly moved at the coming of the *Guisan* Duke, had made a sedition, and had forced the astonished King to flight for fear. *Henry* of Guise on Decemb. 23 (the day after) his brother was thrust thorow by the Kings Guard.

Amongst these Tempests of France, *Charles Emmanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, possideth the dominion of *Salencia* of the French Title, in a Countrey under the Alps. The Spanish Navy with never so much preparation carried into England, partly by shipwrack, partly by the Counsel and valour of *Drake* an English Captain, most knowing in Sea affairs, perished.

Lastly, the death of *Katherine*, Mother of Kings, made the eighty ninth year of that age mournfull, on January the fifth.

But

Anno 1547  
of Christ  
to 1589.

But it happened much more sorrowfull by the most unworthy murder of the King himself. Who, great envy being (through the death of the *Guisians*) contracted, when as the Cities here and there fell off from him, and *Paris* it self the head of the kingdome rebelled before the rest, this, *Henry* of Navarre being called to him for aid, he began to besiege, and his Camps being pitched against it, he is slain with a cruell parricide, a poysoned knife being thrust thorow his belly on the Calends of August. By whose death the stock of the *Valesians*, fit for a kingdome, ceased. Therefore the top of affairs turned aside unto the Family of the *Borbones*, as the next in kindred. Whose beginning is derived from *Robert* Earl of *Claramonta*, the second son of *Ludovick*.

The plenty of famous wits through France, and other Countreies, was never greater at any other time than these men reigning, whom I have reckoned up in that Chapter. All which if I would number up, it will be the matter of a full Volume. I will therefore touch at a few for the undertaken brevities sake.

In France, *Henry* the second being King, *John Fernelius* an excellent Physitian of *Ambia* was eminent. *Andrew Tiraquell* a Lawyer, *Julius Caesar Scaliger*. Under *CHARLES*, *Adrian Turneb*, *Rondelet*, a Physitian; *John Aurate*, *Peter Ronsard*, at that time accounted the Prince of French Poetry. *James Cuiack*, a Lawyer of *Toulouse*, *Mark Anthony Muretus Lemotix*, *Francis Baldane* a Lawyer, *Dionysius Lambine*, *John Passeratius*; Of whom, many came unto the time of *Henry* the third. In other Provinces under *Henry*, about the second, and *Charles*: *Stanislaus Hosius*, *Ruard Tapper*, *William Lindane*, *Cornelius Jansen*, *Andrew Vega*, *Lawrence Surim*, a Carthusian Frier, *James Pamell*, *James Lainez*, Generall overseer of the Jesuites society. *Avias Montanus*, *Martine Azpicuelt*, of Navarre; *Anthony Augustine*, Bishop of *Turason*, *Peter Visor*, which three last indeed departed out of life, in the year 1586. *Paul Manute*, *Onufrius Pannine*, *Charles Sigon*, *Jerome Cardane*, and many others. *Ignatius* who in the year 1556, the day before the Calends of August, died after *Francis Xavery*, to whom death happened in the year 1552. December the second. *Teresia*, in the year 1582. *Charles Borromens*, famous for holinessse, two years after, they increased the heavenly number.

Learned Men.

## CHAP. XIII.

what things were done throughout the world, Rodulph being Emperour, and Henry Borbon King of France.

From the year 1589 of Christ, unto 1610.

Annals of France.

The Jurian Fight.

Henry the 4th embraced the Catholique Faith.

A New Family of Kings after the death of *Henry* the third, fortunately began in the year 1589, *Henry* the 4th King of Navarr being taken to the Rule of the French; against whom the covenanted-Princes, because he was not as yet a Catholique, renewed war. The Captain of these was *Charles* of Medua, the brother of *Henry* of Guise, slain by *Henry* the 3d. A little after, a disturbance of things followed through all France. When as parties striving with a killing hatred, and the agreement of Cities being sent asunder; as well the neighbouring Cities among themselves, as all people of the same Cities among each other, burned with inward discords. *Charles Borbon*, the Kings Uncle, who was as yet kept in custody, is saluted by a mock, the tenth King of that name, in the year 1590. Between these things, a noble victory being gotten at the Temple of *Andren*, through which the Earl of *Egmonda*, a Leader of the Spaniards, dyed; and which is wont to be called the *Jurian* battell. *Henry* compasseth Paris with a most straight siege, when in the mean time, *Charles Borbon* paid his debt to Nature at Fontenayum: and the Duke of Parma coming out of Belgium to bring help to the Parisians, the King, the City being left, leadeh an Army against him, and maketh provision to fight. But at Paris, after the losing of the siege, assemblies are solemnized by the covenanted-Princes in the year 1593, for the choosing a new King. But those were made voyd by the ambition and disagreement of the Princes. *Henry* having professed the Catholique faith, July 25, sent the Duke of *Niverna* Embassador to Rome, unto *Clement* chief Bishop, (who the former year had entred the Prelateship, Jan. 30.) to request pardon. The which when the Bishop deferred, *Henry* in the mean time is anointed at Autricum of the Carnutians, with holy oyl, Febr. 27, in the year 1594: because Durocortorum of Rhemes, where that thing according to the custome was wont to be performed, was in the power of the enemies. And then he is privily let into Paris, March 22, with armed Souldiers. At length, in the year 1595, the Bishop being intreated by *James Perron* the King's Embassador, the sentence of condemnation being abolished, he wholly restored the king. In which thing, *Francis Tolett* Cardinal of the Jesuites Society, performed a famous work for him, although by birth a Spaniard; and the king held himself to owe much unto him before those of that Nation. But then, the Governour and Cities returned, strivingly, unto the defence of *Henry*.

At length, in the year 1598, at Vervin, May the 2d, a peace

W25

## Cap. 13. An Account of Time.

was established between the French and Spaniards, the chief Bishop being the author: and *Philip* of Spain the fifth moneth from thence, dyed the 13th of September.

(a) Whilst things are so carried on in France; in Belgium against the Spaniards, *Maurice*, Captain of the Covenanted Ranks, or United Provinces, without delay moved War. Therefore through the absence of the Duke of Parma, who ever and anon ran out against *Henry* into France; he took some Cities by force and surrender. The Parmian Duke dyed at Acrebates, in the year 1592, in whose place first of all *Ernest* of Austria, the brother of *Rodulph* the Emperour, was: Then he being dead, *Albert* a Cardinal, the brother of them both was sent; unto whom *Isabel*, the daughter of *Philip* the elder, being given in wedlock, the dominion of those Provinces chanced by lot in the year 1598. This man having upon *Offend* a Sea-City of Flanders, in the year 1601, the third year after by *Ambrise Spino* of Canos he received it on surrender; truly not worthy the price of so many charges, and lives; which he is said to have spent on that siege. (b) In the mean time, *Elizabeth* Queen of England in the year of her age 70, the 45 of her reign yielded to Nature's destiny, of Christ 1602, and had *James* king of Scotland her Successour, (the which thing she had commanded by Will) bars of *Mary Stuart*; whom I have mentioned above to have been slain by *Elizabeth*, against right. (c) Also in Swethland there was trouble: When as *Charles* the Uncle of *Sigismund* king of Poland had castily taken away the kingdom committed to his trust, *Sigismund* being excluded; who therefore had contended out of Poland, that he might recover it, in the year 1599. That being taken away from the Catholique Prince, afterward the Protestant Governours passed it over by a publique decree, on *Charles* partaker of the same sect, in the year 1604. Furthermore, that *Sigismund* the only son of *John* the third, king of Swethland, who dyed in the year 1592, in the same year was called King of the Swedes, the affairs of Swethland being brought into good order, two years after he had returned into Poland. In Hungary and Transylvania there were the like shakings for Religion's sake.

*Sigismund* Bathor Prince of Transylvania, using rash Counsel, in the year 1598 had departed from his dominion for the sake of *Maximilian* of Austria; *Andrew* Bathor the Cardinal, his father's brother's son bare that thing grievously; and a little after *Sigismund* himself changing his mind, brake his covenants. Thereby a War began to be waged between the Bathorians and Austrians; Transylvania remained in the power of these: *Sigismund* by the interposing of *Clement* chief Bishop, returned into favour with the Emperour; and at length dyed at Prague in the year 1613. But the Protestants again, the Emperour being despised, choole *Bosicene* a Hungarian, besmeared with the errors of *Zuinglius*, their Captain or Duke; who by the help of the Turks joynd unto him a great part of *Dacia*, and miserably vexed the Catholiques;

Annos 1598 of Christ, to 1610.

(a) Hist. of Flanders.

The siege of Offend.

(b) Annals of France.

(c) Spand. Chron. The Kingdom of Swethland usurped by Charles.

Anno 1589  
of Christ,  
to 1610.

liques, in the year 1605. The same man the following year maketh peace with the Emperour on these conditions, That for himself, and children, if he should leave any males, he should have Transylvania: At which time *Rodulph* the Emperour entred into a twenty years truce with the Turks. But in *Moscor* the same year 1606, *Demetrius* the Prince, because he was of a more inclinable mind toward the Germans and Polonians, neither disagreed from the Bishop of Rome, by his own Subjects is most cruelly slain.

That I may bring back my Pen unto the Affairs on this side Rhene, *Henry* King of France proclaimed war against *Charles* Duke of the Allobrogians, in the year 1600, that he might retake the dominion of *Salussia*, possessed by him through the Civil Troubles of France. At last they agree between themselves; and the Countrey of *Salussia* was repayed with the Province of the *Sebusians* on this side the Alps. Two years after *Charles* *Gontald* Duke of *Bironia*, being hitherto, for his warlike boldness, and undaunted courage in dangers, very acceptable unto *Henry*, when as he desired greater matters; and privily conspired against the King's life, was beheaded the day before the Kalends of August, in the year 1602.

The Jesuit-Society being nine years before by the decree of the Senate, commanded to depart from Paris, and other Cities, is call'd back again by the kings Proclamation, the year 1603 going out. Which Proclamation, the Senate of Paris, the 4th Nones of January, of the year following had confirmed. The same fellowship being much desired by many Cities of the kingdom, through the most greatest will of the most courteous King, began to open or prepare Schools in many places.

Of desiring which, the King himself gave an example unto the people; Who likewise at his own charge appointed Schools for that fellowship at *Flexia* of the *Andegavians*; the Palace of the *Vindocinian* Dukes being ordained for them: in which first the Seminary was brought; and with a decree, that after death his heart should be safely laid up there. Which thing indeed being sooner done, than was profitable for the kingdom and society, both grieved. My mind is agast to relate the most bitter death of the most valiant, and most courteous king after this inclosed dominion. Whom when all desired to be immortal, the parricide of one detestable privy murd'rer took away, May the 14th, of the year 1610, the day after that he had taken care for *Mary* his wife to be anointed and crowned (as the manner of Queens is) at the Town of *Dionysius*. She was the daughter of *Francis Medices* the great Duke of *Etruria*; who in the year 1600, a marriage being entred into with *Henry*, brought forth the year following 1601, *Ludovick*, a Prince profitable unto France, Sept. 27.

While *Henry* reigned over France; what with holiness, what with learning adorned, famously dyed, *Philip Nerius* a teacher of Latine Oratory, in the year 1595, March 26, who by *Gregory* the 14th, with four others, *Isidore* a Spaniard; *Ignatius*, builder of the

Jesuites

Jesuites Society; *Francis Xavery*, the Apostle of the Indians, and *Teresa*, was registred among the number of Saints, March the 12th, of the year 1622. *Francis Tolet* of the fellowship of Jesus, Cardinal, in the year 1596. *Cesar Baronius*, Cardinal, a noble writer of Church-Annals, or Yearly Accounts, in the year 1607, the day before the Kal. July. *Justus Lipsius* in the year 1606, dyed at *Lovane*, March 23. *Benedict Arim Mahtanus* a Spaniard. *Abraham Ortelius*, *Thomas Stapleton*, three in the same year 1598. Of the Protestants, *Theodore Beza*, 1605, October the 25th, of his age 87. *Joseph Scaliger* dyed in the year 1590, January the 10th, of his age 69.

Anno 1579  
of Christ,  
to 1611.

## CHAP. XIV.

Of those things which happened worthy to be known, *Rodulph*, *Mathias*, and *Ferdinand*, being Emperours: and *Lewis*, King of France.

From the year of Christ 1610, to 1632.

(A)FTER the death of *Henry* the Great, to be by all kinds of people bewailed, things were more quiet in France, under *Lewis* a child, than the hope of all men supposed: whose guardianship, with the ordering of the kingdom is straightway granted to his Mother. Some of the chief ones made a beginning of tumulting in the year 1614; who hated the too much power of the *Florentine Concinas*.

Between these stirrs, *Lewis* went into *Aquitane* in the year 1610, that he might take *Anne*, the daughter of the Catholique King, *Philip* the second, (whom he before, by an Embassadour, had espoused to himself,) unto a lawful wedlock: and at the same time with the like good successe, he took his sister *Elizabeth* to be joined with *Philip* the son of *Philip* the third. So two most mighty Princes with the greatest profit unto Christian affairs, more strictly bound the promise of peace between themselves by this nuptial exchange. Homebred agreement the year following, doubled the publique merit; *Henry* Prince of *Conde*, and the other Covenanters being reconciled with *Lewis*. But suddenly, new tumults arising, on the very Kal. Septemb. of the year 1616, the *Concinus* is sent to prison.

The Princes, who the former year had made a fellowship with him, depart from the Court. Against this, a war by the Kings authority is proclaimed; which in the following year 1617, was ended. *Concinus* being in the very entrance of the Kings Palace thrust thorow by the Kings guard, on the 14th day of April, because being commanded by the King for certain causes to be laid hold of; he had tryed to defend himself by weapons. His death, a peace of the covenanted Governours, and a publike quietness, followed.

(A) Ex his  
Ludovici  
XIII. et an  
nis Com  
muni.

New Anno

The

The Jesuit-  
Society re-  
stored.

Anno 1610  
of Christ,  
to 1632.

The Queen-Mother, untill these Troubles were appeased, being in the mean time intreated to go apart, betook her self to Blesfa. From which time King *Lewis* began to carry on the Common-wealth by his own authority. The beginning of which to be managed, that he might take from Religion, in the month September, he by a publique Law decreed, That in the Province of *Benearn*, which is situate at the Pyrenæan bottoms; the Catholique worship should be every where restored; and also that the Protestants should restore the goods taken away about 50 years before, unto the Churches.

The siege of  
the Juliack.

Without France, these things happened worthy of memory almost at these same years. Juliack a Town of Lower-Germany was received upon surrender by *Maurice* of Nassaw, being holpen by the French ayds, September entring of the year 1610; concerning whose possession, some Princes strove amongst themselves; after that *John William* the Duke dyed without off-spring.

The Moors  
driven out of  
Spain.

*Philip* King of Spain having gotten the most strong Tower of *Alarab*, built by the Moors at the Gaditane Sea, the keepers of it being corrupted by reward, commanded all the Moors to depart out of Spain. They are said to have gone out to the number of ninety thousand heads, in the year 1610, and some years following after that.

*Sigismund* King of Poland, taketh *Smolenskum*, a most fortified Town of *Roxolania* or *Muscovy*, after two years besieging, in the year 1611, in the Month of July. Whose son *Uladislaus* they chose Duke of *Molch*, although afterwards their Counsell or purpose being changed, they desire another: whereby a cruell war, after that, arose.

Charls, King  
of Swevia,  
being dead,  
Gustave Sug-  
swedish.

*CHARLS*, King of Swethland, dying through grief of an overthrow, brought on him by the Danish King, in the Month November; in the year 1611, obtained his son *Gustavus* successor of the Kingdom; others in vain desiring to bring it over unto *Sigismund* King of Poland.

But the 1612th year entring, the twentieth of January, *Rodolph* the Emperour, died, the thirty sixth year from the departure of *Maximilian* his father, Whom his brother *Matthias* succeeded the same year.

The Venetians, after these things, being troubled by the inroads of the Croatsians, encounter with arms, *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of Austria, the son of *Charls* Arch-Duke, who was the brother of *Maximilian* the second, Emperour, in the year one thousand six hundred and fifteen. Which War being waged on both sides, through mutual losses for three years space, the 1618 year entring, was laid down.

A greater war arose in Italy between the Mantuan and Subaudian Dukes, in the year 1613, over the Principality of *Montferia*, when as *Francis* of Mantua dying without issue Male, *Ferdinand* his brother, of a Cardinal was chosen in his room. Who being defended by the Spaniards helps against *Charls Philibert* Duke

of

Anno 1610  
of Christ,  
to 1632.

of Subaudia, he strove some years, and Arms being laid down, and ever and anon taken up again. For the third year after, that is, of Christ 1615. peace being composed, in the year following the war was restored. Moreover *Vercella* was taken in the year 1617, the 25th of July, by the Vice-king of *Mediolum*; and a year almost turning about, by the endeavour of the most Christian King, was restored in the year 1618, in the Month of June, and so there was made an end of warring.

In Dacia, *Gabriel Bathor*, being put to flight by *Bethleem Gabor*, furnished with the aids of the Turks, most wretchedly perished. *Gabor* defended the Province possessed, against the Emperour, after that, by weapons and treachery.

A far most cruel War of all, was stirred up in Germany, in the year 1618; in which, *Ferdinand* Arch-Duke of Austria, and King of Bohemia, also the kingdom of Hungary he received on certain conditions from *Matthias* the Emperour. But then at *Prague*, the Protestants revolted from him, the Earl of *Turra* stirring them up: who, the Magistrates being killed, and the Citizens compelled to swear in their words, he provoked all Bohemia, and the neighbouring Provinces unto arms. Unto this man, *Ernst Mansfeld* a bastard, joyned himself. Between these things, *Matthias* dyeth in the year 1619, of March the 20th, the 62 year of his age turning, of his Empire 6 years, and nine months; in whose place *Ferdinand* king of Bohemia and Hungary, being chosen, not slowly prosecuteth the war against the seditious, *Bucquoin* and *Dampier* most valiant Captains, being opposed against them. But the Protestants make *Frederick* Elector Palatine, the son in law of the King of England, king of Bohemia: and he in the same year 1619, on the month November, with his wife, a woman covetous of a kingdom, received the Crown after the solemn ceremony at *Prague*. But truly so great successes had not a lasting gladness. For in that year which followed, 1620, the 8th day of November, under the very walls of *Prague*, a memorable battel being made, by *Bucquoin* Captain of the Emperour's Army, and the Bavarian, the Palatine is scattered, and being put to flight, and banished, the year following, he fleeth over unto the Baravians or Dutch: where being private from that time with his wife and children, he led his life. Bohemia by and by with the other Provinces returned unto the obedience of the Emperour; who restored every where the Catholique profession; and the fathers of the Jesuit-Society, by name, driven away from *Prague*, at the beginning of the troubles; the same year he most honourably brought back. And unto this very fellowship, to the immortal praise of King *Lewis* toward it, it was granted to open Schools at *Paris*, in the same year wherein *Prague* banished it, 1618.

Which was the sixth from a new company of Clerks framed at the same *Lotetia* or *Paris*, under the name of the Oratory; which being gathered together by *Peter Berull* a Parisian Elder, in the year 1612. *Paul* the fifth, the year following, by an Episcopall

The German  
War in Bo-  
hemia.

The Palati-  
ne is made  
King of Bo-  
hemia.

He is over-  
come and put  
to flight.

H h h

pall



Apno 1610  
of Christ  
to 1632.

The War in  
the Tellinian  
Valley.

pall Proclamation, decreed to be confirmed. Moreover *Urbane* the eighth registred the author of this famous instruction, eminent in the like praise of learning and Godliness, into the order of the most eminent Cardinals in the year 1627. Who, two years after being increased with great deserts, and famous in a great off-spring, died the sixth Nones of October in the year 1629. of his age the 55th.

At the same time, in which it was warred the Palatinat, (that was the year 1620) in the Valley of Telline: which at the command of the *Rhetians* or *Cants*, whom they call the *Grisons*; Civill troubles flamed. The Catholics being provoked with the injuries of the Protestants, hidden Counsells being entred into among themselves, oppresse or come upon all the Calvinists; and the aid of Duke *Ferdinand* Governour of Mediolum being intreated, they get leave of him of enjoying Castles in some fit places. Moreover the Rhetian Nation being all troubled, and with them the Venetians: who believed these inclosures of Italy to be held by a continuall possession by the Spaniards, was in no case making for their affairs, both desiring aid from him. *Ludovick* King of France was not wanting, and first of all, in the year 1620, he obtained by Embassadours from the King of Spain, that he should promise to restore all things wholly, while they consulted of the Catholique affairs. Which caution being approved by the most Christian King, when as severthelesse the matter wanted an issue, it is brought to weapons. Furthermore those exercised the French and Spaniards, and the confederates of both, with a diverse success, for some years.

A Civill War  
in France.

In the mean time a Civill war was renewed throughout France, some Governours conspiring against *Lewine*, whose power had increased even unto envy; whom the secret flight of the Queen Mother, and her passage into the Castle of Andegavia, had enforced to attempt new matters.

In which war, *Ludovick* making use of the Faithfull endeavours and counsell of *Henry* Prince of Condé, who in the year one thousand six hundred and nineteen, in the Moneth of October, had been freed from Prison, in a short time he restored rest and quietnesse to the French, in one fight at *Casars* bridge, the Armies of the adversaries being slain. Which conquest made the Queen Mother, and others of those parties, friends with the King in the year 1620.

The Expedition  
of Be-  
nearn.

The same year, an expedition for *Benearn* followed: which being finished with incredible speedinesse, brought a fruit more welcome then could be expected. For the stubborn enemies being affrighted at the sudden coming, the King found there all things inclinable to obedience.

Therefore, holy houses, and the goods of the Catholics were delivered into his power, that whole countrey lying under the Pyrenean Hills, whose right it was to be separated from the rest of the Kingdom, from that time forward he determined by his

Anno 1610  
of Christ  
to 1632.

The Siege of  
Mount Albane.

his decree that it should be made tributary to the same, the which at last in the year 1624, was established. But three years before, of Christ 1621, very many Towns of the Sanrons, and Novempopulonia, and the neighbour Provinces; which are so the number of sixty; were by force or fear, with a very great slaughter of the unborn enemies, subdued. By little and little the course of Victories came on, to Mount Albane. Which City the King setting upon at an unseasonable time of the year, he left off to besiege: many, moreover, of the chief Nobility being lost, and, which happened most to be lamented, *Henry* Duke of Medua, himself, Lieutenant of Aquitaine. Neither long time after, *Lewine* Master of both Souldiery deceased of a disease, the fifteenth of December, in the year 1621. Which same year was the last to *Paul* the fifth, chief Bishop. For he departed the eight and twentieth day of January, of his age the sixty ninth; of his Prelate-ship the sixteenth. The Moneth following, and the ninth day thereof, *Alexander Ludovisus* of Bononia, is chosen, who would be called *Gregory* the fifteenth. And this man, about two years and five Moneths being finished, in the year 1623, the eighth of July, gave place to *Maphæus Barberine*, who under the name of *Urbane* the eighth from a. d. 7. Ides of Aug. of the same year 1623, unto this time is chief over the Church, and as yet maketh it more famous by vertues, worthy of so great chief-dome, joyed with excellent Learning.

The death of *Philip* the third, king of Spain followed the death of *Paul* the fifth, the third Moneth after, which fell out the day before the Calends of Aprill, in the year 1621, of his age forty three, of his reign twenty three. But in the Moneth of September, the fifteenth Calends of October, *Robert Bellarmine* of the Jesuites society, S. R. E. Cardinall, flew up into Heaven, whither (the same which had brought him unto the Purple garment) integrity of life the companion of singular Learning, carried him.

About the same time also Breda a Town of Brabant, *Spinola* Captain of the Spanish Army, besieged; and in Aquitaine, and the Province of Narbony, *Rohanne*, and *Subizius*, Protestant brethren, renewed a war against king *Ludovick*. Breda in the year 1624. in the Moneth of August, is begun to be besieged: on June the thirteenth, of the following year, for want of Provision, made a surrender. With the Rebellious French it was fought by land, and Sea, and the same being every where overcome: but in this latter, in which *Gauisius* was Captain, the Navy of the Rochellian Robbers being tamed, the Island Rheas was reduced into the power of *Ludovick* the King.

The Siege of  
Breda.

Which things while they are carried on in France, in Italy, *Le-diguer* master of the Horse being Captain of the French Army for the Prince of Subaudia, fought against the Genoans and Spaniards, in whose Protection those are. But *Mansfeld* had troubled Germany with often roads and robberies, a tumultuous company

The Genoan  
War.



W  
Anne 1610  
of Christ,  
to 1632.

The Isle of  
Rée taken  
away from  
the English.

The siege of  
Rochell.

The besieging  
of Casall.

pany of robbers being gathered together. Who being put to flight by *Tilly* a most valiant commander, he fleeth unto *Gabor* the Transilvanian; and from thence striving to go to the Venetians, with an incredible profit and joy of the Catholique parties, he perished, in the year 1626. The Rochellers unmindfull of their sworn faith a little before, and of peace the same year received, call forth privily the English against the King. Who in the year 1627. being brought unto the Isle Rhea, or of Rhee, with a Navy of an hundred and twenty Ships, *Buckingham* being Captain, they possesse the whole, except the Castle; over which *Tourasse* was governour, a stout man, and greatly skillful in warlike affairs. This man, although the works were new, nor as yet finished, shifted off the sharp and continuall forces of the enemies, untill now labouring with the want of all things, and being wearied, the industry of *Ludovick* the King came to help them. For this King using *Ricelieu* the Cardinall, a man flourishing in all praise, his helper and Minister; he sent over quickly *Schonberg* a famous Captain, indeed with so great number of souldiers unto the succour of the besieged; whop, *Tourasse* being joynd to him, drove our the English, being slain and chased out of all the Island.

Nothing seemed to be done by so many wars and Victories, as long as that despiſer Rochell, impatient of Kings, and all Rule, lifted up another Kingdom as it were in the middle of a Kingdom. Which City being situate at the chinks, or overflowed places of the Ocean, it was fenced both with the nature of the place, and also with the hand, and Art, that it was commonly accounted invincible. This most sure City, *Ludovick* attempteth with a great courage and hope, which he had taken from the help of God, being made triall of in so many affairs, in the year 1627. And the same *Ricelieu* the Cardinall, being partaker of the Counsell, by works and Fortifications, and, among other things, huge Bulwarks unmoveable, being finished by the Ocean side, he so held it shut up a whole year, that the Citizens being killed up with hunger, and having suffered all extremity, yielded themselves unto the King. Therefore it, the walls being cast to the ground, was reduced almost into the form of a Village for a terror and example to others, that the invincible might rather desire the defence and clemency of their Prince, then to attempt weapons. Rochell was taken in the eight and twentieth year of that age, October the 30th. After that, the Rebels returned wholly unto their duty, neither saw the year following, any thing of an enemy left in France.

*Ludovick* being busied about Rochell, and the English: the Duke of Subaudia had stirred up the weapons of the Spaniards against *Mantuan*; with whom he had an old strife about the possession of Mounterrat. And also some Cities being already taken: and *Casall* (that is, a Town, as least antient, so of that Province, as the report is, the most fortified of all Italy) *Collaltus* had besieged. *Ludovick*, things being appeased in Italy, led his

W  
Anne 1610  
of Christ,  
to 1632.

his Army, being Conquerour, thither thorow the Alps, and the close places of the Mountains, being broken thorow, which also nature through the roughness of places, and most strong Garrisons of the enemy had made unpassible, he overcame *Seguſio*, a City under the Alps, at the fifth onset, the third and twentieth of March, in the year 1629. The Spaniards having departed from Casall, left it free for a military supply, and Provisions, our souldiers carrying on their Journey within the Town. After the departure of the French; they by and by returned unto the siege that was broken off for a time; with a greater provision then before.

About the same time, *Collaltus* Captain of the Emperours Army, very much wasted the land of Mantua; and *Spinola* chief Governour for the Spaniards from the Catholique king, a man of great fame for warfare, besieged Casall with all his Forces. But the unconquered vertue of *Tourasse*, who held that Town in Garrison, made all their endeavours void. At last, the French flee to *Ricelieu* the Cardinall, ordering the Warre with the greatest power, the second time beyond the Alps to bring help.

There, many Towns being conquered, while they extend their journey, stopped with many difficulties; Mantua, through the Plague received within the walls by the Towns-men, and defenders, being wasted, is suddenly invaded by the Germans, on the Moneth of July, in the year one thousand six hundred and thirty.

The French being nothing affrighted with the misery of Partics, three Armies being in vain opposed, the victories repeated over the enemies, they through valour brought forth thither a passage for themselves whither they had intended. Then under the very sight of Casall, and the Spaniard pitching his Tents, when they were in readinesse to joyn battel, *Mazarine* running between, the matter is brought unto conditions of peace without arms, and blood; by the highest providence toward both, yea toward all Christians: lest either through a great slaughter, victory should be manifest to either; or might yield to neither, a muruall slaughter being made. This was the end of the Italian Expedition, November going out, of the year 1630. When as now the labour of the siege bringing a continued disease, a disease brought a departure of life to *Spinola*.

After these things the name of *Levis* was famous throughout all people; not more by the report of weapons, than equity, and faithfullnesse toward his fellowes, whose safety he held more beloved, than his own private profits and wealth. Also the excellent force and vertue of mind of the most eminent Cardinall *Ricelieu* was for admiration; and in managing great affairs, a like industry of a diligent Vir.

W  
Anno 1610  
of Christ,  
to 1631.  
W

The Offence  
of the Queen-  
Mother and  
King's Brother.

In the year 1631, in the moneth of April, both Embassadors agreeing, a peace was established between the Emperour and Duke of Mantua, on equal terms; and also the possession of Mantua was confirmed to this man by the Emperour's decree, and of Montferrat, the second day of July. Thus all things being appeased, the ancient rest and quietness returned unto Italy.

French and German stirrs followed Italian peace. In France, the Queen-Mother, a grudge being taken up against Cardinal Richelieu, she openly renounced her friendship from him; neither that she might receive him into favour, could she be intreated by any of his, or even by the intreaties of King Lewis her son himself. Gasto the King's brother in a short time after followed his Mother's example, and his mind being estranged from the same Cardinal, he departed unto Orleans, which City belonged to his Title. Straightway the King, with all the Court, and likewise the Queen-Mother, go to Compendium: Who being there left, when as the king a little after had gone away, she privily escaped out of that Town into Flanders, July the 19th day; The Duke of Orleans now going aside from Orleans, from the moneth of March, into Burgundy, thence fleeing from the King, following after him, he also departed into Lorrain, and lastly into Flanders.

A Civil War,  
wherein the  
King's Brother  
is overcome.

Then a tumultuous company being gathered together, he breaking out into France; the following year he set upon Narbonne in France, which they name Occitania. The Duke Montmorence was chief over this Province; who falling away unto him in the moneth of July, brought with him a great increase of Forces, and courage; That now the Army of the king, with Schanberg the Captain, assailing on him, he durst to resist, and encounter with it. Therefore on the very Kalends of September, of the year 1632, they met in a very short, but bloody battel at Castlenaudar; in which, the Rebels were overcome, and not a few chief men were slain. Montmorence, some wounds being received, came under the power of his enemies; and being brought to Tolouse, a Sentence of his head being passed on him by the Senate, he submitted his neck to the sword or hatchet the third Kal. of November. Which highest chance nor onely with a steadfast, but also godlily and religiously, as became a Christian, with a ready mind he underwent.

Troubles of  
Germany, and  
the King of  
Sweden's  
Expedition.

In Germany, Gustave king of Swethland, who from the year 1630, going out of his own borders, had cast forth the Emperour's Armies out of Pomerania, and other neighbouring Provinces; in the following year 1631, he moved forward into more inward places, and Towns without number being vanquished, he largely spread about his terrour. Tillie, the Captain of the Catholique party being in vain opposed against him: who also himself, from the year 1630, having in the mean time set upon Magdeburg, brake

W  
Anno 1610  
of Christ,  
to 1631.  
W

brake it thorow with the greatest force, and burned it the ninth of May, of the following year 1631. But the Lutheran Princes, an Assembly being had at Lipsia, they conspire against the Emperour; and their forces being joyned with Gustave, they take up war. Against these Tillie is opposed; who in the moneth of September, another Captain, Papenheim, being joyned with him, besegeth Lipsia, and compelleth it to yield. A little after, the Covenanted-Princes, are present, and especially the king of Swethland, with the Duke of Saxony.

There is made at Lipsia, between these and the Tillians, a most sharp battel; whose issue fell out lamentably unlucky to the Catholique party. Tillie being overcome, withdrew himself by flight, and for the most part ten thousand being lost. Lipsia was taken by the Saxons into possession. This Victory laid open to the king of Swethland that which was left of Germany, none hindring him. Heribols being taken, he subdued all Francony, and also Mogantia, and others: From that time forward, he passed thorow other Provinces in manner of an out-breaking flame, or steep-running River: The Saxon in the mean time invading Bohemia, afterwards took Prague, the head City of that kingdom, by surrender. Some of the Princes of Germany, that they might turn away the storm invading them, implored the help of Lewis King of France, whom he by his weapons and authority defended safe from wrong; especially the Archbishop of Trevirs: the which in the year following 1632, was performed.

The Fight at  
Lipsia.

This very year the Swedish King kept the same course of victories without offence or hindrance; and wandring thorow Suevia, Alasia, and Bavaria, he made many Towns to come under his power. The River Danubius being passed over, he scattered the Bavarians with their Captain Tillie, who a little after deceased of a wound, at Ingolstadt, now of a great age, and excelling in warlike glory; but more famous in Religion, and the worship of Catholique Piety. Vualstine Lieutenant of the highest Catholique affairs, recovereth Prague against the Saxon and Swede. And then after many tossings, at length at Lutzen, which Town is not far distant from Lipsia, Valslein and Papenheim fight for two dayes space against the King of Swethland: In which battle Gustave the king of Sweden dyed. Not long after, Papenheim. That was done in the moneth Novemb. The Swedes, their king being slain, renewed the War nothing more slowly; the which they prosecute unto this day.

The last Fight  
and death of  
the King of  
Sweden.

The same year 1632, made Vladislaus king of Poland; who in to the place of his father, by solemn Assemblies of the kingdom was chosen, according to the custome, in the moneth October; when as the nine and twentieth day before of April, Sigismund had dyed, of his reign the 45.

Moreover,

Anno 1610  
of Christ,  
to 1631.

Moreover, this year was memorable for the burning flame of the Mountain Vesuvium; the which being renewed on the month of February, brought a very large wasting, but a great affrightment unto the Neapolitans: who, a solemn supplication being for that thing proclaimed, by the which, the head of *Januarius* the Patron or Defender of the City was carried about, they turned away the destruction hanging over their heads.

*The End of the Ninth Book.*

AN

Anno 1632  
of Christ,  
to 1634.



AN  
**APPENDIX**  
TO  
The foregoing Account.

OR,  
A Summary RELATION of what  
Memorable things happened from  
the year 1632, unto 1656.

*The Tenth Book.*

CHAP. I.

*Of what things fell out in Germany, England, and other places  
worthy to be known.*

*From the year 1632, unto 1638.*

**A**FTER the death of *Gustave* King of Swethland, who (by the chance of War) was on the 6th of September 1632; slain in a set-battle, the Bavarian Duke being Commander in chief of the Emperour's Party: although he was constrained to quit the field in the same fight; *Oxenstern* Chancellor of Sweden undertook the government of the Warr; and in the year 1633, committed sixteen thousand Souldiers into the hands of *Lunenburgick* and *Kniphuse*; to go into Westphalia; sends away *Vinorien* into Francony, and he himself goeth unto the Duke

Anno 1632  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

of Saxony to consult together with him. And, in the mean time, *Altringe* subdueth some Cities of Swethland: and *Horn* goeth thither, where 1600 Countrey-men were killed at Sundgove, and 130 at Brisgove hanged upon a gibber. In the mean time, as a slender reward of the cruelty, *Magene* is destroyed, by laying in wait; and the Count of Rhene strives against the Lorrain Duke possessing the Cottages of Alfatia and Dachsteyn; and being increased in his Forces by *Vinarien*, he drives away the Bavarian, by punishing them of the Emperour's party, into Bavaria, when he had returned from Bayne unto his Lord the Emperour. But the City of Augusta is by a changeable condition, kept sometimes by the Swedes, sometimes by the Conquerours. And Craze being more than ordinarily displeased with *Fridland*, unto whom; the Emperour in the year before, 1632, had committed the chief command of warfare, one *Farenstbek* assisting him, was to deliver up Ingolstadt on the 4th of May.

And indeed the good success of War was at this time almost every where contrary unto the Emperour's forces. So that *Vinarien*, having vanquished *Ratisbone*, turns away the warlike weapons from Pomerania, and takes Chame and Straubinge into his possession. So, by *Enkhuse*, in a hasty and disorderly Combat, in Alfatia, there are 400 of the Emperour's slain, and as many taken; And *Fridland* himself fights with the like losse at Olave in Silesia; but at Oppele he lost no more than three hundred: And which is more than ordinary remarkable, *Dellone* in Swethland brings forth but an hundred and fifty, which was on the 4th of June 1633, and puts 600 of the Emperour's Souldiers to flight.

In the same year the Protestants of Germany hold an Assembly at Hailbrunne, where they renew their League and Covenant with the Swedes. & they appoint a giver of instructions, and frame a Council. All religious persons so called, that refused to take an oath from the Swedes, were commanded to depart. And afterwards they meet together at Frankford; where the saying into both the Indies that had been begun six years before, was enlarged with the privileges of Gustaveburg. Yet the Emperians take this year Frankford into possession; And the Duke of Saxony endeavoured to recover it, but all in vain.

But in the year 1634, both parties seem to bestir themselves, although not with a like success; for the Swedes overcome Alfatia, and likewise the Bavarians that were about to help *Wiltzburg*. Also the conspiracy of *Selestade* was discovered to the Swedes. And besieging Rheinsfeld, they take it, putting the Emperians to the sword. Philippiburg is yielded to *Smidberger* on Janu. the 10th; which place, the French did much desire for himself. In the mean time, *Horn* is busied in Silesia, where the Emperour's forces take Wartenberg by surrender, but Namslave by force. But *Drandorf* is beaten. *Altenburgick* moveth into Alfatia, and vanquisheth Budissine, Gorlete, and having the upper hand of Arnheim, he slew 4000, and took 1400; also Clogove, and other places,

Anno 1632  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

places, whose religious rites the Emperians do change. Frankford at Viader cometh into the power of the Swedes. *Crossa*, to *Bannier* being furnished with twenty thousand Souldiers. Thereupon there is peace insisted upon at Licomeric, but in vain. *Hirsberg* is forsaken and burned by the Emperians in the month of July of this year. But the Swedes having the upper hand throughout Swethland and the upper Palatinate, *Dubabell* maketh the Bavarians flee out of Chame. In the same year also, *Vinarien* besiegeth Forcheym; and the Duke of Saxony, Sittave. *Horn* also taketh Aicha; also *Bannier* breaketh into Bohemia, though to no purpose, while both *Vinarien* and *Horn* hasten to secure Ratisbone. And about this time, the highest power of managing the War, was committed unto the Elector of Saxony throughout both his Circles. *Steinford* being subdued, *Boninghause* is put to flight, while as in the mean time, *Gustave*, kinsman of King *Gustavus* is made a powerful Lord of Osnabrugense, and there brings in the religious rites of the Protestants. Then also the lower Saxony held an Assembly at *Halberstade*, and decreeth to take up arms in their own defence. Then the Swedes crave ayd of the Hollander, and so get the Masterdome. And among other tossings, Luna, (a Town in Hetruria, so called from its marble Mines, shining like the Moon) was four times taken.

Moreover, the 14th of February, this year proved fatal unto *Fridland* the Emperour's Embassadour, and Captain of all his Souldiery, who (either undergoing envy, or through the malignity of a tongue at will, or too bitter and sharp a command, or through ambition of others, or through suspicion of the Protestant Religion, not sincerely renounced) is, as it were, smelled out, and *Galasse* put into his place, being about to passe over to the Protestant parties, is thrust thorow at Eger; in which day also *Schafgotsch* is laid hold of in Silesia, and in the year following beheaded, and *Lauenburgick* on the 16 day, who was ignorant of matters. But hereupon it came to passe, that the Emperour's warfare, untill that his son the King of Hungary, the Captains requiring it, together with pay for the Souldiers, was put upon the Army, was but in an unsettled and floating condition.

So that the Count of Rhene in the beginning of March following kills 1500 of the Emperour's Souldiers in Alfatia: taketh *Tanna*, *Bellaford*, and other places; and some surrender of their own accord. In the same Alfatia, the Argentines discovered Treason. And they burn the poysonsome person (if he were so) who did accuse the Jesuites as the beginners of it in the year 1633. While the Swedes vanquish the Fort of Hunning, *Horn* as a Conquerour, subdueth Bibrack, Campodune, and other places.

The King of Hungary, General of the Emperians, not idle, besiegeth Ratisbone, having stopped up the passages, whom *Vinarien* that was no body being turned from his Arms, vainly endeavoureth to break thorow: So that the City was yielded on the 16th of July following, unto him, and Kautser a little after, whereby the Saxon is inclined unto a peace-making.

Anno 1632  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

*Vinarion* was the author, that *Philippiburg*, which but lately was stoutly denyed, is delivered up to the French, whither he himself (having gathered together a scattered Souldiery at the lower *Mæus*, his other affairs being lost) came for help. The Spanish Orator complaining to the Bishop of Rome concerning that surrender, having, it seemeth, an evil eye, as thinking it too good for him; received this answer, *We must not envy a Brother, because a Stranger held it.* Which words implied a toleration of envy, even to a brother, in some cases. How far then was he from loving his enemies? *Heidelberg* is now yielded to the Emperor.

The Infanta of Spain at that time brought 6500 foot, and 1500 horse, at the intreaty of the King of Hungary; and besides many Towns taken through the Lower-Francony, got a victory at *Nordlingen* the 26 and 27 of August.

*Oxenstern* now seeing the forrune hazard of the Swedes to be too largely spread, hath a meeting of the Protestants at *Frankford* in the moneth of March, and another at *Worms*, about the middle of November, where the Duke of *Neoburg* desireth to be excused as not to meddle with either party; and it is decreed amongst them, that *Fuelsenberger* and *Geleene* go unto *Philip*, (who in the *Juliacan* Mountain, and *Berganian* Field, mustred an Army) to desire ayds from the *Hollanders*: The while *Herbipolis* is made subject unto the Emperians, the City of *Argentine* refuseth the protection of the French, whether it were through fear of the one, or mistrust of the other's fidelity; The Landgrave of *Hassia* is put to flight at *Hirschfeld*; The *Ligutians* go into *Wetterave*, where they obtain *Braunfelsse*, who yielded themselves willingly; but two Towns, *Fridberg* and *Bading*, they take by force.

But in *Belgium* also, or the Low-Countries, there were no small preparations of War made, in the year 1632. For the *Hollanders* on the 21 of May take *Venloe*, and afterwards nearer places into their possession. They also confirm the continuance of the siege of *Trajectum*, at *Mose*, and stop 140 Waggonns of provision of victual of the enemies. They give *Papenbeim* the Emperian Commander, (who was slain, not long after *Gustave*) a valiant repulse, and after the surrender of the said *Trajectum*, they subdue also *Limburg* and other places. Also the 15th of October following, *Orfory*, when as in order to the work, *William* of *Nassaw* had from the beginning seized upon some Munitions between *Antwerp* and *Bergsbome*.

Moreover, the year after, which is 1633, while they contend with the Spaniards, *Auriack* or *Orange* besiegeth *Rheinboeck*, and taketh it, the Spaniards fortifying the Island of *St. Stephen* so called; but in the meantime, *William* of *Nassaw* in lieu of it snatcheth away quickly *Sehlade* and *Philippine*.

This year also the *Hollanders* make large progresses into the *West-Indies*, and suffer a most grievous overflowing of waters; but then again to make up their losses, they snatch two ships out

Anno 1632  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

of the East, (were they not our Merchant-men coming home; who, it's more than probable, were thrown over-board by them for the pelts sake) with sixty Tuns of gold.

Also in the year 1644, these *Hollanders* they vanquished the Fortresse of great *Rivum* in the other Western World: They receive three ships from *Guiny*, bringing 1044 pound weight of gold, they possesse the head of *Augustine*; they chastize the *Pyrates* of *Memphis*: They bring the Island called *Paccuvia*, *Volbecce* being their Leader, under the yoke. Then they receive seven ships out of the *East-Indies*, they possesse the Island where there is the best Indian salt, they quickly take *Paraibas*, a most famous place. And all this, to add to a worldly treasure.

In *Turky*, the Sultan (*Amurath*, or Emperour of the Turks), *22* of the *Bashaw* being removed from his voyage, joyns in a Truce with the *Persians*, although young, he coming to reign after his Grandfather, and then brings back his torn Armies, in the year 1632, in which year also his *American* Navy is cast away, to the number of ten ships, with the High Admirall and Ammirall besides, he lost 1500 Sea-men of War. Also the unlimited power of this Tyrannicall Monarch, hang'd with a Halter a Merchant of the *Venetians*, in the year 1634, who had (as it were) defiled his Concubines Pallace with a Prospective-Glasse; as also the *Muphti*, that is, the High-Priest, which was a very rare thing, he being accounted even his corrivall, giving no more honour to him than he to him: but his greatest brother slip into Italy, and is made a young beginner in the Bishop of *Romes* devotions, although perhaps little the better for it, and scarce worth the pains of his travell; for what difference is there (as to commend to God) between a Titular Christian, and a professed Mahometan?

In *Poland* at assemblies held for divers matters in 1632, as beating back the *Muscovite*, restraining the *Tartars*, making a lasting peace with the *Swedes*, for chusing a new king in the room of *Sigismund* (who dying April the 9th, 1632, was buried the 14th of Jan. 1643. *Madisslaus* who was chosen the year before, being crowned the 27 day of the same January 1643) the Emperour, desiring ayd from them, was denyed it, the States not consenting thereto. So good is a curb to unlimited power, that by the will and pleasure of one, a multitude may not suffer: And the Emperour the year following (being it seemeth put to his shifts) becometh eleven Captains, and hangs as many, because of a battle that they had lately defested.

While these ruines were working abroad, some Great ones in *England*, who were then in peace, not foreseeing trouble, attempted divers matters as emblems of prosperity, amongst which, was the repair of *Pauls* Cathedral in *London*, which began in 1633, the chief author being *William* Laud then Bishop of *London*; wherein not only vast sums of money were exhausted; but also, through the toy (omnesse of the work, many poor men exhausted their

Anno 1632  
of Christ  
to 1638.

their strength in drawing up huge stones from the water side like horses: But before this magnificent Temple could be finished, the saying of Ecclesiastes overtook it, *There is a time to build, and a time to pluck down.*

In this year also on the eleventh of February, happened that lamentable and grievous fire on London-Bridge, which (by the judgment of many) had not the hand of God been seen in the sudden turning of the wind, (which before drave it toward the City) when it came to the bottome of Fish-Street-hill, would have proved the desolation of London, there being so much fit fuell in the adjacent street for the fire to feed upon. *As London then escaped a great, and since, no small dangers; so let her take heed of abusing too much her breathing time, and day of Visitation: For though either Places, Person, or Persons, have been once and again delivered, yet they cannot sing a perpetuall safety unto themselves.* For we see that *Charles* the late King, (who when he went, in his Princedome, with *Buckingham* into Spain, being in no small danger, is said to have kissed *English* ground as a token of his safe arrivall); and afterwards in the ninth year of his reign 1633. (in which year he went into *Scotland* and was Crowned) hardly escaped the hands of one *Arthur* a Dominican Frier of *Spain*, from being murdered by him) after many tossings and rumblings, hopes, and fears) went headlesse to his Grave, not dying a natural death.

Also in the year 1632, Lord *Wentworth*, afterwards Earl of *Stratford*, was made Deputy of Ireland, and the year following, 1633, September the nineteenth, *William Laud* carried up from the London-See, to the Arch-bishoprick of Canterbury. But if the one had been then made but Justice of the Peace, (as he afterwards said, when too late, he should desire to be no higher) and the other but Parson of some private Parish; whatever weight the lesse might have layen on their Souls, yet in regard of their bodies, as an untimely death might have been prevented; for that of the Historian is many times verified. *Ubi maxima fortuna, ibi minima licentia.* That is, *where there is the greatest worldly fortune, there is the least liberty.*

The year following, 1634. (besides divers Patents and Monopolies of Commodities in the Land, that had been granted to divers particular men under the Kings broad Seal) *Nov* Attorney Generall to the said King of England, set on foot the Tax of Ship-money, thinking thereby to do his master good service; but the event proved quite contrary, for it being an unpresidented thing; *Esquire Hamden*, esteemed by many a good Common-Wealthsman, refused to pay, and maintained a suite against the King, bringing the Case to Triall in Westminster Hall, whereby the people of the Nation were the more incited, as opportunity served, to vindicate what they believed to be their liberties. This *Attorney Nov* died the very same year, the ninth day of August, after

Anno 1632  
of Christ  
to 1638.

The King of France, in the year 1632, in his progresse from the Mountain Pessula, was afflicted with a stormy Tempest of three dayes, and on the fourth of October, being almost under the open Ayre without covert, the waters of two Rivers meeting together, he was hardly pluckt out of them, but 116 persons of his company were lost, with the Kings household-stuffe: *God is* (we see) *no respecter of persons.*

Also the Duke of Lorrain this year, who was alwaies of the Austrian party, is beaten by the Argentines; he also (on sundry occasions) falls into the displeasure of the French King, and is oftentimes reconciled again. *Things of light substance are soon hot, soon cold.*

This year also in *Gotze*, 600 houses, with the Temple of the Lady *Margaret*, are destroyed by fire; And the Isle of *Malta* in 1634. is desaced by the flame: and the houses of the *Venetians*, with some Warehouses, or Cottages do burn.

But on the Tower of *Stockholm*, in *Swetland*, at the very same space of time that they fought the pitched battell at *Lusfa*, and eight now comming on, was seen two maids, the one bearing a burning Torch, the other a handkerchief, or neckerchief cast abroad. Likewise every one of the doors of the Tower, opened thrice of their own accord. A River of an indifferent eminency, for the space of a whole day was dry, that men might passe over dry-shod. And lastly, in *Smaland*, the bells of their own accord sounded. All which things, the issue proved to be fore-tokens of their Kings death.

That we may look a little back on the affairs of *Germany*, *Vinarien* in the year 1635, on the very beginning of January, passeth over the River *Menus* with 12000. Souldiers into *Wetterave*; then the Lievtenant of the Tower being besieged, delivereth up *Herbipolis* unto *Gotze*. But not long after, *Bamberger* of the Emperian party recovereth it again, and *Philippiburg* (which the French had but the year before taken by a stratagem). Whereupon *Oxenstern*, and *Vinarien*, with *Grafse* the French Ambassadour, do enter into new consultations about matters, at *Winbhem*; and in the mean time, by the law of requitall, they had news brought them, that *Braunfels* was come likewise under their power by a stratagem. The King of *Hungary* having gathered together no lesse then 23000, indeed suffered some losse at *Altorp*; but yet *Spira* being surrendered, he makes a bridge over *Rhene*, and troubleth *Heydelberg*. Where the *Swedes* did recover (*Oh the uncertainty of humane affairs!*) *Spira* for the French; then the Emperians come in a hostile manner out of *Wetterave*, and *Hasse*, into *Rhingatze*. And in the mean time the Count of *Embsen*, by the help of *Metternich*, takes *Trevire* into possession. And *Galasse* subdueth *Angusta* of the *Vindolians* by starving it, but *Lamboy*, *Coberge* by force, and the French take for his part, the *Telline* Valley, (the place, whence *Joane* called the maid of *Orleance*, came

Anno 1631  
of Christ  
to 1638.

to the relief of *Orleanse*, when besieged by *Henry* of *England*, as was specified above in the Account) at unawares.

The Duke of *Neuburg*, whether through fear, or love of peace, earnestly desires, in the midst of these shakings, to stand as a Neuter, but it seems that would not be suffered; for *Lunenburgick* the Swedish Commander, at the Mountain of the Rape-roots, sets down with his besiegers on July the twentieth, before *Neuburg*; and on the 30th day of the same Moneth, it made surrender unto him.

But (nevertheless) the affairs of the *Suedes* were to be bewailed, and sad; So that *Oxenstern* goeth away unto the French, and the *Suedes* had almost solemnized the *Sicilian Vespers* of *Mentz*, unto the French King. *Banner* (at this time) had perished or suffered losse by the laying in wait of *Stalman*: notwithstanding the Legion of *Deckenfeld* (which is a number of Souldiers consisting of 6200 foot, and 730. horse, is overthrown. *Weide* is taken, and *Mansfield* passeth out of the *Colonian* field into *Wetterave*, yet not without Diminishment. So that by this means the Duke of *Neuburg*, as well by forces and strength, as words, recovereth his own again.

The Emperour also at or about the same time, in the year 1635, calls an assembly at *Semprom*. Where he requires a great sum of Money, under more then one pretence, for the carrying on his designs and atchievements, and (either out of simple zeal and love to them, or mixed with Policy, the more easily to accomplish his desire) decreeth the Temples to be restored unto the Catholiques (so called) that were built by their Ancestors; and there receiveth *Elfy*, *Fridlands* Chancellour, (who it appears had been estranged before upon his masters account) into favour. He also strikes a peace (being first well weighed) of the Empire with the Duke of *Saxony* at *Parnedresde*, he garnisheth and strengthneth the same peace, the seditious rude ones of *Syrie* being first appeased, and tamed by his Commander *Swartzburg*, on the twenty ninth and thirtieth of May, at *Prague*, (for all this fair weather of Imperiall correspondency in the forementioned particulars) he being interceded with by the *Saxon* in the behalf of the *Silesians*, as touching a favourable toleration in their Religious Rites, (such is the obstinacy of blind devotion) remains unmoveable. Of which also the Pope was joyful, and had a desire to pacify the French.

This peace made, and confirmed at *Prague*, many or most of the States of *Prague* like of, and accept; Notwithstanding (old friends being loath to part) the *Suedes* cannot be sent away from the *Saxon*, even after a long disputation, and the endeavour of the *Megapolitane*, yea, although the Emperour had written an Order for the withdrawing of the Warfare. But as the *Saxons* were upon going, so other supplies came in the room: for *Vinarien* goes against *Galasse*, beyond *Sare*, and being increased in number through fresh supplies of the French, had beat back *Galasse*, but that

Anno 1631  
of Christ  
to 1638.

that *Landfall* had afforded succour to this; and terror to the other. However he freeth *Mentz* from besieging, and frames a bridge, attempting some other matter. But in his return through *Vveßer* unto *Metz*, *Galasse* following after him, although below him in forces, he gives him an overthrow; yet at *Sare* he passeth not over without slaughter, and in a French field, refresheth his tattered Army. To speak of all particular passages, would be too tedious, and not agreeable to the former Account. But then, above eighty thousand of the Emperians, under the command of three Captains, *Galasse* and *Grane*, with the Duke of *Lorraine*, were seen ready to invade France, and encamping at *Masfer* and *Rambervill* of *Lorraine*, they, with the French, and also *Vinarien*, are tormented with hunger. And at that time the *Lorrainer* destroyeth no less than 400 Villages on the borders of France, with Fire.

*Craze* also (who in the year 1633. was offended and offensive to *Fridland*) in this year 1635. in the Moneth of May followes him even in the same kind of death, with the Sword, (*Thus death ends these Earthly Controversies*). And one *Scaffgub* eight daies after, followed him, both at *Vienne*; where also in the same Moneth, a horrible Tempest with Lightning burnt the Scotch Tower unto the Stones, and with the fervency of the flame, melted the Bells. The *Saxon* (being of a friend become an enemy) about the same time, joyneth together with the Emperours forces at *Sandave* in *Silesia*.

So that in the year following 1636. in divers places there was cruel and raging war on both sides. For *Kniphuse* his weapons, the *Suede*, and the weapons of *Ludersbeyme* the Emperian, glittered, and made *Westphalia* to shine; and on the very first day of January, do assault one another with mutuall slaughter and destruction. Then *Cratesteyn* of *Kniphuse*, and *Gelen* of *Ludersbeyme*, undergo the same changes, and take their warlike turn. Also one *Klusing* was not wanting in his endeavours for the Emperours party, who notwithstanding being unprosperous in barrel, leads away into *Silesia*, and was forced to deliver up the Province unto *Gace*.

*Banner*, aloft, carrieth about the chief of the Swedish Arms, and suddenly passeth over the River *Albie*, and making four assaults on *Berby*, at the fifth onset takes it; He subdueth *Misne*. Yet (that he might not boast too much) he yieldeth two Legions (no lesse) unto *Baudissine* the *Saxon* (with whom *Hatsfield*, together with *Alsfeld*, had joyned the Emperian Auxiliaries) to be beaten. So also *Magdeburg* is lost to him, with *Bernburg*, whilst that he overthroweth *Isawlsk* at *Sandersleve*, and takes the Fort of *Winfenne*; but departing in a more calm manner through *Marchia*, at *Wittstock*, he obtains a plentiful Victory of the *Saxons* and Emperians, or *Saxons* turned Emperians, where about the middle of September, he scattered them, took away all their Guns, Carriages, Bag, and Baggage, and quitted them of the field. From hence he goeth

Anno 1632  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

eth away to scourge *Thuringe*, and at the length, in the height of December threatening *Erford* with fire and sword, he obtains it. When as he besiegeth *Mansfield*, the which made not surrender untill the year 1639, in the Moneth of Aprill, he chased the Saxons running thither to help it; and moreover he added *Naumberg*, and *Torgave*, with other places unto a heap of Victories.

The Duke of *Saxony* (to make yet hotter work) calls forth his Countrey-men that stayed behind (by a publique Letter) out of the *Swedish* Camps, and together with the Emperians, he recovereth *Havelberge*, and *Ratherave*, and after the strengthening of the Garrisons of *Pomerania*, he calls away *Marazine*, and so granteth his Army and their enterprises unto the Emperour, to be passed over into the hand of *Haisfield*. And then the Emperour thought a little after, in requitall of the *French* as we may suppose to invade *France*, and to extend the seat of war beyond the bounds of *Germany*, to which end he had proclaimed assemblies for Election of Officers. Wherefore the *Lorrainer* makes assault on *Burgundy*, where the Prince of *Condy* being at the siege of *Dole* (at his approach) betakes himself unto a voluntary flight: and also four of the Emperours Commanders, *Galasse*, *Lamboy*, *Merce*, and *Isolanc*, trouble *French-Burgundy*, untill *Vinarien*, being joyned with *Valetiane*, the *French* Commander, taking *Rambervill*, and some other places first, scattered the Emperians, whereby they were called back again, without doing any thing that might be said worth their labour, and so fit down at *Dresenbeyne*, at the lower *Alsasia*, which is on the left bank of *Rhene*, onely besieging *Hagenoe* by the way.

This year also the Emperour gave a *Tartarian* Embassadour a hearing, who promiseth him aids, though undetermined what; but he kept him from his Countrey, either as a sawcy Guest, or an enemy.

He alloweth also the Garrison of *Strasslave* for defence unto our Earl of *Strundell*, going over this year, in the name of the *Brittain* King, to require a restoring of the *Palsgrave*: he had a courteous hearing at *Lince*, but more courteously sent away; words and complements are but Wind. Was he ere the sooner restored?

*Gelsen* runs in the year 1637, with evil successe upon *Wrangle*, and *Fance* bends into *Silecia*, that he might oppose *Wrangle*, who endeavoured to compass *Custrine*; and in the mean while *Bannier* was necessitated to forsake *Lipsia*, that was ready to yield, because *Haisfield*, *Galasse*, and *Gace* being sent for, ran thither, out of the *Jenian* ground that had been laid waste. He takes a Fort that lay against *Wittenberg-bridge*, (although (the ball being so tossed on both sides) he held it scarce two moneths space) that he might draw back the Emperians from *Erford*; the which the *Saxon* supposed was wholly besieged. But at *Torgave* he is encompassed

Anno 1632  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

compassed with no lesse than ninety five thousand Warriours; And yet, (see how discord weakeneth!) through the contention of the besiegers, he slips forth, even to *Landsberg* and *Custrine*. The *Saxon* bestirring himself, makes (what by force and policy) a Fort and two other places his own, while the Emperians vanquish three more, *Wolgast*, *Damnine Town*, and *Luneburg*, a Field-Commander; but *Bannier* stronger than he, retakes *Werbene* Fort from the Saxons, afterward being partaker of a supply from *Wolline*, he had escaped, drawing after him 30000, and at last goeth in an afflicted condition into *Silecia*. Thus the Proverb is fulfilled, *Tours to day, and Ours to morrow*.

Before I go any farther, let me take notice of a Comet that in 1633 hung over *Barcelona's* head, in shape like a Lance. If any thing of that kind signifie, surely a sad token; especially being of such an unusual and warlike form: So that we may adde to that Philosophical Observation, (which is

*'Ouis aquerus, ipis è xanx phis.*

*There's Comet none, which brings not evils dread)*

this, *How much more, like a Lance when he doth spread?*

Also of three Marriages solemnized, the one in 1634, by *Christian* the 5th of *Denmark*, King, with *Magdalene Sybill* daughter to the Duke Electour of *Saxony*, at *Copenhagen*, on the 5th of October, the other the year following 1635, at *Vienna*, where *Maximilian* Duke, Elector of *Bavaria* took to wife, *Marian* of *Austria*, the Emperour's sister. Also *Uladislans* King of *Poland* in 1637, couples to himself *Cicill Renate* the Arch-Dutchess, at *Vienna*, his brother representing him. In which year also a Plague passed through all *Germany*, with the United Provinces of the Low-Countreys. *Hot Anger*.

Which *Polander* had, on the third of January this year 1635, crossed into *Thuronia*, and *Garde* the *Swede* hath under his banners sixty thousand footmen, and four thousand horsemen, in *Bomissia*, and was attentively heedful on his opportunity; but a peace comes in between them, in the height of July, for a league of twenty four years. But how I pray was this league kept? have they not fought since? What then was this great shew for? Nay, is not the *Swede* at this day preparing for fear of him, and the 24 years are not yet up? All this then was little better than

*The King of France with forty thousand men  
Went up a hill, and so came down agen.*

Yet this it appears, *Polands* peace, afforded a very ravenous mercenary homebred Souldier both to the *Swede* and Emperour, some taking one side, some another, according to their loose affections, or where was best pay; and herupon the King of *Hungary* besiegeth



Annæ 1633  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

siegeth, Heidelberg, Hannove, and other places, his father the Emperour takes Luteca by force and slaughter, Landstall by craft.

But the French King (great danger accompanying great worldly honour) was laid in wait for, in 1635, at three several places, Paris, Nance, and Abbevil, but the adversaries attempts were frustrated; whereupon three were committed to a slavish imprisonment *Pylawence, Forgysse, and Monpenser*: Having proclaimed war against the Spaniard, amongst other achievements, he overcometh him at Hoy (*Casillian* being General there) with an extraordinary advantage, there being 5000 of the Spaniards, and but 100 of the French slain: there were also taken then by the French, three of great note, *Ferrian, Charls* of Austria, and *Ladro*, besides twelve Captains, who afterwards, two of their keepers being by reward corrupted, made an escape. And in the year 1637, they make great preparations against the triumphing scorn of their enemies; and the French King maintains the two Islands of *Margaret* and *Honoratus* (being it seems of great concernment to his affairs) with great might and main. The Emperour's forces also invading Burgundy, he drives them out of that Province, where he vanquisheth the Temple of [Love] so called. Love indeed is alway conquered, but doth not conquer, where the sword bears sway. But from the Rhetians he heard no good news, for two reasons, because the Souldiery was not paid off; and (no wonder) because the Roman devotions were brought back again, with a suppression of these of a contrary opinion, the Duke of Rhovan much labouring therein.

The English King frames a huge Fleet in 1637, as it was then said, for restraining, or subduing the Sea. But whether there might not be some other end in it; for he intercedes that year with the Emperour, in the behalf of the Palatinate; And (it seems the Spaniards were then in the English books) makes a stop of the Hollanders at Plymouth, for spoiling the Spaniards. Again he trimms and prepares a Navy in 1637, and 'twas questioned by some, whether to restore the Pallgrave by foul means, seeing fair would norder? or to subdue his own subjects upon occasion at hand? We may think the latter; for after that *Barton, Prym, and Bastwick* had received their last Censure from Archbishop *Laud* in the Star-Chamber, (for the two last of these had been censured before in 1634, Febr. 12th.) on Jan. the 14th of this year 1637; (for writing against the pride and corruption of Prelates; scourging with a sharp Pen Stage-Players and their abettors; speaking against men given to change from better to worse, according to that expression in the *Proverbs*, by turning inward sincerity into outward Ceremonies: which word *Ceremony*, takes its derivation either from the Latine word *Cavendo*, because they are least wanted; or from the Greek, *ἐκ καὶν ἰσχυρῶς*, that is, to endure but for a time, and so was to give place unto, and not be brought in place of the true worship;) and on the 30th day of the same

Annæ 1633  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

same January had stood in the Pillory and lost their ears, and afterwards were sent away remote from London, and from each other, as was thought, unto perpetual imprisonment. And not onely in England, but about six moneths after sending a book of Liturgy, so called, into Scotland, to be imposed on them, that were generally lesse able to bear it: and thereupon the Scots first Petitioning the King against it in the October following, and the same moneth entring into a Covenant against that and such other things; the King (in whose name and authority all things were carried on) might well see a storm arising, and so make preparation; which, although, at first, it was but as *Elijah's* cloud, like a man's hand, yet it grew to such an over-flowing scourge, as both Nations have since most sadly experienced.

The Spaniard, amongst the rest, keeps doing; he besiegeth *Philippine* (that he had lost in 1633) in 1635, yet to no purpose; yet as he gets not that: So he renders the siege of *Leody* by *Orange* and *Casillon*, void. He loseth of his Neapolitan Navy, by a tempest, nine Oar-Galleys, fifteen bigger ships, with six thousand men of war, this year: and at *Lisbone* ten Gallies with Oars, and 30 sailing Vessels, with 6000 men of war.

The Dutch warr but slowly this year 1636; but in 1637, although they lost *Gresling* Fort by subtilty, it being, as it were, wrung out of their hands, yet they, after they had attempted *Hulst*, besiege *Bredah* with labour and difficulty, and constrain the Spaniards to yield, being nothing discouraged at the losse of *Ymblo*. To cheer their hearts, they hear about this time good news from *Nassave*, that they had sent before into America, and receive great ships laden with Gold, Ivory, Copper, Pepper, Sugar, and Scarlet wood.

But the Turks and Persians also contend (in 1635) in battel; the Turks took the Town called *Rava*, from the Persians, not by storm, but surrender; and in the battel were slain 90000 Turks, 20000 Persians; and yet the Turk was the Conquerour, because the more numerous. Then he burns four Villages belonging to *Buda*, and kills fifty poor mortals, and carryeth away seventy into slavery; when as the moneth of August before he had almost burn'd down *Buda* it self with fire. Behold the desolations of the Earth, for want of the King of Peace to rule!

Before I conclude this Chapter, I cannot but take notice of some remarkable Prodigies and Accidents that fell out in divers places in 1634, and 1635: An Eagle at Frankford of Menus, cast down in a leaden bowl. England shook and trembled, about London, a Marsh there boyling with black waters, &c. At *Tor-rance*, water turn'd into blood. At *Witteberg* it rained brimstone; with divers other like. There fell Hail of three pound weight in a field of *Wormsade*, in 1636. At Paris in their religious Pilgrimages, a bridge brake as they passed over, thirty were choaked, eighty hurt. At *Dusseldorp* three hundred barrels of Gunpowder took fire in a house, and laid fifty adjacent houses level; all

Anno 1633  
of Christ,  
to 1638.

all the people thereof had almost some hurt; and a brass Gun is cast abroad, off from a bullwark that was on the other side the River Rhene; in 1635, an Earthquake in Messina, the Vesuvian Mountain is again in a flame; and at the latter end of this year the Swedes lost 30 ships by a storm. There was also great companies of foreign birds, and madness of dogs at *Straubinge*. And lastly, (which is almost incredible, yet all things are possible unto God) one *Daniel Becker* telleth of a man whose name was *Andres Grunbeyd*, living in a place called *Grunevald*, seven miles from the City *Regimont*, who on the 29th day of May, 1635, going about to cast out his nauseousness, or that which he had a desire to vomit up, before noon, lets a knife into his throat, to that end, above the breadth of ten fingers in length, and suffering it to slip out of the tops of his fingers, it sticking there fast, nor sliding back again, although he were lifted upright on his head; moved it forward by drinking Beer or Ale. The Physicians of Regimont come to this man on the 9th of July following, which was above five weeks after, and they open his skin, flesh, and stomach it felt, they draw out the knife, and restore the mangled, wounded man to health, who also afterwards married, and begat Children.

There is a time to live, and a time to dye; Death [*æquo pede pulsant pauperum tabernus, Regumq; turrets.*] knocks alike at Princes Pallaces, as Poor mens Cottages. There dyed in the year 1632, *Maurice* Lantgrave of Hesse, *Sigismund* the third, King of Poland, as abovesaid. *Leopold* Arch-Duke of Austria, *Tilly*, the Emperour's General at Ingolstadt of a wound; also *Papenheim*, another of his Captains, in the battel at *Lutzen*, where the King of Sweden, *Gustavus*, was slain: As also *Nicolas Horn* one of his Captains dyed; the Dutcheffs of Lorraine, Cousen-german to the Emperesse; *Charls* Prince of Spain. Also *Frederick* Elektor Palatine on the 19th of November, with others. *John Casimir*, Duke of Saxony, the 16th of July, 1633, departed from the living, whose brother *John Ernest* succeeded him. Famous *Isabel*, called Governesse of Belgium, Novemb. 21. *Ulrick* son of the Danish King, by lyings in wait in Silesia. *Lunaburgick*, at Cella, &c. *James Dubald*, who was a faithfull General of the Swedes, at Silesia. The Archbishop of Bremen. *Otto Ludowick* Count of Rhene, who fell sick through crossing a River, and fear of an approaching enemy; these three in 1634, with others. Moreover, two brothers of the King of Poland fulfilled their dayes in 1635. *Casimir* of Padua; and *Alexander* of Misse; *Frederick Nisse* Counsellour to the Emperour's Court, in 1636. But in the year 1637, on the Nones of Febr. *Ferdinand* the second, Emperour of Germany, being in the 59th year of his age, after all firings, dyed of a Dropsie, that is, a waterish disease, in the the 19th year of the Empire; in which year also danger of death, as he was going to Prague, is threatened to him by an Italian privy murthrer. Also *Boleslaw* Duke of Pomerania, the 14th of that name. Cardinal

*Basmanne.*

*Basmanne.* Alcan, Lievtenant of Mediolum in a journey. In England, Attorney General *Noy*, Aug. the 9th, 1634, as abovesaid.

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1643.

These came to untimely deaths by punishments. Duke *Montmorence* Lievtenant of French Narbony, who for falling off to the Kings brother, was beheaded at Tolouse, either on the third. Kal. November, as above in the Account; or on the 17th of October, as others, in 1632. Five Tribunes or Maiors, with other Governours, and eight Senatours were beheaded at Pilsene by the Emperour, in 1634, about the busiess of *Fridland*; but four Maiors separated or pardoned by favour. Likewise this year the Governour of *Fridberg* was beheaded, for yielding up a Castle. Also *Schaffgotsch* (as abovesaid) and *Schaffenberg* were beheaded by the Emperour in 1635. Finally, at Rome, the Marques of *Bolognien* was beheaded for Libels or litle books spread abroad, and his household-servants hanged, in 1636.

## CHAP. II.

Of warlike Passages and other memorable things that fell out in Germany, Britain, and other parts; Ferdinand the third being Emperour, and Charls the first, King of England.

From the year of Christ 1638, to 1642.

**F**erdinand the second being deceased; the year following, 1638, The Swedish party (whether through the force of warlike valour, or partly occasioned by the Emperour's death) proceeded against their Adversaries with great successe. For both the Duke of *Vinarien* returning suddenly and unthought of, out of Burgundy, unto Rhene; and also a little after, the Swedish forces being brought back unto the Baltick Sea, performed divers noble Exploits.

The occasion of his sudden return thither, was the news that he heard, of about 14 Brigandines, or Coats of crust of clay made to cast off the water, that were placed in Rhenes banks, to have yielded through the power of *werth*. After his coming, he besieged *Rheinfield*, and fighting his enemies in two battels, being overcome, at length he overcometh, and took prisoners of war, *werth*, *Enkford*, *Spareutea*, *Frußenberger*, with other Captains, and *Savell*, who deceived his keepers, by slipping away in an old womans habit: unto this place, by incredible enforcement of endeavour, and conquest, he subdueth *Fridburg*, a Town or City of Brisgove, and he laid traps for *Brisack* Lord of the Rhene, to hinder it from provision, in as much as he knew the old store of victual was bestowed on the Army, and that himself might be able to stop the new. Whereupon two great Emperian Commanders, *Gerc*, and the Duke of Lorraine run to help; but both with ill luck and slaughter;

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1642.

laughter: of which also *Lamboy* putting in for an opposer, made himself a partaker. And both parties (what about bringing in victual, destroying a bridge, and spoiling and overthrowing each others Camps) fought most sharply, for the space of 4 moneths, with a doubtful event of War and losse; but the *Vinurue* Duke kept them so long in play, untill that most fortified place, through most cruel famine, of which one thing alone, (and that enough) it knew the force, came to yield. But this place cost hot water, consuming on both sides, above 80000 men; and spent the Conquerour of the Imperialists 100000 pounds; which charge or principal summe, nevertheless, being taken, my author tells me, is restored with a most large usury. Then at the aforesaid Baltic Sea; these Swedes were altogether dreadful to their enemies, both defensively and offensively: For they courageously defend *Rugye* against the Emperour's forces; and having increased their own forces, wring (as it were) Gartise out of the hand of the Duke of *Brandenburg*; and from the Saxon Warbnian, *Wolgast*, besides a Castle: and being suddenly overcharged in their most wary legions, they, in a military fury, rattle or cast to the ground, or both, *Malzbine* and *Bernave*.

While, or a little after, that the Emperour courted the King of Poland with sumptuous entertainment at *Vienne*, and most courteously receiveth the Duke of Saxony, with his sons at *Leutmerice*, sends an Embassy by *Eggenberg* unto the Bishop of Rome; and on the day before the Ides of December, undergoeth perill in hunting, the vehement force of a wind throwing down Trees; the Duke of Lorrain fights stoutly, throughout Burgundy, Alsatia, and Lorrain; but partly (as may be well supposed) through his bearing ill-will to *Gere*, by reason of emulous strife, the mother of confusion, he is often beaten; whereby also the said *Gere* being disarmed, was by *Mansfeld* brought before the Duke of Bavaria to render an account of his ordering the warfare; and in which he gave him satisfaction. But the said Duke of Lorrain, (who although he held Espinal and other places, that were judged to be of great concernment, either to withdraw from or overcome *Vinurn* at *Brisack*, yet he prevailed nothing, as above mentioned; Being himself dispersed at *Thanne*, was constrained to betake himself into a Wood, out of which (by a witty device, to wit, small ropes being made of shrubs, and hung upon every side, by the light of fire-balls when they are cast) he by night brought forth all, one by one. There being also some Ecclesiasticall tumult (as I may so speak) about this time at *Brenes*, about a Cathedral, which their new Archbishop had given unto the lovers of his sect.

But the Swedish forces, the year following also 1639, lustily attack *Mars* his part, when as the Emperour's forces did but little execution; for after the Duke of Viburn had *Brisack* surrendered unto him, he takes *Landisferone*, and mustering 10000, goes away into Burgundy to winter: neither was he there idle, but by great endeavour

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1642.

endeavour subdueth *Pontarby*, and almost all *Burgundy*, he takes into possession the narrow passages, even unto *Storace*, and obtaineth the Cattle of *Jaux*, the losse of which the Lieutenant or Governour purged away with the losse of his head; the *Spaniard* also a long time after besieging it, but in vain. And at length *Thanne*, (with two Temples of *Hippolytus* and *Claudius*) where the *Lorrainer* had been scattered, being subdued, recruiting his Army, he sets forward for upper Germany, but soon breathed his last, as is thought, by poyson. Whereupon the top of affairs was committed to the guidance of four persons, *Erlach*, *Otto* Earl of *Nassau*, *Rost*, and *Oebeme*; whom, that the French King (who it seemeth stood in as much, or more need of the Swedes friendship, and assistance, than the other did of his) might make his own, (whether they loved him not, or suspected him) he encounters them with a great summe of Money, and reneweth his League with the States of High-Germany, also a Generall of the Army being added in *Vinurue's* room. But in the mean time these four Directors draw down unto the lower parts, where they possesse *Bungye*, *Oppenheyne*, with other places, and passing over the River *Rhene*, meeting with *Geleen* the Emperian, are beaten by him in *Rhingave*; from whence going unto the land of the Archbishop of *Triers*, or *Trevera*, by reason of the enmities of *Capitulum*, which being a City in Italy, I cannot learn what the ground of that enmity should be, they use it in a hostile manner.

That I may not exceed the nature of this Account, let me include *Bansier's*, with other Swedish exploits of this year 1639, in few words. The one, not preferring *Lipsia*, takes *Zwiscave Chemnitz*, and *Altenburg* into his possession, also attempting *Freyburg* again and again, to no purpose; but he subdueth *Pirnave*, *Aufsig*, and *Leutmerice*, with *Tetschschine* Castle. Then being increased by *Tortenon*, gets a victory at *Qvemmise*, where he takes thirty foot, and twenty Horse Ensigns, besides Prisoners of War, and (pursuing his Victory) follows *Fruftenberger* into *Bohemia*, he quickly snatcheth *Melnuise*; and *Brandise*, he fights again, and takes two great Emperians, *Hoffkirch*, and *Montscule*. But withall he receiveth no small check, in seeing four legions (in snatching after all warlike necessities) to be dispersed by the Hungarians; notwithstanding he conquers again at *Johnsbrade*; where, through lust or inordinate desire, his men had almost tumulted. While the other Swedish parties are bringing under *wolflag*, and *Halle*, *wiangell* a Major, comes to them with 300 men, having before fallen off unto the Duke of *Brandenburg*. Also *Axel Lilly*, subdueth *Dammun*, *Hornburg*, and *Mawise* his Castle. Likewise other Captains take *Burgsdorffe*, the Duke of *Brandenburg* his chief Captain, and *Bernave* a Town, the second time. Then *Koningsmari*, conquering at *Duderstade*, makes that Town, together with *Gleydensteyne*, and *Glettenburg*, his own, yet being busied elsewhere, was thrown out of *Bilefeld*. *Lily Holk*, and *Lily Spart*, cowering, make,

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1641.

make five Towns acknowledg *Sweithland*, whereof *Frankford* was one; two Towns, *Dreife*, and *Benzen*, are taken with the slaughter of the Saxons, with some other things, *que nunc perscribere longum est*.

The Emperour performed little, therefore I will briefly recite his deeds. He calls *Hatsfield* into *Bohemia*, and conferreth the highest command on the Arch-Duke, he also encourageth the Saxon to subdue *Tirnate*, that *Bannier* had taken a little before, and he attempteth it often, but in vain, as also *Altrville*, yet, not unstouly bestirring himself at *Mayburg*, he brings his *Grisons* unto certain laws or conditions. The Emperour also sends away the Duke of *Brandenburg* into *Livonia*, where his Men under the command of his Captain *Hermanne Bottje* are scattered, and *Bottje* himself taken. He commands *George* Duke of *Lunaburg*, to restore him *Hildesse*, that *Koningsmart* had taken from him a little before. Being willing to be rid of *Banniers* company in *Bohemia*, he bids *Ohre* a Major to set upon *Oldendorp*, that for the other might be necessitated to depart thence, for its relief. And lastly makes *Leopold wilhelme* the Arch-Duke, chief Commander of his Horse.

'Tis high time to cast an eye upon the affairs of other Nations, and especially on *Brittain*, *Brittain* I say, which (being environed with the Sea, of so considerable a bignesse, it being reputed, if not the greatest of all, yet save one, the greatest of Islands in the whole World, so fertile for all kind of necessary sustenance, (with contentment) especially *England*, that its inhabitants may live of themselves, without the help of other Countries) is of a temperate climate, and to be accounted amongst the happiest of Regions; and which for a considerable number of years, I do not find had been, so much as in any eminent perill of foreign enemies, unless 'twere in 1588, by the *Spanish* Armado, nor but once in the jaws of death, by an undermining conspiracy of a Powder-Plot, in its own bowels, from both which it received a deliverance by a high hand of providence; Now about the year 1638, begins as was said of *Rome* [*juis viribus ruere*] to fall and undo it self by its own strength: for (after the imposing of many Ceremonies by the *English* Bishops, the Book for sports, and the Pillor-ing and banishment of those three men, mentioned in the former Chapter, the Liturgy enjoyned to the Scottish Nation, and afterwards, on Aprill the eighth, 1638, *John Lilburn* a young man sadly whipped at a Cartstail in *London*, and then pillor'd chiefly for spreading books in *Holland*, or elsewhere in behalf of *William Prin*, and *Doctor Basswick*, the Scots having first engaged themselves by a Covenant, first are disturbed among themselves, (though with relation to what came from *England*) in so much that the Marquesse *Hamilton* their own countreyman and very eminent amongst them, went into *Scotland*, on May the sixth, that by his personall presence, behaviour, threatening, or perswasion, he might appease tumults that were there raised, and so prevent a War

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1641.

War, but however that hindered not their proceedings and some say he raised more dissensions, as having an aim at the Scottish Crown, but about seven-Moneths after, the Earl of *A gile a Highlander*, declared for those that were called Covenanters, and then they took up Arms, and that they might not be first invaded, and prevented of what they had engaged for in their Covenant, do March into *England* with a considerable Army of twenty or thirty thousand, *David Lesley* being General, holding up, as is reported, the Bible, as a token of what they endeavoured to maintain: and coming some miles into the North of *England*, took *New-Castle*, (a noted Town for Sea-Coal) and fortified it as a principle Garrison, and place of retiring. Hereupon without delay, the *English* King, who was King of all *Britain* and *Ireland*, resolving (with his nearest Counsellors, to assist and vindicate, what his Authority had before enjoyned) raiseth an Army nearly proportionable unto the other, fortifying as well by Sea as land, and on the 27th of March, he Marched into the North against them. The Scots went forward to meet the King, though not with displayed banners, and coming in sight, as an humble token, that stubborn rebellion was not the cause of Arming, but rather a constrained necessity for defence and Vindication of their freedom, laid down their Arms on the ground before him. And when both sides were ready to joyn battell (Whether as not willing to strive with their fellow-subjects, or through a fear, at that time, possessing them) the *English* denied to fight; so that there was a necessity of a treaty with them, which began on the tenth of July following, and in eight dayes time was concluded, and the next day after, which was the 18th of July, the Armies began to be disbanded, the Scots had good conditions from the King, as with relation to their Covenant and charges, for such was the bent of their spirits in that business, that without those, they were resolved not to retreat. When the cloud was over the King, soon returned to his house at *Theobalds*, for on the first of August following became thither, and was at his Court at *White-Hall*, on the third day of the same Moneth. This year there were two Parliaments in *Scotland*, the one began on May the fifteenth, and dissolved by the King within a Moneths time: the other on August the one and thirtieth, which sate till Decemb. the 18th, and then was adjourned untill June the second following: I hear not of any great matter done by the first, the time was short; Nor by the second, unless it were to invade *England* the second time. There was also a Parliament summoned in *Ireland* this year, in the latter part of the year by the Earl of *Strafford*, upon his return into *Ireland*, who some few Moneths before, in August, had come into *England*, where he received that Title from the King. This *Irish* Parliament, granted *Strafford* four subsidies indeed, but could do little good to that Common-Wealth, not being so happy, (through the cunning close concealment of the bloudily intended Irish) as to foresee and prevent that cruell and bloody Tragedy, which in a

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1642.

Rebellion within two years after broke forth. The said Earl of *Sarjford* returned into *England* near the beginning of the next year.

The French (*Jamu-like*) in the year 1638, turn their faces with their weapons, two wayes; against the *Spaniard*, and also against the *Lorrainer* with the Emperour's forces. For the king of *France* sends the Prince of *Conde* with a great Army into *Spain*, who serving upon a place called *Fontarabe*, is by the *Spaniard* beaten off from the siege; yet fighting a hurtfull Sea-battel to both sides, he gets the victory, at *Genoa* in Italy; and then vanquisheth a small Castle of *Piccardy*. And in 1639, warring by land against the *Spaniard*, forceth *Hesdin*, a Town of theirs, to yield: but then *Feckier* besieging *Theonsville*, he is repaid with advantage, being overthrown and taken by *Piccolomine* and *Beckye*. When he had besieged a fortified Temple of *Audomare* to no purpose 1638, he notwithstanding beat the Duke of *Lorrain* in Burgundy, the Duke of *Longueville* being chief Commander: Whereupon he vanquisheth two places, *Polignye*, and *Arboese*; And afterwards *Danviller* in the Territories of *Lucemburg*. Then there being a Conspiracy for the betraying, or at unawares taking the City of *Metis* or *Metz* in *Gallo-Belgia*, or *French Germany* (so called, from *Metim* a Roman, who (this City being vanquished by *Julius Cesar*) enlarged and encompassed it with Walls; as the City *Augusta*, was named from *Augustus* that built it;) This French King sent Ayds so sufficiently seasonable (which is the chiefest of prudential time) unto the Duke of *Vinum*, that (before 'twas too late) he hindred that from taking effect. And this year also France began to be too hot to hold the King's or Queen-Mother; King *Lewis* her son not being pleased with her, the enmity against *Ricelieu* the Cardinal, it seems remaining; and the stir of her younger son the Duke of *Orleance*, she not disaffecting: So that she must return thorow *Flanders*, to the *Hollanders*, with much French suspicion, and there not making much stay, came in the same year at the very latter end of *October* into *England*; which coming being even at the very time that the Scots began to arm, was judged by very many of the English, not a little to heighten, if not harden, Kingly opposition; which as it was increased, so the animosity of many subjects there, having an antipathy against many things, was raised also: Contraries never yielding willingly to contraries; but rather (as fire in the coldest weather which scorseth most) take strength against each other. She staying about 9 or 10 moneths time here, returned (not into *France*) out of *England*, rather unto most more welcome, than when she came in; and not very long after departed life.

The young *Palatinate* this year 1638, obtaining some help from the English King his Uncle, musters a Souldiery, and gets to himself *Meppene*, a Town in *westphalia*; but *Harsfield* the great Imperial Commander, scatters and put him to flight; and withall, takes his brother *Robert*, who was in the engagement: but he obtaining

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1642.

taining his liberty from the Emperour in the year 1641, the King of *England* himself had employment for him and his younger brother *Maurice*, in carrying on his War (as chief Commanders) against the *Parliament*. And then (as an addition to the Actions of the Emperour's Forces this year) the said *Harsfield* subdueth *Vella*, a strong place, with labour and toyl.

But the Spanish King also amongst the rest, strikes, this year, on both sides of him: for he on the one hand contends in Italy, and overcometh three places, *Breme*, *Vercella*, and *Pomara*; and in the *Julian* field, *Kerper*. On the other hand, he fights with the Dutch, with the like overthrow; for he punisheth them most grievously at *Antwerp*, whither he defends the *Calloane* Fort, and *Geldre* most valiantly to their losse. And being some-body at Sea, as well as at Land, calls his Duke of *Modena* High-Admiral of three Seas. But (as a curb to a high spirit) the same year, in the very Haven of *Texel*, fourty of his ships perished by a tempest. But in the year following, 1639, *Bellona* or warlike affairs smiled upon him throughout *Piedmont*, a Province of the French: for the Spaniards make first of all the Camp of *Gregui* and *Crescence* their own; then after that, the French, to withstand them, joyning themselves together in the Suburbs of *Taurine*, fought the Spaniard; but although the battle was doubtfull enough, yet the Spaniard added to the other two, the place called *Villa Nova*, or New Village, with three other Towns. And made *Trine*, a Town rich both in provision and plunder, yea and *Taurine* itself, with in Castle, besides two other places, to obey him as a Conquerour. The French King on the contrary, lest he should leave to do nothing against his enemy, by two Leaders possisteth four places, *Chivalse*, and *Salsa* in the County of *Rossilion*, by the Prince of *Conde*; *Lared* and *Anthonie's* Temple, at the *Cantabrian* Ocean in *Biscay*, by the Bishop of *Burdegale*, (whether through valour or policy) he overcometh; and also quickly snatcheth away two ships of *Spain* laden with great spoils. At length both of them tasted the feat or state of warlike weapons in Italy, the which was so wearyed with tossings and tumblings to and fro, that at the latter end of the year *Salsa* was again yielded to the Spaniard. Who doing displeasure to the Traj-Gines of the River *Mose* by Sea, felt the force of the Dutch Fleet in a Sea-fight at *Dunkirk* to his damage, *Martin Trump* being Conquerour; and toward the end of this year 1639, in a far more fierce one, a far greater losse; the Spaniard of 50 ships saving but 15: The two Navies pitching on the English Coast, the English interrupted them.

While these things were acting in Europe, the Turks in Asia vanquished *Babylon* in 1639, which was defended by the *Persians* untill the Besieger slew 40000 of the besieged, but who certainly knoweth what he himself lost? This grand Sultan *Amurath* appoints a Navy to go, as far as the red Sea, against the *Cosjacks*; and runs toward *Breger* in Hungary, devouring the prey; notwithstanding the Plague being in the City *Aleppo*, makes his

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1642.

his Imperiall Majetty to depart the place for fear; all this in 1639.

That I may infer a grain of Hony amongst so much Gall, we may take notice, that in the year 1638, in a piece of ground belonging to Hungary, at the greater Waradine, amongst the rubbith of a burying Chappell destroyed by *Beitlem* Prince of Transilvania, there was a treasure found, with a per-mantle or some such thing, with a diamond in bignesse of a hens egg. I find also three eminent marriages solemnized in these two years: one whereof was between *Francis Charles* Duke of Lawenburg, and the widow of *Beitlem Gabor* the forslaid *Transilvanian* Prince, who dying in the year 1636, (I must recede a little) new troubles arose in *Transylvania*; after that, one *Ragotzy* enjoyed the affairs, *Salmye* of *Beitlem's* family gathering 2000 Souldiers and more, in opposition of him, &c. Thus much in the general. And it is credibly reported, that in the same *Transylvania*, there is a vitible Church, who maintain their orderly succession of Ordinances from the Apostles times, by an administrator of baptism, without intermission. Be it so; yet what is a succession of the form, without the life and power they lived in?

Also of two male-children born into the world; for which there is joy to the travailing mothers; the one to the Duke of *Bavaria*, *Jerome* by name, on the day before the Kal. of Octob. 1638; the other to the Duke of *Lorraine's* brother, named *Ferdinand* born at *Vienne* in 1639. But then again, the Duke of *Brandenburg* passing by, if I mistake not, in *Parentbe*, is smitten with a leaden bullet out of a window, in 1638; the committer of which treacherous fact being thitherto unknown.

By that time I have mentioned two or three things of note, it will be time to proceed unto the actions of the two other years, to be contained in this Chapter. At *Vienna*, the biggest Bell in the City sounded of his own accord, none enforcing it, which to me seemeth not the least of wonders. In the Prince's Court also of the same place, an Eagle of fifteen years old fell down dead: which seems not the least of tokens. And (which is among the greatest of wonderful things) a Chariot with 6 horses, and five that were carried therein, was by the force of the wind cast off from a long bridge into the River *Danubius* of the same *Vienna*. These three in one year, to wit, in 1639.

Money (which is accounted the sinews of War) being wanting to the Emperour; himself, with the Electors, Embassadors, and the Deputies of other States came together at *Norimberg*, in 1640; but there being nothing done at that meeting, there were the same year Assemblies of all ranks summoned at *Ratisbone*, where they treated both concerning raising money for carrying on the Wars, and also, of restoring the administration of Civil Justice in places where they could; which by reason of the wars, must needs have been either abolished, or neglected. For,

Inter

Inter arma silent leges.

where warlike weapons bear command,  
Laws do hold their tongue in hand.

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
1642.

This Emperour, in a special manner, endeavours a peace with the Danish King this year; but lustily encounters the Swedish Forces: for (*George* Duke of *Luneburg* recovering *Steynbruck*, a Town before lost) the Imperialists having *Spork* for their Leader, perform two considerable Services, by beating *Ekard* and *Rose*, two Swedish Commanders; and which is more, by driving *Bannier* out of *Bohemia*: but being somewhat dispersed hereby, they gather their Army together, and sit down at *Salsfield*, and with this second Army they recover *Telchine Castle*: Moreover, forcing *Bannier* to retire himself in the *Lower-Hassia*; but, following him thither, as it seemeth, too hotly, although they were joyned with *Gelen*, *Hase*, *Gonzage*, and *Hatsfield*, they are there scattered. These also vanquish three Towns more, and under the command of *Golze*, force *Hirschberg* in *Silesia* unto a demolishment; the *Saxon* Duke, the Duke of *Brandenburg*, and *Truckmuller*, at three several places with like Martial force, in the mean time earnestly labouring, although in vain, and with slaughter of their men. The Pope amongst all this, being urgently buied to make peace between the Kings.

Those that had been under the command of the Duke of *Finurn*; on the contrary, are not idle, but do divide their company into three parts, possessing *Wetterave*, and spreading themselves in three chief places thereof. The Emperians assault *Bingium*, the which being a place fit for passage or conveyance; the other sharply defend against them; yet at last they lose it: and setting their warfare in order, a heap of battels employing them, they joyn with *Bannier*; and at the latter end of the year, do scatter and beat the Baron of *Bredab* at *Zigenbayne*: where also *Rose*, a Major, takes a French Earl (full of gold and Brigandines) unthought of.

But *Bannier* himself this year 1640, plays *Rik*; he robbed and killed in *Bohemia* in the ways as he went, and beheadeth the Consuls or chief Magistrates of two Towns, *Satze* and *Cade*, together with a Judge: after that, when the Emperour's forces had recovered two garrisons, he sleighting another place, takes speedily, although with some losse, *Plane-Castle*, very full of all sort of victual: thence, while the Emperians overcome *Chemnice*, he departed to *Erford*, and being increased by other Armies, he opposed himself against them, who going forward to *Salsfield*, had there rested with 70 thousand men. His wife now dying, being grieved (when he had first taken *Fulda*, and had heard a voyce in the ayre, *Be gone, Bannier, be gone, for now the time is;*) he went away to *Eschwege*, and then joyns the forces of *Durlace* to himself, whereby

Anno 1638  
at Christ,  
to 1642.

whereby he wrested that honorable Victory at *Homburg* in *Hassia* aforementioned, from the Imperialists; which Conquest, the surrender of *Auenburg* followed; then returning back to *Erford*, he besieged one place, and took another, now ready to strive, if he could, to break into *Bavaria*: Into which to come, he bends himself in the beginning of 1641, and therefore calling to him *Guebrian*, who was the French General of *Vinurn's* Army, breaks thorow by fighting, and takes *Cianice*, as also cloaths appointed for the Emperour's Souldiers. But then letting go *Guebrian* to another place, while he was more secure than ordinary at a place ordained for hunting, that he had taken away from the Duke of *Brandenburg*, he is invaded by the Emperians; and unless *Schlange* of *Neoburg* had, before a Wood, valiantly resisted them, he had been quite overthrow. However, he was forced to redeem his escape into *Bohemia* with the losse of 26 Ensigns, and 1800 horsemen; yet perceiving the Conquerour to follow after him, he calls back *Guebrian*, and, at *Znicate*, is payned with him.

Then again, at the River *Sale*, the chief of warlike matters (and the conclusion of *Bannier*) is joyned, where each party maintain a Bank; *Bannier* toughly, and (as I may say) with his teeth defending his; yet at length being forced to yield, he goeth to *Halberstade*, where voyding much blood and matter, though an impotill time, or breaking of a vein, he put an end to his life, and so to all his toyl and labours; the Voyce, as may be well supposed, that he heard in the Ayre the year before, having reference rather unto this time of his death, than unto the Victory that he got a little after, at *Homburg*. But the Swedish forces (what through this Arch-warriour's death, what through this last repulse at *Sale*) were broken both in strength, and courage: yet not being wholly dismayed, they stand waiting upon the Senate of *Stockholm* for new orders, who commanded *Torstensohn* to undergo, as General, *Bannier's* charge and burden, who having received his Commission, passeth over the River *Albis* with a supply of his own, and joyns with the *Bannierians*; whereby they allayed the spirits of the Emperians that then were hot against them. Notwithstanding they having renewed their League with the Landgrave of *Hesse*, and the Duke of *Luneburg*, break thorow *Wolfebyte*, and (being resolutely bent) they beat and are beaten, untill the Duke of *Luneburg* could passe over unto the Emperour's party; which gave an occasion to the *Bannierians* of moving else-where.

Many places were yielded to the Emperour's Souldiers this year; first the Town *Crusinack* with its Castle; then seven other considerable Cities and Town, with other places of less note. *Dorfiene* (somewhat remote) was after two moneths siege taken. *Einbeck* and also *Clive* were forced to yield, and that with a slaughter of the Hassians who had come for relief; and in the mean time the Duke of *Saxony*, through very much labour and industry brings *Gorlice* under his power. In which year also (being 1641) by the Emperour (at Assemblies held at *Ratisbone* concerning a

right

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1642.

right managing the War, and supplying the said War with ayds) *Edward Duke of Bregance*, the natural brother of the valiant and diligent King in *Portugal*, is committed to custody.

But in *England*, after *Charles King of Britain* was again estranged from the Scots a little after the pacification between them, and had disavowed that Paper which the Scots, avouched to contain the true conditions of the same, and in testimony of his indignation against it, had commanded it to be burnt by the common Executioner, in the year 1639. he told his Privy Councell about the beginning of December, the same year, that he intended to summon a Parliament, or Kingdom's Representative in *England*, (which began on April the thirteenth, in the year 1640) with which the subjects were even filled with hopes of redresses of many things amisse, and almost with wonder, at the having of that, the name of which seemed to be strange amongst them; But their hopes were not answered herein; for the King being very urgent at the said Parliament for money to War a second time with the Scots, and to pay the Army that he had already raised in order thereto, which was to be done by that which they call [*Subsidy*], some Members preferring a redresse of grievances before the other, made speeches to the same purpose: but yet they taking the said Subsidies into consideration, while they were debating the business, the King thinking (it seems) they were not Cordiall therein, and did it with delay, brake them up, on the fifth of May following, which was in the space of three weeks. But after that, he continued the sitting of the Convocation of their Clergy untill May the twenty ninth, (a thing never known so before) who, by his Authority, made Canons, and put Oaths upon some. And on the eighth of July following, the said King had a third son born unto him, named *Henry*, and intituled Duke of *Gloucester*. But the Scots upon new discontents enter *England* the second time, on August the seventeenth, (their second Parliament now sitting again, June the second, that had been adjourned from December the eighteenth, 1639.) against whom the King (having had contributions from the Clergy and others) and issuing out Writs for Ship-money, and other waies undertaken for defraying the charges of the war) set forward toward the North of *England* with an Army, on the twentieth day of the same August, under the command of the Deputy, Earl of *Strafford* (the Earl of *Northumberland*, who was appointed as General, not being in health) where having a fight, or rather a skirmish, at *Newburn*, on the twenty eighth day, and at another place far North, the *English* souldiers, not willing to engage in that cause, and many mutinying against their Officers; the King (who had on September the twentieth, set up his Standard of War at the City of *York*, and his Councill meeting there on the twenty fourth day) by a choice of some Lords of both Kingdoms, to compose the matter, at length came to a cessation of Arms with the Scots upon seven Articles on Oct. the twenty sixth of the same year, untill Decemb. the sixteenth following,

M m m

following,



Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1642.

following, which Armes were not disbanded until the beginning of August following, in the year 1641. In the mean time some *Englisb* Peers and Barons, being somewhat sensible of the condition of their Nation, and what the consequence of this war with their fellow-subjects, might be; do Petition their King to call another Parliament with speed; who seeing a necessity thereof, as well as the Petitioners, acquainted his Councell at *Tork* of his intentions for a Parliament, which should begin on Novemb. the third following, which Parliament (having the same year, Jan. the Eleventh, exhibited a Bill for one to be had every three years, and also May the tenth, in 1641, another bill for their own continuance, untill they were willing to dissolve, unto both which the King signed) sate from November the third, 1640. unto Aprill the 20th, 1653. almost thirteen years, and therefore was by the *Englisb* called the [Long-winded] Parliament. One of the first things this great Councel set upon, was to impeach those whom they judged offenders against the Common-Wealth: the first of whom was the afore-said Deputy of *Ireland*, the Earl of *Strafford*, a deep Politician, who being committed to custody, on the Eleventh day of November 1640. and to the Tower of *London*, the two and twentieth of the same, and began to be tryed in a Pompous and remarkable manner on March the two and twentieth following, upon nine Grand Articles, in the Hall of *Westminster*, whose trial ending April the fifteenth, 1641. was (being by his Judges, adjudged Guilty of High-Treason) beheaded (the King having first signed to his Execution) on the 12th of May of the same year.

Another was, to censure and remove divers Ministers of the Church that were scandalous, or superstitious, and to relieve and recompence those who had been diligent, and Conscientious sufferers.

The Parliament and people of *England* (at this time) loving the Scots, because they looked on them as instruments, (by opposing the King) of procuring this means of their redresse, Commissioners from *Scotland*, had acceptable residence in *London* on the 19th of November 1640. the Parliament on the twelfth day of the same Moneth, before their coming thither, having by Vote ordered the Scots, in part of 300000 lb. no lesse then 100000 lb. to be payed them, for supplying their losses and necessities. At the latter end of which Moneth, *Pryn*, and *Burton*, and within a Fort-nights time, *Balwick*, who had three years before, suffered as abovesaid, were brought with triumph into the City from exile, about which time also there was Petitioning by the Londoners, against, not onely the misdemeanors, but the very standing of the Bishops of their Church; and *William Laud*, Arch-Bishop of *Canterbury*, was on the eighteenth day of December 1640. by the Great Councell of the Kingdome, sequestred from all his dignities, and (to the Kings grief) committed, first into the hands of the Usher of the upperhouse, which they call the black Rod, and on the

Anno 1645  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

the eight and twentieth day of January following, unto a closer confinement in the Tower of *London*: and afterwards in the Moneth of November, 1641. there being tumults of the Citizens of *London*, in the midst of which, they declared against, and threatened the Bishops; twelve of whom (having protested against the validity of the Parliaments votes in their absence, the which, they said, the danger of the tumultuous occasioned) were accused thereupon of High Treason; ten whereof were sent Prisoners to the Tower, the other two to the black Rod. Amongst these things the *Britisb* King espoused his eldest daughter *Mary*, unto *William of Nassau*, son of *Henry* Prince of *Orange* in the year 1640 and the said young Prince coming to *London* on Aprill the twentieth 1641. (the Parliament being pleased with the marriage, the States of *Holland's* Ambassadors, make fair proposals to the King) was with great solemnity married unto her on the second of May, the same year, (he being then not above ten years of age, and the Prince about sixteen.

The king also took a journey this year, on August the tenth, into *Scotland* (the Parliament intreating his longer stay, by reason of the kingdomes occasions). Which proved a hinderance unto *Englands* affairs. And although the kings end of going at that time, was not by the *Englisb* understood, yet a Scottish Writer saith, (for it was about the time of the two Armies disbanding) it was secretly to engage them against the *Englisb* Parliament by large and fair promises, and also to take some Noble men of *Scotland* out of the way, whose willingness therein he suspected. But in the mean time, on October the three and twentieth, 1641. the conspiracy of the *Irish* in *Ireland* (so long kept close) broke forth in a most bloody manner against the *Englisb*, and Protestants there, so that in two Moneths space, (besides many great and grievous torments, and spoylings of worldly goods and estates) were murdered no lesse, (as is credibly reported) then 200000 Souls. Amongst other places of strength, the Castle of *Dublin*, *Ireland's* Mother-City, and that kingdomes chief Magazine, was to be seized on this very day; but by a Countreyman of their own, servant to an *Englisb* knight, through a providential relation over-night, by *Mac-Mahone*, of some passages unto him, it was discovered; whereby this *Mac-Mahone*, and *Maguire* an *Irish* Lord, were suddenly apprehended, who afterwards suffered death in *England* for the same, the *Irish* being on the first of January following, openly proclaimed Rebels; and the *Englisb* Parliament, taking what care they could (in so sudden a case) for supplies against them.

But on January the third (next after the said king returns from *Scotland*, which was on November the twenty fifth, on which day he was with pompous solemnity, and costly equipage received into *London* by the Citizens) he exhibited seven Articles of High Treason against six Members of that representative, (chiefly moved hereto as some say, by his Queens being begun to be accused about the troubles of *Ireland*) and the day following came personally



Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1641.

nally into the Lower-house, (two or three hundred armed men attending him) and sitting down in their Speaker's Chair, demanded five of their Members; but they having absented themselves upon information, and that house judging the King to have broken their privilege thereby, he being urged as for other things, so for that he could not have his will on those men; the people also flocking to Westminster in great throngs, from discontent, took (as he thought) a just occasion to depart from the City unto an house of his about 12 miles from London, called Hampton-Court, on the very 10th day of the same Jan. 1641; Who (being petitioned for the Militia on the 27 day, to be put into the Parliaments hands, which he refused,) after divers movings from place to place, came, at length, on March 19th, unto York, where we found him, when he first divulged his intent of summoning this Parliament, with whom now he was discontented. Who also had this year published a Law for the restoring the *Palatine* his Couzen, (in whole place, his father being dead, the Danish King is set) but to little or no purpose, beginning to have enough to do at home. *nivales* also, a dominion belonging unto *England*, being in the year 1640, what with Sea and rain waters, almost drowned, which may be accounted a presage of the misery, that for some few years overpread, and almost overwhelmed that Nation.

The French King, in the mean time, minds his own affairs, taking care to have two places (concerning Germany) fortified, *Brisack* and *Rheinfield*; and gives increase unto *Vincent's* Army under the command of *Guebrian*; yet looseth *Salse*; these in 1641. But against the Spaniard the same year he prevails not a little; for they besieging *Casale*, he beats them off, and stripping them of their Camps, obtains a prey to the value of 60 thousand Duckets, which was for the Souldiers pay; the other almost inestimable, for there was a lofty Charriot that cost (it self) 8000 Duckets. They fight again at *Pade*, where the French had the masterdome, and gets *Taurine* by surrender. Moreover, he performed a notable piece of service in the Netherlands against him; for coming upon *Atrebat* unthought of, he surrounds it, and within three moneths time subdueth it; which Town, had for the space of 148 years renounced the Rule of France, and therefore by the French King's Ancestors had been seven times besieged; yet all in vain. And whereas the *Catalonians* (who by reason of nearness of situation, are subject to Spanish Incurfions) were dealt unworthily withall by them, they humbly craving ayd, the French begins this year by great Armies to set them at liberty; and in the year 1641, goes about the busynesse with the *Spaniard*, and gives him often overthrowes at *Barcelona*; and then besiegeth *Tarragon* of *Catalonia*; which the *Spaniard* (loath to lose) often attempts to beat them off, and as often frustrated by the French, untill at length being overpowred in number, he is forced to leave it. The Prince of *Conde* likewise robbing and killing in the *Spaniard's* County

Anno 1638  
of Christ,  
to 1641.

County of *Russilio*. The King of Spain also having somewhat to say unto *John* the 4th, King of *Lusitania* or *Portugal* this year, by dissuatory letters, he is not at all moved thereat, but sends his Embassadors every way even to the Dutch and Swedes, endeavouring to get their favour. Discovering also, and quenching a most destructive Conspiracy against him at *Lisbone*.

Moreover, the Pope being a partaker against the *French*, occasions him to fight at *Balloign*, and he seeth all the Dukes of Italy to take in hand that which they had made a common cause against him. But when as the Governour of *Suesso*, being supported by other helps, had made an inroad into *France* nigh the Wood or Forrest of *Arduen*, he turned thither all his power, overthrew the other, the *Suessonian* himself falling in battel, and who was the last of that stock and ambition. The *French* after this, subdued three Towns of their enemies, but were forced to restore *Arre* after four moneths, by reason of other distractions.

The Dutch seems to be more enriched with Tunns of gold out of both the Indies this year 1640, than impoverished by battels; for they receive from thence 150 of them: yet they feel the force and damage of some great storms in their havens; and fight bloodily against the Spaniard at *Hullst*, attempting two places, *Sluse*, and *Brug* in vain. But stoutly besieging the small Fortres of *Gennepe* in 1641, they constrain it to yield. Arming the year before by reason of the dashings begun in England; and being then also forbidden to ride on the Danish Sea.

*Amurath*, Emperour of the Turks (who had the report of a good Souldier, but a great Tyrant) dying in the year 1640, the 33d year, the flower of his age, his brother *Ibrahim*, in the 27th year of his age, succeeded him; who continued his busse endeavour of peace with the Persian: but calling the Tartarians into his fellowship, threatneth a most cruel War on Poland; whose Pyrats also of *Argier* take a Spanish ship, valued to be worth 300000 Florens.

Three or four strange and unusual things happened in divers places within two years space: The one was a Whale, which being (in a Province of France) left without water, on a place where the Tide ebbed and flowed, was found to be 320 foot long, and 163 foot broad: This monstrous King of Fishes, was nine days in destroying with Guns, as if 'twere shooting against a Castle; afterwards being drawn to shoar by 500 strong armed men, opening his chaps, they saw them easily to receive a horse with his rider. Another was, a seven-fold off-spring brought forth at one birth in the Swedish Camps, in the year 1640, four whereof were male-children, three female; the last of which received a baptism, and then gave up the ghost. Also at *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, on the 4th of the Ides of January, 1641, the whole Princes Court seemed to be very bright and shining with lights; and, which is the greatest thing, three great Guns were heard to be discharged, without the moving of any mans hand, or fire unto them. But throughout

Annus 1643  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

throughout *Bavaria*, in 1640, was there a spacious hunting made, as they say, by the Prince of darknesse, with howling cries, dogs, fleth, and a company of servants, and divers wild beasts; now ready after a while to go (as he said) a fishing. This being true, as it is related, surely a lively sign both of violence, by the hunting; and of deceit, by the fishing, in the earth,

Besides those mentioned in our discourse by the way, these may be taken notice of in their deaths both naturall and violent. *Christian*, Prince of *Portugal*; and *Marodus* Duke of *Prague*; *Francis Jacintib*, Prince of *Subaudia*, a child; which three departed life in the year 1638. And the same year, one *Cyril* a Patriarch, that is, a chief father of the Greek Church, through the instigations or movings of his adversaries at *Constantinople*, was strangled with a rope. *Columna*, Master of the Stable, dyed at Rome in the year 1639; in which year the Emperour of *Germany* lost *Philip* and *Augustine*, his second and third sons, by death. And *Lewis*, son to the Prince of *Orange*, was almost born, and dead in a moment. *Kirchbaw* an Emperian Major, being taken among the *Swedes*, was beheaded at *Vienna* in this year 1639; and within the compass of the same year the Earl of *Buchaim* being mortally wounded in a sporting-exercise, in a short time after exchanged life for death. In 1640, besides *Amurat* the Turk, dyed *George Con.* (one of the Pope's three Ambassadors, that (by the Queens prevalence with the *English* king her husband) had been lately sent unto him, and with great honour received by him, in his return out of *England* to Rome. Also *George Wilhelm*, Duke Elector of *Brandenburg*; whom *Frederick Wilhelm* succeeded. Which *Frederick* the year following began to diminish the Emperour, by little and little, making his Garrisons his own, and therefore is honourably and bountifully received in the Assemblies at *Warsoe*. But *Christian Ulrick*, a Prince of *Denmark*, departing from *Colone*, a City on this side the River *Rhene*, by the hands of the provoked *Hollanders* (for this very year 1640, they were forbidden the Danish Sea) perished. Besides *John Bannier* the Swedish Champion, this year 1641, dyed *Arnbeym*, Chief Commander of the Duke of *Saxony's* Souldiery. *John George*, Duke of *Brarswick*, and *Lunenburg* this year departed at *Hildese*, who would have obtained his *Wolfebyte*; but died without what he fought after. Likewise *Otto*, a single man, Earl of *Schaumburg*, and the last of that Earldome. Amongst the rest *Anthony Caraffa* in the Province of *Barryen*, in the kingdome of *Neapolis*, is to be minded, who in 1641, for new burthens (a fair warning) imposed on the people, was by the common people slain. And to conclude this Chapter with a most sad accident that happened in the year 1640. At *Forchbeym* of *Francony*, a Countreyman killing a Hog, went away about other occasions; in whose absence two little Boyes, one of six, another of three years old, in imitation of their father, kill a little brother of theirs under three Moneths old; and as though they had well done, tell the horrid act to their father, being in the Garden. He beholding the busi-

ness,

Annus 1643  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

ness, chides them with harsh words. Whereupon the children for fear of rods, hide the child in the oven. Their Mother, being about her work and knowing nothing, running from the cattle, sets fire on dry wood to bake, and departs: when she came to draw out the coals, she seeth (as I may say) her own bowels in her child, burned; which caused her to rush head-long into a Well and drown her self; and her Husband (through this double grief) to hang himself.

### CHAP. III.

An account of what noted Passages happened in Germany, England, and other places.

From the year of Christ 1642, to 1646.

**A**lthough *England* might now begin to be the chief Subject of our surveying Account, her billowes of trouble and civil dissensions rising high; yet since *Germanie's* calamity was before her in order and continuance of time; it shall be also in order of declaring.

*Torsten* therefore having taken on him *Bannier's* trust in behalf of the *Swedes*, playes *Bannier's* part; for, having condemned one *Seckendorff* (a Commander) to be beheaded, for treachery to the Army at the siege of *Wolfebyte*; and by *Koningsmark* raised the siege of *Mansfield*; hearing that *Stalbanse* was overcharged by the Duke of *Lawenburg* throughout *Silesia*, he runs to him, and having reduced four places of strength; in the moneth of June 1642, scatters the said *Lawenburg* his forces, and at *Swenice*, takes him, with 38 Waggons. Thence (having fortified another place as a refuge in doubtfull cases) he goeth to *Sittave*, and undertaking to besiege *Lipsie*, the Emperians coming to oppose him, he goes to meet them, and gave them a great overthrow; there were slain to the number of 5000, he took 83 great and choyse Officers prisoners, and above 4000 and 400 common Souldiers, 122 Ensigns, 46 great guns, together with 69 Waggons: and when this was done, returns to *Lipsie*, and on the 24 of October the same year, receives it by surrender. And (that he might the better deal with the Emperour) persuades the Duke of *Brandenburg* to stand as a neuter; but the Duke of *Saxony* not so.

*Guebrian*, likewise the French General, and *Eberstein* the Commander of the *Hussians*, by the suffrance of the Dutch, passe over the River *Rhene* unto *Vesalia*, where they fall upon and beat *Lambey*, (who had assisted the Duke of *Suffo* the year before in his in-breach into France) about to depart into his Winter-quarters; there are 3000 slain, and 4000 taken; amongst whom their chief Captain himself, with two others, 14 Colonels, nine Embassadors, eight chief men of the guard, 28 Masters of horse, 38 Centurions

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

turions or Captains of foot; *Rose* also the Tribune, scattering the residue that gathered themselves together; four strong holds being afterwards vanquished and possessed, and 500 wagons taken, that were carrying things of great value unto more secure places.

But the Emperour (about to set his Souldiery in order) exchanges *Horn* for *werth*, two grand Commanders that had been mutually taken: yet he is rather affected this year 1642, with grief and anger for the two overthrowes received (as above said) at *Silesia*, (whereby *Moravia*, the very Center of the Land is possessed by the Conquerour) and at *Lipsia*, which by reason of nearness made *Prague* to tremble; (This overthrow was by flight, whereupon he branded that Legion that chiefly fled, with disgrace, and cut off the head of *Mandefloh* the Major) than with any great joy for warlike success; yet this supplied the place of all comfort, that he recovereth *Oelsa* of *Silesia*, as also *Marcodure* in the *Julian* field, affording succour (by joyning with the Duke of *Bavaria*) unto the Province of *Colone*. About the beginning of this year, he confirms a peace with the Turk at *Buda* the chief City in *Hungary*, for 20 years. And, being now worsted, (through the labour and endeavour of the King of *Denmark*) toward the end of the year, he admits of a Treaty of peace with the *Swedes*; and to this end, are Assemblies gathered together at *Frankford* upon the *River Mentz*. Nevertheless, the war going on; and being every where strove against; not forgetting the slaughter and overthrow at *Lipsia*, he beheadeth in 1643 more of the chief, and authors of that flight, publishing his Brigades to be infamous. And for his assistance, would have drawn forth the *Hungarians* without their Kingdom's bounds, but could not obtain them. This year also he grants *Piccolominie* to the King of *Spain* for a General: yet the said *Piccolominie* in 1643, before that concession, hastening against *Torshewson*, makes him to quit *Freyberg* of *Misnia*; but he scatters *Bruoy*, and setting *Olmuce* at liberty, finding there a considerable treasure, he sends it away into *Swethland*. Now also he receives bands of Souldiers from the *Dacians*, having taken *Neostade* and other places into possession. And having first redeemed some Captains of three Legions (that were through sloath surprised by the enemy) with money, he afterward hangs some, and cashiereth others. But besieging *Brunne*, a strong place, to his great damage, he over-recruited the said loss, by dispersing *Bucheym* an Emperian Commander, and vanquishing *Eulenburg*, a Town (in the borders of *Moravia* and *Silesia*) containing in it a million of gold. Yet while he most hastily leads away into *Holsatia*, and disperseth some Troops of horsemen that first came against him, he loseth *Sittavia* of *Silesia*, *Lemberg*, and other places.

*Horn* leads an Army out of *Swethland* thorow the main Land, consisting of 20000 men, and a double Navy was trimmed up at *Stockholm*; for they fell out with the *Dane* this year, for three causes;

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

es; for hindering their passage by Sea, cleaving to the *Mulcovite* and *Polander*, and for supplying *Cracoe* in *Pomerania* (their enemies garrison) with money and Souldiers, against which *Koningsmark* the same year 1643, opposed himself, who departing out of *Hassia*, imposeth tribute on the people, as he wandered up and down, intercepting two Towns, *Halberstade*, and *Ostervick*. But the French under the command of *Guebrian*, who in 1642 after the victory against *Lamboy*, had returned on this side *Rheine* again, and in 1643 had taken up their Winter-quarters in *Frankony*, do send the Forces of *werth* to crop them, and at *Alteburg* to beat them. Whereupon they flee to *Brissack*; but making no stay there, straightway return into the *Badian* field: And joyning battel at *Ravensburg*, they are Conquerours, two chief Commanders, *Sierce* and *Witgenstein*, falling by their hands. They also receive supplies from *France*, under the conduct of the Duke of *Enguienne*. Then they take the Town of *Rothweile*, but it cost them the loss of four Legions, and at *Durling* they are quite overwhelmed, three thousand being slain, and above four thousand common Souldiers (besides chief Captains) taken. *Eberstein* the head of the *Hassian* Souldiery, having before left them, returning out of the *Badian* field unto *Heyelsberg*, where he took the Duke of *Lorrain*'s household stuff at unawares, and had almost taken the Duke himself. Who also robbed and killed in the *Colonian* Land; and whereas there had been cruelty exercised in *Gronsfeld*, a place under the power of the Emperour, he from Novise, that was a Town yielded to him the year before, renders them like for like. Thus the Proverb is verified,

*Homo homini Lupus.*

*Man that should be a fellow-brother,  
Prey's like the wolf upon each other.*

The King of *England*, being at the City of *York*, whither he came toward the latter end of the year 1641, sent to the Parliament, Apr. 8. 1642, to acquaint them, that he would personally go over into *Ireland* to engage (as he said) against those bloody Rebels there; and therefore would arm a Life-guard (which he intended to raise about *Westchester*, a near and convenient place of passage into that Kingdom) for himself, of about 2000 and 200 horse and foot, out of the Magazine of *Hull*, a very strong Sea-Port Town in the North. But, there having been a letter not long before, of *George Digbie*'s, a Lord, unto the Queen, out of *Zealand* intercepted, in which he spake of the King's declaring himself, and retiring to some safe place, &c. besides other grounds, this Court suspected his intentions, and appointed *John Hotham*, a Knight of that Countrey to prevent the King of taking that strong hold with its ammunition, into his possession. At which the King being greatly moved, and coming in person with some Souldiers

N n

diers

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

diers in arms, besides some of the Nobility and Gentry, on the 23 day of the same moneth, to demand entrance into that Town; the said *Hotham* denying him on his knees, upon the Town-wall, was proclaimed Traytor by the King: whose act nevertheless the Parliament justified on the 25 day, and endeavoured to appease the King, but in vain. For the King daily summoning by Proclamations both the chief and common sort of those parts, to attend him as a Guard for his Person, who (said he) was in danger of the Parliament; (about which time also *Thomas Roe* Knight, was by him sent over as an Embassadour to *Pienna* in Germany, to presse on the cause of the Palatinate,) the Parliament likewise declared, that such arming of men in an extraordinary way, was against the Lawes and Kingdom's Liberties. And when about the latter end of this moneth of April, 1642, 36 Lords, as also many of the Commons house, within a moneths time, went from the Parliament unto the King at York; then the Kingdom in generall feared a Civill War, which before was by many suspected; so that on the second of July following, propositions being by that high Court, sent unto the King for his consent, and no conclusion made concerning them; It was ordered on June the 10th, by Parliament, That Money and Plate should be brought in, either by gift or loan, which they professed was to levy Forces for the maintaining the Protestant Religion, the King's Person, authority and dignity, the peace of the Kingdom, together with the Laws of the Land, and privileges of the People's Representative, the Parliament. The King also did the like, inviting people to the same thing in the same words. And (toward the latter end of June) his Great Seal being conveyed unto him from the Lord Keeper of it, *Littleton*, he issued forth Proclamations, one whereof was, That the Parliaments Warrants about settling the Militia in their hands should not be obeyed. And they (on the contrary) forbade raising arms by the King's Warrant, without their authority. The King also having pawned the Jewels of his Crown for 200000 l. sterling, (which his Queen had carried over into Holland, in the moneth of Febr. 1641, to that purpose, when she went over with her daughter the Princess of Orange) at this time, received money, with Arms and Ammunition, so that now he sent out Commissions of *Array*, for the arming men in all Counties; which Commission was proclaimed in *London*, for which the Lord Mayor of that City was turned out, and disabled of any Office, and committed prisoner to the Tower, July the 11th; and on the next day, the Earl of *Essex* was by the Parliament voted General of their Army. The Earl of *Warwick* also, skillfull in Sea-Affairs, was by their Ordinance chosen Admiral of the Navy, who a little after took a considerable ship coming out of the Netherlands, laden with Gun-powder for the King's service; which was not a small addition to his Sea-strength. The said Earl of *Essex* raising an Army upon the Parliaments Vote, on the first of August following, began to divide his men into Regiments, which

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

in a short time amounted to nigh 14000 horse and foot; when in the mean time, the King with 3000 foot, and 1000 horsemen on the 15th of July began to besiege *Hull*; which siege (what by opening a sluice, and drowning the Countrey thereabout, what by two sallies made out of the Town, by one *John Meldrum* Knight; in the first of which, the besiegers were made to retreat with some small losse; and in the second, after the strengthening of the Town with more men, making them disorderly to retire, with the slaughter of 21 persons, and some taken prisoners, taking also the King's Ammunition, and firing the barn in which it was kept) was broken up. And now [*tuor arma ministrat*] both sides beginning to assault one another with fury, divers places began to be taken and retaken. Amongst which, the strong Sea-garrison of *Portsmouth* was on Septemb. 7. 1642, surrendered to the Parliaments forces under the command of Sir *William Waller* Knight.

The King on the 22 of August the same year sets up his Standard (which I may call an actual Marriage of that War, which was but before espoused) and the third day after sent to the Parliament to compose the difference between him and them by a Treaty. Of which that Court said they were not in a condition to do, unless the Standard were taken down, and Proclamations (wherein they were called Rebels and Traytors) were revoked. So that on the 9th of Septemb. General *Essex* departed from *London* towards his Army, who expected his coming unto them to their Rendezvous at *North-hampton*; Unto whom also the Parliament sent a Petition, which he should present unto the King, to withdraw himself from those persons about him, &c. But he was too far prejudiced to grant the same; the Bishops, (to make the fore the wider, whom he loved, and without whom, he thought he could be no King,) being on Septemb. 1. 1642, voted powerlesse in Church-Government, who not long before had power both in Church and State. So, *Essex* attending the King's motion (after some skirmishes of parties) Octob. 23, on a Plain called, *The Vale of Red-Horse*, situate at the foot of a steep Hill, called *Edge-Hill*, near to a Village called *Krynton*, in the County of *Warwick*, joyned the first pitched battle with the King's Army, (the Earl of *Lindsey* being the king's General) his Army consisting of about 11000 horse and foot. *Essex* (having, for haste of following them, left no small part of his forces and Artillery behind him) had scarce so many. This fight was bloody and dubious; *Robert* the king's Cousen charging furiously on the Parliaments left wing, put both horse and foot to flight, seizing on his enemies Carriages and baggage. A valiant Knight on the other side, brake the foot of the King's left wing, and seized on his Artillery; the King's Standard was taken, but soon retaken: both sides had Trophies of victory, Ensigns, prisoners, and great guns; so that neither party could much upbraid each other. Notwithstanding, of the 5000 and upwards that were slain in all, more of the King's side

Anno 1643  
of Christ  
to 1646.

were slain; and besides, *Lindsey* his General was taken prisoner, and soon after dyed of wounds received.

The King, after the fight, marched to the City and University of Oxford; which place he took up, as it were, the Metropolis of his residence in the time of the War; and *Essex* unto Coventry for retirement, who came Novemb. 7. to *Westminster*, his Army quartering in Villages adjacent, by reason of the King's wide excursions out of Oxford, which put London in fear. At which time, (while the Parliament was petitioning him for an accommodation of peace, being but 15 miles from the City, and he had manifested a grief for the peoples sufferings, with a desire to treat with them near London upon Propositions) his forces fell unexpectedly upon a Parliament broken Regiment at *Brainford*, seven miles distance, killing many, on the 12th day of November; and the next day there was a bloody fight maintained by two other Regiments coming for assistance. *Essex*, soon hearing of it at London, came speedily with strength for relief, with a great number of armed men out of London; So that, had there not been an oversight committed, in withdrawing 3000 men from *Kingstone* upon *Thames*, a Town 10 miles off, the King (being by a far greater number enclosed) would scarce have escaped; the which now he did, safely returning to Oxford: But this action did not a little engage London against him.

Amongst divers besiegings, stormings, taking of places this year; that of *Cyreneester*, a Town of Gloucestershire, is remarkable, which being entred by the King's Forces, the resistors were very rigidly and too too cruelly dealt withall, many of them being brought (in the winter season) from that place to Oxford thorow mire and dirt barefoot; this was in the beginning of February; On the 22d day of which moneth, the Queen of England landed at *Burlington*, a Sea-Town in Yorkshire, with arms against the Parliament, whence she went to York on March the 7th; and was by the Parliament voted a Traytor to the Common-wealth, May the 23d, 1643. A little after whose landing, March the second, 1642, the Lord *Brook*, a Parliament Commander, who was accounted both valorous, learned, and virtuous, is by a Musket shot from the Minister of *Lichfield* in Leicestershire, stricken dead, as he looked out of a window toward the enclosed enemy, to the sorrow and enagement of his Souldiery. About the middle of which moneth also, divers Capuchin-Fryers, that had before belonged unto the Queen, were by order of the said Parliament sent away into France, from whence they came. And whereas now the Prince of Orange had begun to help the King, he is by the States of the United Provinces, either through good will, or Policy restrained.

But the year following 1643, (raging hatred and resolution now striving, as it were, to exceed) the kindled fire was broken forth into devouring flames in many or most Counties of the Land; so that I shall not undertake here particularly to view the variety

variety and multiplicity of actions, some following years in *Brittain*, especially in England; but shall confine my self unto some few most remarkable things. Yet this I say, There were very few Wars in the World ever carried on with more vigour, enmity, and desire of conquest, than this, for the time: but, the greatest storms being usually soonest over, makes that naturall Axiome true in a moral sense,

*Nullum violentum est perpetuum,*

*No violent thing (but comes with blasting)  
Yet it is not always lasting.*

This Summer, the chief time for action, the Parliament went down the wind; for *Ferdinand* Lord *Fairfax*, with his son, was routed by the Earl of New-castle on *Barmtham* Moor, March 29, 1643; and then by him besieged in *Hull*. The Earl of *Essex* indeed besieging *Reading*, April 16, had it surrendered unto him within 12 daies after. But his Army, after that, what by reason of sickness, what through want of necessaries, for which many forsook their Colours, himself was forced to retreat to London, waiting for a recruit. About which time also, *Sir William Waller* Knight (besieging the Town of *Devizes* Westward, where the besieged were put to hard shifts) was by a party of the King's from Oxford, through vicissitude of fortune in July, totally defeated; and losing his Army, came to London also; whereupon the City of *Bristol* was on the 24th day of the same moneth besieged by the King, and within four dayes time yielded up unto him, (which sudden surrender, many imputed unto the softness of the Governour's spirit) strong holds now falling into the hands of his forces, as it were untimely fruit, or leafs shaken with the wind. *Exeter*, a strong City in the West, was begirt by Prince *Maurice*, which was taken Sept. 3. following: Onely *Gloucester* (in which the Governour *Maisey*'s courage and resolution was famous) stood out nigh a moneths space, straightly besieged, and furiously assaulted, yet unconquered: the successfull King, through his over-much emulousness of subduing that place, neglected (like *Hannibal* of old) to improve his victories to the best advantage, who (in all likelihood) if he had then come for London, might have been master of it; untill, *Essex* being well recruited, came, at the last pinch, for that Citie's relief, which was on September the 8th, fighting the King's Army on the 20th day in a set-battel at *Newberry* in *Barkshire*, where they were vanquished; and so the Parliaments strength revived, and came even to an equal weight, who before were very much over-ballanced.

The Parliament wanting money to maintain their Armies, an Excise on Viual, and divers Commodities, was thought of; at the very beginning of the year, March 28, the first mover being *Mr. William Pryn*, one of the three Sufferers; which Excise, some

Anno 1643  
of Christ  
to 1646.

Ann<sup>o</sup> 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

in detestation, called the *Dutch-Devil*, because it was an imitation of that people, and lay heavy upon the poorer sort. It was settled by Ordinance, July 18 following.

This was the time also wherein a joynt Covenant was entred into by the English with the Scots, called a solemn vow and Covenant, one main head (as to maintain the King's Person and just dignity, whereof was, to endeavour the bringing of the three Nations into one-ness of conformity in Religion and worship according to the Word of God: which clause, *Word of God*, being afterwards thought of by many, gave them (in their apprehensions) a liberty of dissenting from any conformity, that they judged not agreeable thereto. Which Covenant, the Parliament (as an example to the rest) took, June 6. 1643.

About the same time there was a sad design against the Parliament and City of *London* discovered, which was for armed men to arise, killing and slaying, while the City was in divers places burning; for the which, two chiefly suffered death before their own doors, *Thompkins*, who had some relation to the Queen; and *Challenour*, a Citizen, on July the 5th. The books of the Archbishop of *Canterbury* being given unto another Doctor who was their friend, by the Parliament, Octob. 3. who also in the month November, had a new Great Seal made; against which, the King (the same November 21,) openly declared.

The Bishop of *Rome* (who had excommunicated the Duke of *Parma*, whereupon he renounced the Protection of *France* in 1641) having fallen out with him, treats of a peace with the said Duke in 1642; in which year also *Rome* is fortified, because they there feared the weapons of their Spanish Catholique King, who was offended with the Pope, for entertaining a *Portugal* Embassadour. But the year following, the Bishop and the Duke (not agreeing) wage a hot war; he demanding ayds (as his due) from the Viceroy of *Naples*, arming also the Princes of *Italy* against the Duke. And would have had *Piccolominie* for his General, but could not obtain him. But the *Florentines* this year, give him an overthrow, killing one thousand of his Souldiers, and taking another, with all his warlike provision: notwithstanding, within a little time, he revengeth himself upon him. So he that kills with the sword, shall be killed with the sword; Yet this did not *Peter*.

The *French* and *Spaniard* in 1642, affect one another with mutual overthrows, although the *French* exceed. The one in *Catalonia*, overcometh the son of the Duke of *London* a Spanish Commander, slaying 3000, taking many, and but few escaping; finding also among some of the prey, 60000 double Crowns. The *Spaniard* also conquers the *French* at *Castellatum*, killing 3000 and six hundred, 3000 and 400 being taken. He recovered the Town *Bassas*. But the *French* take from him *Colibria* and *Argiller* in *Catalonia*, besieging *Perpinian*, and by the extreamest hunger tames it, avoiding the treachery, and layings in wait of their enemies, in which siege, 300 persons yielded to the hungry for support

support of life; dispersing also the *Spaniards*, who by night set upon *Exclafana*. He obtains likewise this year, some Victory both by Sea and land at *Barcellona*; by land, snatching withall the enemies victual; by Sea, in a Sea-fight, though not without losse to himself, subduing two strong holds in *Italy* this year, and in 1643, as many; lengthening his league with the *Swede* for three years longer. The *Spaniard* indeed makes *Tortone* yield to him this year 1643. As also vanquisheth *Monfione* in *Catalonia*, receiving most rich ships out of the Indies. But the *French* man vanquisheth the *Spaniards* at *Rocroy*, where there was much blood spilt, 12000 being slain on both sides; so that, although the *French* had the day, taking many of the Conquered (which Captives they redeemed with 22000, 288 *Florenes*, as before 800 prisoners of war at *Antwerp* for 50000 *Florenes*) and 180 Ensigns, all their Guns, bag and baggage; yet they might say with *Livy* the Historian concerning a *Roman* Victory.

*Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea victoria stetit.*

*That Victory (although the enemy lost)  
To get, yet us, much blood and wound it cost.*

He also besiegeth the *Spanish* in *Theonsville*, and vanquisheth it, and joyning with the *Portugall* King, is prosperous at Sea. But the *Dutch* and he, do not many great matters; the *Spaniard* vanquishing them at the River *Mose* in 1642. The *Dutch* the next year attempting the Garrison of *Halt* in vain; but obtaining out of the Indies a Masse of Treasure, to wit, 200 Tuns of Gold. The King of *Spain* amidst all, affording help to his bloody fellow-Catholiques, the *Irish* in 1642.

Now also the Queen of *France* being conscious of her vow made to the Lady of *Lauretta* for health restored to the *Dolphine*, sent a Messenger thither with 1200 l. of Silver, and in his arm the Image of the child *Jesus*, of 250 pounds of Gold. This would stop a hole in the Pope's Coffers.

The *Danish* King, being at odds with the *Swede*, is the same year 1643, reconciled with them of *Hamburg*; whose naturall son *Poldemar* yet illegitimate, goes now into *Moscovia*, to take in marriage their Great Duke's Daughter. In which year, the Governour of *Sueinice*, a Garrison of the *Swedes*, escapes the subtille Devices of the Deputy, Senators, and Jesuites against him. And Cardinall *Mazarine* in *France*, whose power is so large, as to be the orderer of the *French* affairs, is conspired against, and the conspirators frustrated. And in the Month of *Febr*, a Councel (which the *Germans* call a *Diet*) is begun at *Frankford* at the River *Main*.

The Emperour in 1644, (by reason of *Torfsensons* absence, who was gone to fight with the *Dane*) recovereth (at length) the strong Garrison of *Woblawe*; vanquishing also *Sueinice*, (where the year before

Ann<sup>o</sup> 1643  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

before, were delignes against the Governour, as was but now said) And who not long before, bruited (though but lightly) his shoulder and leg, being shaken off his Horse, by a wild Boar overturning him. He likewise commands *Galasse*, a chieftain of his, to bring aid to the King of *Denmark*; the same *Galasse* takes quickly the Castle of *Zeize*, lending away the Souldiery by virtue of the Emperours Oath or promise made unto them; and fighting with the *Suedes* at *Odesloe*, there was little noise of that conflict. But laying siege unto *Pinneburg*, he is by them beaten off thence, whom *Torfsen* suffers to return to *Bernburg*, and follows him thither, where he beateth 3000 Purveyors. And coming for relief to *Eislebe* that was besieged, *Galasse* slips away, but other 2000 of his purveyors are beaten by him, with the Garrison Souldiers, he pursueth the Victory, following after *Galasse's* last troop, the which he chaseth with *Enkefort* that was their leader, and takes the said *Enkefort* in the narrow passages lying between *Magdeburg* and *Witteberg*. Then by a fearfull assault, he winneth *Pegare*; and prevailing over the Castle of *Zeize*, that *Galasse* had but even now taken, he demolisheth it, and then like a carefull Commander, refresheth his souldiers, who were almost tired with these toils. *Koningmart* (in the mean time) is busied in gathering contributions on every side; who possesseth and destroyeth the Town of *Langwele*, that was subdued by the Archbishops Army. But he is beaten by the Emperians at *Akerslebe*, even as the *Suedes* that were too secure, were at another place but a little before. But *Wragel* taketh three strong holds, under whose conduct, also the siege of *Pinneburg* (above-mentioned) was quirt.

Moreover, although *Torfsen* fought this year against the *Danes*, with equall successe of Victory, yet *Horn*, with the Army that the year before he led out of *Sweithland*, invading *Scandia*, and the *Fleming* (who was also engaged against him) entering *Norway*; could not but much molest him. Whose King (although the *Suedes* were somewhat overcome at *Colding*, where, of four Legions, 34. men were slain, 137 taken, & 15. wounded) every where complains of breaking into his Dominions, as well as they of him, for stopping up the passage of his Sea from them, whereby they were hindered of their Northern Traffique. And although the *Fleming* gave place unto a greater number of the *Danish* troops this year then he had, yet it was celebrated by him with much blood. The *Suedes* and he have a treble Sea-fight also; the first was doubtfull to either, the second was more acceptable to the *Suedes*: and the third most acceptable unto them, dispersing therein the *Danish* Fleet, whose King committing himself in person to his Sea, is this year wounded. Who likewise recovered *Breydenburg* from the *Suedes* by land; and turns them out of the Castles of *Ripe* and *Haderflebe*, places within his command that they Garrisoned. And further, being offended with one *Peter* a French-man, his Vice-Admiral, for suffering the enemy to slip out of the *Chelonian* Haven, where he had him at an advantage, he cuts off his head. He

dis-

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

dismisseth the Emperours Captain (willingly enough) his aids afforded, being too chargeable and slow in coming; which being gone, he finds it enough to do, to extirpate the *Swedish* Remainers that had taken root in his Countrey.

Lastly, his son *Voldamar*, who is received by the white *Russians* or *Muscovites* (this year 1644) in a stately manner, as him that was to be the son in Law, and heir of their Prince; When he refused to take on him their *Mungrell* Religion, (there being not envy wanting to spur it on) he is less trimly observed, and being confined from his liberty in *Muscovy* (whether that were the sole cause of it, I know not) untill the Great Duke closed his last day, he neither by the craft or force of the *Polanders*, nor by the earnest intreaty of the King of *Denmark* his father, in 1644. could obtain the same.

Much was the action both in *Germany* and *Britain*, and not a little in some other places, in the year 1645. For the Emperour who had to deal with, as also fearing, an unwearied enemy, the *Swede*; having received unto him his Army (out of *Holfatia*) that was shattered, and greatly lessened, musters a new Army; and that he might have prosperous successe, appoints publick prayers to be made in his behalf; and withall, goeth to *Brandise* unto the Image of the Virgin *Mary*, which was there set in its first state, for he had redeemed it out of the hands of the *Suedes* for 10000 *Florenes*. Nevertheless *Torfsen* (who thought to be at hand with the Emperour before he should renew his Army) when he had in his march wasted *Bruxy* with fire, passing thorow *Ottore*, and *Moldavia*, stops at *Jancoa*, which place was between him and the Emperians, and for want of room, possessing a hill, he fights most stidly with *Goce* (who was chief Commander for the Emperour) for eight hours space (this battell was on the twenty fourth of February, 1645) and he vanquisheth the said *Goce* his Army, taking from the Emperour 289 Officers of note, even to the Trumpeters, 4000 common souldiers were taken, besides 45 Wagons, 32 Ensignes, 16 Engines; with the losse of five Captains. These leaders of his thus taken, he redeems out of *Torfsen's* hands with 80000 *Royals*, and so by force requires tribute from the people for this purpose. The Conquerour after this is not idle, he dispersed 2000 of many sorts or companies, that had gathered themselves together after this rout, and besides, freeing *Olmuce* a Garrison that the enemy had possessed, he forced in eight or nine considerable places, even to *Vienna* the Emperours place of residence, so that that City it self was mistrusted: but that he might not too much triumph in successe, he besiegeth *Brunne* in vain, with the great damage of his foot souldiery; yet the occasion of deserting that siege, was from one *Gersdorf*, being intercepted with Letters of great moment in *Silesia*; so that having fortified the Town of *Cornuburg*, he visiteth *Moravia*, and straightway after *Bohemia*, where he wipes their nose both of Gold and Bread-Corn, which being sent before into *Silesia*, he followeth; then vanquisheth

O o o

other



Anno 1644  
 11. Christ.  
 10. 1646.

other places, he puts the City *Prague* into a fright; and passing over the River *Albis* that was frozen up with cold, he hastneth to win *Teichne* Castle by assault; but being sick of the Gout, he is brought to *Lysse*; committing unto *Wrangle* the whole charge of his office; who had *Bruxian* now yielded up unto him, which *Torsten*son, had hurt by fire before, as above said.

The Emperour also this year, being an enemy unto *Ragotzy* Prince of *Transilvania*, sends *Bucheym* a chieftain to oppose him, which *Transilvanian*, *Torsten*son was busied in, infolding a continual War, as we may judge, to keep (such is the Policy of Warlike enemies) the Emperour the more in action; yet he comes to a agreement this year with the said *Ragotzy*, sending *Bucheym* with six thousand men, and furniture to aid the Duke of *Batavia* who was in danger, striving also what he could to drive the *Swedes* out of *Bohemia*, whose Camps, (through the exceeding fierceness of the cold) were (at *Glaßhote*) in the latter end of the year, pitched one against the other for lodging.

The King of *Denmark* is this year beaten by *Wrangle* before he undertook *Torsten*sons trust; expecting nothing but war with the *Dutch*; He lost also a great Ship called the *Sophia* by Shipwreck, that his mother had beautified with the Charge of 120000 Royals, carrying sixty four pieces of Ordinance; and although he recovered *Bremeroterd* by craft, and took prisoner the Governour of *Wartisberg*, with a company of 800 Collectours of money. Yet at length (fortune having forsaken him) and being bent thereto through the intreaties of his States, after a Negotiation sufficiently long, he enters a peace both with the *Swedes* and *Dutch*, through the vehement labour of the *French* King therein.

Whiles *Wrangle* was assisting the *Dane* throughout *Holsatia*, *Koningsmark* subdueth the Archbishopsrick of *Bremes*, vanquishing five strong holds there; then joyning their Forces together, they destroy *Buchwald* the Emperian, with a great slaughter. And about the middle of this Summer, *Wrangle* himself overcomes an Island, called the Isle of *Bornholm*, *Koningsmark* departing from him into *Hallia*, that he might repair the *French*, that had been under *Vinurn*, who were beaten by *Werth*, the General of the *Bavarians*, at *Atergenheim*; Where, the *Vinurn-French*, *Koningsmark*, &c, and the General of the *Hassians*, joyning in one, they drive the *Bavarians* from *Kirchain*, and crossing the River *Rhene*, they win three places by assault, overflowing the Valley *Taubert*; and then *Koningsmark* being called back into *Saxony*, the Duke of *Enguien* adding by a supply of strength, courage unto them, they fight most sharply July 24, at *Albersheim*; in which conflict, the right Wing, in which the *French* were placed, is dispersed; but the left Wing, in which the valour of the *Hassians* chiefly appeared, overcame; *Gelene* was here taken, and *Aterce* slain, to the grief of the conquered. And then gathering themselves together from the chase, they drive the *Bavarians* over the River *Danubius*.

Anno 1644  
 11. Christ.  
 10. 1646.

*nubim*. Hereupon two Garrisons, *Nordlinge* and *Dunkelspule*, are made the Conquerours, *Hailbrunne* being besieged, but left, when as the Emperour had sent the *Bavarian* large assistance by *Bucheym* aforesaid, that they might make them rush, as it were, headlong, leaving their greater guns behind them, toward *Philippiburg*. Then the *Bavarians* recovered three places, whereof *Dunkelspule* is one. *Koningsmark* having (before this battle) taken three strong holds in *Saxony*, and brought the Electour thereof unto a truce for six moneths. By all which may be gathered, what ground the Emperour lost this year.

Some other things were done, as *Bugsdorff*, possessing himself of *Hornburg*, and another place, &c. But I shall stop here with *Germany* for this year, when I have added these two things, That *William* of *Bade* undergoeth the protection of *France*, *Halle* admitting a garrison of *Swedes* into it for defence. And *Maurice* of *Nassaw* is returned from exile out of *Sigenum*, a Town and Promontory near *Troy*, unto his own Country.

In *Brittain*, the English Parliament seeing a need of assistance from their Neighbour-Nation the *Scots*, in 1643, and sending Commissioners to *Edinburg* for the drawing of them into *England*, upon condition of a joyn-taking the Covenant aforesaid, and paying them 100000 l. towards raising the Army, promised them 21000 horse and foot. Which accordingly, either about the middle of January, or the beginning of March the same year, passed over the River *Tyne*, and came in; when as now, as I have said, the Parliament were in an indifferent equality of strength by their own Armies.

The King also, not to be wanting in the like kind of endeavour, grants a Cessation of arms unto the *Rebellious* in *Ireland*, (the which was made Septemb. 15. 1643.) whereby he might have Forces out of *Ireland* for his help; and it being at that time not a discommodity, but a benefit unto them, the King received a pretory sum of money from them for it, to wit, 30000 l. (which Cessation being against the Parliaments Act formerly signed unto by him, was much spoken against by many). The landing of which Irish forces in behalf of the King, being Novemb. 19 following at *Mosson*, was two or three moneths before the *Scots* coming in behalf of the Parliament, in execution; although the other might be first in resolution.

Neither were these mutuall aids alike prosperous; for they that had victoriously fought against those that Rebelled in *Ireland*, now fighting against the Parliament, being but a little while arrived, were quite broken by forces under the command of Sir *Thomas Fairfax*, most or all their principall commanders, together with 1700 Common souldiers being taken; when as it was not so with the Scottish Army. Who under the Earl of *Leven* their Generall, marching against the Earl of *Newcastle*, who had a great Army for the King in the North, took some strong holds, and (though there was some heat of fighting) by enduring the great



Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

cold and hardnesse of weather at that season, weakned and lessened the said *Newcastle* Army. And in the year 1644. two other Generalls, Earl of *Manchester* (where that stout, and I may say, Iron touldier *Oliver Cromwell* commanded) and Lord *Fairfax* after their severall services, joyning with the Scottish General, they went all together with concord (by the which, as *Masiusa* King of *Namidia* said to his sons, dying; *Resparua crescent, Small matters gather strength, and increase*) and then besieged *Tork*, the second chief City in *England*, in which the Earl of *Newcastle* himself was inclosed; which place being of great moment, Prince *Rupert* the Kings Cousin came with great forces to relieve; whereby the three Generalls being engaged to draw off, the Earl of *Newcastle*, having freedome to bring his forces out of *Tork*, joyned with *Rupert*, and so on a place called *Marston Moor* adjoining, July the second 1644. was fought the greatest battell of that Civil war. In which battell, although (through some disadvantage of ground) the Parliaments right wing was put to flight; yet *Cromwell* brake by a furious force the right wing of the King's, and put them to flight, and with *Lesley* the Scottish Lievtenant-General, pursued in chase. *Cromwell* also coming about again with his horsemen, and relieving the other wing, whereby at length a full Victory was gotten, and all *Rupert's* great Guns, Carriages, Bag and Baggage, with above a hundred Ensigns, were in the Conquerours possession. Who returned unto the siege of *Tork*, and soon had it surrendered unto them upon conditions, *Rupert* being before gone or rather fled into the South, and the Earl of *Newcastle* passing into *Germany*. *Leven*, (the forces being parted asunder) a while after, taking (by his Scots) the Town of *Newcastle*, farther North, which by reason of the trade of Sea-coal chiefly, is esteemed rich.

But although (by reason of divers, and not small Armies that were raised on both sides at the Spring of this year 1644, under severall valiant Commanders, and their almost equal successe,) *England* seemed to be unhappy, yet about the latter end of the Summer, there was (as it were) a retaliation of this Northern Conquest, by the defeating the Parliaments General, *Essex*, in the West of the Land, (besides the prevailing of the King's Forces over the Parliaments, in the Southern and Midland parts,) who with Sir *William Waller*, having begun to besiege or block up *Oxford* on both sides, the King escaping with a few horse out of the City, that design was left off; and *Waller* not being with him, but dividing their forces on May the 29th the said General *Essex* marched into the West, even as far as *Cornwall*, (when at *Burford*, he had appointed *Waller* to pursue the King on June the 6th, who had marched with his Army towards *Worcester* from *Oxford*, June the third, who could not hinder the King of his design, and returned to encounter other forces;) where being environed, by the King's Army that came upon them (in *Cornwall*, the latter end of *August*, the farthest Counry Westward) he was dispersed, his whole

Infantry

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

Infantry or foot submitting to the King, the horse escaping as well as they could, the Earl himself fleeing to *Plymouth*, Septemb. 1. whose Souldiers also through the enmity of the Inhabitants unto the Parliaments cause, suffered injuries. After this, he being again recruited, on Octob. 27. following, there was a second battell fought near *Newberry* in *Berkshire*, where although there were losses on both sides, yet no great cause of triumph there was to either.

The Queen in the moneth of April 1644, journeying Westward, came to *Exeter*, where June the 16th, she was delivered of a daughter Princess *Henrietta*, and the 15th of the next moneth July, she arrived at the Sea-Port Town of *Brest* in *Britany*, a Dukedome of *France*. Who went over, to use (though fruitlesse) endeavours for ayd from the French King and the Catholiques; and some say, that Cardinal *Mazarine* was a great hinderer of French ayds against the Parliament. Likewise after much earnestnesse, the Duke of *Lorraine* gave King *Charls* hope of 10000 men, of those that he for some years had taken the Emperours part with, against the *Swede* and the *French*. But although there were a Negotiatur sent into *Holland* about the business, and their conveyance; yet they never set footing in *England*.

At the same time also the King sought assistance from the Rebels of *Ireland*, giving the Earl of *Ormond* the Lievtenant, power to make peace with them, as well as a Cessation before made; (assuring them both of the free exercise of their Religion, and, when his War was ended, of an abrogation of all Laws made against Papists there,) which he wished them to hasten, for reasons in a Letter to *Ormond*. But when their demands were so high, that in many Treaties with them *Ormond* could effect nothing, He fully impoverish the Lord *Herbert*, whom he had made Earl of *Glamorgan*, being a strict Papist, to make peace with them, and indulge them, with as much secrecy as might be: which was concealed for a time both from *Ormond*, and Lord *Digby* the Secretary: which politique and cunning working afterwards between *Digby* and *Glamorgan*, for fear of reflecting upon the King, who would not be seen to treat and make peace with them by a Papist; and also of displeasing the Protestants of *Ireland*; having a doubt, in the mean time, lest they should offend the Irish Rebels, especially seeing all those devices for bringing an Army of those Irish into *England*, were frustrated, I shall forbear any further to mention.

Amongst all which miseries and doubtfull events of War this year 1644, Propositions being sent to *Oxford* in the moneth of November, the King and the Parliament came to a Treaty concerning three particulars; Of their Church-Government and Religion; of the Militia or standing Holds and Magazine of *England*; and about prosecuting the war of *Ireland*, where there had been nigh a year and half Cessation of arms. It began on Januar. 30 this year, by Commissioners from both, besides Commissioners from *Scotland*, and continued a little above three weeks, until February

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

bruary 22. None of the three being contented unto by the King, but the issue of war was left to decide all.

The Parliament therefore, who, after debate between the Lords and Commons, wherein the Lords at first dissented, on Decem. 31 foregoing, had voted Sir *Thomas Fairfax*, son of the Lord *Fairfax*, sole General of their Armies, who was highly esteemed both for Valour and Modesty. Which change, the emulation of great Commanders partly occasioned, whereby some good designs had not prospered; and the Earl of *Essex*, with two other Earls by Land, and the Earl of *Warwick* by Sea, giving up their Commissions; modelled a new Army, consisting of 21000 horse and foot. In which were many Colonels and Officers of full bent and active resolution to go thorow the businesse of War, that they had undertaken. The King also not wanting divers Commanders, and great forces under them which possessed their several Coasts, with many strong Garrisons that were in his hands. But before I speak of the achievements of that *Fairfaxian* Army, which were great and manifold in the year 1645, I shall take notice of some observable things in 1644. Which were, (besides divers Embassadours that came from *France*, from the *Dutch*, from *Spain*, to *London*, and so to *Oxford*, in 1643, and 1644, to mediate between the King and Parliament; which all took no effect; and Commissioners from the Irish Protestants to *Oxford*, Novem. 23. 1644; as also Commissioners from the Romanists in *Ireland*, Decemb. 3. following,) of a great fire that happened in the month October this year in *Oxford*, burning down a great deal of building from *Caryphus* toward the Castle Yard. Of three Suns or *Par-heliis* that were seen in *London*, Novemb. 19. two being made by the image or likeness of the Ore Sun, in a thick and even, quiet and watery cloud, lively set forth through the breaking in of the Sun beams. In which year also the two *Hothams*, father and son, who had July the 15th, 1643, been brought prisoners out of the North to *London*, for conspiracy to betray *Hull* to the King, breaking their trust, &c. were on the very Kalends of January, 1644, beheaded. (A sad disaster, shewing, 'tis better never to engage in any thing, than not to be constant to what is undertaken.) On the third day of which January, the Common-Prayer-book (which before (together with Crosses and Images, in which number Cheap-side Crosse was demolished) Cathedral Service and Organs, &c. had been in most places taken away by Army-force, and Parliamentary-permission) yieldeth unto a Directory, made by an Assembly or Synod at *Westminster*, which was established in its room, by Parliament-ordination. Within eight dayes after which, as though it had been on purpose, The Archbishop, *William Laud*, after almost four years imprisonment in the Tower of *London*, was smitten with the Ax for Crimes of a various kind; who seemed to behave himself with confidence at the place of his execution, raking that place of Scripture, as a subject to speak on to the people, *Let us run with patience the race that is set before us*. The which matter he did

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

did read unto them; the which was printed. Mr. *Burton* also the suffering-Minister under him, soon after, setting forth something as to shew the false application of the same Scripture unto himself. Likewise the Anti-Parliament, which were the Members that went from *Westminster*, who had assembled as a Parliament at *Oxford*, Jan. 22. 1643, were adjourned for seven moneths, from March the 10th 1644, till Octob. 10th, 1645; whom also the King himself in a Letter to his Queen in *France*, called a *Mungrel Parliament*.

*Charles* also, Prince of *Wales*, in the same moneth of March, departing into *France*. And (as though they would now make their King a Delinquent, the Commons house, on the 24th day of this moneth, as a conclusion of the year, voted, That that clause [*For preservation of his Majesties Person*] which was before in *Essex's*, should be left out in their new General's Commission.

Who now being in a fit and strong posture, (although not seeming so, either in the honourable worthinesse of Commanders, or in the experienced antiquity of the Souldiers,) one of the first enterprises that was undertaken by this new-modelled Army, was to besiege *Oxford*, which began on May 22, 1645; (the King about 15 dayes before marching out of the same, who being joyned with his two Cousins, *Rupert* and *Maurice*, amongst other intended designs, in the mean time besieged *Leicester*, May 30, and the day following took it by storming; which place was considerable in regard of strength and situation,) *Cromwell*, *Fairfax* his Lieutenant General, above a month before doing some execution on a party of the King; at a place called *Islip-bridge*, besieging also *Blechington* house, a Garrison, whither some of them had fled, and had it surrendered unto him April 24; for which the Governor Colonel *Windbank* was the next day shot to death. While *Oxford* was besieged, there was an eminent salley made by the enclosed, which gave some affront to the besiegers, June the 2d; and within a few dayes after, General *Fairfax* raised his siege, time having been lost by that unseasonable undertaking.

Time now drew nigh for a pitch'd battle, the which in *Northamptonshire*, in the fields of *Naseby*, was on the 14th day of the same June, joyned; many (as well they might) calling it, *The Fatal battle of Naseby*; because (like the Vertical point in the Zodiac) it made the King's successes, which were now raised high, to go, from that day, retrograde, and decay. In this fight, although at the first, through the routing of the left Wing of the *Fairfaxians*, and Prince *Rupert's* pursuit thereof, the day of victory seemed to shine upon the King's Army; (For they were somewhat stronger in horse) yet *Cromwell's* force doing the like to the Royalists, together with Major General *Skippon's* magnanimousness amongst his foot, though much wounded, brought a night upon the former likelihoods; and gave both an absolute and happy victory to the Parliament: The horse fleeing to the late taken Garrison of *Leicester*, by *Cromwell's* pursuit, no small number were taken

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

taken prisoners; the Footmen (in general) desiring quarter for their lives, having first thrown down their Arms, were to the number of four or five thousand brought prisoners to *London*. Trophies also of this Conquest were the King's Standard of War, with 100 Colours, besides the King's Coach, with his Letters of Secresie; all their great Guns, bag and baggage, rich pillage, with much gold and silver; and (which made it more acceptable) it was, though not [*sine sudore*] without pains; yet [*sine multo sanguine*] it cost not much blood, hardly 500 being slain in all; whereof almost 400 were of the conquered. *Leicester* hereupon (as *Tork* before, upon the like dyfaller) quickly yielding to this conquering Army. The which by diligence and courage, without delay defeated remaining Forces, relieved *Taunton*, took strong holds and Garrisons, faster than ever the other party had taken them before; amongst which, that tough and strong garrison of *Basing-house*, belonging to the Marquis of *Winchester*, and by him defended, (that had been more than once attempted, but in vain, and with the losse of many lives, was on Septemb. 14 this year 1645, taken (under the Command of Lieutenant General *Cromwell*) by storm, in which the Marquess himself was a Prisoner, and one *Benjamin Johnson*, a notable Stage-Player formerly at *London*, amongst the after-heat of the stormers, was by some Souldier slain.

The surprizal also of *Hersford* by Colonel *Birch* his stratagem, is remarkable, who under shew of bringing in Pioneers out of the Country in the night; the which the defendants for the King, had sent for, to strengthen their works, had the Draw-bridge pulled up unto a bold Souldier (with his company) that pretended the Constables Office, who stoutly kept up the bridge from being put down, untill the watchful approaching Souldiers came in, and with no small hurly-burly possessed that strong City. It happened on Decemb. 17th following, and amongst divers Sea transactions, five ships this year were taken by the Parliament at Sea, one whereof carried an Apostolique Messenger, so called, with 180000 Pistolets.

The King now seeing unto what passe things were brought, and bringing against him, desired to treat in person with the Parliament, Jan. 13, which was denyed by them, chiefly (I understand) for fear lest his Personal presence in *London*, (where were a multitude affecting both his Cause and Person) should either cause disturbance, or incur danger. They having also perceived from his letters that were taken in the aforesaid fight at *Naseby*, which had been publicly read in *London*, as divers things, so, that he treated not with them at *Uxbridge* out of a candid mind, neither would he willingly have given the name of a Parliament unto them; saying, *it was one thing to call them so, and another thing so to acknowledge them*. After which refusal of the Parliament to treat, amongst the rest, *West-Chester* (which the King was very loath to part with, it being so convenient a landing place from *Ireland*, and would fain have had *Irish* to relieve it,) was in February surrendered.

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

ered. And at the closure of this year 1645, the Lord *Hopton*, on conditions granted him by General *Farnifax*, who had marched into the West parts, (which *Hopton*, had about the beginning of the War divers encounters with Sir *William Waller*, and was worried by him, who was still on his legs, and did great and long service for the King) suffered all his forces to be disbanded, March the 14th.

*Scotland* also (who were helping their fellow-covenanters in *England*, and after a long siege of 42 weeks, had the City and strong Garrison of *Carlisle* delivered unto them June 28, 1645, who garrisoning the same with their own men, caused the Parliament to write unto the Scottish Generall, to give it into English hands; Ordaining also thence-forward English Commissioners to reside in *Scotland*, as Scotch Commissioners did in *England* at this time felt the plaguing force of the Earl of *Montrose*; who, from the time that his Countrey-men came into *England* in 1643, attempted to molest *Scotland* in the Kings behalf. Who receiving about 1200 of the Rebellious in *Ireland*, with others added to them in *Scotland*, for almost a year and an halfe space, untill the battle of *Kilsyth*, by excursions, and retreats into craggy and difficult places, getting one Victory, and losing two, lay like a gawling force, or peevilicious disease in his Countrey. On whose successe the King having no small reliance, earnestly attempted to joyn, but could by no means accomplish it, being hindered by Parliament Commanders. (The Kirk of *Scotland*, in the mean time, having given a serious admonition unto the King, shewing the danger of those courses; which he little or nothing regarded;) Nevertheless, *Montrose*, suddenly appearing, with scarce 4000, out of his retiring places, Aug. 17. 1645, in *Kilsyth* field, near the Town of *Glasgow*, gave a great defeat and slaughter unto the Army of that State, by reason of ambushes laid in places that were there fit for them, killing above 5000 men; most of the Towns suddenly yielding unto him, and many persons, shewing their concealed good wills, now joyning with him; for which calamity of that Nation, the English sympathizing, kept a publique Fast. The English chief Army-Officers shewing also a freeness to adventure their lives for them, if domestique affairs would suffer. But *David Leslie* marching into *Scotland* out of *England*, to relieve his distressed Countrey, with his horsemen, within a months time, Septemb. 13. at *Selkirk* or *Philip-haugh*, wholly ruined the same *Montrose*; and the changeable condition of this kingdom, was restored, as it were, into its former state: the King being at *Rouffon-Heath* (by Major General *Pointz*) overcome with the losse of 800 men, Sept. 24, designing either to joyn with *Montrose*, or to relieve besieged *West-Chester*. The Lord *Digby* being as unfortunate, who Octob. 15. following, was defeated at *Sherburn* in *Yorkshire*, and put to flight.

The French-man assailing *Graveling*, a strong Town that was  
Pop garrisoned

Anno 1643  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

Garrisoned by the *Spaniard* 1644, reduceth it under his power, by a short, yet laboursome, siege; but in *Catalonia* he was lesse prosperous, whereupon (as is usuall in bad successe of war) one *Hodencurt* a French-Commander there, returning home, is encompassed in with a Prison. He possessed also two places in *Italy*, being angry with Cardinal *Barbarine*, (Cardinals being his choosers) about the Election of the new Pope. The *Spaniard*, who (in his Idolatry) committed both his souldiers, and all his affairs unto the Patronage of the Virgin *Mary*, had (however) better successe then the Emperour of *Germany*, in the same way, the year after; for he beat at *Lerida* 6000 French, and 2000 *Portugals*, forcing *Lerida* it self unto a surrender: (as also the same year, the Castle of *Albia* in *Italy*, that the French had before possessed). But that he might have no cause to dote upon that imaginary protection; they repayed him again the same with usury, the next year 1645. Who (besides taking the Town of *Rofate*, which it seems was so battered, that there were scarce ten whole houses remaining in it at the yielding; as also a strong hold called *Trinity-Fort*) beat the *Spaniards* at *Balaquere*, chasing them unto a place, called *Canelme*. And by interceiving the provision that was for its relief, forces the Town to yield to him. And hangs some *Catalonians*, that were convicted of treachery against him. In *Italy*, he smothereth also (as it were) this year, the Town *Vigenane*, in which there was a Million of prey, yet lost it again. But in *Flanders* he overcame *Mardike*, two holds more, with a great Bulwark adjoining to *Dunkirk* of the *Spaniards*, and also that notable Garrison of *Mortz* of *Lorraine*, unto which no lesse then 1800 Country-Towns, and Villages belonging to the French-Title, were constrained to pay Tribute; carrying away unto *Atrebat* a Town and Garrison of his, a prey with two hundred Wagons, 1200 head of Cattle, laying 200 Countrey Towns desolate. Yet losing *Mardike* again in *Flanders*, as he did *Vigenane* in *Italy*. And whereas *Anthony Barbarine* (whether through fear, jealousy, or discontent) had departed out of *Rome* by night, he undertakes (this year) the cause of him and his, with the Bishop of *Rome*.

Which Bishop in 1644 had made peace with the Duke of *Parma*, and the *Florentines*, which was received with the great joy of all *Italy*.

The Emperour and his successeur setting the Arch-bishop of *Triers* at liberty the year following 1645, who being pompously received by *Torsten*son, enters into his Diocese.

This year also the Maiden-Queen of *Swethland*, layes hold of the stern of Government in that Kingdom.

The *Portugall* also acting prosperously enough throw the Ocean, the *Spaniard* being this year 1644. inferiour to him in Shipping.

The *Tartars* also making an inroad into *Poland*, are now beaten.

But

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

But in *Turky*, the Great *Fizier* presents himself armed before the *Sultan*, and reproveth evill affected persons. Who being received by the Emperour or *Sultan's* mother, an invective Woman, he notwithstanding represseth by laying to her charge, the unruly desire of Women to bear command, of which (it appears) he was guilty; for the which he is assaulted with a dagger, and striving to slip away is slain; this was in 1644. Now also the Offices or charges of the Turkish Court are changed. And *Usur Piali* the High Admirall at Sea, who was this year, scattered by the Ships and people of *Malta*, where was a Ship taken by them, having in it many Concubines, descended of a Noble Pedigree, and likewise of a great value, esteemed at four Millions, which is 4000000 lb. is (after some endeavour to escape) choaked by the command of the Great *Turk*; who in 1645, gave peace unto *Ragotzy* of *Transilvania*, through the earnestnesse of *Tischerine* his Embassadour pressing the same. Which *Turk* also, now arms himself by Sea and Land, as threatening the *European* world that own not his *Mahomet*: but, according to the Proverb, *Threatned folks live long*. However, he besiegeth and overcometh *Canea*. And deals injuriously with the French and *Venetian* Embassadours at *Constantinople*.

But the *Dutch* before peace made with the *Danish* King, passe thorow his Sea in 1645, whether he would or no; receiving also seven Ships of great value out of the Indies. They take counsell likewise with the French, of setting upon *Flanders* on both sides of it. And themselves, who the year before attempted (as was said) *Hulst* in vain, do now make it yield by breaking thorow the same, vanquishing also two other fortresses. But then, that they might not be too proud of their wealth; fourteen of their Ships, accounted to be worth four Millions of money, by reason of a Sea-Tower in the *Danish*-Sea, which (giving light unto Marriners to see their safe way into the Haven) was removed to another place, being dashed against the Rocks, were drowned.

Memorable accidents in four years space, are these; A mischance happened at *Vesalia*, where hundreds of pounds of Gunpowder, being in the open Market-place laid into a Wagon by reason of the gaping chaps of the barrells, through the striking of a horses foot with his iron shoe against a flint stone, took fire; whereby, the adjoining houses were cast down, and 30 people killed. Likewise at *Vienna*, out of a boat or Barque that was overwhelmed in the great River *Danubius*, one servant was saved from drowning, by virtue of two hunting dogs, that weretied together, by the which he held. At the City of *Buda* in *Hungary*, it rained lead and Tin. And at *Strigone* a Town situate on *Danubius*, the fishes flocking together, covered the River, shewing their heads above water, which thing the aged inhabitants, (it seems) from former observation, foretold to be a token of the change of their Lord and Master: these in 1642. But in the year 1644, in the

P p p 2

Month

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

Moneth of May, a great Wood (belonging to the Dukedom of *Norimberg*) of 8000 Acres of Land, burned in a flame, which is extraordinarily notable, if not ominous. The same year also *Königsmark* the Swedish Commander, had a strange and sad accident betell his children and household-servants by lightning, at the solemnities of the Funeral of a Major, at *Atinda*; flashing upon his sons: It defaced the first born's face, it smote the right side and arm of the second, and the right arm of his third born; yet the eldest and youngest of his daughters had no hurt, but the servants, one and th' other were destroyed.

Chances by fire in 1645, amongst which these two were the saddest. At *Vilna*, 3000 houses burned: But at *Constantinople*, one thousand dwelling houses, and fifteen thousand Merchants Warehouses, two hundred Temples, four consecrated places, and thirty stately dwellings or Palaces, were spoiled by the flame. The great winds at *Basil* in *Germany*, doing above 200000 Florentes damage; the Sea-coasts also of the Low-Countries and *France* feeling the same thing.

These closed their last day. The Queen Mother of *France*, dyed at the City *Agrippina* in *Germany* 1642, having departed out of *England* the year before. Also Cardinal *Cajetan*, this year. *Francis Albert* Duke of *Lawenburg*, of a wound received, fighting against the *Swedes*; with others. In *England*, the Lord *Brook*, slain, as aforesaid.

The year following 1643, in *France*, dyed *Lewis* the 13th, King of *France*, son to the deceased Mother the year before; as also *Philip* Landgrave of *Hesse* the Upper, in *Germany*, who deceased at *Butsback*. In *England*, *Hamden* a Colonel, one of the five accused Members by the English King, who was in June, 1643, at a place called *Chalgrave* field in a fight, mortally wounded, of which he dyed within six dayes after; and on December the 8th, the same year, *John Pym*, another of those five Members; who was esteemed a great Statesman, gave up the ghost.

The Queen of *Poland* the following year, 1644, when she had brought forth a daughter named *Claudia*, breathed out her life in child-bed. Pope *Urban* the 8th, being above seventy years of age, and having been chief Bishop 21 years, now also deceased. Whence arose four Factions of Cardinals about the choyce of a new Pope, the *Spanish*, *French*, *Roman*, and *Barbarine*; but the *Roman* party prevailed, and chose *John Baptist Pamphilus*, named *Innocent* the 10th.

Two this year dyed of an Apoplexy, the Duke of *Bavaria* his Embassadour, at the Council of *Frankford*; and *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*. One, with suspicion of drinking poyson, to wit, the Queen of *Spain*. But the Archbishop of *Burgedale* departing the World, left a yearly mustering of 4000 Target-men (as a Legacy to Cardinal *Mazarine*) in *France*, that King so commanding it,

it. And in *England*, besides the *Hothams*, and their Archbishop already mentioned by us, *John Steward*, Lord, of the King's party, and, I suppose, (by his name) his Kinsman, dyed naturally at *Abbingdon* five miles from *Oxford* at the beginning of April, and was interr'd at *Oxford* on the 5th day.

And *Alexander Carew* Knight, was beheaded five dayes before the *Hothams*, for crimes of the like nature objected against him, by the Parliament. *Macquire* also the Irish Baron, (who by pleading Peerage, protracted his life a little longer than *Malbone*, who dyed the same death a while before him) was on February the 20th, 1644, hanged and quartered at *London's* Tyburn.

Amongst others, dyed *Gode*, a General of the Emperour's; in *Bohemia* *Nolmar Rose* a German, through a box of the ear given him by one *Widmare*. The great Duke of *Muscovy*. These three in 1645.

Of the English; Lord *Littleton*, Keeper of the Broad Seal at *Oxford*, August the 27th. And to conclude, one Dr. *Feailey*, a man of much reading, and of a sharp Wit, who was chosen a Member of the Parliamentary Synod at *WESTMINSTER*, upon some secret compliance, or intelligence given to the King's party at *Oxford*, was committed a prisoner unto *Peter-house* in *London*, in 1643, or 1644; and at length writing a book in a tart manner against those called Baptists, or Anabaptists, had shortly after, a liberty granted of going abroad, yet still a prisoner at large, who a very little time enjoyed that freedom, dying on April 17, 1645.

CHAP.

Anno 1644  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

## CHAP. IV.

Of things which were done in divers parts of the World, Ferdinand the third being Emperour of Germany, and Charles the first, for a while, King of Britain.

From the year 1646, unto 1650, inclusively taken.

THE Emperour in 1646, who by the assent of the Duke of Saxony, that had prolonged his Cessation of arms with the Swedes, quitting the garrison of *Magdeburg*, (*Wrangle* having departed unto *Cremise*, a place out of the way) recovereth three Towns from the Swedes, and afterwards *Cornuburg*, a Garrison of great concernment. And then being increased in strength of Forces by the *Bavarians*, goeth down thorow *Francony* into *Wetterau* and *Hassia*, where he labours (though all in vain) to intercept or forestall both the Swedish Camps and provision of victual. For, he triumphing in his Camps for the joy of his son *Ferdinand* the 4th, so called, who was chosen King of Bohemia, (whom toward the end of this year he so crowned) and also for the late return of *Cornuburg* into his hands. *Wrangle* slipping away, environeth the Emperour's Souldiers, and passing over the River *Menno*, he bends his march unto *Danubium*. But *Koningsmark* the Swedish Commander after one or two services, and eitsoon subduing the Town of *Breuerverd* this year, doth joyn himself with *Wrangle*, when he had descended from *Ilmene* thorow *Erford* and *Eichfeld* unto *Visurg*. For he passed over the *Mindean* Foords, and had taken eight Towns, of which *Paderborn* was one. He fortifying his Camps at *Aménoburg*, withstood the *Bavarians* coming on with great force, and being by *French* Ayds made stronger, he presseth upon, and encompasseth them, that so they being kept apart from the River *Ménus*, he making haste, might come before them unto *Danubium* to hinder their passage over that River, and leaving *Schorndorf* to win *Turain* by assault, he himself takes *Nordling* and two other considerable holds: which being done, he calls him unto him again, and fights against the City *Augusta* of the *Vindelicians*, but overcame it not. He also had almost made *Lyce* or *Lycum* his own, notwithstanding he intercepted warlike furniture, and large store of victuall of the enemies more than once. But more than this, returning unto *Memminge*, he with the greatest boldnesse violently takes both the narrow passages that were between the Hills, and the Town of *Brigant* it self, which is, as it were, the Key, opening unto, or shutting out of many Countreys, wherein was great spoyl and prey: as also *Langenarch* at the end of this year 1646, by surrender. In the mean time, the Castle of *Marpurg* being besieged, is yielded to the besiegers. But it cost one *Willick* the Defender thereof, his head, at *Giesse*. Two places soon after following that Castle's example,

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

example, *Butsback* (notwithstanding) being taken by *Eberstein* the Emperian. In the upper parts of the Country this year are subdued *Smalcald*, with four other places by the Emperour's Souldiers, of which two, *Kirichain*, and *Rauschenburg*, are lost, with no prosperous conflict. *Geise* recovering *Kirichain*, demolisheth the same, and vanquisheth *Alsfeld*; getting also a victory over *Eberstein*, who was increased in number by *Melander*, carrying back eight Waggon, with 500 prisoners of War, and 700 horses; but this was after that *Rabenhaupt* had returned from the siege of *Zonse*, and *Melander* had taken *Euskirk* and *Flemburg*; the which example *Paderborn* followed at the end of the year, taken before by *Koningsmark*. But the Duke of *Wittemburg*, bringing a supply unto the Swedish forces in *Silesia*, much troubleth or ryeth *Montecule* the Emperian, who at the first of the year had the upper-hand, and followes him, going back into Bohemia; he takes also *Hafelcher*, and two Towns more from the Emperians in the said *Silesia*; but besieging *Troppae* a strong Garrison in *Moravia*, he lost his labour.

The year following 1647, when as *Wrangle* had fortified the Island of *Menave*, together with the Castle of *Lagenarch*, and receiving Messengers from *Helvetia*, had dismissed them with a friendly answer, he departs there-hence for lack of grasse or fodder; confirming also a cessation of arms at *Monastere*, and afterwards at *Ulme*, between the Swedish, French, the Hassians, and the Bavarian and Colonian. Then after some other passages of War, *Koningsmark* having besieged *Warendorf*, there was a stout fight at Sea, when their Ships were brought unto the Podanian Lake, at four places. The *Novesians* taking *Nidek* in the Julian field, and *Wrangle*, receiving supply, by his Captain *Lowenhaupt*, *Nordling*, and *Sweinsfurt*. The Duke of *Wittenberg* also returnes stoutly into *Silesia*, and *Dewage* being cast out of two places betook himself to *Breslave*. Whole forces also taking the Town of *Trautenave*, take also the *Glogavians* therein, with 146 Horsemen, 40 Footmen, 270 Horses with bag and baggage. *Bucheim* and *Spork* Emperians make hast, who besieging *Olave* lose their labour. But *Mortaze* is sent away unto *Hesse* of *Cassella*, who subdued unto his power 9 Garrisons, whereof *Fridberg*, and a place called the *Palatinate Fort*, were two; but then besieging *Rheinfelsse*, he dyed with a mortall wound; whereupon there was a Truce made between the Hassians and Emperians. But the Emperour not only disliking, but disdain the conditions of the former Cessation of Arms, most violently assaults the Town and Garrison of *Weissenburg*, and wins it from his enemies the defenders. Appointing also the Earl of *Holsapfell*, (who was of late known throughout *Hassia*, where he warred, by the name of *Melander*, General, in the room of *Gallasse*, who was by little & little in a decaying state of body, and thereupon repairing his Army, he fortifieth also three very considerable places, to wit, *Prague* in Bohemia, *Pilsene*, & *Vienna*, the City of his Palace in Germany on *Danubium*; and having done this, (as thinking

Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

thinking he had done some great matter toward his protection and successe) he bequeaths a Feast-day or holiday to be kept in remembrance of the Virgin *Maries* Conception, and so commits himself, his affairs, and Souldiers unto her Guardianship. Being impatient of a cessation, he withdrawes *werth* and *Spork*, two chief Commanders of the *Bavarian* Army, from the said Duke of *Bavaria*, (although they were condemned by him of treachery) and joyns them unto his new General *Holtzapfel*; but he excused that deed unto the Swedes and French, it having been perfidiousnesse in him, to have voluntarily sent any of his, unto his assistance, against those with whom he had a cessation from arms, within the limited time: He subdueth *Falkenau*, but going to hinder *Egere* from besieging, he slackened his pace, being often stopped by over or fool-hardy *Wrangle*, (for that was his Epethite) in his very Camps, while he would break violently throw unto a little bridge belonging unto a house of the Emperour's, for the entertainment of friends. He fights at *Plane*, and two other places, with a diverse issue, untill the *Bavarian*, the cessation of arms being ended, joyned himself unto him again; as also untill that *Wrangle* (calling *Koningsmark* unto him) should snatch away, as it were, his Army throw *Bohemia* toward *Antberg*, and should passe over unto *Misnia*, *Erford*, and *Vifurge* of *Hoxtere*, that he might refresh Souldiers at divers places, and then shew himself in *Hassia*: whether the Emperour's and *Bavarian* forces following him; (for a cause moving them therunto) they were pleased to besiege the City *Marpurg*, where *Holtzapfel*, formerly *Melan-der*, the Emperour's General, through a Splinter of a beam (which was occasioned by the Castle's or Tower's Guas thundring into the place of his abode) breaking a vein of his neck, had almost breathed out his life, together with his bloud, by that open passage. But (after one or two places vanquished by the Emperour, one whereof, to wit, *Iglave*, very hardly; and *Nordling* (that was taken this year, before, by *Lavenhaupt* the Swedish Captain; as saith *Mercurius Gallobelgicus*) wickedly or unhappily retaken by the *Bavarian*) the Swedish Novesians perform'd notable exploits, killing *Gosse* or *Goe* with 100 common Souldiers, and taking the said Earl of *Holtzapfel*, some Majors, with 200 common Souldiers prisoners. Nevertheless *Lamboy* (on the other side) watching his opportunity, vanquisheth *Windeke* with three other strong holds in *Colonia*, and from thence goes into *Westphalia*, although he was commanded by the Emperour to come with his Brigade unto the chief of his warlike affairs.

Moreover, the same year, being 1647, the Souldiers of *Turain* are overcharged by Neighbouring garrisons of the Emperours, at *Zwingenberg*: and do assure the City *Mentz*, and *worms*, against the subtil devices of both *Garner* and *Boninghaufe*. But there was like to be a falling out with their own fellow-Souldiers, about *Rose* the Tribune, whom some Regiments required from the Army, to be restored their Captain; neither could they be brought

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

brought to return to their duty by any means; but yet on some certain conditions they do joyn to *Koningsmark*. *Rose* himself being brought to *Paris*, to declare the cause hereof. And when as the *Colonian*, now renounceth his cessation of arms made a while before, with the Swede, French, and *Hassians*, by reason of a Town that was taken of theirs, in the mean time, and some other unworthinesse received from the enemy; then *Koningsmark*, increasing his number with *Rabenhaupt*'s Souldiers, (that prospered in some achievements the year before) begirts *Paderborn* that had been taken and retaken in 1646, and stoutly opposeth himself against *Lamboy* at *Steynford*, as he pierced into *Ostro-Frisia*, or *East-Friesland*, and that, untill both Armies were summoned away unto the highest matters.

And truly, (as though things were now coming to the highest pitch) the Swedish Commanders and Armies do hotly encounter the Imperial Forces (in the year 1648) to their disadvantage. For *Wrangle* in the first place takes from the Duke of *Luneburg* 1400 horses, and the cloathing for his Army; and calling a Council of War at *Sad-*, he moveth toward *Paderborn*, where he drives away the Emperians and *Bavarians* out of *Hassia*, where they wanted Viſual, into *Francony*, having been sufficiently worn out at the siege of *Marpurg*. Then increasing his Army, he passeth over the River *Menus* at *Alsbirg*, being 23000 strong, 15000 footmen, 8000 horsemen, 160 great Guns, and 200 wag-gons, and by force wrested 9 piece of Ordinance that were left by the Emperour's Army at *Forsbeym*. And coming unto *Feuch-wange*, he sets his Army in array; but the Emperour's forces do part asunder, the Emperians departing unto *Ratisbone*, and the *Bavarians* unto *Eichstade*; but *Wrangle* himself sits down at *Guntsburg*; *Koningsmark* in the mean while wandring up and down, unto whom the abovesaid discontented *Turanian* Souldier then came. Then after three places yielded, possessed, and laid waste, and three others fortified: And the upper Palatinate put to extreame villany by the rude and cruel Souldiers, at length there was a conflict about crossing the River *Lyce*, (the French before that, coming to the Swedes, and covering *Bavaria*, upon which *Bucheym* and *Spork* are called out of *Silesia*) toward the City *Augusta*, and that, an unhappy one to the Emperians, *Holtzapfel* their General being in the very rear slain, also *Koningsmark* brings away their Secretary, with 200 and 70 Common men, and loopened their passage in *Bavaria*, whither it appears they were tending. (Two reasons were given of this misfortune; either because *Gronsfeld*, Leader of the *Bavarian* Souldiery, had been Commanded (in imitation of the *Hassians*) to decline the Front of the Battle, and bring his Souldiers to defend rather the more sound or strong parts thereof: or because he envied *Holtzapfel*, the said *Holtzapfel* having his Chief Officers the lesse obedient unto him, both in regard of the Rigour of his Army discipline,



Anno 1642  
of Christ.  
to 1646.

and likewise, for that his Religious Rites were very much estranged from theirs. But *Koningsmark* breaking into *Bohemia*, and on July 16, making a free Egress and Regress unto the Town and Garrison of *Eger*, that was shut up by the Enemy; on the 26 of the same month, he encompassing and taking 300 Scouts, or a party sent forth, by a cunning Stratagem, brought a greater mishap unto the Emperour, than the other: who sending forth by night as many of his own Souldiers unto *Colored* the Vice-King of *Bohemia*, under a colour of being his party that was sent out, now returning, their Watch-word being first stolen; took by this disguise before day, that which is called *Little Prague*, with the Castle of *Retz* or *Retise* thereto belonging, with more than 200 men of a great fame, whom he made them to ransom. A prey also of above seven millions value, fell hereby into his hands, the richer part of which he sends away in 60 Waggonns unto *Lipsia*, *Colored* also the Vice-roy, hardly escaping from being seized on in his bed. *Wrangle* also crossing *Lyce*, confirmeth one garrison, and takes two into his possession; the Emperour's sliding away unto *Filschore*, the *Bavarians* spreading themselves into Garrisons to defend those more strong places, who, upon the losing of *Lyce*, quitted or departed from *Isare*, the which *Wrangle* possesseth wholly: who besieging *Wasserburg*, was frustrated of his attempt, and seeking a passage over the River *Oene*, could not obtain it, the *Bavarian* stoutly defending the right bank against him. Then he hath a conflict with the Emperians and *Bavarians* who revived again, at *Dinckelsing*, and sits down at *Landshute*, being repulsed by *werth*, who with great violence assailed them; the said *werth*, having been newly received into favour by the Duke of *Bavaria*, who before had a prejudice against him.

Lest I should be too tedious, let me briefly run over some additions of two or three more chief Swedish Warriours this year. The Duke of *Wittenberg* (who was of that party, and was Lieutenant of the Ordnance,) that he might make amends for some losse that *Dewage* had suffered through a mistake, which was 136 horsemen, and 336 horses, runs to him; demolishing *Oelfs*, and preying upon *Silesia*, and being increased with a supply of 6000 men from *Pomerania* and *Moravia*, breaks thorow into *Bohemia*, where, at *Brandise*, (the place where the image of the Virgin *Mary* trimly stood) he takes 600 of the enemies, and being put into the room of *Koningsmark*, who was absent, he shews himself before old *Prague*; and then possesseth a Town, and a Castle in that Kingdom; after that, passing thorow to *Moldavia*, about to come suddenly upon *Misling* of *Crumavia*, he, at *Budovise*, lights upon *Bucheym*, with three other of eminency, that were bringing 120 Waggonns unto places of more safety; he takes them with their wagons, onely one *Garner* escaping, and so goes to meet their new General, who came out of *Swethland* amongst these clashing this year, with 8000 most choysle Souldiers: (This

was

Anno 1642  
of Christ.  
to 1646.

was *Charles Gustave*, who being begotten of his father *John Casimir*, who was of the family of the Palatinates of *Bipont*, and his mother being the siter of *Gustave Adolphus* King of *Sweden* was Cousen-german unto the Queen thereof; and unto whom she afterwards resigned that Kingdom; leading them from several places, untill he brought them into *Bohemia*, where he is received by *Koningsmark*, and the Duke of *Wittenberg* aforesaid. His design was for the siege of *Prague*, unto which he breaks thorow: But of this by and by, when I have spoken a few things concerning some others.

Therefore *Rabenhaupt* the *Hassian*, together with *Duglas* the *Swede*, (while that those chieftest matters by the main Armies were tumbled out of *Hassia* thorow *Francony*, unto *Lyce*, and into *Bohemia*) recovereth some places that the enemy had possessed, taking *Homburg* by force, where were 20 Ordnance very well fitted, another place by a slight, but raced or spoyled *Gleichenstein*, and at length *Geise* is put in his place, with whom this year 1648, *Lamboy* contended: who closely besieging *Geise* at *Giseck*; through the valour of *Ernest* the *Lantgrave*, who with 300 common Souldiers brake in upon the besiegers, sets the besieged at liberty, *Lamboy* losing some hundreds of his men, (yet *Ernest* himself was taken in the enterprize) who returning unto *Bonne*, and demolishing another place, he presents himself at *Grevenbruge* before the Camps of *Geise*, and joyning battle, he routs the left wing of *Geise* his Army, taking prisoners the Earl of *Weide*, with 200 common men, and seven waggonns. But while (as oft-times comes to passe) he the more sharply pursues the dispersed left wing, all his great guns were taken from his own right wing, and turned against him, so that he lost what he had gotten, *Geise* recovering the Captives of the left wing, and besides slew above a thousand of *Lamboy*'s Army, took 500, above 13 Wagons, and 15 Ensignes, with the losse of but 160 men. *Lamboy* being thus worsted, (whom the Emperour indeed had commanded (as in the year before, 1647,) to come to his main Army; but the *Colonian* prevented it by shewing him, how much it concerned, not to leave *Westphalia* destitute of strength) the Arch-Duke of *Austria* affords him money, and the garrisons of *Westphalia* supply of men, making prayers to make God their friend. The first achievement after this recruit and supplication was the surrender of *Cassell* unto him: after which, he opposeth his Camps to the *Hassian* Army almost within sight of *Agrippine* a City of *Colonia*. *Geise* notwithstanding (especially when *Frederick* the *Lantgrave* had brought him 1500 horse) valiantly conquered the Town of *Marcedure*, *Lamboy* employing his Auxiliaries in vain to hinder it: notwithstanding he stoutly looeth *Paderborn* from besieging: and then both parties sitting down over-against each other at *Brakell* in the said *Colonia*; news is brought them of a concluded peace betweene them.

Q992

Which



Anno 1642  
of Christ,  
to 1646.

Which peace (without doubt) between such accustomed and stomachful enemies, the prevalence of the Swedish Forces this year, together with this new General's coming into Germany with such fresh supplies, caused; who sets upon the City of Great Prague in good earnest, making Mines under the ground, whither *Bucheym*, lest it should be subdued, swiftly came, that he might manfully withstand the Forces of *Charles*, the said new Swedish Commander. Yet surely it was sorely endangered; for into born *Pragues*, are carried no less than 3286 strokes of discharged Ordnance; the besieger likewise possessing two places of residence within the Territories of new Prague, whither also the concluded peace is (not sorrowfully) brought tydings of. It was first concluded of by most noble Embassadors on all sides, in Westphalia, on the 14th and 24th day of October, 1648, whose Masters established it by their assent the two next months; the Emperor on the 13, and 23 of November, the French King on the 14, and 24 of the same; by the Swedes on the 12 and 24 of December; in which peace, the Duke of *Lorraine* (whether through prejudice conceived against him for the notoriousness of his Armes villany in Germany and Flanders, besides spoils done to the French) could not be included therein; and the King of Spain would not, whether out of enmity to the French, or hatred to the Protestants with whom it was concluded; for the Bishop of Rome his most Great father, pursued with a Protestation against it, because hereby his Church should lose both rich Territories and dignities. Yet the Spaniard the same year enters a peace with the United Provinces of the Low-Countries at *Munster*, laying aside all authority and privileged right over those Provinces, as also the lower Hassians with the Upper, on some hard conditions made betwixt them.

Thus (Reader) I have brought thee to the Walls of *Prague*, within which, the cause & foundation of nigh twenty eight years cruell tedious and depopulating war, (to wit) by the choyce and Crowning of *Frederick* the Eleckour Palatine there, unto which he was pushed forward by some *Germane* Princes, was laid and given; and here now ends; expecting for the future that brief saying to be fulfilled, *Pax invidiam prostermit, Peace prostrates or buriech envy*; the which (questionless) was by long broils, slaughters, and cruelties much contracted.

In the mean time in *England* (after the defeating of Lord *Asby*, a Royalist in a field battel, by *Morgan* a Parliament Colonell, himself with 1600 being taken Prisoner, which was on the very brim of the year 1646, March 21. of 1645, and some other strong holds, delivered into their hands, amongst which was *Corf* Castle in *Dorset-shire*, by storm, and a stratagem (not much unlike to that of *Hereford*) Aprill the eighth, 1646, Prince *Rupert's* Troops being also disbanded on the twenty fifth day: and *Oxford* it self (wherein the King was) after a blocking up, was ready to be close-

ly

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

ly besieged by Generall *Fairfax*, the said King escaped out of the City (under colour of one of his favourites man, with whom he rode) unto the Scottish Army, who were encamped at *Southwell* straightly besieging (with some Parliament *English* forces) that most strong and intelling Garrison of *Newark*, who having had a sore plague, together with hunger and straits, upon their Kings coming unto the besiegers, the Scots yielded the Town on conditions. He came thither May the fifth following; which coming, caused (there having newly been some jarring between the English and Scots about want of their pay, and neglect of Church-discipline according to the Covenant) no small dissensions and divers harsh writings between the Scots and the English Parliament, about the disposal of his person (which the *English*, for divers the more just reasons, demanded out of their hands, where they carried farther North) for some Moneths. Notwithstanding, in the very interim there was such a prudentiall management of things; that both the Nations friendlily conjoynd (amongst other transactions) in sending nineteen propositions, as was said, for a safe and well-grounded peace, strained not very much higher than those of *Uxbridge*, unto the King by *English* Commissioners, at *Newcastle*, Scotland's Parliament Commissioners being also there, and assenting; this was Jul. the 15th of this year, Unto which (after perswasions, and pressings, amongst which Lord *Lowdens* Orat[i]on the Scot was eminent) he would not agree. So that the *English* Parliament voting the Scots 400000 lb for their assistance; of which, 200000 l. they were presently to receive, and accordingly, about the latter end of *January* they did. Upon which receipt (as they were to do) they delivered up three strong Garrisons that were in the North of *England*; *Newcastle*, *Barwick*, and *Carlisle*, into the Parliaments hand, and withall the King, (whom many say they sold) for they would not carry him to *Edenburgh*, though they had free leave of the *English* so to do; for fear of new disturbances) whom the *English* Commissioners brought into one of his Southern Pallaces, (*Holmbury*, the 17th of February) according to his desire, with great honour and respect, in all this he not being used as a conquered Caprivate, but a King. The Scottish Army, on February the Eleventh following, marched over the River *Tweed* into their own Country, three Commissioners also (at the same time) being sent thither to the Scotch Parliament concerning publique matters. For they had begun to consult how to settle the affairs of both Nations without the King.

*Oxford* the mean while, which on May the second, 1646. was by General *Fairfax* besieged, and summoned, was in about six weeks time turrendred, (for it was on June the twenty fourth after) the besieged having very fair and large conditions allowed them. (They treated above a Moneths space of the time, and the Parliament debated the business.) For they had five thousand choyse soldiers in that strongly fortified City, good store of provisions; the first day of opening, which was May the sixth, between four

and

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

and five thousand are reported to have been fed thereby, besides no want of Arms or Ammunition. None except *Rupert* and *Maurice*, who were to depart the land, were forbidden to come to *London*, and the Kings son, the Duke of *York*, was with honour thither conducted. But the old Broad Seal which they left behind them, was August the eighteenth, (the Parliament having made a new one) broken and defaced at *London*.

Five or six other most strong places, soon yielding themselves after *Oxford* (of which the Island and Castle of *Scilly*, at the West end of the Land, was one Sept. 16. Which was a great harbour for Men of War for the King by Sea, that took great spoil of Merchants Ships, and from whence Prince *Charles* had not long before fled into *Jersey*) and Colonel *Musseys* brigade being by *Fairfax* quietly disbanded in the West, among whom (about the difference of Presbytery and Independency in Church-Government, of which there were great factions then in *England*) a mutiny was feared, the war was even finished, and General *Fairfax* came Novemb. the 12th with triumph into *London*, where by both houses of Parliament, he was (in order) most amply and heartily congratulated, unto which he replied with a short modest answer. The Earl of *Essex* their first General, that brake the Ice, dying (as is said) of an Apoplexy, the 13th of Sept. aforegoing, who on the 22th of Octob. following, was most pompously (by the Parliament) interred.

But the next year 1647, was partly spent in the divisions of fellow-Conquerours, and many others, divided under the name of Presbyterians and Independants; the former complaining that the solemn Covenant was not kept, the latter, that it was misinterpreted: the Royalists in the mean time ready to joyn with either for their own advantage, very many having out of taken-Garrisons resorted to *London*. These dissensions increasing, Petitions were both presented to the Parliament against the Army as Independants, and the Parliament themselves debated of disbanding them, against which (as wronged) they Petitioned the General, because they neither had their Arrears, nor the Laws and Liberties they had fought for, were obtained. And although the other party much romanced and complained of the said Petition. yet on June the fourth, 1647, the King was by a party (under the command of one *Corner Joyce*) taken from *Holmby*, and carried unto severall places, according to the removing of the Armies quarters. Whereupon, the Parliament ordered where he should reside, which was at *Richmond*, but eight miles from *London*, and also who should attend and Guard him. But in stead of fulfilling the same order, there was sent from the Army an impeachment against eleven members of the Commons, as hinderers of right, doing something against the Army it self, and hindering *Ireland's* relief, the which, had been, as was thought, too long obstructed already by reason of the Kings going to the Scots. This caused half a years separation of these members from the house, although

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

though voluntary. Notwithstanding through the associating of many Citizens and Apprentices of *London* (that were for the restoring of the King and the Covenant) with some that had been chief Officers of the Army, (as *Sir William Waller*, Colonel *Massey*, Major General *Pointz*, after that the houses, through the violation of their sitting, and free voting, by some of the aforesaid Citizens and Apprentices, had adjourned for four dayes, and in the mean while many went from *London* to the Army) the matters swelled up to that height, that on July the thirtieth, the City of *London* openly declared against the Army, (being strengthened on the very same day by three votes of the Members that remained at *London*, (two new speakers being chosen) choosing *Massey* General of their forces and Militia, that they then raised to oppose the Army: Which Army hereupon drawing nigh to *London*, did something allay the Citizens courage; so that they both deserted the Parliament of July the 30th, with the eleven Members, disbanded and delivered up all Forces, Forts, and Militia into *Fairfax* his hand, recalling also their late Declaration. And on Aug. the sixth, the departed Members, were (by the Army) restored to their sitting. Who with a full body, the next day, Aug. 7. Marching thorow the City, slighting its Works and Forts, taking possession of the Tower, and confining its Militia to its own onely bounds, receiving also a Moneths pay from the Parliament in gratification; all this being to the gladdening of some, and the grief and vexation of others.

This being done, the Army Aug. the 18th, 1647. remonstrated their desires for the Parliaments closing with the King, and that he might come to *London* upon that closure; Yet the Scotch Commissioners (who, before satisfaction given unto his people, had denied the justnesse of his accession thither) would have had him new out of the Armies hands, personally to treat at *London*; however to stay at *Hampton Court*, whither he came, Aug. 24. Propositions were sent him thither, unto which to consent he denied; More were again framed, and in the mean time, Nov. 11. he privily fled into the Isle of *Wight*, leaving a Letter behind him, shewing, the end of it was, to preserve his own safety, against whose life some laid wait. About seven dayes after his coming thither from *Carisbrook Castle*, he sent to the Parliament a Letter, in which he was earnest for a personall treaty at *London*, that might be accompanied with three appendices, honour, freedom, and safety; they voted, Novemb. 26. that upon signing four propositions, in order to security, which seemed not unreasonable, that should be admitted: who nevertheless, the Scots being averse unto the said bills presenting, and people divided into parties in *London*, flatly refused to confirm the same, for which cause, they voted Jan. the third, that no further addresses should be made unto him, or message received from him by themselves, or any other without their leave. Which Votes, the General, and Army-Councill on the eleventh day seconded with a Declaration;

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

ration, resolving to cleave to the Parliament in settling the Kingdome's affairs, both without, and against the King, or any of his partakers.

These Votes, and Army-Declaration, inflamed rather than appeased the anger and fury of many people, who not onely longed for, but expected the King to be reitored unto his former dignity, although the Parliament fought by another Declaration, (shewing how often they had applyed themselves unto the King, yet all in vain) to asswage their disturbed minds: so that tumults and insurrections (the beginnings of a second war) were not onely feared, but raised; the first of which was that in the Isle of Wight it self, near the very Castle in which the King was; for which, the principal Leader, Captain *Burleigh*, was at an Assizes, called at *Winchester* on purpose, condemned for Treason, and executed Febr. 10. 1647. Notwithstanding in the moneth of April 1648, *London's* Apprentices, and other young people, gave a notable example of war and sedition unto adjacent places, who saying they were for *Charles* their King, put the whole City in great fear, the Lord Maior being constrained to betake himself unto the Tower, who the next day by a party sent by General *Fairfax*, were vanquished and quitted, and a thousand pound given to the Souldiers for the service. The Duke of *York* (escaping (in the same April) from *James* his house near *Windsor*, out of the Parliaments hands. And the Prince being as a banished man in the peoples eye, by private Commissions from his Father the King, raised war; which war seemed more formidable and dangerous unto the Parliament and Army than the former, both in regard of the Scots, who from assisting friends, were turned threatening enemies, and chiefly those that were called *Presbyterians*, siding both in *London* and the Countrey with the Royalists upon the *Conventant-account*.

Now divers strong holds were seized on for the King, as *Barnick*, April the 30th, by Sir *Armaduke Langdale*; and *Carlisle* about the beginning of May following; *Pontfract* Castle, (where also Colonel *Rainsborough* was treacherously by the enemy afterwards, Octob. 29, taken in his bed and slain, as he lay at the siege thereof,) was June the third surprized by a Major and Captain of the King's, having first killed the Governour. Before which, on May the 12th, there was an Insurrection at *St. Edmundsbury* not far from *London*, and a seditious Petition by the *Surreymen* on the 16th day, the Petitioners besides hurting, killing one of the Parliament's guard; for which, themselves were by some horse scattered, and some killed. A far greater on the 24th day was by the Men of *Kent*, with whom divers great ones of that Countrey joyned; Great toyl it cost *Fairfax* (who was with seven Regiments engaged against these risers) to subdue them; the greatest conflict was at the Town of *Maidstone*, where with very much difficulty, and no small danger, with the losse of 40 men, the place was obtained, against about 2000 defendants, 200 being slain,

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

slain, most of them taken prisoners, besides horses and arms. Thousands of their Countrey-men of the same party, looking on, in the mean time, and not daring to oppose the General. A remnant of this *Kentish* Army under the Lord *Goring's* conduct, approached nigh *London*, to see the afflictions of the Citizens, who being pursued by some Horsemen of the Army, *Goring* with four or five hundred of them crossed the River into *Essex*, where the Lord *Capell*, and Sir *Charles Lucas* with forces joyned with them, who notwithstanding were soon afterwards driven into the City of *Colchester* (unto whom many from *London* resorted) by *Fairfax*, and after a pretty long siege, the besieged having no hopes of relief, and being brought to great straits, horse-flesh being accounted good meat, Aug. 28. yielded themselves into the Conquerours hands, two of whom were shor to death, to wit, Sir *Charles Lucas*, and Sir *George Lisle*.

But (to leave other risings in the West and other places, because they were soon quelled) much danger threatened the Parliaments Cause in *Wales*, by *Laughorn*, *Poyer*, and *Powell's* conjoyning, who before had done the Parliament (especially *Laughorn*) good service. The said *Laughorn* with *Powell* having an Army of 8000 men in the field; unto the which one Colonel *Horton* with but 3000 gave a compleat overthrow, killing many, and taking about 3000 prisoners; this was in *May*. Those two flying unto *Poyer* in *Pembroke-Castle*, a most strong place, (after that *Chepstow* Castle was surrendered unto another Parliament Commander, whose chief Defendant Sir *Nicholas Kemish*, was after the yielding, *May* 25, slain,) *Cromwell* after a while about July had it yielded unto him, with the opposers all prisoners; extremities within constraining them thereunto.

The Earlof *Holland* also (who before had played fast and loose) now taking his opportunity, with the Duke of *Buckingham*, was in arms at *Kington* upon *Thames* with 500 horsemen, who was put to flight by Sir *Michael Leveley*, and afterwards taken and sent to *Warwick* Castle; the Lord *Francis*, the Duke's brother, being in the Combate slain.

The plundering forces also belonging unto *Pomfret* Castle were quite vanquished by Colonel *Rositer*, who, in that action, was sorely, though not mortally wounded.

But the greatest block to leap over, was a Scottish Army under Duke *Hamilton's* Command, who (though they were judged to be both that Kirks and Kingdoms enemies, and so had not their good wishes for their successe) invaded *England* about or in the moneth of June, and a little after being added unto by *Langdale's* forces, were strong in number, having no lesse than 25000, and cruel and terrible unto the Inhabitants where they came. This Army Major General *Lambert* kept in play, untill Lieutenant General *Cromwell* (*Pembroke-Castle* being seasonably delivered unto him) could come to joyn with him, who being in all not full ten thousand strong, Aug. 17. 1648, wholly vanquished and defeated that

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

that Army, took the Lieutenant General, and soon after the Duke himself in flight with 3000 horse, 3000 having been before slain, and 9000 taken prisoners. The Conquerour, *Cromwell*, after this, entering *Scotland* with a happy success, ayded that Nation against some enemies, that there stood up, (reducing also *Barnick* and *Carlisle*) and was by them both magnificently entertained, and ingenuously acknowledged (under God) *Scotland's Preserver*, whose Army was before called by many of them, *A company of Sectaries*.

Divers ships likewise revolted from the Parliament unto the Prince by Sea, at the beginning of June, not suffering *Rainsborough* the Vice-Admiral to come aboard: so that the Prince within two moneths after, was with near 20 sayl upon Thames, out-daring the Earl of *Warwick*, who was too weak for him: But through the prudence of Sir *George Ayscough*, the Portsmouth Fleet was brought by the Princes ships safe unto the Earl, and then they followed the Prince upon the coast of *Holland*, whither he was gone to victual.

In the midst of these stirs, (whether in love or fear of the King and his Cause, the Parliament themselves altered their former Votes, nulling on June 30, 1648, those for no further Addresses to the King, Jan. 30. before, (having admitted the 11 impeached Members) And voted, (though not a Personal Treaty at *London*, yet an honourable one to be had with him, he first accepting thereof, upon Propositions, in the Isle of *Wight*, which began Septemb. 18 this year, 5 Lords, and 10 Commons being chosen as Commissioners to treat, and 10000 l. to defray the charges of the same. It lasted about 9 weeks, untill Novemb. 27.

But in the mean time, this new war being now over, and the Army at some leisure, its Council of Officers altogether disliking that Treaty, gave a prevalency (by a *Remonstrance* of theirs unto the Parliament, Novemb. 20) unto divers County Petitions delivered in the months September and October, for the execution of impartial Justice upon some aforementioned, as *Hamilton*, &c. authors of much blood and calamity, and especially on King *Charls* himself, as the raiser of the whole War, and that God's wrath might be feared to attend them, if he were unpunished. Whereupon, when as the King's Concessions in the Isle of *Wight*, were Decemb. 5. following, voted satisfactory by the Parliament; the next day, divers Members that had so voted, were both secluded from sitting, and confined, by the Army; and a little after, the King was brought out of the Island unto *Hurst Castle*, by a party of Horse, and so to *Windsor*, Decemb. 23. And after the Supreme authority voted to be in the House of Commons, Jan. 4. there was an Ordinance made for the King's Tryal on the 6th day; in order to which, an unusual Court, called, an *High Court of Justice*, was erected, on the 9th day, before whom the King appeared Jan. 20, and when as he would not plead to his Accusation, as being unsatisfied in that Courts power to judge him, (but rather

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

ther forbad the Clerk to stop, and hold his peace, after his earnest desire to speak with the Houses in the Painted Chamber, which would not by the President *Bradshaw* and the Court be suffered) he was sentenced to be beheaded by the said President, the which was accordingly executed on Jan. 30, on a Scaffold erected before *White-Hall*, who there testified unto the people, That he dyed a Protestant according to the Church of *England's* Doctrine, (delivering his *George* unto Dr. *Juxon*, who was his botome-attendant, that, as was supposed, he might send it unto the Prince) and speaking not much in the vindication of his innocency. He was afterwards Febr. 9th, by 4 Lords, and Dr. *Juxon* weeping, inhumed at *Windsor* in *Georges* Chappel, where *Henry* the eighth was formerly buried: after this, Proclamation was made, in Towns, That none should dare to proclaim *Charls Stuart* his son, or any of that race or other, King of *England*, upon pain of death for Treason; for the which, one *Beaumont* a Minister, was on the 16th of February executed at *Pontfract*; the Scotch Commissioners having before, Jan. 10. disavowed those proceedings of the English, and therefore, young *Charls* was on Febr. 5th proclaimed King in *Scotland*, and on the 16 day likewise proclaimed in *Ireland*. The house of Lords being on the 6 day of the same Feb. voted by the Commons, uselesse and dangerous, (a necessary consequence of the fall of Monarchy) and on the 17 day a Democratical Government of 40 chief ones, called a Committee or Council of State, was by and under the Parliament Senate appointed. Amongst which actions, Duke *Hamilton*, Earl of *Normich*, who had likewise raised Forces for the King in this last War, Earl of *Holland*, Lord *Capell*, and Sir *John Owen*, were all brought to a Tryall before a second High Court of Justice, which began Febr. 10, and after sentence of death passed on all five, March the 6th, two, to wit, Earl of *Normich*, and Sir *John Owen*, were on March the 8th reprieved, and the next day the other three beheaded in the Palace-Yard of *Westminster*, Lord *Capell* behaving himself the most confidently, and undauntedly at the time of execution. And to close up this year in *England*, after the voting down of the Lords in Parliament, the Earl of *Warwick*, a Peer, was removed from his Admirallship at Sea, Febr. 21; and the next day, a considerable ship called the *Hart-Frigot* revolted from this new State. But *Pontfract Castle*, that tough relique of *Garrisons*, which all this time held out, was on March the 22, 1648, constrained to surrender.

In the mean time, the *Frenchman* by the Duke of *Turain* well handleth the League with the Swedes in 1646, and receiveth *Anthony Barberine* the Cardinal at Paris, endowing him with some yearly profits belonging to *Spain*: and among other actions of this year, he sets his Army in Array at *Genoa* in Italy, against whom the Pope opposeth the Duke of *Savile*. He also fits a Navy, and takes possession of the Haven of *Stephen* and *Telamon*, besieging the

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

Sea-Town of *Orbitell*, and fighting prosperously enough in a Sea-battel, though he lost *Brese* his Sea-Commander, he gains the place: he was indeed by the Pope's forces cast out of *Tuscia*, yet he subdued *Portogona*, together with *Plumbine*, and so makes the agreement of the *Barbarines* to be easie, with the Pope. But there was a Conspiracy by the *Spaniard* against his Vice-Roy or King at *Barcelona*, the *Spaniard* proclaiming the Duke of *Arcos* Vice-King of *Naples*: yet he vanquisheth the Fort of *Arragon*, and besiegeth *Lerida*; but he received after eight moneths siege, a most valiant repulse by two Spanish Commanders, 70 of his Ordnance being taken, the Spanish Souldiers being spread abroad for the prey. But it was otherwise in *Flanders* this year: for by his Captains, the Duke of *Orleanse* and *Enguene*, he first obtains the Town and garrison of *Corirack* from the *Spaniards*, although they had a sharp conflict with him at *Cuerne* about 113; and then wins *Vinocilerg* and *Mardike* by assault, and at length that notable place for Pyrates, *Dunkirk*, a very great help and safety to his affairs, if he could have kept it.

But the *Dutch*, who (as was said) had consulted with the *French*, of assailing the *Spaniard* on both sides of *Flanders*, do intercept *Tiene* by the crossing passage of the River *Muse*, taking therewith many Captives of no small name and fame; yet they vainly endeavour this year, 1646, to take *Venloe* by siege. Neither indeed is any thing performed by them besides, worth the price of their warfare, unless it were, that by busying the *Spaniard*, they helped the *French* Expedition. They agree also to restore places that were possessed by them in the *Juliacan* field, unto the Electour of *Brandenburg*, who married *Ludovica*, daughter to the Prince of *Orange*.

The same year the King of *Poland* having joyned himself in marriage to *Nirernia* at *Warsow*, he gives a hearing unto an Embassadour of the great Duke of *Moscow*, concerning a League to be mutually made against the *Tartars*. And fearing war from both *Turks* and *Tartars*, he studies warfare; against which, the *States* (fearing an oppression of their Country thereby) do strongly endeavour. Whose brother *Casimir* is now counted or enrolled amongst the number of Cardinals: but being disappointed of the title of a Kingly brightness conferred on him, (such was his zeal) he quite left that pretended holy order.

Now also the *Turk* and *Venetian* do struggle, *John Capello* being declared General for these, in the room of *Francis Erizzo*, who dyed this year 1646, and *Francis Molino* chief Captain of the *Dukes* Navy, both aged men, the first above seventy years of age, the second one under. *Degenfeld* commanding his forces throughout *Dalmatia*, the which, *Turkish* weapons made to tremble, for *Noviograde* is yielded unto him, and *Zare* is overcome; yet the *Venetian* recovered them both again, freeing another place from siege, and slaying the *Bashaw* of *Bosnia*, the *Turk* vanquisheth *Schifanion* Castle, but he is overcome at *Dardanelly*, and again by Sea, losing

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

losing three Oar-Galleys; yet had the upper hand at *Canea* through the error or oblinacy of the Commander *Valettane*. *Capello* also, craving excuse for his age, had *John Baptista of Grimane* for successour in his General-ship, after which, they joyning a doubtfull battel with the *Turks* at *Reime*, a Town that yielded itself unto their violence, the *Venetians* (who think their contention against the *Turk* a kind of holy War) run to three remedies; Prayers, Alms-Deeds, and Embassages to other Princes to intreat their aid and assistance. The *Jews* also being taken in the very act in passing over or conveying Weapons to the *Turks*.

Moreover the *Moscovite* the same year, sends an Embassadour into *Swethland*, being by all neighbourlinesse studious of peace. A Swedish Embassadour de la *Garde* going likewise to *Paris*, and another from the *Transilvanian*, coming unto *Lypfia*, the *Hungarians* at the same time, treating in their publique Assemblies about confirming peace with the said *Transilvanian* Prince, and likewise with their Emperour (who before had Crowned his son their King) concerning rooting out the *Jesuites* from amongst them. This honour also (at *Stockholm*) the *Swedes* afford unto *Gustave Gustafsson* the illegitimate son of their late King, to be reckoned among their Earls, although not capable of a Kingdom.

But the Bishop of *Rome* (who it seems is full of money) bestoweth 180000 Crowns on a Chain to shut up the Haven of *Civita Vecchia* in 1647. Yet (as not having enough) in 1649, he is at variance with the Duke of *Parma* about the Dutchy of *Castro*, whether it be the Fee-farm of the Church. They joyn battel about it, but the Duke hath the upper hand, and then the Bishop layes the blame of moving that war, on *Godfride* a Marquess; but comes to an agreement with the Duke for a round summe, paying him 300000 Crowns presently down, and 600000 Crowns to be told out to him a while after. Notwithstanding the *Castro* (which I understand to be the house or Pallace belonging to the land) is laid equall with the ground. And before the year was ended, a Jubilee or Feast of joy and rejoycing is in a solemn (though Jewish) manner opened or prepared at *Rome*.

The same year there is a new Governour for the *Spaniard* in the Netherlands, to wit, *Leopold*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*; he subdueth three Towns, *Armentere* that was laden with all kind of Victual, also *Comene* and *Lense*; and afterwards *Landrese*, the *French* (at the same time) quickly taking *Basse* and *Dixmude*, attempting also *Newport*, and at *Waver* at *Bruxells*, carrying all the spoil out of the place, turned 80 houses into ashes. Yet now as a fore-runner of a league, there is a cessation of arms between the *Spaniards* and *Dutch*, but *Chemleve* returns with disgrace unto *Dixmude*, while *Ranzove* another *French* man retakes (with great pains) *Lense* from the *Spaniard*, losing six eminent persons in the achievement. unto this Countrey also are brought out of the Indies ten Millions and a half of Gold.

Some-

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

Somewhat there was to do likewise between the French and Spanish on the other side of France, this taking one place from the French, &c. But this was remarkable, that *Lerida* was now strongly defended against the Prince of *Condee*, who was General there in the room of *Harcourt*.

But the next year, 1648, the King of Spain (setting forth his Souldiers, and laying out his money at *Offend*, brings an Army into the field of 27000, subduing *Cortrack*, and yielding *Tyre* to the Prince of *Condy*, and afflicts *Ranzore* the French Commander, who was now gaping for *Offend* it self. Yet he suffers a notable slaughter and overthrow at *Lenfe*, for the French being increased by the Army of *Erlack*, beats the Spaniard grievously; *Beck* and his son being both slain, and taking the Prince of *Ligne*, and the Marquess of *Grana*, with twenty Captains, 6000 & 200 Common souldiers, forty Great Guns, 90 Ensignes. Through Italy the Spaniard takes *Furn*, but loath it again, and receiveth losse by the Duke of *Modena* at *Pade*, who scattered 700 Spaniards, and again, kills 300 of them, taking 1000 and 300. The French King also sending the Duke of *Guse* privily amongst the seditious *Neopolitans*, was disappointed of betraying the Towre or Castle of *Carmines*; the Duke was taken, and was not let go but with a ransom. Moreover homebred troubles arise now in France, (a chief cause being the oppression of the people, which is not small in that Kingdom) the Duke of *Orleans*, together with the Senate striking at the Court, yet there was a present quietnesse, when as the King had changed the Judges of criminall causes, and somewhat eased the people by Parliament. But (as a sore nor healed to the bottome) the distemper grew fresh again, when as the Duke of *Brussels*, more freely pleading the peoples cause, was cast into bonds, the King going aside unto the Temple of *Saint Germanes*. But at length, before this year's expiration, which is 1648, when the Captive Duke was restored, there is a second rest, the King returning unto *Paris*, though with very much intreaty. A homebred conspiracy (likewise) there was made at *Madrid* the chief City in Spain, for the which, two chief actors, *Charls of Padigle*, and *Peter of Sylvaepeme*, Princes, lost their lives.

While these things were in action, the *Tartars*, and *Cossacks* offend *Poland*; the one wasting the Countrey, being instant for their tribute: and the other, for the restraining their antient Religious rites, and the robberies of the Lieutenants of their Countries. They take two considerable places of *Poland* this year 1648 into possession. And *Dominick* the *Polanders* General, despising the counsell of *wiesnawick*, a chief Officer of that Army, is by these *Cossacks* put to flight, losing 72 piece of Ordnance, and 20000 Souldiers, requiring for the ransom of the Captive General, a great sum: this great losse caused great strife in their publick assemblies, so that they fought there about it. But *Chmielinsky* the leader of the *Cossacks*, will have it decreed amongst them concerning the Religious matters of his Countrey, and Family, and the next year

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

year the new King of *Poland*, *John Casimir* who was chosen the year before 1648, and now in 1649 Crowned, (who also married his brothers Widow bound in her bed) moving against both the *Cossacks* and *Tartars*, the *Cossacks* by force obtain both their antient ceremonies of Religion, and an amendment of the Government of their Common-wealth. But the *Cossacks* slew in *Poland* in the year 1648 (So cruel were they) 8000 Jews, and above 200000 Natives.

Toward the latter end of this year, *Frederick*, who was of late Arch-bishop of *Bremes*, is Crowned King of *Denmark*, this Churchman could not say, *My Kingdome is not of this world*. And *Mary Eleanor* the Queen Widow of *Gustave Adolphus*, is brought, (Peace being now concluded in *Germany*) from *Wolgast* with honour and solemnity unto *Stockholm*.

But the *Venetians* afflict the Turks both by Sea and land, in 1647 and 1648. for the Christian Navy under the Knights of *Malta* possesse some places in their enemies Land, taking many Oar-galleys, their land Army doing the like throughout *Dalmatia*, which losses made the Turkish Emperour gnash his teeth for anger, at his Captains. Preys also being taken from him in *Hungary*, where he keeps a Bashaw. And in 1648, *Foscil* the Land-General scourgeth them in *Dalmatia*, vanquishing three Towns, and then dispersing 4000 of these Infidels, two places more yielded themselves unto *Foscil*, yet he lost *Licca*, and elsewhere the Turk had some Masterdome. But the *Venetians* get *Mirabell* in *Creet* or *Candy*, with the Victualling ships: and his losse by shipwrack was great; *Grimmane* the High-Admirall with 1000 and 600 Souldiers, with the value of 14 Millions: the *Venetian* fights prosperously against him also at the Ports of *Dardanell*; for which business, the Governour and three Bashaws were slain at *Constantinople*, thirty Galleys come laden to *Cannae* with Souldiers and Victualls from the Turk this year, where two Forts are lost and recovered by the *Venetians*, and that with much blood, the Earl of *Salm* falls in battel, with seventeen Captains of a hundred men. The *Venetians* maintaining also the Haven of the pleasant Vale of *Suda* in that fruitfull Island, against the opposing Turks, whose Emperour or Sultan *Ibrahim*, is reported about the same time, by reason of his Tyranny, to have given place unto his son, which if so, must be, by the *Timariots*, and however the *Janizaries* willing it so to be.

The year following, 1649, (which according to the *Germane* account, takes its beginning at *January*, but according to the *English*, nor untill March 25.) the *Swedish* and *Emperian* weapons are changed into consultations for establishing and confirming that peace, which was the year before agreed on. For the which, three Dukes come together at *Norimberg*, the Duke of *Amalfe* from the Emperour, of *Erskan* for *Sweden*, and of *Vandort* in the name of *France*; where they treat of four things, restitution of what was possessed, satisfaction for injuries, emptying or quiting of Gar-  
risons,

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

risons, and paying of the Souldiers. Amongst other things, this was done. The *Suedish* Souldier was spread thorow seven Circles allotted them by the Emperour, untill the final confirmation of the peace. And five Millions are wrung out for discharging the said *Suedish* Souldiers. The emptying was begun at three several distances of time, by equall estimations; so now, when at length he had the Articles of highest concernment confirmed, then *Ludovick* the *Palatinate* is suffered to return unto *Heidelberg*, the cause of whose Countries restoring we see, was not upon submission unto the Emperour, so much as upon conditions of Peace. This being done, the Emperour was present this year at *Pesene*, among the publick Assemblies of the land, where he would not admit of the burdens of his Clergy, that had been tossed to and agen in debate since the year 1603. against the Protestants, whatever opposition the Arch-bishop made against the *Palatinate*.

Yet the Conditions of peace were not fully agreed on untill the next year, 1650; for they now also stoutly labour thereabout at *Novimberg*; but when as *Hailbrunne*, with 3000 Royals a month, out of the publike Treasury, were allowed for three moneths time unto the *Palatinate*, untill the matter could be otherwise composed, and four times five unto the Garrison of *Frankendale*; there were three terms of time appointed; in which places that were kept of the Emperour's by others, (of whom, the Duke of *Lorraine* held three, *Hammerstein*, *Landshule*, and *Homburg*) should be voyded: The French King lets go all Towns in the Coast of *Rhene*, besides the Cities of the Wood. The Emperour strengthens *Prague* and *Eger*, with the same frontier that lay against the Turks; he receiveth *Olmuce*, and other places, as the Duke of *Luneburg* did *Nieburg* at *Visurge*: and then the Souldier was payd off and discharged, who goes down by Companies unto the pay of the *Spaniard*: from whence some fearful minds in *Germany* (the *Spaniard* being hereby strengthened, and the hired being Souldiers of fortune) foretold some hurtfull and unhappy thing to ensue.

But to leave *German* events, and return unto *Brittains* transactions; after that *Charles* the late King was taken out of the way, and other Capital enemies, amongst whom, Colonel *Poyer* was shot to death, April 25. 1649, this second, (though but short) War being over in *England*, that Common-wealth speedily set about the transporting a considerable part of their victorious Army into *Ireland*, that had been too long hindered of relief by domestique interruptions, whereby the united parties there (having proclaimed young *Charles* their King) had very much prevailed, as by and by we shall speak: But there was a present stop made hereto by parties in the Army it self, surnamed, if not nick-named, *Levellers*, as that they should profess to lay every man's estate equal by force: Yet this I onely find, that those so called, refused to pass over into *Ireland*, untill they should see (the King being now gone, who

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

who was by them and his Judges accounted a Tyrant) some footsteps of reformation in the Common-wealth touching the Law, Tythes, &c. according to some former vows made both by Officers and Army; and chiefly according unto something not long before drawn up, which was called, *An Agreement of the People*, presented to the Parliament, Jan. 19. 1648. This refusal, or rather resistance of theirs, was at this time esteemed both unseasonable, and giving an ill example unto others; so that April 27. 1649, one *Lockier* was shot to death in *London* (after some resistance made against his apprehenders) as an arch-stickler in this design: whom that party openly carried to his grave, in a kind of stately affront (as was judged) with Sea-green colours, at that time, the badge of such. Then they gathered themselves together in arms at *Burford* in *Oxfordshire*, whither not a few of the Army were coming to join with them. But General *Fairfax*, and the Lieutenant General *Cromwell* in heat and speed marched May the 9th against them, and an Officer being the day before sent unto them in way of treaty and affability; instead of what they expected, they were surprized on the 15th day by the General's parties, three of the chief actors being shot to death, and another (a preaching Cornet) upon recantation pardoned. But one *Thompson*, a stout-fellow, escaping, stood in his own defence, who being pursued, was at length slain in a place called *Wellingborough* Woods; their former fellow-Souldiers, now being enemies, behaving themselves fiercely and roughly towards the surprized. And at the same time that this was doing, (which was on the 16th of May) *England* was voted a free-State. (General *Fairfax* returning from this reduction three dayes after, May 29. 1649) Whereupon an Act for abolishing Kingly Government was May the 30th, proclaimed in *London* by the Lord Mayor of that City.

The Impediments of *Ireland* being now removed, *Cromwell*, now made Lord Deputy of that Kingdom, thought upon his march thitherward, the which he began July the 30th following: But the City of *Dublin* being hardly besieged by the Irish Marquess, *Ormond*, with an Army of 22000 men, which began June the 21, (and *London-Derry* by some of the rebellious there, for these two strong holds were onely left unto the Parliament) about 3000 horse and foot were posted away before-hand to *Dublin*, who joining themselves with 6000 more at the most, under the Command of Colonel *Jones*, sallied out, and totally routed and defeated *Ormond's* besieging Army, killing nigh 2000, taking many, with all their great Guns, Ammunition, &c. as also a wealthy spoyle; This was on August 2. 1649, about 14 dayes before *L. G. Cromwell's* arriving there with his considerable Army; who being come, lost no time, but soon after besieged *Drogheda*, a stubborn place, and, by storming, made it yield indeed, in a short time, but not without sweat and blood unto the Conquerour, who (for terror's sake to others) killed with the sword nigh 3000

ssff

armed



Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

armed men after entrance therein: and then the confederates mouldred down apace, garrisons being taken and yielded, and field-parties routed, in great number. Nevertheless, the Natives being expert in the Bogs and Woods of that Country, whither they retired and sheltered themselves, made a perfect reduction thereof, much longer than otherwise it would have been.

In the mean time, the *Covenant in England*, was turned into an *Engagement*, for the which there was an Act made Jan. 2. 1649, by the Parliament for its subscription; it ran thus, *I do hereby, promise and engage to be true and faithful unto this Common-wealth, as it is now established without King or house of Lords.* Upon this, many were tryed and outed of their places and Offices, as in the Universities and elsewhere; neither could any one have any publique employment either in that National Church or State, that refused to subscribe; nor indeed could he challenge any protection from the said Common-wealth.

A little before this, news was brought to *England* of some of their Plantations that fell off from obedience to this State, and either thinking or saying to themselves according to the Roman Proverb, [*Antiquum volo.*] I will have the old Law still, I will have no Innovations; punished divers with branding, fines, and banishment, for not conforming unto Monarchy, and the old Church-Liturgy: these were *Virginia*, and those called *Carybe-Islands*: who were notwithstanding (by a prohibition of all Traffique with them, and the industry of Sir *George Ayscue's* Fleet,) within not many moneths, themselves *Nolens, volens*, reduced to Conformity.

This year also 1649, toward the latter end of October, was *John Lilburn* (who had been an opposer of one and t'other, most part of the Wars, and was committed to the Tower of London in July, 1646) brought to tryal for his life, (by a Scissions called on purpose) for invective books (that were generally believed to be of his penning) against both the Governours, and Government of *England*, who notwithstanding was, beyond expectation by a Jury of 12 men, acquitted, and thereupon released.

We find the *Scotch* King about the end of 1649, March 16, at *Bredagh* in the Netherlands, with whom the Scots there treated, and concluded, an utmost endeavour to re-instate him in his Father's Throne over the three Nations; in order to which, June 6, 1650, he set forth from *Holland*, and landed in the North of *Scotland*, English ships lying in vain to intercept him. He was not crowned King of that Nation, untill Jan. 1. following. For he did not ascend that Throne with ease; (For first he took their *Solemn League and Covenant*, and then (which went against the hair) signed a Declaration framed by the Kirk, for abandoning his Fathers sins, and his Mothers Idolatry, &c.) And scarce at all might be said to enjoy it. For *England's* Parliament (upon this agreement between the Scots and their King, resolved to prevent a War in their own bowels, by invading *Scotland*. To which end,

*Cromwell,*

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

*Cromwell* was sent for out of *Ireland*, (things being now in a victorious condition there) who leaving *Ireton* his son in law Deputy in his room, returned into *England* about the beginning of June, 1650. *Montrose* (the old Thorn in *Scotland's* sides) not long before, attempting to infest his Country with fresh supplies, was on March 29, defeated by a party of that Kirk's, and being disgracefully brought prisoner unto *Edinburgh-Castle*, May 18, was on May 21, barbarously hanged and quartered by his incensed Countrymen. After whom, some others were there executed, as *Urrey*, and *Spotswood*, &c. the said *Spotswood* confessing he had a hand in the murder of one Dr. *Dorilaus* an English Agent, at the Hague in *Holland*, May 3, 1649, who was about the middle of June interred at *Westminster*.

And the year following, (such was the malice of some in other Nations against *England*) Mr. *Anthony Ascham* (a man of accomplished abilities for such an undertaking) who was sent from the Parliament a publique Minister into *Spain*, was June 6, 1650, cruelly stabbed in the head at *Madrid*, by one of the six that had easie admittance into the room, his interpreter *Riba* a Spaniard, being also kil'd in the place. Vvch persons all (save one) being carried to prison from the Sanctuary, by the King of *Spain's* Command, occasioned a difference between the said King and that Church, its privileges being, as the Church-men pleaded, hereby infringed.

But General *Fairfax* being now voted by the Parliament to march with an Army against the Scots, (for Reasons best known to himself) laid down his Commission, whereupon it was immediately conferred on *Oliver Cromwell*, June 26, 1650, who two dayes after advancing Northwards, (The Parliament also publishing a Declaration of the grounds and reasons of that advance, which was afterwards sent unto *Edenburgh* from the new General, by a blinded Trumpeter) the Scots expostulated the business in Papers sent to the Governour of New-Castle, putting the English in mind both of the *Covenant*, (which the *Engagement* had now buried) and also of a large Treaty and Union between *England* and *Scotland*: The which their Overtures with young *Charles* had dissolved: So that the English Army entered *Scotland* July 22, and on the 26th day came to *Dunbar*, where they were refreshed with provisions by their ships: but afterwards, for five or six weeks space, endured so small discouraging hardships by sickness of Souldiers watchings, weariness, and coldness enough of the weather, together with want of drink, (having in the mean time had some particular skirmishes with the enemy; untill at last, near the same *Dunbar*, (whither they were marching from *Haddington*, the Scots Army following them apace, and hindring them at a Passe) they being environed, and, as it were, in a pound, were constrained to break thorow without delay, who after a vigorous and unanimous pressing forward, and but an hours sharp conflict, routed and put to flight the Scottish Army consisting of 20000 horse and foot; the English being scarcely 12000 in number.

Stiff 2

The



Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

The foot were generally slain and taken, many Colours, all their Ordnance, with 15000 Arms, as also many Colonels, and other inferior Officers. This was on Septemb. 3. 1650. For which victory, a day of Thanksgiving being solemnized throughout England, as before a Fall, many Ministers (upon the former Covenant-account) were averle and backward in the observation thereof; at which time also there were dayes of Humiliation kept both by the English and Scots (of the Kirk-party) in Scotland: amongst whom there were no lesse than three divisions of parties.

A fair entrance being now made into Scotland's bowels, by this overthrow in the fields of Dunbar, divers strong holds were successively delivered into the Conquerour's hands, (as also Colonel Kerr with his party were defeated by Major General Lambert, taking Kerr himself, and some other chief Officers; Colonel Strauchan himself; with others hereupon, (who before were stiff and zealous for the Kirk) voluntarily came in to Lambert;) who lying at Edinburgh before that Castle, both published and put in execution a strict Proclamation, for prevention of surprizals and murders daily committed on the English Souldiers by straggling Scots: and on Decemb. 24. 1650, Edinburgh-Castle it self, an impregnable place, and of very great importance unto the English affairs, was surrendered unto General Cromwell, with all the Magazine and furniture therunto belonging, the Souldiers of the Castle being to march away with their Arms, in a flourishing manner. The foregoer of this surrender, was a Battery raised, on which a great Canon and Morter-piece was planted, and began to play: yet many were of opinion, that Money carried it, according to that old Verse,

Ἀργυρεὶς λόγῳ καὶ μάχῃ καὶ πάντα κερταίουσιν.

with silver weapons do encounter,

All things and places thou shalt conquer.

Little was done for a while after, by reason of the Winters sharp coldness.

But in the interval of these actions in Scotland, these things were done at home by Parliamentary authority in England; After the coining of new moneys, (in which the King's Arms and Picture was left out, and the Common-wealth's stamp in the room thereof, with this circumscription, *God with us*, on the one side; and, *The Common-wealth of England*, on the other; for which there was an Act made July 17. 1649) the King's Statue, that amongst other Kings and Queens since the Conquest, was erected in the circumference of the Royal-Exchange in London, was on Aug. 10. 1650, broken and defaced, with these words written over the head, *Exit Tyrannus Regum ultimus, Anno libertatis Angliae restituta primo, Anno 1648, Jan. 30.* That is, *The last Tyrant King (or Ruler) goes out, on the 30th day of January, 1648, in the first year of Liberty restored to England.*

England. Which if so, is a happy year for that Nation indeed; His Statue was also overthrown at the end of Pauls the Cathedral, on the same day, and within few dayes after, quite removed from the Exchange, and broken to pieces.

Also one Colonel Andrews a Royalist, was underfelt and detected by one Bernard, (who for his pains was rewarded with a Troop of horse) in conspiring by Charles Stuart's Commission, King of Scots, against England's Government, which being accounted (at this time) of dangerous consequence, he was by the High Court of Justice tryed, and beheaded, Aug. 22. 1650. One Benson being for the same Conspiracy hanged, Octob. 7. following. A rising in the County of Norfolk began likewise in the same month October, to the same purpose; which being soon allayed, divers to about the number of 20, suffered death.

This year also were the King's and Bishops Lands, together with the Estates of banished offenders, set to sale.

Now also the Seas were every where troublesome unto Merchants, by reason of the English and French ships (besides Pyrats) that were at the utmost variance; and especially Robert the Palatine, who of a Land-General, was now become a Sea-Admiral, by divers preys greatly endammaging the English Merchants, (who was abetted by the King of Portugal therein, for the which he lost no small prizes by the hand of General Blake's Fleet. But at length Robert spoiling and burning divers of the said Merchants ships at Malaga in Spain, in the necessitated absence of the said Blake, he was pursued by this valiant Admiral, who took and destroyed seven of his ships, two being onely left, that fled to corners; one of which a while after suffered a sad disaster in the Straights, Robert himself being in great danger.

And that it might be known abroad, that by their Embassadors, England's Common-wealth, like the Tribe of Judah over the Israelites, were fiercer and more prevalent than Charles Stuart, who claims that Crown, and had sent divers unto severall Princes for supply in recovering the same, a notable example in Turkey at Constantinople, about this time made manifest; where two meeting together in Ambassage, (to wit, Sir Henry Hyde from the King of Scots, and Sir Thomas Bendish for the English Parliament) unto the Sultan; Hyde, as thinking his Commission the strongest, stood up against Bendish for Preheminency of place, (comming thither with intent to destroy the Turkish companies Trade, and to seize on the Merchants goods, and null the Parliaments interest in those parts) Bendish hereupon obtained a hearing of the state of matters before a Vizier Bashaw there, who (like a crafty Politician, as the Turks are, siding (although for most absolute Monarchy in their own practice) with the strongest side in possession) delivered up Hyde unto Bendish his disposure; who sent him into England, where he (his act being judged not onely an affront, but a denial of the Government in the eyes of other Nations) was, March the fourth 1650, beheaded before the Exchange for Treason, the place of Merchants meeting for foreign News.

But

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

But there was a more remarkable deliverance from death of one whose name was *Anne Green*, innocently condemned to dye, as for murder of an abortive Infant, at *Oxford* Assizes in 1650, through a too harsh prosecution of her potent Master *Sir Tho. Reed*, by one of whose men or friends in that house she affirmed to be with child: the overtraining of whose body by working, caused this abortion to be made in a house of easement: who hanging by the neck about half an hours space, together with stroaks and tuggings by her feet of souldiers, and other standers by, must needs in the judgment of all, be fully dead: Yet being brought into a house for anatomizing sake, (as in the University is wont to be done) her throat seemed to rattle; whereupon one Doctor *Petty* and *Bastock*; Physicians, with some others, used speedy waies to recover her life, both by breathing a vein to give a vent to suppressed nature; and also other good means to comfort natural heat, so that the soon spake, and was restored, and still maintaining her integrity, (as well she might) had her pardon. This I infer here amongst the number of memorable accidents, because it was Gods speciall finger in discovering mans rigour, and a poor creatures innoency. The said *Sir Thomas Reed*, within a short time after, being choaked out-right at his own Table, confirming that morall and true saying of *Cato* the wife.

*Esto animo forti, cum sis damnatus Inique,  
Nemo diu gaudet qui iudice vincit iniquo.*

*See that thy heart nor courage fails,  
When thou unjustly art condemn'd;  
For who by wrongfull Judge prevails,  
His joy shall quickly have an end.*

The King of *Portugall*, having many places and Parishes within his dominions void of Priests, treats with the Bishop of *Rome* in 1649, concerning receiving an Embassadour, and the supplying those empty charges with Church-men: publishing withall, a book, that unless the Bishop did cure that neglect, he would take that right to himself. The defect was not supplied by the Bishop, and yet notwithstanding, he doth not allow or indulge the said King, in taking to himself the priviledg of appointing Bishops &c. in the year 1650.

But the United Provinces of the *Netherlands* have no great joy for the peace made in 1648 with the King of *Spain*, because they found it more profitable for the people, when the war was vigorous amongst them, which must needs be by the Souldiers spending their pay there, and taking of spoil, which (its like) they sold to the inhabitants at a mean rate. But as he that liveth by Physick, may truly be said to live miserably; so that is but a wretched self, that's gotten by blood, ruines, and desolations. Yet the Prince of *Orange* had almost the same year 1650, found them some

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

some work among themselves who finding not such entertainment (as his now aspiring sovereignty, beyond his Predecessours expected, at *Amsterdam* in the Province of *Holland*; *Bicard*, or *Bicher*, a Consulor Lord of that City, having without the advice of the other Provinces, commanded, for keeping the peace-sake, the souldiers that were spread through the Garrisons to be discharged) he attempted secretly and politickly to seize upon the City of *Amsterdam* at unawares, by Horse and Foot under the command of Count *William*, who were comming in the night, and were to be at the Town-Ports, at an appointed time, the Foot that went before being to make entrance for the Horse. If this had taken effect, that huge masse of treasure, that was banked up there, had fallen into his hands, with which he might have helped the Scotch King, his brother in Law; in whose fathers Throne, the said Prince had a vehement desire to see him established. But the design was frustrate, by intelligence given before-hand, by the Post comming from *Hamborough*, whereat all warlike preparations were made to defend the City against the assyulant, and the sluces opened. The Prince hereupon made conditions of peace with the Lords of the City, on no low terms, and had two of the *Bicards* removed from Government, the chief of whom being *Andren*, was distastd by the Commonalty, as for other reasons, so for damage received by drowning of their fields. This was in Summer, and in Octob. following (*Man being but as the flower of the field*) he died, whose Princessse was about ten daies after delivered of a Posthume son. He was buried in Pomp and State, before this years expiration, (according to the *English* account) March 15. 1650. whose young son, did allay the States grief for their (although before not loved, yet now lamented) General.

The *French* King had but bad successse in *Italy*, in the year 1649. for *Ceva*, *Biella*, and the Temple of *Damian*, fell from him into the *Spaniards* hands; as also in *Catalonia*, where he lost *Sapirce*: so that the Duke of *Modena* being afflicted, was constrained to a reconciliation with the *Spaniard*, whose Arch-Duke that is now the Governour of *Belgium*, takes also *Ipra* from them there, besides two other places, and sends 4000 robbers of the prey into *Campania*. Yet the next year, 1650. the *Spaniard* had greater advantages on the *French*, by reason of that Nation's Civill discords and troubles, which in a greater measure again brake out; for three of the chief subjects of that King being imprisoned by an arrest from the Queen Mother and Cardinal *Mazarine*, that great Church-Statef-man, and the Queens huge favourite (in whose hands the management of State-affairs were in the Nonage of the young King *Lewis*, whose Father died as was said in 1643,) to wit the Prince of *Condy*, of *Conti*, brethren of the Royall blood, and the duke of *Longville* their sisters son, for that upon this discontent, they took some strong-holds of the Kingdome into possession, the which were (after their imprisonment, reduced by force, threatnings, and

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

and favour) yet now the people (wanting not leaders) and being enraged at the Duke of *Espernon*, but in general against *Mazarine*) a civil war universally overspread the whole Land; the Duke of *Bullein* stirring up the people of *Aquitane*, who as well as the Princess of *Conde*, and the Dutchess of *Longville*, desired aid, both by money and Souldiers from the *Spaniard*, who supplied them therewith. After much blood spilt, the liberty of those Princes was procured; *Espernon* was withdrawn from *Bordeaux*, and from Government in the Common-Wealth, but the Cardinal with all his kindred were banished, yet he soon returned when the storm was a little over, with a kind of triumph, both to the grief of the emulating Princes, and to the grievance of a servile Commonalty, who labour with continued troubles. The *Spaniard* laughing as it were, at these things; possesseth *Garrisons*, and spoils some *French* Provinces with much more ease. The *French* loseth in Italy the Haven of *Plomline*, and *Portogone*; and is beaten off from the siege of *Lions* in *Catalonia*. In *Picardy*, he beholdeth *Castellum*, and *Capella* to be wrung out of his hands, notwithstanding he valiantly defended *Guise*. Yet in *Flanders*, he opposeth three Armies against three *Spanish*, under the command of three Dukes, of *Villequier*, *Hockincourt*, and *Villareg*; The *Spanish* King sending the Arch-Duke and two others in the mean while, into the borders of *France*, who, in 1650, lord it over *Picardy*. Yet himself was not without some trouble, for the sedition of *Naples*, that began again to bud forth in 1649, upon which, the heads of divers were cut off, and was not quenched the year following, although he had filled Prisons with the peoples Governours. He also wanting money, requires silver from the Clergy of *Naples*, (for the which his Grandfather the Pope was angry) and sold the Duchy of *Pontremole* for five hundred thousand Crowns, in the year 1650.

But the Bishop of *Rome* now grants eight years time to the Duke of *Parma* to restore the *Castrum*, that the year before 1649, was equalled with the ground, and that he might seem to be *Servus Servorum*, a servant of servants, washeth the feet of some Religious Pilgrims, at *Rome*; whose Cardinal, *Ludovise*, feasts 9000 of them at one time.

*Swethland* having now little to do, agms again in 1650. the designe was uncertain, whether for *England*, or against the *Muscovite*, or to settle *Germany*, which before they had unsetled. Two Embassadours likewise come unto *Stockholm* at the same time, one from *Portugal*, another from the *Netherlands*; and by the mediation of *Contarine* the *Venetian*, are the former conditions confirmed with the King of *Poland*. With which *Polonian*, *Chmielirsky* Captain of the *Cossacks*, is the same year reconciled, having received the liberty of their Churches; yet the tumults of the Provinces do not altogether cease, the Embassadours of the *Muscovite* bring themselves with Pride and disdain, into three Provinces, of which

*Smolensko*

Anno 1646  
of Christ,  
to 1650.

*Smolensko* is Prince, and return with a title; and then the great Duke of *Muscovy* was not called in letters as their friend, but as their Lord and Master, for which so unworthy actions, the Embassadours were imprisoned; nevertheless an everlasting peace is established between them, although against the will of the *Tartars*.

Whose Cham or Emperour takes off the accustomed Tribute from the *Polanders*, that they used to pay him, on this condition, that there should be a mutual aid afforded when desired, if the Turk should invade either; by which Turk, a Tartar that was allyed unto the house of *Ottaman*, suffers a repulse at *Constantinople*.

The said Cham also tames and brings under the *Cerassians*, a people within his dominions that rebelled against him. But breaking into the Kingdome of *China*, because a Tyrant had now taken possession of that industrious Kingdome, as going beyond his bounds, he is sent forth (as we say) with a Flea in his Ear, being wholly expelled thence.

But the War between the *Venetians* and the Turks waxeth hot in the year 1649. Two overthrows the *Venetian* gave him; one in the Haven of *Foggia*, where 72 Oar-Galleys perished, 18 bigger ships, 60 ships laden, 6000 Turks were slain together with the *Bashaw*, taking as many more Prisoners. And this with the losse of but 90 *Venetians*, and 40 wounded.

This made the *Sultan* mad with rage, and he changes the Purple Garments of *Sarazone*, his Embassadeur with others, into a mourning weed; he casts the Christians into chains, and falls upon them with whips, but by the perswasion of the *French* Oratour, he is appeased. He also makes stop of the *English* Ships, and so returns unto his force against the *Venetians*: Who slew 1500 Turks at the Haven of *Suda*, drowning six Galleys, with the *Bashaw* that was their chief Captain. They contend vehemently for *Mocenige*, 4000 Sacks stuffed with Wooll, and 33000 Scaling Ladders being brought thither for storming, 'tis twice lost, and as often recovered again, but at the third attempt, a Mine is made underground that consumed 3000 Turks, and 200 Christians. Twice were the Alps of Italy crossed, into the lower *Hungary*, for prey.

And when *Haase* had given place unto *Colorede*, and had gone into *Dalmatia*, 20000 Turks were there consumed with the Plague. The *Sultan* could willingly have laid aside *Creet* this year, but, yet he could not do it, because of a *Moschee* or Temple of *Mahomet*, that he undertook there to consecrate. However, more than fifty thousand Christians (so called) were Captivated by him.

The next year 1650, he is watchfull over the *Persians*, who shewed their arms in a bravery against *Babylon*; and reneweth peace with the *Hungarians*, who the year before, because the Em-

T t t

perour

Anno 1646  
of Christ  
to 1650.

perour of Germany would not grant them a war against him, upon the forgiving them a tribute of six hundred thousand Royals, were willing to make a peace, and (as a token of their neighbourliness) the number of some thousands of Royals were to be reciprocally exchanged between them. He likewise reduceth the irregular Cyprians, and the Bashaw of Cagye into order and obedience.

But in Candy, the Venetian affects him divers times with loss in the Gulph Del Vole: four times he was preyed upon, and the Haven of Maluase was stopt, together with victuall. Whereupon he moves in war by seas his Bashaw, and that chiefly, because his Navy at Dardanelle was penned up. Other Havens were also possessed by the Venetians, that provision could not be brought into the Island for relief of his garrisons; so that we will now leave the Venetians in their hopes, of having a most large surrender of that whole Island unto them.

In the year 1646, it was disputed at Paris by Sarbona, Whether there ought to be one head of the Church, or whether indeed there may be more; (this being a rare Controversie among Catholics, I here insert it) which little book that reasoned of the Point, the Pope whom it nearly touched, gives to be examined by his Cardinals. The same year is also a book of one Ostermann concerning Government, publicly burnt at Agrippina of Colone; but in Wallersdorf at Glace, 109 persons, with a noble woman with child, are strangled by fire. In 1647, there was a kind of miraculous thing befell one James (a child of 7 years old) that was born at Modena, by reason of the tender greenness of his years, who at that age disputed, and that learnedly, of all faculties. This youngling was more than

*Ingenui vultus, puer ingenuiq; pudoris.*

*A Child of comely basfulness, and of ingenious lock,  
Who more perform'd by wisdom's gift, than Students long by book.*

Also the Sultan, had 7 sons born to him in one month this year. But the Swedes had the treasure, digging, at Meynave, out of the earth, the value of five millions. Outlandish birds were seen at the meetings of the Rivers Mosilla and Rhene, returning about the evening beyond the bank of France in 1648. In which year the Gate of Lubeck opened of its own accord. And many ships were swallowed up throughout the whole Ocean and Mediterranean Sea.

These amongst other great ones conjoynd in marriage, the Infant of Spain, and the first-born daughter of the Emperour in the month of June, 1646; Philip the 4th, King of Spain, with Marian the Emperour's daughter, in 1647. Ferdinand the Emperour himself, with Mary the daughter of Leopold of Tyrole, in

1648

Anno 1646  
of Christ  
to 1650.

1648, whose Empresse Mary dyed in 1646. The Duke of Mantua with famous Isabella of Tyrole, in 1649. Ludovick Count Palatine Electour, with Charlotta Castellan the Hessian. The first-born sonne of the Duke of Bavaria, married Adelhaid, daughter to the Duke of Savoy. These two, in the year 1650.

There yielded in Italy unto Nature's destiny in the year 1646, the Duke of Parma, Honofrius, the Cardinal brother of Pope Urbane the 8th; the Heir and Infant of Spain at Saguntum, of the small Pox. The Prince of Condy at Paris; Oxienstern the Swedish Chancelour at Stockholm; Christian the 5th, Prince of Denmark; Charls Prince of Poland; the Archbishop of Mentz, at Frankford on Mœn; these 5 in 1647.

The year following, the death of Charls the first, of Great Britain, King, made famous, with divers others in England the same year already mentioned in the History. Also the Duke of S. Donatus in Apurium for tyranny this year. Philip Earl of Pembroke in England. Christiern the 4th of Denmark; and Vladislaus the 4th of Poland. Seven Governours in Misovia put to death by that Great Duke for disallowing or reproving a Marriage he made the same year 1648, with the daughter of a vassal Earl or Prince. Gustaf Oxienstern the Swede. Mazarine the Archbishop, at the Sestian waters, the brother of the Cardinal; Ragutzky the elder, the Transylvanian Prince; and also the Duke of Brunswick.

In 1649, Mary the Empresse, having brought forth a son, as also the Dutchesse of Modena after the childbirth. Frederick Savell the Emperour's Embassadour, at Rome; Marcinice Jaroslaus, Vice-King of Bohemia, of late cast out of a window. Lastly, Ferdinand Archbishop of Colone, and one of the seven Electours in 1650. Wrangle, the Arch-Warriour of the Swedes; and Ossalsky Chancelour of Poland, who was about to go to Rome for Religions sake.

T t t 2

CHAP.

## CHAP. V.

An Account of what happened in divers places worth remembrance: from the 1650, to 1653 inclusive, the year wherein General Cromwell was sworn Lord Protector of Englaad, Scotland, and Ireland.

After that (through *Ferdinand's*, the German Emperour, at the beginning of 1651, marrying *Elenor* Dutchesse of *Montua* at *Neftade*, and *wolfgang* Palatine of *Neoburg*, taking his third Wife *Francisca*, daughter of *Ego* Earl of *Furftenburg*) (all *Germany* being now pacified) the Courts and minds of the Princes were poured forth into Nuptial merriments, and by the late pacification, it was thought to be provided for the rest and quiet of *Germany*; the beginning of a new War (by the Electour of *Brandenburg* entring into the *Montian* Dominion in hostile manner) suddenly arose: of which, though it were sudden and straightway composed, yet this was the occasion. *William* Duke of *Julia*, *Clivia*, and *Montia*, &c. marrying, in 1546, *Mary* the daughter of *Ferdinand* the first, Emperour, obtained two privileges of *Charls* the fifth, Emperour; which were afterwards also confirmed by his successours: First, That if Duke *William* should beget no heirs male of *Mary*, or being begotten, they should depart life; all the right of the Dominions and Provinces, should be devolved on the daughters begotten of them; or if none of them should survive, to the lawfull heirs male of the same. And then, that all those said Dominions should remain undivided, with one onely universal Lord and Successour: a custome hitherto observed by the Princes of *Germany*, and many of other Countries, to confirm the strength of power.

*William* therefore, begetting two sons, and four daughters; *Charls* *Frederick*, the elder, a Prince of great hope, dyed in 1577, in the flower of his age, at *Rome*. *John* the other son, (his father dying 1592) succeeded in his dominions. But being sickly, and begetting no children of two wives, in 1599 left them (being dead) to be of divers Princes desired. But by the Emperour's authority, the inheritance had regard to his sisters: the eldest of whom (married to the Duke of *Borussia*) dyed in 1608, before *John*, leaving one onely daughter, *Anne*, who afterward married *Sigismund* Electour of *Brandenburg*, which is the Grandfather of the late Electour *Frederick*: whence the *Brandenburgians* derive their right to those Provinces. The second sister marrying *Philip* Count *Palatine*, she out-living her brother, and beautified with *wolfgang* an heir male, seemed to be nearest of all unto these dominions. The third was given in marriage to *John* of *Bipont*, having also sons. The fourth marrying *Charls* Marquess of *Burgovia*, the Palatine of *Neoburg*, passed over her right to himself by certain agreements. Therefore *John* dying, and others asserting their

their right by writing: *wolfgang* the *Neoburgian* Palatinate, in his Mothers name; *Ernest* Marquess of *Brandenburg* in the name of his brother the Electour *Sigismund* and his Wife, possessed those empty Provinces: making an agreement at *Tremonia* the last of May, equally to govern the said Province, till it should be friendly by judgment decided of every one's right.

Then was it provided by the States of the Country, concerning Religion, and the exercise thereof, That the Roman Catholique, and other Christian Religions, as spread abroad thorow the Roman Empire; so also in these Provinces, as to their publique exercise, they be continued, and defended, nor that any one be troubled therefore. But when as at that time, there was almost onely the exercise of the Catholique Religion, in all places of the Dominions, except a few, into which, about the last time of Duke *William*, and his son, against the Commands of the Princes, Masters of new Religions had crept: it came to passe, that by the winking and emulation of the new Princes of different Religion, new masters were strivingly brought in against the former Covenants and promises. But, the *Neoburgian* Palatine, leaving the *Augustane*, acknowledged the Roman Church openly in 1614. He professed it at *Dusseldorp*, marrying *Magdalene* the Duke of *Bavaria's* daughter; beginning also to be much more diligently intent than before; that, what was agreed on in the beginning, the exercise of the Catholique Religion should be observed in those places, where it had been before; those being sent away and cast out, who had been hitherto brought in against the Covenant, or hence following endeavoured to creep in. And that the rather, because it was expressly agreed in the *Borussian* and *Neoburgian* marriages; that if the inheritance of these dominions should chance to come to the above mentioned daughters: there should be no innovation: but the Catholique Religion retained without any obstacle. But the *Brandenburgians* thought it neither hindered the nuptial Covenants, nor the State's promise, if the followers of other Religions, than what was usual, was brought in; so it might be done without wronging the Catholiques, and they among these do live quietly and peaceably: moreover, it made for the no lesse quiet of the conscience, than of the Common-wealth, seeing 'tis a thing uncomely, and diverse from the worthinesse of a Prince, That no exercise of his own Religion, should be lawfull in his own Provinces, (which Religion is onely one) whose likeness and agreement may breed love to them, and the reverence of their Subjects. This diversenesse of opinions increased, after they divided the Provinces betwixt them, and the contention came even so far, that the States of *Holland* intermingled them; and to affright the *Neoburgian* from his purpose, what they could, (by their Garrisons of the neighbouring Cities of *Rheinberck* and *Orsoy*, led captives the parish Priests, and religious persons out of the Dukedomes of *Montia* and *Julia*; and held them some years in hard custody; in which also, some were consumed with grief and misery,

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

lery, plainly harmless, and without the like game, danger, and controversy: whence it came to passe, that many Catholique parish priests fleeing for fear, their subjects long wanted the exercise of divine worship: and many Infants departed this life without baptism; persons of riper age without Confession and the Eucharist. Therefore, the *Neoburgian*, that he might deliver himself and subjects from these difficulties: after letters sent, and Embassages to and from *Camerarius Burgstorf*, chief man with the Elector of *Brandenburg*, in the year 1647, he thus concluded Apr. 8. about Religion, and its exercise, at *Dusseldorp*: That the Churches, and their goods and revenues should be restored to those that possessed them in the year 1609; but both the publique and private exercise of Religion without the Churches, should be in that manner as it had been in any part of the year 1612. Moreover, it was confirmed by the Elector: and Deputies sent from either Prince, who begin the execution of the said transaction. But here again the action stuck. The *Brandenburgians* would not go back from a promiscuous use of Religion, and that in the strength of the first Reversals. The *Neoburgians* contended (on the contrary) that they must of necessity insist on this transaction, which had been taken up as a moderating of the said Reversals, of whose meaning hitherto the Princes could not agree. So they departed, the matter un-ended. But the *Neoburgian*, when as not long after, a whole pacification was ended in *Germany*, because the particular transactions did not proceed, he fleeth to the observance of that; and for restoring Religion and its exercise, he took the year 1624 generally prescribed in that pacification, in example of the other Princes, who now began to consult of that in many places throughout the Empire. Amongst these things, the Elector of *Brandenburg* in this year 1651, talking with the Elector of *Saxony* a few dayes in *Liechtenburgh* Castle, went to *Clive*, sending some Armies before, which he had drawn out of his garrisons, and others to follow after; over all which he had placed *Otto Sparrius*, they being in all, almost 4000. A Command was published at *Clive*, June the 15th, in the Elector's name, and straightway fastened on some places, in the Dukedoms of *Montia* and *Julia*, to their States and Inhabitants; The Elector first signifying, he came into those Provinces, that he might restore their liberty and privileges, into the ancient place and vigour, according to the Covenants and promises entred into by their Ancestors, against the divers injuries of the *Palatine* of *Neoburg*; and in order hereto it was needful, that one place or other be possessed where he might fasten his foot. Where none ought to interpret that thing otherwise than he thinketh, since it is not his purpose, to seek any other than the glory of God, the safety of his Countrey, and Justice, which he would have imparted to all and every one, without respect of their Religion, according to the Covenants and transactions of former years. And then, he commanded all Governors and Inhabitants of these Dukedomes, that hence-forward they decree

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

decree or pay not any contributions to the *Palatine* of *Neoburg*, afford him no ayd, by counsel or deed, but that they respect, and observe him and his heirs only. At last he threateneth, if any one shall go on to resist this Edict, or shall help the *Neoburgian* by any means, he (taking away all his priviledges) shall hold him for an enemy and Rebel. The same day of his Edicts divulging, the Elector's Souldiers attempted *Angermund* Castle, by storming, and casting in many granadoes, some Citizens and others being slain at the first onset, and then, when the Castle made stronger resistance than they had hoped, the street being plundered, and the adjacent Temple, the spoyleys go thorow the neighbouring places with the same force. And in the Temple of the Village *Mulchem*, not being content to have robbed that, they slay an Infant in its Mother's arms, by cleaving its head. Thence to the Village *Pempelfurt*, in the sight of *Dusseldorp*, and the very Forts, coming to the Village, driving away all the Princes herds, and lesser cartel, they spoyle as much as they might for the time, adding threatnings of speedy coming with a greater Army and forces. In the mean time, the Elector had sent to the Emperour to purge or acquit himself, explaining the causes of this his action against the *Palatine*, which for brevity sake I forbear here particularly to set down. But the *Palatine* openly protesting by a writing of the force and wrong brought on him: refused also what things were published against him in the Elector's name, by a contrary writing: and then sent to sollicite *Leopold* the Arch Duke, and *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine* for ayd, to repell the unthought-of war: sending also to *Vienna*, perfectly to inform the Emperour of all things, and require help against unjust force. And having first purged himself to *Cesar* of *Brandenburg* his accusation, he contuted it by a divulged writing. And (the while) musters Souldiers throughout all his Dominions, over whom he placed *John Baro* of *Reuschenberg*, and *Philip* returning out of *Brabant*, brought a part of the *Lorraine* Army.

They pitching their Tents, sate down between *Ratinge* and *Dusseldorp* against the *Brandenburgians*, who had taken up their place not far from thence, at the mouth of *Anger* flowing into *Rhene*. There, among often skirmishes made; at length by the Princes talking together, a pacification began, and then by the Emperours Embassadors, it was brought to an issue at *Clive*, October the eleventh, that the controversy of Religion and its exercise, be examined and decided by the Emperours Commissioners long since named; to wit, the Bishop of *Munster*, and the Duke of *Brunswick*, and that to those two may be joyned, to wit, *Augustus* Duke of *Anhalt*, and *Ludowick* Earl of *Nassau*, for the Elector, and the Bishops of *Paderborn*, and *Onabridge* for the *Neoburgian*; who consulting among themselves, and both parties reasons being heard, shall enquire whether the state of Religion in these dominions, be to be reduced to the observance of 1624, according to the peace at *Munster*; or to 1609, according to the Covenants and agreements

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

ments (Provincial) of the Princes, and if indeed, it shall seem to be this last; how those Covenants are to be understood and explained. But if (for the equalness of voices) the Commissioners can determine nothing; The Emperour, some head men of the Empire being taken into counsell, alike in number, of either Religion, or in the next assembly for Election, shall decide and determine the whole controversy by the same; and they shall stand to that judgment without further contradiction, by force of the late publick pacification; but (the mean time) all things shall be restored into that state in which they were before these shakings, nor shall any one be troubled for Religion. And then, shall neither, for the future, wage war on other, even under any pretence, and that under penalty, of violating the peace, and the losse of all rights, which any one pretendeth to these dominions; but shall let go controversies hence-forward to arise, to a friendly composure, and judicall sentence.

Lastly, Prisoners on both sides shall be let go, and Armaies, except those which are needfull to the guarding of the body, or Garisons of places, neither shall it be for any one by deceit of either party, to be present by counsell or help at these shakings. But other things which concern the state-Politicke, shall so remain, as it hath been agreed in divers transactions between the Princes, yet without prejudice and deceit of all, who pretend to the Julian succession. These things being thus finished, and sealed to, they straight way depart from Arms.

But after that *Charls Stuart* was at or about the beginning of Jan. 1650 Crowned King of Scotland, at *Shoone*, the usuall place of former Coronations, (which Moneth, as I have said, beginneth the 1651 year of the Germane Account) in a solemn assembly of the heads of that Kingdome, among which ceremonies; *Robert Duglasse* gratifying him with a prepared Oration or speech; exhorted him (from the opinion of them all, to revenge his fathers death) he spent all his time in warlike preparations; and, as soon as the season of the year permitted, came into the field against General *Cromwell*. The Scots began to be both powerfull and numerous by reason of an agreement now pieced up of many parties and factions there, and having compleated their levies to 15000 foot, and 6000 Horse, they faced the English at *Torwood*, but would not engage them, encamping behind inaccessible places to delay the same. Wherefore the English landing 1600 Foot, and four Troops of Horse, at *Queens Ferry*, into Fife (losing but about six men) July the 17th 1651; the Scots sent four thousand to drive them out of Fife. Whereupon the Generall, sending four Regiments of Horse and Foot to joyn with the other, the English attempted the enemy by ascending the Hill, routed the Scots, slaying about 2000, and taking 1400, *Brown* the chief Commander being one; few of the English were slain, though many wounded. Then was there an additional strength sent into Fife, and strong *Inchgarney* Castle there, surrendered, July the 25th after, and soon

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

soon after that, *Brunt-Island* (with all its Provisions &c. onely the souldiers to march away with Colours flying, &c.) was delivered to the English Army; of much concernment, as storing them with all necessaries. Thence Marching to *St. Johns Town* of great strength, it was also soon yielded unto them. But the Scotch King (fearing least his Army should moulder away with daily detriments, and rather willing to transfer the War into England, slip in thither by the way of *Carlisle*, comming to *Worcester*, Aug. the 22th with about 16000 Horse and Foot; (an undertaking rather from necessity and despair, then mature deliberation, as appeared by a brief letter of Duke *Hamiltons*, taken amongst other Papers) yet animated thereto by a notable design of English Covenanters with the Scots; who being offended with the new Commonwealth, now favoured the Kings cause.

This design was for a generall rising in *Lancashire*, and adjacent parts, the Earl of *Darby* to come out of the Isle of *Man*, and raise the Countrey, who joyning with the Scotch forces, should confront the Parliaments greatest power. The chief promoters hercof in England, were severall persons (now too tedious to relate particularly) meeting at *Christopher Love's* house, a Presbyterian Minister, who (by his own Narrative) was privy thereto after the breaking off of the Treaty between the King and the Scots at *Jersey*, which being seasonably discovered, and the grand Agent *Thomas Cook*, apprehended, and after escape, retaken, March 30. 1651. Major General *Harrison* (after the seizing of one *Birkenhead* another Agent) was by the Parliament ordered to March Northward with Horse and Foot, to prevent risings, and oppose the Scotch Army if they should enter England: *Love* himself with others being apprehended; he was arraigned before *Englands* High-Court of Justice, June 21. 1651, sentenced July the fifth, and on the 15th day being reprieved for 28 dayes, was with one *Gibbons* another actor therein beheaded on *Tower-Hill*, August the 22th following.

The King comming to *Worcester* was proclaimed King of Great Britain and Ireland, thought to take his journey straight to London; which made the City tremble. But while he stayeth there to refresh his souldiers (a few daies) wearied with their journeys toyl, *Cromwells* speedy expedition, prevented his counsell; who leaving *Monk* with 7000 in Scotland (who took in six strong holds there, with severall others) came to *Worcester* before he was expected of his adversaries, and after about an hours sharp dispute of the Kings party, in opposing the English passage over *Severn*, they giving ground, maintained with about three Regiments, another hot dispute at *Powick* bridge: but at length ran into *Worcester*: whom the English, as Conquerours, following, they drew out what they could, making a resolute fall; where after a little retiring of the Generalls men, the enemy was totally routed, their works taken, the Town entered and sacked, about 10000 were taken in all, and about 3000 were slain.

V v v

Amongst

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

Amongst the many of quality, Duke *Hamilton* (being wounded) fell into his enemies hands, dying next day of his wounds; happy (as one saith) in this, that by a timely death, he escaped the *English* Axe. The King fleeing, and leaving his fellows, whose faith he suspected in such straits, gets with one Lord *Wilmot* into a hollow Tree next day till night: and so in disguised habit and hair cut, by the assistance of a Lady, (whether coming to *London* first or not) got over into *France*, 500 l. being offered to any one that should detect him.

This defeat was on Sept. the third, 1651. when as a little before, Aug. 23. the said Earl of *Derby* landing with about 300 in *Lancashire*, had soon increased them to 1500, he was by Colonel *Lilburn*, with his onely Regiment in an hours time routed; many of note taken and slain, with all their baggage, &c. the Earl himself recovering *Worcester*, but was afterwards taken by the said *Lilburn*, and Octob. 15. following, beheaded at *Bolton*, as was also Sir *Tho. Fetherstonhaugh* at *Chester*, on the 22th day, with others executed at *Chester*, *Shrewsbury*, &c. Gen. *Cromwell* returning to *London* in triumph, Sept. 12, was loaded with famous gifts from the new Common-wealths Governours.

The Captives, whom for number the Prisons would not contain, being diversly disposed of, a great part were sent away into *America*.

In *Scotland* also were apprehended most of the Nobility and Gentry of that Nation, as they were assembled to propagate their King's interest. So that *Scotland* being after the *English* Armies passage into *Fife*, with little difficulty subdued: Commissioners were sent from the Parliament at *London* into *Scotland*, to receive those that had yielded themselves into their defence and protection.

Four very considerable places fell this year 1651. into the Parliament of *England*'s power, as additional to their success. The one was *Scilly* Islands, a great annoyance to Merchant-men of the Common-wealth, for reducing whereof, Gen. *Blake* set sail, Apr. 18. which were surrendered Jun. 2. following. Another was the Isle of *Man*, for which end, three Foot Regiments were shipped at *Chester* and *Leverpool*, Octob. 16. who although they were on the eighteenth day driven into *Beumarvis* by contrary winds: Yet, sayling thence the 28th day, they had assurance by an Islander, of landing without any opposition, (which facility recompensed their former difficulty) all being secured for them but two Castles, *Rushen*, and *Peel*, which (they besieging) were delivered on low terms without any blood-shed Oct. 26. Colonel *Hain* also, setting sail for *Jersey*, Octob. 19. and after some difficulty, and opposition received in landing, all was soon reduced but *Elizabeth* Castle, which held out till the middle of December, whose Governour, Sir *George Carteret*, had large conditions, for the wonderful strength and situation thereof.

The last was *Cornet* Castle in the Isle of *Guernsey*, even an impregnable

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

pregnable place; which although being before attempted by storm, divers were slain, and some drowned in getting off, yet in the Month of November, was surrendered on composition.

The Parliament about this time, setting forth an Act for increase of Shipping, and encouragement of Navigation; to the perplexing of the *Hollanders*, which was contained in four particulars, they sent their Embassadors to *London*, who came thither Decemb. the 17th and had audience the nineteenth. But because they could not procure the repealing of that Act especially; they assayed to do it by force. Two Embassadors were likewise sent into *Holland* out of *England* March 11. who though they were received at *Rotterdam*, yet were severall times affronted.

On Jan. 11. this year, was the *Barbado's* surrendered to Sir *George Aylough*, in the Parliaments behalf. And *John Lilburn* Jan 15. was sentenced to banishment about the business of Sir *Arthur Haslerig*, which was executed on him by an Act made to that purpose on the thirtieth day of the same Month. 1651.

And to conclude this year in *England*, an Act of general Pardon and Oblivion came forth from the Parliament, Febr. 24. 1651, that ill-will and rancour might be buried as to former differences and offences before Sept. 3. of the same year; and although many were thereby (at the present) cleared at Assizes, &c. for divers offences; yet many things besides murder were left unpardoned; neither was the stomach of many in that Common-wealth thereby allayed, as afterwards appeared.

But in *France*, after that the Princes were set at liberty, (and the banished Cardinal, after some movings, came into the Archbishoprick of *Colonis*, seating his dwelling at *Brule* in the Archbishop's Castle) they coming to the King and Queen; that there might be a greater confidence of a reconciliation, the Lieutenantship of *Aquitane* is offered to the Prince of *Condy*, (this in 1651,) the Duke of *Espernon* renouncing it of his own accord; whose Government the *Burgedians*, obstinately enough, spake ill of; and unlesse he laid down his Lieutenantship, they threatened new wars.

The King, in the mean time, entering into the 14th year of his age, came forth from under the tuition of the Queen his Mother, in the month Septemb. of the same year: where (in the highest Court of the chief ones of all ranks or states assembled, with all the King's Senate; likewise the Duke of *Orleans*, *Andegave*, *Tork*, and the Queen of *England*, the King's Aunt) the King having given brief thanks to the Queen his Mother, in that for so many years he had governed the Kingdom with great care and pains, is placed in a Chair of Estate, and begins his Kingly functions. First of all the Prince of *Conde* was quitted, (being absent); for, that he might not be present at this action, he had few dayes before departed from *Paris*. Then was confirmed the Senate's decree for the Cardinal's departure. Some favours (also) being conferred



Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

ferred among the Peers: amongst other things, the care of the King's Seal was committed to the chief Man of the Senate, the Archbishop of *Tholouse*. Moreover, the Prince of *Conde* going into his own Province of *Aquitane*, the minds of the *Burdegalsians* being in friendship with him, musters new Armies; many of the Court and Nobility following him; by whose favour and wealth, when he had drawn both all *Aquitane*, and *Santonie*, with the neighbouring Cities, it appeared, that he undoubtedly attempted a new War. The King endeavoureth, with the Duke of *Orleanse* and the Senate of *Paris*, to appease *Conde*, that laying down his arms, he might sit down quiet in his own Province. When that could not be obtained, he also preparing arms, condemns *Conde* of Treason; and leaving *Paris*, speedily goes to *Pisave*, speedily calling back the Cardinal, who, the while, had enrolled some forces for this event. Therefore about the end of the year, the Cardinal returns into *France* with an Army; the Senate of *Paris* much beseeching, That the decree against the Cardinal might be continued.

Thus that most flourishing Kingdom being divided into factions, destroyes its self with its own forces; and the next year 1652, Civil discords more cruelly burned out, *Condy* and *Orleanse*, with the Parliament of *Paris*, urging by force of arms the Cardinal's passport, and the Decree's execution against him. He being supported (on the contrary) by the King and Queens defence stiffly defends by arms, the dignity of the King's authority against the force and power of the alike contenders. But, what will at length be the issue hereof, following years will make manifest.

This year also 1651, brought forth a notable Victory to the *Polanders* against the *Cossacks* and *Tartars*. For the *Cossacks* not being contented with the peace made a year or two before, kept an Army in the field; and not containing themselves within their appointed bounds, they hindered not the *Taurican Tartars* going into *Walachia*; but defended them with all their ayd, against which, the agreement was. But when the *Polonians* in so doubtful affairs, fate down with part of their Army, beneath *Camenecce* in *Podolia*, to defend their own borders: nor could bring help to the Duke of *Walachia* their confederate, for fear of the *Cossacks*: yet they blamed the *Polonians*, as if they provided arms against them, and mustered the whole Souldiery of their Kingdom, onely utterly to destroy and blot out them. Therefore *Chimelinsky* sending Embassadours, first to *Potoccie* the Lieutenant General, who was at *Camenecce*, and afterwards to the King: They required, that the Army might be led out of *Podolia* and their borders: who answered them, They should return to their own, and leave the *Tartars* and *Walachia*; that there was no evil to be feared from them, while they stood to their Covenants, and maintained the peace. But they continued holding up arms, and to help *Poland's* enemies: the cause was, That being careful of their own defence,

they

they might look to their own affairs, and see that the Common-wealth took no damage. Then at Assemblies which the King had summoned about the end of the former year, an Embassage was decreed to the *Cossacks*, to denounce peace, if they obeyed; but contrarily, war: and also for that war, if there were need, to advance the Charges and common Customs; and that 36000 foreign Souldiers should be entertained, besides those *Arables* that were in the Kingdom, and that it should be in the King's power, when there was need, to call all the Nobility to arms, and so to meet the enemy with all the forces of the Kingdom. The Assemblies ended, the King designed six *Poland* Peers to go to *Kiove* in Embassage to the *Cossacks*; and that being in vain, he bent his mind to provide for Arms; sending away those thorough *Poland* and *Prussia*, who should muster what Army they could, and at first of the Spring, should bring them to him beneath *Lubline*, with his whole Nobility which he was speedily to call forth, ready furnished and provided. *Chimelensky* hearing of the issue of the Assemblies, prepared himself no less slowly for an imminent war. Neither onely entering into fellowship with the *Tartars*; but also he had sent dispatched Messengers to *Constantinople*, and to the neighbouring Turkish Governours, and into *Transylvania* for ayd. Some of whom being intercepted, discovered his wonderful counsels and cruel attempts against *Poland*. Therefore in the beginning of the Spring, *Chimelensky*, passing over *Borysthenes*, led 140000 (among whom were 12000 *Taurican Tartars*, whom as yet 40000 others were to follow) into *Polshia*, and there, possessing some places, pitched his Camps. The *Polanders* in the mean time, *Calinorum* being their Leader, take *Finnicia*, a famous City of *Podolia*, and kill all the *Cossacks* therein: Which slaughter hastened *Chimeliskis* coming out of *Polynia*, where he had also forcibly taken by the way *Bialakarcave*, so that he moved with his whole Army against *Calinorum*: who being unequal to so great forces, recovered *Camenecce*; and leaving a sufficient Garrison there, betook himself to the King, who having passed over the River *Bug* at *Secale*, expected the *Polonian* Nobility, and the *Lithuanian* Army. *Chimelensky* having endeavoured in vain to stay *Calinorum* going back, with small fights, attempted *Camenecce* with some onsets; but being alwayes repulsed with the great slaughter of his Soldiers, he at length fate down pitching his tents at *Constantinowla*, which place is distant almost 15 miles from *Camenecce*, between the borders of *Polynia* and *Podolia*. Moreover, the King, after that his Nobility and the other Armies came together, his Army being increased to almost 100000; moving from *Secale*, he led it against the enemy. Neither did *Chimelensky* shift off the fight, now more fierce, because the Emperour of *Tartars* himself had a little before, entered in his Camp with the most choise of his Souldiers. And then he far exceeded the *Polonians* in number; for if credit be to be given to those who have written of his Camp, it was to the number of 300000. Therefore both Armies moving

Anno 1690  
of Christ,  
to 1693.

ving forward, they came together at the Town *Berejsk*. The first onset on the *Polander's* Camp was made by 10000 *Tartars*, June 28, who being repulsed with slaughter, the Emperour himself next day, with all his *Tartars*, and part of the *Cossacks*, assaulted the *Polander's* Army with great force: and that battle endured, untill night withdrew the fighters. This two dayes battle was a flourishing skirmish before the general fight; and as yet, their forces were in danger of departing from each other with a mutual fear. On the third day therefore, which was the last of June, the whole Army met, and that with such force and stiffnesse on both sides, that it long remained doubtful which side should have the victory. At last, the *Polanders* strength overcame, who, when they had made their first assault on the *Tartars*, and had driven them from their standing, their flight very much troubled the *Cossacks* Army. So the most numerous Army being scattered and put to flight, left a most ample victory to the *Polonians*. The King a little before evening, in the very place where the battle was fought, gave thanks to God, the Conquerour of enemies, singing a solemn hymn of thanks: which, a mixt sound (with terrour) of great Guns and Trumpets, did distinguish with an acceptable mean or temper.

The day after, it is told the King, a very great multitude of enemies, which escaped in flight, as yet stood, and fenced themselves in a fit and fenny place, setting their Carts and baggage on the sides of them, of which they had a great number. *Chmielensky* was in that place, waiting for an occasion to be given him, of revenging himself. The King, seeing he could not (by reason of the place) drive them out thence by force; he appointed, that (all wayes being stopped up) no provision might be brought unto them: which thing, drove the besieged almost to desperation, but that they had as yet one passage; thorow which, when (all their victuals being spent) on the 10th day after, they had disorderly poured forth themselves, many of them were slain by the *Polanders* following on them: Some also were sup up in the Fens and Pools, the bridges breaking which they (in this necessity, and want of matter) had sewed together of skins. In this flight, there perished to the number of 20000: and amongst them, the Greek Patriarch, sent from *Constantinople* to encourage the *Cossacks* to this war. This victory being gotten, the *Poland* Nobility, although the King very much exhorted them to prosecute the victory, taking (at length) their leave, departed home. The other Souldiers that were hired for reward, were sent to follow after them that fled. *Janus Ratzvil*, Captain of the *Lithuanian* Souldiery, following with his men to *Borjshenes*, took in *Kiove*, once the Mother City of all *Russia*, and *Monilove*, with other Cities situated on this side and beyond *Borjshenes*, by force or surrender. *Chmielensky* therefore being afflicted with so many discommodities, and fearing greater, is again compelled to desire peace. Which was granted him by the chief Governours of the *Polonian* warfare, (their

Anno 1690  
of Christ,  
to 1693.

(their Armies daily diminishing with infection) on these conditions: First of all, a common toleration of Religion is granted, a return of them that were expelled, into their countrey, and a granting them their goods; pardon was granted to all that followed this war, and to *Chmielensky* himself; yet so, that coming to the next publique assemblies, he should in humble manner beseech the King: neither henceforward should have more then 20000 *Cossacks* under his banners, with whom he being tied by oath to the King of *Poland*, he should defend the borders of his Kingdome against the inroads of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Muscovites*, and to dissolve what leagues he had with the *Polanders* enemies; and hereafter perform faith and obedience to the King and Kingdome.

In the beginning of the year 1652, (which with the *Germans*, is in January) *Maximilian Henry*, Arch-bishop and Electour of *Colonia*, having a little before entered into the Priesthood, and receiving it at the hands of *George Paul Stravim*, Bishop of *Joppa*, and the Bishops Vice-gerent of *Colonia*, entered into *Colonia* with the Arch-bishops *Pall*, on the fourth day of the said January, and the day following, (the Clergy and Magistracy of the City being called together to the Metropolitans house; the Princes, *Philip Palatine* of *Neuburg*, and *Ernest Lantgrave* of *Hesse* being present, the Canons according to the custome, standing by and waiting, with the Bishop of *Joppa*, and six mitred Abbots) he began the solemn evening duty of the Lords Epiphany, which being finished in a Pontificall manner, the next day, the day of Epiphany it self, in the same assembly having performed rites at an Altar built in the same place, he bestowed his *Archiepiscopall* blessing, with a most full pardon of sins, on a multitude of people gathered about him. To the making famous this act, which *Colonia* had not seen a hundred years before, and the more fitly to behold the Majesty of the Rites of the *Romane* Church, there was prepared in the middle of the Cathedra, a place made of boards between the chief Pillars, and fenced with wooden railes, and on every side adorned with most pretious Arras-hangings, which the Guard men with Launces encompassed to restrain the multitude; in the former part of that place was built a Theatre on high with three steps, embracing almost the space of two Pillars, and spread with red cloath, for the chief Altar which was seen in its front towards the East: the Altar also being higher then the Theatre by three steps, Silver Images of the twelve Apostles, and in the midst of the same, a very great Silver Croffe (once the gift of *Pilgrime* Arch-Bishop) beautified it. At the right part of the Altar towards the North, was raised up the Arch-Bishops chair, and a little beneath it, four seats for the Princes, the *Neoburgian*, *Lantgrave* and his Wife, and the Earl of *Fursenburg* his Widow, &c. But the publick confession of *Ernest* the *Lantgrave*, and *Eleanor* his Wife, of the *Romane* Catholique Faith, much increased the solemnity and joy of this first Liturgy. Who, before it began, when

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

when at the Arch-bishops feet, before the Altar, their face turned toward the people, on bended knees, they had desired to be received into the lap of their mother the Church, he consenting, they approved of the form of faith before read, and touching the book of the Gospels, they confirmed it by a solemn oath. Many hardly with held from tears, when they saw, these Princes to be returned to that Church, as it were after banishment, over which, a 150 years before, Arch-Bishop *Hermanne Lant-grave of Hesse*, (of the same house) was chief, most famous for his many and great deserts toward the Church of *Colonia*. And then (after a little time) the Electour went to *Hildese*, and comming to the possession of that Bishoprick, he there finished what belonged to a Bishop, with the accustomed Ceremonies, even as he had also done before at *Leodium*.

The same year 1652, produced a bloody Sea-war between *Englands* Republick, and the states of the United Provinces; for these (through divers years prosperity and industry in Maritime affairs, although it was truly observed by *Keckerman* in his time: *Hoc certum est omnibus hodie gentibus navigandi industria et peritia, Superiores esse Anglos, post Anglos Belgas, et inter hos, Flandros, Hollandos, Zelandos.* This is sure (saith he) that of all Nations at this day, the English are chief in the diligence and skillfulness of Navigation; after them, the Belgians; and amongst these, the Flandrians, Hollanders, and Zelanders) so increased in strength at Sea, that they durst dispute their quarrel in divers bloody encounters with the English, refusing to strike their top-sail in the narrow Seas, *Englands* right of Sovereignty there; as also denying to pay the tenth Herring (caught by them in the English Seas) to the new Commonwealth, refusing also not to afford refuge or help to the house of the *Stewards* in their Provinces as was demanded; and to give satisfaction for damage brought by them on the English in the Indies, which amounted to above 1000000 lb sterling, and for hereafter to be cautious of not offending, and also to suffer the English to sail freely and safely on the Danish Sea, with some other such like. An Embassadour indeed from *Holland* had audience, but departed out of *England* without any composition of differences June 30. For while they were upon a Treaty, *Vantrump* the Dutch Admiral comming with 42 Sail of Ships (nigh the *Britain* shore, towards *Dover* road) to view, refused to strike his Sail, and hung out a Red flag, the signal of his Fleet, giving the English General *Blake* a broad side; Whose Navies encountering each other about four hours space; one Dutch Ship was sunk, and another taken, with their Captains, and about 150 Prisoners. The English Fleet having about ten slain, and fourty wounded, and receiving little hurt, but in the Admirals Masts, Sails, and rigging, with many shot in her Hull. This was May 19. 1652, and was the beginning of almost two years War, in which, the first fight after was made by *Sir George Ayscough* (returning some Weeks before from reducing the English Plantations) in July, who with his

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

his Squadron of Snips, took, burnt and dispersed 30 or 36 Dutch ships, and August 16 following, fought them near *Plymouth*. But three terrible Sea-fights were betwixt the two Nations (besides others) in that space of time. The one, Febr. 18, 1652, near the Isle of *Wight* and *Portland*, wherein the Dutch were worsted. Another was June 2, and 3, 1653, where they were also worsted; but with the losse of the English General, *Dean*: who was afterwards pompously buried at *Westminster*. The third and last, and saddest conflict, but most seasonable victory to the English, was July 29, and 30, 1653, wherein their Admiral *Vantrump* was slain, and their Fleet also worsted, about 30 Men of War being sunk and fired, and about 1000 prisoners, with 6 Captains taken out of their sinking ships. Yet Gen. *Blake* himself was somewhat put to the worst in Decemb. 1652, which made the Dutch rejoyce and insult; and in the *Levant* Seas, toward the latter end of the same year, five considerable English ships were taken and blown up by the Dutch also.

There was also several Transactions between the English and the Danish King; who refused to deliver some Merchants ships; that (to avoid the danger of the Dutch then in the Sound) had put themselves under his protection; 18 sayl set forth from *North-Yarmouth* Sept. 19. 1652, to convey them home; and on the 26 day received a Letter from the King, That he would secure them for the Merchants as he had done; but would not deliver them unto them; whereupon they (as destitute of hope) left their Ships and came home with this Fleet. And although in Octob. following, one *Braashaw* was sent as an Agent to the King of *Denmark*, on the Merchants behalf; yet he both detained the ships, and (at length) sold the goods.

The French Fleet also this year, consisting of seven considerable Ships, one small Frigate, and six fire-ships, and going Septem. 5. from *Calice-Road* for the relief of *Dunkirk* (then hardly besieged by the Spaniards), were chased by Gen. *Blake*, and most of them taken; whereby the besieged in *Dunkirk* despairing of relief, yielded it to the Spaniards, Sept. 6. *Graveling* also did the like.

About the same time, an Embassadour from the King of *Portugall* (having to grapple with the Spaniard) arrived in *England*, with a sumptuous Train; and having audience Octob. 2. 1652; after many Conferences, Addresses, and Offers, obtained a Peace.

Agents likewise (now about) came to the English out of *France*, the one from the King, desiring a release of his aforesaid Ships going to relieve *Dunkirk*, and for a right understanding between them. Others from the Prince of *Condy*, craving ayd against the Cardinal; who had straightly besieged *Bordeaux*. All which Negotiations were of none effect. Other Nations also interposed for composing those mortal differences between the English and

X x x

Dutch;

~  
 Anno 1650  
 of Christ,  
 to 1653.  
 ~

Dutch; as *Sweden*, the *Switzers*, the Cities *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, &c. but with as little effect (at that time) as the other.

But General *Cromwell* perceiving the corruptions and dilatory proceedings of *England's* long-sitting Parliament, to perpetuate their Session; entered the House April 20, 1653, with some of his principal Officers, and (some reasons thereof being given) dissolved that Parliament: the Members departing, some by force, some for fear, others with murmuring. Then he with his Council of Officers set forth a Declaration for satisfaction of the Nation, declaring the grounds of its Dissolution. Which had the consent both of the Officers of the Land-forces in *Scotland* and *Ireland*, and also of the Generals and Captains of the Fleet. And lest publick Officers of the Nation should decline from their duties; or others make disturbances hereupon; he published another brief Declaration April 30, That all persons should demean themselves peaceably, and obey the former Laws, under a Council of State then declared, till approved persons should be called from several parts of the Common-wealth, to the Supream Authority: Which new Parliament being summoned (by Warrants from the General and his Officers, to each Member pitched upon throughout the three Nations) to appear July 4. 1653; they accordingly met in the Council-Chamber; where the General (after a reasonable speech unto them) devolved on them, or any 40 of them, the Supream Authority and Government, by an Instrument under his own hand and Seal; not to sit longer than Novemb. 3. 1654: who, though they made some laudable Acts, whereof one was, for relief of Creditors and poor prisoners; yet in other things, there being no small confusion and disagreement amongst them; as about Ministers and Tythes; For continuance of which, *Londoners* had petitioned Sept. 2. One among them moved, That their sitting as then constituted, was not for the peace of the Common-wealth, and therefore it was requisite to deliver up the powers they received from the General, unto him: which motion being seconded by several Members, the Speaker with the greater number going to *White-Hall*, by a writing under their hands, resigned up the same unto the General accordingly. This was on December the 12th, 1653. On which day, the General and his Council of Officers meeting, and a wife speech made to them by him, some things were transacted in order to a settlement and composure: advising also with other persons of interest, how the burthen of governing *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, with the Armies and Navies, should be born, and by whom; who at length resolved, That a discreet Council consisting of 21 persons should be nominated. And that the General himself should be chosen Protector of the three Nations; which was done accordingly in *Westminster-Hall*, Decemb. 16. 1653, the Commissioners of the great Seal, Judges, Council of State, called the Keepers of *England's* Liberties, Mayor and Aldermen of *London*, and most of the

~  
 Anno 1650  
 of Christ,  
 to 1653.  
 ~

the Armie's chief Officers being present; where Rules and Articles (called an Instrument of Government) being first read; he solemnly took Oath to perform the same: and returning to *White-Hall* in state as he came, he met with his Council: by whom a Proclamation was ordered to be published, strictly to charge and command all persons whatsoever in the three Nations, to take notice of *Oliver Cromwell's* being declared Protector of the said Nations, and to conform and submit to the Government so established.

Two Ordinances in the month of *January* following were made by the Protector and Council; the one, declaring what offences should be adjudged Treason, that persons might know the nature and danger of their offence: The other, for repealing the Acts and Resolves of Parliament, touching subscription to the Engagement: which (indeed) must necessarily follow upon the change of the Government, now become even Monarchicall again. The said Protector was Febr. 8. following (riding triumphantly into the City of *London*) magnificently feasted by the Lord Mayor, Aldermen, and several Companies thereof.

But some months before, June 10, 1653, *John Lilburn*, before banished by the Parliament, hearing of its dissolution, and so a change in Government, returned into *England* without license, craving General *Cromwell's* Protection: who notwithstanding, being left to the Law, was sent prisoner to *Newgate*, June 16; and being brought to the City-Sessions July 13 after; and again on the 16 day, his Tryal was deferred till the next Sessions: at which he appearing August 16, was (on the 20th day of the same month, after severall hours spent in examination of Witnesses for and against him the prisoner, and in making his defence) acquitted by the Verdict of his Jury about 12 at night. Yet on the 27 day after, was sent from *Newgate* to the Tower of *London*. Also on the same 20th day, a General Assembly of the Kirk of *Scotland* (not judged, it appears, tending to peace) was dispersed by the English forces kept in that Nation for quietnesse sake.

Two things were this year observable; the one in *England*, which was warm bloud, Jan. 20, rained at the Country Town of *Pool* in *Dorsetshire*: so that some there thought (at first) it was bloud ran from their noses. The other in *Ireland*, March 15, on which day three Suns were seen at *Dublin*, the Mother-City of that Nation.

The King of *Poland* returning to *Warsow* (from his famous victory) in triumph; A domestique mourning took hold of him, hearing of the death of his sister *Anne Katherine Constance*: For this Princess going (in the beginning of the *Brandenburgian* stir) from *Dusseldorp* to *Colonia*, for quietnesse sake; those troubles being composed; while she joyfully meets the Prince her husband coming to her, and taking him by the hand, leads him to the Court, being taken with a sudden failing of her spirits, she falls down between his hands astonished, on the ground; and the day

A a a

after

Anno 1650  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

alter (with the great sorrow of the Prince and all his Courtiers, unto whom for her meekness and clemency she was exceeding dear) she departed this life, Octob. 9. A Princess laden with all Regall virtues.

The same moneth that the Archbishop of *Colonia* was (as above-said) invested into his Bishoprick, *Philip* Elector of *Trevera*, and Bishop of *Spire* dying after long languishings of old age, *Charl. Caspar*, who had been long before appointed his fellow-helper, straightway succeeded him; and was inaugurated few dayes after, according to the wonted custome, by the Metropolitan Colledg. The mean while, the businesse of quitting *Franchendale*, (which was as yet held by a Spanish garrison) after many debates, was brought so far, that the King of *Spain* having his money paid him, the garrison should depart in the moneth of April, 1652, and the place should be restored to the Elector of *Heidelberg*, by vertue of the German Pacification. And after these things, the Emperour about the end of this year summoned publique Assemblies of the Empire, at *Ratisbone*; inviting in the mean time, the Electours to him, to *Prague*, unto a very friendly Discourse, whither he first went in July, with his son the King of *Hungary*, and all the Court.

But in *Poland* things were now no less quiet than in *France*. For there, publique Assemblies being summoned at the beginning of this year 1652, and almost brought to an end, the interceding of one Provincial Messenger dispersed them; the Under-Chancellor of the Kingdom, having lost the King's friendship, the Nobility disdaining him, and being condemned by the King and Senate of Treason, he fled first to *Petrivove*, and thence into *Szechland*. The *Cossacks* the while, and the *Tartars*, being stirred up by these troubles, making slaughter of the *Polonian* Army (that defended the frontiers) at *Borsibenes*, break again out of their dens into *Valachia* and sining that Prince a great summe of money, are now said to assault *Camenete* in *Podolia*, the strongest Castle of that Province, with the greatest force. Which things so pierced the *Polanders*, that the King calling his Nobility again to arms, summoned new general Assemblies of the Kingdom.

There dyed in *Germany* in 1651, about the end of September, *Maximilian* Electour of *Bevaria*, in the 78 year of his age; who (saith one) was not to be put behind (in the glory of warlike deeds, especially in his Religion, prudence and felicity) any Prince of his Time: who of his latter Wife *Mary-Anne* daughter of *Ferdinand* the second, Emperour, left two sons, *Ferdinand Maria*, and *Francis Ignatius*, heir not onely of their father's Dominions; but also of his virtue and glory. Unto *Ferdinand*, a few moneths before his father's death, *Adelheids* sister of the Duke of *Savoy* was espoused: who being received at *Waserburg* (in June 1652, by the Bridegroom the Prince Electour, his Mother, also Duke *Albert*, and his son *Sigismund* Bishop of *Frisinge*) she was brought to *Monsbachium*. The same year also two English Worthies departed from

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

from the living, *Popban*, a General at Sea, in the moneth November; and on the 26 day of the same moneth, *Henry Ireton*, Deputy of *Ireland* under his father in law, General *Cromwell*: Both whom, especially the latter, were interred with great solemnities at *Westminster*. There dyed also the following year, 1652, *Aloysius Contzen*, Embassadour and Mediatour of the *Venetian* Common-wealth, to the *Othoman* Court, and divers Princes of Europe; and lately also into *Germany*, to the universal pacification there: Also *Leonard Torstenson*, General of the *Suedes*, thorow *Germany*; *Amelia Elizabeth* Landgrave'sse *Cassellane* of *Hesse*. *Francis Piccolomini*, Overseer-General of the *Jesuits* Society: in whose place *Alexander Gottsfride*, by a general meeting of those Fathers, was chosen in the beginning of the year 1652. Both which, *Goswine Nickell* succeeded by the same voyces, who was a long time Rector of the Colledg of *Colonia*, and Provincial Overseer throughout the lower Province of the *Rhene*.

## CHAP. VI.

An Account of what memorable things happened both in England and other Parts, from about the latter end of the Year, 1653, unto this present Year 1658.

IN *England*, (after that (the form of Government being now changed) *Oliver Cromwell* took upon him the Supream Magistracy as Protector of the three Nations, and he sitting with his Council at *White-Hall*, (being 13 in number) Decemb. 21, 1653; and a Declaration from them came forth, That instead of the Name, Style, Title and Teste of the Keepers of the Liberties of *England* by Authority of Parliament, used in all Courts, Writs, &c. from Decemb. 26. 1653, the Name, Style, Title and Teste of the Lord Protector for the time being, of the Common-wealth of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, and the Dominions therunto belonging, should be used, and no other: also the Government of the said Common-wealth under the said Protectorship, containing 42 particular heads, was published,) there was discovered a secret Conspiracy on the behalf of *Charles Stuart*, Feb. 18 following; whereupon eleven of the Conspirators being committed to the Tower of *London*, were after a short time set at liberty: About which time, (on the contrary) as a testimony of affection to the Protector's Government, there appeared Addresses and Congratulations, from many parts of the three Nations. Then wast there again businesse in agitation, to wit, peace with the *Dutch*, and about this time well nigh finished: and after that, two of the *Dutch* Embassidours, *Newport* and *Toungfall*, had gone over for full power from their superiours, and returned into *England*, March the 3d. 1653. desiring a speedy Cessation of Arms on both sides; as being fully impowered to ratifie the late concluded peace. On

Aaaa i

April

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

April 5. following, 1654, the Articles of Peace betwixt both States were signed and sealed by both parties: and on the 26 day of the same moneth in *England* proclaimed; (the day after which, the Protector feasted the said Embassadors at *White-Hall*, himself first lodging there on the 15th of the same April, 1654.) also in the *Netherlands* about the same time. And on May 30. following, the Lord Ambassadour *Whitlock* arrived from *Swethland*, having finished his Embassy, which was to make an intimate peace and alliance between *Sweden* and *England*: For when the said Embassadour had understood, that the Treaty with the *Dutch* could have no reflexion upon the *Swedish* affairs, (for before, that Queen would give him no dispatch) he putting on the business more than formerly; in 14 days after they came to a full agreement: and April 28, 1654, the Articles of Alliance with the *Swedish* Nation were interchangeably signed and sealed also. Then on May 12 following, he having his last audience in the same order and state as at his first receiving: after a brief speech made unto the Queen, and she likewise signifying her high contentment taken, that the Lord Protector should at such a season send for honourable an Embassy entrusted to the management of so worthy a person: and that she accounted it a very great addition of happiness to her Reign, that she had made to intimate an Alliance, &c. And that although she was about to quit her Government, yet she should remain a perfect friend to the Protector: nor doubting, but that the Prince her Cousin, and all others who should succeed, would be careful inviolably to maintain the friendship of that Common-wealth. This transaction being performed at *Upsall*, a Town and University there.

A little before which time, were the spirits and expectations of some *Scots* heightened, partly through promises which their King made them by his Agents; and partly through the discontent of divers persons in *England*; so that under the command of the Earls of *Glencarn* and *Kenmore*, was an Army raised in *Scotland* of 4000 horse and foot; who Rendezvouzing at the *Lough*, Colonel *Morgan* with about 1500 horse and foot there wholly routed them, Febr. 17. 1653, and slew about 150 of them. But then did the affairs of *Ireland* tend more and more towards perfect settlement, by reason of the vigilant care which the Lord Deputy *Fleetwood* and the Council had in transplanting the *Irish* Natives into the Province of *Connaught*, whereby the *English* there were in all likelihood secured both in life and estate, from Insurrections.

In the moneth of *May* following, 1654, a discovery being made of a second Conspiracy against the Lord Protector's life; and to be put in execution on a prefixed day, as he should go betwixt *London* and *Hampton-Court*: also to seize on all guards about the City of *London*, the City it self, and also the Tower thereof; to proclaim *Charls Stuart* King of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, &c. a High-Court of Justice (so called) was erected in *Westminster-Hall*,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

*Hall*, Jul. 1. before whom, three of the apprehended Conspirators being brought, to wit, *John Gerard*, *Peter Vowell*, and *Somerset Fox*: they were charged of High-Treason; and upon proof thereof, were condemned to dye: one whereof, to wit, *Fox*, being reprieved for his free and ingenuous confession; the other two (who denyed the knowledge of any such design) suffering according to the Sentence, Jul. 10. *Powell* being hanged; but *Gerard*, upon petition, beheaded on *Tower-Hill*: on which sad Theatre, one *Don Pantalon Sa*, brother to the *Portugal* Embassadour then in *England*, for a murder by him (with his companions) a good while before committed on a man at the *New-Exchange*. And on the very morning of this execution-day, were the Articles of Peace (now fully coneluded betwixt *England* and the Kingdom of *Portugal*) signed by the same Embassadour; who immediately withdrew out of the City.

But those in the *Highlands* of *Scotland* (being not as yet discouraged, and receiving some additionall strength from *Middleton* who had landed there out of *Holland*, as chief Generall for the young King) were quickly again repured an Army, against whom Generall *Monk* being sent, and in those *High-lands* attending their motions in severall Marches from June the ninth, 1654, unto July 29 following, he by degrees totally defeated them: *Middleton* himself being necessitated to flee and take shipping out of *Scotland*; and his scattered forces daily repairing unto the Garrisons of *Englands* Common-Wealth for mercy.

On Sept. the third following 1654, (the Protector thinking it meet to summon a Parliament, two Indentures being first made, one between the Sheriffs of particular Counties, and the choosers of Members, and another between the Sheriffs and the Burgeses (with the Inhabitans of Burroughs, so chosen) that they for themselves, and people of the said Burroughs, have full power to act and consent to those things which in Parliament shall happen, so they alter not the Government from one single person and a Parliament, as then settled. They met at *Westminster Abbey*, then repairing to the house, and beginning to question the lawfulness of that power which called them together; a recognition of the Government was to be signed by them before their entrance into the House again; which most of them signing, they sate five Moneths, according to the time allotted by the instrument of Government; and January the two; and twentieth following, were dissolved by the Protector.

But (whether for glory sake, or revenge of an injury) an Army under the command of Generall *Venables*, was conveyed by a Fleet of Ships, set forth out of *England* under the conduct of Generall *Pen*, towards the Island of *Hispaniola*, (the first place in *America*, that *Columbus* discovered for the King of *Spain*, and by the *Spaniards* not a little set by) who setting sail from *Portsmouth*, Decem. 27. were at *Barbadoes* January the twenty eighth after, where the whole Fleet being certified to be in a good condition, March 19.

1654.

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

1654, and having seized on eighteen Dutch Merchants Ships, for trading there contrary to an Act of the long sitting Parliament, they thence sailed for *Hispaniola*, on the thirtieth day of the same Month; where landing (though not all at once) in April following; they (through the climates unkindness, want of water, and other necessities, and their enemies expertise of the Country) received no very small repulse, not a few perishing in that action; Wherefore (that the honour of that design might not wholly be lost) they about the third of May re-embarked themselves for *Jamaica* Island, in whose Harbour they Anchoring some dayes after, with small resistance were Masters of the same.

In the mean time, the Protector, his Councill, and Army Officers, were employed at home, in suppressing a discovered Plot, and insurrections in divers places; for it was certified from *Tork* unto *London*, March 26, 1655, that one Sir *Richard Maliverer*, inviting his Tenants a few nights before, unto a Supper, incited them to joyn in Arms with him; who (with others) intended to seize on the City of *Tork* the same night for King *Charles*, appointing them a Gate where he would meet them: and going with four of them unto *Heslay* Moor, divers chief of the Country met them, with Carls laden with Arms; yet the appearance being too small, they dispersed again. Wherefore, the said *Maliverer* was necessitated to flee beyond the Seas. There were some said to be risen about *Merioneth* shire, and other parts of *Wales*: against whom, some other Inhabitants rose to joyn in opposing them. Another party reported 500, (though not so many) rose in *Nottinghamshire*; whom from Colonel *Hacker*, a party marched out of *Leicester* shire, to suppress. *Shrewsbury* Castle was to be possessed by a stratagem of two men going into the Castle in womens apparel, and two other as their men to wait on them, &c. of which the Governour having notice, prevented the design. The City of *Chester* being likewise intended to be seized on. But that of most dangerous consequence to the peace of the Common-wealth was, the insurrection at and about *Salisbury* in *Wiltshire*, beginning March 12. for the Judges coming into *Salisbury* on Saturday night from *Windsor* Assizes; some (for King *Charles*) came into the Town also, as being a time of least suspicion: and rendezvouzing the next day, in the night were above an hundred; the chief Commander being one Sir *Joseph Wagstaffe*: who on Monday morning early, seizing all horses, seized also on the Sheriff the same morning, endeavouring to force him to proclaim *Charles Stuart* King: and wounding and knocking him over the head with a pistol for refusal of the same; and carrying him away. They plundered also both the Judges, Sheriff, Justices, and others, of all that was fit to carry away: yet did the Judges no harm in their persons; but, taking away their Paroll, they let out both prisoners for debt, and also malefactors with their irons on them, mounting those who would joyn with them; and after they had proclaimed *Charles*

*Stuart*

*Stuart* King) departed (in number about 200) out of the City towards *Blanford* in *Dorsetshire*, encouraging their followers; That their chief Leader was coming from *France* to head them with 10000 men, (for the Country joyned not with them, as was expected).

But soon after, came news, signifying the totall defeat of those under *Wagstaffe*, *Jones*, *Penraddock*, and *Groves*; for *Anton Crook*, a Captain, pursuing them out of *Wiltshire* into *Devonshire*, with his own onely Troop, fell in amongst them at *South-Molton*: where after a few hours dispute, he took *Jones*, *Penraddock*, and *Groves*, (with about 60 other prisoners, and nigh 140 horse and arms, *Wagstaffe* himself escaping) who being committed to *Exeter* Goal, a Commission soon came forth for the tryall of the risers, at *Salisbury*, *Exeter*, and *Chard* in *Somersetshire*, and 14 of 30 being condemned at *Salisbury*, three of them, to wit, *Lucas*, *Thorp*, and *Kensley*, were on May 3. 1655, executed, with seven others on the 7th day; and on May the 9th, 14 of the condemned persons at *Exeter*, were there also executed, (most being reprieved) amongst whom, *Penraddock* and *Groves* were beheaded: but *Jones* (by order) likewise reprieved. Likewise at *Chard* were divers persons executed, May 17, one Major *Hunt* escaping in his sisters habit. After which, divers prisoners in the Tower of *London*, who had a former hand in conspiring against the Protector's Person, as also most of them, who for this insurrection were imprisoned in the West of *England*, were ordered to be sent away into foreign Plantations.

But one effect which these Insurrections produced, was instructions given to the Major Generals of Counties, to endeavour the suppression of all Tumults, &c. as also all foreign Invasions, by drawing Forces and Troops into all convenient places upon occasion: and also by disarming Papists and others, who had been in arms against the Parliament, and all others dangerously suspected. Other orders were likewise given them, both to have a strict eye upon the carriage of all disaffected persons within their Counties; and likewise to endeavour the apprehending of Theeves, Robbers, High-way-men, &c. with some other particulars. And all those hereupon, who had any way assisted the King, were also to pay the 10th part of their estates, to the bearing of the charges of the Army.

The English Fleet having landed their Countrymen at *Jamaica*, and left a Squadron of Ships there, were now bound homeward for *England*; wherefore setting sail from thence, June 25, 1655; they anchored at the Spit-head near *Portsmouth*, Aug. 13 following. General *Venables* also arriving in another ship, Sept. 9. weak of body, and having been near death: who together with General *Pen*, either upon suspicion of his fidelity, were committed to the Tower of *London*, Sept. 20th after; but soon after set at liberty again.

But General *Blake*, while these things were doing in *Europe* and *America*,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

*America*, behaved himself valiantly in *Africa* against the Turkish Pyrats of *Tunis*; (toward which parts he set sail from *Plymouth*, Oct. 6. 1654,) for having demanded satisfaction of the Dye or Governor of *Tunis*, for certain ships they had taken: and also the Captives of the English Nation, April 18. 1655; and being not onely denied either, but had also some kind of provoking or daring terms given him; he calling a Council of War, resolved (if possible) to burn their ships which lay in *Porto Ferino*: within musket shot of which Castle, the English Admiral, Vice-Admiral, and Rear-Admiral lying, played on it and their Forts with 20 great guns; the wind also favouring them; so that although there were 120 guns planted on the shore and Castle against them; they courageously in their long boats, burnt 9 ships down to the water in the space of 4 hours; with the losse of onely 25 men, and 48 wounded. Moreover, a breach of mutual amity between *England* and *Spain* being now begun, an Ambassadour extraordinary was sent from the King of *Spain* into *England*; where he arriving May 2. 1655, came in a stately manner thorow *London* to *Westminster*; and having publique audience given him by the Lord Protector on the 8th day of the same month, with other audiences, nothing as to an agreement between the two Nations, was concluded; so that June 12 following, he parted from the Protector onely with mutual complements, and so returned into *Spain*. For a league between the English and French Nation, began now to be thought of; and an Embassadour from *France*, residing a while in *London* to that end; at length, Peace between *England* and *France* was ratified Novemb. 19. 1655; and on the 28th day proclaimed (one effect of which league, was the exiling of the house of the *Stuarts* out of the French Dominions). Before which, there was certain intelligence from *Bayonne* and *S. Sebastian*, Sept. 5th, that the King of *Spain* had made a seizure of the persons and goods of the English within his power; and on Febr. 16th following, War with *England* was openly proclaimed by the *Spaniards* at *Dunkirk*.

But as to *France* it self, the Prince of *Conde*, with the other discontented ones against Cardinal *Mazarine* and his party, being allayed there, as having no considerable party within the bowels of that Nation: the said Prince sent one General *Marfin* into *Spain*, to negotiate in his behalf; (for upon the *Spaniard* was all his dependance) and going with his Troops in the Country and Bishoprick of *Liege* or *Luyck* in *Flanders*, he there waged (about the months of December and January,) 1653 a little new War, to get Winter-quarters: the Inhabitants every where standing to defend and maintain their privileges and freedom; but the Prince's forces took from them by force, the little Town of *Fosset*, (which is situated between the rivers of *Sambre* and *Mense*) marching also against the Town *Chastelet*, seated on the river *Sambre*, of which (at that time) there was no doubt but they would be soon masters of. Their design likewise being to take *Dinant* and *Chi-*

*vai*,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

*vai*; which were to be for a Principality to the said Prince; intending *Rocroy* (of which, his son the Duke of *Anguien* was Governor, and who having there a very strong garrison, forced the Country round about to pay him Contribution) for his Head-City: so that the Court-party of *France* quite gave him over, supposing him not to be brought back by any tolerable means of accommodation: wherefore they at *Paris* about the same time raised a suspicion (out of policy) among the *Spaniards*, as if he had intended to make his peace with the King and Court of *France*, giving it out, That a Treaty to that end was actually set on foot: which doing him some present wrong among the Spanish party, he went to *Brussels* to *Leopold* the Arch-Duke, principally to give assurances of his resolution against the Court of *France*, and all *Mazarine's* party; and to procure moneys and recruits, that at Spring (for it was now Winter) he might be in some indifferent capacity to infect that Kingdom. It was also then presaged in *France*, (by many) that some strange turn of affairs was yet to be expected there, from the Duke of *Orleans*, the King's Uncle, being more than usually hardy, in refusing to come to that Court; although strongly solicited thereunto: The people also of that Nation being deceived in their expectations of golden dayes, which they thought to have seen upon the Court's return to *Paris*, and the composure of their last tumults; instead whereof they were both impolitickly and tyrannically dealt withall, that it was certainly believed, That if ever the Princes make up a considerable party again in *France*, the people would turn to them: most of the good Towns stood for them; and the *Parisians* themselves were as high for them as ever. Then were the Court of *France* drawing up a Declaration against the Prince of *Conde*; having also had lately good success against the *Spaniards* in *Catalonia*. And about the same time arrived an extraordinary Courier from *Rome* unto the French Court, with letters, pressing the King to hearken unto a Pacification with *Spain*, and give way to a general Peace: wherein also the Pope promised to contribute his best assistance. The Messenger departing likewise in haste for *Spain*, Jan. 21. 1653, with Letters of the same nature, to that King; which intervening, produced no effect: however, it hath been observed, these two Monarchies have been like the Sea, losing at one place and time, what they gain in another; so vexing themselves and Europe all to no purpose. The Pope also sent order to his Nuncio residing at *Paris*, to make enquiry what Irish Bishops and Priests were in that City, with their names and surnames, and how they then lived.

The *Portugal* Embassadour at *Paris* also about the same time, making several instances to advance the alliance of a League offensive and defensive, between his Master the King of *Portugal*, and the French King, offered withall a marriage between the said young King, and the King of *Portugal's* daughter, with a Dowry of four millions of gold.

B b b b

But



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

But on June 7th 1654, the young King of France was crowned at Rheims with a great acclamation of the Inhabitants and Souldiers of that City, who met him half a mile out of the Town, crying, *Vive le Roy*, or, Let the King live. The Ministers of Rheims also highly applauding the Cardinal in their Orations upon the anoynting of the King, looking on him as the onely means that hath kept up the Scepter from falling into the hands of an ambitious Prince, that is, *Conde*, who seeks more his own greatness, than the welfare of the Nation. The Cardinal of Retz, being kept confined by *Mazarine*, one pretence whereof was, the not surrendering up of the Archbishoprick of Paris; he sent about this time, the Master of his horse to Rome, to pray the Pope to give his consent unto the same surrender, that *Mazarine* might have no farther pretence for keeping him so confined.

Now also was there preparation made in France for the siege of *Stenay*, by the King and Cardinal, the onely place that the Prince of *Conde* had at his Command; and at which siege, the King intended to assist in Person: and the Cardinal resolved to take that strong place, though with length of time, and vast expences: wherefore setting about it, and the young King courageously and industriously visiting that Leaguer, and animating the Souldiery, after a great Battery raised, he summoned the place: which the Governour refusing to surrender, without *Conde's* consent, they applyed themselves to carry the Citadel first: whereupon the besieged made a resolute sallie of above 200 men; but they falling upon the *Switzer's* quarter, were by them valiantly repulsed: the Governour after a second summons, sending answer back, he was resolved to live and die in the place; they drew together more Forces to reinforce the King's Camp: the besieged having by a sally killed between 3 and 400 of the besiegers; yet shortly after (for that was in July 1654) in August, they having made a very great breach with their Mine, they came to a Capitulation for surrender, which was made with a Spanish Commander, the Earl of *Chamilly* accepting of the King's pardon in surrendering it, and the garrison retreating to *Montmedy*.

In the mean time, the Spaniards, to divert the French Forces that had besieged *Stenay*, closely besieged *Arras*, a considerable Frontier Town belonging to the French King: whose Governour was no lesse courageous than that of *Stenay*; and the management of the siege being (by the Spaniards) said to be solely committed unto the Prince of *Conde*, who had full power to fight as he should see occasion. The Spaniards were in great want of provision; the French having so secured the passages, that none could be brought unto them: yet a Convoy of 1000 Wagons being sent from *Doway* to victual the Camp, and through some opposition, retreating to *Aire*, from thence got safe within the lines of the Spanish Camp; whereby they were supplied for 2 weeks: which was longer than (at that time) the Town was (in the eyes of many) likely to hold out: The Spaniards, Aug. 14, assaulting a half

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

half Moon at *Arras*, were beaten off with the losse of 400 men. But Marshal *Turenne*, with divers other forces from all parts, hastening to the relief of the besieged, (so that they had no lesse than 40000 in all) the Spaniards also lurking too long in his Trenches, and not engaging the French Army at the first, (as the Prince of *Conde* is reported to have advised them) they having hereby the more opportunity to circumvent them in all passages, and hinder the access of provisions, they surounded the Spanish Army, and equally hindred all provisions for their relief: wherefore the Spaniards being reduced to this strait, were necessitated to withdraw from before the Town, on the first hopeful opportunity, and that in the night, leaving their Ordnance and baggage behind them; yet the French having notice by their Scouts, of their first motion, the grand Army under Marshal *D. Hoquincourt* (notwithstanding all the Prince of *Conde* could do by perswasion or example) coming on again upon them, routed the Arch-Duke's horse, leaving most of their foot to their enemy's mercy; with their Commanders, bag and baggage. But the Governour of *Arras* himself (knowing the time of the Spaniards intended retreat) falling out with about 1500 or 2000 men at the instant of their moving, did much facilitate the business; most of the Spanish foot being slain or taken, to the number of 6000 prisoners; and the first Onset being made upon the *Lorrainer's* trenches, the worst storm fell on them; and many almost starved for lack of food: This happened in August, 1654. Which success rendered Cardinal *Mazarine* impregnable; whereas, if he had been put to the like retreat, it was supposed he must have shortly retired out of France again: for those of *Burdeaux* were then discontented by reason of some new imposts lately imposed on some Commodities there, by means of *Trompette* Castle serving to keep that Town in awe: the discontented also scattering several papers up and down, against tyranny, and the oppression which they lay under; and it was then verily believed, if *Arras* had been taken by the Spaniards, more places would have shewn their discontent by reason of the heavy imposts laid on them.

But the Country of *Liege* was about the moneths of January and Febr. 1653, in a sad condition; both by the Duke of *Lorraine*, who quartered his Troops there, partly by consent, and partly by force, pretending, the States of the Country did invite him thither, because their Prince and Bishop governed altogether absolutely, and against their Laws and priviledges; so that he was come to redresse their grievances, and beget a good understanding between the Bishop and his people. The Prince of *Conde's* Troops (on the other hand) pretending, that those of *Liege* were affected to, and held correspondence with, the French: also that it was the *Lorrainers* which betrayed them, doing them all possible mischief they can contrive where ever they come: wherefore they were come to secure them and their Country, from being preyed on by the *Lorrainers*. The Troops likewise of the King of

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
or 1658.

France and the Empire were then marching towards *Liege*, pretending also, they came to relieve the assisted; and, to assist a Prince of the Empire, who was quarrell'd with, and abused in his rights and prerogatives. Wherefore, all these caused the Spanish Troops, and those of the United Provinces to march also towards the same Country; both to hinder the French Troops from entering into *Liege*, and to secure their Frontiers. Thus although neither of these ought to have come there, the Country being Neutral; yet, through these quarrels and debates, the Inhabitants were miserably used like enemies on all sides.

But these thus forcibly quartering in the Country, occasioned the Prince or Bishop of *Liege*, and the Archbishop of *Collen*, to make a league offensive and defensive with the two Electors of *Triers* and *Mentz*, mutually to assist each other against all manner of foreign forces under what pretence soever: and in March following, the Marquess of *Fiber* seeing the conclusion of peace between the Prince of *Liege*, and the Elector of *Collen*, and *Leopold* the Arch-Duke, (whom by the treaty was obliged unto the second, by the article of the Treaty, to endeavour what he could to cause the French Army to remove out of his Territories, being (if gentle persuasions would not prevail) to joyn his forces with the Arch-Duke's, and force them, if they conceived it advantageous so to do; presently removing from *Limbourg*, marcht out of the Country of *Liege* the same way he came, towards the Woods of *Ardenne*; yet having first the Paroll of the Prince Elector, that neither the *Spaniards*, *Lorrainers*, or Prince of *Conde's* forces, should attempt any thing against them by virtue of the said peace. And in the month of Febr. after, the Arch-Duke by speciall order of the King of *Spain*, (whose Lieutenant he is in *Flanders*) exemplarily proceeded against *Charles* Duke of *Lorraine*, not only by imprisoning his person in the Castle of *Antwerp*, (though he were nobly intreated in his imprisonment) but by taking from him the command of his Army, Dukedome, and Estate, and conferring it on *Francis* his brother, who as soon as he was come from *Vienna*, was to have the Command of his brother's Forces, and was called *Duke Francis of Lorraine*. The cause whereof was, the thefts, robberies, rapes, &c. committed under the conduct of his Army, the wracks of which destructions and devastations he himself gathered up: and also his inconstancies, and pretended change of judgment in resolves of warlike matters, and the alterations and delays he gave in things, which (having been debated) were even at the very point of execution: and which being important services, might (in all likelihood) have had a happy issue: which tricks and artifices were at length grown so notorious, that the Masters of the Camp, and all other Officers could point at them, &c. The said Duke *Charles* (being now so confined) seeing no remedy, resigned up unto the King of *Spain* and the Arch-Duke, both his Person, his Estate, and Army: which the Earl of *Lignevill* was to command, till the arrival of the said Duke *Francis* at *Brussels*. A

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
or 1658.

A little before the same time, the *Spaniard* received a check from the *Portugals* by Land; for the Earl of *Almarantio*, Lieutenant General of the *Spanish* horse, sending forth some of his Troops, Novemb. 6. 1653, to pillage between the Towns *Aronium* and *Megetum*, and to expect a conjunction of other forces: *Andrew Albuquerque*, General of the *Portugal* horse, marching towards them, the *Spaniards* seemed to retreat, that uniting with their main body, they might fall on the *Portugals*: which these perceiving, a *Portugal* Governour spreaded with about 250 horsemen towards the enemies frontiers, not far from *Valentia*, where after a short combat, he put 300 *Spanish* horsemen to flight; and in the pursuit coming in sight of 400 other horse of the enemies, he being over-nimbred, and his Souldiers disordered in the pursuit, he was repulsed, with the loss of some few; yet many wounded, and the Governour himself, with two Ensigns taken: one Captain of the *Spaniards* being slain, and divers mortally wounded. Whereupon *Albuquerque* following the *Spaniards* betimes the next morning, found them not far from *Aronium* very numerous, driving away 1200 head of Cattle. The *Spaniards* being 1500, the *Portugals* but 950 horse; where after valour on both sides shewn; the *Portugals* being conquerours, they pursued them untill night: many *Spanish* Commanders falling; among whom, was *Almarantio* their Major General, 17 Colonels, and many wounded. There were slain in all 390 *Spaniards*, 400 taken prisoners. The *Portugals* having divers wounded; but no considerable losse.

But the Great Duke of *Moscow* decreeing hostility against the kingdom of *Poland* about the latter end of 1653, resolving also to invade the same with three Armies, in three sundry places; and waging actual war accordingly, wrote Letters about April 1654, unto the Queen of *Sweden*, signifying the two reasons of his said War with the *Polander*: which seem not to be of weight sufficient for such an attempt: the one being, because a certain *Polander* writing a Narration of former Wars betwixt them, wherein the *Polanders* had the better, said only, *They had beaten the Muscovite*; without adding his Title. The other, because, he, in quoting something touching the Genealogy of the *Muscovite's* Ancestors, named one as the father, which was the son. Wherefore, he demanding the offender's head of the King; and it being denyed, he warred on them, having taken one of their Cities already, and besieged another of their most considerable ones. But the Queen politickly answered, She neither approved; nor disapproved his reasons, wishing he might have good satisfaction from the *Polander*, and being troubled (he said) that Christian Princes should fall out. But the *Muscovite* proceeding in his enterprize with a great power, after this, took in the Polish Country even without resistance, the people where they came seeking to save themselves by flight, and notwithstanding the great contributions there granted, they had no considerable Army to stop them: so that that Country was then lookt on as deplorable. And about September following,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

following, the *Muscovites* whole body falling upon Duke *Radziwil's* Army, (for he was the *Poland* General) which consisted of about 15000 men; they totally routed the same, *Radziwil* himself very hardly eluding; and so mysteriously were things carried by the chief ones of that kingdom, at that time, that it was thought by some (for they fate still) that certain of those prime ones were not much discontented thereat; however, by this overthrow the whole Dukedome of *Littow* was exposed to ruine and destruction. But *Vitopits* a little after, beating off the *Muscovites* three storms, took in *Mileff*, a Town situated on the River *Drina*, where he perfidiously kept not the Articles; but slew all the male Jews, and ancient women, and captivated the young men and women thereof.

About November following, the Town of *Smolensko*, accounted one of the best fortified places in Europe, was after an indifferent long siege, surrendered unto the grand Duke of *Muscovy*; and that through the Enemies policy, who perswading the *Palatine*, that all *Poland* was lost, and that that place only made resistance; the *Palatine* being stricken with a panick fear, and seeing no lesse than an Army of 5 or 6 bodies encompassing him, was easily perswaded, yet on as honourable terms as he could desire; but, immediately hereupon, no lesse than 5000 of his men lifted themselves under the *Muscovite*, and taking an oath to be true unto him. Wherefore, seeing the place was both provided with necessities for a years siege, nor any powder wanting unto the besieged, the King of *Poland* required the said *Palatine* to come unto him to *Grodna*, to give him an account of his proceedings. The *Muscovite* put a garrison of 10000 men into the City. And indeed, such then was the successe and progresse of the *Muscovites* also in *Lithuania*, that it raised such a jealousy in the King of *Sweden*, that he sent to the City of *Koningsberg*, to demand passage for some forces, that he might put his Frontiers thereabouts in a posture of defence, as he had done in the Province of *Liesland*; for they so miserably wasted all those quarters held by the *Polanders* in *Lithuania*, that for 40 leagues round *Smolensko*, there was not to be discovered the least mark of any Town or Village, they being all laid in ashes; whereby above 30000 families being turned to the wide world, went for refuge toward *wilds*, to avoid the *Muscovites* cruelties, three other Towns, after the taking of *Smolensko*, likewise yielded themselves, to wit, *Skla*, *Horey*, and *Dabrowna*. But *Poland* having made a league with the grand Cham of *Tartarie*; he prepared them a relief of 40000 men, who were to march under the Conduct of Sultan *Kasy Galga*, brother to the then Cham *Mehemet Gerey*: and he sent *Kaya Begio* to go and relieve *Jurienbeck* & *Murza*, two places, which were then very much distressed by the Cossacks also: who taking part with the *Muscovites*, and *Chimelinsky*, sending Embassadors to Court the Cham, he immediately taxing them of breach of faith in taking the *Muscovites* part against *Poland*; commanded their Noses and Ears to be cut off, and sent them thus back to their Master to tell him, That

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

That he was for ever resolved against any reconciliation with him. Then also the *Poland* King sent into *Sweden* to renew a Treaty for a perpetual peace between the two Crowns of *Poland* and *Sweithland*, according to a Treaty begun before at *Lubeck*, proposing also to lay down all future claims of that Crown. Unto which the *Swedish* King signified his inclination; and was daily in Counsel with his Senators, about the *Poland* affairs, as being much inclined to an Alliance offensive and defensive with that Crown, by reason of the progresse which the extraordinary numerous forces of the *Muscovites* made in *Lithuania*; and who not onely kept his frontiers well guarded with forces; but sent others into the Arch-bishoprick of *Bremen*, both to make good his pretensions there, and to threaten war upon the Duke of *Newburg*.

At or about the same time, while the King of *Poland* lay at *Grodna*, the Emperour of *Germany* sent him an Envoy, to demand a restoring of certain Towns, which he held in *Hungary*, which were pawned unto *Poland* about 200 years before; offering to reimburse the money for their redemption. But the King put him off for an answer, to the next Diet or Assembly of the Kingdom, shewing not much dispose to yield thereunto.

But about the month of August, 1654, the Kingdom of *Sweden* dispatched Forces to besiege the City of *Bremen*, for some insolence committed against that Crown: whom it was thought, (by the *Suedes*) that the Emperour and German Princes did privately stir up against him; who else could not have been believed, to be so bold, as (of themselves) to provoke against them so considerable an enemy. *Koningsmark* had the managing of that siege; who about the beginning of September, making shew as if he intended to go over to *Vegefsak*, drew a great party of the *Bremers* thither; and after Sun-set, taking a quite contrary march, he caused a bridge to be made over the water called the *Ham*, and passed over it in the night; and so over the Moors, (though with great difficulty, by reason of the extream deep and muddy ground) wherein, although several horses were smothered, yet not one man lost; and this (notwithstanding they played with their Canon out of the City) to the *Bremers* great admiration. As soon as he was got over with about 100 men, (for the rest were necessitated to follow one by one) the *Bremers* placing themselves with a considerable number not far from the *Swedes*, yet beyond a deep Moor, so that they could onely charge each upon other, not come together. The *Swedes* growing stronger and stronger; the *Bremers* were forced with the losse of a good many of their men, to retreat towards the City. And soon after, some Troops of *Bremish* horse appearing; they were also beaten by the *Swedes* to the very gates of the City, about 20 of them being slain. In all which the *Swedes* are said to have lost but two men. This unexpected enterprize put the City into a great Astart and perplexity: which being likewise increased by a Letter from the Emperour, (admonishing them to make their composition as soon, and as good as they could; because

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

cause through the defeat of the Spanish Army before *Arras*, he could not succour or protect them, which otherwise he intended to have done, with a considerable Army by the Duke of *Lorraine* they came to a Treaty or Conference at *Stoade*, by designed Deputies of each party; the Lord *Rosenhaan* being for the Swedish King; and at length concluded 15 Articles of Peace betwixt them: After which, (for the farther assecuration of the King of *Sweden*) *Rosenhaan* and *Koningsmark* entering *Bremen* in the month November following, with solemnity they saw the oath of inauguration taken by two Senators of the City, deputed thercunto by the Senate, by holding up their two first fingers after reading of the same oath, and swearing, that they would inviolably observe and perform the Contents thereof.

Three or four months before which time, *Christina* Queen of *Sweden*, (for reasons either voluntary, or constrained) resigned her Crown unto *Charles Gustave*, her Cousen. After which, she undertook (having first secured her yearly maintenance in *Pomerania*) severall Peregrinations: among which, that to *Inspruck* (a City in the Arch-Dutchy of *Tirol*, and seated among the Alps, overlooking it on every side; and where the report of a Musket is said to be as great as that of a piece of Ordnance) is most remarkable. Where being entertained in an extraordinary manner by that Arch-Duke, too large here particularly to relate, and which was in or about the month October, 1655; the next day but one after her arrivall there, she made an open profession of the Romish Catholique faith, in six heads or Sections; where *Holfstein*, Pope *Alexander* the 7th his Nuntio (in presence of the Arch-Duke, his Lady and brother, and Spanish Ambassadour, &c.) standing at the right side of the Altar, (and she on the left) said, Pope *Alexander* understanding that *Christina* Queen of *Sweden* being enlightened by the Holy Ghost, intended to put her self into the bosome of the Church, had sent his Letters, testifying his Approbation of her desires; and to receive her with his Apostolical Benediction; he being there to know the truth thereof. Unto which she answering, It was so; *Holfstein* giving the Pope's Letter to a Priest who read it aloud, desired she would make profession of the said faith, and swear upon the holy Evangelist, to keep it before the Arch-Duke, and the Spanish Ambassadour. Which she doing, and kissing the book, a Chair was set for *Holfstein*, and a Cushion laid at his feet, upon which the Queen kneeling, he making the sign of the Croffe over her head, and embracing her shoulders, said, He did receive her into the Catholike Church, and by virtue of an order from the Holy Father Pope *Alexander* the 7th, and from the power given him by Christ, whose Vicar he was, he did absolve her from all her sins she had committed, *In the Name of the Father, &c.* This being done, their *Te Deum*, &c. was sung with most melodious voices, and all sorts of Instruments, and Drums, in the very Chappel of the Franciscans or Arch-Duke, where it was done; then 50 pieces of Ordnance being discharged, she returned as she came.

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

came. *Charles Gustave* not long after his Coronation, was married with great Pomp and Solemnity unto the daughter of the Duke of *Holfstein*, at *Stockholm*.

But about the month of June, 1654, there was sent over from *England* into *Holland*, a Copy of the secret Articles agreed on by the States of *Holland* alone in the *Dutch* Treaty, to the prejudice of the Prince of *Orange*: the effect whereof was, That the Protector of *England* having often represented, That in case the Prince of *Orange* or Posterity of the house of *Stuart*, should command the Militia of that State, they might occasion great differences, or at least great jealousies between the two Nations. The States of *Holland*, to remove that apprehension, first debating the matter, concluded, That for the future, the Prince of *Orange*, and all of his line, should be excluded from the Government and Admiration of the Province of *Holland*: and if the other Provinces would choose him for Captain and Admiral-General, they would never consent to the same. Which causing a great disturbance in the Assembly of the States General, they ordered Copies thereof to be sent to the other Provinces, before they resolved on any thing. The Commissioners of *Holland* in the mean time excusing the business unto the Princess Dowager, telling her, They were constrained to do what they did: hoping notwithstanding, that before the Prince were of age, the affairs of that State might be subject to some alteration, which might establish him into what they had then taken from him: But this action of theirs produced divers paper-combats from the other Provinces, who were against his seclusion.

About the same time, the *Venetian* obtained a great Victory over the Turk, having fought them two dayes together in the *Archipelago* or *Dardanelles*; wherein they slew 6000 Turks, wounded the General, *Amurat Bassa*, to death; taking also four Men of War, and 16 Gallies; yet not without the losse (on their own part) of many brave ones, one Galliot, and 5 Gallies. The Turks also the same year, in or about December, making an attempt by night upon the Fortresse of *Vesprin* in *Hungary*, as thinking to surprize it; found such resistance, that they were forced to retire, with the losse of 900 kill'd and taken.

Not long before which, the Grand Signior of the Turks being advertised, that the Vizier *Bassa* had long projected to make himself Emperour, through the assistance of the Greeks who were to have rebelled also, by the straight correspondence he held (for that purpose) with the *Muscovites* and *Cossacks*, whom he promised to embrace the Greek Religion; he convening him before a private Cotinzel, and upbraiding him of his Treason, after so many benefits done him; he was condemned to death, and strangled within five or six hours; imprisoning also the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*.

Toward the latter end of this year also, through the Leavies continuing and increasing in *Germany*, some rupture was feared in  
Cccc that

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1651.

that Empire; for the Bishop of *Munster* having a quarrel with the great Dean of his Diocess, was back'd by the Canons, yet residing without the City; but the Dean had the affection of the Citizens, and was within the City; wherefore the Bishop armed against the City, and they against him; who designing to take it by a surprizall, with 200 horse, and 400 foot, at the opening of the gates; the Ambuscado was discovered, and the design frustrated.

The Prince Electour *Palatine*, had then also two quarrels with two German Prelates: one with the Electour Archbishop of *Mentz*, which was for the jurisdiction of a Place, into which, the last would settle some Priests, as belonging to him; but the Prince would have settled there Ministers of the reformed Religion; saying, He ought to dispose thereof, as having been so many years in possession; but the people the while remained unprovided of either. The other was against the Bishop of *Spiers*; because those of that City (*worms* also seconding them) had both yielded (in all probability) upon the account of Religion, themselves into the *Palatine's* Protection. But the Emperour, who himself was likewise then very busie in making great levies; forbade them to proceed any further in their contention: but admonishing them to plead their causes in Courts of Justice. The said Emperour, Jan. 2. 1654, commanding all the chieftest of the Protestant Families of *Vienne*, and round about it, to meet together at an appointed place; but, they not meeting, a new command came, for them to meet at the place appointed; who then coming in great numbers, and most of them 50 and 80 years old: they first were checked for not coming at the first summons; and then had passports given them to depart out of his hereditary dominions, and to retire to some other place than *Hungary*.

The same year the Duke of *Pomerania* (who was the last of that house) dying, and his body being with great solemnity interred; his whole Estate was divided betwixt *Sweden* and the Electour of *Brandenburgh*: the Commissioners of the former, and the Electour, equally parting his broken Seal, and equally defraying the charges of his Funeral.

Moreover, it may not be frivolous, to relate one treachery (among others) which was discovered in *Flanders* about January, 1653; it was to betray and deliver *Armeniers*, one of the chief Frontier Garrisons of that Country into the French their hands, for a sum of money; which design was on this manner laid; some of a Regiment of Irish there in garrison (knowing there were some of their own Nation in the French garrisons of *Basse* and *Beihune*, not far from *Armeniers*, which is situated on the River *Lisse*), running away discontented; joyned to the aforesaid garrisons of *French*, some Irish also of the other side, came over to the *Spaniards* in *Armeniers*, and there listed themselves, speaking very ill of the French Officers. These Runnagadoes agreed together at last to deliver *Armeniers* into the hands of the Duke of *Elbeuf*, who

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1655.

who being to possess one of the Gates (when these were upon the guard) with 4 or 5000 men, which were in a readines at *Beterie*, a Village on this side *Bethune*; on the night of execution hereof, one of the Irish Ploters being troubled about the horribleness of the design, to put so many innocent creatures to the sword, discovered the same to the Governour; who while he was talking with him of it, a Sergeant brings him word, the enemy was near the Town: Whereupon, the Governour doubling his guards; and the Duke perceiving the design was frustrate, retreated. The contrivers (who were 4 Captains, 5 other Officers, and 9 Soldiers, all Irish) being presently seized on to receive reward according to their deserts.

But at *Delph*, a City situated between *Rotterdam* and the *Hague* in *Holland*, and 3 miles from the *Hague*, happened a most sad and lamentable disaster by an unexpected blowing up the Gunpowder of its Magazine, Octob. 12. 1654, between the hours of 10 and 11 in the forenoon; which containing 6 or 700 barrels of powder; (which was supposed, to be casually fired by the Keeper thereof, who was seen to go in with another man about 10, striking open a barril) so levelled the Tower, that there was nothing to be seen of it; yea, not the very place where it stood, it being changed into water; 300 houses were blown up and utterly destroyed; the other houses and fine gardens very much damaged and spoyle, and above 800 persons killed and wounded, besides many that might be imagined to have been blown all to pieces, so that no account could be taken of them: it shook the houses in the *Hague*, breaking their windows, and did some spoyle at *Rotterdam*: yet one Child about 18 months old, lying 24 hours under the ruines, was taken up, and not hurt at all.

Also at a Dier or general Assembly of the States of *Poland* at *Warsavia*, in June 1655, a Senatour striking one of his fellow-Members on the face in the open Assembly, and who was, according to the Laws of that Land, to have both his right hand and head struck off: through the Queens intercession, the punishment was moderated, that asking pardon of the King, Assembly, and Pope's Nuntio, he was to remain close prisoner in a dungeon, one year and 6 months: but he representing this penalty to be worse than death, he onely was to pay a considerable sum of money towards the charges of the Wars.

The Swedish Queen *Christina*, a little before the same time, having sent into *Swethland*, to demand the Arrears of the Pension there assigned to her; The Chancellor of that Kingdom returned answer, *That if she intended to receive any, she might do well to return thither; the States being unwilling to suffer any money to go out of the Kingdom.*

But the Duke of *Saxony* was lesse just, and yet much more cruel unto a man in his Country, (who killed a Dear) in the month of Febr. 1655, condemning him to be bound with chains upon a Stag, his feet fast under the beast's belly, with an iron chain sola

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

dered, and his hands also (in the same manner) chained to the horns: and so let loose to run away with him. The Stag having run (as was computed) near 100 English miles (upon a direct line) in 26 hours time, coming near some Wagoners who came out of *Silesia*, fell down; wherefore the poor man sitting on his back, told them the business: and earnestly begged of them to shoot him, to put him out of his pain; but they durst not, fearing the Duke. In the mean time, the Stag getting up, ran away with all his might: so that the miseries that poor creature had undergone, and must undergo, if the Stag killed him not in the running, cannot be expressed.

In the Isle of *Malta*, toward the latter end of 1655, *Usman* the great Turk's brother, (who some years before, with the Sultan's Wives Mother, their family and treasury, was taken at Sea, coming from *Mecca*, by those Knights, and brought into the Island) made profession of Christianity, being christened with great ceremonies, and rejoicing of the City, in the Dominicans Cloister; who retaining his former name of *Usman*, was surnamed *Dominicus*.

But in *England*, in July 1656, Writs being issued forth for summoning another Parliament, and a general election of the Members thereof, being made in August following; they assembled at *Westminster-Abbey*; whither the Protector coming in stately equipage, after their Sermon ended, and a speech made unto them by the said Protector, they sat, electing Sir *Thomas Widdrington* for their Speaker: this was on Sept. 17th, 1656; they sat from the time aforesaid, untill about the latter end of June, 1657, and then were adjourned untill Jan. 20th following. The chief matters done by this Grand Council, I find to be an Act for Renouncing and disannulling the title of *Charles Stuart* unto the Nations of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*. Then, an endeavour to scule the Title of King, with a Crown the Emblem thereof, on the head of the Protector; which he, after time of deliberation, positively refused: and openly declaring May the 8th, 1657, That he could not undertake the Government with the Title of King: Wherefore laying aside the Title, the Parliament solemnly (by Act) invested him into the power thereof, June 26 following, under the Name and Title of Protector: the Speaker of the Parliament presenting unto him, in *Westminster-Hall*, (being attired in his Robes) four Emblems of Government; a Purple Velvet Robe lined with Ermine; a large Bible with rich gilt and Bosses; a Scepter of Gold, and a Sword, which he girt about him, descanting (by a speech) upon all of them at the delivery thereof: also he taking an Oath. Then while he thus sat, holding the Scepter in his hand, after the thrice sounding of a Trumpet, a Herald standing aloft, proclaimed his Highness Lord Protector of the Common-wealth of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, requiring all to yield him due obedience. And then an Officer of Arms did the like. Soon after which, he was so proclaimed

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

proclaimed in the three principal Cities of *London*, *Edenburgh*, and *Dublin*.

The Peace of this Common-wealth, with the Kingdom of *Portugal* being ratified July 10th of the same year, was (notwithstanding) not proclaimed untill Jan. 17 following: within which space or time, some English Ships performed no small service against the *Spaniards* West-India Fleet within 4 leagues of the Bay of *Cadiz*; they being 8 in number; whereof two were sunk, (one being the Vice-Admiral, containing in her a great quantity of silver) and two burnt; two were likewise taken, the one, a very rich ship, but little silver therein; but the other (according to the *Spanish* Captain's own relation who was taken) having in her two millions of silver; the other two escaping into *Cadiz*: this was in the month September; the silver of the *Spanish* Gallion being brought into the Tower of *London*, Novemb. 1. after, 1656. The young Marquess of *Baden* or *Baydex*, (whose father the Marquess of *Baydex* Governour of *Lima* in *Peru*, with his Wife, Children, and Family (except another son and two daughters) were burnt in the Vice-Admiral: for that Ship being taken by the English, the *Spaniards* themselves firing her, she burnt down and sunk) with his younger brother, being also brought into *London* prisoner, about or at the same time: who having been examined, said; That presently after his father and family departed out of *Lima* in *Peru*; which was above 5 months before the time of that examination, the whole City of *Lima* was swallowed up and destroyed; and also the City *Calao*, by a fearful Earthquake, and most miraculous Rain of fire from Heaven: there perishing in both places above 11000 *Spaniards*; but not above 100 *Indians* with them. The *Spanish* King losing also in *Lima* 100 millions of silver (ready wrought up) thereby. Also the Mountainous Mines of *Potosi* (out of which they digged their silver) were wonderfully destroyed, being become a Plain, nor any possibility of having more silver or gold in *Peru*. And some of the prisoners themselves who were taken in this achievement did acknowledge, that this desolation and destruction befell the *Spaniards* for the cruelty which they acted on the poor *Indians*, (they not sparing even those *Indians* who among them professed the Roman Catholic Religion) so that they being beyond measure oppressed and grieved with their sufferings, cried to Heaven for vengeance against them.

But the following year 1657, produced a greater execution from the Navy under General *Blake* against the *Spaniards* West-India Fleet before *Santa Cruze*, at one of the Canarie Islands called *Teneriffe*, on April 20th. The *Spaniards* had 5 or 6 Gallies, (three whereof were Admiral, Vice-Admiral, and Rear-Admiral) with other considerable ships, to the number of 16. The English came so near (to do their work) to the Castle, Forts, and shoar, that many *Spaniards* were shot from the shoar by their own Musketeers; yet in 4 hours they bearing the men out of their ships, and

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

and the ships all put on shoar, except the Admiral, and Vice-Admiral, who made most resistance; one whereof was set on fire, and the Admiral blown up: and before evening came, (except two that sunk down-right) all the rest were fired. They beat them likewise out of some of their Forts, from their great guns. Neither was there, in this action, above 50 English slain out-right, and 120 wounded. Their ships also, by about 7 at night, got safe out of the enemies command: although they supplied their Forts with fresh men, for those that were killed, and beaten out in heat of the action. And their ships damage received herein, was indifferently well repaired in two dayes time; which as soon as they had done, the wind veering to the South-west, (which is rare among those Islands) lasted to bring them just to their former station, near *Cape Maries*, where they arrived the second of *May* following.

In the year 1656, while the Parliament was sitting, was there another Plot and Conspiracy discovered against the Protector's life; the chief Actor whereof, was one *Miles Sindercomb*, that had been one of the Army; who with one *Cecill*, (others being also engaged therein) held correspondence with some in *Flanders*; and for whose encouragement, *Don Alonso* (the late Embassadour of *Spain* in *England*) returned them over sums of money, whereby they were enabled to proceed: who hiring a house at *Hammer-smith* (three miles from *Westminster*) standing upon the Road in a narrow dirty passage, where Coaches go but softly, they by planting an Engine in a little banquetting room of the house, intended by discharging of the same, when the Protector had passed by, going to, or returning from *Hampton-Court*, to have taken his life away. They sought also other opportunities to shoot him, taking the ayre in *Hide-Park*, &c. And to give a proof of their resolution beyond the Seas; they attempted to fire *White-Hall*, by placing a basket of combustible stuffe (with two lighted matches aptly placed) in the Chappel: But through the discovery of one of the Life-guard, to whom *Sindercomb* had revealed his secrets for his assistance in the thing, (giving him 10 l. in hand, and promising him 1500 more) these two were apprehended. *Cecill* casting himself on the Lord Protector's mercy; *Sindercomb* otherwise called *Fish*, was brought to his Tryall in *Westminster-Hall* Febr. 9. following; who pleading, *Not Guilty*, and all points of his Indictment being proved by two Witnesses at the least, with aggravating circumstances, he was sentenced to be hanged and quartered at *Tyburn* as a Traytor: but he to avert so great open shame of the World, the night before his execution, Febr. 13, snuffing up some poysonous powder into his head, within three hours after dyed. Wherefore on the 17th day of the same moneth, he was as a felon against himself, drawn at a horse's tail to *Tower-Hill*; where, under the Scaffold, he was turned into a hole naked, and a stake spiked with iron driven thorow him into the Earth.

Peace having been concluded between *England* and *France*; but

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

but open War with *Spain*, as aforesaid; the Protector joyned in hostility with the *French* against the *Spaniards* in *Flanders*, leading over thither 6000 Foot under the Command of Sir *John Reynolds* their General, who on the 8th, 9th, and 16th of *May* 1657, were wholly embarked for *France*; the General following after on the 17th day. These Forces, being joyned with the *French*, (after they had taken *Montmedy* and *St. Venant*) took the strong Fort of *Mardike* (not far from *Dunkirk*) from the *Spaniard*: which being afterwards maintained by English; in the moneth *October* of the same year 1657, the *Spanish* forces attempting to storm it; among whom, 2000 of the *Scottish* and *Irish* Reformadoes under the *Scottish* King, (who, with his brother the Duke of *Tork* being excluded *France*, joyned with the *Spaniard*) made the first onset, and that in three several places at once, getting into the ditches, and ready for scaling: the English behaved themselves so courageously all the time, (which continued 6 hours) that they were repulsed with the losse of about 600 men. And more supplies going out of *England*, there was a field-battle fought between the *French* and English with the *Spanish* forces (being between 6 and 7000 foot, and 9000 horse) who came to relieve *Dunkirk*, besieged by the English and *French*: in which (after some disputes) both their wings being foyled, they fled: the English foot pursuing them about two miles and an half; and the *French* horse down from the hill as far as *Fern*, from whose Fort they were drawn. It was a great Victory; for most of the *Spanish* foot were either slain or taken; all their guns, 6 in number, with the baggage of the field; as also all the Officers of *Charles Stuart's* Regiment, (with many more Officers of quality) with his own Coach; and about 17 colours; (the Marshal of *Hocquincourt* (who had been the chief instrument in the revolt of *Hesdin*) being slain as he was pickqueering a day or two before the battle) the loss of the English being 80 slain, and about 300 wounded: this was in *June* 1658. After which, they returning with all diligence to the siege of *Dunkirk*, which was environed both by Land and Sea, and now reduced to straits, and the besieged falling out *June* 23 after; in which sharp encounter with the besiegers, the Marquess of *Leyde*, the Governour of *Dunkirk*, received his death's wound; and several terrifying *Granadoes* being shot into the Town, (one whereof lighted into the Market-place) they soon came to a surrender upon 4 Articles; marching out on the 25th day of the same month with 2000 horse and foot, and 700 more wounded, with Drums beating, Colours flying, two pieces of Ordnance, and their baggage: Into which strong Sea-Port Town, the King of *France*, (who signed the Articles) with the Cardinal, personally entting, put the possession thereof into the hands of the Lord General *Lockhart*; (on the Protector's behalf, according to the conditions so made before the English Armie's first going over) who garrisoned it with English Souldiers. After this, the *French* possessed *Fern*, (a place which the *Spaniards* had quitted) and soon after became Masters of



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

of two other Garrisons, *Winoxbergen*, and *Dixmude*. And not long after, *Graveline*, another strong Sea-Town, having been besieged about three weeks, and a Mine ready to spring under three Bastions of that Town; *Marshall de la Ferte* Aug. 27, summoned the *Spaniards* to surrender, telling them, If they delayed till the springing of the Mines, the utmost rigour of War was to be expected. Wherefore they having time given them till the 29th day of the same month, to send to *Don John* the *Spanish* General, (if he did not relieve them in that time) they Capitulated with the Cardinal, to depart the Town on the 30th day of the same, much according to the conditions of *Dunkirk*; which they did accordingly, as not being relieved; although *Don John*, the Prince of *Conde*, and the Marquess of *Caracens*, joyned with resolution to have attempted it: who were prevented by *Marshall Turen* in his advance to lye betwixt *Fern* and *Bergen*. Then was a Council of War called, wherein the Cardinal, *Turen*, and *La Ferte* (whose Armies, after the taking of *Graveline*, were united) were present: and where they resolved what Town next to besiege; which was believed to be *Tyre*.

But upon another dangerous Plot reported to be discovered, Apr. 9. 1657, four persons of Note, to wit, M. General *Harrison*, Colonel *Rich*, Major *Danvers*, and Captain *Lawson*, were secured the day following.

A little after, to wit, July 24, 1657, Colonel *Edward Sexby* (who was a principal man in promoting *Miles Sindercomb's* design, as abovesaid; and who came into *England* in a disguised habit the better to effect it) was committed to the Tower of *London* for high Treason; But within 10 dayes after his commitment, he falling sick of an Ague and Vomiting, which turned into a violent Fever, he dyed Jan. 13th after in the Tower; found by the Coroner's Jury to be by Gods visitation, and by no other wayes or means.

But the year following, which is this present year 1658, about the month of *May*, was discovered another great and general Plot to embroyl *England* in new Wars and Seditions, by levying war, betraying of the strong garrison of *Hull*; promoting *Chris Stuart* to be King of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, securing the City of *London*, &c. For which, many were committed to the Tower and Newgate; and a High Court of Justice being erected (who late *May* 25) in *Westminster-Hall*, Sir *Henry Slingsby* on the same day, and Doctor *Hewel*, a Divine, on June 1. following, were brought to their tryall before them: the Knight pleading, *Not Guilty*, was proved guilty by evidence. The Doctor refusing to plead to his charge, and choosing rather to die, than own the Authority; wherefore June 2d, they were adjudged to be hanged and quartered at *Tyburn* as Traytors; but being (by the clemency of the Protector) to be beheaded, execution was done on them accordingly on the 8th day of the same June 1658. After which, one *Sumner*, and 6 others of the City of *London*, were tried upon the

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

the same account: one being found as not guilty; but six condemned to be executed for Traytors: two of whom, to wit, Colonel *Alston* and *Betteley* in several places of *London*, were executed on July the 7th after; one whose name was *Frier*, (and who pleading *Not Guilty*, did upon the matter presently confesse it) being reprieved: and July 9th, one *Stacie* was also hanged, though not quartered: *Sumner* and *Allen* (who confessed themselves guilty) being both reprieved.

Moreover, three or four more than ordinary things happened in *England* within two or three years last past. One was, Octob. 3. 1656, when as the River of *Thames*, which usually ebbereth about 7 or 8 hours, and floweth about 4 or 5, now ebbed and flowed twice in 3 hours space. A lamentable accident by Gunpowder in a Ship-Chandler's store-house near the Hermitage in *Ratcliff*, July 3. 1657. Also at *Bickley* in *Cheshire*, the ground sunk, July 28th, 1657. And on the first or second of June, 1658, a Whale of about 58 or 59 foot in length, and of a bulk proportionable, coming up the River of *Thames*, was taken and slain, a little beyond *Greenwich* 4 miles from *London*: some of the multitude that went to see this young Monster or King of Fishes, presaging (as it were) the death of a great Person to ensue; for that in King *James* his time a little before the death of Queen *Anne*, there was one, not so big, but seen about *Blackwall*, on the said River.

In *France*, in Jan. 1654, there was an Assembly called of Prelates & other Church-men at the *Louvre*, in Cardinal *Mazarine's* Lodgings; himself being present, and also the King's Deputy, with the Archbishop of *Rouen* as the President, upon occasion of a Brief received by that King from the Pope, relating to a Bull of condemnation, set forth against the doctrine of *Janseus*, who was Bishop of *Tyre* in *Flanders*: which doctrine very nearly agreed with the Protestants, touching Works, Free-Will, &c. which the Author substantially proving out of *Augustine*, it got no small ground both in *France* and the *Netherlands*; so that it was conceived, the division thereupon made among the Papists, had given a great wound unto the Papal interest: Wherefore the Pope not being able to contain any longer, let loose his Bull in *France*. The Archbishop declared the necessity of setting forth a Confession of Faith according to the Roman Catholick Religion; yet notwithstanding, nothing was concluded: The Cardinal also and the Archbishop fell out there, about the Cardinal's imprisonment of Cardinal *de Retz*; he wondering how *Mazarine* durst proceed so far against him, who was both a Priest, and Archbishop of *Paris*, the head City of the Kingdom, &c. after words passing between them, they parted in discontent at each other. The King of *France* about the same time setting forth a general Declaration, That no other Religion be there entertained, besides the Roman, and that called the Reformed: of which there had been a toleration in times past.

But in 1655, about the month of April, the Protestants in the Valleys of *Anguina*, *Lucerne*, and *St. Martin*, in *Piedmont* were



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

were sorely vexed and persecuted by the Duke of *Savoy*, whose Subjects they were, through the instigation of Priests and Jesuits, having set up a new Inquisition at *Turin*; who first affrightning them with great threatenings, then proceeding to take away their goods and estates, imprisoning them, and using all violence to make them forsake their Religion; and perceiving they could avail nothing thereby; the Duke was persuaded to send an Army of about 8000 under the Marquess *de Pianella*, and the Earl of *Quince*, one of the French Lieutenant Generals; these setting upon this poor people living quietly at home: They seeing themselves thus assaulted, stood in their defence, making what resistance they could against them: many of whom were slain, (and some of the enemy) many carried away prisoners, on whom they used all manner of invented cruelties, and in many corners, they shamefully abusing and tormenting many women, with their young children, afterwards cut off their heads; dashing also those children of 15 years old (that would not go to Mass) against the rocks; hanging others with their feet upwards, and nailing them to Trees: which they were said to endure with a most invincible resolution. A residue which escaped the slaughter, got into the Mountains with their Wives and Children, enduring there much hunger and cold; (some dying therewith) the enemy (the while) set fire on their Temples, plundered their houses, and then fired them: a very small number, with their families, got into *Dauphine* in the French Dominions, and some others into *Switzerland*. These are of those, who about 500 years ago being then called *Vaudois* and *Albigois*, were cruelly persecuted by the Papists. Their sad condition being represented abroad, the States of *Holland*, and *Protestour of England*, &c. seemed to be much affected therewith: there was also sending to the King of *France* about the business, (Collections for their relief being likewise made among the Protestants abroad) who having then a Treaty of Peace in hand with *England*, not a little concerning his interest, became a Mediatour by his Ambassador Monsieur *de Servint*; (also four Ambassadors of *Switzerland* as Mediatours) in their behalf to the Duke: who in or about August following, came to Articles of Agreement, for restoring the said Protestants to live in his Dominions as formerly; with the same free exercise of their Religion: yet were in many things cut short, and strained more than before; as to have no dwelling beyond the River *Pelice*, and some other places, except to the Vineyards of *Lucerna* towards *Rorata*: and also to live at *St. Johns*, but not to have any publique assembling place or preaching as before, &c. But one who wrote (from *Pigneroll*) observations upon those Articles, calls the peace made with his brethren of the Valleys and the Duke, to be far worse than the worst of War; and that it was forced on them by the threatenings of the French Ambassadors; and the falsehood of others entrusted on their behalf in the Treaty; saying also, That had they stayed so long, as to admit of any interposer in the name of

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

of the *Lord Protector*, the matter would never have been so ended. A little after, or about which time of agreement, the French besieging the Spaniards in *Pavia*; the Marquess of *Caracene* came near the City with his Auxiliary Spanish Forces to relieve it; and the besieged making a very stout sally, and then joining with the Marquess, they fell upon the besiegers within the lines of Circumvallation, and put them to the rout and flight: the slain of whom, were most of the *Savoy* forces: among whom, were those bloody ones who acted the cruelties on the Protestants of *Piedmont*. They were also so soundly beaten at that time, that they were constrained to a shameful retreat; not having of 24000, above 8000 left in a body of all the united forces of the *French* and *Savoyards*, who were under Prince *Thomas* his Conduct of *Savoy*, and of the Duke of *Modena*, who commanded his own. It was also certified about the same time, that the Governour of *San Domingo* in *Hispaniola*, sending his Son into *Spain* to the King, to make a relation of his Father's Services and Successes in opposing the English there; the King made the Father a Marquess, giving him a Pension of 5000 Duckats a year; and rewarded the Son with 1500 Duckats a year.

But in *Sweden*, after that *Charles Gustave* was crowned and established in that Kingdom, and peace concluded with the Citizens of *Bremen*, great preparations for War were making in divers places of that Kingdom, and also in the Archbishoprick of *Bremen*, against the grand Duke of *Moscow*: yet, in the mean time, the King (for as much as the Great Duke, notwithstanding their refusal in *Sweden* to give him his pretended Titles, had not as yet declared any design upon that Crown) being unwilling to engage so far, if it might be avoided, in a matter of so great importance, sent to the said Duke, to address unto him, and feel what his purposes were toward his Frontiers of *Ingermerland* and *Liefland*, and how he determined concerning them: who about the same time taking the considerable Fort of *Dunenburgh*, 25 miles from *Riga*, from the *Poles*, was grown so high, as to demand from the *Swede*, or Duke of *Curland*, a passe for 50000 men throw *Liefland*, or the others Dominions: whereby the *Poles* were not a little animated, it being the only hopes they had, that that proud enemy by such insolent demeanour, would provoke the Crown of *Sweden*, or some other considerable State, to come upon him, whereby he might be diverted from bringing them to utter ruin and destruction; for the State of *Poland* was, by means of that tyrannical enemy, then looked on as in a very sad and ill condition: (whose Army although it were made up to a good number in *Lithuania*, (wholly laid waste) yet were their divisions among its Commanders, which might hinder them from doing then any great matter;) for the *Moscowite* taking (among other miseries and mischiefs) the Town of *Vitebsko*, after a furious assault, (having lost many Commanders and Souldiers during the siege, and in the storming) in a rage, when he entered the Town; put all to the

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

sword, not sparing the women and children. These transactions were toward the latter end of 1654; at which time, 40000 *Tartars* arrived from the grand *Cham* for *Poland's* assistance; he sending also a new assurance with them, punctually to perform whatever he had promised: and that because the Rivers were not frozen for passage, therefore the Troops came no sooner: with which *Tartarian* succours, the *Poland* forces (marching toward the City of *Brissavia*, to joyn) had a stiff encounter with 13000 *Cossacks*, which lay there for defence of that place; but they being forced to retreat in great disorder, the Capital City of that Province returned to the obedience of their Sovereign: and soon after, the Polish Army in *Ukrain*, prosecuting their advantages with resolution, gave a defeat to another body of 6000 *Cossacks*, which so took down *Chmielniskie's* stomach, that he being now inclined to terms of submission, sought by all means to induce the King of *Poland* to a renewing of the Treaty for peace. About which time, 4 *Tartarian* Lords arrived at *Warsovia*, bringing with them a ratification of the Alliance made with the new *Cham*: who were to stay in that City in hostage for the observation of the Treaty: whereby the King of *Poland* was likewise obliged to send 4 Lords to reside with the *Tartar* in the City of *Crim*, who also out of affection to *Poland* at that time, set at liberty all imprisoned *Polanders* within his Dominions: And soon after these succours sent by the *Tartar*, the Polish Generals in the *Ukrain*, passed over the River *Bog* with the *Tartars*, with design to besiege the City *Uman*; that *Chmielniski* might thereby be forced to take the field, and endeavour to relieve the same: wherefore they sitting down before *Uman*, Febr. 19. 1654, they rose again on the 21 day, being informed, that *Chmielniski* was coming with 40000 *Cossacks*, and 20000 *Muscovites*, to raise the siege: and preparing to meet them, the next day being the 22, towards the Evening the battle began; wherein *Chmielniskie's* forces were routed, and retreating with speed unto their strong holds; so that, the *Polanders* and *Tartars* having pursued them all night, they retired to take care of their wounded, and refresh themselves, being very much discommodated by the frosty weather's extremity.

Prince *Radziwil* had likewise (about that time) no less success with his forces in *Lithuania*: where he took the Town of *Biskow* by Assault, although defended by about 20000 *Cossacks*; most of which were slain and taken prisoners. About the same time also, the pestilence raging in the Royall City of *Mosco*, hindered the grand Duke's retreat; so that he encamped near *Smolensko* with 20000 men.

But the expectation of a perpetual Peace, and a League offensive and defensive between *Sweden* and *Poland*, (whose King by his Envoy declared his readinesse to renounce all Titles and Pretensions, claimed by his Predecessors, to the Crown of *Sweden*) being (after more than one Ambassador sent from *Poland* to *Sweden* to that purpose) frustrated: the King of *Sweden* (who a few months

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

months before had ordered 12 Regiments towards the borders of *Livonia*, to defend them from an Invasion of the *Muscovites*: against whom also a War was (at *Stockholm*) resolved to be declared, in case the League forementioned, had (between the two Kingdoms) been concluded: unto which also (upon the Polish Envoy's Proposals) the Swedish King shewed himself to be so much inclined, that, (the *Muscovites* giving him fresh occasions of jealousy and discontent) he drew together 24000 men, who were to march into *Livonia* (as soon as the frozen passages were more open) to attack them by Land, whilst the Ships of *Sweden* should go round about on purpose to obstruct the *Moscovy* Merchants, and disturb their Commerce. The grand Duke also, by Merchants at *Hamburg* (resolving on War with those two Kings, who were then upon entering on a League offensive and defensive against him) buying up no less than 40000 Muskets) makes great preparations both by Sea and Land, having now his design bent both against *Poland* on the one hand, and the Dukedom of *Juliers* and *Bergh* on the other; unto which Countries he had pretences: and drawing 8 Regiments of horse and foot toward *Pomerania*, the Duke of *Brandenburgh* armed for defence; as well as the *Dantzickers* put in great fear, that the *Swede* designed upon *Prussia* or some part near to it under the *Poles*. But the King of *Sweden* coming to a Treaty with the Electour of *Brandenburgh*, they (at length) joyned in an offensive and defensive league about the month of June, 1656; and meeting at the Town called *Holland* in *Prussia*, where they passed three dayes in most amicable conference; the *Brandenburgian* being to furnish the *Swede* with 8000 armed men, with whom they were to joyn.

But about the month of May 1655, most that was to do in *Poland*, was to make preparations against the *Swede*, whom they believed, if he came into *Prussia*, &c. would spoil them, and do what he pleased: the *Muscovite* making (to increase *Poland's* misery) also great preparation. A consultation was also held by the *Polanders* in this month of May, when they should be in action, for defence of the Kingdom, and supplying the Frontiers with necessaries: but in the mean time all Trading was there laid aside.

The King of *Sweden* sending an Army of 16 or 17000 horse and foot into the *Polander's* Country near *Kron*, which lyes next to *Germany*, about the latter end of June, or the beginning of July, 1655, (as it appears) under the command of General *Wittenberg*, they soon took divers Castles and Garrisons in that Country, and making progress as far as *Wsee*, in the Province of *Posen*; both the two *Palatinates* of *Posen* and *Calissen*, together with the 4 Cities of *Posen*, *Calissen*, *Lesna*, and *Miedzierez*, with an Army of 15000 men, renounced allegiance to the King of *Poland*, came under the Protection of the King of *Sweden*; and all this before July 15th, 1655, and without one blow struck: the Articles between *Radziwouski* Vice-Chancellor of *Poland*, and General *Wittenberg*, for surrender

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

surrender and agreement of and about the aforesaid two Palatinates and Cities, being signed in the Camp at *Wisc*, in the same month of July, 1655. And for which, Instructions were sent to the Bishops and Superintendents in *Sweden*, to give thanks for the same, and observe a day of supplication for future successes. About which time, there was a Declaration set forth in *Sweden*, forbidding the *Calvinists* publickly to exercise their Religion: which notwithstanding they then forbore to execute, out of respect (as was then reported) to the English; for the *Swedes* had then an Ambassadour in *England*, to get men to carry on their War in *Poland*, or elsewhere; together with the procuring of a more intimate alliance with the *Protestants*. Soon after this, two *Waywoods* more submitted themselves to the *Swedes*, taking *Lissa* and *Franzstadt*. From *Stetin*, the King of *Sweden* (who was expected to follow General *Wittenberg* with his Army) marched with 10000 men, and a notable Artillery, for *Posen*, and so for *Warsavia* and *Thorne*; entering Aug. 4. into that part of the Polish Kingdom, properly called *Poland*. Then also Young *Tromp* being sent into the *Sound* by the States of the United Provinces, Admiral *Wrangle* had orders from the King of *Sweden* to sail thither with 9 stout Men of War, to require a positive answer of him, whether he intended Peace or War, (for these States began to engage, for tradings sake, in the business) and what the *Swedes* might expect from him. About the same time the King of *Poland* set up his Standard at *Warsavia*, whither having summoned in the Country, he made but 16000 men at the most, and such, as never saw the face of an enemy.

But the Duke of *Muscovy*, (the while) with the *Cossacks*, not only took in *Minsko*, being forsaken by the Polish Garrison, (who finding themselves too weak, quitted the place) but also beat the *Lithuanish* Army out of the field, and possessing himself of that populous City, caused Prince *Radzivil* to flee for his life; who notwithstanding advanced no farther, the King of *Sweden* sending to let him know, That *Lithuania* was now under the Swedish protection, having submitted to that Crown, by virtue of an agreement lately made; for all *Lithuania*, and the remainder of *Lissland* had submitted to the said King. Many also of the Polish Nobility took an oath of fidelity to the Swedish King. The *Muscovites* notwithstanding, went and burnt *Cawne*, and so retired again to the wild. And there arose some grudge between the *Swedes* and *Muscovites*, about the devastation, spoyl, and burning of the fine Palaces, Temples, and Works of *Vilna* by the said *Muscovites*; whose Inhabitants they were reported likewise to have put to the sword.

But the general Rendezvous of the King of *Poland's* Army being at *Lomicks*, some 36 miles from *Warsaw*, the said King after a sword received from the Pope's Nuntie, hallowed, departed from *Warsaw* to the said Army in the month of August, to try what virtue it would have against the Swedish King: where then was arrived

10000

Anno 1655  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

10000 horse of the old Army which was at *Ukrain*, the Nobility and Gentry then coming also in great number from all parts: about which time, the Palatine of *Siradia* came under the protection of *Sweden*. And the Duke of *Radzivil* seeing that his forces were shrunk into a small number, made his agreement with the King of *Sweden*; as also the Bishop of *Vilna*, and many other persons of note.

The King of *Sweden* going in August 1655, from *Turpitz* with a strong party of horse, and 4 pieces of Ordnance, came to *Kleski* near *Gnesna*, on the 20<sup>th</sup> being expected on the 21<sup>st</sup> day by General *Wittenberg*; that he might jointly march with both Armies to *Lomicks*, and fight the Polish Army; which fell out accordingly in Septemb. following: In which battle the Victory falling to the *Swedes*, the King of *Poland* fled to *Cracovia*: wherefore, the King of *Sweden* marching thither, drew near the City Sept. 15; where the Polish king stood with three Brigades; but the *Swedes* suddenly and unexpectedly approaching, the Poles quitting their Camp, betook themselves to flight in great terror and confusion; setting part of the Suburbs on fire: whereupon the king of *Sweden* advancing to the City, took his Head quarter within a quarter of a mile thereof at a Convent belonging to the Dominicans, the Suburbs burning all night: and next day, Septemb. 16, the Swedish king sending a party, they possessed themselves of the Bridge over the River *Wesell*; so entering the Suburbs, and that with little opposition, but no loss, although the enemy playing on them from the Castle, set some adjacent houses on fire thereby; and within two dayes after, he giving order to frame a siege before both Castle and City, assigned his Forces to their several Posts, plyed the Castle with Granadoes: which the enemy, answering with Granadoes back again from the Castle, they set the Cloyster of *Agnes* on fire, which taking hold of many other houses, reduced them to Cinders: and being in great hope of a surrender of that chief City, they made batteries, which the Poles both by shot and sallies, endeavoured to hinder. The King of *Sweden* then also proclaimed unto all Provinces and Palatinates of that kingdom, That the Estates of the Realm might not only freely meet together at *Warsaw*, either in person, or by their Deputies; but he required them also speedily to asseemble, promising them his Royal favour, and a free exercise of their Religion.

Casimir the king of *Poland* being fled, a Polish servant who was brought in prisoner, informed the *Swedes*, that *Casimir* was retreated from *Tarnaw* to *Tionsick*, to the very borders of *Hungary*, having no more than a few German horse with him: Wherefore the Swedish king thought to have pursued him; but his Counsels altering on the 25 day, he returned the same night unto before *Cracovia*: but sending General *Dougla* (upon the prisoner's information) to see what was become of King *Casimir*, he returning the same night, brought news, that the said King was also fled from *Tionsick* with a few towards *Hungary's* borders: only, that in

and

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

and about the same Town of *Tfionick*, lay about 8000 Gentlemen, who expecting the event of the business, were supposed no longer to stand out, than a strong Party should be sent against them. In the mean time, the Lord *Leszynski*, the Polish Ambassador, was busie in acquainting his friends in *Cracovia* with the notable Successes the Swedish King had about that City, taking in divers Castles and smaller fortified Towns round about, and reducing divers Parries to submission, perswading them to be wise, in surrendering the City, and save themselves; but *Czarnecky* the Governour being obstinate, refusing to surrender, and continuing shooting and fallying, the King making speedy preparation for a storm, sent in word to the said *Czarnecky* the Governour, That if he would not yield unto an accommodation, but proceed in his obstinacy; as soon as he should get him into his power, (which he doubted not shortly to effect) he would give order to hang him up. Wherefore the besieged suing to the King for their Commissioners to have letters of Conduct to come and treat, in the moneth Octob. following *Cracovia* was surrendered; there marching out the Garrison, being 3000 men, (with 600 Cart-loads of rich moveables, most part of which belonged to the Jews) who were conducted to the Frontiers of *Silesia*; where having leave for a moneth to refresh themselves, they might go to the King of *Poland* (then in *Silesia*) if they pleased; or else list themselves in the Swedish Army: the Citizens also, agreed to pay 300000 Rixdollars in a moneths time, to the Swedish King; who for this maintaining of these new conquests, was very diligent in fortifying all parts, and particularly, the two head Cities of *Warsaw* and *Cracovia*, the King of *Sweden* giving order to bring the River *Weszel* round about *Cracovia*, whereby it should become very strong.

But while *Cracovia* was besieging, an Envoy from *Konieczpoliki*, Standard-bearer to the Crown of *Poland*, came both to Congratulate (in his Master's name) the Swedish King, and also to let him know, That since their King *Casimir* was fled out of the borders of the kingdom, without their privacy or consent, they had in conscience good reason to provide them of another King, under whose protection they might secure themselves; wherefore his Master, both for himself, and in behalf of the *Guaridian Militia*, and *Pospolitians*, and States, did willingly submit unto his Majesty, to acknowledg him for their Lord and Master; and that to the same purpose, they would send Commissioners to any place he should appoint: Which he very favourably accepting of, determined to send notice of the time and place to the said Standard-bearer. After which, came news from *Warsawia*, from the Chancellor *Oxenstern*, that the Lord *Seynbock* General of the Artillery, had subdued the rebellious *Masquians*. Also another Messenger came from the Lord *Dobichy* Palatine of *Sanddecki*, offering to embrace the King's protection; desiring thereupon, that he would order no more waste to be made in the kingdom; for seeing their King, whom they had stood for the preservation of their privileges,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

ledges, had deserted them, going out of their borders, they were advising among themselves, to dispatch within six or eight dayes, their Commissioners in the name of the whole Nobility, unto his Majesty, to treat about the peace and safety of the Commonwealth. Wherefore the King granted to *Leszynski* the great Treasurer, and the Palatine *Sandonirienfis*, Letters of safe conduct for their free access unto him for that purpose. Who alter the redoucement of *Cracovia*, bent his march towards *Lublin*, where the *Cossacks* with their General, lay encamped: wherein he had a double design, partly to make an agreement with them (who now professed a great willingness to submit unto him); the *Muscovites* also being content to retain onely the 3 Palatinates of *Smolensko*, *Vitebsko*, and *Polusko*, on the other side of the River *Borisphenes*, and to abandon the rest of the great Dukedom of *Lithuania* to the *Suedes*, whereby they would become Masters of all *Poland*; and partly to be nigh *Prussia*, the better to feel the Duke of *Brandenburg*, (for he had not as yet jyned in the above-mentioned league with the King) who (he was advised) had been under-hand solicited by the Emperour, to make a strong League with the Estates of the same Province of *Prussia*, and some others of *Poland*, that had not as yet absolutely declared themselves for the *Suedes*: he being likewise advised, the Duke had sent a distinct body of an Army towards *Thoren*, to hinder there the *Suedes* irruption; and another body towards *Memmel*, upon the frontiers of *Lithuania*, while the remainder of his Army continued in the heart of *Prussia*. And indeed, before this time, the great progress of the *Suedes* in this kingdom, did so startle all the Ministers of the Emperour, that thereupon he (for a time) deferred his journey to *Praque*: and in the mean time, to give satisfaction to the King of *Sweden's* Demands, which were held to be just. For it was a most remarkable providence, that this King should in two or three moneths time even over-run so vast and warlike a kingdom as *Poland*: but he had as well great policy as valour in the design; for when he marched from *Conin* to *Colo*, Aug. 17th; whence he sent parties to get intelligence of the enemies station and posture, expecting to meet with the general Leavies at *Piantek*: a certain Colonel coming in the mean time as an Envoy from the King of *Poland*, with Credentials from him; and audience being given him on the 18th of the same, he offered certain Propositions in order to a Treaty, using these expressions, (among other formalities) *Pacem petimus, et bellum deprecamur, We request peace, and renounce war*; desiring for the present a Cessation of Arms, and that the King would be pleased to stay there, and move on no farther: He understanding the enemies design of delay, because the Envoy was not furnished with full power and instructions to conclude any thing, departed immediately from *Colo* on the 21 day, to put his warlike designs into speedy execution.

*Chmielniski* assuring the King (by the Messenger sent unto him) that he would wholly submit unto him, expecting onely his commands,

E e e e

commands,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

commands, &c. having also quitted *Camietz Podolsky*, as soon as he had notice of the King's march into *Poland*, and advancing towards *Reuss Lomberg*, he beat *Podolsky*, a *Polonian*, expecting also the King's coming at *Samoisky*; all which, the King of *Sweden* himself certified one of his chief Officers of, by a letter from the Camp before *Cracovia*, Octob. 14th, the king went towards him, as aforesaid, who was (after his encamping before *Lublin*) to repair to *Warsaw*, to assist at a general Dyet of the Palatines and other Lords of the kingdom of *Poland*, which was summoned by the king, who appointed Count *Erick Oxienstern* his grand Chancellor, with Count *Benedict Oxienstern*, and the Lord *Berenklow*, to be present therein as his Commissioners. But in the mean time, the *Cossacks* (of whom, he was General) coming before the said *Lublin*, Octob. 15. with a huge Army, reported to be 160000 men, hewed down the Jews, plundering out their houses, fired the fore-Town, and compounded with the Town it self, to have all the Priests goods, and those that were fled from *Poland*, and had brought their goods thither; and a ransom for themselves; taking also an oath of them to be true to the *Muscovites*, and so departed on the 20th day.

Then were the *Swedes* busie in dispersing *Polish* parties that got together: as Major General *Steinbock*, who understanding that some numbers of *Muscovians* had recollected themselves, he scattering them, they sent Deputies unto him for a small accommodation. Also *Lovenhaupt*, another Major General, passed the River *Wysiel* to encounter some *Polish* Troops that were again got together near *Lowick*. Likewise 500 *Polish* horse under the command of one *Jalouskie*, being at the small Town of *Wratlaskie*, and doing some hurt to the Inhabitants, the Duke of *Saxon Lauenburg* meeting with them, took *Jalouskie* and the chief of them, dispersing the rest.

The King of *Sweden* coming to *Warsavia*, Octob. 30. continued not long there; for understanding that the States and chief Cities of *Prussia*, not onely remained obstinate, but were making a strict League and Combination with the Duke of *Brandenburg* against him, he committing the management of the business of *Poland* with the States there present, unto the Rix-Chancellor and some others, departed with some Regiments and the *Quartians*, unto his Army. At which *Warsavia*, was a dangerous Conspiracy detected, which was to have poisoned the King and his Nobles, with the whole Garrison, by infecting all the Conduits and Fountains; for which, some great ones, engaged in the Plot, were apprehended, and committed to Custody.

But the business of *Prussia* occasioned blowes in a sharp conflict between the *Swedes* and Duke of *Brandenburg*, wherein about 5 or 800 of the *Brandenburgers* were slain. And which Quarrel, although it was looked on as ominous, it being betwixt two Princes of the Reformed Religion, at such a time as that, because it might have induced the Electour to some compliance or confederation

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

ration with the *Polish* King and the Emperour; yet the *Swedish* King proceeded with great resolution, marching to *Prussia*, with whom also one Mr. *Rolt* came along, who being sent from the English *Protector*, was received by the King very honourably. Who sending *Steinbock* before him with his Army, he marching thorrow *Marzavia*, with great celerity posselt himself of *Strasburg*, the very Key of *Prussia*, and of very great advantage to the *Swedes*. After which, *Radziefsky* was sent with 3000 horse for *Thoren*; who when he came near the place; finding no *Brandenburgish* forces thereabouts, sent back half his men to the Army, and went with the rest before *Thoren*, admonishing them to obedience: who presently sent Deputies to treat for an accommodation.

The *Muscovites* and *Cossacks* (in the mean time doing what they could to maintain a good intelligence with the *Swedish* King) helped not a little to the establishing and securing his new Conquests: most also of the *Polish* Lords who fled with their King into *Silesia*, now returning to live under the *Swedish* protection. About which time, to wit, about December, the King sent a Letter to the Emperour, complaining, That he had under-hand applied himself to divers Princes of the Empire, for engaging them in a League to his prejudice. The Emperour dismissed the Messenger with a very civil answer, giving him a large assurance of holding a good correspondence with the Crown of *Sweden*, &c. And a Colonel being at that time sent from the King of *Poland*, to raise men in the Imperial Territories, the Emperour gave him (for that present) very strict order against proceeding any further in making levies. The City of *Elbing* in *Prussia* was also yielded to the *Swedes*, without any resistance; for the King of *Sweden* having given audience to the Imperial and *Transylvanian* Ambassadors at the City of *Thoren*, went towards the Town of *Margenfeldt*: where the Deputies of *Elbing* attending him, and craving some time, the better to consult with the other Cities in so weighty an affair, he flatly denying them, they treated with the Rix-Chancellor on the 9th of December; the agreement of whose submission did much satisfy the King: who made the said Chancellor Governour of *Prussia*; and General *Linde* Governour of *Elbing*, and the Militia of *Prussia*, who Decemb. 12th, placed a considerable Garrison therein. On the 4th day of which moneth at midnight, the King of *Sweden* had a lusty young Prince born unto him at *Stockholm*: which was the day of his agreement with the City of *Thoren*; whereinto he entred the day following.

But the City of *Dantzick* in *Prussia* being united in it self, in Decemb. 1653, resolved upon a defence, in case the *Swede* should make any Attempt that way: sending also Instructions to their President with the Elector of *Brandenburg*; by all means to make an Agreement with him, thereby to oblige him to relieve them, if assaulted, and to assist them with some Troops for the present; in order to which defence, they burnt all their Suburbs. And then also was the *Polish* King (who had some new design on foot for

recovery

recovery

ANNO 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

commands, &c. having also quitted *Camietz*, *Podolsky*, as soon as he had notice of the king's march into *Poland*, and advancing towards *Reush Lomberg*, he beat *Podolsky*, a *Polonian*, expecting also the King's coming at *Samoisky*; all which, the King of *Sweden* himself certified one of his chief Officers of, by a letter from the Camp before *Cracovia*, Octob. 14th, the king went towards him, as aforesaid, who was (after his encamping before *Lublin*) to repair to *Warsaw*, to assist at a general Dyet of the Palatines and other Lords of the kingdom of *Poland*, which was summoned by the king, who appointed Count *Erick Oxienstern* his grand Chancellor, with Count *Benedict Oxienstern*, and the Lord *Berenklow*, to be present therein as his Commissioners. But in the mean time, the *Cossacks* (of whom, he was General) coming before the said *Lublin*, Octob. 15. with a huge Army, reported to be 160000 men, hewed down the Jews, plundering out their houses, fired the fore-Town, and compounded with the Town it self, to have all the Priests goods, and those that were fled from *Poland*, and had brought their goods thither; and a ransom for themselves; taking also an oath of them to be true to the *Muscovites*, and so departed on the 20th day.

Then were the *Swedes* busie in dispersing Polish parties that got together: as Major General *Steinbock*, who understanding that some numbers of *Muscovians* had recollected themselves, he scattering them, they sent Deputies unto him for a small accommodation. Also *Lovenhaupt*, another Major General, passed the River *Wysiel* to encounter some Polish Troops that were again got together near *Lowick*. Likewise 500 Polish horse under the command of one *Jalouskie*, being at the small Town of *Wratlaskie*, and doing some hurt to the Inhabitants, the Duke of *Saxon Lauenburg* meeting with them, took *Jalouskie* and the chief of them, dispersing the rest.

The King of *Sweden* coming to *Warsavia*, Octob. 30. continued not long there; for understanding that the States and chief Cities of *Prussia*, not onely remained obstinate, but were making a strict League and Combination with the Duke of *Brandenburg* against him, he committing the management of the business of *Poland* with the States there present, unto the Rix-Chancellor and some others, departed with some Regiments and the *Quartians*, unto his Army. At which *Warsavia*, was a dangerous Conspiracy detected, which was to have poisoned the King and his Nobles, with the whole Garrison, by infecting all the Conduits and Fountains; for which, some great ones, engaged in the Plot, were apprehended, and committed to Custody.

But the business of *Prussia* occasioned blowes in a sharp conflict between the *Swedes* and Duke of *Brandenburg*, wherein about 5 or 800 of the *Brandenburgers* were slain. And which Quarrel, although it was looked on as ominous, it being betwixt two Princes of the Reformed Religion, at such a time as that, because it might have induced the Electour to some compliance or confederation

ANNO 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

ration with the Polish King and the Emperour; yet the Swedish King proceeded with great resolution, marching to *Prussia*, with whom also one Mr. *Rolt* came along, who being sent from the English *Protestour*, was received by the King very honourably. Who sending *Steinbock* before him with his Army, he marching thorow *Marzuria*, with great celerity possesst himself of *Strasburg*, the very Key of *Prussia*, and of very great advantage to the *Swedes*. After which, *Radziefsky* was sent with 3000 horse for *Thoren*; who when he came near the place; finding no *Brandenburgish* forces thereabouts, sent back half his men to the Army, and went with the rest before *Thoren*, admonishing them to obedience: who presently sent Deputies to treat for an accommodation.

The *Muscovites* and *Cossacks* (in the mean time doing what they could to maintain a good intelligence with the Swedish King) helped not a little to the establishing and securing his new Conquests; most also of the Polish Lords who fled with their King into *Silesia*, now returning to live under the Swedish protection. About which time, to wit, about December, the King sent a Letter to the Emperour, complaining, That he had under-hand applied himself to divers Princes of the Empire, for engaging them in a League to his prejudice. The Emperour dismissed the Messenger with a very civil answer, giving him a large assurance, of holding a good correspondence with the Crown of *Sweden*, &c. And a Colonel being at that time sent from the King of *Poland*, to raise men in the Imperial Territories, the Emperour gave him (for that present) very strict order against proceeding any further in making levies. The City of *Elbing* in *Prussia* was also yielded to the *Swedes*, without any resistance; for the King of *Sweden* having given audience to the Imperial and *Transylvanian* Ambassadors at the City of *Thoren*, went towards the Town of *Margenfeldt*; where the Deputies of *Elbing* attending him, and craving some time, the better to consult with the other Cities in so weighty an affair, he flatly denying them, they treated with the Rix-Chancellor on the 9th of December; the agreement of whose submission did much satisfy the King: who made the said Chancellor Governour of *Prussia*; and General *Linde* Governour of *Elbing*, and the Militia of *Prussia*, who Decemb. 12th, placed a considerable Garrison therein. On the 4th day of which month at midnight, the King of *Sweden* had a lusty young Prince born unto him at *Stockholm*: which was the day of his agreement with the City of *Thoren*; whereinto he entred the day following.

But the City of *Dantzick* in *Prussia* being united in it self, in Decemb. 1655, resolved upon a defence, in case the *Swede* should make any Attempt that way: sending also Instructions to their President with the Elector of *Brandenburg*; by all means to make an Agreement with him, thereby to oblige him to relieve them, if assaulted, and to assist them with some Troops for the present; in order to which defence, they burnt all their Suburbs. And then also was the Polish King (who had some new design on foot for

£ c c c 2

recovery

Anno 1653  
of Christ.  
to 1658.

recovery of his kingdom) encreasing his forces which he had on *Silesia's* borders: unto whom *Czarnecki* the Governour of *Cracovia*, went with some Troops to his service, contrary to the agreement made with the King of *Sweden*, upon the surrender of the City. But the great *Chama* of *Tartary*, who was thought would have assisted him to the same purpose, wrote a Letter to the King of *Sweden*, assuring him, That not any attempt should be made by him or his Souldiers, against his progress; but that he was rather willing to help and destroy his enemies, and especially King *Casimir* of *Poland*.

About the same time, a Proclamation was published in *Denmark*, against all private meetings of all persons of any other Religion than what was publicly professed in that kingdom. And the Pope's power of condemning doctrines, received a deep wound in *France*, by the *Sorbonne* Doctors disputing with the Jesuits in a publique Assembly, (where the Chancellor of *France* sat as President on behalf of the King) in defence of the doctrine of *Janfennu*, at *Paris*, about January, 1655; which doctrine spread it self very much in that kingdom among moderate Papists: although the then late deceased Pope had openly damned it. After much disputation, though the authority of the See of *Rome* was much pressed; yet when they came to give their Votes, the *Sorbonne* Doctors alledged, That the Pope was not to be credited in any thing not agreeable to the Scriptures and ancient Fathers: standing all, with one Doctor *Arnaud*, for the *Janfennian* tenets, except two or three: so that the Assembly being put off, the disadvantage remained on the Jesuits side.

General *Steinbock* being countermanded by his King toward *Bromberg* with 4000 men, *Potosky* and another *Polish* General (with part of the *Quartians*) revolting in *Poland*, he upon his march thitherward, commanding Colonel *Fabian* against a part of the enemy; he, after a hot dispute within a mile of *Putske*, put them to flight, slaying and taking divers prisoners, and furiously pursuing the *Poles* to the very Walls of *Putske*.

The *Swedes* being now become Masters of all *Prussia*, except the four Cities of *Dantzick*, *Marienburg*, *Putzke*, and *Schloaw*; *Oxiensfern* the Governour sent to *Wryer*, who held those places for the *Polish* king, offering him a Treaty in order to a surrender, or else there would be proceeding to extremity.

But, great was the tyranny used in great *Poland*, and about *Cracovia*, about this time, by the *Poles*; both when they lighted on the *Swedish* Souldiers, as also dividing and cutting children asunder like sheep, cutting off womens breasts, then dissecting them into four quarters; cutting off the hands and feet of Protestant Ministers, then chopping off their heads, and dividing the body into severall quarters, and the hogs dragging the bowels along the streets; flinging coals also upon the slain mens flesh, so leaving the hogs run unto it, for increasing the pleasure of the tragedy. Many of *Steinbock's* Regiment being so served by this Tragicomedy

comedy at *wielun*. Yet while this cruelty was acting, Colonel *Wskell* and another coming to their relief with 800 horse, cut down above 300 *Poles*, and fired many of their Villages: after which, they began to invite back the Inhabitants, who were fled towards *Silesia*, as being treated in like pitiful manner.

In the month of February, the King of *Sweden* passed by *Warsovia* with three considerable Armies towards the *Ukrain* against the *Polanders*, having a little before proclaimed, That whosoever should protect King *Casimir*, or knowing where he was, would give no notice thereof, should suffer death like a Rebel. And on the 21 day of the same month, the Town of *Marienburg* was delivered up to the *Swedes*; and the Castle (which holding out, thought to have burnt the City, but was prevented by the Inhabitants) was after some dayes playing upon it, surrendered likewise to the *Swedes*, the besieged understanding that an Inhabitant of the City had discovered unto them those private wayes and passages, whereby they might easily make an approach: and also that the *Swedes* had two Mines ready to spring. On the same day, Febr. 21, the *Swedes* obtained no small Victory, whose King with 5000 men fighting the *Poles* near *Lublin* and the River *wes-sel*, routed them, although they fought resolutely, engaging also *Poles* against *Poles* in the action; *Czarnecki*, *Cracovia's* late Governour, commanded the *Polanders*, a great number of whom were slain upon the place, and many taken prisoners, with 12 or 13 Standards: the King also pursuing them above two miles, killing several in the pursuit, and many of them were drowned in the Rivers of *wes-sel* and *wyppera*, and other waters whither they retreated. Others report, that the *Swedes* had but sad work of it; for that, 8000 *Swedes* encountered 20000 *Poles*. And that, as soon as the *Cossacks* (who beheld these Combatants afar off) saw the Victory to incline to the *Swedes*, they helped to pursue and cut the fugitive *Poles* down. After this, the King advanced to *Lublin*, to take that City; thence presently towards *Zamofse*, instantly getting that strong and fortified City upon accord: and being advanced not far from *Zamofse*, they again meeting with a strong party of *Polanders*, beat them back, dispersing them, and taking 7 Standards from them. Of which, *Casimir* hearing, being at *Ress* *Lemberg*, about 8 miles off, and that the King of *Sweden* himself was not far off, he hastened away with 1500 horsemen from *Leopolis* to *Kamieniec* *Poloski*: about which time, there was published a Proclamation in *Silesia*, that no *Polander* should come in sight there upon pain of death. While the King kept his Headquarters in and about *Jarislaw*, much refreshing his Souldiery thereby, he sent parties to see if the enemies any where did gather a head again; who bringing intelligence, that the *Poles* were every where turned peijured Rebels, endeavouring to hinder him in his march, cut off all passes, and arriving by private intelligence with Priests and Jesuits, to reduce the *Swedish* Garrisons in great *Poland*, *Warsovia*, and *Sandomiria*, unto King *Casimir's* obedience again;

Anno 1653  
of Christ.  
to 1658.



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

the King resolved to draw back with his Army to a place where they might the better discover the enemies plots, and invite him to venture a head battle: and sending two Commanders, *March* 21, 1655, with orders unto some following Troops, to march back towards *Warsavia*, there to remain till his return; himself arrived the same day before *Sandomir*: but hearing that some *Polsish* Commanders were the night before become Masters of the City *Sandomir*; though they could not obtain the Castle: whose Governour (a *Suede*) afterwards (in revenge) setting the Jesuits Colledge on fire, the whole Town was thereby burnt to ashes. Yet it seems the truer relation, That the *Poles* themselves firing the houses near the Castle; the fire taking hold of the Jesuits Colledge, seized on the City. Wherefore the King sending order to the said Governour to leave the Castle and cross the River *Weszel* with his men, he obeyed; but put a good quantity of Powder and Ammunition (which he could not carry with him) into a Vault locked up, applying thereto a burning match, which might take fire half an hour after his departure. The *Poles* presently entering the Castle, displayed their Colours, reviling the Governour; and searching into all corners, they found this Vault: which the chief Commander would attribute to himself; and being in hot dispute, the powder firing, blew 1200 *Polanders*, (some *Suedes* also perishing) with the Castle roofs, into the air; the King on the other side of the River being a spectator: who understanding on the 23 day, that *Keniespoliski* shewed himself with about 12000 *Quartians* betwixt *Lanushut* and the King's Camp, drew out 16 Regiments of horse, and 14 Companies of Dragoons, to meet the enemy, and charging them home, dispersed the whole Army, taking many colours from them, beating also *Witepski*, who disputed the Pass over *San*, to the King: after which, he purposed to pass the river *Weszel* 10 miles beyond *Warsavia*, to have a third bout with the Crown Marshal *Lubomirski*. There having been two Embassadors at *Jarslaw* from *Chmielniski* General of the *Cossacks*, who arrived there the 8th of the same moneth, assuring the King by letters, that as soon as the earth was endued with her green robes, he would attend him with 50 thousand men.

April 11. following, 1656, the Marquess of *Baden* going from *Warsavia* with his Troops to join with the King, he chanced to meet with about 12000 *Poles* under *Lubomirski's* Banner, about 8. miles from the City, they were 10 for one; yet the Marquess's men maintaining the fight above two hours before they quitted the field, killed above 2000 *Poles*: then saving themselves by flight, Field-Marshal *Wrangle's* Troops meeting with them, and securing them, they saved likewise a good part of their baggage; yet these few were most cut in pieces in the action, the Marquess himself very narrowly escaping.

The same moneth of April, the King beating and subduing the rebellious *Masures*, with all that adhered to them, arrived toward

ward the end of the moneth, at *Thoren*: about which time, the Prince of *Transylvania* sent the King a letter by an Envoy, assuring him of his real friendship, having 16000 men ready upon the borders under *Backos Gabor's* command, who were at his service.

Then also in *France*, false newes being there spread of the total defeat of the *Suedes*, and the King himself being slain by the *Polanders*, the people of *Orleanse* were so transported with joy thereat; that they made solemn Feasts, distributing a good sum of money to the poor on that account, whereby the vulgar were emboldened to say, They must even take the same course with the Hereticks in *France*. But when through the Messenger's lameness in affirming they were somewhat cooled, they were madly incensed again through the spreading of a rumour, that the English had leave, and did begin to build a place of publique assembly at *Rocheb*, saying, That they ever forelaw, if a peace were concluded once with the *Protestours* in *England*, it would tend to encourage and strengthen the *Hugonots*; making them soon dare to attempt any thing that might subvert the Catholicque profession and interest: so that the Governour of *Orleanse* was fain (at the *Protestants* request) to appoint a guard; they not being safe in repairing to the publique assembly, by reason of the peoples fury. The new Pope, *Alexander* the 7th, having also about the same time (for it was dated at *Rome*, *March* 20th) sent a Brief or Letter to the general Assembly of the French Clergy, exhorting them to stir up the King to a general Peace: which was judged to be but as a fire-ball thrown into *France*, under that pretence, to put the Clergy and people into combustion: which by prudence was broken, and did no hurt.

But the Castle of *Branbergh* in *Poland* being surrendered by the *Suedes* at discretion, the *Polanders* branded them all with a mark on their fore-heads; which indignity was much resented by their party. The King of *Sweden* coming into *Elbing*, May 28; and his Queen coming thither also the next day, after some moneths safe delivery of a young Prince, the great Guns proclaimed great joy at this meeting throughout the Swedish Garrisons in *Prussia*.

Prince *Adolph*, the King of *Suede's* Brother, and the Generalissimo of his Armies, marching to *Znin* and *Kszin*; (having defeated (by his Quarter-Master General, sent thither aforehand) most of those Citizens and Inhabitants who presented themselves in field against him) marched on to *Malgasin*, where hearing that some Gentry and Peasants were in Arms in the Castle of *Golenb*, he commanded the said Quarter-master General thither with some Companies, who demanding their surrender, they found a hostile opposition, many of his men being sorely wounded: wherefore through Ordinance playing hard upon the gate, and the *Suede's* hard pressing on, they could not cast off their draw-bridge; so that the *Suedes* coming on in the storming, to the very Palisadoes, turning down some, made entrance for the rest to let down the bridge, over which they pressing furiously, killed all they found in arms, and

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

and utterly demolished the Castle. Thence marching to *Godzier* Castle, the Gentry and Peasants therein, after firing on those who were sent afore, left the Castle. The enemy turning towards *Gnesen*, after an intent to surprize *Posen*, (in which they were prevented by the Citie's being well provided, and the Suburbs burnt down) *Starofa Braslowsky* sent a Messenger to *Wisezewitz*, whom Prince *Adolph* had sent with a party towards *Gnesen*, that expecting the Swedish Army, they would stand and give them battel. Wherefore *Adolph* sending the forlorn-hope to get some prisoners, (though they were repulsed) marching with his Army over a passage unresisted, put his men into a Battalia; himself commanding the right wing, Field-Marshal *Wrangle* the left; who at the advance approaching so nigh the enemy, because the Princes not being able to come in at the side for the moorishanks of the place, the foremost squadrons were presently scattered: which the enemy's Avant-Troops (too deeply engaged with the Swedish Avant-Troops) perceiving, and being lustily plaid on by the Dragoons in ambush, they beginning to retreat, came so directly between both the Swedish wings, that most of them were destroyed: the right wing thereupon advancing, (and because the enemy still retreated over a water to a Village called *Gietzmarky*, where he rallied again together with the *Possopolitans*) some Ordnance being planted on a high ground, were discharged against the enemy, whilst the Swedes getting over the water, came to a full front; whereupon, the enemy coming furiously on with a great shout, attempted sundry ways to disorder the Swedish Army. But the *Polanders* (after several hot charges, and loss of many men) confusedly fled, the main Body of the *Swedes* pursuing them a league; in which flight, many were cut off also, the Swedes in their hot blood, giving no quarter. This Action fell out, *May* the 8th, new Style, 1656, lasting 5 hours, from 3 in the afternoon, till 8 at night: *Czaracky*, *Lubomirski*, and *Saphia*, were the three chief Commanders for the King of *Poland* in this engagement: the prisoners confessing, that great execution was done by shot, both great and small, among them; 3 *Starofas* being slain, and *Saphia* shot thorow the arm: the *Poles* likewise carrying away many of their slain. The Prince after this on the 10th day followed them to *Wsefaie*, they being but three leagues asunder, where more action was expected.

A little before or about which time, the *waywood* at *Nemgard* caused some *Russians* to be whipt to death; who divulged, that the great Duke resolved for War against the Swedes.

The City of *Elbing* in *Prussia* being become as it were a *Dantzick*, Commodities being now transported thither; for that *Dantzick* stood out against the *Swedes*: some English Merchants of *Dantzick* desiring (about the month of *May*) in the name of the English Nation, leave of the Electour of *Brandenburg*, to transport their goods thence to *Elbing* thorow his Port of the *Pilaw*, he condescended thereunto; giving leave also, that what goods

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

goods the English did send home out of their Pack-Chambers, should passe Cuitome-free; saying, That he yielded them that, in honour of the English *Proteſtours*, and in favour of the English Nation.

It shall not be amisse here briefly to give an account of the reported Revolt of the *Lithuanians* from the Swedish obedience: unto the jurisdiction of whose King, when the Principality of *Samaiten*, with the Provinces belonging, had yielded; King *Casimir* highly endeavoured both by publick Edicts, and secretly with Priests and Jesuits, to involve peaceable minds against their new chosen King: whereby some dwelling in the Bishoprick, in the beginning of the Spring lurking in Forests together, by night, surprized a Company newly raised by *Rose*, murdering some of them; and the Lieutenant who was sick and bed-ridden. Wherefore Colonel *Rebinder* having order to persecute these Rebels, destroyed some hundreds of them, by lying in wait with 400 horse; but the chief escaping by flight, and closing with the Forest lunkers, surprized some new levied forces of Col. *Igelstrom*, destroying them (here and there quartered) in the night; divulging also at the first, as if all *Samaiten* had been in rebellion. But the Field-Marshal, learning that all Forces in that Principality were safe, not so much as knowing of these rebels, he marching out of *Jamshy* with 400 horse, encountered them, putting some hundreds to the sword; but the Bishop of *Samaiten* and the chiefest of the States, severally intimated, that they were ignorant thereof, giving sufficient security of their constant obedience: the Rix-Treasurer and general Governour calling and citing also the States to come to *Byrsen*, and to go with some commanded Souldiers, to try whether the rest could be appeased by fair means; or to keep them in obedience by a Military compulsion; so that it was certain, the Swedes loss in that stir, was not of above 200 men.

The Swedish forces appearing (in the month of *May*) about *Dantzick* for a Leaguer: fell upon the Fort in *Gothland*, hard by *Dishaw*, (which I understand another to call a Sconce lying by the river *Vistula*'s side, otherwise called *Dantzickers Leaguer*) the King, with his Artillery-General *Steinbock*, appearing before it, and sending word to the Garrison, that they should presently yield; and so should depart with their arms: but the Governour having 400 men with him, refused, unless they might carry away their goods, and march with Drums beating, and Colours flying: which being denied, they began within the Fort to defend themselves. But two Swedes who served in that place, having raised a party therein of 50 Souldiers, forced the Governour to an agreement: which being confirmed, the King advanced near the place to speak with him; but a certain Dragooner knowing the King, let fly his Musket at him, so that the Bullet came by his hat, falling a little further; who thereupon commanded to put all to the sword, with the Governour himself, so that very few escaped.

F f f f

On

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

On the 23 day of which *May*, there happened a strange accident in the City of *Dantzick* it felt; for a Citizen striking with his Partisan at a Boy, missing him; the steel of the Partisan falling into the earth with the point upwards, and he at the same time falling with his right side upon the point, which piercing him unto the very back-bone, he dyed lamentably.

But the King of *Sweden* ordering the Marquess of *Baden*, his Lieutnant-General, to march with his men from *Conitz* to *Buttom*, and leaving *Steinbock* before *Dantzick*, with an Army in a very good posture, himself intended to go to his head-Army: where arriving, and hearing that *Czarnecki* stood 6 miles from *Bramberg* with 12 Regiments; he hastening after him, met accidentally with him, yet successfully; pursuing him above two miles, killing many of his men, with two *Waywoods*, and some other chief Officers being taken prisoners.

But the King of *Poland* (who not long before had sent to the Emperour of *Germany* to be a Mediatour for him to the King of *Sweden*; the which he showed a readinesse to do) having gotten together a numerous Army about this time, besieged the City of *Warsovia*, although himself in person came not near it; for which cause the King of *Sweden* went not personally to its relief, but returned to *Marienburgh*; ordering his Brother *Adolph*, and Field-Marshal *Wrangell* to go for *Warsovia*, and oblige *Czarnecky* to a field battle: but the *Poles* finding the whole Swedish Army there, withdrew themselves from before the City, about 3 miles from the place, having made seven attempts to take it by storm; but being repelled with the loss of 3000 of his best Soldiers, and two pieces of Ordnance in the encounters, the King could not persuade them to come on the 8th time, although he promised each man 5 Duckats. And a little before this time, the *Swedes* found a very great treasure in a Vault of *Warsovia's* Castle, there being the Popish Images of Christ and the 12 Apostles, all of Massie silver double gilt, (and other Reliques very pretious) amounting in value to betwixt 4 and 500000 Dollars, besides the reliques. This was the time wherein the forementioned strict League between the King and Duke of *Brandenburg* was concluded: who having a supply of 6 or 8000 men from the Duke to march along with him, he was enabled to continue *Steinbock's* siege before *Dantzick*, to their trouble and discontent; the *Suedes* having before taken not onely *Dantzicker* Leaguer, but possessed themselves also of the Castle of *Greppin* and the *Hoff*; about which time, to wit, in *May*, 1656, the said *Dantzickers* sending an Embassy to the King, they could obtain no answer, but to be gone; for he having sent those Citizens a Letter about submission, they returned a resolute answer; the King of *Poland* having commended them for their constancy, and encouraged them to continue. After which, the Duke of *Croy* (one of that Citie's neighbour-Princes) writing a Letter to persuade them to a compliance with the King of *Sweden*; wishing they had contented themselves with a simple

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

a simple self-defence, and not took upon them to have hindered his progress; (for they, whatever else, had endeavoured to relieve *Marienburgh* Castle) also telling them, after divers considerations laid down, If they could reap no other benefit by the expected successe, in their designs, than the rooting out of the Gospel of truth; and that, by the bringing in of the superstitious Roman Religion again; might not onely be feared the loss of their own souls, but also a total ruine of their Trade, and the Citie's welfare; wherefore he could not conjecture how they might excuse such dangerous enterprises and designs to posterity. They returned divers, not unsober, expressions in answer; saying, They were assured in their consciences, that they have not afforded the least occasion to that miserable War, &c. also mentioning 5 principall Maxims which their Predecessours, and they, in imitation of them, had alway made their chiefest work to consider; 1. To maintain the Gospel of Truth. 2. To be faithful to their King. 3. To keep firm to the Crown of *Poland*. 4. To defend their Laws, Liberties, &c. 5. To preserve and increase the welfare of that City. They said, they did confidently believe, that none could impute it to them, as if God took pleasure in Apostates and Hypocrites, and as if he would have Religion promoted in casting off the lawfull Magistrate, and in the slender esteem of a well-grounded Government: and that according to their judgments, there was nothing more wholesome and prosperous than Peace, to preserve and propagate Religion, which the Prince of Peace had so earnestly recommended to all those who would truly follow him. They adding moreover, That the Duke himself (being perfectly well versed in History) would be pleased to call to mind; how that at all times, by Wars, the spirits of men grew more barbarous and inhumane; and how, the Wars for Religion, used commonly to extinguish Religion. Concluding with a hope, that the Duke would be pleased, from their abovesaid reasons, and his own interest, to co-operate to the mitigation of the *Swede's* great spirits: and that they would do their best endeavours humbly to persuade their King of *Polonia*, and the Nobles of that Kingdom, not to refuse reasonable means to attain peace; but rather to find out all possible means to compass it; and not doubting, but their King and the States would be very inclinable thereunto.

This Summer, 1656, there was such a mortal Pestilence in the City of *Naples*, that some dayes 6000 people were said to dye of it therein. The Pestilence was then also raging in all places possessed by the Turks in the Island of *Candia*, that they were forced to abandon divers Towns which they there held, and to leave them desolate.

About the same time, July 16, the *French* received a great loss before *Valenchienne*, which they had besieged; for the *Spaniards* frequently shewing as if they would fall upon Marshal *Turen's* and the *Lorrainer's* quarter; at last fell in good earnest upon Marshal *de la Ferte's* quarter: who coming resolutely on, had three

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

or four repulses by the French their notable resistance: and when the *Spaniard* afterwards had fallen in among them, they so fought it out, that of 1200 in *Du Pleffis* Regiment, there remained but 30 men. The whole Regiments of *Le Ferte* and *Piedmont*; ten Companies of the King's guards, and the Cardinal's guards, with *La Ferte's* Dragoons also which were near 800, and his Regiment of horse, 1200, were all cut in pieces. Likewise the *Switz*-rs Regiments, 800 of whom escaping the sword, were drowned by water coming into their Trenches at the sudden opening of the sluices: and whereby, all commerce betwixt the two bodies of the French Army was intercepted: so that *Turen* being forced to stand all the while a Spectatour, at length drew off all his (being about 12000) men to *Quesnoy*, a garrison about two leagues from *Valenchienne*, where next morning came to him betwixt six and seven thousand recruits, who had thought to have united with him at the siege. The Marquess of *Estrée* was slain in this overthrow, and the Count his brother taken prisoner, besides many Marquesses, Counts, and other great persons, and Officers killed or taken: and *La Ferte* himself, being wounded in the thigh, was taken prisoner.

Things in *Germany* went then worse with the Protestants than formerly; for at *Collen*, in the same month of July, several families of them were distressed, because that after three summons, they refused to pay their fine, for not sowing Flowers before their houses on the Sacrament day, when the Host was carried thorow the street; which had not been exacted in 30 years. It was likewise moved and deliberated in the Council of that City, to turn all the said Protestants after a years warning, out of the City, so soon as the Treaty of *Munster* was expired.

But the *Dane* and the States of the United Provinces now understood each other, as to providing that the *Swede* grew not too potent in or near the Baltick Seas: and that King standing in very good terms with those States, gave their Embassadours hopes, that 10 of his Men of War should joyn with theirs upon occasion.

In August following, against the Duke of *Brandenburg*, (who had a little before declared to an Envoy, (sent unto him from the grand Cham of *Tartarie*, to perswade him from any agreement with the Swedish King) that since he was totally abandoned by the King of *Poland*, he thought himself concerned to take a course for conservation of his Estates held in *Prussia*) a Sentence was pronounced from a Verdict of the Imperiall Chamber in *Germany*, in reference to the War made in 1653, (as we have declared in the foregoing Chapter) against the Duke of *Newburgh*, who being judged guilty of giving the first occasion thereof, was condemned to pay towards the charges, 200000 Rixdollars to the said Duke of *Newburgh*; and in default of payment, his Land of *March* should be mortgaged.

But the King of *Poland* coming afresh upon the City of *Warsaw*

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

via after its relief; it was yielded up to him July the first; the *Swedes* being to leave their booties and plunder behind them, with the Artillery, and what belonged thereunto; Gen. *Wittenberg* marching out with 4000 *Swedes*: the women were civilly used, and had some inferiour Officers granted them to bring them to the Swedish Camp: yet all the conditions were not kept; which was to be attributed to the roughness of the Polish Souldiery, rather than to King *Casimir*. At the same time *Cracovia* also was beleagured and hardly put to it by the Queen of *Poland's* Army; unto whose Camp the King her husband had sent 8000 men; and whom to meet at *Warsavia*, she personally departed from before *Cracovia*. The King of *Sweden* being still encamped at *Nowedwor*, (from whence came intelligence into *England*, of some particular Successes against Polish parties, obtained by that Army who marched from *Thoren* May 30th, to relieve *Warsavia*) where the Electour of *Brandenburg* joyned his Forces to his, July 7th; they resolving to fall suddenly into King *Casimir's* Camp, although he gave out to be above 100000 men. Who because of his great numbers, not much regarding the forces of the King of *Sweden* and the Electour, on July 27, 1656, sent a Body of *Tartars* (for these were united with him) to besiege *Polonsko*: whereupon the *Swedes* seeing an opportunity of action, drew out their forces to relieve the City: which was performed with slaughter among the besieging *Tartars*. July 28, the King and the Electour crossing the River *Buk*, drew up their Army in Battalia, advancing towards the *Poles*: King *Casimir* standing (with 150000 or 120000) to receive them: where, after some light skirmishes betwixt their forlorns, and more engagements, till night parted them, and in which first encounters the *Swedes* had the worst; (though they valiantly repulsed a body of *Tartars* sent to fall on their rear) next day, July 29, a grand battle beginning, one of the Swedish Wings at first, seemed to be declining; but recovering their wonted courage by others sent to succour them, (though the *Poles* came on very numerously and furiously) they kept their ground. The Battle continuing all this day, untill the next, July 30th, in the conclusion, the King and the Electour (who behaved himself valiantly) had a marvellous Victory; for the *Poland* King losing a great part of his foot, all his Ordnance and baggage, and leaving the City of *Warsavia* open to the *Swedes*, fled after his horse, with a few in his company, into *Podlachia*.

In August following, that strong and important Garrison of *Conde* in *Flanders* was yielded up by the French to the *Spaniard* upon Articles after no short siege.

News being come to *Stockholm*, in July, that the *Muscovites* had broken into the Province of *Ingermanland*, the Estates of *Sweden* here assembling, ordered all Governours to provide, and speedily send all sorts of Ammunition into that Province, as also into *Finland* and *Liesland*; and although they resolved not to proceed against the *Muscovite*, before they saw he was become an absolute enemy;

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

enemy; yet in the mean time, they assured themselves of the *Muscovites* living in *Stockholm*, beginning to seize all their Estates and Merchandizes, and imprisoning some, for imbezilling part of their goods: and hearing soon after, that the *Muscovite* was entered into *Liefland*, and what he had done upon it, they laboured with all possible diligence to take some course for rescuing that Province out of the Jaws of those devouring enemies; not only sending forces to strengthen the most important Towns, but raising men in several parts of *Sweden*: the Nobility and Citizens with great cheerfulness agreeing to contribute twice as much (upon this occasion) as they were wont to do in the foregoing years. And indeed, things went but ill with the *Swedes* in *Poland* now, because (for that present) the King was constrained to draw away the main of his forces with speed into *Liefland*; though he left sufficient to maintain all their Garrisons except *Warsavia*, which they slighted, demolishing its fortifications; so, forsaking all on this side the River *Weyssell*. The Electour of *Brandenburgh* was to secure *Prussia*; but *Poland* was left to the disposal of providence: so that it was observed, that the Polish King had been (in all probability) soon driven out of his Dominion, or forced to accept Conditions of peace, had not this fierce invasion of the great Duke fallen out: who toward the latter end of *August*, 1656, late down before *Riga*, (the chief City of the Province of *Liefland*) but about a stones cast from it, (and with an Army so numerous, that the Consul of the City having gone up to the loftiest Tower thereof, to view them at their approach beheld them with admiration, as exceeding (he certified in his letter) the Grasshoppers in number) who sent in a Trumpeter to the Citizens with a proud Message, That if they would submit and supplicate for clemency, they might have it; but if obstinately standing out, they must expect nothing but ruine and destruction. The Swedish Souldiers there in Garrison were but 1500; but the Citizens being resolved men, listed 4000, and persons of good estate, who were in arms: the City being also well provided with necessaries, and their Fortifications compleated, they said, they feared no force; yet they expected relief from the King of *Sweden*: which the *Muscovites* laboured to prevent, by intending to build Forts between the City and the mouth of the River *Duna*. And amongst other barbarous proceedings of the *Muscovite*, taken for certain, the Count of *Thurne* (who married *Banner's* Widow, the great Swedish General in the *German Wars*, and sister to the Marquess of *Baden*) being abroad out of *Riga* with a party of 300 horse, was at their first coming thither met with: who being defeated and taken, they cut off his head, and fixed it on a Spear to shew it the besieged; though the trunk of his body was by the enemies convenience conveyed into the City.

On the very same day, *August* 28, was the City and Castle of *Cracovia* said to be surrendered to the Polish and Austrian forces; but on very good terms; as not onely for the *Swedes* to carry away

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

away what they could upon all the horses in the City; but to be supplied with 200 more by the *Polanders*, to carry their baggage, and to be conveyed with 1200 horse and foot to *Crescen*, &c. But as for the *Arians* and *Jews* that were in the City, the former were to petition for pardon, and having their goods exempted from confiscation, their persons to be banished; but the latter were to be left to the King of *Poland's* mercy.

But about the beginning of *Sept.* following, Prince *Adolph* with his forces successfullly encountered 2000 sallyers out of *Dantzick*, (who had a design upon the Bridge under *Dirshan*) with a small loss: the *Dantzick* horse and Dragoons timely running, but the party of foot fighting stoutly: who notwithstanding, had been all lost, if they had not met with a Marsh, to which they retreated; five Colours, seven pieces of Ordnance, with all their Wagons, weretaken, and above 200 prisoners, but far more slain; 200 also retreating between the water, where they were shut up, were expected soon to yield.

But that the King of *Sweden* (who had sufficiently engaged himself in undertaking so great a Conquest as the Kingdom of *Poland*) might be deeper engaged; the King of *Denmark*, who had before made preparations, was ere this, as a third enemy, come upon his back both by Sea and Land: so that, before the middle of September there was a great fight at Sea between the Danish and Swedish Fleets: the *Swedes* having 44 ships in all, to wit, 33 great Men of War, the other somewhat lesse, with two fire-ships. Of the Danish Fleet I am not certain of their number, (but 22 sayl were seen not far from the Island *Mons* before the fight began) who when they saw the Swedish about the *Hilden* Sea, began to retreat, steering for *Copenhagen*; but being pursued by the *Swedes*, they were forced to engage: the fight beginning about two of the clock in the afternoon, and continuing till night, and a good while with much resolution on each side; four ships being related to be blown up into the ayr, and the *Swedes* getting the day.

The King of *Poland* possessing *Cracovia*, presently sent a Courier or Post to *Dantzick*, as to give them an account thereof, so promising them, that *Czarnecky* should with his choycest horse, shortly strike into *Pomerania*, and *Lubermisk* should with the Austrian forces fall into *Prussia*, to divert the King of *Sweden*, and call him out of the Danish Dominions; wherefore the Swedish King hastening to *Wisnar* in *Pomerania*, to put all things there in a posture of defence, came thither *Sept.* 14, he leaving his Army to carry on the War against *Denmark*, under the Command of General *Wrangell*. And, to restore life and spirit to the Swedish affairs then doubtful, if not drooping, one Father *Daniel*, an Ambassador of the *Cossacks*, came from their General *Chmielniski* to the King of *Sweden* some dayes before, to assure him, that the said General was upon his march with 24000 men for his assistance, as was certified by a Post from *Elbing* in *Prussia* to the City of *Bremen*, *Sept.* the 7th; who also brought news, that the Prince of *Transylvania*

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

*Transylvania* was ready with an Army of 40000 men for some exploit against the Polish King, or (for the Austrians were joyned with the Poles) against the Emperour.

About or in the moneth of April, 1656, there were great disorders and tumults (raised by 20000 Janizaries and Saphies) at *Constantinople*, (said to be occasioned through want of pay, and the obtruding on them a new Coin of a very base Alloy) who proceeded so far as to massacre divers of the grand Seignior's Divan or Council, and to depose and strangle the Visier Bassa, whose carcase they with scorn exposed in the Market-place: forcing also the Sultana, Mother of the grand Signior, to fly to the old Seraglio for security: the Musli or chief Priest being slain likewise to save himself by flight; not daring to trust the words of those Mutineers, whose design was to have dethroned the grand Seignior, and to have established his brother in his place. They laying aside also all other principal Officers of the Empire, to secure themselves against a deserved punishment, chose others in their places who were at their devotion: and searched diligently after such great Officers who escaped their hands: and all things there were then in so great confusion, that some strange alteration of affairs among them was expected; so that although this might have been enough to give a stop to the Turk's proceedings against the *Venetians*; yet the new ones in power went on with their preparations against their interest in *Candia* with more vigour than before; so that the Republicque of *Venice* was fain to send speedily away Prince *Horatio Farnese*, and other chief Commanders with good numbers of men, and store of Ammunition for maintaining of what they held in that Isle. The Turks also then coming together at *Bagdaluck*, making great Magazines at *Clivaxo*, with eight great Artillery pieces, and 1000 yokes of Oxen to draw them for the besieging of *Sebenico*, they ordered *Antonio Bernardo* to go with all speed into *Dalmatia*, as Commissary General, to assist the General *Zeko*.

But within two or three moneths after, those Tumults in *Constantinople* being appeased, the Grand Seignior making a stately Cavalcade throughout the City, at that time, gave order, for executing divers of the Ring-leaders in the said disorders, for greater terror to the people in time to come: dispatching also away a Courier in all haste to the Bashaw of *Damasco*, requiring him speedily to come away and take on him the slain grand Visier's Office; which great place was conferred on him, although but 24 years of age, because of his great abilities already shewn in the places of his Government. Who about the moneth of June, being fetcht into *Constantinople* with great pomp and solemnities made at his installing into the said Office; presently after, that Turkish Fleet was recruited with men, money, and other necessities; over which the *Venetian* Fleet obtained a great and notable Victory, June 26, 1656, who having made one moneths stay in the mouth of the *Dardanelles*, to wait for, and fight the enemy, (se-

ven

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

ven Gallies of *Malta* arriving in the mean time) the Turk's Captain Bassa appeared in sight of the Castles, his Fleet consisting of 28 great ships, 60 Gallies, 9 Galeasses, and other small Vessels. The *Venetian* Navy had 28 great Ships, 24 Gallies, 7 Galeasses, (besides those of *Malta* aforesaid) commanded by the Prior of *Roccella*; who keeping in the narrowest part of the Channell; the Turks could not come forth without accepting the offered battle. The Bassa (at first) had raised two Batteries on Land on both sides the River, one on *Natolia* side, the other on the side of *Greece*, as thinking to facilitate their own going forth, by obliging the other to forsake their Station: yet the *Venetians* undauntedly resisting their shot, rendered that advantage of theirs unprofitable: wherefore the Bassa (being expressly ordered to attempt going out) on the 26th day in the morning, through a pleasant North-wind advanced all his great Ships, who withdrew notwithstanding behind the Point of *Barbiera*; whither the Bassa himself repaired with his Gallies: a few hours after, through a small North-west wind, the *Venetian* Navy moving, *Eleazar Moccenigo*, now a Volunteer, and commanding the left Wing, advancing and passing beyond the Turkish Fleet, fought valiantly, endeavouring to hinder its retreat. The battle being begun, *Laurence Marsello* the *Venetian* General, with him of *Malta*, intermingling with the other *Venetian* Vessels, fell to it Pell-mell; so that the Turks being hemmed in, and no place to escape, were forced to fight with the more eagerness: but they were wholly routed by sword, fire, and water, the Captain Bassa saving himself with onely 14 Gallies; 40 Gallies were taken in the fight, 10 sunk and burnt; also 9 Mahones were taken; but the 28 great Ships were (for the most) burnt. The number of the Turks slain could hardly be discovered: yet 5000 were judged to be killed; 4 or 5000 Christian slaves being released, and 4000 Turks made slaves. The *Venetian's* loss being their chief Captain *Marsello*, 300 Souldiers and Marriners; 3 Ships of theirs likewise were burnt, two in fight, and one by an accident. After an extraordinary joy manifested by the Duke and City of *Venice*, the Senate ordered for releasing of all prisoners for debt; some of the Banditi being freed also; and *Moccenigo*, who had contributed much to the gaining of the Victory, was the first that was Knighted by the Senate, with a chain of gold of 2000 Crowns conferred on him; and then was declared Generalissimo in the room of slain *Marsello*; in remembrance of whom, a publique service was ordered to be celebrated at the publique charge.

About the moneths of *July* and *August*, the Emperour of *Germany* (whose Son, the King of *Hungary*, assisted the *Pole* at the taking of *Cracovia*) was very strong in forces, as if he intended some great design: the number of whose Regiments of horse were 9550 men; of his foot 25300; and in the several places within his Dominions which were Garrisoned, or to be made Garrisons, (to wit, in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, the Upper and Nether *Silesia*, and *Hungary*, there disposed in divers places, and upon the Turk's borders) were

G g g g

appointed

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

appointed to defend them, 19750 men: who also about Sept. following sent 11 Regiments of Horse and foot out of his Regiments, yet levying 10 new ones in his hereditary Countries in their stead; 44 Troops of the one, and 66 Companies of the other, under General *Enckenford*, to aid the *Spaniards* in *Milain* of *Italy*, against the *French* and Duke of *Modena*; resolving to set out a *Manifesto* concerning that design: The *French* having lustily struggled against the *Spaniards* besieged by them, in the City of *Valentia*, and the Duke of *Modena* preparing to meet the Emperour's forces with great courage and resolution. A little before which, the said Emperour sending an Expreſſe to demand of the King of *France*, the payment of three millions of Crowns, which he was obliged to do by the Treaty of *Munster*, or else to surrender up *Brifac* and all *Alſatia*, it occasioned the enemies of *France* to raise rumours, that the Emperour intended to send an Army for recovery of *Alſatia*.

About the same time, some Thieves in the Turkish Dominions set fire on the Seraglio of *Bosnia*, 4000 houses, 4 Dovens of Custom-houses, and 3 Mosques being burned down to the ground, and the Jews quarter was plundered. And at the City of *Luca* in *Italy*, one *Pisani* a Traytour was executed to death, for attempting to kill all the Nobility, and change the Government of that little Common-wealth.

But the Princes of the Empire were not well pleased with this so hasty undertaking of the Emperour in *Italy*, and without demanding their advice in a business so important, and prejudicial to the Empire; also so contrary to the Treaty of *Munster*, and expressly mentioning, That the Dukes of *Mantua* and *Modena*, shall be free to make War, the Emperour nor to send any forces against them, without the Princes Eleſours their consent: who were so far from that, that they protested against this sending, as a manifest violation of that Treaty of peace so solemnly sworn, and that which could have no other effect than the troubling of *Germany*, and reviving of War: neither (it appears) were (whatever the cause was) some of the Souldiers well pleased with their going; for two Regiments at a general Muster of them, mutined and disbanded; although some of them were therefore taken and hanged.

In the year 1655, Septemb. 20, Pope *Alexander* the 7th (who had lately entred into the Popedome, endeavoured to bring about a general Peace among the Princes addicted to him; writing Letters also to the Kings of *France* and *Spain* to that end) wrote a Letter to all the Popish Clergy throughout Christendom, to stir them up to use all means for procurement of a settlement of the said Peace.

But in *Helvetia* or *Switzerland*, (which Country being governed after a Democratical form, is divided into 13 Cantons or Bailiwicks, five of whom have been esteemed wholly Papists, six wholly Protestants, and the other two mixt of both: which division

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

vision began about or in the year 1519, when *Zuinglius*, Minister of *Zurich* or *Tigurum*, seconded *Luther's* beginning: which the rest of this people not liking, moved War with them of *Zurich*, and the rest of the Protestants, in which, *Zuinglius* himself was slain, (for it was the custom of the place, for the Ministers to go in the Front of their Armies, and he also of a bold spirit) and the *Tigurines* discomfited; yet in the year 1531, an absolute Peace was concluded betwixt them: whereby notwithstanding the diversity of Religion, they lived in unity) the Protestant professors there, being first offended, began to arm themselves against the Popish Cantons in 1655; for besides the differences which the Capuchins there excited, and which every where increased, divers in the Popish Canton of *Switz*, as also some in *Lucerne*, (who were called *Nicodemites*, because they at first secretly owned the Protestant Articles of faith; yet afterwards openly professed the same) were imprisoned, (the Popish Cantons also solemnly swearing their religious alliance against those in *Lucerne*) and by those of *Switz* very cruelly handled: some of whom escaping out of the prisons, detested their cruelties and idolatry; which confirmed the rest; the other yet in prison being also very constant in their faith: one of the notablest young men named *Sebastian Anna Mousnier*, a prisoner in the Town of *Switz*, escaping out at one of the Water-passages, as the Popish were in the midst of their *Bacchanalian* revels, on the Sunday, after many tortures and miseries undergone. The *Nicodemites* so called, coming out of *Switz* into *Zurich*, made their profession very distinctly (about the beginning of October there, 1655,) upon all the Articles of faith, and so labouring to confirm them by Texts of Scripture. About the same time, those of *Lucerne* released them that they had in prison; though upon what conditions was not then known: yet these who were set at liberty, continued as firm and fervent as ever: one was likewise laid hold on for reading the Bible.

Neither were the Papists themselves free from differences amongst each other; for when the foresaid League was sworn against those at *Lucerne*, the swearers chose one *Charles Borromeo* a *Milanais*, to be their Advocate and Patron, publishing a Patent to that purpose, declaring the reasons of that their new idolatry: at which, many of their Popish brethren were so offended, that they entred into an oath and combination against that new *Italian* Patron, resolving to adhere to the old. But the Popish Cantons (at first) arming themselves insensibly, sought every way for friends and assistance; sending Deputies to the Bishop of *Basle*, to procure him to swear their League against the Protestants: *Milain* offering them men to the last, and *Rome* money; but the rest of their friends would do but little.

About November following, the *Zurichers* had intelligence that some of the *Nicodemites* were at *Switz*, to be executed to death, if the presence of the Protestant Cantons Deputies did not hinder the

G g g g 2

same;

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

same; wherefore they were wonderously resolved to oppose that Fury: the mixt Canton of Appenzel, who were then 5000 strong, and the Papists but 1500, resolving to turn out the Nuns, which made the Monks to mourn, as to be deprived of their wonted visits. The second Deputies being sent to *Switz*, had indeed a favourable Audience; But they proposing restitution to be made of the goods of those departed from *Switz*, for Religion sake, as it had been formerly done by the Protestant party, towards all such as had relinquished the Protestant profession, whom they treated with all civility when they were imprisoned on the like occasion: the Town of *Switz* denied them, saying, They being in Sovereign State, had a right to proceed as they judged meet against their Subjects; because those who deserted them were perjured and Apostates, &c. and being legally cited, had refused to appear; wherefore their goods were justly confiscated: and that with those whom they had in prison for the same fault, they would proceed according to the nature of their offences. The Protestant Deputies being astonished hereat, after some conference, propounded, that since they would not condiscend in a friendly way, they would referre the whole matter for determination, to the Law of all *Switzer-land*: which they likewise peevishly and scornfully enough refusing, the Deputies departed, but ill satisfied: and not only the other Protestant Cantons, with no small regret observed, but even 3 Popish ones did not approve of the violence, wherewith the *Switzers* mindes were possessed, and what troubles they of *Zurick* endured from them, for above 2 years before, yet they thought fit to own them in the quarrel of Religion: who then all armed apace, and had done some affronts and injuries to the Protestant Cantons in a very particular manner, (though their Magistrates offered Chastisement, seeming to be displeased thereat) wherefore the Protestants putting themselves into a posture, observed all their proceedings, and on the 14th of the said November, appointed an Assembly to begin, to deliberate touching that great affaire, and also of the other grievances and oppressions. Also on of the 12th of this month, most of the Deputies of the Cantons meeting at *Baden*, (divers Papists being absent, because of some Holidays by them observed) the French Ambassadour, *De la Barde* came thither from *Salotorne*, where, in a speech, he earnestly exhorting them to union, afterwards entertained them at a banquet. But the Deputies of *Zurick* having declared their Complaints against *Switz*: they could get no other answer from them, but, that they were Sovereigns in their own Country, and if they roasted their Subjects they needed not to give any account of their Actions. The *Zurickers* replied, if ye give us not a better answer, we shall be constrained to use such means as God hath given us: So offering to leave *Baden*, and go home to order their Army presently, to march out of *Zurick* into the Field; but the other Protestant Deputies, and some also of the more moderate Popish

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

Popish ones, prevailed with them to tarric: promising their endeavour to draw *Switz* to some reason. *Austria* threatened the Protestants; but their Neighbour-friends were very cold.

On the 16th day they had a hot dispute also at *Baden*: wherein, them of *Switz* alleadging the National peace formed in 1531; the *Zurickers* called for the Records, and the instrument being distinctly read, one *Waser* a Burgomaster largely declaring, Demonstrated that the Popish Cantons had never observed the Principal Articles of that peace; but had since made alliances against them, more accounting of those latter Covenants, than of their Ancient general treaties: and that it deserved no better name then meer Conjuraton, and sworne Conspiracy against them: which they must no longer endure; Wherefore *Zurick* standing to their first proposal, required the other Cantons to do justice against *Switz*. About the same time (though all the Popish Cantons drew in one string) (but some of the other Popish Deputies pretended an approving of *Zuricks* demands, &c.) the *Zurickers* had intelligence, that *Lucerne* (which was saved by *Zurick* from utter ruine in the last Rebellion) took notice of the horrible slanders begun, to be spread concerning those of the Protestant Religion; and had published an Edict, Commanding all their Subjects to abstaine from those slanders on pain of death, also they heard, that the Popish Deputies offered to let all these Controversies be determined, by an equal number of judges, of either Religion; but it was thought by some, to be but to gain time, because the Protestants were a great deal more ready for the Field, then the other thought they could be.

About January following, it was certified out of *Switzer-land* into *England*, that it clearly appeared, the Pope and his Emisaries to have been the instruments of raising that quarrel among the Cantons: exasperating his Catholiques, to act such cruelties and injustice, as had dissolved the general league of union that was between them: and promising supplies to carry on that War, which was waging meerly upon the account of Religion: wherefore the Popish Cantons endeavoured by Agents to estrange the seemingly neutral Cantons, from the Protestants, and to draw them over to their own party: But the Protestants being before them in preparations, and exceeding them in number, they intended through the mountainousness of their Country, to stand on the defensive, so to linger out time till spring, when as they expected help from their Popish friends; but the Protestants were then beginning to March with a fair train of Artillery, to provoke, or, if possible, to force the enemy to an open engagement.

About the same time, was seen a declaration in *England*, of the judgment of the Ministers of *Castel*, the Court of the *Lantgrave* of *Hesse*, approving that work of *John Dury*, a Scottish Minister, who had renewed again his endeavours, for procuring Concord among all of the reformed Religion, who had Cast off Romish superstition:



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

perdition: wherein among other things, they declared, that as manifold experience had shewn, all the Miseries of War, Perils of treachery, Dreadful mischiefs, by Commotions of States and Kingdoms, do proceed from dissensions and divisions in Religion as out of *Pandora's box*; so from religious and true concord do spring all heavenly blessings, tranquillity, and all kind of advantages: and that, although it had been openly maintained by some men, That Agreement in Religion could not be pleasing to God; yet it was past all question, That peace conjoined with truth, was most acceptable to God the Author of both, &c. and as the wiser sort anciently held, That the best remedy in case of Invasion by a common enemy, was to unite all parties, and take away all enmities and divisions in the Common-wealth: Why then should it not be thought the most adviseable course to take the same care in Religious matters, (seeing the common enemy, that is, the Pope, became more and more raging every day) that all animosities and emulations being extinguished, and all controversies and disputes about matters less necessary and weighty being removed, a mutual Concord might be established by the common consent of all *Calvin* and *Lutheran* Professours, as very little differing in the main things; lest their dissensions should become their enemy's advantage, prejudice to their friends, and open provocations of God's wrath: in order to which, and the like, they shewed, That whereas the resolution of the Estates of the Empire convened at *Frankfort* in 1634, might serve to point out a way: a Conference at *Leipsick* would be a means to give light in things of truth.

The Affairs of *Switzerland* being now in a very broken condition, the Protestant Cantons had three dayes Assembly at *Brugg*, unanimously resolving peremptorily to insist, at the next Diett to be held at *Baden*, on the right of Alliance and agreement betwixt all the Cantons: and if reason were not done, then to take the field immediately. Which they did; for in the very same January, the Forces set out by *Zurick*, (*Werdmuller* being their General) marched abroad in several bodies, to the number of 10000 men: *Werdmuller's* first booty was of the plunder of a very rich Cloyster in *Rynaw*, a strong place and passage which he took: then he took in *Keyserstuel*, a strong Pass upon the *Rhine*: where some *Zurickers* were wounded: in the mean time, *Ulrich* the Lieutenant General going into *Turgon*, took *Fauchfield* and its Castle, with the Popish Bayliff and his Officers; but the people presently submitted. After that, *Werdmuller* went toward *Rappeswill*; which place being very well provided, and the bridge so defended, he made some attempts to come near it, and the enemies some sallies; yet both without effect. But departing thence to the other side of the Lake, he took in the Island of *Uj-naw*, assaulting also the very strong Castle of *Pfeskian*. *Berne* being likewise marching to divide towards *Lucerne*, (*Geneva* having sent them three good Companies of Souldiers) the Cantons of *Friburg* and *Soleure* had

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

had endeavoured by their Deputies to keep them therefrom; but they came too late. *Rappeswill* being still besieged, and they within shooting off many chained bullets, flints, and pieces of steel, wounding and killing some *Zurickers*, they were mightily incensed: whose stout resolution and courage was admired; who although the like cold weather had not been seen in that Country for a long time, the horse and Ordance being scarce able to passe: yet they would go on (to get as many places as they could) without delay. At *Zurick* also came forth a Manifesto, concerning the Subject of that War, whereby might be seen the great injustice, tyranny, and violence of the Papists, and chiefly of the Canton of *Switz*.

In February following, *Arnaud*, one of the *Sorbonne* Doctors before mentioned, was with his opinion, condemned and censured by the Molinists or Jesuits, and numerous party of Monks, who had both written and disputed in defence of the Doctrine of *Jansenius*: (which matter had took up the observation and expectations of the whole Kingdom of *France* concerning its event and issue) it being put to the question, they damned his Propositions; the one as rash, scandalous, and injurious to the See of *Rome* and the Bishops: the other, as wicked, blasphemous and heretical: thereupon sentencing him to be rased out of the number of Doctors, and degraded from all the functions and priviledges of a Doctor: and further concluding, That for the future, none should proceed Doctor, who did not subscribe to the Censure. On the 13th of which February, was the opening of the general Assembly of the Clergy of *France*.

The Protestants of *Switzerland* successfully proceeding in revenge of the innocent blood of their massacred brethren, exceedingly strengthened themselves. Some in that Country were Neutral, although Catholics; *Basile* also being more inclined to peace than war, whose Ambassadors were then at *Berne*: which *Berners* took *Zug* and beset it; so causing great perplexity in the *Switz*, where, and in divers places, divers Popish families (apprehending the Jesuits cruelty in egging them on, and pressing the Magistrate to hang, burn, and quarter those that turn to the Protestant Religion) publicly professed the same in the streets, and in great number daily flocked to the Protestants, submitting to their protection. *Zurich* and *Clognew* did now homage to the *Zurickers* who had assured the *Aue*: those of *Gensf* 6000 strong, joining to the *Berners*; who were now 20000 strong, and expecting 3000 more to come unto them out of *Vaud*. There being likewise at *Bunthen* 6000 Protestants ready to maintain the Passes towards *Tyroll* and *Italy*. The Popish Canton Forces of *Uri*, *Schayes*, and *Underwalden*, kept in a body, where they might have access at pleasure into *Rappeswill* by the bridge: the besieged of which Town, very furiously sallying out Jan. 16, with 1000 the choicest men as far as *Warmspach* Convent, were chased in again by the *Zurickers* with great loss; *Werdmuller* raising the spirits of his



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

men by his valiant example : and Captain *Eldibach*, who kept *Warmspach*, slaying a great number of them. Among them that were taken, were two brothers, held as *Goliaths* among the Papists, and being the chief persecutors of the *Nicodemites*: their father being one who passed sentence on a Widow, one of them that were executed for Religion, (the Protestant Deputie's presence at *Switz*, it seems, not saving them) and one to whom he owed a great summe of money. Another of their most valiant Martial men who was shot and taken, dyed about three dayes after, raging against the *Zurick* Army; who in that engagement had but 10 men slain, and 40 wounded.

The Deputies of the Neuter Cantons having been at *Zug*, gave their judgment in the Councel of War belonging to the 4 Cantons, who resolved to make no agreement, tarrying in *Zurick*, expecting their answer, that they might govern themselves accordingly: the Deputies of the Protestant Cantons meeting at *Araw*, to consult upon the whole; and the Papists at *Mellinguen*, who were not then willing to meet with the Protestants. The *Berners* receiving a fall through the imprudence of their Officers, took warning thereby, maintaining all places upon the Lake very well, bestirring themselves also with a Galley upon it: But the Souldiers of *Ergow* performing their duties very well, slew 500 of the enemies: and the *Zurickers* before *Rappenswill* having now gotten near the Town on the Land side, shooting Cannon at the wall towards the Starr, a great breach was made; the day following made an assault, 50 getting into the Town; but the enemy retrenching themselves on the other side of the breach, they were beaten back, about 20 being killed, and 20 wounded.

At the same time, an Ambassadour of *Savoy* having been at *Araw*, arrived at *Zurick*; where he protested, That his Master the Duke would never take part with the injustices of the Town of *Switz*; (yet himself could massacre his own Subjects) saying also, That if the peace were not made, his Master would be obliged to ayd his Allies: the *French* Ambassadour (who would willingly have quickly seen an assembly of all the Cantons of *Switzerland*) saying just so. Hereupon, there was a Truce betwixt the Cantons: which having been prolonged for three dayes more than was at first appointed, was to end Febr. 20 after: during which Truce, the Popish Cantons (about 3000) invading the Territory of *Zurick*, there acted all manner of cruelties, by burning, Rapes, plunderings, and slaying many both old and young: whereof General *Wardmuller* being advertised, immediately crossing the Lake with some Troops, and charging them, forced them to retire into the Territory of *Switz* and *Zug*, where they presently falling to commit the like cruelties as before, Colonel *Swyer* (who commanded the Popish forces) sent a Messenger to *Wardmuller*, desiring him to forbear; pretending, what his men had done, was without his order: a thing hardly by the Protestants to be believed.

Another relation of this matter (for by the time it appears to

bc

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

be one and the same) is thus; Febr. 1. the Generals of the forces of *Switz*, *Uri*, *Underwald*, and *Zug*, hearing there would be a Cessation of arms, (which began the second of February): as also the Conference of the Canton's Deputies at *Baden*, and whither the Deputies of *Zurick* and *Berne* would not come, till the Papist and Italian Garrison were thence removed; the *French* Ambassadour mainly stirring to find out some way of accommodation) resolved next day (being the same Febr. 2.) to fall on the quarters of the *Zurickers* in five several places, picking out, for that purpose, 4000 of their best men. The chiefest assault was made on the side of *Richtenschwill* *Orgen*. The *Zurickers* forlorn guards stoppt the assaulters; but being overpowred by their number, they retired towards the body of the Army, whither the other pursuing them, yet ran away at the first discharge upon them; and in their retreat plundered some scattered houses in the Mountains, burnt a small Village, carried away the Cattle, and practised severall great cruelties upon the men, women, and children, cutting off their noses and privy parts, and after killing them. Another assault was made on *Wadischnwill* side: the horde of *Schaff* house, and some foot there in garrison defending the place very well. A third was about *Phirzel*, nigh the river *Sile*: whom Captain *Lochman* stoutly resisted; but they going about to shut him up, he withdrew with his Cannon into a Wood: the enemy there plundering and burning some houses, specially the Minister's. The fourth was about *Cappel*, where the enemies were repulsed. The fifth was about the Cloyster of *Gnadentball*, which was burnt down by the *Zurickers*. In all which, those of *Zurick* had the best, losing but few men, in comparison of the assaulters' losse. The *Zurickers* turned the siege of *Rappenswill* onely into a blocking up, which was to be maintained with some Regiments: in which Town, he that held *Pavis* against the *French* the year before, (with many *Spaniards*) was.

But the Conference at *Baden*, and Cessation of Arms, ended in a peace; so that in March following they began to disband forces, put the Counties of *Turgow* and *Baden* again under the Government of the Cantons, and to restore prisoners: on some of whom, the Papists had committed some unworthy actions: and on the 21 of March, a day of fasting and prayer was kept in *Zuricks* Canton, for a blessing on their State: their forces having been all kept in health and union, God having abundantly supplied them with Victuals, and preserved them from so many thousand shots before *Rappenswill*, where they lost but few, and few wounded, notwithstanding their many skirmishes. The *Zurickers* having also but 150 wounded, and 100 slain in all that War.

Yet some Officers and Souldiers were not very well pleased at the news of the peace; and the people would willingly have continued the War, to have suppressed the Monks and Priests fury; but others thanked God for it, because the Trade began to decay,

H h h h

and

Anno 1653  
of Christ.  
to 1658.

and the Merchants to lose. But the *Zurick* Forces, in all 19000, were in a posture to be up again at any time, and the *Berners* resolved to have some forreign forces ready, that (with their own) they might act more powerfully on all occasions; for all the Cantons were to meet March 22 at *Baden*, where the Mediators were to go about the settling of the Amnestie or act of oblivion, and the deciding the grievances both Ecclesiastical, Political, and Oeconomical, upon which great debates were expected, there being above 200 Articles to be determined onely about grievances in Religion: upon which, the Monks and Priests (twas thought) would hardly agree; so that the Country might be set on fire again. But whereas some (through wrong information) being much displeased, spread a report, That the two Protestant Cantons of *Zurick* and *Berne*, had made a most disadvantageous peace with the five Popish Cantons, not only prejudicial to themselves, but to all the Protestants and their Cause; there was about the same time, a publique Monition there set forth for better information therein: declaring, That both the obstinacy of the papists was much abated, and they willing to submit to the Right, whereby all that was desired, might be determined without bloodshed: and also, that the Pope was wroth against the Protestants, and generally the whole *Italian* Clergy had their purses open for the Popish Cantons: that the Forces of *Italy*, *Naples*, and *Spain*, were marching to their assistance, and to master *Switzerland*: Also, that the Emperour had great forces on foot to trouble and undo their Country; which considering the season of that last Winter, he might have easily done. And that the Protestants were far from any assistance; which though it might have been procured, yet would have come too late. By all which, every one might judge how the Protestant Cantons were necessitated to accept of that peace: which notwithstanding was not (said the Monition) quite decided, but wanted something; and men might believe, the Protestant Cantons would not relent, or abate any thing of redressment of their grievances, whether Ecclesiastical or Political. After this, Jan. 30th, 1657, the Arbitrators of the two common or mixt Bayliwicks of *Basle* and *Appenzel*, where both Religions are professed, gave a deciding Sentence in sundry heads, both as touching themselves, and also that the charges of the War between the other Cantons, ought to be laid on that party who was the cause of it; which they judged to be *Switz*. And as for taking of goods, burning of houses, barns, &c. by either party, these (and other such things) should be buried in the Amnestie or Oblivion.

In *France*, about the beginning of 1656, a little after the peace ratified between that Kingdom and *England*, the Archbishop of *Narbonne* President of the Clergie's Assembly there, went as Deputy, with some other Deputies, to the Court; and not finding the King, (for he absented himself) they addressing themselves to the Queen, desired among other things, that the Protestant's pub-

lique

lique assembling places, built by them since the last troubles and tumults at *Pau*, might be demolished: Also, that they might not be put into Offices and Employments, nor admitted to the governing of Cities and Provinces, nor to Commands in Armies: desiring moreover, that the King would mind an establishing of peace with *Spain*, rather than with *England* or *Sweden*. The answer was, That the King above all things desired and sought to maintain peace at home in his Kingdom, and therefore expected that his Subjects of both Religions should live in amity and union one with another; the intending the Protestants should enjoy the exercise of their Religion in such places as had been allowed them: and that the had no power or authority over Subjects and Servants than those. And as to *England*, and other Allies of the Crown of *France*, the King had done, and would do therein as he should judge most convenient, and would advise with his Council touching such matters, in due season.

As to the King of *Sweden's* Affairs, the treating betwixt a Treaty between him and the *Hollandish* Ambassadors; it was fully concluded and confirmed by his Majesty on the 11th of Sept. 12, 1656, the City of *Danzick* being so far compromised to them, that they were no longer with the King by themselves: they notwithstanding then resolved touching the *Norwiche* upon the Articles that had been proposed unto them.

In the same month and year, the City of *Valencia* in *Italy* was surrendered up to the *French*, by the *Spaniards*: the Governour capitulating to have leave to send to the Count of *Fuenfiliaga*, that he might relief come within some days, he must surrender: and no relief coming, he marched out thence on the 24th day, with 800 horse and four thousand *Winnicks*, that they might not be slower, who with their baggage and two Cannons, were conducted to *Alicante*. The taking of that City costling the *French* no other than their Winter-quarters in the State of *Spain*, to the great prejudice and indignation of the *Spaniards*.

A little before the same time, the *Venetians* took that considerable and important Isle and Town of *Tenoch*, about the mouth off the *Danubius*, from the *Turks*; who not only vexing the *Inhabitants* off the Island with 26 Ordnance, and 5 Mortar pieces; but also firing all their Munitions, and spilling their Walls, they slew 600 men, and 300 women, Turks and *Cretians*, committing excess. The *Turks* being so at home upon the *Convent*, and the Goods remaining in the Island: and through the fear and confusion which was then great among the *Turks*, chiefly in *Constantinople*, they destroyed more than 5000 of the Isle of *Lemnos*; besides divers other places like so fall into their hands: the *Inhabitants* of *Sio* sending Deputies at the same time to the *Venetian* Forces, inviting them to dispossess their Island, assuring them off another manner through the divisions off the *Turkish* Commanders there, who were by their oppressions and cruelties become

Anno 1653  
of Christ.  
to 1658.

to insupportable to the Inhabitants, that they always lay in hope of an opportunity of cutting the throats of their oppressors.

But upon the retiring of the Swedish and Electoral Armies, the *Poles* getting together, came on again in great numbers, cutting down what smaller Swedish Troops they met with in the Country. And Aug. 24, 1656, *Czarnecki* meeting with 600 Swedish horse, and 300 Dragoons, cut them all down; they all dying manfully in the field. This falling out after some overtures for peace had passed between the two Kings. Neither were there those wanting (about that time) at *Vienna*, who pressed the Emperour by all means to afford the *Polish* King that assistance which he had so long demanded; but he would not men give ear thereto.

The *Muscovites* who entered (as was said before) into *Liefland* with a great Army, having layn some time before *Dunenbourg*, took it, and put all the *Swedes* there in garrison (who were about 2000) to the sword. Thence encamping before *Riga*, by a sally out of the City, he was repelled, and retired at some distance; General *Douglas* being sent thither with ships and supplies. The *Muscovite*, being in despair of taking *Riga*, caused him to carry away his greatest guns the sooner; which the besieged perceiving, they sallied out Octob. 23, about 5 in the morning, being 650 men, horse and foot: and falling on a place called *S. George*, where the enemy was strongly entrenched, they destroyed above 1000 of them; taking also 17 Colours, and some prisoners, among whom was Col. *Senler*, who through a shot received, dyed presently after. The night following, he forsook *S. George*, and on the 5th of October, he quitted the siege, leaving 17 Iron Ordnance, and 16 *Lithian* Gunpowder barrels (which he buried under ground) behind him. And on the 17th of the same month, a Greek, who was the Keeper of the great Duke's Wardrobe, coming over to those of *Riga*, related, that his Master was mightily terrified by news brought him, That Field-Marshal *Lomenhaupt* the *Swede* did great mischief in *Muscovie*, having defeated two Armies, and taken two Generals of his prisoners. There being also a Muriny in the City of *Mosca*, which forced both the Patriarch, and the great Duke's Lady to flee thence, who were arrived at *Polosko* in *White-Russia*. And Novemb. 5th following, there were solemn Thanksgivings at *Stockholm*, with discharging all their great Guns, for joy of the *Muscovite's* quitting the siege of *Riga*, and the Fortresses of *Kakenbawen* and *Notembourg*; of whose irruption into *Liefland* there was then no farther appearance, than the visible remainders in those desolations and spoils which they had made in the Country. The reason likewise which induced the *Muscovite* to that hostile attempt against the *Swedes*, was supposed to be this, because it was concluded in the Treaty made between him and *Poland*, That the *Polanders*, after King *Casimir's* decease, should freely choose, not only the son of the *Muscovite*; but himself also to be next Successour to the Crown.

B. fore

Anno 1653  
of Christ.  
to 1658.

Before the middle of Novemb. the *Polish* Army being in three Bodies, one body of them consisting of 30000 *Poles* and *Tartars*, *Stemsky* being General, coming to *Prussia's* borders near the City *Leik*, surprised the Ele&our of *Brandenburgh* his Army under the Command of Count *Waldek*: the *Tartars* also crossing the River, came behind them: there was indeed a sharp fight betwixt them; but the *Pole's* forces being far greater in number, the Earl was forced to retreat as far as *Angerbourg*, 1500 of his men being cut off, with the losse of six great Guns, and all their baggage. Yet the King of *Sweden* nothing daunted herewith, speedily collecting his Troops together, went and confirmed the rest of the *Brandenburghers*, by uniting them to himself; which the enemy perceiving, durst not come on to prosecute their successes, but retreated into *Podlachia*. The Ele&our himself being awakened by this great loss, (in which Prince *Radzivil* was taken prisoner, M. G. *Ritterhelm*, Col. *Rose*, Col. *Brunnel*, with other chief Officers, being slain.) called upon the Nobility of *Prussia* to arm for defence of their Country: who turning their backs, said, They durst not bear arms against the King of *Poland*.

But M. G. *Goltz* at the same time (arriving at *Tilsse*) fell upon the *Samoytes*, standing in battalia two miles beyond, with very good success: who thinking at first, that they were all well mounted and armed, encouraged his men to stand to it: but when he perceived their subtilty, that they had no Musquets, but long pieces of wood coloured black, except a few who having Musquets, fired immediately, he set on them so eagerly, that he got the Victory, slaying 1500 of them, and taking as many more prisoners, whereof was *Crispin* the General himself, and 60 other noted ones, the rest being scattered and routed. *Crispin* being brought to *Tilsse*, was to be sent to *Koningsberg*.

The King of *Denmark* complaining of grievances from the *Swedish* King, (who had concluded with the States of the *Netherlands*) having his Resident at the *Hague* in the same Octob. 1656, obtained an answer of his business; which was, That the States would not be wanting to recommend his Master's interest to the King of *Sweden*, that he might receive satisfaction touching all the said grievances of which he complained: and that they had written about the same to their Ambassadors in *Prussia*.

The same year, before this time, even an unheard of mischievous invention to destroy the lives of people, was practised in the Lower *Silesia*; for some buriers of people seeing they had but little work, plotted together, That one of them should (by some fellowship with the evil one) learn to make a powder, which he distributing, and they throwing in publique assembling places, and Fountains, caused great infection; so that at *Krapis* 2500 dyed thereby. Whereupon the chiefest Families withdrawing into the Country; it afterwards chanced, that a hogg of one of the buriers getting out, ran to the Country where the people was retired, where being shot, the said Burier becoming mad, threat-

ned

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

and all his men, that they should die very suddenly: who all told one that lamented his lately dead Wife, that he wondered at him, so to lament, since he was within a day to go the same way. The Magistrate being advised of all these; this burier was apprehended, who upon the rack confessed his crime and all his Complices, who according to desert, were put to death with great tortures.

About the month November following, the Princess in Germany being jealous of each other, every one of them levied Soldiers; for they all feared a new War, which the French were like to make against the Empire; because there was no satisfaction given at Frankfurt for breaking of the peace; for France presented, That the Emperour did contrary to the Peace made at Augsperg, in sending Armies into Italy and the Netherlands; yet the Germans sent into Italy, committing great insolencies there, above what the French did, plundering many Monasteries, and chiefly two, hard by Milan; burning down a Village, and plundering the guards of the Milanese Governours; not sparing also the Churchmen, but committing great violence on them, which forced many families to leave their houses and goods, and to flee from that unlucky supply: the affairs of that State could not be then in a worse condition. And then were the Trained Bands, and some new levied Soldiers of the two Electors of Mentz and Bredenburg in the field, marching one against another. Neither of the Princes then yielding to either about the matter of the Customs; but it was believed that some of their Neighbours would interpose.

But the King of Poland arrived Nov. 15. at the City of Dantzick, with his Chanceller and Vice-Chanceller, (being there in by 48 Companies of Citizens) whose Army being 30000 strong, (10000 of whom were lusty fighting men) were to be encamped about that City; who soon felt the inconvenience of that numerous Army, to their no small discontent, by reason of their plundering and stealing, spoiling and ruining all the Champion Country round about it, which was expected to prove very chargeable to the Dantzickers, and bred great and many inconveniences: they being likely to continue their Quarters under the Cannons of their City, and King Casimir intending no stay there himself a while: Parties, in the mean time, of the Poles and Swedes every day meeting and skirmishing. The Dutch Ambassadors having also conferred with the Poland King at Dantzick, (for both they and the French Ambassadors were very serious and diligent in mediating with him for an accommodation) pressed him so hard, that they desired him to nominate a day to begin a Treaty of peace. When answered, He thought it needfull first to know whether the Swedish King would admit of the Emperour and Danish King to the Mediators; otherwise all would be to little purpose. Next day, these Ambassadors addressing themselves, the Chanceller of Poland, he gave them the like answer, assuring

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

assuring them, They should find the King and Estates very much inclined to an accommodation; but, he telling them in conclusion, That before any Treaty began, it would be expected, the King of Sweden should restore all places which he held in Prussia, in the same condition as they were before (which was not to be so much as propounded to the Swede) both the Ambassadors endeavours, and the Pole's fair shews, vanished in an instant.

The King of Poland being very earnest by his Ambassadors, for the Emperour of Germany his assistance, had proposed the acceptance of the Polish Crown unto him, (that is, after Casimir's decease) which, both the Emperour and his Council, absolutely concluded to wave; they finding it then much more convenient and conducive for the Empire, first to make sure of the Crown of the Romans, and those hereditarily due unto the House of Austria, than to covet after more foreign Crowns. And one of the greatest Imperial Counsellours being asked his advice also, what answer was to be returned, he is reported to have answered, *Quarite primo Regnum Romanorum, et cetera adjicientur vobis*; that is, *Seek ye first the Kingdom of the Romans, and others shall be added unto you*. Whose opinion all the rest did approve of, and agree unto.

On the 29 of October the same year, those of the Inquisition in Portugal burnt four persons alive, who were accused and condemned of Judaism and Sodomie. And Novemb. 6. following, the King of Portugal departing this World, (through obstruction of the Stone and gravel in his Kidneys) left his Queen, Regent of the Kingdom, during the minority of her son Don Alfonso the first, who was crowned the 15th of the same Novemb. 1656.

Novemb. 20th after, in a Treaty between the King of Sweden, and the Electour of Brandenburg at Taplaw, a perpetual League and Confederacy was anew transacted and agreed on: to which effect, the Earl of Slippenback, and President Borenclaw departed from Koningsberg with the Instrument of that League, to have it ratified by the King.

This year 1656, the Plague sorely afflicted Italy, so that not onely at Naples, but at Rome and Genoa it raged much: and at Benevento, in Novemb. of 9000 people, there were not above 500 remaining.

But the Venetians after Tenedos, soon took Stalimene Island also from the Turks: and having furnished the Fortresse there, with all necessaries for defence, their Proveditor General set sail with the Fleet towards Scio and Zia, to refresh his men: about which time, the Turk cast away all thoughts of peace with the Venetians, having wholly broken the Treaty that had been begun at Constantinople by their Secretary Bellarini.

The King of Sweden (finding his Souldiers exceeding desirous to encounter with the Poles, before a greater Frost came, forcing them to take their Winter-quarters) toward the latter end of November breaking up from Hane, he crossed the River with his Army, consisting of 16000 choise Souldiers: a little after which;

the

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

the *Polonian* Camp under *Lubermiski* was totally defeated before *Cracovia*, which they had besieged; and the City relieved, which was brought to great extremity.

About or in Decemb. following, the once Polish Vice-Chancellor *Radziecouski* was brought (by the King of Sweden's command) a disgraced prisoner to *Marienbourg* Castle, upon the discovery of his treacherous carriages to the Swedes: who (so soon as the rumour brake out, that the Swedish King had forced War upon the King of Poland, under his pretence of a better Title, and nearer Succession to the Crown of *Swethland*, and that the said King had passed with all his Army in the *Baltick* Sea, landing in *Pomerania*) addressed himself unto him, with great promise of his fidelity in all actions wherein he should be employed: and having given at that very instant a great testimony of the reality of his promises, when he had persuaded *Posen* and *Calissen* to accept of Swedish protection, the King might in reason put no small trust and confidence in him: he being a Counsellour in all the principal Councils, and the chief interpreter when the King's occasion required it. But it was then by his own confession known; First, That he had been the onely cause, why the *Cossacks* (according to their offers) did never appear with any reality in the Polish War, and chiefly against the *Muscovite*. Secondly, That the *Quartians* and the rest of the *Polanders* left the King of Sweden at his perswasion. Thirdly, That he engaged himself to the *Jesuits*, that he would then have delivered the King of Sweden into their hands. Fourthly, That he had an intimate correspondency with the City of *Dantzick*, assuring them, that within a little time, he should shew himself a faithful Son of his Native Country. It was believed also, that he had a design to betray *Elbing* and *Hof* into King *Casimir's* hands. But then it was hoped, their Affairs would take another face, and chiefly by the approaching of *Ragotzi* Prince of *Transylvania*, at that time: as also the constant desire that the *Muscovite* had for a peace with the Swedish King; for which cause the King intended to send one *Coyes* with Instructions to make an overture of the said peace. The said *Radziecouski* in or about June following, 1657, was imbarqued at *Elbing* to be transported into Sweden, there to be imprisoned during his life.

A little after, the Chancellour of Poland had given the aforesaid answer to the Dutch Ambassadors: the King of Poland and the City of *Dantzick* resolved, that overtures of peace should be made with Sweden: whereupon, the French Ambassador went instantly to the Swedish King, the Holland Ambassador being to follow, the King being then at *Marienbourg* to receive them, with their Propositions from the Polish King: although it appears, that Negotiation was to little or no purpose.

On May 18 following, 1657, the King of Sweden (whose Headquarters was at *Quawicheft* intended to go to the Hungarian League, under *Ragotzky* Prince of *Transylvania*, (who was now come to his assistance) upon the transaction and agreement made touch-

ing

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

ing the evacuation of the Garrison of *Cracovia*, which was to be surrendered to the Hungarians: on the 16 day of which month, a Pole escaping from *Samoisii*, brought Letters, that Marshal *Wittenburg* and the other Swedish Lords there prisoners, were not transported from thence, as a rumour was spread: he relating also, That there was then a great mutiny and dissention among the Poles, divers having torn their Standards in pieces, and run away, yet the Polish Generals kept the rest together, and were gone with them into *Lithuania*. He likewise related, That *Chmielniski*, the *Cossacks* General, was gone into *Lithuania* with great forces, taking divers Towns by *Arvisko*, *Arvilef*, and *Bohrsko*, and putting to the sword all the *Muscovites* and *Lithuanian* Gentry therein.

But the Swedish Army being joyned with Prince *Ragotzi's* Army, and passing the River *Bug* into *Lithuania*, not far from *Krzemien*, and finding no forces of the enemies, marched towards the strong City called *Bizescie Litenky*; who at his approach summoning it with a sharp commination of total ruine upon not surrendering, *Zawisky* the Governour answered, He intended to defend it to the uttermost. The Earl of *waldek* and Earl *Jacob de la Gardie*, drew near the Town with some forces, and shot off two pieces of Canon, (the Swedish signal) which passing into the Governour's Lodgings, he, terrified, and forgetting his former resolution, next day humbly offered to parley, and yielded on composition: and that, before the King and *Ragotzi* arrived there. So that, that strong and important place was subdued without the loss of one man, and garrisoned by Prince *Ragotzi*, to whom the King absolutely resigned the disposing thereof; although the besieged wished to live alwayes under the Swedish protection: most of which Garrison having been in the service of the King of Sweden, the Electour of *Brandenburg*, and Prince *Radzwill*, betaking themselves again to the King's service: others *Ragotzi* got to his side, being raised by him: but the Governour and some others, with some Artillery, were conducted to *Stuzana*. After which, both Armies departed one from another, the King returning whence he came; and the Prince crossing *Bug*, not far from *Bizescie*, where he a while continued.

The Polish and Lithuanian Armies under *Lubermiski*, *Czarnecki*, and *Saphia*, till they were joyned, were chased by the King of Sweden and the *Transylvanians*; so that *Czarnecki* swimming over *Wessell* with 10000 horse, passed into great Poland, summoning up every where the *Pospolite* to make a diversion into *Pomerania*; whereof 11 Colours appeared (June 10th) thereabouts on the other side of *Thorne* bridge with usuall bravadoes. The rest marching towards *Bizescie* with 2000 Germans and Poles: but as soon as the King drew nigh them, they fled in such haste toward *Vohmien*, that the pursuing parties for 20 miles could not hear of them. In the mean time, the Poles intreating the *Muscovites* for assistance out of *Lithuania*, they were flatly denied, with this reproach, That the Poles had basely deceived the great Duke, by

I i i i

carrying

W  
Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
1658.  
W

carrying the *Polonish* Crown, which they offered to him, to *Vien-na*; which affront they would be revenged of: so that they must not expect help from them. *Ragotzi* marched towards *Samoise*, whither *Steinbock* with 7000 *Brandenburgian* forces was drawing, to visit the same strong Fortresse, thereby to establish the *Ragotzian* line to the very borders of *Transylvania*, and to stand firmly in *Poland*. But the King keeping with him a body of 8000 men, intended to march into great *Poland*, to scatter the forces brought thither by *Czarneski*, and to draw somewhat nearer to *Pomerania's* borders, to joyn with *Wrangle's* 6000 men in *Pomerania*, in case the *Danes* should do their worst: For in or about the same June, 1657, the King of *Denmark* proclaiming War against *Sweden*, in *Copenhagen*, dispatcht also a Herald to *Stockholm*, to intimate there the War, or to the Swedish borders to denounce it; setting forth also a large Declaration of the motives thereof; Because the Swedes had by fraud and violence taken from him his Archbishopricks of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and his Towns and Territories, plundering him of his moveables, and denying to give him any satisfaction herein; detaining likewise from him, *Irne* and *Zerne* in *Norway* by force, and defrauding him several wayes of his Custome and Toll in the *Ore Sound*, and prejudicing him most highly in his Prerogatives also, because the Swedes had taken away from him the whole Trading by Sea, from *Dantzick* into *Denmark*: and instead of making reparation of all those, the late appointed Treaty was broken off: the Danish King protesting against the Calamities which that ensuing War might cause.

About the beginning of May, 1657, the *Venetian* Generalissimo *Morcenigo*, burned 10 Turkish Ships, and 14 Saiques, taking the Tribute of *Rhodes* to 200000 Crowns: yet losing 100 men, and 300 wounded; who afterwards joyning with the Pope's Gallies, and those of *Malta*, they went again to the *Dardanelles*, to hinder all Vessels carrying provision to *Constantinople*, and resolving to fight the great Turkish Fleet, who intended to Rendezvous at *Scio*.

On the other hand, Monsieur *Dureel*, the Swedish Plenipotentiary, having used all means to bring the Danish King to a fair accommodation with the Swedish, and that proving vain, he left a Manifesto at *Copenhagen*, May 13, 1657, containing a state of the differences betwixt them. The Swedish Plenipotentiary protesting, That no occasion had been given on the Swedish side, to dissolve and break off that Treaty.

War being thus begun in good earnest by the *Danes*, their Camp began to march for the Archbishoprick of *Bremen*, entering therein in June; in order to which, they went to the *Elbe*, whose high waters, and tempestuous winds crossed their transportation; yet some of their forces passing the *Elbe* above *Hamborough*, through the Dominion of *Linnenburg*: in their going over, they gave the other signs, burning pitch'd barrels; whereupon 3000 of the *Danish* Forces were transported to the High-land, where they took a Fort, called the *East-Sconce*. On

W  
Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
1658.  
W

On the 9th day of the same June, the Swedish Camp in *Liefland* under Major General *Löwen*; and the *Muscovian* Army under the Waywood of *Pleskow*, and the General *Szaremetow*, had a great fight near the Town *Walle*; the Swedes having the day, put four Companies of Dragoons to the sword which guarded some passages. On the place of fighting, 1500 common Souldiers were slain, besides many eminent ones; the rest being pursued: many of whom were knocked down by the Peasants among the bushes: they took from them 4 Ensigns, 26 Corners, 5 pair of Kettle Drums, all their Artillery and baggage; *Szaremetow* the General was taken prisoner, being wounded; also their Quarter-master General, with seven eminent Boyars more from *Pleskow*, and many others. The remnant of the defeated *Muscovites* rallying their forces about six miles from *Adzell*, Count *Magnus* departed from *Riga* to the Swedish Army, (recruited with 800 brave Souldiers sent from Prince *Adolph* out of *Prussia*, after the action) with full intent to encounter them; who were before the 19th of the same again totally routed and destroyed: upon which, those of the besieged Castle of *Adzell* despairing of success, blowing the same up, fled away; the which caused great perplexity thereabouts, especially at *Dorpt*, which was said to expect no other but the same destiny. Then also the *Cossacks* under *Chmielnisky* fell into *Russia*, making great havock there, taking all before them, without resistance.

But the *Danes* in *Bremen* having besieged *Bremerford*, the besiegers approaching to the very Walls; and *Stade* being by them begirt, the King of *Sweden* made toward them, coming July 10, to *Stetin* in *Pomerania*; and next day the Prince Palatine of *Sulzbach* his Regiments of horse and foot being 5000 choise men, passed over the River of *Oder*, to *Stetin* side. Upon the third day there being a solemn Fast, with prayers throughout all that Land. On the 4th day many Standards and Colours, both horse and Dragoons marched thorow that City; the King's own Army of 10 or 12000 men, with a brave Train of Artillery, being to follow after within few dayes: Which march and Expedition was only intended against the King of *Denmark*.

About the same time, 12000 *Polanders* invaded that part of *Hungary* belonging to *Ragotzi* Prince of *Transylvania*, burning down 36 Villages, giving quarter to none. Then also (there having, at length, been an agreement of the Imperial Court with *Poland*, upon six Articles) the Army appointed by the King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* marched for *Silesia*, and was advancing towards *Cracovia*. Three of the Articles being, That betwixt the two Crowns, there should be an eternal Friendship and Covenant offensive and defensive. That the King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* should keep on foot for *Poland* 16000 men, (10000 foot and 6000 horse) and a sufficient Artillery: for which the Polish King was to provide necessaries; provided, that the King of *Hungary* take from the Revenues of the *Polonian* Salt-Mines 50000 Guilders; besides which, the King of *Poland* was to pay that present month

Anno 1657  
of Christ,  
1657.

of June, 300000 Dukats in ready money: that, in that Covenant, were comprehended the *German* and *Spanish* Houses of *Austria*, *Denmark*, *Muscovia*, and the *Tartars*; as also, all such Electoral Princes of the Empire which were desirous to be received into it, chiefly *Brandenburg*, in case he left the Swedish party.

A little after, the King of *Sweden* marched from *Stetin* in *Pomerania* with 10000 men against the *Danish* forces. And the *Polonian* and *Austrian* forces being mustred, the former were 24000 strong, the latter 20000; a party whereof marching against Prince *Ragotski's* Army, who having layn at *Piltzaw*, were now advancing to the Town *Opatawa*: Prince *Ragotski* then seeming inclinable to peace, sending an Ambassador to the King of *Poland*, soliciting for it; and proffering, That upon conditions, he would quit *Poland*. The King answering, He would send to the King of *Hungary* with all speed concerning it, to hear his good intention therein.

About the same time, *Bremerwerden* in *Bremen* (after the decease of the chief Commander) was surrendered to the *Danes* upon Articles. The *Leaguer-Stronge*, a considerable place, being subdued by them also: The *Dane* lying likewise before *Borgh*; and keeping *Staden* blockt up.

In the same moneth of July, 1657, *Venice* had bad news, to wit, That the *Turks* having taken the Fort *Bosina* in *Dalmatia*, put 800 Christians to the sword. And 6000 *Turks* coming nigh to *Spalatro*, turned immediately to the passage of *S. Franchois*, intending there to raise Forts: but *Possidario* sallying out, and fighting a while stoutly, at last drave them quite away, with the losse of many great Commanders: who in their retreat went to *Salona*, lying between *Spalatro* and *Clissa*, where they were recruited with 6000 foot, and 4000 horse. But the *Turks* under *Ustain Bassa's* Command, having prepared for War a good while, came on July 2d, in the night with storming Ladders, &c. pressing on the City of *Candia* furiously to surprize it; but 500 of those in the City crying out, *Turks, Turks*, the chains were thereupon drawn, and the Souldiers and Citizens coming to a Body, fell on the *Turks*, and drave them out. Also issuing forth, they disordering the *Turks*, put many of them to the sword; who left behind them 29 Ensigns, and 5 Cornets, which they had put up on the wall; 1400 *Turks* were slain, and 2100 (with a great booty) taken.

There was also a fight toward the latter end of July, on the frontiers of *Schoneland*, between the *Danish* forces and the *Swedes*, under the Command of *Horn*, *Douglas*, and *Gustave Oxienstern*, raised to engage the *Dane* on the other side next to *Sweibland*: where in the *Danes* had the worst.

But in *Bremen*, the *Danish* Army had almost no sooner possessed themselves of divers places there, but they began to be dispossessed again by the *Swedes*: for the Swedish Armies coming on, made (in the very moneth of July) the *Danish* forces to withdraw from *Staden*: time being then to shew whether they would quite forsake it,

Anno 1657  
of Christ,  
1658.

it, or keep it onely blockt up: who sent then also a part of their forces over the *Elbe*, to go into *Holfatia*: and the Swedish Field-Marshal *wrangle* (who Commanded in *Bremen* Dukedome) with his forces (onely assisted with one Regiment of *Finlanders*, whom he borrowed of the garrison of *Staden*) recovered the two Forts of *Butzsfie* and *Swinga*, putting most of the *Danes* therein to the sword: whereby he encouraged, with all speed and care pursued the other *Danes* in those parts, who were retreating in all haste to ship themselves out of the Duchy of *Bremen*; and over-taking them at the bank of the River *Oste*, took most of them prisoners; but their Officers being gotten aboard, set sail towards *Gluckstad*, leaving some of the smaller Vessels (which should have transported the common sort) a prey to their enemy. But the *Danes* then held *Bremerwerden*, and also a Fort seated at the mouth of the *Weser*: but from the King of *Sweden's* coming thither, unto that time, the *Danes* had lost 2000 men. But at the King's entrance into *Holfstein*, he pitched his Camp at three several places, and finding the *Danes* did not stand, but still retreated, he falling on the two Forts *Krucker* and *Niesfader*, which protected those parts, presently took them, killing and taking about 500, among whom was Col. *Benefeld*, a *Germane*. In the mean while, about 2000 *Danish* horse lightly armed, and 800 Dragoons, who were quartered hard by, never came on, but retreated in haste and disorder (before the *Swedes* coming) towards *Gluckstad*. While the King of *Sweden* advanced towards *Itzshew*, most of the *Danish* horse galloped into *Jutland*.

About the same time, the Emperour being deceased, there were differences in *Germany* about the Vicariat or Vice-gency of the Empire: which having been transferred in the late Wars there, and since by the Pacification at *Munster* settled on the House of *Bavaria*, that house pretended as if it were a Prerogative inseparably annexed and belonging to their Electorate: when as the Golden Bull, the fundamentall Sanction of the Empire plainly confirmed it to the House *Palatine*: which was invested and actually possessed with that dignity, before ever there were Electours constituted in the Empire: and which the Golden Bull of *Charls* the 5th did not bestow on the Electours *Palatine*, but onely farther ratified the same unto their House; solemnly declaring to the whole Empire and posterity, that it did belong unto them, by reason of their Hereditary possession of the Principality or County *Palatine* of the *Rhine*.

*Gesendorff* Fort being likewise soon after taken from the *Danes* in *Bremen*, that Dukedome was almost freed from them; so that in August, 1657, there was no place (except *Bremerwerden*) which stood out against the *Swedes*. Wherefore *wrangle* leaving behind him a convenient force to secure that Country, and carry on the rednement of *Bremerwerden*, he departed thence, to follow the King into *Holfstein*; where the *Swedes* had taken three Sconces from the *Danes*, and so got into the Moorish Land of *Holfstein*; which the



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

the *Danes* could not free from hostile Invasions. Also, the King of *Denmark* arriving at *Jutland*, leaving forces for the reinforcement of his Camp; and his Rix-Marshall *Bille* marching thither to him with 2000 foot from *Gluckstad*, with other forces brought in from other parts, his Army was look'd on to be very considerable; and which, the *Danish* Officers were then putting in a posture fit for battel: And they might expect it, because the King of *Sweden* with the rest of his Army, advanced after the Prince of *Sulzbach*, whom he had sent before towards *Jutland* with a strong party.

About or in the same moneth of August, the *Venetians* obtained another signal Victory against the Turkish Fleet, at the mouth of the *Dardanelles*, and that in the sight of the great Turk himself, who was said to have come down thither to see the fight. But that which sowed that great Success unto them, was the loss of their General *Mocenigo*, who being in prosecution of the Victory, and afterwards endeavouring to return to the attacking of the Isle of *Scio*, a tire of great guns being discharged from the Castles of the *Dardanelles*; one of them lighted into the Magazine of powder in his own Galley, and blew him (with many more Nobles) up into the Air.

On the 9th of September following, *Rosenwing*, Envoy from the King of *Denmark*, arrived at *Amsterdam*: whose business was to solicit the States for assistance both by men and money: he relating also, That his King was assuredly with his Army resolving to bid the *Swedes* battel; but he intended not to engage, till the *Poles* should make their promised Invasion into *Pomerania* to divert the *Swedish* forces.

About the beginning of July before, 1657, one Colonel *Doxley* Governour in *Jamaica* Island for the English, wrote into *England*, concerning the good condition the English were then in.

But there having been a difference risen in *Germany* between the City of *Munster*, and their Bishop: the Bishop besieged that City, (500 Souldiers of the forces levied by the Ecclesiasticall Electours, going to help their fellow Bishop in that siege; and the Duke of *Bavaria* had sent thither 4000 men) but (the Citizens continuing courageous, and resolving to abide the utmost extremities, rather than to submit to such conditions as their Bishop would have imposed upon them) it proved a very difficult siege; for the besieged sallying forth notably, more than once, they slew a great number of the Peasants which came thither to do service. They also finding their Governour to be one holding correspondence with the enemy, brought him to Tryall, and put him to death; hanging and quartering four persons more upon the same account, who had undertaken to set divers of the chief streets of the City on fire. At length by help of the States General of the United Provinces, (whose forces were advancing toward the relief and vindication of the besieged Citizens) the Bishop no sooner heard the news of the said forces advance, but he presently began

to

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

to give ear to the Citizens just demands, permitting unto them their ancient Priviledges, rights and immunities. Whereupon they immediately suffered him to enter into *Munster* very honourably: the Garrison being disposed under Gen. *Remond's* Command, he took an Oath of fidelity to the City; (for by a sure agreement with the Bishop, the Garrison was wholly at the Citie's devotion). The Bishop lost 1500 men during the siege; the Citizens not above 30, and about 200 wounded. This was in Octob. 1657. After which, the States General's forces retired into their Garrisons from whence they came.

But the King of *Sweden* passing out of the Dukedome of *Holstein*, into *Jutland*, (taking upon the way those that were willing into his protection, and dealing with others as he saw meet) there was great perplexity among the *Danes*, because of his so soon coming thither, and arriving at *Alborgh*, which is but 12 or 14 leagues on the other side of the Sea from *Gottenburgh* in *Sweden*; this was in August; about which time, a *Danish* Major General having cast up a Sconce three leagues from the said *Gottenburgh* on an Island called *Tiurholmen*, fortifying the same with some Guns, and inferiour Officers and Souldiers: the Earl *Douglas* just then being coming thither, 400 of his Souldiers so saluted them, that they presently left the same, leaving behind them a great quantity of provision. *Douglas* advancing to *Wennersborg*, gathered his Troops together, intending to continue his Expedition in *Norway*; but he was stayed there-from by a Letter from Vice-Roy *Brabe*, (out of *Schonen*) then Generalissimo by Land and Sea, that he should transport himself into *Prussia*, to assist Duke *Adolph*, and command the Army left there.

The *Danes* (the while) reinforcing themselves in *Schonen*, Victuals there growing scant, the Vice-Roy with his 5000 men was constrained to retire to *Helmstadt*: the *Danes* passing safely thorow the Wood *Hallansfoos* into *Laholm*, gave out, that they were 8 or 9000 men: wherefore *Douglas* received another Order from *Brabe*, to take 1800 horse, and Col. *Swynehead's* foot, and to march thither; *Steinbock* also having a few dayes before come out of *Prussia* to encounter and endeavour to force them back into their own Country. But they having assaulted *Laholm* Castle in *Halland*, and being thrice repulsed with the loss of 500 men, retreated again into their Country *Schonenland*, because they heard Earl *Douglas* was to joyn with the *Swedish* Army there.

*Czarneski* with his flying Army going into *Pomerania*, the King of *Sweden* was thereby called away out of *Jutland* in haste; so that the Ambassadors of the States General of the United Provinces going (after a sumptuous entertainment by the Duke of *Holstein* in the Castle of *Gottorf*) Sept. 13. towards *Flensbourg*, to meet with him; he was gone ere they were aware: (the King of *Denmark* arriving about the same time, from *Jutland*, at *Coppenhaguen*, having left *Fredericks-Ode* and *Fuenen* in a good posture of defence) but the *Swedish* King left his affairs in *Jutland* to be carried



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

carried on by *Wrangle*; who commanding his forces there, kept *Fredericks-Ode* still blockt up by Land: out of which, the *Danes* having made severall sallies; on Sept. 20th, they made two notable ones with two whole Regiments; but they being repulsed by the *Swedes*, they pursued them till they came under the Canon of the place, killing many, and taking divers prisoners. But the King of *Sweden* having sent *Wrangle* a Recruit of Foot under Colonel *Fersens* Command (with an Order to try if possible he might carry that Famous and strong Town & Fortresse of *Fredericks-Ode*, situated on the water towards the *Sound*) of 5000 men, thereby to overthrow the *Danes* designe, as also to consider which way he might successfully prosecute their expedition into the Isle *Fuenen*, or give the Enemy a blow somewhere else; He, on October 23, (having first caused divers experienced Corporalls, by night to crawl upon their hands and feet, observing with all diligence, all particulars needfull to be known about the said place) calling a Council of War, and propounding the Kings intention, after many discourses of *pro* and *con*, they generally Resolved to make onset upon it (the *Danes* then not dreaming of such a thing) in 3 several places at once in the morning before break of day: which they doing, and all the Officers and Souldiers behaving themselves with singular Courage, it was in a short time, by that one assault (although the *Danes* disputed one Bullwark after another with stout opposition, and making the greatest resistance on those who gave the Onset on the Gate, in their Posts toward it) reduced to the Swedish King's obedience, with the Garrison, 6 Lieut. Colonels, 8 Majors, 26 Captains, 27 Lieutenants, 26 Ensigns, 2 Engineers, 56 inferiour Officers, 13 Constables, &c. being killed and taken; above 2000 common Souldiers were also taken prisoners, besides those that escaped into the Bogs; and 1100 of the inferiour Officers and common Souldiers slain; 33 Colours, with 6 Standards of Dragoons, being likewise taken. The *Swedes* had killed in the action, 1 Adjutant Gen. 1 Capt. of horse, 1 Corporal, 19 Troopers: and of the foot, 1 Lieut. Col. 4 Capt. 1 Lieutenant, 2 inferiour Officers, 44 common Souldiers, with a great many wounded. Rix Marshall *Bille* the *Dane* carried himself so valiantly in that assault, that he had divers wounds in his head; but seeing all to be lost, he retreated with the Lord *Hocke*, a Danish Privy Counsellour, into the little Sconce, whither also most of the Officers were gone, hoping to get over the water to *Fuenen*; but the contrary wind blowing hard, he was forced to yield himself up like the rest, at discretion.

After this, the King of *Sweden* thinking it expedient and needfull to undertake a design suitable to the present Necessities, calling his chief Officers to *Kiel* to confer with them there; himself departing from *Wismar* in *Pomerania*, Jan. 5. 1657, arriving at *Kiel* on the 9th day: the result of whole serious deliberation with *Wrangle* the Rix Admiral, and others, was, That a tryall should be made to get over into the Island of *Fuenen* one way or other, whether

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

whether the Frost held or not. Wherefore the frost holding, he sent the Admiral to *Fredericks-Ode*, to order those Regiments in *Jutland* to draw together thither on the 26 day: After the sending some to view the Ice beyond *Fredericks-Ode*, and nigh *Fuenen*, and over against the Island of *Brosee*, (where the Swedish set foot, for the better performance of their design) whose horses of the third party sent, (the Ice breaking) were drowned, they with much ado saving their lives: and after the King's ordering both Wings, and all things accordingly, after some disputes, (this disaster also happening unto the *Swedes*, that the two Regiments of *Waldek* and *Koningsmark* sank into the Ice; so that Col. *Boreman* came to no action: and two Companies of *Waldek's* Regiment were drowned, with some Troopers of *Koningsmark* and *Boreman*) the *Danes* were totally routed and put to flight, Col. *Jens*, a valiant and experienced Souldier, desiring quarter of the Rix-Admiral; those that were not put to the sword, being immediately taken prisoners: only some few retreating upon the Ice, (some of whom were drowned) (and of all the *Danes* forces not 200 escaping) were pursued at the heels by some commanded forces. Whereupon M. G. *Berendis* was commanded towards *Langland* and *Swineburg* to encounter 500 horse, who were to come from thence to assist Col. *Jens*; and Col. *Alsenberg* had order to go to *Middlefort* to beat up Col. *Bilde* with his 600 horse, but he was retreated before to *Odensea*. *Jens* confessed, That the *Dane's* forces consisted in all of 3000 horse, besides 700 *Germans*, and 1500 Land-forces, whereof all the Superiour Officers (except one Capt. *Rumor*, who was killed in the beginning) were taken prisoners: and among these chief and publique Officers, were five Senatours; as also L. G. *Guldenlew*, who all had fled to *Odensea*: there were likewise taken in divers places, about 60 pieces of Ordnance, with a great quantity of ammunition, and a Magazine well furnished: and when the King of *Sweden* had sent the Rix Admiral to *Newburg*, to seize on four Danish Men of War there, (a great number of small Vessels and Boats being likewise seized on) he presently came unto *Odensea*. This Island was taken Jan. 30. 1657.

But in or about October before, the *Venetians* lost again the Isle of *Tenedos* to the Turks, though not without ruine to the Conquerour. The *Venetian* Fleet being gone from the said Island to take in fresh water; the Turk's Fleet took opportunity to land there a great body of men, who presently setting upon the Fort of *Tenedos* by storm, were in the first attempt repulsed; but they preparing for a new Onset, and being numerous, the *Venetian* Garrison working a Mine under the Fort, disposed their powder therein with a match fitted to it, and then quitting the place, the Turks taking possession thereof, were (Fort and all) blown up into the Air. The *Venetian* Fleet returning, and perceiving what had happened, and the Turks Fleet being at hand, they prepared for an encounter; which being performed resolutely on both sides, (for the Grand Visier encouraged the Turks, he having come pur-

K k k k

posely

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

potely from *Constantinople*, to see that Island regained, whole possession is of so great concernment to the Commerce of that City) in the conclusion, the *Venetians* got a new notable Victory, sinking 16 of the Turk's Men of War, with four that came from *Tripoli* to serve the Grand Seignior; taking also four of their Gallies.

About the same time, 1500 *Danes* made an Incurſion into *Bremerwerden*, hoping thereby to have relieved *Bremerwerden*; but the *Swedes* reſolutely playing their parts thereabouts, made good the ſiege, rendring all the *Danes* enterpriſe fruitleſſe, both touching *Bremerwerden*, and other places in that Country. *Eggerick* the Governour of *Bremerwerden* keeping in very cloſe, after the attempt made upon the *Beklemer* Sconce; from whence they were repelled by the *Swediſh* Garriſon, with great loſſe.

But while the King of *Sweden* was thus ſtruggling with the *Dane*, moſt inhumane cruelties and perſecutions were acted by the *Papiſts* and their party in *Poland*, againſt the *Proteſtants*: The firſt City which they ſet upon being *Leſna*, whither many *Proteſtants* had come for ſhelter; there being three Congregations of them, to wit, the *Polonian*, *Bohemian*, and *German*. They intended to have put all to the ſword therein; but the Citizens having notice of their coming, left the City and all their wealth behind them, fleeing thorow Woods and boggs into *Sileſia*. The enemy entering the City, found none but aged and bed-ridden perſons, whom they barbarouſly ſlew, and after plundering the City, burned it to aſhes. In other places alſo they cruelly murdered divers Miniſters, and people of all ages and ſexes.

Before the taking of *Fuenen*, the *Swediſh* King being in *Pomerania*, he was intent upon making new leavies to oppoſe the proceedings of the *Poles* under *Czarneski*, who had then removed the War out of *Poland*, to their doors; for 4000 *Poland* Troopers fording the River *Oder*, and plundering *Dowen*, not far from *Stettin*, ſet it on fire. Part of the forces in *Holſtein* being alſo ſent for by the King to oppoſe the *Polanders*.

The King of *Poland* having had a Treaty with the Electour of *Brandenburg*, it was brought to an iſſue; which was, That he could be no further prevailed with by the King, than to ſtand Neutral betwixt the *Poles* and *Swedes*.

About the moneth of December, an Ambaſſadour coming to *Conſtantinople*, from the King of *Persia*, with a gallant Train, he preſently went to his audience; and at the making of his Propoſition, he drew out his Shabel, ſaying, That in caſe the Grand Seignior would not reſtore the leſſer *Babylon*, and make ſatisfaction for the Merchants goods which the Turks robb'd, and the captivated *Persians*, which (during the Treaty of peace) were carried away into ſlavery by his Subjects; then in his King's Name he declared War. There was no anſwer followed hereupon, but both the Ambaſſadour and the chiefeſt of his Train being caſt into priſon; his head was preſently after ſevered from his body. So that the

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

the Turks being ſure of War with the *Persians*, there was to be but one Camp ſet out with the Turk's great Enſign, againſt the *Venetian* Republique: The great Prince being to ſtay at home to ſupply recruits, and to have a watchfull eye upon the *Muſcovites*, who then ſpake in Thunder to the Turkiſh Monarchy by their warlike threatenings. Before which time, the ſon of the Grand Viſier being enraged at the death of his father, ſware, He would be revenged on the grand Signior himſelf, and all that counſelled him to put his Father to death. Wherefore he riſing up in rebellion, and making no ſmall diſturbance, ſome adviſed, that he might be endeavour'd to be appeaſed by favourable promotions; but others liked not that, becauſe of giving encouragement to others in the like caſe.

But the *Jefuits* who had been expelled from the City and Territories of *Venice* the ſpace of 50 years, were re-admitted again by the Senate's authority, upon the Pope's ſolicitation; for which he thanked them by his Nuntio.

The *Poles* having taken the City of *Comitz* from the *Swedes*, the King of *Sweden* about this time retook it again.

In the moneth of January, the Engliſh ſurprized 600 *Spaniards* in *Jamaica* Iſland, who had hid themſelves among the Thickets and buſhes, ſome whereof were ſlain, ſome taken priſoners; and ſome other *Spaniards* fleeing away in a ſmall Veſſell towards *Cuba*.

About February, *Wrangle* was appointed Proteſtour of the Dukedome of *Bremen*.

And about the moneth of April, the King of *Spain* bent his mind above all other affairs, upon the attacking of *Portugal*; which he intended to ſet upon with an Army in four Bodies. And to this end, the Nobility were preparing to attend him. The grand Standard which uſed to be kept in the City of *Soria*, being brought forth for that Expedition; which was principally underraken; upon a ſuppoſal (their King being deceaſed) of diſcontents and diviſions in *Portugal*.

But Count *Magnus de la Gardie* (who governed the Province of *Lieſland* for the King of *Sweden*) being deſirous to revenge the invaſion which the *Muſcovites* had made the year before into that Country, cauſed 3000 men to be drawn out of the Army there; and entering into the *Muſcovite's* Country, laid near 100 Villages in aſhes, put 2000 men to the ſword, took *Bſur*, a place betwixt *Dorpt* and *Platzka*, which was the place of the Magazine for Arms and Ammunition, and ſet fire on the Town. Whereupon the *Muſcovites* being provoked, a body of them purſued the *Swediſh* as they were returning with their booty, which being reinforced by an addition of 2000 *Germans*, it came to an Encounter; but the *Swedes* being ſtrengthened by ſome forces, ſent them by the Governour of *Reuell*, got the better, forcing the enemy to retire in diſorder, leaving 600 men dead on the place, and 400 taken priſoners. With the loſſe of one Colonel, and about 60

K k k k 2

horſe;

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

horse to the Swedes. This fell out in April, 1657. About which time, the mouth of Mount *Etna* in *Sicilie* (now called *Mungibul*) teamed up an unheard of, and most stupendious quantity of fire, covering the Island with ashes.

But that which in Octob. 1657, made things run to an extremity in *Portugal*, was the excessive Demands of the States General of the United Provinces, by their Commissioners, from that Kingdom: who in their Treaty at *Lisboe*, (demanding possession of the Realm of *Angola*, and the Isle of *S. Thomas*; also free Commerce in and with *Brasile*; some millions of money, and 13000 Chests of Sugar, to be delivered in *Amsterdam* at the King of *Portugal's* charge) set an end to all hope of any good by trading: For those particulars being denied them, a War was begun with *Portugal*, the Dutch Fleet then lying thereabout to watch for their *Brasile* Fleet: whose Commissioners returned to make report unto their Superiours.

But *Czarnecki* with 8000 Polish horse entering in the same October into *Pomerania*, wasted that part of it which belonged to the Swede; and advancing as far as betwixt *Stetin* and *Anklam*, they dealt most barbarously with the Inhabitants: yea they came to *Anklam* it self, where they burnt the Horse-Mills, (also a second time before *Stetin*, consuming and burning down all to the ground thereabouts) and had not the overflowing of the River *Pein* hindred, they would have made a farther spoyl and progress; whereupon they returned back again into the *March*: and the King of *Sweden* being then thereabouts, collecting his forces to oppose them; (his men being mightily encouraged by the unexpected news of the taking *Fredericks Ode*) they hearing the King was drawing an Army together, went back again over the *Oder*. *Czarnecki* afterwards returning into *Poland*.

About November, the *Portugal* Forces having rendezvouzed at *Eltas*, not onely passed the River of *Guadiana*; but coming before *Moran*, after four dayes siege, constrained the Governour to surrender it upon Capitulation: which news moved the King of *Spain*, in regard it was provided with all necessaries for a long siege, and might have held out, till relief had been brought by the Duke of *San Germano*, the Spanish General.

But at *Constantinople* all means was used to intercede for the *Cossacks*, that they might be reconciled to the Crown of *Poland*; where likewise warlike preparations both for Sea and Land were then eagerly followed. Then were the *Persians* also stirring against the Turks; whose Land-forces were to act against them; (if they could not either make a cessation of arms with them, or find out some other way for accommodation, which they desired) wherefore they then blockt up *Lemnos*, which being reduced, their Land-forces might be employed either against the *Persians*, or some other parts. But the *Venetian* Commander in *Lemnos* stoutly behaving himself, repulsed the Turks in 15 assaults: yet the Turks at last taking the said Island of *Stalimene* or *Lemnos*, sent thither a Garrison of 10000 men.

A

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1653.

A little after which, the *Austrian* Court at *Vienna* resolved to proclaim the King of *Sweden* for an open enemy, and to publish open war against him.

*Philip* the 4th King of *Spain* being aged, and almost beyond expectation, having a young Prince, his Son and Heir, born unto him in November, 1657, Benefices were caused to be made throughout all the *Spanish* Dominions: all Officers being to perform that solemnity in the most magnificent manner.

But the *Poles* continuing their Leaguer before *Riga*, the Governour *Helmfield*, Jan. 12. 1657, assaulted the besieger's well fortified Leaguer with about 6000 men on the other side of the *Duna*; and successfully scaling it, he took 20 Colours, with all the Artillery and baggage, and 200 prisoners; among whom were many Polish Lords, and persons of note; Col. *Wigand* their Commander was slain, with divers other Colonels, and 1800 common *Souldiers* also killed on the place. The Conquerours finding such store of provisions and victuals there, that the Inhabitants of the City were two dayes in carrying of it away; so that the *Pole's* Leaguer was wholly ruined, and those of *Riga* set free again.

In or about February after, the *Austrians* and *Poles* going up further into the Country of *Prussia*, committed great outrages and insolencies in the Bishoprick of *Ermland*. They seized on *Newark* by treachery of a Popish Burgomaster; and afterwards the Castle *Brazian*. But those of *Thoren* having a design, sallied out upon the *Poles*, killing many, and taking a number of prisoners, with 4 field-pieces, and much Ammunition.

A little before which time, all the people of *Naples* being discontented, as not liking the Spanish Government, 8000 Bandits were on foot in that Kingdom, their Leaders being of great Families: so that, the Tower of *Annunciado* was said to be taken, and three garrisons put to the sword. But the Vice-Roy took two Bishops which were among the Bandits, as also a man disguised in womans cloaths, who privately carrying a Poniard to stab the said Vice-Roy, intended thereupon to have raised a Tumult. And the Bandits continuing their rebellion, one Capt. *Martelli* about Jan. meeting with a party of them; pursued and took 20 of them, cutting off their heads; the rest taking Sanctuary in a house at *Pazano*, long defended themselves: but at length they being constrained to yield, were sent prisoners to *Baia* Castle. After which, the Vice-Roy sent a Body of forces toward *Salerno* and *La Pouille*, to endeavour the hindering of the said Bandits from increasing their Troops that way; for they were grown very insolent and audacious, being encouraged by hopes of succour the next Spring out of *France*.

But the Swedes having taken not onely *Fuenen*, but *Langland*, *Laland*, *Phalster*, and *Zealand*, from the *Danes*; inso much, that their forces were every where defeated and reduced under the Swedish power; the two Kings came unto a Treaty of Peace; in which,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

which, English Agents (the Danish King having accepted of the Proteſtours mediation) and French, with ſome Plenipotentiaries of the Daniſh Rix-Senatours, (all others being excluded) were to mediate. But the Daniſh King being reduced to a deſperate condition, the agreement was made by the mediation of an Engliſh Envoy, whom the ſaid King prevailed with to interpoſe: the King of Sweden giving but 24 hours parley; and it was done, upon very advantageous conditions on the Swediſh King's ſide; as alſo ſomewhat for his Father in law, the Duke of Holſtein. This Peace was concluded betwixt them, on Febr. 27. 1657.

On Febr. 20th, there began a Poliſh Convocation in *waſewia*, where many Senators appeared. A main Propoſition there made, being concerning a Treaty of Peace with Sweden; which if it could not be obtained, then means was to be reſolved on for purſuance of the War, and to make a League with the United Netherland Provinces; and an agreement with the *Cofacks*, for a ceſſation of Arms. The Senators then took an Oath, not to reveal any of their Conſultations. The Gentry likewiſe complained much againſt the quartering of the *Auſtrian* forces, and the maintaining of their own Souldiers: for whom moneys were to be raiſed. There was alſo another Propoſition concerning the toleration of the Proteſtant Religion; which the Gentry admitted, (though the Clergy accepted not of it) declaring, That the *Auguſtine* and Reformed Religion ſhould be tolerated, but not the Socinian. They alſo reſolved againſt the Clergies Proteſtation, which would have no peace with Sweden, accepting of the French mediation therein. Then alſo the Commander of the *Auſtrian* forces deſiring an Oath of fidelity to be made to him in the King of Hungary's name, in the City of *Cracow*, the States of Poland were much offended.

There was likewiſe about this time, a meeting of the Clergy in *Flanders*, to raiſe money for the King of Spain: The Biſhop exhorting them, ſaid, There was great neceſſary, that a ſum ſhould be yearly raiſed to proſecute the War againſt the Engliſh and French; alledging, that the Enemies aimed chiefly at the Clergie's revenues; they being then upon the hazard of loſing all: all which might be prevented. Their Aſſembly brake up divers times: at whoſe firſt meeting, many of them declared, they being poor, had nothing to give; which being known to the contrary, they afterward contributed, and ſubſcribed large ſums.

But ſomething not altogether inconfiderable, comes to be related out of the *Eaſt-Indies*, the ſtate of the great *Mogol*; who there deceaſing, in 1657, the *Indians* loſt ſuch a pretious treaſure in him that was ſo wiſe and fortunate, that they deſpaired of ever ſeeing a Succeſſour to his Virtues; yet he lived to the age of 73 years: who leaving behind him four ſons, (and being by every one a grandfather) they were all ſomewhat equally ballanced in power, (by a diſſion of that vaſte Empire, into a kind of Tetrarchy)

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

chy) being onely ſubordinate to their father while he lived: Neither could the right of primogeniture extend the eldeſt his Dominions any farther, than by the ſword, which was then like to be the Arbitrator; ſo that whatever was done by the three Elder brothers, the diſtance of the place, and difficulty of paſſage had then denied intelligence to thoſe of *Surrat*: but *Moras Bux*, the younger, having crowned himſelf king of *Guzarat*, his Seat being at *Abmsdew*, (a great City 100 miles from *Surrat*) ſent in October, or about the beginning of Novemb. 1657, an Army under an Eunuch's command to reduce *Surrat* Caſtle, it being of very conſiderable ſtrength, and commanding the beſt Port of his Dominions, beſides a treaſure of above 200000 l. ſterling therein; but the Governour reſuſing to deliver it to any but *Dorrokore* the Eldeſt, who was King of *Deſly*, the Eunuch cloſe beſieging the ſame, and working three Mines under the brink of the Mount, he ſprang one of them, Decemb. 20, blowing up 60 yards of the outward wall; which although it would have little advantaged him, (had the Souldiers continued reſolute) yet the frights of danger, and promiſed indemnity, made them conſtrain the ſaid Governour to ſurrender it, Decemb. the 4th after, (though on honourable terms, and after much loſſe to the beſiegers) That diſſion having almoſt put an end to the Trade of *Surrat*.

About the latter end of 1657, the *Muſcovites* remaining about *Jemma*, which they had beſieged from the middle of Febr. before, with between 5 and 6000 men; *M. G. Horn*, Governour of *Inggermanland*, approaching with but 800 men, and four pieces of Cannon, took from them the Fort of *Kakelwerck*, putting 100 *Muſcovites* to the ſword therein: whereupon, the main body drawing off from before *Jemma*, he had opportunity to put Ammunition, Victuals, and freſh men into that Town, without any oppoſition of the enemy.

The *Cofacks* and *Tartars* about the ſame time made an agreement. Peace alſo between the Houſes of *Ottoman* and *Auſtria* was confirmed: and it was hoped the *Cofacks* and *Poland* would agree alſo. And likewiſe that a Peace would be made between *Poland* and *Sweden*: For the Treaty in order to a compoſure went on in April, 1658, betwixt their Commiſſioners; the ſucceſſe of a fair concluſion being very probable: which thing not a little alarmed the great Duke of *Muſcovy*, who was very active to proſecute his deſign, fearing thoſe two Kings reconciliation might prove prejudiciall to him; who ſent an Expreſſe to the Poliſh King, to demand an execution of the Treaty heretofore made at *Vilna* betwixt them, particularly that point reſpecting the *Muſcovite's* eldeſt ſon's ſucceſſion to the Crown of *Poland*: whereby the Poliſh king apprehending, that the *Muſcovite* did but ſeek a pretext for War, he therefore ordered one part of his forces to obſerve the motion of the *Muſcovites*.

But *Czarneſki*, (who was then made *Cracovian* Palatine in the room of *Miſkowsky* deceaſed) was to have his Rendezvous Apr. 20,

~  
 Anno 1653  
 of Christ,  
 to 1652.  
 ~

at *Meyeritz* is great Poland with 10000 men, with whom the *Austrian* forces joyning, they were to march joyntly into *Pomerania*, if *Sweden* and *Poland* did not agree.

On the 19th day of which moneth, the Dutchesse of *Newburgh* was delivered of a young Prince, which made the Court rejoice.

Two or three moneths before this, the Turks were more enraged againſt Christians in the City of *Jerusalem*, than formerly, demanding of them and their Merchants double Custome; threatening to turn them out, and lead them Captive, if they would not pay, and not suffering any Christians to come thither; which perplexed the poor Christians there very much; the Guardian having desired 20 moneths time to send the religious people into Christendom to gather Alms.

But in the same moneth of April, 1658, 800 foot Souldiers out of *Polonish* Regiments passing over the River *Weyſel* about *Dirſau*, with intent to take poſt in a Sconce not far from the Village *Lifsau*, and so to invade the great *Werder*: Prince *Adolph* summoning all the horse and foot to be had in *Elking* and *Hooff*, would forthwith have encountered them: But the Bridge being somewhat damaged by the high water, he was hindered; so that the enemy had time to fortifie themselves with some Palisadoes: but as soon as the *Swedish* got over, they advanced before the said Sconce of *Lifsau*, which the *Polish* (though they made strong opposition, after *L. Col. Plaw* the Governour was killed, his forces that entered therein 126 files, being diminished to 65, and all provision cut off from the other side) within few dayes were forced to surrender it, Apr. 21, upon discretion, with all the Men, Canons, and Ammunition that was left. *Saphia* was coming to relieve the same, but hearing it was yielded, he retreated back again.

May 4th after, 1658, the French, with some English assisting them, had a defeat in attempting to surprize *Ostend* in *Flanders*, by a Plot laid with two Burgomasters, and some others within the Town, one *Spindeler*, a Colonel, banished formerly out of *Flanders*, being to be a chief actor in the business, who was indeed their betrayer. The time being come, and all signs of a surrender given, the Governour being pretended to be slain, &c. between 9 and 10 in the morning, the new Tide serving, Marshal *D'Amort* going in, in Vessels, with between 6 and 700 men, the small shot and great guns also now firing apace, they were constrained to yield themselves prisoners: some, endeavouring to run ashore on the Contribution side, being killed by the horse there on purpose placed. Of the English that went to ayd the Marshal in his landing, were taken prisoners 110 men; of the Sea-men that went ashore there being but four wanting.

A little before the same time, the King of *Sweden* summoning an Assembly of all the Provinciaall Governours of *Sweden*, with most of the Bishops, and a Deputy from each City to *Gottenburgh*; *Rosenham* (they being met) Commander of *Stockholm*, opened the

Assembly

Assembly with an elegant Oration, being followed therein by the other Deputies, congratulating the King touching the prosperous success of his Arms: and before May 17, we find him gone from *Gottenburgh*, having obtained of the Estates of his Realm all that he demanded of them: particularly, a Levie of 14000 men for securing of *Pomerania*. In the mean time, *M. G. Jephſon* the English Envoy, arrived at *Berlin*, where was the Electour of *Brandenburg* his Court, as also an Ambassadour from the Landgrave of *Hesse*: The first intimating thus much, That he who should be an enemy to the King of *Sweden*, should also be so to the Lord Protector. The others Commission seeming to tend to the same effect; which was, To endeavour a hinderance of Jealousie and difference (crept in between the said King and Electour) from breaking out; and that a good understanding and constant friendship might be on both sides preserved. For then in the said Electour's Dominions, divers Magazines were to be erected, a great quantity of provision being to be brought together to that effect: he also levied great forces, his design being not at first known; but in July after, it was apparent, That between the King of *Sweden* and the Electour, was nothing intended but open hostility: this last, publishing a Manifesto of the grounds of his proceedings, in keeping his Army together, and levying more forces, &c. who having desired the *Swedish* King both by Writing and Ambassages, That the pretended Quarrell betwixt the King of *Poland* and *Sweden* might be by fair means laid aside; proffering on his part all possible means conducing therunto: Also he earnestly endeavouring to procure just satisfaction from the *Polish* King, who thereupon shewed himself inclinable and desirous of peace, (the Ambassadors of the Electoral Collegd at *Frankford* being, at the time of his Manifesto publishing, with the *Swedish* King, about laying aside of Controversies, and observing the Instrument of Peace, and other wayes by him used: Yet his Ambassadors were coarsely used, contrary to the Laws and Customs of Nations, not being admitted to audience, though they had his Letters of Credence; but rather were bid to begone, to his great disgrace; adding thereto great threatenings; for execution whereof, an Army then stood on his Frontiers; and that, unless God turn'd it away, he must look either for a sudden surprize, or a most destructive hostile march through the Empire and his Territories. The said Duke of *Brandenburg* therein also charging strictly all his Subjects to quit their warlike service out of the Empire, and to return either to their own homes, or come to him or his Army without delay, upon forfeiture of all that ever they had, whether moveables or unmoveables.

But before this time it was perceived by prudent men, that the *Austrians* used all manner of promises and shifts to the King of *Poland*, to continue the division between *Sweden* and *Poland*, doing what they could to obstruct the mediation of *France* for an accommodation: whereupon most of the *Polish* Estates, chiefly the Pro-

LIII

fian,

~  
 Anno 1653  
 of Christ,  
 to 1652.  
 ~

Ann. 1653  
of Christ.  
to 1658.

lian, appeared so ill satisfied; that most of them were on the point to endeavour the summoning a Diet to Dantzick, to consider of wayes and means most advantageous for their affairs; and the rather, because *Brandenburg* had then sent new assurances to the Swedes, that he would do nothing to their prejudice. But we see afterwards there was a manifest breach.

As concerning evacuation and restitution of places between the *Dane* and *Swede*, the King of *Denmark* was to repossesse *Fredericks-Ode*, when the Castle of *Bremerwerden* should be restored to the King of *Sweden*; and about the beginning of *May* this present year, 1658, all Regiments of *Sweden* were transported out of *Zeland*; but those in *Fuenen* were not to be removed till the Treaty of the Danish King with the Duke of *Holslein*, (wherein there were some tergiversations used on the Danish side) was brought to a final upshot.

But on July 18, 1658, *Leopoldus* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* (the former Emperor deceased April 2, 1657,) was chosen Emperor of *Germany* by the seven Electors at the Imperial City of *Frankford*.

And Septemb. 3d following, (the very day on which the two memorable Victories of *Dunbar* in *Scotland*, and *Worcester* in *England* against the Scottish King were by him obtained) *Oliver Cromwell*, Lord Protector of the three Nations, after about 14 dayes sickness, like an Ague in the beginning, about the hour of three in the afternoon, departed from the living, having born that Supreme Office almost five years. And the next day, Sept. 4. *Richard*, the eldest Son of the said *Oliver*, was by the Privy Council's Command proclaimed Lord Protector of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, in his Father's stead. Which on the same day was performed, first near the Council-Window in *White-Hall*; then in the Palace-Yard at *Westminster*; and after that in the City of *London*.

But about the middle of July, the Swedish forces invading Electoral *Prussia*, and plundering some Villages, they killed the Duke of *Brandenburg* his safe-guards which they there found, but one Col. *Shonck* lying in wait for them, met at last with a Swedish party of 200, near *Rosenberg*, bringing some of them prisoners to *Kingsberg*.

Then also the Treaty betwixt *Sweden* and the *Moscovite* successfully going on, the Governour of *Riga* wrote to the Swedish king, That he hoped there would be no occasion to send force against him. But the Cham of *Tartary* sent to the king of *Poland*, and congratulating him, proffered him assistance against all his enemies.

This present year also, 1658, came intelligence into *England*, of the great success which the English forces had in *Jamaica* Island against the *Spaniards* landing there; as also, that the *Spaniards* Plate-Galleons which were bound from *Carthagena* for *Spain*, were cast away by a Hurricane; the *Bermudans* bringing into *Jamaica*

20000

Ann. 1653  
of Christ.  
to 1658.

20000 pieces of eight which they had taken in the Rack.

But Prince *Ragotsky* being returned out of *Poland* into *Transylvania*, the Great Turk (having before commanded him in 1657, upon great penalty, not to proceed in his march against *Poland*) sent to him, to resign his Principality of *Transylvania* to his Cousen *Reada*; he at that present yielded thereto; (although to resign up any of his Forts into the Turks hands, he utterly denied) and re-assuming his Principality again, without the said Turk's consent, he being enraged against him, would try his utmost to develt him; and disposse also the Princes of *Moldavia* and *Wallachia*: wherefore, he ordering great forces against him, about the latter end of April, 1658, the Turks totally defeated the Prince of *Wallachia*, who was marching to Prince *Ragotsky's* ayd, (who had also sent to *Vienna*, to demand the promised ayd by the King of *Hungary* against those Turks) 8000 being slain upon the place, and a great number of prisoners taken; among whom, were divers Boyars, the principal Officers of that Prince: who thereupon fleeing into *Transylvania*, the Turks forced another to accept his Principality. And the Grand Signior being still bent to dethrone the said *Ragotsky*, sent about July rigorous Orders to the *Moldavian* and *Wallachian* Princes, That they should endeavour to invade him. But to the Bashaw of *Buda*, he sent more severe order for the same effect, with a threatening, That if he did not his duty, he should be dead alive, and his skin placed on one of *Buda's* Towers: Wherefore the Bashaw advancing about the beginning of July, Prince *Ragotsky* challenged him to a fight: who thereupon breaking up from *Lippa*, and marching towards *Arad* Castle, the *Transylvanians* fired the Suburbs near that Castle. The Turk's Officers who led the Avant, seeing the smoke and fire, hastened directly to the Castle, whom the *Hungarians* following, put them to flight, taking and putting many to the sword; *Mustapha* Beg being taken prisoner. Wherefore the *Transylvanians* encouraged, drew near the Turks main Army; the Turks thereupon discharged 3 great Guns as a warning, that their men should retire within the Wagons placed so as to serve for a safeguard: but the *Transylvanians* so roundly plyed them with their great Guns, that they being brought into confusion, fled into a Valley: whom the *Transylvanians* pursuing, drave them into the River *Mor*, where they were drowned: and the whole Turkish Army became a prey: this was on July 4th, 1658. The chief prisoners being besides *Mustapha*, wounded, the Bassa of *Agria*, the Col. *Agas* of the Janizaries, Col. *Gjenly* *Agas* at *Buda*, and the Beg of *Lippa*: *Alai* Beg of *Waitzen* being trodden to death by the horse; the Bashaw was likewise so put to it in the flight, that he was forced to run into the water: whom notwithstanding, a *Hussar* pursued, catching him by the garment to take him; but he was rescued, and the *Hussar* slain. The Prince's men pursuing them above 30 leagues to one of their chief Cities, they returned with rich booties. The news of this rout caused such an alteration at *Constantinople*, that

LIII 2

(violating

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

(violating the Law of Nations, and growing in a rage against the Christians) they imprisoned the Imperiall and French Ambassadors, charging the French of being complice with his Son in his Letter in Cyphers, which they intercepted: and the other, That his Master had suffered some German Companies to serve under *Ragotski*, (although the Emperour's Deputies had demonstrated, it was without his consent; and that the Turk for his money might have as many of them as he would).

In August following, the Austrians forces being apprehended to be on their march towards the Frontiers of the Turks, to oppose their power, it was wished, they might deal better with the Protestants in those parts, than the forces under the Count of *Dobra* had done, who used them no otherwise, than the Turks were used when over-powred.

But the Portugal having this Summer taken the field against the Spaniard, about *Elvas*, they besieged and took the Fort of St. *Christopher*, before *Badaix*, and passing the River *Guaniana*, their General June 22, assaulted another very strong Fort which the Spaniards had builded: and ordering the General of horse to get between the Fort and City to demolish the Spaniards lines, he put to the sword two Troops of horse, and two Companies of foot, whom they had left behind, except two taken. There was 400 well armed in the Fort with an Irish Commander, who courageously behaving themselves, and the enemy coming (the mean time) out of the Town to hinder their design, 300 appointed against the Portugals right Wing, were every man killed on the place; and the like happening to them that were commanded for the left: thus after three hours they were totally defeated and driven back, leaving 1200 on the place. Whereupon the Fort was surrendered at the Portugals mercy; the Irish being permitted onely to come forth with swords; but all the Spaniards without arms. The Portugals losse being of no consequence; onely five Commanders wounded, among whom was the Duke of *Cadaval*. After this, the Spaniard forsook another great Fort made on the River, leaving all in it behind them; which these taking, strongly garrisoned them both; and advancing to *Badaix*, they wholly besieged it.

The King of Sweden in or about the same August, imbarquing 4000 horse, and 6000 foot, was found in that design to return again upon *Denmark*: The reason whereof was variously censured; some being induced to believe, That some under-hand provocation had been given to that magnanimous King by some in *Denmark*; for he landing at *Corsver* a Port of *Zealand*, marched directly towards *Copenhagen*; and meeting (by the way) some Danish horse, they were content to serve under him: who was generally believed to take that opportunity to do himself right, and enture all behind him; that he might safely return into *Prussia* and *Pomerania* against the *Poles* and other his enemies. But since this his invasion of *Denmark*, many stately Houses and Farms were seen

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

on fire as well towards *Copenhagen*, as the *Sound*. The King of Sweden being at *Ringshead*, the Danish King sent two Privy Counsellours from *Copenhagen*, about or on Aug. 10th, to demand the reason of that sudden alteration, who being admitted to his presence, he with such grounded reasons demonstrated unto them the cause of that his action, that they could not answer a word against it, but returned back with tears in their eyes. On the 11th day, the King advancing about half a league from *Copenhagen*, from the hill on the left hand, they perceived the Danish resolved to stand upon their defence, having set all the Suburbs on fire. The King approaching the City, Aug. 13, saluted the same with two pieces of Cannon; which being answered out of the Town with three, they fired without intermission, to hinder their begun approaches; who had taken the Hospital on one side; salleys being made without any great damage to either. *Cronenburgh* Castle being likewise beleagured with three Regiments under Admiral Count *Wrangle*. The Danes also designing to fire *Helsenor*, some Swedish horse being sent to defend it, hindered the same. And Sept. 7. 1658, *Cronenburgh* Castle was surrendered to the Swedish King, with a gallant Artillery, and good store of Ammunition: the King presently going to prosecute the siege against *Copenhagen* with greater vigour, resolving not to stir till it were brought to an issue: And as a help therein, a Dutch Fleet being designed to succour the *Dane*, was no sooner out at Sea, but it being surprized by a storm, which spoiled most of their Sails and Tackle; it gave some impediment to their Voyage, till they could repair.

But the great Prince of Turkey proffering to the Cham of *Tartary*, *Transylvania*, if he could win it, he resolved to that end to joyn his forces with the Turks; but *Wybofsky* General of the Cossacks, requesting him to ayd him against the Cossacks siding with the Muscovites; he ordered *Kasraih Beg* his Kinsman to march to *Ukrain* with 20000 Tartars; with whom *Wybofsky* joyning with 20000 Cossacks, they should go against those in the Muscovite's service. But being come over *Borisphenes*, the Cossacks under the Muscovites sent them Commissioners, perswading them that through great scantness of provision and forrage, they were forced to separate from the Tartars, and to encamp themselves apart; they dissemblingly treating with the Tartars; these two parties of Cossacks uniting, fell on the Tartars Camp, slaying 15000 of them, among whom *Kasraih Beg* was one. And then invading *Nabaisih Tartary*, they made all havock they could, and were like so to proceed. Thus the Cossacks (against the *Polanders* and *Wybofsky's* will) became open enemies to the Tartars; which is not easie to be reconciled with *Poland* and its confederates. Neither could the Tartars be taken for trusty friends to *Poland*, because they strove, or are still striving, to make peace with the Muscovites, whose Duke is an Arch-enemy to the Tartars.

In *Flanders* the Spanish Army received a rout Sept. 3. 1658; for



Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

for a body of Spaniards (betwixt 4 and 5000 men) under the Prince of *Ligne* marching to join with their other forces, thought to have visited *Tyre* by the way, and to put succour therein; but they being engaged by the French, were wholly routed, the Prince of *Ligne* having his arm shot off, 1200 being taken prisoners, the rest slain and put to flight. *Oudenard* and *Meenen* was likewise about this time taken from the Spaniard, and *Armentiers* likewise closely begirt. But on the 26 day of the said September, the Town of *Tyre* was delivered into the possession of Marshal *Turen*: the Spaniards marching forth in the morning, about 7 or 800 men, with their Arms, Baggage, and two pieces of Cannon, with three Princes, besides the Governour. That City being one of the greatest and fairest of *Flanders*, was quickly carried, by the valiant and resolute Onsets which the English forces made upon their Counter-carps, and other Out-works; shewing the like Courage there, as they had done before at several other Towns.

The *Brandenburgish*, *Austrian*, and *Polonian* forces toward the latter end of this last September, were drawing near the Swedish forces in *Holstein*; having then already encountered with some Swedish parties: the Duke of *Holstein* going to *Tonningen*, where the Swedes were drawing into a body. Of the Enemies, *Spork* led the Avant, consisting of 3000 Austrian horse; the *Brandenburgish* forces being 10000 horse, and 200 Dragoons; *Czarneski* being with the Polish foot, and 6000 horse commanded by the two Fieldmarshalls, who marched with the Artillery, marching very slowly by reason of the bad ways: this Army was thus marching in the beginning of this present month Octob. 1658: the Elector of *Brandenburg* having published a *Manifesto*, assuring the Nobility of *Holstein*, That his Souldiers should not be troubled in their houses, nor be damnified by them, desiring onely their Contribution, whereby the Souldiers might have some accommodation.

Moreover, on the 4th of this present October, came an Account from Col. *Doyley* Governour of *Jamaica*, of the prosperous success of the English against the Spaniards there, who being 30 Foot-Companies landed at *Rio Nova*, a place in the North of that Island: and being 12 dayes there before they were discovered, the said Governour setting sayl with 750 Officers and Souldiers, after a valorous landing, June 22, he summoned the Fort; but the Governour *Don Arnoldo* & *Saf* sending a confident denyall, the English, next morning, marching toward the Fort, and climbing up an high Hill, advanced in sight of the said *Rio Nova* Fort: where finding the Work on the Land side not finished to that heighth, as to the Sea-ward, they receiving their shot, ran up the Flankers with their forlorn, having hand-Granadoes, and gained it in a quarter of an hour; many of the Spaniards running out of the Works, the English followed the chase about 3 or 4 miles, doing execution: the Sea-men also seeing them run along the rocks, coming out with their boats, killed many: so that above

Anno 1653  
of Christ  
to 1658.

300 persons were slain, divers Captains, two Priests, and their Sergeant Major: about 100 ordinary prisoners being taken, and 6 Captains, whom they sent home, the King of *Spain's* Standard, and 10 Colours: the rest, especially the strangers in the Woods, being liable to perish. In that Fort was taken 10 barrels of powder, great store of shot, 6 pieces of Ordnance, and great store of provisions.

In the same month October, the King of *Sweden* still lying before *Copenhagen*, and going in a Galliot to find out the passages to the Island of *Amak*, (joynted to that City by a bridge) it being somewhat groundy near the shore, he embarked himself with the Rix-Admiral in a small Shallop of the Galliot, which through the highness of the wind, and force of the stream, over-ran and overwhelmed the Shallop; the Master being drowned, the King and the rest narrowly escaping. And the King resolving to attack the said Island, a Danish Captain pretending a zeal to him, he entrusted him for his guide to the best passages leading to the Town; but (as soon as he arrived there) the Captain ran away, giving notice to the Danish King, that the King of *Sweden* being in *Amak* with a small number, might be easily taken: Wherefore they falling out, had not the Rix-Admiral observed the Danish Troopers coming on the bridge, he had narrowly escaped: whereas now, retiring a little, he kill'd, took, and dispersed 1500 Danes: And the Island not being of strength for advantage, he carried away on ship-board, and destroyed, all the Cattle and Victuals which he found, that *Copenhagen* might have no supplies from thence.

Also Fieldmarshall *Douglas* retreating to the borders of *Curland*, expecting a supply from that Duke, (who before had supplied the *Muscovites* and *Lithuanians*) according to an agreement, A party of *Lithuanians* routed almost 600 of his Rear-guard: wherefore the Duke, now (seeming a neuter) brake down all bridges to his Town of *Mittaw*, summoning his Subjects against the Swedes: whereupon, *Douglas* (left the *Lithuanians* and *Curlanders* should join) sent 600 Souldiers by night, down the river in 24 small Vessels, which he took, instructing the chief Captain (speaking the *Lithuanian* tongue) how to proceed; who telling the first Sentinel, that they were *Lithuanians* much wounded, (coming in the night, (fearing the Swedes) for cure, passing by him, slew him; the second Sentinel running away, without giving notice: but the third crying out, the Captain had leisure to enter, and discharge two great Guns as a signal to *Douglas*: who getting also in with little resistance, took the Duke and Dutchesse, (the Elector of *Brandenburg* his sister) with the other Courtiers, prisoners. The cause hereof was, for that there were Letters of the Duke of *Cutland's*; sent (contrary to his Neutrality) both to the Polish King, the *Lithuanian* General, the *Muscovian* Governour of *Kaken-husen*, and also to the Duke of *Brandenburg*, inviting them against the King of *Sweden* in *Liesland*, and elsewhere.

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

The Dutch Fleet having a design to bring relief into *Copenhagen*; Octob. 29 coming almost within Cannon shot of *Helsing-Castle*, fearing its reach, held the Coast of *Schenen*, and being come up together with a favourable wind, went by the Castle, being saluted from thence with two Cannons, and the Swedish Fleet gaining up to them, after eight in the morning the Fight began, and continued three hours. Admiral *Wrangell* for some time defending himself against six Dutch ships, at length (with a little damage) beating towards the shoar: the other Swedish ships (the while) endeavouring to the utmost. The Dutch, to avoid the brunt (from the beginning) giving the Swedes way, and gave place when they strove to board them. The Dutch lost nine ships in all, the Swedes but two. *De Witt*, the Dutch Admiral, his Ship being taken and spoyled, with himself, who afterwards dyed of a wound in his thigh; 210 prisoners taken, 100 slain, and 60 maimed in the same ship. No Swedish persons of quality were then known to be mortally wounded. Yet whilest the fight lasted, the Dutch Merchant-men passing therow the Sound, put the designed Relief into *Copenhagen*: but the King of Sweden, who with his Queen were Spectators (from *Cronenburgh Castle*) of the Fight, it being ended, presently hastied to see to his Leaguer before *Copenhagen*.

About the same time the Poles who had besieged *Thoren* in *Prussia*, after a near approach, and some thousands lost before it, (their King and Queen residing also in the Leaguer) deserted the siege.

But in *Flanders* the French General, Marshal *Turen*, transporting his Army over the *Scheld*, took (in his march) and plundered the two Towns of *Geerderbe* and *Grammont*; and afterwards he took the small Town of *Alost*, between *Brussels* and *Gaunt*, it being but meanly fortified; yet very remarkable for the abundance of Hops growing about it.

I shall now insert 2. or 3. remarkable things, and so draw to a conclusion of this our Appendix. The one, being a strange Apparition in *Cornwall* in the West of *England*, about the month of August, 1657; it was of Hurlers, as they are there called; and were seen by many in a field of standing Corn, about *Bosse-Castle*; they being innumerable, and in white apparel; and at last they hurled themselves into the Sea. Some of the Spectators going afterwards into the field, found the Corn no whit damaged; contrary to their expectation. Another was, of a very strange Monster-Child or Children, (for it seemed to be two) born (though living, but few days) of a Souldier's Wife at *weried* on the *Elder-Saunt* near *Ardenburg*: it was so strange, both for outward and inward parts, as scarce hath been heard of the like; for besides the two heads and two necks, and four arms, the eyes of the female stood where the mouth should be; and above the eyes stood in the middle, a masculine member or Genital of an ordinary bignesse,

Anno 1653  
of Christ,  
to 1658.

nesse, hanging down to the right eye, &c. And for the male, there were (when dissected) found therein, two Hearts, two Lungs, one great Liver, and one Gall; two Stomachs, the biggest whereof had joyned unto it a Milt and two Kidneys, the right being bigger than the left; the female having onely the genitall parts; which had two firm teeth in its mouth under the chin, like a fundament; but the male-body had a very little hole instead of a mouth, but without a chin; the skin of which monstrous body, both behind as well as before, being found to be interlarded with fat.

But in the Gulph of *Venice*, in a Ship sayling to *Venice*, where-in were Turkish and Armenian passengers; the envy of the Captain and the rest increasing against two Englishmen, Febr. 28 and 29, because they complied not with them in their words and example, so that they were denyed the Cook-Room, to dresse their provision, and threatened to be set ashore on some Island; and one of them by the Captain threatened when they came to *Venice*, to be burnt; the next day early in the morning, March 1. 1657, fire was rained down into the ship; which not onely split part of the top-Mast, burning holes in the sayls; but slew three on the Deck (besides divers wounded): then it went down twice under Deck like the noise of a Cannon, the Scuttles being shut, and (as if the ship was fired) flew one Turk, and an Armenian; wounding others: Great was the peoples cry; it being observable, That of five Nations, one of a fort was cut off.

In France divers Protestants of eminency returning from *Charanton* to *Paris*, the Boat breaking in two, were drowned; most of 60 being lost, of whom was the Chancellour's son of *Poland*, and both the sons of the Marquess de *Claramont*, in 1653. There dyed also in France, the Archbishop of *Paris*, about the end of 1653; being 70 years of age. The King of the Romans, son to the German Emperour, in 1654, June 29, about midnight. Also the Grand Cham of *Tartary* the same year. The Duke of *Joyeuse*, dyed at *Paris* of his wounds received before *Arras*, in or about Sept. 1654, to the King of France his great sorrow. Also the Duke of *Montbazou*, who lived in four King's Reigns, being an old Souldier, and aged 87 years of age, dyed in or about October following. Katherine Dutchess of *Joyeuse*, Febr. 25. 1655, at *Paris*. Likewise Pope *Innocent* the 10th, in whose room was chose *Alexander* the 10th. Cardinal *Sacchetti*, who had stood twice for the Popedom, being then made Secretary of the Congregation of the Council; and *Sieur Bonelli* Governour of the City of *Rome*. The Queen-Mother of *Sweden* about March 20. 1654: on which day, the Funerals of the Rix-Chancellor of *Sweden* were solemnized. In 1655, about May, at *Rome* dyed Cardinal *Francisco Peretti*, called *Montalto*, aged 60 years. And in *England*, at the beginning of the same year, James Duke of *Lenox*: and at the latter end of the same year, March 21, that most Learned Man,

James



# THE TABLE.

<i>Agrippa Castor.</i>	185	<i>Aleam.</i>	199	<i>gon.</i>	388, 391
<i>Agrippina, Mother of Caligula.</i>	171	<i>Aleamans.</i>	194	<i>Alphonfus Tostatus.</i>	390
<i>Ahab, King of Israel.</i>	42	<i>Alexander of Aenfon.</i>	366	<i>Alphonfus Castus.</i>	312
<i>Sanquibbes Benhadad.</i>	43	<i>Alexander, son of Amynas.</i>	76	<i>Alphonfus 7th, of Spain.</i>	350
<i>Abaz, King of Judab.</i>	46	<i>Alexander, Eastern Emp.</i>	338	<i>Alphonfus, K. of Castile.</i>	374
<i>Abaziah, King of Israel.</i>	43	<i>Alexander the Great.</i>	99	<i>Astronomer.</i>	346, 374
<i>Acha taken.</i>	427	<i>his Expedition into Persia.</i>	100, 101.	<i>Alphonfus, Earl of Poitou.</i>	373
<i>Aimerius.</i>	215	<i>death.</i>	102	<i>Altanuss.</i>	335
<i>Aion.</i>	284	<i>Alexander, an Heretick.</i>	179	<i>Altenburgick.</i>	426
<i>Aistulph.</i>	312	<i>Alexander Janneus.</i>	156	<i>Altorpe.</i>	431
<i>Aisthales, Martyr.</i>	268	<i>Alexander Medicus.</i>	185	<i>Altringe.</i>	426
<i>Akerlebe.</i>	264	<i>Alexander, Pope.</i>	185	<i>Alyaser.</i>	61
<i>Alars.</i>	229	<i>Alexander second, Pope.</i>	343	<i>Alyattes.</i>	62, 71
<i>Alaricus, King of Goths.</i>	228, 233, 261, 263	<i>Alexander the 5th, Pope.</i>	387	<i>Amalaberga.</i>	275
<i>Alba built.</i>	33	<i>Alexander 7th, Pope.</i>	561, 572	<i>Amalaricus.</i>	275
<i>Alba-regia.</i>	384	<i>Alexander Ludovissus.</i>	419	<i>Amalasuntha.</i>	272
<i>Albans overcome by Tullius.</i>	58	<i>Alexander Farnesius, Duke of Parma.</i>	409, 410	<i>Amajis.</i>	64, 65
<i>Albert, Cardinal, sent against the United Provinces.</i>	413	<i>Alexander Zabinas.</i>	147	<i>Amanus, of Trajectum.</i>	295
<i>Albert, Duke of Austria, Emperor.</i>	366, 374	<i>Alexander Pheram.</i>	92	<i>Amandus, of Burdeaux.</i>	225
<i>Albert of Austria, Second, Emperor.</i>	390	<i>Alexandria.</i>	208, 211, 212, 213, 219.	<i>Ananiam.</i>	260
<i>Albertus Pighius.</i>	404	<i>built.</i>	101	<i>Amanus.</i>	207
<i>Albertus Magnus.</i>	366, 368	<i>Alexandrians slaughtered.</i>	188	<i>Amaziah, King of Judab.</i>	45
<i>Albigian hereticks.</i>	372	<i>Alexius Angelus, Emperor.</i>	357, 359	<i>Amazons.</i>	50
<i>C. Albinus.</i>	187, 188	<i>Alexius the blind.</i>	310	<i>Ambrones.</i>	150
<i>Albofledis.</i>	262	<i>Alexius Comnenus.</i>	348, 359	<i>Ambrosius.</i>	229
<i>Alboinus.</i>	284, 287	<i>Alexius, Grecian Emperor.</i>	344	<i>Ambrosius Catharinus.</i>	404
<i>Alexander.</i>	50	<i>son of Manuel.</i>	358	<i>Ambrose of Millain.</i>	219, 221, 222.
<i>Aleaus.</i>	72	<i>Alexius Murfiphilus.</i>	359	<i>Amedeus.</i>	389
<i>Alcibiades.</i>	90	<i>Alfred, son of Ethelred.</i>	351, 352	<i>Amelius.</i>	197
<i>Alcimadus.</i>	60	<i>Alienora.</i>	360, 361	<i>Amenburg.</i>	448
<i>Alcimius, High-Priest.</i>	139	<i>Alnetum fight.</i>	410	<i>America discovered.</i>	394
<i>Alicon.</i>	71	<i>Alphens, Martyr.</i>	201	<i>Amianus.</i>	220
<i>Alcman, a Poet.</i>	72	<i>Alphonfus King of Arragon.</i>	388, 391	<i>Amida.</i>	259
<i>Alcmaones.</i>	71			<i>Ammon King of Judab.</i>	47
<i>Alcmaonides.</i>	78			<i>Ammonius.</i>	191
<i>Alcmena.</i>	23, 27			<i>Amoerges.</i>	68
<i>Alcmine.</i>	312			<i>Amos.</i>	45
<i>Alderbert.</i>	328			<i>Amphibjans.</i>	93

# THE TABLE.

<i>Amurath, son of Urchang.</i>	381	<i>chael.</i>	370	<i>Antich.</i>	334.
<i>Amurath, son of Muhammedes.</i>	382	<i>Andronicus the younger.</i>	381	<i>Burnt.</i>	273.
<i>Amurath the third, Emp.</i>	384	<i>Angels Politianus.</i>	395	<i>Overthrown by Earthquakes.</i>	181, 261.
<i>Amarath the 4th, Emp.</i>	385	<i>Angiers.</i>	323	<i>Antomates.</i>	57
<i>Amurath, Emp.</i>	429, 445.	<i>Angrivarians.</i>	236	<i>Antonine, a Florentine.</i>	399
<i>Amynas.</i>	68, 94	<i>Ania of Aurelia.</i>	256	<i>M. Antonius.</i>	161
<i>Anabalianus.</i>	209	<i>Anicetus.</i>	185	<i>C. Antonius.</i>	162
<i>Anacletus.</i>	179, 184, 185, 355	<i>Annas Burgius.</i>	406	<i>Antonius Pius.</i>	182
<i>Anacreon.</i>	80	<i>Annius Verus.</i>	182	<i>M. Antonius Verus.</i>	183
<i>Anastafius.</i>	302	<i>Anomean heresie.</i>	213	<i>Antonius the Great.</i>	197, 213
<i>Anastafius Sinaita.</i>	291	<i>Anselm of Millain.</i>	313	<i>Antonius the Monk.</i>	213
<i>Anastafius, Pope.</i>	265	<i>Anselm of Laudunum.</i>	338	<i>Aper.</i>	187, 189
<i>Anastafius, Emperor.</i>	265	<i>Ansegius.</i>	304	<i>Apis.</i>	10
<i>258. Molested by the Jautians and Perlians.</i>	259.	<i>Anfivarians.</i>	236	<i>Apollinarian heresie.</i>	220
<i>His death.</i>	260	<i>Anterus, Pope.</i>	195	<i>Apollinaris.</i>	186
<i>Anatolius, of Laodicea.</i>	201	<i>Anthemius, Emp.</i>	251	<i>Apollinaris, of Laodicea.</i>	220
<i>Anaxagoras.</i>	88	<i>Anthimus of Constantinople.</i>	278	<i>Apollonia, Martyr.</i>	195
<i>Anaxicrates.</i>	108	<i>Antoninus of Padua.</i>	365	<i>Apollonius.</i>	135, 191
<i>Anaximander.</i>	73	<i>Anthony Augustine.</i>	411	<i>Apollonius Chalcidicus.</i>	186
<i>Anaximenes.</i>	73	<i>Antigonus.</i>	103	<i>Apollonius Thaneus.</i>	180
<i>Ancus Martius.</i>	58	<i>Antiochus.</i>	121	<i>Appian.</i>	186
<i>Ancrene Council.</i>	208	<i>Antiochus, Nephew of Seleucus Nicator.</i>	125	<i>Appio.</i>	180
<i>Anragatius.</i>	221	<i>Antiochus Jeraces the Great.</i>	125, 126.	<i>Apries.</i>	64, 65, 75
<i>Andreas.</i>	260	<i>His wars.</i>	127, 135.	<i>Apuleius.</i>	186
<i>Andreas Charls, King of Hungary.</i>	375	<i>Antiochus of Syria.</i>	133	<i>M. Aquilius.</i>	149
<i>Andreas, King of Hungary.</i>	271	<i>Antiochus Epiphanes.</i>	135, 137, 138.	<i>Aquila.</i>	187
<i>Andrew Alciate.</i>	404	<i>his woful death.</i>	139	<i>Aquileia demolished.</i>	191
<i>Andrew Grunleyd.</i>	438	<i>Antiochus Eupater.</i>	139	<i>Aquisgrane Synod.</i>	318
<i>Andrew Meralius.</i>	402	<i>Antiochus Sydetes.</i>	142, 147	<i>Arabs routed in Spain.</i>	200000 of them slain.
<i>Andriscus, an Impostor.</i>	145	<i>Antiochus Grypus.</i>	147	<i>Aracus.</i>	90
<i>Androgeus.</i>	29	<i>Antiochus Cyzicenus.</i>	148, 152	<i>Arator, a Poet.</i>	280
<i>Andromeda.</i>	22, 23	<i>Antiochus Pim.</i>	152	<i>Aratus Sycio.</i>	121.
<i>Andronicus.</i>	358	<i>Antiochus Asiaticus.</i>	152	<i>His deeds.</i>	122, 124, 132
<i>Andronicus son of Ducas.</i>	347	<i>Antipater.</i>	102, 103	<i>Arbaces King of Media.</i>	50
<i>Andronicus Paleologus.</i>	370	<i>Antistodians.</i>	171.	<i>Arbella fight.</i>	101
<i>Andronicus, son of Michael.</i>	370	<i>Antium.</i>	171.	<i>Arbitianus.</i>	213
				<i>Arbogastes.</i>	222
				<i>Arcadia.</i>	232
				<i>Arcadians vanquish the Lacedemonians.</i>	92
				<i>Arcadius, son of Theodosius.</i>	223, 226
				<i>Arcefilaus.</i>	

## THE TABLE.

<i>Arceilaus.</i>	110	<i>Arnulph of Medard.</i>	352	<i>S. Asterius.</i>	231
<i>Archbas.</i>	68, 69	<i>Aronium fight.</i>	535	<i>Attyages K. of Media.</i>	51
<i>Archidamus.</i>	122	<i>Arphaxad, the same with</i>		<i>Attyages son of Cyaxares.</i>	62, 66
<i>Archilochus.</i>	72	<i>Deioces.</i>	56	<i>Atthaliah.</i>	44
<i>Archimedes.</i>	116	<i>Arragon.</i>	372	<i>Atthamas K. of Beotia.</i>	19
<i>Ardea.</i>	59	<i>Arras besieged.</i>	532, 533	<i>Athanasius.</i>	221, 263
<i>Arduine, a Lombard.</i>	344	<i>Arre.</i>	453	<i>Athanasius the Great, Bi-</i>	shop of Alexandria,
<i>Arelatensis Synod.</i>	207	<i>Arrian Synods.</i>	213	208, 211, 212, 215,	219
<i>Areobinda.</i>	271	<i>Arrian Heresie.</i>	211, 212, 215, 218, 223	<i>Atthaulph.</i>	229, 233
<i>Aretus, K. of Atabia.</i>	157	<i>Arrians called Porphyri-</i>		<i>Atthasagoras.</i>	186
<i>Areton of Guido.</i>	342	<i>ans.</i>	207	<i>Athenians leave their Coun-</i>	try, 83. prevail over the
<i>Argentine.</i>	428	<i>Arrianus.</i>	186	<i>Corinthians, Epidauri-</i>	<i>ans, Laconians, Persians,</i>
<i>Argile, a Scottish Cove</i>		<i>Arrium.</i>	206, 207, 211	<i>and Samians, 86. in-</i>	<i>vade Sicily, 90. oppress</i>
<i>manter.</i>	443	<i>Asaces.</i>	120	<i>with 30 Tyrants, 91</i>	
<i>Argiller.</i>	462	<i>Asacius.</i>	230	<i>Athenodorus.</i>	196
<i>Argonautes.</i>	27, 28, 29	<i>Asenius.</i>	225	<i>Atlas.</i>	11
<i>Argyraspidi.</i>	104	<i>Asinoes.</i>	127	<i>Atrebate.</i>	452
<i>Argyrophilum of Byzan-</i>		<i>Ariabanus.</i>	121	<i>Atreus.</i>	24
<i>tium.</i>	394	<i>Ariabanus, King of the</i>		<i>Athalaricus.</i>	272
<i>Argyrus the Roman.</i>	345	<i>Parthians.</i>	188	<i>Athamaides.</i>	232
<i>Aradne.</i>	29	<i>Ariabades.</i>	308	<i>T. L. Atta.</i>	161
<i>Arias Montanus.</i>	411, 415	<i>Ariaphernes.</i>	77	<i>Attalus.</i>	120
<i>Ariabes King of Cappa-</i>		<i>Ariaxerxes Longimanus.</i>	86	<i>Attalus, Martyr.</i>	1185
<i>docia.</i>	140	<i>Ariaxerxes Mnemon.</i>	91	<i>Attalus a Grammarian.</i>	146
<i>Arienne.</i>	62	<i>Artemius.</i>	215	<i>Attalus, Emperour.</i>	232
<i>Arimbas.</i>	95	<i>Artemim, called Anatta-</i>		<i>Atticus, a Monk.</i>	230
<i>Aristagoras.</i>	76	<i>fins.</i>	303	<i>Attila the Hunn.</i>	236
<i>Aristides.</i>	84, 186	<i>Arundel Earl sent, &amp;c.</i>	434	<i>invades Italy.</i>	249
<i>Aristobolus, King of the</i>		<i>Arantes.</i>	59	<i>Audastenda.</i>	261
<i>Jews.</i>	149, 156	<i>Asa.</i>	41	<i>Audanian Heresie.</i>	213
<i>Aristodemus.</i>	34	<i>Ascanius.</i>	33	<i>Audacenus of Rothomagus.</i>	300
<i>Aristodemus, King of the</i>		<i>Ascoline of Laudanum.</i>	338	<i>Audomar of Tarvenum.</i>	300
<i>Messenians.</i>	60, 69	<i>Ascham.</i>	499	<i>Acentine.</i>	58
<i>Aristogiton.</i>	78	<i>Ascitine.</i>	341	<i>Augusta.</i>	426, 431, 478
<i>Aristomenes.</i>	60	<i>Asconius Bediannus.</i>	180	<i>S. Augustine.</i>	243
<i>Aristonichus, son of Eume-</i>		<i>Aschobius Bishop of Thef-</i>		<i>Augustulus the last Roman</i>	
<i>nes</i>	149	<i>salonica.</i>	223	<i>Emperour.</i>	251
<i>Aristophanes.</i>	99	<i>Asianus.</i>	190		0.
<i>Aristotle.</i>	98	<i>Aspar.</i>	215		
<i>Armenians.</i>	390	<i>Aspinarus.</i>	301, 302		
<i>Armenian Monks.</i>	278	<i>Asparbaddan.</i>	47		
<i>Armenitiers.</i>	493, 540	<i>Asimbeioves.</i>	385		
<i>Arnaud.</i>	577	<i>Asimbeius Usmacaffanes.</i>	386		
<i>Arneime.</i>	426	<i>Asyrian Kingdom.</i>	5, 54.		
<i>Arnobius.</i>	209	<i>Is Kings.</i>	55		
<i>Arnoldus Brixianus.</i>	355				
<i>Arnoldus.</i>	319				
<i>Arnulph.</i>	320, 324, 349				
<i>Arnulph of Metinum.</i>	295				

## THE TABLE.

<b>O. Augustus.</b> 164, 169	<b>Bambas, King.</b> 300	<b>Belgrade taken.</b> 384
<b>Avidius Cassius.</b> 184	<b>Bamberg Church.</b> 343	<b>Belisarius,</b> 269
<b>Arignon, the Pope's Seat,</b> 374, 375	<b>Bamberger.</b> 431	<b>sent against the Persians and Vandals.</b> 270
<b>Aviolus.</b> 172	<b>Bannier.</b> 427, 433, 434, 435, 447, 448	<b>Bellarmino.</b> 419
<b>S. A. of Vienna.</b> 264, 268	<b>Baramas.</b> 283	<b>Bellerophon.</b> 19
<b>Avitus.</b> 268	<b>Barbadoes.</b> 515	<b>Belhazzar.</b> 63
<b>Avitus Gallus, Emp.</b> 250	<b>Barbarossa.</b> 384, 403	<b>Belus, King of Assyria.</b> 5
<b>Avida.</b> 349	<b>Barcelona Fight.</b> 461	<b>P. Bembo.</b> 404
<b>J. Aurata.</b> 411	<b>Barcocheba.</b> 182	<b>Bendish.</b> 501
<b>Aurelius Victor.</b> 220	<b>Barda.</b> 326	<b>Benearme Expedition.</b> 418
<b>M. Aurelius Antonius.</b> 182, 183, 184.	<b>Bardan.</b> 315	<b>Benedict, Abbot.</b> 280
<b>Aurelianus, Emperor.</b> 194	<b>Bardas Phocas.</b> 345	<b>Benedict, Pope.</b> 331, 374
<b>Aureolus, Tyrant.</b> 193	<b>Barmham Fight.</b> 461	<b>Benedict.</b> 342, 387
<b>Austregisil of Biturice-</b> num, 295	<b>Baronius, Cardinal.</b> 415	<b>Benedict 12th, Pope.</b> 375
<b>Aubert of Cameraca.</b> 300	<b>Barotulus.</b> 376	<b>Benedict 13th, Pope.</b> 387
<b>Aubert.</b> 305	<b>Barum Fight.</b> 342	<b>Benaventum.</b> 343
<b>Auxensius, Bishop of Mil-</b> lain, 219	<b>Barwiek.</b> 485, 488	<b>Benhadad.</b> 41, 43
<b>Aylcue.</b> 498, 520	<b>Bassian Antoninus.</b> 188	<b>Berengarius.</b> 320, 328
<b>Azariah, K. of Judah.</b> 45	<b>Basil, Bishop of Amasea.</b> 206	<b>Berengarius, heretic.</b> 353
<b>Azincourt Fight.</b> 395	<b>Basil Councils.</b> 383, 390	<b>Berengarius the Second,</b> 329, 331
	<b>Basilides the Scythopoli-</b> tan, 186	<b>Berebeck Fight.</b> 518
	<b>Basilides Alexandrinus,</b> 187	<b>Berimude.</b> 239
<b>B.</b>	<b>Basiliscus.</b> 246	<b>S. Bernard.</b> 355, 356
<b>Babba, K. of Israel.</b> 41	<b>Basilus, Bishop of Cæsa-</b> rea, 218, 219, 225	<b>Bernard, son of Pipin.</b> 313
<b>Babylon taken by the</b> Turks, 445	<b>Basilus Macedo, Emp.</b> 326	<b>Bernard of Cavealla.</b> 355
<b>Bacandes.</b> 198	<b>Successfull against the</b> Saracens, 327	<b>S. Bernard, Abbot.</b> 360
<b>Bacchiade.</b> 58	<b>Basius, son of Romanus,</b> 334, 335	<b>Bernardus Saracensis.</b> 390
<b>Bacchiades.</b> 139	<b>Basing-House.</b> 472	<b>Bernburg.</b> 433
<b>Bacchylides.</b> 89	<b>Bassæ.</b> 462, 493	<b>Bernice.</b> 121
<b>Bachus.</b> 25	<b>Bathite.</b> 200	<b>Bernice, Daughter of Pro-</b> lemy Philadelphus, 125
<b>Badrans.</b> 68	<b>Baibo.</b> 371	<b>Bernon of Gigniacia.</b> 339
<b>Bajazet Gilderim.</b> 382, 385	<b>Baibonian War.</b> 413	<b>Berosus.</b> 111
<b>Bajazet the 2d, Emp.</b> 383	<b>Baitus.</b> 70	<b>Bertine of Sythiena.</b> 305
<b>Balaquere Fight.</b> 474	<b>Bavarians.</b> 312	<b>Betrade.</b> 294
<b>Balbinus.</b> 191	<b>Bavo.</b> 295	<b>P. Berull.</b> 417
<b>Baldus.</b> 376	<b>Bayard.</b> 401	<b>Bryand Gueslin.</b> 379
<b>Baldwin, Earl.</b> 317	<b>Bazajeth, Emperor.</b> 377	<b>Brytenian Synod.</b> 379
<b>Baldwin, Sicilian Admi-</b> ral, 359	<b>Beaumont.</b> 491	<b>Bessarion, Cardinal.</b> 394
<b>Baldwin, Earl of Flanders,</b> 359	<b>S. Beatrice.</b> 185	<b>Besur.</b> 597
<b>Baldwin, Earl of Constan-</b> tinople, 369	<b>Beatrice.</b> 361	<b>Bethlem-Gaber.</b> 417
<b>Baldwin.</b> 411	<b>Becky.</b> 444	<b>Theod. Beza.</b> 415
	<b>V. Beda.</b> 305	<b>Bias.</b> 19, 72
	<b>Belgick War.</b> 407, 409.	<b>Bibrack.</b> 427
	413	<b>Bingium.</b> 447
	N n n n	B y f

# THE TABLE.

Bys called Cartnaga. 49	agree, 588. they again	Cabillonian Council. 290
Bismarck. 550	renew the warr, 603	Cadmus. 25
Bivinius K. of the Averoi.	Braune Jelfe. 428, 431	S. Catilia, Martyr. 190
150	Breda besieged. 419, 437	Cacilian. 207
Blandina. 185	Breme. 445	Cacilius, a Poet. 146
BLAKE burns Prince Ru-	Bremeroverd. 466	Caelstius condemned with
pert's ships, 501. takes	Breemes subdued. 466	Pelagius. 240
the Scilly Islands, 514	Brennus. 107, 108	L. Calius Antipater. 161
Encounters with the	Breydenburg. 464	Caninenfes. 57
Dutch, 520, 521. Cha-	Bridget. 376	Capio. 144, 150
ses the French Fleet.	Brifack fight. 440	Casarius of Arles. 268,
521	Brifol. 461	278
Blake burns the Ships at	Brittain conquered by the	Cesar's war with Pompey,
Tunis, 530. at Santa	Romans. 158, 172	159, 161
Cruze, 543. his death.	Brittains. 323	Cajetan, Cardinal. 404
610	Brittannicus, son of Clau-	Caius Julius. 176
Blanche. 373, 391	dus. 172, 173	Calabria and Apulia sub-
Bleda. 236	Lord Brook slain. 460	mit to the Saracens,
Blechington-house, 471	Bructerians. 236	316
Blesau Assembly. 429	Bruges. 453	Calender Corrected. 410
Bochus K. of Mauritania.	Brunechild. 287, 288,	C. Caligula Caesar. 171,
151	293, 294	172
Bodilo. 299	Brunne. 456, 465	Calistus the second, Pope.
Boetius. 267, 269	Bruno. 353	354
Bogoris King of Bulgaria.	Bruni Island. 513	Calistus the third, Pope.
326	Bray. 456	392
Bolgus. 107	Brutus. 82	Calinorius. 517
Bolognion Marquess be-	Brutus kills Caesar. 159,	Calimachus. 77, 132
headed. 439	162, 163	Callinicus. 120, 121.
Bonaventure. 368	Bucellinus. 276	Callipolis. 381
Boniface, Earl. 235	Bucheyme. 456, 466	Calphurnius. 201
Boniface, Marquess of	Bucquoins. 417	Calphurnius Piso. 145
Montferrat. 369	Bachwald. 466	Calvin. 405
Boniface, Pope. 307	Bading. 428	Calvinists. 406
Boniface Sib. Pope. 368	Bulgarians, 369. restore	Carabales. 107
372, 374	Justinian, 302. waste	Carayfes. 66, 74, 75
Boninghouse, 427	Trance. 259.	Carameca. 517, 524
Borbons in France. 411	Burlington. 460	Carallus. 96
Bornholm Island. 466	Burford fight. 468	E. Campian. 409
Borromeo Cardinal. 411	Buffyris. 22	Campodane. 427
Bostina taken by the Turk.	Bythmia. 307	Candelores. 385
590	Byzantium taken, 77, 187.	Candy, 506. See Crete.
Berbericus slain. 222	Rebuilt, 205. Besieged	Canea fight. 493
Borfinafius, a Hungarian,	by the Saracens, 306	Carmentian slaughter. 115
413		Canutus. 351
Bragadino. 408		Capelianus. 198
Bratford fight. 1460		Capell, 489. Beheaded,
Brandenburg's Conflict with		491
the Swedes, 566. they		400

C Abades King of Per-

C.

# THE TABLE.

Capitolinus, an Historian.	Catherine Senenjis. 390	Brandenburg, 551
201	Catiline's Conspiracy. 156	Wars with the King of
Caprea. 58, 170	Cato. 159	Denmark, 569, 588
Caracalla. 188	Catullus. 161	with the Duke of Bran-
Caracannores. 385	Catulus. 151	denburg, 603. invade
Caracianus. 198, 199	Cecrops. 11	Denmark again. 600
Carilejus. 268	Celestine the third, Pope.	Charls of Valois. 373
Carew beheaded. 477	356, 368	374
Carinus. 198	Celsus. 189	Charls the Fair, King of
Carlile. 473, 485, 488	Celtica. 396	France. 377
Carloman. 310, 311	Censors first Created. 88	Charls the Fourth, Empe-
Carlomanus, son of Lewis.	Cephus. 26.	rour. 375
319, 324	Cerannus. 120	Charls the Fifth, Emperour
Carlotta. 395	Cerdo. 187	402, 403, 405. Abdi-
Carneades. 160	Cerethrius. 107	cateth himself. 409
Carneades the Academick.	Cerinthus. 179	Charls, son of Lewis Bal-
146	Cestius Gallus. 177	bus. 320
Carpocrates. 187	Cethew. 156	Charls, sonne of Lewis
Carvassians. 385	Chabrias. 91, 93	Transmarine. 338
Carthage built, 49. demo-	Chagan, King of the Ara-	339
lised, 144. taken by	bians. 302	Charls Dyrrachinus. 376
Belisarius, 271. and	Chagan King of the Ava-	Charls of Bloyes. 378
by the Saracens, 301	rians. 308	Charls Bourbon. 402, 403.
Carthaginian Synods. 196,	Chalcedon built. 70	Cardinal. 410, 411
240	Chalcedonian Councils,	Charls the Fifth, King of
Carthaginians, 114. van-	253, 278	France. 378
quished by Gelo. 84	Challenor. 462	Charls the Sixth, King of
M. A. Carus Emperour,	Chamarians. 236	France. 376
198	Chamice. 448	Charls the Seventh, King
Casale. 452	Charettes. 129	of France. 393, 395
Casal besieged. 420	Charibertus. 277	Charls the Eighth, King of
Casanes. 385	Charilaus. 50	of France. 398, 399
Casilian slaughter. 276	Charls Martel. 304, 307	Charls the Ninth, King of
Casimir, King of Poland.	Charls the Great. 286,	France. 406
553	311, 312	Charls the First, King of
Castander. 103	Charls the Bald. 314, 317,	Great Britain and Ire-
Cassian. 244	318, 319, 323	land, prepares a great
Cassiodore. 269, 286	Charls Crasim. 319	Fleet, 436. is molested
Cassius. 159, 162, 163	Charls the Simple. 225,	by Civil wars, 458. sold
Castellatum fight. 462	334, 335	by the Scots, 485.
Castile. 372	Charls the Lame. 367, 374	Conveyed to the Isle of
Castillon. 436, 437	Charls Gustave. 482, 483,	Wight, 487. Behead-
Captainander Battel. 422	484	ed. 491.
Cathrine. 434	Charls Gustave, King of	Charls Prince of Wales;
Catalonia. 452	Sweden, 539. wars	471. Proclaimed under
Catalonian Battels. 249,	with the King of Po-	the Title of Charls the
462	land, 551, 552. with	Second, in Scotland
Catana. 69	the Muscovite, 549.	and Ireland, 491, takes
Catephrygians. 187	Treats with the Duke of	the

Ca

# THE TABLE.

the Scottish Covenant,	Cbologus.	237	S. Clara.	368
478. Brings an Army	Cbolorius.	299	Cleander.	184
into England, 713. is	Cboulilies.	262	Clelia.	82
defeated at Worcester,	Cbafroes.	261	Clebulus Lindius.	73
513, escapes into France,	CHRIST, 170. his pi-		Cleombrotus.	92, 122
514	sure on Coyn.	334	Cleomenes King of Lace-	
Charls, Brother of Lewis	Christian Affairs under the		demonians, 123. his	
the 9th, King of Sici-	Cæfars.	174, 179	war with the Macedo-	
ly.	Christian Legion.	184	nians, 124. his death,	
Charls, King of Swethland,	S. Chryfotom.	230		125
413, 416	Chramnus burnt.	277	Cletus.	179
Charls, Duke of Orleans,	Christians: yplanted in Brit-		C. Clement.	184
395, 396	tain.	290	Clement the 4th, Pope.	367
Charls Emanuel, Duke of	Christina Queen of Swe-		Clement the 5th, 374, 375	
Savoy,	den, 474. refigns her		Clement the 6th.	375
Charls, Duke of the Allo-	Crown to Charls Gu-		Clement the 7th.	376,
brogians.	itave,	538		403
Charls Gonzali, Duke of	Christopher, son of Leca-		Clement the 8th.	388
Bironia.	penus.	333	Clipericus.	277
Charls of Medua.	Chryfaphius.	253	Cliffbenes.	71
Charls of Austria.	Chryfargirum abolifhed,		Clitus.	102
Charls, Earl of Anjou,		259	Clodia Rampier.	376
367	Chryfippus.	131	Clodius.	160
Charls, Earl of Carolefia,	Chryfocoris.	327	Clodwaldus.	275
398	Chus, King of Meab.	13	Clodovius.	268
Chereas.	Chylo, a Lacedemonian,		Clodovius, King.	237
Chereas Cafius,		73	Clomirus.	274
Chelonis.	Cibalian fight.	204	Clotharius.	275, 289,
Chemnice Battel.	Cicero, 156, 161, 162.			293.
Cherficrates.	Banifht, 159. Cald		Cluniacian Order begins,	
Cherfonites flain.	home.	160		339
Childebertus.	Cilices.	25	Clafian Battel.	378
277, 288, 293, 294.	Cilix.	62	Cocalus.	30
Childerick.	Cimbrians,	150	J. Cocbleus.	404
Childerick the third.	120000 of them flain,		Cnapheus.	254, 255
Chilperick.	151		Coburge.	431
286, 10 299	Cimon, 79. his stratagem		Codrus.	36
Chilperick of Burgundy,	againft the Perfians,		Colcheffer.	489
262		85	Colchians,	273
Chimera.	Circafles.	383	Colibria.	462
Chimelinsky,	Giftercian Order begins,		Colaffus.	421
516, 517,		353	Coloffus of Rhodes.	129
China invaded by the	Clandianus, a Poet.	231	Columban.	290, 295
Cham.	Claudius Cafar.	172	C. Columbus.	394
Chios taken.	Claudius of Vefontium,		Comani.	152
Chiofe.		268	Comene.	493
Chlodoveus.	Claudius, Emperour.	193,	Comeflor.	361
298, 299	194		Comet over Barcelona's	
Chlodoveus, King of the	Claudius, a Goth.	288	head.	435
Franks.			A. Com.	
261, 10 264				
Chlodoveus the third.				
304				

# THE TABLE.

A. Commodus Antoninus,	184	by the Latines, 359. Re-	Craterus.	100
Concinus the Florentine	369.	covered by the Greeks,	Crates.	110
flain.	415	369. taken by the Turks,	Cratinius.	89, 99
Connodorus, King of the	381, 383.	Burnt, 476	Cræce.	43
Almans.	210	Constantius Chlorus.	Cræfus.	66, 67
Conon, alias Leo.	306	199,	Creon.	27
Conon, Athenian.	91	203	Crescentius.	33
Conrad, King of Germa-	330, 342, 355, 356	Constantius.	Cresphonies.	34
Conrad the third, Duke of	355	Confals created.	Crie taken by the Sara-	
Swedes.	355	82	cens.	310
Conrade, son of Frederick	364, 366, 367	Copenhagen befieged by	Cretenfis.	27
the 2d.	364, 366, 367	the Swedes.	Crispin.	58
Conrade, son of Saphodine,	371	606	Crispus put to death.	20
Conradine.	367, 368	Copronymus.	Critheus.	28
Constance Oecumenical	143.	308, 311	Critolans.	143
Council.	387	Corbulo.	Critolans the Peripatetic	
Constantia,	368	173		14
Conftans.	209	Corcya Ifland.	Crixus.	15
Constantine the Great, son	203.	69	Croatians moleft the Vene-	
of Helena,	203. fees an	69	tians,	410
Apparition,	204. is	Corcya built.	St. Croix Cathedra in	
baptized,	205. his fons	70	Orleance;	322
Edifagree.	209, 210	Corcyaans.	Cromwell, Lieutenant	
Constantine the third.	297	Corfe Cufle.	General under the Lord	
Constantine the 4th.	308	484	Fairfax, 471. goes into	
Constantine the 5th.	309,	Corinth built, 19. burnt,	Scotland, 490. goes into	
	310.	143. taken by the Turks,	Ireland; 497. Invades	
Constantine the 8th.	381	383	Scotland, 499. Dif-	
Constantine Ducas.	333	Corinthian Kingdom.	olves the great Parlia-	
Constantine the Tyrant.	233	38	ment, 522. is elefled	
Constantine, son of Hera-		Coriolanus.	Lord Protector of Great	
clius,	296	82	Britain, &c. 522. Con-	
Constantine Porphyrius,		Cornelius, Pope.	cludes a Peace with the	
	332	195	Dutch, 525. with the	
Constantine, son of Leca-		Cornet Cufle.	Swede, 526. with the	
penus.	333	514	Portugal, 527, 543.	
Constantine, son of Leo. ib.		Cornuburg.	and with the French,	
Constantine, son of Roma-		465	530, 544	
nus.	334, 335	Corvinus.	Cromwell folemnly in-	
Constantine Monomach,		391	vefted with Kingly pow-	
	346, 381	Cofma.	er, 542. His death, 604	
Constantine, son of Ducas,		201	Croffa,	427
	347	Cefroes King of Perfia	Croffe of Chrift found by	
Constantinople built, 205.		wafes Syria, 273. is	Helena.	208
befieged by the Sara-		overcome by Juftinus,	Crufumini.	57
cens, 297. Shaken by an		82. kills his Father,	S. Cruze Affion.	545
Earthquake, 307. taken		283. is retaliated by his	Cteffias, a Phyfician.	99
		own fon,	J. Cuiack,	411
		292	Cullen burnt.	324
		Cofacks, 445. flay 280000		
		in Poland.		
		495		
		Councils Oecumenical.		
		4th,		
		252. 5th, 278, 279.		
		6th, 298. 7th, 309.		
		Council of Agathus, 268.		
		at Auvergues, 268. at		
		Antioch, 212. at Con-		
		ftantinople, 308. at Ra-		
		venna, 320. at Pavla,		
		356. at Lyons, 365.		
		Cracovia taken by the King		
		of Sweden.		
		554		
		Cracovia yielded to the K.		
		of Poland.		
		568		
		Crator.		
		110		
		Cræfus.		
		156, 158		
		O o o o		



# THE TABLE.

Cuma.	37	Darim, son of Hyftaspis.	68, 76, 77	Deucalion King of Theffaly.	18, 19
M. Curtius.	97	Darim Codomanans.	100	Devizes.	461
Q. Curtius.	180	Darim conquered by Alexander.	101	Dexippus an Historian.	197
Curtrajenian Fight.	410	Darkneffe of 17 dayes.	310	Diadumennu.	189
S. Cuthbert.	305	Datis.	77	Dicau.	143
Cylo.	70	David.	16, 17	Diana's Temple burnt.	100, 193
Cyprian.	196	David Comnenus.	383	Diafia.	70
Cyprus.	361, 384, 393, 408.	Deborah.	14	Didymus of Alexandria.	219
Cypfelus.	71, 79	Decemviri.	87	Didymus a Grammarian.	261
Cyreneftes.	460	Decentius.	210	Dido.	49
Cyrene built.	70	Decum.	192	Dinckelfing-fight.	482
Cyroll.	241	Deioces, King of Media.	51	Dio Prufew.	186
Cyroll of Alexandria.	244	Deion.	19	Dioclefian Emperour.	198
Cyrus King of Perfia.	63, 66, 67, 68	Delgibians.	236	Dioclefian Emperour.	198
Cyrus the younger flain.	91	Dellone.	426	Dioclefian Emperour.	198
Cyrum a heretick.	298	Delph blown up.	541	Diodorum Siculus.	161
		Delphos Temple fpoyled.	94	Diogenes the Stoick.	146
		Demaratus.	79	Diogenes a Phœnician.	280
D.		Demaratus Corinthus.	58	Diomedes.	19
Dacia, a Roman Province.	181	Demetrius Poliorcetes.	107	Dionysius.	92
Dagobert.	294, 298, 299, 304.	Demetrius Phalerius.	110	Dionysius a Tyrant and Poet.	99
Dalmatius, Brother of Constantine.	209	Demetrius Pharias, Prince of the Illyrians.	130	Dionysius Halicarnaffus.	165
Damafcius.	280	Demetrius Soter.	139	Dionysius Corinthus.	186
Damafcus.	284	Demetrius Nicanor.	140,	Dionysius Bifhop.	195
Damafus.	219, 220	taken by the Parthians.	141, 142	Dionysius of Alexandria.	196, 197
Danaus.	10, 22	Demetrius Eucerns.	149, 152.	Dionysius of Attilain.	212
Dandulus, Duke of Venice.	359	Demetrius the Cynick.	180	Dionysius Abbot.	280
Danes, 336. fuppreff.	313, 464, 466.	Demetrius Chalcondylas.	394	Dionysius of Paris.	294
their King ufurps the Palatinate.	452.	Demetrius, Prince in Aufcor.	414	Dionysius Martyr.	299
detains the Englifh fhips.	521	Democritus.	88	Dionysius Rikel.	390
Daniel, called Chilperick.	304	Demophylus.	218	Difcorus of Alexandria.	252, 253
Dannum.	441	Demofthenes, a General in Sicilia for the Athenians.	90	Dispargum.	237
Dantzick.	557, 564, 565, 569	Demofthenes the Orator.	110	Dixmude.	493
Dardanelles Fight.	539, 592	S. Denys.	195	Dodo.	304
Dardann.	31	Defiderius the laft King of the Lombards in Italy.	286, 311.	Dolabella.	162
Darim the Mede.	67			Dole befieged.	434
				S. Dominick of whom the Dominicans.	365
				Dominick.	494

# THE TABLE.

Domitian Caesar	178	Ebergardus.	320	Ely.	432
Domitilla.	179	Ebo of Rhemes.	314	Elpaus.	304
Domitius Chalderinus.	395	Ebion.	179	Elxas.	187
Domitius Labeo.	187	Ebredunum.	287	Emoden.	43
Donatifts Schifm.	201,	Ebroine.	304	Emengard.	338
206, 207, 208.		Ebrune.	299, 300	Emma.	336, 351, 352
Donatus a Grammarian.	214	Ecbaftana built.	51, 56	Emmanuel Chryfolorus.	390
		Ecebolius.	215	Emmanuel King of Lufitania.	402
Doricks.	18	Ecelinus.	364	Empedocles.	88
Dr. Doriffaus.	499	I. Eckius.	404	Empire divided by the fons of Lewis.	317
Dorotheus.	266	Edinburgh Caffle taken.	500	England fubjected to the Pope.	362, fakes off it
Dorftene.	448	Edessa.	355, 357.	joke.	403
Draco a Langiver.	70	Edg-hill Fight.	459	Engliffh wars with the French.	361, 373, 395
Drake.	410	Edith.	352	Engliffh Covenant.	467
Drocas fight.	407	Edward fons of Ethelred.	344	Engliffh Engagemens.	498, 499
Drogheda.	497	Edward the fecond, King of England.	374	Engliffh Plantations reftored.	498
Drogo.	344	Edward third, King of England.	377	Engliffh Sea-war with the Dutch.	520, its conclufion.
Drufenbeym.	434	Edward Prince of Wales.	378	Engliffh Expedition into Flanders againft the Spaniard.	544
Drufius.	164	Edward fixth, King of England.	406	Enbufe.	422
Dubabel.	427	Edward Duke of Bre-gance.	449	Enckenford.	572
Ducas Emperour.	347	Eglon King of Moab.	13	Enkfart.	466
Duclian.	344	Egmunda.	407	Q. Ennius.	132, 140
Daderftade.	441	Ehud.	13, 22.	Ennodius of Ticena.	261
Duglas.	483	Einebeck.	448	Epaminondas a Theban.	9
Dulius wins the firft Sea-victory for the Romans.	114	Eiflebe.	464	Epaonian Synod.	268
Dumol of Cenomania.	291	Elam King of Israel.	42	Epapus.	22
Dunbar Fight.	500	Elbing furrendred to the Swede.	557	Eparchius of Ingoliffma.	291
Danenburg taken by the Moscovites.	582	Elans.	53	Ephcfian Council.	241, de pofe Neftorius.
Dankelpale.	467	Elenfius.	218	Ephcfian Synod.	268
Dunkirk taken by the Spaniards.	521, retaken by the Engliffh and French.	Elentherius Pope.	185, 190	Ephorus the Cumean.	99
		Elifha a Prophet.	43	Ephree.	64
Durand fight.	457	Eli.	15	Epicurus.	110
Durocotonus of Rhemes.	338	Eligius of Novionum.	300	Epidamus built.	70
		Elijah a Prophet.	43	Epimenides.	73
I. Dury.	575	Elipandas of Toledo.	312	S. Epiphanes.	219
Dutch-war with the Engliffh.	520				
		E.			
		Edgina.	335		
		Earthquakes.	129, 181, 261, 307, & 543.		
		Elizabeth Queen of England.	406, 408, 409, 413.		

# THE TABLE.

S. Epiphazus.	219	Eulmerodach.	63	Eutyches.	252, 279
Epiphanius of Salamina,	230	Eulamius.	280	Excise, alias the Dutch Devil.	462
Epiphanius of Ticinum,	256	Eulenburg.	456	Exclusiana.	463
Epiphanius of Constanti-		Eulogium of Alexandria,	291	Exeter.	461
nople.	278	Eumenes.	103, 120	Exuperius of Tholouse,	225
S. Equitius.	269	Eumenes of Asia.	142	Ezekiel.	48
Evangelus.	272	Eunius Mammolus.	287		
D. Erasmus.	404	Eunomian heresie.	213		
Erastus.	132	Eunomius, Prince of the Anomæans created Bi-		F.	
Erberstein.	455, 457	shop.	218	F. Abianus, Pope.	195
Erchenwald.	298, 299	Eunomius.	223	Fabii, 600 of them slain.	87
Erford.	434, 448	Eunus kindled the Servile		Fabius Maximus.	115
Erzibius.	19	Warr.	145	Facundius of Hermania.	280
Ernest of Austria.	413	Eupanius, an Historian.	231	Felix, Bishop of Rome.	254
Ernest of Mansfield.	417	Euphues.	60	Felix the 5th, Pope, layes	
Eros accuseth Pelagius.	240	Euphemius.	265, 266, 316	down the triple Crown.	389
Erytheus.	10	Euphemius of Chalcedon.	258	Lord Fairfax.	461, 486,
Esau.	8	Euphrates the Stoick.	186	487, 497. layes down	
Esperon.	504	Eupolis, a Poet.	99	his Commission.	499
Earl of Essex, General.	458, 459, 486	Euripides.	89	Falists subjugated by Ca-	
Esseus.	375	Euripheus.	34	millus.	96
Ethelred, King of En-		Eurys.	24	Falkman.	480
gland.	317, 351	Eurybatus.	66	Famagusta.	393
Etruscians, 82. subdued.	109	Eusebia.	210	Farenstbeck.	426
Evagrius.	218	Eusebius of Samos.	219	Favonius.	186
Evagrius, Pope.	185	Eusebius of Verfelles.	214, 219	Faustina mothered.	205
Eubæ taken.	383	Eusebius of Nicomedia.	207, 211	Faustinus.	185
Eucherius.	228	Eusebius of Cæsarea.	214	Faustus Reginensis.	255
Eudo, Prince of Valcoins.	305. Invites the Sara-	Eusebius of Dorilaum.	252	Favus.	32
cens.	307	Eusebius.	210, 211	Dr. Featley.	477
Endocia.	245, 347	Emstadius of Bononia.	351	Feckier.	444
Eudoxia.	230	Emstadius of Theffaloni-		Felicitissimus, a Schismatick.	
Eudoxia, Wife of Theodo-		ca.	358	Felix.	207
sius.	232	Emstadius of Antioch.	208, 214, 215.	Ferdinand, King of Na-	
Eudoxias.	218	Emstadius.	245	ples.	392, 393
Eudoxus Caidius.	98	Emstadius.	316	Ferdinand, King of Spain.	394, 399, 401.
Eugenius.	356	Emstadius, Patriarch.	332	Ferdinand the First, Em-	
Eugenius, a Tyrant.	222	Eurychius.	187, 274, 290.	peror.	406
Eugenius the third, Pope.	355			Ferdinand the second, Em-	
Eugenius the 4th, Pope,				peror.	417, 438
condemned in a Coun-				Ferdinand, Arch-Duke of	
cil.	389			Austria.	416
				Ferdinand	

# THE TABLE.

Ferdinand, Duke of Albania,	407	Francis, son of Henry the second, King of France,	406	Frummentum Tyrus preached to the Indians.	208
Fevian.	436	Francis Alenconim.	409	Fulgentius.	267
Fernaken.	345	Francis of Mantua.	416	Fulcade, an Abbot.	311
J. Fernellius.	411	Franco.	352	Fulvius Flaccus.	145, 150
Ferrand Diacorus.	267	Frankford Assembly.	312	Funce.	434
Ferraria.	375	Frankford taken and retaken.	426, 427	Fuscianus.	195
Fidenates, 57. they revolted.	87.	Franks in large their Kingdom.	262. are subdued, 235. establish a Kingdom in Gaul.	Furne taken by the Spaniard.	494
Fight at Naupactium.	408	Firmilianus of Cæsarea.	196	Furnes Battel.	374
Firmilianus of Cæsarea.	196	Firmus, a Tyrant.	217	Furfew.	300
Flaccilla.	223	Flacilla.	232		
Flavian.	252, 253	Flavinus.	224		
Flavinus of Rhemes.	268	Flavinus Blondus.	390, 395		
Flavinus.	379	Flemings.	379		
Florence Council.	390	Florians.	194		
Florus of Lions.	321	Florus of Lions.	321		
Foggio Battel.	505	Foianus.	300		
Foninell.	305	Forscherp besieged.	427.		
Forscherp besieged.	427.	famous for a Complicated murder in the year 1640.	454, 455.		
Formosus, Pope.	326	Foscol.	495		
S. Francis, of whom the Franciscans.	365	Francis Petrarcha.	376		
Francis Gonzaga.	389	Francis Sfortia.	391		
Francis Philadelphus.	395	Francis Paulinus.	398		
Francis Duke of Brittain.	398	Francis, Duke of the Vallesians.	401. and King of France, his War with Charles the 5th.		
Francis, Duke of the Vallesians.	401. and King of France, his War with Charles the 5th.	404	Francis of Guise.	406, 407	
Francis of Guise.	406, 407	Frederick the third, Emperor.	390, 391, 394		
		Frederick, Archbishop of Rhemes, Crowned King of Denmark.	495		
		Frederick.	356		
		Frederick, son of Alexius.	357		
		Frederick Aenobardus.	357		
		Frederick, son of Philetheus.	252		
		Frederick, Cardinal.	346		
		Frederick of Arragon.	368		
		Frederick of Austria.	375		
		Frederick, Duke of Saxony.	405		
		Frederick, Elektor Palatine.	417		
		French War with the Romans.	150. are slaughtered, 312. Proclaim War against Spain.	436, 444	
		Freyberg.	456		
		Fridberg.	428		
		Friuland.	426, 427		
		Frisians, 236. the Gospel is preached to them.	305		
		Frontarabe.	444		
		Fronto.	186		

PPPP

Gelasius

## THE TABLE.

<i>Gelajius of Cafarea in Pa-</i> <i>leltine.</i> 225	<i>Glaucus.</i> 19	<i>Graveling taken by the</i> <i>French, 473. by the</i> <i>Spaniard, 521. and</i> <i>again by the French,</i> 546
<i>Gelajius, Pope.</i> 265	<i>Gloucester;</i> 461	<i>Gregorius Cappadox.</i> 212
<i>Gelajius the second, Pope.</i> 354	<i>Glycerius, Emperour, made</i> <i>a Bifhop.</i> 257	<i>Gregorius Thaumaturgus,</i> 591, 197
<i>Geleen.</i> 434	<i>Gnidus.</i> 91	<i>Gregorius of Neocæfaria,</i> 196
<i>Geliber.</i> 271	<i>Gnofticks.</i> 187	<i>Gregory Nyffene.</i> 218
<i>Gelo.</i> 84, 116	<i>Godfride, King of Danes,</i> 313	<i>Gregory of Tuna.</i> 263,
<i>Geminus.</i> 161	<i>Godfridus.</i> 324	291.
<i>Gennadius of Conftantino-</i> <i>ple.</i> 257	<i>Gidegijilus.</i> 262	<i>Gregory Nazianzen.</i> 219,
<i>Genoan War.</i> 415	<i>Godefcalus of Orbes.</i> 320,	223, 225.
<i>S. Genofefa.</i> 269	321	<i>Gregory, Pope.</i> 291, 294
<i>Genofefa.</i> 244	<i>Godfrey of Bulloigne,</i> 351	<i>Gregory the fecond, Pope.</i> 306
<i>Gentius, King of Illyria,</i> 134	<i>Godfrey Crook-back.</i> 351	<i>Gregory the 5th, Pope.</i> 239,
<i>Genua.</i> 393	<i>Godomar.</i> 275	340
<i>Genua Fight.</i> 444	<i>Godomarus.</i> 262	<i>Gregory the 7th, Pope.</i> 343,
<i>George Moniac.</i> 345,	<i>Godwin.</i> 352	344
346	<i>Goliab.</i> 16	<i>Gregory the 9th, Pope.</i> 364
<i>George Trapezunt.</i> 394	<i>Gonatas.</i> 123	<i>Gregory the 10th, Pope,</i> 366, 367
<i>Gepides.</i> 284	<i>Gonfakæ.</i> 401	<i>Gregory 11th, Pope.</i> 376
<i>Gerbert.</i> 340	<i>Gonzages.</i> 375	<i>Gregory 12th, Pope.</i> 387
<i>German of Paris.</i> 1291	<i>Gordians.</i> 191	<i>Gregary the 13th, Pope,</i> 410
<i>German of Cyzicum.</i> 303	<i>Gorgias.</i> 85	<i>Gregory the 15th, Pope,</i> 419
<i>Germanus of Capua.</i> 266	<i>Goring.</i> 489	<i>Greeks and Latines are</i> <i>reconciled.</i> 390
<i>German Patriarch.</i> 308	<i>Gorlice.</i> 448	<i>Green.</i> 502
<i>German War in Bohemia,</i> 417	<i>Gofline, Bifhop.</i> 324	<i>Greffling.</i> 437
<i>German Troubles.</i> 422	<i>Gothe.</i> 431	<i>Greenbrunge Fight.</i> 483
<i>Germans treat of Peace</i> <i>with the Swede.</i> 450,	<i>Goibelo.</i> 342	<i>Grimme.</i> 495
495.	<i>Goths defeated,</i> 228.	<i>Grimald.</i> 298, 299
<i>Germanicus.</i> 164, 171.	<i>Inuade France,</i> 233.	<i>Gripbo.</i> 310
<i>Poifoned.</i> 170	<i>Their Originall and</i> <i>Kingdoms in Gaule,</i> <i>Spain, and Italy,</i> 238.	<i>Grifons.</i> 418
<i>Germanus of Antiffiodore,</i> 244	<i>Their Wars.</i> 269	<i>Groves beheaded.</i> 529
<i>Gerona taken.</i> 373	<i>Græcian Sedition.</i> 150	<i>Gryphina.</i> 147
<i>Gerfon.</i> 390	<i>Græcian Kingdom.</i> 10,	<i>Guadicarius.</i> 235
<i>Gerfdorf.</i> 465	18. <i>reftored to Liberty,</i> 122. <i>Its Empire be-</i> <i>gins,</i> 101. <i>is divided</i> <i>into 12 parts,</i> 103. <i>four</i> <i>Dominions.</i> 105	<i>Gubaza.</i> 273
<i>Gefendorf taken.</i> 591	<i>Granada Kingdom.</i> 372	<i>Guebrian.</i> 448, 451.
<i>Gibellines.</i> 364, 367.	<i>Granicus Battle.</i> 100	455.
374.	<i>Græffe.</i> 431	<i>Guelphans.</i> 364
<i>Gideon.</i> 14	<i>Gratiam.</i> 217, 221	<i>Guibert, Bifhop of Raven-</i> <i>na.</i> 343, 344
<i>Gildare of Rathomagi,</i> 280	<i>Gratians, a Bifhop,</i> 195	<i>Guibert</i>
<i>Gifbert.</i> 331	<i>Gratianus, a Fryer.</i> 356	
<i>Gifflbert.</i> 341		
<i>Gifla.</i> 324		

## THE TABLE.

<i>Guibert of Nongentum,</i>	353	<i>Harald, son of Caoutus,</i>	351, 352	<i>Henry the third, King of</i>	
<i>Guicciardine.</i>	404	<i>Harduel.</i>	386	<i>France.</i>	408
<i>Guido, Earl of Flanders,</i>	374	<i>Harida.</i>	339	<i>Henry the 4th, King of</i>	
<i>Guido Lusitanus.</i>	393	<i>Harmodius.</i>	78	<i>France.</i>	413, 414
<i>Guinet.</i>	386	<i>Harpagus.</i>	66, 67	<i>Henry the Fowler, King</i>	
<i>Gunderick.</i>	262	<i>Haf-rub-ll.</i>	116, 117	<i>of Germany.</i>	330
<i>Gundobald.</i>	262	<i>Haisting.</i>	322, 323		336
<i>Gundomarus.</i>		<i>Hatfield.</i>	433, 434,	<i>Henry the Bavarian.</i>	340
<i>Guns invented.</i>	236		444.	<i>Henry Auceps.</i>	349
<i>Guntharus, Tyrant in Af-</i>		<i>Haveberge.</i>	434	<i>Henry, son of Frederick</i>	
<i>frica.</i>	271	<i>Hazael, King of Syria,</i>		<i>the second,</i>	364
<i>Gunitramus.</i>	277, 287,		44	<i>rebelletb against his fa-</i>	
	288.	<i>Heberne.</i>	322	<i>ther.</i>	36
<i>Guntzburg.</i>	481	<i>Hebrews go into Egypt,</i>	9.	<i>Henry Landgrave of Hesse</i>	
<i>Gustave, Lord of Olma-</i>		<i>their departure thence,</i>		<i>sia, Emperor.</i>	36
<i>brugense.</i>	427		11, 12	<i>Henry of Guile,</i>	410
<i>Gustavus, King of Swe-</i>		<i>Hegesippus.</i>	186	<i>Henry Bourbon, King of</i>	
<i>den.</i>	416	<i>Helena.</i>	393	<i>Navarr.</i>	407, 410
<i>Guyanians.</i>	322	<i>Heliodorus scourged.</i>	135	<i>Henry Stuart, Duke of Le-</i>	
<i>Gylippus.</i>	90	<i>Heliogabalus.</i>	189	<i>nox.</i>	408
		<i>Hellen.</i>	18	<i>Henry Bourbon, King of</i>	
		<i>Helvidius Priscus.</i>	176	<i>Valcoire.</i>	409, 410
		<i>H-enoticus.</i>	255	<i>Henry of Conde.</i>	409
		<i>Henry of England.</i>	361,		410, 415, 418
			380	<i>Henry, Cardinal.</i>	409
		<i>Henry the 5th, King of</i>		<i>Henry, Brother of Bald-</i>	
		<i>England.</i>	395, 396,	<i>win, Emp.</i>	369
			397.	<i>Henry, Duke of Medua,</i>	
		<i>Henry the 6th, King of</i>			419
		<i>England.</i>	396, 397	<i>Heracleonas, Emperor.</i>	
		<i>Henry the 7th, King of</i>			296, 297
		<i>England.</i>	397	<i>Heracles.</i>	191
		<i>Henry the 8th, King of</i>		<i>Heraclides.</i>	10, 34, 35
		<i>England.</i>	404, 404	<i>Heraclianus.</i>	233
		<i>Henry the second, Empe-</i>		<i>Heraclitus.</i>	81
		<i>rouer.</i>	343	<i>Heraclius.</i>	291, 292,
		<i>Henry the third, Emperor,</i>			293.
		<i>contends with the Pope,</i>		<i>Herbipolis.</i>	423, 428,
			343		431
		<i>Henry the 4th.</i>	356, 357	<i>Hercules.</i>	10, 27, 33
		<i>Henry the 5th.</i>	354	<i>Hereford.</i>	472
		<i>Henry the 6th.</i>	363	<i>Heribert, Earl of Verone,</i>	
		<i>Henry the 7th of Lutze-</i>			334
		<i>burg, Emperor.</i>	374	<i>Heribert, Earl of the Vi-</i>	
		<i>Henry the First, King of</i>		<i>romandunans.</i>	336
		<i>France.</i>	350	<i>Heribes of Colonia,</i>	
		<i>Henry, the son of Francis,</i>			342
		<i>King of France.</i>	405,		
			406.		

# THE TABLE.

<i>Hervicus of Rhemes.</i> 335	<i>Hipparchus, an Astrono-</i>	<i>Hugo Gratianopolitan,</i>
<i>Hermanaricus.</i> 239	<i>mer.</i> 146	360, 353
<i>Hermane of Lorain.</i> 344	<i>Hippias.</i> 78, 89	<i>Hugo Abbas.</i> 323
<i>Hermenetrius.</i> 275	<i>Hippocrites.</i> 35	<i>Hugo in Italy.</i> 329
<i>Hermeniscus.</i> 277	<i>Hippocrates.</i> 89	<i>Hugo, son of Rutbert,</i>
<i>Hermenigild.</i> 289	<i>Hippolita, an Amazon,</i>	334
<i>Hermenfride.</i> 304	<i>Hippolita.</i> 27	<i>Hugo Capetz.</i> 338, 349,
<i>Herner of Rhemigium.</i>	<i>Hippolita.</i> 391	350
350	<i>Hippolitus.</i> 196	<i>Hugo of Matches.</i> 373
<i>Hermetrude.</i> 317	<i>Hippodam, a Poet.</i> 72	<i>Hugozots.</i> 406
<i>Hermias.</i> 126, 280	<i>Hircanus, High-Priest,</i>	<i>Huil.</i> 457, 461
<i>Hermiges.</i> 284, 285	147, 149	<i>Hulst.</i> 437, 453, 463
<i>Hermogenes.</i> 186	<i>Hirtius.</i> 162	<i>Humbert of Sylvia.</i> 346
<i>Hermolaus Barbarus.</i> 395	<i>Hispaniola attempted by</i>	<i>Humbert, Prince of Vicen-</i>
<i>Herod.</i> 165	<i>the English.</i> 527, 528	<i>na.</i> 378
<i>his story.</i> 166	<i>Histias Atilejus.</i> 76	<i>Humbert, Cardinal.</i> 352
<i>Herod Antipater.</i> 174	<i>Holophernes.</i> 47	<i>Hunfride.</i> 344
<i>Herodes the Athenian,</i>	<i>Earl of Holland beheaded,</i>	<i>Hungarians, 357. waste</i>
186	491	<i>Germany, 350. become</i>
<i>Herodias.</i> 174	<i>Hollanders.</i> 428, 429	<i>Christians, 340. their</i>
<i>Hesdin.</i> 444	<i>Holispffel.</i> 480	<i>Wars.</i> 382
<i>Hesiod.</i> 37	<i>Holy Wars.</i> 355, 358,	<i>Hunericus.</i> 256
<i>Heson.</i> 28	360	<i>J. Huniades.</i> 382, 383,
<i>Dr. Hewit beheaded.</i> 546	<i>Holy War in Toulouse.</i> 370	391, 392.
<i>Heydelberg.</i> 428, 431	<i>Homarus Maboncel.</i> 385	<i>Hunimund.</i> 239
<i>Hezekiah King of Judah,</i>	<i>Homburg Battel.</i> 448	<i>Huns invade Pannonia,</i>
46	<i>Nomer.</i> 37	235. <i>Scythia, 236.</i>
<i>Hide beheaded.</i> 501	<i>Hornida, Pope.</i> 260, 266	<i>subdue the Oarogoths,</i>
<i>Hiemfal.</i> 151	<i>Honorius.</i> 228, 232,	239. <i>Ozer-run Arme-</i>
<i>Hierome of Prague.</i> 387	334	<i>nia and Cappadocia,</i>
<i>Hilarium of Poirier.</i> 214	<i>Honorius, Pope.</i> 354, 364	260. <i>Pillage Thracia,</i>
219, 220	<i>Honorius the third, Pope.</i>	236, 273.
<i>Hilary, Bishop of Arelata,</i>	369	<i>J. Hufs condemned,</i> 387,
243	<i>Horatius.</i> 82	388
<i>Hilary succeeds Leo.</i> 256	<i>Horn.</i> 425, 433, 456,	<i>Hyarba.</i> 49
<i>Hildebert.</i> 299	464	<i>Hybrens an Orator.</i> 165
<i>Hilderick.</i> 299	<i>Horna.</i> 407	<i>Hymencus.</i> 179
<i>Hilderick, last King of the</i>	<i>Hortensius Cocles.</i> 82	<i>Hyginus, a Grammarian,</i>
<i>Merowingians.</i> 311	<i>Hortensius.</i> 157, 161	165
<i>Hyperick.</i> 352	<i>Hoseah, King of Israel,</i> 46	<i>Hypatia.</i> 245
<i>Hiero, King of Syracuse,</i>	<i>Hofea, Propbet.</i> 45	
85	<i>Hofius.</i> 207	
<i>Himera Fight.</i> 84	<i>Hofomoneans.</i> 167	
<i>Hincmarus.</i> 262	<i>Hospitius of Nicza.</i> 291	
<i>Hincmarus of Rhemes,</i>	<i>Hotham, 457. beheaded,</i>	
321	470	
<i>Hiram, King of Tyre,</i>	<i>Hoy Fight.</i> 436	
49	<i>Hubert.</i> 307	
<i>Hipparchus.</i> 78	<i>Hugo St. Victor.</i> 360	

## L

<i>Labin King of Canaan,</i>
14
<i>Jacob.</i> 8
<i>Jacupp.</i> 385
<i>Jamaica taken by the En-</i>
<i>glish.</i>

# THE TABLE.

<i>glish.</i> 528, 529, 592,	<i>Jerusalem destroyed by the</i>	<i>Insulher Gallus.</i> 141
597, 608.	<i>Romans, 177. repai-</i>	19
<i>Jamblicus.</i> 80	<i>red, 182. taken by the</i>	<i>Joachim Abbot.</i> 360
<i>S. James, Bishop of Nisi-</i>	<i>Perlians, 291. by the</i>	<i>Joakim, King of Judah.</i>
<i>bis, 214. his pretalent</i>	<i>Saracena.</i> 361	14
<i>prayers.</i> 211	<i>Jesuits Order begins, 376,</i>	<i>Joan Durcia.</i> 339
<i>James, King of Great</i>	404. <i>are recalled into</i>	<i>Joanna, Popeffe.</i> 340
<i>Britain.</i> 413	<i>France, 414. into Ve-</i>	<i>Joanna, wife of Robert</i>
<i>James of Nicossia.</i> 393	<i>nioc.</i> 597	<i>King of Naples.</i> 375
<i>James the younger.</i> 175,	<i>Jewish War.</i> 177	37
<i>kill'd.</i> 174	<i>Jews persecuted by Ar-rio-</i>	<i>Joanna, Queen.</i> 381
<i>James of Sicily.</i> 368	<i>chus, 138. tributa, 10</i>	<i>Joash, King of Judah.</i>
<i>James of Bourbon.</i> 388	<i>Rome, 157. Banish.</i>	44, 45
<i>Janiculum.</i> 58	<i>Rome, 172. rebell, and</i>	<i>Joash King of Israel.</i> 4
<i>C. Jansenius.</i> 411, 547,	<i>are crush'd, 181, 182.</i>	5
558	<i>are banish'd Jerusalem,</i>	<i>Joasta.</i> 2
<i>Janizaries raise tumult in</i>	182. <i>help the Turks,</i>	<i>Jo lev.</i> 15
<i>Constantinople.</i> 570	493. <i>are slaughtered in</i>	<i>Jodocus.</i> 300
<i>Janus.</i> 32	<i>Poland.</i> 495.	<i>Juel, Prophet.</i> 4
<i>Jareb, High-Priest.</i> 138	<i>Jezabel.</i> 42, 43, 44	<i>Johanan, son of Josiah.</i>
<i>Jarnatum fight.</i> 407	<i>Jezdegirdus, King of the</i>	4
<i>Jafon.</i> 18, 27, 28, 135	<i>Perlians.</i> 291	<i>S. John.</i> 179
<i>Jafus.</i> 10	<i>Ignatius martyred.</i> 185	<i>John.</i> 39
<i>Ibas of Edessenum.</i> 278,	<i>S. Ignatius, Patriarch,</i>	<i>John of Austria,</i>
279	326	40
<i>Iboreas.</i> 284	<i>Ignatius.</i> 404, 411,	<i>John, an Anchorite.</i> 22
<i>Ibrahim, Emperour.</i> 453	414.	<i>John of Antioch.</i> 274
<i>Icarus.</i> 19	<i>Ildebalas.</i> 272	<i>John of Alexandria,</i> 294
<i>Idameans subdued by Hir-</i>	<i>Ildephonfus of Tolero,</i>	<i>John, Brother of Albert.</i>
<i>canus.</i> 149	301	37
<i>Jechoniah, King of Judah,</i>	<i>Image-worship forbidden,</i>	<i>John, Duke of Aquitaine.</i>
<i>the same with Joakim,</i>	312	379
48	<i>Images.</i> 326	<i>John Bellaius.</i> 40
<i>Jehoahaz, King of Israel,</i>	<i>Imilian.</i> 92	<i>John Brennus.</i> 36
45	<i>Immanuel, Emperour,</i>	<i>John, King of Bulgaria.</i>
<i>Jehoahaz King of Judah,</i>	382	369
<i>the same with Joakim.</i>	<i>Immanuel Sophm.</i> 385	<i>John Brennus of Jerusa-</i>
48	<i>Inachus,</i> 10	<i>lem.</i> 371
<i>Jehojadah, High-Priest</i>	<i>Inarus.</i> 86	<i>John Boscasius.</i> 374
44	<i>Inchigarnay Castle surren-</i>	<i>John Castmiz, King of Po-</i>
<i>Jehoshaphat, King of Ju-</i>	<i>dred.</i> 512	<i>land.</i> 499
<i>dah.</i> 42	<i>Indisitions, 205. their Ori-</i>	<i>John Capistranus.</i> 392
<i>Jeha.</i> 44	<i>ginal and number.</i> 206	<i>John Cornutus.</i> 357
<i>Jephtha.</i> 14	<i>Ingelgerius.</i> 322	<i>S. John of Constantinople.</i>
<i>Jeremiah.</i> 289	<i>Inguent.</i> 270	229
<i>Jeroboam, King of Is-</i>	<i>Innocent the third.</i> 364	<i>John Cappadox.</i>
<i>rael.</i> 40	<i>Innocent the 14th.</i> 476,	<i>John Columbinus.</i> 376
<i>S. Jerome.</i> 243	609	<i>John Cantacuzenus.</i> 38
<i>Jersey.</i> 514	<i>Intaphernes.</i> 73	<i>John Ducar.</i> 370

# THE TABLE.

John, King of France,	378	Josephus Comes.	214	Isocrates.	99
John Guttenberg.	395	Josephus, the Historian,	177, 180	Issum Battel.	100
John Galeatus, Duke of	376	Joshua.	12	Ismael Sophus.	386
Millain.	376	Joibam, King of Judah,	46	Isimian Games.	132
John Heret.	303	Josian.	216	Isibacius.	224
John de Monte-regio,	395	Jovinian heresie.	226	Ista.	300
John Maria.	389	Jovinian, an Heretick,	243	Juda invaded by Senna-	46
John Montfort,	378,	Jovimas.	223	charib.	46
379		Jovita.	185	Judas Macchabæus bis	139
John, sonne of Maouel.	381	P. Jovius.	404	death.	151
John of Nevers.	382	Iphicrates.	91	Julian, Brother of Gallus,	210
John the 12th, Pope.	331	Iphim.	35, 92	Julian, Emperour, per-	215
John the 22d, Pope.	375	Ipra.	503	secutes Athanasius,	215
John the 23d, Pope.	387	Ireland subjeſſed to the	362	Julian, a Pelagian.	241
John Palæologus.	381	Pope,	362	Julian of Halicarnassus,	266, 267
John, sonne of Renate,	393	Irene, daughter of Isaac,	369	Juliaſt besieged.	416
John, poſſeſſes Ravenna,	234	Irenæus.	190	D. Julianus.	187
John the third, King of	413	Ireton, Deputy of Ireland,	525	Julianus, Cardinal.	391
Sweetland.	413	Irish Rebellion.	451, 457,	Juliomagus of Angier,	322
S. John Silentarius.	268	463.		Julius, Pope.	211
John Scotus.	321	Irmingard.	314	Julius 2d, Pope.	401
John of Turncremata,	390	Isaac Angelus.	258,	Julius Africanus.	191
John of Theſſalonica,	266	Isaac Comnenus.	347,	Julius ſucceeds Glycerius,	251
John Tzimisceſ.	334	359.		S. Ivo.	368
John, Withour Land,	362	Isabella of Arragon.	373,	Ivo of Carnotta.	353
John Xiphiline.	347, 348	377.		Ivon of Chartres.	360
Johnſbrode Fight.	441	Isabella of Belgium.	438	Jupiter Capitolinus.	59
B. Johnſon.	472	Isabella, Keyner's Wife,	389	Juracan Battel.	412
S. Johnſtown.	513	Isaiah.	45	Juſtin Martyr.	185
Jolanta.	364	Isaura Battel.	150	Juſtine ſucceeds Athana-	260, 261
Jonathan.	16	Isaurick War.	259	ſius.	266
Jonathas.	139, 140,	Isawliſk.	433	Juſtine, Emperour.	266
141.		Isazebab, Emperour of the	382	Juſtinian, Emperour.	266,
Ionicks.	18	Turks.	382	269, 270, 271, 273.	
Ionick Transplantation,	36	Isbootheth, ſon of Saul,	16	Juſtinian the ſecond.	301,
Joram, King of Judah,	44	Ismael.	7	302	
Joram, King of Iſrael.	43	Isidore of Gaza.	280	Juſtinus.	186
Joſeph the Patriarch.	9	Isidore of Hiſpalennum,	295	Juſtinus the ſecond,	281.
Joſeph of Theſſalonica,	315	Isidore, a Spaniard,	414	a noble aſſ of his,	281.
				bis War with Colares,	282
				Juſtin Tiberiadensis,	180

Juvenius,

# THE TABLE.

Juvenius, a Poet.	209	Landerick.	299	Leo the third, Emperour.	309
Juvenal, a Poet.	180	Landreſſe.	493	Leo the Philoſopher, Empe-	332
Juvenal of Jeruſalem.	253	Landſute.	482	rou,	254.
K.		Lanfrank.	352	Leo, Pope.	200, 243,
Katherine.	376	Langwildeſtroyed.	464	254.	
Kaufber.	427	Laſthileis.	262	Leo the Great.	256
Earl of Kenmore.	526	Laſtmon the Mitylene.	103	Leo the third, Pope.	313
Kerper.	445	Laodice, 121. kills her	401,	Leo the 4th, Pope.	321
Kilſieth Battel.	473	Huſband Antiochus,	125	Leo the 10th, Pope.	401,
Kiphuſe.	425, 433	Laomedon.	28	402	
Knights of Malta.	402	Lared.	445	Leo Iſaurus,	303, 306
Konſtepoliki.	594	Lateran Council.	318,	Leo of Armenia,	316,
Koningmark.	441, 455,	364, 402		Leo Phocas.	333
464, 466.				Leodegar.	00
Kunegunde.	343	Latines.	58	Leonidas.	83, 122
		Latus, King of Latium.	33	Leonides.	190
				Leonatus.	103
		L.		Leontius, a Philoſopher,	232
		Laborsarcho.	63	Leontius.	301, 302
		Labymith.	62	Leorychides.	79
		Lacedemonian Kingdome,	470	Leovigild.	289
			37	Leody.	437
		Lacedemonians defeated by	102	Leonard Torſthenson,	525
		Antipater.	209	Leonard Aretimus.	390
		Laſanum.	131	Leopold, King of Hunga-	196
		Larydes, a Cyrenian.	131	ry and Bohemia, ſelect-	604
		Ladiſlaus, King of Apulia,	387, 388,	ed Emperour of Ger-	
				many,	
		Ladiſlaus, King of Hun-	391	Leopold, Duke of Auſtria,	371
		gary.	436	Lepantine Fight.	408
		Ladre.	116	Lepidus.	154, 162,
		Larine in Sicily repels	111	163.	
		Philip.	411	Leporinus, a Neſtorian,	242
		Lagida.	26	Lerida,	474, 494
		J. Laintz.	90	D. Leſly.	443, 473
		Laiw.	300	Leſna burnt.	596
		Lamachus.	328	Leubovera.	290
		Lambert of Trajeſtum.	411	Leodra Battel.	92
		Lambert.	431, 434,	Leudeſius.	300
		Lambinus.	455, 483,	Levellers.	496, 497
		Lamboy taken.	103	Leutharis.	
		Lamian War.	201	Lewis the ſecond,	318
		Lampridius, an Hiſtorian,	296, 297		

Levis

# THE TABLE.

Lewis Balbu.	319	W. Lindane.	411	Lucilla.	183, 184,
Lewis Calum.	319	Earl of Lindsey, General	459	Lucimus, 204. his death,	207.
Lewis, the son of Lewis,	319	Linfew.	22	Lucius, Bishop of Alexan-	205
Lewis, King of France,	355, 356	Limus.	175, 179	dria.	219
Lewis, son of Charls.	335	Lions burnt.	188	Lucius, Pope.	195
	336	Lippia.	455	Lucretia.	59
Lewis the 7th,	360	besieged.	423	Lucretium.	161
Lewis the Sib, King of	372	Lippian Assembly.	423	Lucullus.	152, 155, 158
France.	372	Lippian Fight.	423	Lucumo.	58
Lewis the 9th.	372	J. Lippius.	415	Luderflame.	433
Lewis the 11th.	393	Lyfe.	489	Ludorick, son of Lotha-	337
	397.	Lithuanians revolt from	563	rick Transmarine,	336, 338
Lewis the 13th.	415, 417,	the Swede.	170	Ludorick Sfortim.	400
418, 420, 476.	377	Livia, Mother of Tibe-	132	of Conde.	406
Lewis Huttin, King of	377	rius.	170	Ludovicus Piaz, 313. his	314
France.	377	Livius Drusum.	151	sons rebell.	427
Lewis of Bavaria, Empe-	376	Livium, a Poet.	117	Luna four times taken,	425
rou, 376. anathema-	375	Livium Salinator.	117	Lunenburgick.	425
ized.	375	Lockier shot to death,	497	Lutprand.	334
Lewis of Brabant.	373	Lollim.	213	Lupinus.	217
Lewis of Orleans.	376	P. Lombard.	361	Lupus Trecentis.	244
	379, 380	Lombards,	284	Lupus of Senonenum,	295
Lewis of Anjou.	376,	enters Italy.	284, 285,	Lusitania.	372
S. Lewis of Toulouse.	368	London-bridge.	430	Luther.	402, 403, 405
Lewis King of Hungary,	375, 384	Lougim.	197	Lutherans.	405
Lewis King of Germany,	318, 330	Louginus, General.	259	Lutprand.	307
Lewis the Grosse.	360	Lorain, 317. a Kingdom,	331	Lutzen Fight.	423
Lewis of Tarentum.	375	Lotharim.	318	Lycargus.	19
Lewis of Flanders.	379	Lotharim the Saxon.	355	Lycophron, son of Lyfides,	71
Lewis, Duke of Ardes,	387	Lotharius, son of Rodul-	328, 329	his death.	50
Libanius.	215	phus.	337	Lyfander.	90
Liberatus of Carthage.	208	Lotharim, son of Lewis,	559	Lyfpat, an Orator.	139
Liberium, Pope.	212	Lublin Fight.	572	Lyfides.	71
Licca.	493	Luc.	173, 180	Lyfismachus.	103
Lidian War,	61, 66,	Lucas.	489	Lyfismachus Priest.	137
Ligurians.	356	Lucia.	201	Lyfippus.	129
J. Lilburn.	442, 498,	Lucian, Martyr.	201,		
	523.	Lucianus.	186		
Lima destroyed by an	543	Lucifer Calaritanus.	211,		
Earthquake.	428	215, 219, 220			
Limborg.		Luciferian Schism.	215		
		Lucilius, a Poet.	173,		
			180		

Macedonian

# THE TABLE.

M.	Mantua.	375	Martius Turbo.	18
Macedonian King-	Mantuan War.	416, 422		18
dome founded by	Manuel.	381	S. Martin.	264, 32
Ceranus.	Manuel Comnenus.	358	Martin of Gallicia.	29
Macedonian Wars.	P. Manute.	411	Martina, Empreffe.	29
	Marabius Barberine.	419	Martin Azpimelt.	41
	Marathonian Battel.	77	Martin Trump.	44
	S. Marcella.	231	Martin, Pope.	29
Macedonian heretic.	Marcellus.	116, 117,	Martin the 5th, Pope.	388
Macedonim.		172.		38
Macquine.	Marcellians.	213	Mary, Sister of Theodo-	23
Macrinum.	Marcellian.	201	rus,	339
Macro.	Marcellinus, Pope.	201	Mary, Empreffe;	34
Macrobius.	Marcello.	571	Mary Oegniacensis.	36
Mecenas.	Marcellinus, an Earl,	280	Mary, Queen of England	40
Magdeburg,	Marcus.	116		413
burnt,	Marcus Ponticus.	187	Mary Stuart, Queen of	407, 408
Magi.	Marcian, Emperour.	245	Scotland.	413
Magnentim.	Marcellus Ficinus.	395	Masanissa, 143. dyeib	144
Magu.	Marcman Wars.	183	leaving 44 sons.	227
Mahomet, Prince of the	Marcodure,	456	Mascezeles.	407
Arabians.	Marcus,	201	Masacre at Paris,	67
Mahomet the second,	Marcus Valerim Lavinus,	131	Masaget.	67
Mahomet the third.	Marcum Cornelius.	394	Masilia built,	67
Maidstone Fight.	Mardouius.	77, 84	Mathematicians banished	172
Maioi, Abbot.	Mardian Fight.	204	Rome.	354
Majorian, Emperour,	Marduities.	301	Matbild.	377
his death,	Mardike,	474, 492,	Matbildis.	377
Majorinm.		545	Mattathias,	138
Malchm.	Margaret.	361, 397	Matthias, Emperour.	416,
Malchm, King of Arabia,	Margaret, Gouverneffe of	417	Matthew.	175
	Belgium.	407	Matthew Palmerius.	395
Malta Knights.	C. Marius.	151, 154	Maurice.	201, 409, 413,
Malta besieged.	Mariamnes.	167	416	
Mammalucks.	Marius Syrus.	260	Prince Maurice,	461,
Mamilius.	Mavis the Persian.	278		486
Man Island.	Marian, a Chronologer,	343	Mavortius.	169
Manasseh, King of Judah,		559	Mauricius, Emperour him-	225
	Mancim.	145	self, his wife and Chil-	93
	Mandanes.	66	dren slain by Phocas,	219
	Manichean heretic.	200	Maurice of Anjou.	219
	Manichees.	315, 327	Mausoleu.	269
	Manlian Law.	155	Mauricia, Queen of Sarm-	
	Manfredus.	367	cens.	
	Manlius.	96, 150	J. Maxentius.	
	Mansfield.	419, 432,		
		434, 440.		
	Mantinean Confli.	92		

R r r r

Maxentim

## THE TABLE.

Maxentius, son of Hercules.	203	Menander, a Poet.	110	Michael Palaeologus Com-	
Maxentius, a Monk.	267	Menander.	179	nus.	370
Maximian Herculanus.	198	Menelaus, a Mathematician.	186	Micia's Monastery.	268
Maximian succeeds deposed Nero.	242	Menna.	278	Micipsa.	151
Maximilian the First, Emperor.	394, 399, 400, 402	Mennas of Constantinople.	279	Mileas.	77
Maximilian the second, Emperor.	407	Mensurinus, Bishop of Carthage.	207	Miltiades.	77, 79, 190
Maximilla.	187, 190	Merce.	457	Milo.	81
Maximinus of Orleans.	268	Meonia.	31	Minervius.	205
Maximinus.	191	Meppene.	444	Minians.	36
Maximinus Papienus.	191	Meroëus.	237, 288	Mines.	29
Maximus, a Tyrant.	221	Mesala.	181	Minotaur in Cret.	29
Maximus, a Cynick.	223	Mesalina, wife of Claudius.	172	Minutus Felix.	191
Maximus.	268	Messenii and Helotes ruined by an Earthquake.	85	Mirabell.	495
Maximus, a Philosopher.	215	Messenian War.	59	Miramolinus, King of Tunis.	372
Maximus Tyrus.	186	Metellus.	144, 145, 151	Mithridates War with Rome.	153, 155
Maximian.	421, 434, 463, 504	Metellus Numidicus.	151	Mitylene taken.	383
Medard of Suzélonis.	280	Metellus Creticus.	157	Mixael.	62
Medea.	28	Metensian Synod.	318	Mneſibæus.	194
Mediolanum.	400	Methodius of Olympus.	201	Moccenigo.	571, 582
Megabazus.	76	Licia.	316	Moccenigo.	505
Megacles.	71	Methodius, Patriarch.	326, 237	Modefimus.	139
Megalopolis demolished.	124	Meto, an Astronomer.	89	Mogol.	600, 610
Megapenthe.	23	Metrodorus.	161	Moguntia taken.	423
Megarensis.	70	Mets.	264, 275, 444	Moguntinum.	190
Melampus.	18	Mettennich.	431	Fr. Molino.	492
Melania.	220	Metus Huffetus.	58	Molugel.	341
Melchisedech.	7	Micha.	13	Moors in Italy.	313
Meldrum.	459	Michael Temple.	305	Moncontorium Fight.	407
Melenger.	103	Michael Cypalates.	315	Monica.	225
Meletian Schism in Egypt.	206, 207, 215	Michael Balbus.	316	Monothelites.	293, 297, 298, 302
Meletius of Antioch.	218	Michael, Emperor.	326	Monse.	463
Meletius, Bishop of Lycopolis.	207	Michael.	345	Montanus.	187
Melissa.	71	Michael Caphbar.	346	Montanus Priscilla.	190
Melissus.	68, 89	Michael Cervar.	346	J. Montfort.	378, 379
Melito of Sardis.	186	Michael Stratiotes.	347	Monterevence.	422
		Michael, son of Lucas.	347	Montroffe.	473, 499
		Michael Parapinace.	348	T. Moor.	403
		Michael Palaeologian.	367	Moors, 313, driven out of Spain.	416
				Mose Fight.	463
				Moses.	11
				Moses the Hermit.	219
				Motte.	474
				Mount Albane besieged.	419
				Mucianus.	176
				Muhann.	

## THE TABLE.

Muhammedes.	358	into Italy.	285	Nicholaus de Tudejor.	390
Muhammedes, son of Amurath.	382	Naseby Fight.	471	Nicholas Perotus.	393
Muhammedes, Emperor of the Turks.	382	Navarre.	372	Nicholaus, Pope.	318
Muleafus.	403	Naumberge.	434	Nicholaus the 4th, Pope.	360
Muleius.	409	Nazantius.	218	Nicholaus the 5th, Pope.	375, 389, 392
L. Mummius.	143	Nazarius, an Orator.	209	Nicias.	90
Munster agreement.	484	Naxos built.	69	Nicodemites.	573
Muphti barged.	429	Neapolis.	403	Nicolaitans.	179
M. A. Muretus Lemouir.	411	Nebuchadnezzar.	47, 64	Nicolaus Damascenus.	164
Musa, Emperor of the Turks.	383	Nechro, King of Egypt.	224	Nicomedia.	307
Musalmes, Prince of the Saracens.	303	Nectarius.	124, 125, 132	Nicopolitan Battel.	377
Muscovites invade Poland.	535, 536	Nemian Sports.	201	Nidek.	479
Musick.	342	Nemesianus.	432	Nimrod.	6
Musonius.	177	Neoburge.	165	Ninias.	6
Musonius Tyrrhenus.	180	C. Nepos.	209	Ninus.	6
Mustapha, Emperor.	384, 385	Nepotianus.	19	Nineveh built.	6
Mutius Scavola.	82	Neptune.	186	Niohe.	20
Myconi.	10, 19, 29, destroyed.	Neratus Priscus.	63	Nisibis besieged.	211
Mycale Fight.	84	Neriglossar.	117	Nisus.	74
Myseus.	255	Cl. Nero.	172, 173	Noah.	4
Myson of Chenas.	73	Nero Caesar, his Cruelties.	180	Negoretus.	374
N.		Nerva.	193	Nola.	169
Nabab, King of Ammon.	16	Nestorius.	239, 241, 278.	Novatian Schism.	191
Nabis, Tyrant of Lacedemon.	133	Newark.	485	Novatus.	191
Nabonassar.	62	Newberry first Battel.	461.	Nordling Fight.	428
Nabonidas.	63, 67	second Battel.	469	Norimberg Assembly.	440
Nabopolassar.	47, 62	New-Castle.	485	Normans, 335, 340, 341, 344. they molest France 321, to 325.	
Navius.	132	New-Rome.	205	Noviograde.	492
Namsee.	426	Nicea, 307. the Seat of an Emperor, burnt.	369, 193	Numa, King of Rome.	58
Naples.	399, 400, 565	Nicanor.	139	Numantia destroyed.	145
Narcissus.	172	Nicene Council.	207	Numantine war.	144
Narney.	180	Nicephorus the Blind.	310, 315	Numerianus.	198
Narset, King of Persia.	199	Nicephorus Photus.	331, 333	Numitor.	57
Narsetes Spado overcomes the Goth Totilas.	272.	Nicephorus Botomiatas.	348		
invites the Lombards		Nicephorus Briennius.	346		
		Nicetas Studiensis.	346		
		Nicholaus, Bishop of Mira.	208		



# THE TABLE.

Odilo of Avenous.	353	Orleanse Maid.	396
Oda.	320, 323, 324	Orleans destroyed.	323
Odo of Campania.	342	Orosius.	244
Odo of Collien.	388	Orphites.	193
Odoacre, King of the		A. Ortelius.	415
Turcilingians.	251,	Origina.	68
252, 361		Ofman, son of Achmet,	
Odoacerius.	238, 239	Emperour.	384
Odoares.	75	Osmund Drengore.	341
Oedipus.	26, 30	Offensa.	187
Oelisa.	456	Oitend besieged.	413
Oenacthes.	128	Oitrogoths.	238
Oenomaus.	186	Ojermannne.	506
Ogyges, King of Attica,		S. Ofwald.	300
	10	Oibo Caesar,	176
Olibrius succeeds Anth-		Oibo, Emperour.	362
mius,	251	Oibo, son of Henry,	330
Olnuce.	465	Subdues the Sclavoni-	
Olympius.	95	ans.	331
Olympick Games.	29, 52	Oibo the Great.	331
Onefimus, Martyr.	185	Oibo the second.	332
Omas, High-Priest.	131,	Oibo the third, 339. King	
135, 137, 178		of Germany,	340
Onomarchus.	94	Oibo of Bamberg.	354
Onuphrius Panuine.	411	Oibo, Duke of Saxony,	
Opbeltes.	19	Emperour.	363, 364
P. Opratianus Porphyrius,		Oiboman Family,	381,
	209	&c.	
Optatus of Milevium,		Oiboniel,	13
	220	Oirona taken,	383
Orates.	75	Oito.	320
Orange.	428	Oitones, son of Charls	
Orange Synod.	278		339
Prince of Orange exclu-		Oitid.	165
ded from the Govern-		Oitienstern, Chancellor of	
ment of Holland.	539	Sweden.	425, 428,
Order of the Purple-gown			432.
Prelates.	389	Oxford.	460, 471,
Orestes.	10, 251		484, 485
Orgelitanus of Toledo,		Oxilus.	34, 35
	312		
Oribasius.	215		
Origen.	190, 191, 195,		
201. Jours Pela-			
gius, 240. is con-			
demned, 279. his fol-			
lowers.			
Origenes Aquilinus.	197		
Origonists, Condemned,	230		

**P**actus. 146  
 Pade Fight. 494  
 Paderborn. 478, 481  
 Paleopolitans. 109  
 Palladius. 244  
 Palladius, a Gallatian. 230

Pallantes.	172
Palatinate.	444
J. Pamell.	411
Pamphilus, Martyr.	201,
	206
Pampilona.	312
Pancus, a Painter.	53
Pandulph of Capua.	341
Panormitanus, Archbishop.	
	396
Panfus.	162
Pantalion Sa, Beheaded,	
	527
Papenheim.	423, 428
Papblago.	346
Paphnutius, Bishop of The-	
bes.	208
Papianilla.	256
Papias.	186
Papinianus.	188
Papyrus.	108
Paradise.	3
Pardons.	402
Paris.	264
Parisian Nuptials,	407
Parliaments in England,	
	449, 450, 471, 527,
	542. in Scotland, 443.
	in Ireland, 443.
Parma besieged.	365
Parmenianus.	220
Parmenides.	89
Parmenion.	102
Parthenians.	169
Parthenopaus.	26
Parthian Kingdom begins,	
	120
Parthians vanquish Craf-	
sus, 158. are Conquer-	
ed,	183
Paschal Controversie.	207
Paschal, Pope.	354
J. Passeraius.	411
Patera, Orator,	209
Patricii.	96
Patricius.	245
S. Patrick of Ireland.	268
Paula.	226, 231

Paul,

# THE TABLE.

Paul, 171. his death,	175,	Perpinian.	462	Peter Berirand.	37
Paul the Hermite.	197,	Persecution in Persia,	208,	Peter of Castile,	37
	213.	242. in Africa,	242	Peter Lunensis	387.
Paul, Bishop of Constanti-		Persecution the first,	175,	Peter of Aleafon.	39
nople,	212	the second,	184. 166	Peter Cauchonius.	39
Paul of Burges.	390	third, 184. the 6th,	195.	Petronius.	17
Paul the third, Pope.	405	the 7th, 195. the 9th,		Phæbiad.	9
Paul the 5th, Pope.	417,	197. the 10th, 200.		Phœnices.	2
	419.	Perfamenians.	357	Phalantus.	7
Paulinus of Trezire.	214	Persepolis.	102	phalaris.	7
Paulinus, Bishop of Nola.		Perseus.	10	Phaortes.	6
	243	Perseus, King of Macedon.		Pharamund.	23
Paul's Cathedral in Lon-			51	Pharnabazus.	9
don.	429	Perseus, a Stoick.	122	Pharaoh, King of	Ægypt
Paulus, a Lawyer.	189	Perseus, King of Mace-		Pharvalian battel.	15
Paulus an heretick.	298	don, subdued by the Ro-		Phelaitheus, King of	1
Pausanius, General for the		mans,	134	Rugians, overthrow	
Lacedæmonians.	84	Persia.	386		25
Pausanias, an Historian.		Persians, their Original,		Pherecides, a Philosopher	7
	186	24. their Empire re-		Pheres.	1
Pedo.	181	paired, 189. defeated,		Phidias.	5
Pelagius.	280, 239.	193. rise, 259. win		Phido.	6
Condemned in a Coun-		much from Heraclius,		Phidon.	5
cil.	240	292. warre with the		Philadelpho Monathon	61
Pelagius, a Captain in		Turks,	437	Philasterius of Breur.	22
Spain.	305	Persius, a Poet.	180	Philip of Macedon.	94, 99
Pelim.	19	Pertinax.	187	Philip, successor of Ant-	
Pelopides.	10, 24	Persia.	311	gonus, 129, 130, 131	
Pelopidas, a Theban,		Pescennius Niger.	187	Philip of Adeodatus.	36
	91	Peter.	175, 176	Philip, son of Henry the	
Peloponnesian Kingdome,		Peter of Alexandria.	206.	First,	35
	10, 37		207	Philip, Emperour of Ger-	
Peloponnesian War.	89	Peter Chrysologus.	244	many,	35
Pelops, son of Tantalus,		Peter Fula.	247	Philip, Emperour, Broth-	
	52	Peter Moggas.	253, 255	of Henry the 6th.	36
pelusian Fight.	136	Peter Cnaphus.	255	Philip of France.	364,
Pembroke Castle.	489	Peter K. of Bulgaria.	333		368, 37
Pen, General at Sea.	527,	Peter, King of Hungary,		Philip the Hard, King	
	529		343	France.	37
Penruddock beheaded,		Peter Damian.	343	Philip the Fair, King	
	529	Peter of Amalphitania,	346	France.	37
Pentapolis.	311		367	Philip the 8th, Excommu-	
Pentibilus.	10	Peter, King of Arragon,		nicated.	37
Perdiccas.	103		368	Philip, Duke of Burgundy,	
Peregrinus Proteus.	186	Peter Martyr.	368	377---386, 395.	
Perlander.	71	Peter, King of Arragon,		Phil.	
Pericles.	89	Excommunicated.	373		
J. Perron.	412	Peter of Corbey.	375		
Perperna, Consul.	149	Peter Cunerius.	378		

s f f f

# THE TABLE.

Philip the Long, King of France, 377, 388	Picts invade Britain, 236	Plutarch the Chironian, 180
Philip of Valois, 377	Picus, 32	Pneumatomachians, 213
Philip Artavellius, 379	J. Picus Mirandula, 395	Poland, 384. Concludes a peace of 24 years with the Swede, 435. Victorious over the Cossacks and Tartars, 516, 517, 518.
Philip the Hardy, Duke of Burgundy, 379	Picrius of Alexandria, 201	Polemo, 110
Philip the Bold, 380	Pilate, 174	Polemio Philosophus, 186
Philip Maria, 389	Pindar, a Poet, 89	Pollio, 187
Philip, Prince of Milain, Pinnenburg, 464	Pipin, 298, 304, 305, 307, 310, 311	Poltosko Fight, 567
Philip, King of Spain, 406, 409. Conquers his son Charls, 407	Pipin-son of Lewis, 314, 317	Polycrates, 75
Philip Nerium, 414	Pirates raise Troubles, 156	Polydectus, King, 49
Philip the third, of Spain, 419	Pirenian war, 113	Polycrates, Bishop, 191
Philippian Conventicle, 212	Pisates, 52	Polydectus, Patriarch, 334
Philippiburg, 426, 428	Pisistratus, 71	Polynices, 19
Philippine, 428, 457	C. Piso in Syria, 170	Pomara, 445
Philippus the Arabian, 192	Piso's Conspiracy, 175	Pomeranians, 354
Philippus the Arabians, 192	Piso adopted, 176	Pometheus, 11
Philip Bardanes, 302	Pisistratus Assembly, 406	Pompey, 152, 157, 158, 159
Philistus, 99	Pitana, 110	C. Pompey, 163
Philo the Jew, 174, 180	Pythagoras, 80, 81	Pompeopolis, 173
Philomelus, 94	Pittachus, 72	Pomponius, 189
Philopomenen, 131, 133	Pim, 185	Pontar, 441
Philostratus, 186	Pim the second, Pope, 392, 393, 394	Pontfract, 488, 494
Philotas, 102, 103	Pius the 4th, Pope, 405	Pontianus, Pope, 195
Philoxenus Cythereus, 99	Pius the 5th, Pope, 408	Popham, General at Sea, 525
Phocas, Emperor, 283, 291	Placidia, 229, 233, 234	M. Popilius, 145
Phoceans, 67	Plane Battel, 480	Poppa, 173
Phoenician War, 94	Platan Battel, 84	Porphyrians, 207
Phocides, 80	Platina, 98, 310	Porphyrim, 197, 201
Poesis, 19	Plato, 188	S. Porphyrius of Gaza, 231
Photinians, 213	Plantianus, 188	Porfenna, 82
Photinus, 185	Plautilla, 188	Portius Latro, 165
Phoronew, 10	Plautus, 132	Portologona, 492
Photius, Patriarch, 327	Plebeian Consuls, first appointed, 97	Portsmouth, 459
Phrixus, 25	Plestrude, 304, 307	Possessor in Africa, 269
Paul, King of Assyria, 54	Pliny the elder, 180	Posthumus, 82
Pbygellus, 179	Pliny the younger, 180, 185	Condemns his son, 88
Pbyalus, 94	C. Plinius, 185	S. Potamieno of Alexandria, 206
Piccolomine, 444, 456, 462,	Plotina, wife of Trajan, 181	Powder Invented, 376
	Plotinus Lycopolitanus, 191, 197	Prague, 484
		Predesti-

# THE TABLE.

Predestination heresie, 255	Ptolemy Evergetes, 125, 135, 148	Radagaisus, Prince of Goths, invades Italy, 228
Priesthood of the Jews bought and sold, 137	Ptolemy Philopater, 126, 127, 128	Radamanthus, 26
Premonstratensian Order begins, 360	Ptolemy Epiphanes, 131	Radegundis, 280, 290
Prexaspes, 75	Ptolemy Philometer, 135, 136, 137	Radzeicouski, 551, 586
Printes divide the Empire, 363	Ptolemy Auletes, 152	Radzivil, 550, 552
Principium of Sueffionas, 256	Ptolemy Barchum, 153	Raginfred, 304, 307
Printing Invented, 395	Ptolemy son of Lagus, 103, 106	Ragintrada, 298
Priscian, 180	Ptolemy Lathurus, 148, 152	Ragotzi, Prince of Transylvania, 466, 473, 605
Priscilla, 187	Ptolemy Alexander, 148	Raimundus Lullius, 368
Priscillianus, 224	Ptolemy Appio, 148	Rainold, 355
Probus, Emperour, 197, 198	Ptolemy the Astronomer, 186	Rainsborough, 438
Procopius Silen, subdued, 217	Pulcheria, 232	Rainulph, 341
Procopius, Martyr, 201, 206	Punick wars, 113, 115, 143	Ramberwill, 434
Procopius, an Historian, 280	Putske Conflic, 558	Raphian Battel, 127
Procles, 71	Pygmalion, King of Tyre, 49	Ratherave, 434
Proclus, a Mathematician, 260	Pyrrhus, 107, 113, 119, 120	Ratholod, 304
Proculus, 184	Pyrrhus, a heretic, 298	Ratibone, 426, 427
Proculus Siceensis, 187	Pythian Games, 94	Ratisbone Synods, 312, 446
Prodicus, 89, 187	Pythias, 79	Rava, 437
Prodigies, 431, 435, 437, 438, 453, 454, 476, 506, 523, 547, 609	Pythodemos, 100	Ravenna, 401
Proheresius, 215	Python, 103	Ravenburg Battel, 457
Promptus, an Impostor, 140		Rehoboam, King of Judah, 40, 41
Prosper of Aquitane, 244		Reiner, 388, 389
Prosper Adurnus, 393		Renacius of Trajectum, 300
Protogoras, 88		Renatus, Duke of the Andegavians, 397
S. Protasius's reliques, 224		Renatus, Duke of Lorain, 398
Proterius, 253		Rhabanus Maurus, 321
Protestant Fights in France, 407, 410		Rhadasis, 277
Prudentius, a Poet, 231		Rheticus the Augustodonian, 208
Prusa, 381		Rhee reduced, 419, 420
Prusias, King of Bithinia, 128, 130, 142		Rhemigius of Rhemes, 256, 262, 268
Psammetichus, 64, 75		Rhetians, 417
Psamis, 64		Rheinfeld, 426, 439, 452
Ptolemais Lagida, 111		Rheinberck, 428
		Rhodes shaken by an Earthquake, 129. taken, 384
		Richard

## THE TABLE.

Richard of E. glann, 361, 357, 364, 393, 380	Rodulph Agricola, 395	Rufianus, King of Persia, 386
Richard the second, of England, 396	Rodulph, Emperour, 416	Ruficus, a Martyr, 195
Richard the third, of En- gland, 397	Roger, 355	Rutberi, 323, 334
Richard of York, 397	Roger, first King of Sicily, 356, 358	Rutland, 312
Richard, Earl of March, 397	Rello, 325	
Richard, Prince of Corn- wall, King of the Ro- mans, 366	Roman Synois, 265	
Richard, son of Willielm, 336	Roman Senz demonstrated, 175. removed to Avig- nion, 374, 375	S. Sabbas the Fryer, 268
Richard, Sicilian Admi- ral, 359	Romans slaughtered in France, 150. pay tri- bute to the Persians, 196, 213	Sabbas, Abbot, 280
Richard, Protector of En- gland, 604	Romanus Diogenes, 347,	Sabellicus, 395
Ricelieu, 420, 421, 422,	348. Sacred war in Greece, 93	Sabines, 57, 58
Ricklaid, 319	Rome built, 57. indan- gered by the Gauls, 76.	Saccheans, 68
Ricimer, 251	154, 155, 156. fired by Nero, 173. Its Em- pire divided, 200. ta- ken by the Goths, 228.	Sacred war in Greece, 93
Riga besieged by the Mul- covites, 568, 583	by Charls Bourbon, 403	J. Sadolet, 404
Robert King, 335	Romuld, 340	Sagittarius of Ebredua, 290
Robert Wiscard, 344	Romulus and Remus, 57	Saguntum demolished, 115
Robert Guiscard, 348	Rondelet, 411	Saladine, 356
Robert, Emperour, 368	Ronsard, 411	Salamine besieged, 408
Robert Sorbona, 374	Rofamund, 284, 285	Salamis, 83, 393
Robert King of Naples, 374, 375	Rofate, 474	Salentines subdued by the Romans, 119
Robert, Earl of Artois, 377	Rofe, 481	Salernum besieged, 340
Robert, Duke of Bararia, Emperour, 386, 387	Rothweile, 457	Salernum taken by the Duke of Savoy, 410
Robert of Bullein, 410	Rotrude, 309	Salmanassar, King of Af- syria, 46
S. Roche, 368	Rouillon-Heath Fight, 473	Salmoners, 19
Rochel demolished, 372, besieged, 408, 420	Ruard Tapper, 411	Salome, 156
Rocroy Fight, 463	Rudrick, 305	Salonius of Vspinga, 290
Rodulph, King of Bur- gundy takes the King- dome of Italy, 328	Ruffinus, 220, 226, 227.	Salva, 445
Rodulph, Duke of Bur- gundy, 335, 341	Ruffinus of Aquileia, 230.	Salvius Julianus, 187
Rodulph, Duke of Suevia, 343	J. Ruffinus of Jerusalem, 240	Salvius of Albigenum, 291
Rodulph of Alfatia, Em- perour, 366	Rugye, 440	Salust, 161
	Prince Rupert, 468,	Samians, 86
	484, 486.	Samnian War, 97
	P. Rupilius, 145	P. Samofatene, 196
		Sampson, 14, 15
		Samuel, 15
		Samuel, King of Bulgaria, 345
		Sanderfleve Fight, 433
		Sandefideria, 404
		Sangiban,

## THE TABLE.

Sangiban, King of the Alanians, 248	Scaurus, 150	Sennacherib, King of Af- syria, 46, 64
Santabarenus, 327	Schaus, 49	Sergius, 298
Sapor, 192, 193	Schafgusch, 427	Sergius, Associate with Mahomer, 292
Sapores, 208, 211	Schism of 40 years contin- uance amongst the Popes, 376. another Schism,	Sergius of Constantino- ple, 293
Sappho, 72	387, 388	Sergius the third, Pope, 329
Saracens, 317, 318, 321, 334, 340, 341, 355, 360, 361, 372, 409. invade Spain, 305. 375000 of them slain, 307.	Schlange, 448	Sertorius, 154
Saragolla besieged, 276	Schanberg, 420, 422	Servile wars, 145, 156
Sardanapalus, King of Assyria, 50	Scilly Islands, 514	Q. Servilius, 153
Sardin taken by Cyrus, 73	Scipio Africanus, 117, 118, 133	Servius Tullius, 59
Sargon, King of Assyria, 56	Scipio Asiaticus, 133	Selack, King of Egypt, 41
Sarmates, 183	Scythians, 61, 67, 208,	Sethon, 64
Saturninus, 190	Scythians, 61, 67, 208,	Severian, 289
Saturninus, Bishop, 195	Scythians, 61, 67, 208,	Severianus Gabalitanus, 231
Saturninus Antiochenus, 187	Sebastian, King of Por- tugal, 409	Severinus of Noricum, 257
Saturnus, 32	Sebastianus, 233	Severinus, Abbot, 268
Savil, 439	Sedecias the Jew, 318	Severus under Hadrian, 182
Saul, 16	S. Sejanus, 170	J. Severus, 187, 188
Savoy Earldome, created Dukedom, 388	Selentinian war, 113	Severus, 203
Duke of Savoy persecutes the Protestants in the Valleys of Piedmont, 547, 548	Selebade, 426	Severus of Trevice, 244
Saura Columnensis, 374	Seleucus, 103	Severus, Emperour, 251
Saxons subdued, 311	Seleucus Callinicus, 125	Severus of Antioch, 266
Duke of Saxony's strange punishment on, &c., 541, 542	Seleucus Philopater, 135	L. Sextim, 97
Scaffaub, 433	Seleucus, son of Deme- trius Nicanor, 147	Sextius, 186
Ju. C. Scaliger, 411	Seleucus, son of Antiochus Gripha, burnt, 152	Shallum, King of Judah, 47
Jof. Scaliger, 415	Selimus, son of Bajazet the second, Emperour, 383	Sherburn Fight, 473
Scaligerians, 387	Selinus, 181	Sicardes, 286
Scaligers, 375	Semiramis, 213, 216	Sichild, 294
Scamander, 31	Semiramiens, 213, 216	Sicilian Vespers, 367,
Scanderbeg, King of Epi- rus, 383, 391, 392, 393.	Semprone Assembly, 432	370.
Scapula, 190	Seneca the Philosopher, 173, 180	Siculus, 201
Scarlet Cap, 365		Sicyonian Kingdom, 6
		Sidonius Apollinaris, 256
		Sigebert, 286, 298,
		299.
		Sigebert, King of the Mo- tenians, 289
		Sigericus, 234
		Sigmund Gundibalus, 274
		Sigismund

# THE TABLE.

Sigismund, Emperour.	387	Social wars.	93, 130,	his reliques.	244
Sigismund, King of Hun-	389	Socrates,	153.	S. Stephen Island.	428
gary.	377, 382	Sodom.	71	ry.	340
Sigismund, K. of Poland.	413, 416	Sofsons,	264	Stephen, son of Lccape-	333
Sigismund the st. d. King	438	Solomon, 17. builds the	39	Temple.	196.
of Poland.	438	Solomon, King of Guicn,	323	Stephen the 5th, Pope,	313
Sigismund Bathor, Prince	415	Solon.	67, 72	Stephen, Pope, violates the	313
of Transylvania.	415	Solofoites.	80	ashes of his Predecess-	320
Sigismundus.	235	Solyman.	402, 403	for.	320
C. Sagonim.	411	Solyman, Emperour.	382	Stilichon.	227, 228
At. Silanus.	150	Solyman, son of Scitinus,	384	Strabo, a Philosopher,	180
Silefia.	583	Sophist.	282	Strato Lampfacenus.	131
Silius,	172	Sophocles, a Poet.	89	Strigonium.	384
Silius, a Poet.	180	Sophus.	386	Strymon Battel.	359
Silkinges.	229	Softbenes.	107	Studius.	257
Silphius.	70	Sorbon Colledge, founded,	374	Suenice.	463
Silverius, Pope.	278	Spaniard's Neapolitan	351	Sueno, King of Denmark,	351
Silvester the second, Pope,	340	Fleet, ruined by Tem	437	Sueno, son of Canutus,	351
Simeon Crucified.	185	pests.	437	Suetonius.	180
Simeon Scilices.	245, 257	Spanish Armado in 1588,	410	Summer.	546
Simeon, King of Bulga-	333	ria.	333	Sundgore slaughter.	426
ria.	333	Simon, High-Priest,	141	Spartacus.	156
Simon Magus.	173, 179	Sparta built.	11	L. Suius.	411
Simon Montford.	372	Spartacus.	156	Swedes.	183, 229
Simplicius.	280	Spreuippum.	98	Swenice.	455
Simplicius of Vienna.	225	Spinola.	413, 419, 421	Sweithland usurped by	413
Sin Jercomb.	544	Spira surrendered.	431	Charls.	413
Sion Tower.	17	S. Spiridio, Bishop of Tri-	208, 211	Switzerland,	572
Sirves, a Persian.	292	mirunth.	208, 211	Syagrius.	262
Sisyphus.	18, 19	Spork.	447, 480	Sybaritans.	81
Sittaria.	456	Spottwood.	499	Sylvanus.	240
Sixtus.	185	Spurium Cassius.	83	Sylvius, Daughter of Nu-	57
Sixtus, Pope.	196	Stalhanse.	455	mitor.	57
Sixtus the 5th, Pope.	410	Stalimene taken by the	585	Symmachus.	187, 226,
Sir Henry Slingsby be-	546	Venerians.	415	264, 265, 267	
headed.	546	I. Stapleton.	415	Symonides.	70
Sluse.	453	Star in Caffiopeia.	408	Synecius, a Cyrenian.	244
Smalcand subdued.	479	Statius, a Poet.	180	Synod.	278
Smerdis.	75	Staurusius.	310, 315	Synod at Constantinople,	223, 303, 327. at
Smidberg.	426	Steinford.	427	Carevalentia, 360. at	
Smolensko taken.	416	Stellat.	428	Sylvanctum, 362. at	
Smyndirides.	536	Stena besieged.	532	Sardis, 212. Chalce-	
Smyrna built.	37	Stenichorus.	72	don	
S. Stephen,	171.	S. Stephen,	171.		

# THE TABLE.

don, 230. Diopolis,	240.	Milevum, 240,	241.	Orleans, 264.	Rome, 265. Nicaea, 390	Gentiliacum, 312. Di-	vodunum, 318. Ments,	321	Syphax and Hasdruball	overthrown by Scipio,	118	Syracuse built,	68	Syracuse taken by Mar-	cellus.	116	Syria possest by the Turks,	371	T.	Acitus,	180	Tacitus, Emperour,	194	Talbot.	396	Tamerlane.	382, 385,	386	Tancrede,	341, 344	Tantalus.	26, 52	Taphon built.	23	Tarasus.	309, 310	Tarentine.	112	Tarentum built.	70	Tarquinus Priscus,	58	Tarquinus Superbus.	59.	81, 82	Tarragon.	452	Tartars ereb an Empire,	370, 371. invade Po-	land.	474, 494	Tassilio, Duke.	312	Tatianus.	187, 190	Tatius, Captain of Sabines.	57	Taunton.	472	Taurus Beritius.	186	Tebelles Sicadares.	386	Telamon.	491	Teleclus.	60	Telephus.	24, 25	Telephus.	60	Telephorus.	105	Telestes.	99	Telline Valley.	431	Tellinian war.	418	Temenu.	34	Temple of Jerusalem rob-	bed, 136. Overthrown	by the Saracens.	346	Templars.	374	Teniters.	236	Tenedos taken by the Ve-	netians,	581	Terence.	146	Teresia.	411	Tertullian.	191	Tetrapolis built.	19	Tetricus, Tyrant.	194	Teucer.	31	Tenta.	114	Teutonians.	150	Thaboris built.	388	Thales Mylesius.	72	Tuebes built.	25	Theban Martyrs.	201	Theban war with Athens,	92. their City destroyed	by Alexander,	100	Thelchines.	10	Thelcion.	10	Themistius.	215	Themistius Euphrades.	220	Themistocles.	85	Theobald.	353	Theobald, Earl of Cham-	paigne,	372	Theobard of Trajectum,	300	Theocrism.	260	Theodatus, King of Goths,	277	Theodebert.	275, 293	Theodomir.	239	Theodorick the Goth, 239,	261, 264, 275	Theodora.	269, 273	Theodoret.	279	Theodore of Cæsarea.	279	Theodore of Moplaestia,	279	Theodore Calliasus.	297	Theodorick.	299, 304,	305.	Theodore Stuita.	310	Theodora.	326, 346	Theodorus, Prince of Dyr-	rachium.	369	Theodorus Lascaris, Empe-	ror.	369	Theodore Lascaris the se-	cond,	370	Theodore Gaza.	394	Theodosius, Emperour,	221. is baptized, 223.	abolishes Idolatry, 225.	Theodosius the second, 227,	232	Theodosius, Bishop of Cy-	ris in Syria,	245	Theodosius the third, of	Adramyrtum.	303	Theodorus.	121, 191	Theodota.	310	Theodwaldus.	275	Theodulp of Aurelia,	314	Theognus.	72	Theosville.	444, 463	Theopascites.	254	Theopania.	332	Theophaon.	334	Theophylact, son of Le-	capenus,	333	Theophilus, son of Leo,	316	Theophilus, Emperour,	326	Theophilus of Alexan-	dria,	230	Theopompus.	99	Theophrastus Eresius.	110	Thermopyle.	83, 108	Thesew.	29, 30	Thesalonice.	104, 369	Thesalus.	78	S. Thomas of Canterbu-	ry.	361	Thomas, Tyrant.	316	Thomas Aquinas.	368	Thomas Valdenfis.	390	Thomas of Vio.	462	Thomkins	
---------------------	------	---------------	------	---------------	------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	-----	-----------------------	-----------------------	-----	-----------------	----	------------------------	---------	-----	-----------------------------	-----	----	---------	-----	--------------------	-----	---------	-----	------------	-----------	-----	-----------	----------	-----------	--------	---------------	----	----------	----------	------------	-----	-----------------	----	--------------------	----	---------------------	-----	--------	-----------	-----	-------------------------	----------------------	-------	----------	-----------------	-----	-----------	----------	-----------------------------	----	----------	-----	------------------	-----	---------------------	-----	----------	-----	-----------	----	-----------	--------	-----------	----	-------------	-----	-----------	----	-----------------	-----	----------------	-----	---------	----	--------------------------	----------------------	------------------	-----	-----------	-----	-----------	-----	--------------------------	----------	-----	----------	-----	----------	-----	-------------	-----	-------------------	----	-------------------	-----	---------	----	--------	-----	-------------	-----	-----------------	-----	------------------	----	---------------	----	-----------------	-----	-------------------------	--------------------------	---------------	-----	-------------	----	-----------	----	-------------	-----	-----------------------	-----	---------------	----	-----------	-----	-------------------------	---------	-----	------------------------	-----	------------	-----	---------------------------	-----	-------------	----------	------------	-----	---------------------------	---------------	-----------	----------	------------	-----	----------------------	-----	-------------------------	-----	---------------------	-----	-------------	-----------	------	------------------	-----	-----------	----------	---------------------------	----------	-----	---------------------------	------	-----	---------------------------	-------	-----	----------------	-----	-----------------------	------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------------	-----	---------------------------	---------------	-----	--------------------------	-------------	-----	------------	----------	-----------	-----	--------------	-----	----------------------	-----	-----------	----	-------------	----------	---------------	-----	------------	-----	------------	-----	-------------------------	----------	-----	-------------------------	-----	-----------------------	-----	-----------------------	-------	-----	-------------	----	-----------------------	-----	-------------	---------	---------	--------	--------------	----------	-----------	----	------------------------	-----	-----	-----------------	-----	-----------------	-----	-------------------	-----	----------------	-----	----------	--

# THE TABLE.

Thomkins.	462	Titus Q. Flaminius Sub-	Tuertina.	181
Thompson.	497	ducs Macedon.	Tullus Hostilius.	58
Thuringia.	275	Titus Caesar.	Tanaxaroces.	68
Thorismond.	239	Tlejas.	Tunis taken by Barbaref-	
Thracia.	307	Toirafe.	sa.	384
Thrafeas.	177	Tolbiacum Fight.	Turingians subdued.	
Torajitulum.	71, 85, 91	Fr. Toller.	Turks, 408. defeated,	
Thrasumene Ozeribrown.	115	Tommambaisus Sultan.	369, 371, 492. take	
Thucles.	69	Tomyris.	Constantinople; 200000	
Thucydides.	98	Torgaze.	of them slain by Tamer-	
Thurgandus of Treveris.	318	Toribenson.	laine.	382
Thuringe.	434	448, 455.	A. Turnebus.	411
Thyestes.	24	456, 463, 464, 465.	Turpillius, a Poet.	161
Thymetes, King of Albens.	35	466.	Tusculum.	356
Tiberius, Tribune.	165	Tortenfon.	Tydius.	19
Tiberius Caesar.	170	Tortone.	Lyre built, 49. besieged,	
Tiberius Varro.	170	Torwood Fight.	62. taken by Alexan-	
Tiberius Aspinarus.	301, 302	Totilas takes Rome.	der, 101.	
Tiberius succeeds Justinus.	282	Traditores.	Izathes.	273
Tiberius, son of Justinian.	302	Tragolipace Musclette.	Izaphius, King of the La-	
Tiberius of Sicily.	306	Tragofius.	zores.	261
Tiburines.	97	Trajan.		
Tibullus.	165	Trajanopolis.	V.	
Ticine Battel.	115	TrajeHum taken.	Alpharius, Duke of	
Ticicium, 311, 402. be-	284	Transubstantiation.	Aquitane.	311
Tigranes wins Syria.	152	Transylvanians.	Valenchienne Fight.	505
Tilly.	420, 438	Trapezonda, 278. taken	Valens, Emperour.	217
Timaeus, an Historian.	111	by the Turks.	Valentinian, 216, 235.	
Timocbaris.	110	Trapezont, Emperour.	Valentinian the third.	
Timoleon deposes Diony-	93	Trebeian Battel.	232, 248, 249.	
sius.	91	Trebenianus Gallus.	Valentine Council.	256
Timothy.	224, 267	Trebonius.	Valentinianus Epocbe.	220
Timothy of Alexandria.	247, 253	Trevers burnt.	Valeria Faustina.	183
Timothy Elurus.	254	Trevice.	Valerian.	193
A. Tiraquell.	411	Tribonianus.	Valerianus, Martyr.	190
Tiridates.	121, 173	Tribunes first created.	Valerius Cor.icus.	97
Tifamenus.	10	Trichorachatos.	Valefians in France.	411
bernet.	91	Tridentine Council.	Valeitane.	434, 493
Tifaf		Trigibildus.	Vandalls, 183, 229. ut-	
		Triapas.	terly broken in Africa.	
		Trifagium Hymne.		
		259.		
		260.		
		162		
		479		
		31		
		147		
		141		
		190		

# THE TABLE.

Vascony.	294	Vilna.	476	Urban the 8th, Pope.	418,
Vasfus Jannas.	394	S. Vincent's Garment.	276	419, 476	
Vasto Fluftas, Duke of Ne-	401	Vincent of Belvasia.	366	Urchanus, Emperour.	381
mora.	404	Vincent of Ferrara.	390	Urcifinus.	219
F. Vatablus.	392	Vincentim.	201	Uriathick war.	144
Vatican Library erected.	331	Vincentius Lyrinenfis.	244	Urrey.	499
S. Valerius.	331	Vinnicia.	517	Urfmar of Lobia.	305
S. Vedastus reliques.	300	Virgil.	161	Ufabbell.	339
Vedastus of Atrebatum.	256	B. Virgin Mary.	301,	Ufipians.	236
A. Vega.	411	308, 325, 334, 357,		Ulman Dominicus, Bro-	
Veian War.	87	465, 474, 480.		ther of the great Turk;	
Venables.	527, 529	Virginia.	87	baptized.	542
Venetican Merchants hang-	429	Vigeoths.	238, 239	Ufumcaffanes.	1385
ed for, &c.	429	Vitalian.	260	Uwalamir.	239
Venerians, 276, 313.	429	Vitalis.	220	Uwalftein.	423
their beginning, 240.	429	Vitalis Troetius.	255	Uwillebrod.	305
their wars, 416.	429	Vitellius.	174	Uwillelm.	350
vail against the Turk.	495, 570, 571.	Vitellius Caesar.	176	Uwillelm Repofellus.	341
Verlos.	428	Vitigis.	272, 277	Uwinomadun.	237
Venaleim.	189	Vitindus.	330, 349	Uulfoaldm.	304
Vercella.	417, 445	Vitriacian Kingdom.	350	Uzref Balhaw.	429
Verina.	246	Vitulcanus, 259. his Na-			
Verona.	375	vy burnt with brasse Pro-			
Veronian Battel.	252	fectives.			
Vefpafian Caesar.	176	Wladiflaus, King of Hun-			
Vefprin.	539	gary.	382, 391		
Vefurvis.	178, 424, 438	Wladiflaus, K. of Poland.	423, 429		
Vetilius.	144	Wladiflaus, Duke of Mofch.	461, 473, 486.		
Vetranim.	210	Wlefeld.	416		
Viflor, Pope.	191	Ulphila.	238, 263		
Viflor Cabades.	259	Ulpianus.	189		
Viflor of Capua.	280	Ulrich.	576		
Viflor of Tunis.	280	Ultan.	300		
P. Viflor.	411	Uoladian Fight.	263		
Viflorinus.	195, 214	Voldamar.	463		
Viflorinus of Aquirane.	256	Vole Gulph.	506		
Vidmir.	239	Vologeffs.	173		
Vido.	328	Volfci.	82, 83		
Vienna.	262	Volfcian War.	87		
Vigelande.	474	Volfianus.	192, 207		
S. Vigil of Trent.	231	Volfusius Matianus.	187		
Vigil, Pope.	278, 279,	Urban, Pope.	351		
280		Urban the 4th, Pope.	367		
Vigilantia.	281	Urban the 5th, Pope.	376		
		Urban the 6th, Pope.	376		

## W.

Waghaff.	528
Walachus.	395
Wales.	452
Walke Fight.	589
Waller, Knight.	459
Wallia, the Goth.	461, 473, 486.
Warbman.	234
Warsavia.	440
Wartenburg.	566
Earl of Warwick.	426
Weide.	491.
Wencefflaus, Emperour.	432
werdmuller.	377, 379, 386
werth.	576, 578
West-Chester.	480
Westminster Synod.	472
wickliff.	470
Whale on the Coasts of	383
France, 453. and in	
the River of Thames.	
Wido.	547
William.	320

VVVV

# THE TABLE.

William, Earl of Poitiers.	Xacarius.	404, 411, 415	Zancles.	61
360.	Xenais of Constantinople.	266	Zant.	492
William, son of Tancred.	Xenais, Bishop of Jerapo-	344	Zedekiah, King of Judah.	48
William the Conqueror.	lis,	255	Zeize.	464
William Earl of Holland.	Xenocrates.	110	Zeno Eleates.	81
Emperor.	Xenocrates.	126	Zeno the Stoick.	110
William of Paris.	Xenophanes.	73, 80	Zeno, Emperor.	239,
William Budæus.	Xenophon.	98	246.	
William of Orange.	Xerxes.	78, 83, 85	Zenobia Conquered.	194,
William of Nassau.	Y.		197.	
Wiltzburg.			Zenocrates.	98
Wigenstein.	Y Early Account altered.	407	Zenodia.	246
Wuisstock Fight.	York, 188, 203. besieged.	468	Zimisce.	345
Wobla-e.	York Family.	396, 397	Zimi, King of Israel.	42
Wolgast.	Ypre taken by the French and English.	608	Ziska.	388
Woms.			Zoe.	332, 333, 345
Wurtisberg.			Zopyrus.	76
Wrangle.			Zopyrus, King of the Persians.	6
			Zosimus.	240, 241, 268
			Zosimus, an Historian.	231
			Zuinglius.	413, 573
			Zurick.	574, 575, 579
			Zwiccave.	448

FINIS.